6TH EDITION, REVISED

WHEELOCK'S LATIN

Frederic M. Wheelock

Revised by Richard A. LaFleur

*The
Classic
Introductory
Latin Course,
Based
on Ancient
Authors*

Wheelock's Latin

The WHEELOCK'S LATIN Series

WHEELOCK'S LATIN
Frederic M. Wheelock, revised by Richard A. LaFleur

WORKBOOK FOR WHEELOCK'S LATIN
Paul Comeau, revised by Richard A. LaFleur

WHEELOCK'S LATIN READER:
SELECTIONS FROM LATIN LITERATURE
Frederic M. Wheelock, revised by Richard A. LaFleur

Wheelock's Latin

Frederic M. Wheelock

Revised by
Richard A. LaFleur

6th Edition, Revised

SIXTH EDITION, REVISED

Contents

Foreword

The genesis of, and inspiration for, *Wheelock's Latin* was the 1946 G.I. Education bill which granted World War II Veterans a college education upon their return from service. "Why would a vet, schooled on the battlefields of Europe and Asia, want to study Latin?" asked our father, then a Professor of Classics at Brooklyn College. What could this language say to those who had already seen so much reality? How could a teacher make a *dead* language become alive, pertinent, and viable? How could one teach Latin, not as an extinct vehicle, but as the reflection of a lively culture and philosophy? This was the challenge our father undertook.

Frederic Wheelock set about to create a Latin text that would give students something to think about, a humanistic diet to nurture them both linguistically and philosophically. The book began with lessons he designed especially for his Brooklyn College students. As children we smelled regularly the pungent hectograph ink which allowed him to painstakingly reproduce the chapters of a book he was designing, page by page on a gelatin pad, for one student at a time. In 1950, on Frederic's six-month sabbatical leave, the Wheelock family travelled to the remote village of San Miguel De Allende in Mexico, where Frederic conscientiously wrote his text, and our diligent mother, Dorothy, meticulously typed the manuscript on an old portable typewriter. We young children scampered irreverently underfoot or played with native children and burros.

Twelve years of refinement, revision, and actual usage in our father's classrooms resulted in the book's first edition. When students needed to learn grammar, they read lessons and literature from the great ancient writers who used the grammar in a meaningful context. Our father sought to graft the vital flesh and blood of Roman experience and thinking onto the basic bones of forms, syntax, and vocabulary; he wanted students to tran-

scend mere gerund grinding by giving them literary and philosophical substance on which to sharpen their teeth.

As early as we can remember classical heritage filled our house. The etymology of a word would trigger lengthy discussion, often tedious for us as adolescents but abiding as we became adults. Knowing Latin teaches us English, we were constantly reminded; 60% of English words are derived from Latin. Students who take Latin are more proficient and earn higher scores on the verbal SAT exam. The business world has long recognized the importance of a rich vocabulary and rates it high as evidence of executive potential and success. Understanding the etymological history of a word gives the user vividness, color, punch, and precision. It also seems that the clearer and more numerous our verbal images, the greater our intellectual power. *Wheelock's Latin* is profuse with the etymological study of English and vocabulary enrichment. Our own experiences have shown that students will not only remember vocabulary words longer and better when they understand their etymologies, but also will use them with a sharper sense of meaning and nuance.

Why, then, exercise ourselves in the actual translation of Latin? "Inexorably accurate translation from Latin provides a training in observation, analysis, judgment, evaluation, and a sense of linguistic form, clarity, and beauty which is excellent training in the shaping of one's own English expression," asserted Frederic Wheelock. There is a discipline and an accuracy learned in the translation process which is transferable to any thinking and reasoning process, such as that employed by mathematicians. In fact, our father's beloved editor at Barnes & Noble, Dr. Gladys Walterhouse, was the Math Editor there and yet an ardent appreciator of Latin and its precision.

Our father loved the humanistic tradition of the classical writers and thinkers. And he shared this love not only with his students through the *Sententiae Antīquae* sections of his Latin text, but also with his family and friends in his daily life. As young girls, we were peppered with phrases of philosophical power from the ancients, and our father would show how these truths and lessons were alive and valid today. Some of the philosophical jewels which students of Latin will find in this book are: *carpe diem,* "seize the day"; *aurea mediocritās,* "the golden mean"; *summum bonum,* "the Highest Good"; and the derivation of "morality" from *mōrēs* ("good habits create good character," as our father used to tell us).

If learning the Latin language and the translation process are important, then getting to know the messages and art of Horace, Ovid, Virgil, and other Roman writers is equally important. Wheelock presents these Classical authors' writings on such illuminating topics as living for the future, attaining excellence, aging, and friendship. The *summum bonum* of Latin studies,

Frederic Wheelock wrote, "is the reading, analysis and appreciation of genuine ancient literary humanistic Latin in which our civilization is so deeply rooted and which has much to say to us in our 20th century."

For the 45 years that Frederic Wheelock was a Professor of Latin, he instilled in his students the love of Latin as both language and literature, and he did so with humor and humility. He dearly loved teaching, because he was so enthusiastic about what he taught. He had a deep and abiding respect for his students and demanded discipline and high standards. He wished for Latin to be loved and learned as he lived it, as a torch passed down through the ages, to help light our way today.

In 1987, as Frederic Wheelock was dying at the end of 85 richly lived years, he recited Homer, Horace, and Emily Dickinson. He, like the ancients, leaves a legacy of the love of learning and a belief that we stand on the shoulders of the ancients. He would be delighted to know that there are still active and eager students participating in the excitement and enjoyment of his beloved Latin.

Martha Wheelock and Deborah Wheelock Taylor
Fīliae amantissimae

Preface

Why a new beginners' Latin book when so many are already available? The question may rightly be asked, and a justification is in order.

It is notorious that every year increasing numbers of students enter college without Latin; and consequently they have to begin the language in college, usually as an elective, if they are to have any Latin at all. Though some college beginners do manage to continue their study of Latin for two or three years, a surprising number have to be satisfied with only one year of the subject. Among these, three groups predominate: Romance language majors, English majors, and students who have been convinced of the cultural and the practical value of even a little Latin.[1] Into the hands of such mature students (and many of them are actually Juniors and Seniors!) it is a pity and a lost opportunity to put textbooks which in pace and in thought are graded to high-school beginners. On the other hand, in the classical spirit of moderation, we should avoid the opposite extreme of a beginners' book so advanced and so severe that it is likely to break the spirit of even mature students in its attempt to cover practically everything in Latin.

Accordingly, the writer has striven to produce a beginners' book which is mature, humanistic, challenging, and instructive, and which, at the same time, is reasonable in its demands. Certainly it is not claimed that Latin can be made easy and effortless. However, the writer's experience with these

---

[1] I have even had inquiries about my lessons from graduate students who suddenly discovered that they needed some Latin and wanted to study it by themselves—much as I taught myself Spanish from E. V. Greenfield's *Spanish Grammar* (College Outline Series of Barnes & Noble) when I decided to make a trip to Mexico. Such instances really constitute a fourth group, adults who wish to learn some Latin independently of a formal academic course.

chapters in mimeographed form over a number of years shows that Latin can be made interesting despite its difficulty; it can give pleasure and profit even to the first-year student and to the student who takes only one year; it can be so presented as to afford a sense of progress and literary accomplishment more nearly commensurate with that achieved, for instance, by the student of Romance languages. The goal, then, has been a book which provides both the roots and at least some literary fruits of a sound Latin experience for those who will have only one year of Latin in their entire educational career, and a book which at the same time provides adequate introduction and encouragement for those who plan to continue their studies in the field. The distinctive methods and devices employed in this book in order to attain this goal are here listed with commentary.

1. SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE AND LOCĪ ANTĪQUĪ

It can hardly be disputed that the most profitable and the most inspiring approach to ancient Latin is through original Latin sentences and passages derived from the ancient authors themselves. With this conviction the writer perused a number of likely ancient works,[2] excerpting sentences and passages which could constitute material for the envisioned beginners' book. A prime desideratum was that the material be interesting per se and not chosen merely because it illustrated forms and syntax. These extensive excerpts provided a good cross section of Latin literature on which to base the choice of the forms, the syntax, and the vocabulary to be presented in the book. All the sentences which constitute the regular reading exercise in each chapter under the heading of *Sententiae Antīquae* are derived from this body of original Latin, as is demonstrated by the citing of the ancient author's name after each sentence. The same holds for the connected passages which appear both in the chapters and in the section entitled *Locī Antīquī.* Experience has shown that the work of the formal chapters can be covered in about three-quarters of an academic year, and that the remaining quarter can be had free and clear for the crowning experience of the year—the experience of reading additional real Latin passages from ancient authors,[3] passages which cover a wide range of interesting topics such as love, biography, philosophy, religion, morality, friendship, philanthropy, games, laws of war, anecdotes, wit, satirical comment. These basic exercises, then, are derived from

---

[2] Caesar's works were studiously avoided because of the view that Caesar's traditional place in the curriculum of the first two years is infelicitous, and that more desirable reading matter can be found.

[3] A half-dozen passages from late Latin and medieval authors are included to illustrate, among other things, the continuance of Latin through the Middle Ages.

Latin literature⁴; they are not "made" or "synthetic" Latin. In fact, by the nature of their content they constitute something of an introduction to Roman experience and thought; they are not mere inane collections of words put together simply to illustrate vocabulary, forms, and rules—though they are intended to do this too.

2. VOCABULARIES AND VOCABULARY DEVICES

Every chapter has a regular vocabulary list of new Latin words to be thoroughly learned. Each entry includes: the Latin word with one or more forms (e.g., with all principal parts, in the case of verbs); essential grammatical information (e.g., the gender of nouns, case governed by prepositions); English meanings (usually with the basic meaning first); and, in parentheses, representative English derivatives. The full vocabulary entry must be memorized for each item; in progressing from chapter to chapter, students will find it helpful to keep a running vocabulary list in their notebooks or a computer file, or to use vocabulary cards (with the Latin on one side, and the rest of the entry on the other). With an eye to the proverb *repetītiō māter memoriae,* words in the chapter vocabularies are generally repeated in the sentences and reading passages of the immediately following chapters, as well as elsewhere in the book.

In order to avoid overloading the regular chapter vocabularies, words that are less common in Latin generally or which occur infrequently (sometimes only once) in this book are glossed in parentheses following the *Sententiae Antīquae* and the reading passages. These glosses are generally less complete than the regular vocabulary entries and are even more abbreviated in the later chapters than in the earlier ones, but they should provide sufficient information for translating the text at hand; for words whose meanings can be easily deduced from English derivatives, the English is usually not provided. The instructor's requirements regarding these vocabulary items may vary, but in general students should be expected to have at least a "passive" mastery of the words, i.e., they should be able to recognize the words if encountered in a similar context, in a later chapter, for example, or on a test; full entries for most of these "recognition" items will also be found in the end Vocabulary.

---

⁴ To be sure, at times the Latin has had to be somewhat edited in order to bring an otherwise too difficult word or form or piece of syntax within the limits of the student's experience. Such editing most commonly involves unimportant omissions, a slight simplification of the word order, or the substitution of an easier word, form, or syntactical usage. However, the thought and the fundamental expression still remain those of the ancient author.

xvi   *Wheelock's Latin*

3. SYNTAX

Although the above-mentioned corpus of excerpts constituted the logical guide to the syntactical categories which should be introduced into the book, common sense dictated the mean between too little and too much, as stated above. The categories which have been introduced should prove adequate for the reading of the mature passages of *Locī Antīquī* and also provide a firm foundation for those who wish to continue their study of Latin beyond the first year. In fact, with the skill acquired in handling this mature Latin and with a knowledge of the supplementary syntax provided in the Appendix, a student can skip the traditional second-year course in Caesar and proceed directly to the third-year course in Cicero and other authors. The syntax has been explained in as simple and unpedantic a manner as possible, and each category has been made concrete by a large number of examples, which provide both the desirable element of repetition and also self-tutorial passages for students. Finally, in light of the sad experience that even English majors in college may have an inadequate knowledge of grammar, explanations of most grammatical terms have been added, usually with benefit of etymology; and these explanations have not been relegated to some general summarizing section (the kind that students usually avoid!) but have been worked in naturally as the terms first appear in the text.

4. FORMS AND THEIR PRESENTATION

The varieties of inflected and uninflected forms presented here are normal for a beginners' book. However, the general practice in this text has been to alternate lessons containing noun or adjective forms with lessons containing verb forms. This should help reduce the ennui which results from too much of one thing at a time. The same consideration prompted the postponement of the locative case, adverbs, and most irregular verbs to the latter part of the book, where they could provide temporary respite from subjunctives and other heavy syntax.

Considerable effort has been made to place paradigms of more or less similar forms side by side for easy ocular cross reference in the same lesson[5] and also, as a rule, to have new forms follow familiar related ones in natural sequence (as when adjectives of the third declension follow the i-stem nouns).

The rate at which the syntax and the forms can be absorbed will obviously depend on the nature and the caliber of the class; the instructor will have to adjust the assignments to the situation. Though each chapter forms a logical unit, it has been found that at least two assignments have to be allotted to many of the longer chapters: the first covers the English text,

---

[5] The same device has been carefully employed in the Appendix.

the paradigms, the vocabularies, the *Practice and Review,* and some of the *Sententiae Antiquae;* the second one requires review, the completion of the *Sententiae,* the reading passage, and the section on etymology. Both these assignments are in themselves natural units, and this double approach contains the obvious gain of repetition.

5. PRACTICE AND REVIEW

The *Practice and Review* sentences were introduced as additional insurance of repetition of forms, syntax, and vocabulary, which is so essential in learning a language. If the author of a textbook can start with a predetermined sequence of vocabulary and syntax, for example, and is free to compose sentences based thereon, then it should be a fairly simple matter to make the sentences of succeeding lessons repeat the items of the previous few lessons, especially if the intellectual content of the sentences is not a prime concern. On the other hand, such repetition is obviously much more difficult to achieve when one works under the exacting restrictions outlined above in Section 1. Actually, most of the items introduced in a given chapter do re-appear in the *Sententiae Antiquae* of the immediately following chapters as well as passim thereafter, but the author frankly concocted the *Practice and Review* sentences[6] to fill in the lacunae, to guarantee further repetition than could otherwise have been secured, and to provide exercises of continuous review. The English-into-Latin sentences, though few in number on the grounds that the prime emphasis rests on learning to read Latin, should, however, be done regularly, but the others need not be assigned as part of the ordinary outside preparation. They are easy enough to be done at sight in class as time permits; or they can be used as a basis for review after every fourth or fifth chapter in lieu of formal review lessons.

6. ETYMOLOGIES

Unusually full lists of English derivatives are provided in parentheses after the words in the vocabularies to help impress the Latin words on the student, to demonstrate the direct or indirect indebtedness of English to Latin, and to enlarge the student's own vocabulary. Occasionally, English cognates have been added. At the end of each chapter a section entitled *Etymology* covers some of the recognition vocabulary items introduced in the sentences and reading passages, as well as other interesting points which could not be easily indicated in the vocabulary. From the beginning, the student should be urged to consult the lists of prefixes and suffixes given in the Appendix under the heading of *Some Etymological Aids.* To interest

---

[6] Ancient Latin sentences suggested some of them.

students of Romance languages and to suggest the importance of Latin to the subject, Romance derivatives have been listed from time to time.

7. THE INTRODUCTION

In addition to discussing the Roman alphabet and pronunciation, the book's general introduction sketches the linguistic, literary, and palaeographical background of Latin. This background and the actual Latin of the *Sententiae Antīquae* and the *Locī Antīquī* give the student considerable insight into Roman literature, thought, expression, and experience, and evince the continuity of the Roman tradition down to our own times. It is hoped that the Introduction and especially the nature of the lessons themselves will establish this book as not just another Latin grammar but rather as a humanistic introduction to the reading of genuine Latin.

The book had its inception in a group of mimeographed lessons put together rather hurriedly and tried out in class as a result of the dissatisfaction expressed above at the beginning of this Preface. The lessons worked well, despite immediately obvious imperfections traceable to their hasty composition. To Professor Lillian B. Lawler of Hunter College I am grateful for her perusal of the mimeographed material and for her suggestions. I also wish to acknowledge the patience of my students and colleagues at Brooklyn College who worked with the mimeographed material, and their helpfulness and encouragement in stating their reactions to the text. Subsequently these trial lessons were completely revised and rewritten in the light of experience. I am indebted to Professor Joseph Pearl of Brooklyn College for his kindness in scrutinizing the 40 chapters of the manuscript in their revised form and for many helpful suggestions. To the Reverend Joseph M.-F. Marique, S.J., of Boston College I herewith convey my appreciation for his encouraging and helpful review of the revised manuscript. Thomas S. Lester of Northeastern University, a man of parts and my *alter īdem amīcissimus* since classical undergraduate years, has my heartfelt thanks for so often and so patiently lending to my problems a sympathetic ear, a sound mind, and a sanguine spirit. To my dear wife, Dorothy, who so faithfully devoted herself to the typing of a very difficult manuscript, who was often asked for a judgment, and who, in the process, uttered many a salutary plea for clarity and for compassion toward the students, I dedicate my affectionate and abiding gratitude. My final thanks go to Dr. Gladys Walterhouse and her colleagues in the editorial department of Barnes & Noble for their friendly, efficient, and often crucial help in many matters. It need hardly be added that no one but the author is responsible for any infelicities which may remain.

The Second and Third Editions

Because of the requests of those who found that they needed more reading material than that provided by the *Locī Antīquī,* the author prepared a second edition which enriched the book by a new section entitled *Locī Immūtātī.* In these passages the original ancient Latin texts have been left unchanged except for omissions at certain points. The footnotes are of the general character of those in the *Locī Antīquī.* It is hoped that these readings will prove sufficiently extensive to keep an introductory class well supplied for the entire course, will give an interesting additional challenge to the person who is self-tutored, and will provide a very direct approach to the use of the regular annotated texts of classical authors.

Because of the indisputable value of repetition for establishing linguistic reflexes, the third edition includes a new section of Self-Tutorial Exercises. These consist of questions on grammar and syntax, and sentences for translation. A key provides answers to all the questions and translations of all the sentences.

The second and third editions would be incomplete without a word of deep gratitude to the many who in one way or another have given kind encouragement, who have made suggestions, who have indicated emendanda. I find myself particularly indebted to Professors Josephine Bree of Albertus Magnus College, Ben L. Charney of Oakland City College, Louis H. Feldman of Yeshiva College, Robert J. Leslie of Indiana University, Mr. Thomas S. Lester of Northeastern University, the Reverend James R. Murdock of Glenmary Home Missioners, Professors Paul Pascal of the University of Washington, Robert Renehan of Harvard University, John E. Rexine of Colgate University, George Tyler of Moravian College, Ralph L. Ward of Hunter College, Dr. Gladys Walterhouse of the Editorial Staff of Barnes & Noble, and most especially, once again, to my wife.

Frederic M. Wheelock

The Revised Edition

When Professor Frederic Wheelock's *Latin* first appeared in 1956, the reviews extolled its thoroughness, organization, and concision; at least one reviewer predicted that the book "might well become the standard text" for introducing college students and other adult learners to elementary Latin. Now, half a century later, that prediction has certainly been proven accurate. A second edition was published in 1960, retitled *Latin: An Introductory Course Based on Ancient Authors* and including a rich array of additional reading passages drawn directly from Latin literature (the *Locī Immūtātī*); the third edition, published in 1963, added Self-Tutorial Exercises, with an answer key, for each of the 40 chapters and greatly enhanced the book's usefulness both for classroom students and for those wishing to study the language independently. In 1984, three years before the author's death, a list of passage citations for the *Sententiae Antīquae* was added, so that teachers and students could more easily locate and explore the context of selections they found especially interesting; and in 1992 a fourth edition appeared under the aegis of the book's new publisher, HarperCollins, in which the entire text was set in a larger, more legible font.

The fifth edition, published in 1995 and aptly retitled *Wheelock's Latin*, constituted the first truly substantive revision of the text in more than 30 years. The revisions which I introduced were intended, not to alter the basic concept of the text, but to enhance it; indeed, a number of the most significant changes were based on Professor Wheelock's own suggestions, contained in notes made available for the project by his family, and others reflected the experiences of colleagues around the country, many of whom (myself included) had used and admired the book for two decades or more and had in the process arrived at some consensus about certain basic ways in which it might be improved for a new generation of students.

The most obvious change in the fifth edition reflected Wheelock's own principal desideratum, shared by myself and doubtless by most who had used the book over the years, and that was the addition of passages of continuous Latin, based on ancient authors, to each of the 40 chapters. These are in the early chapters quite brief and highly adapted, but later on are more extensive and often excerpted verbatim from a variety of prose and verse authors; some had appeared in previous editions among the *Locī Antīquī* and the *Locī Immūtātī*, while many were included for the first time in the fifth edition. Some of the Practice and Review sentences were revised or replaced, as were a few of the *Sententiae Antīquae* (which in some instances were expanded into longer readings), again as suggested in part by Professor Wheelock himself.

The chapter vocabularies, generally regarded as too sparse, were expanded in most instances to about 20–25 words, a quite manageable list including new items as well as many found previously as parenthetical glosses to the *Sententiae Antīquae.* Full principal parts were provided for all verbs from the beginning, as colleagues around the country had agreed should be done, so students would not be confronted with the somewhat daunting list previously presented in Chapter 12.

There was only minimal shifting of grammar, but in particular the imperfect tense was introduced along with the future in Chapters 5, 8, and 10, so that a past tense would be available for use in the readings at a much earlier stage. Numerals and the associated material originally in Chapter 40 were introduced in Chapter 15; and a half dozen or so important grammatical constructions previously presented in the Supplementary Syntax were instead introduced in Chapter 40 and a few of the earlier chapters. Many of the grammatical explanations were rewritten; essential information from the footnotes was incorporated into the text, while some less important notes were deleted.

Finally, I included at the end of each chapter in the fifth edition a section titled *Latīna Est Gaudium—et Ūtilis,* which presents, in a deliberately informal style, a miscellany of Latin mottoes and well-known quotations, familiar abbreviations, interesting etymologies, classroom conversation items, occasional tidbits of humor, and even a few ghastly puns, all intended to demonstrate, on the lighter side, that Latin can indeed be pleasurable as well as edifying.

The Sixth Edition and Sixth Edition, Revised

The very considerable success of the fifth edition encouraged all of us involved—Professor Wheelock's daughters, Martha Wheelock and Deborah Wheelock Taylor, our editor Greg Chaput and his associates at HarperCollins, and myself—to proceed with the further revisions I had proposed for

this new sixth edition. We all hope that teachers and students alike will benefit from the numerous improvements, the most immediately apparent of which are: the handsome new cover art, a Roman mosaic from Tunisia depicting Virgil with a copy of the *Aeneid* in his lap and flanked by two Muses representing his work's inspiration; the three maps of ancient Italy, Greece and the Aegean area, and the Mediterranean, which have been specially designed to include, inter alia, all the placenames mentioned in the book's readings and notes (except a few situated on the remotest fringes of the empire); and the numerous photographs selected primarily from classical and later European art to illustrate literary and historical figures and aspects of classical culture and mythology presented in the chapter readings. Among the less obvious but, we hope, equally helpful changes are: revision of chapter readings, especially the Practice and Review sentences, for greater clarity and increased reinforcement of new and recently introduced chapter vocabulary items; expansion of derivatives lists in the chapter vocabularies and of cross-references to related words in other chapters; and enlargement of the English-Latin end vocabulary.

The "sixth edition, revised," first published in 2005, contains a variety of additional enhancements, including slight revisions to the Introduction and to some of the sentences, reading passages, and accompanying notes, as well as further expansion of the English-Latin vocabulary designed to render even more useful the popular companion text, *Workbook for Wheelock's Latin* (in its revised third edition by Paul Comeau and myself, published concurrently with the sixth edition of *Wheelock's Latin*). The sixth edition, revised, is also the first in many years to appear in a hardbound version, along with the traditional paperback; audio is now available online for all the chapter vocabularies and other pronunciation help; and, for the first time ever, a teacher's guide has been written and is available online, password-protected, to instructors who provide verification of their faculty status.

A final note for professors, teachers, and those engaged in independent study: This revised edition of *Wheelock's Latin* very likely contains more material for translation than can actually be covered in the two or three days typically allotted to a chapter in a semester course or the week or so allotted in high school. Instructors may thus pick and choose and be selective in the material they assign: my suggestion for the first day or two is to assign for written homework only limited selections from the Practice and Review sentences and the *Sententiae Antiquae,* while reserving the others (or some of the others, carefully selected in advance) for in-class sight translation; assignments for the second or third day should nearly always include the reading passages following the *Sententiae Antiquae,* which will give students the experience they need with continuous narrative. Students should regularly be encouraged to practice new material at home with the Self-Tutorial Exercises located at the back of the book, checking their accuracy with the an-

swer key that follows, and sentences from these exercises, again pre-selected for the purpose, can be used to drill mastery of new concepts via sight translation in class.

Most instructors will also want their students to use the *Workbook for Wheelock's Latin,* which contains a wide range of additional exercises, including for each chapter a detailed set of objectives, a series of questions designed to focus directly on the newly introduced grammar, a variety of transformation drills, word, phrase, and sentence translations, questions on etymologies, synonyms, antonyms, and analogies for new vocabulary items, and reading comprehension questions to test the student's understanding of the chapter's reading passages.

Those who may not have time to complete all of the many *Workbook* items provided for each chapter are advised at least to review each of the *Intellegenda* (chapter objectives), answer all the *Grammatica* (grammar review) questions and then complete at least one or two items from each section of the *Exercitātiōnēs* (i.e., one or two from the section A exercises, one or two from section B, etc.), all the *Vīs Verbōrum* (etymology and English word power) items, one or two of the Latin-to-English translations in section A of the *Lēctiōnēs* (readings), and all the items in *Lēctiōnēs* B (questions on the chapter's continuous reading passages).

There are numerous other materials designed to complement *Wheelock's Latin* and the *Workbook for Wheelock's Latin,* including supplemental readers, computer software, and a wealth of internet resources, many of which, along with further suggestions on teaching and learning Latin via Wheelock, are listed at the official Wheelock's Latin Series Website, www.wheelockslatin.com, and described in my book *Latin for the 21st Century: From Concept to Classroom* (available from Prentice Hall Publishers).

Mapping Center, for the lion's share of the work involved in designing the sixth edition's maps; students and associates at the University of Georgia who field-tested the new material or provided other helpful assistance, among them Bob Harris and Richard Shedenhelm; colleagues around the country who offered suggestions for specific revisions to one or both of these editions, especially Ward Briggs at the University of South Carolina (whose biographies of Professor Wheelock appear in his book, *A Biographical Dictionary of American Classicists,* Westport CT: Greenwood Press, 1994, and in the Winter, 2003, *Classical Outlook*), Rob Latousek, John Lautermilch, John McChesney-Young, Braden Mechley, Betty Rose Nagle, John Ramsey, Joseph Riegsecker, Cliff Roti, Les Sheridan, David Sider, Alden Smith, Cliff Weber, and Stephen Wheeler; Dean Wyatt Anderson, for his encouragement of my own work and all our Classics Department's endeavors; Martha Wheelock and Deborah Wheelock Taylor, my "sisters-in-Latin," for their steadfast advocacy of my work on the revised editions and their generous sharing of their father's notes; and finally, Professor Frederic M. Wheelock himself, for producing a textbook that has truly become a classic in its own right and one whose revision, therefore, became for me a *labor amōris.*

Richard A. LaFleur
University of Georgia
Autumn, 2004

I love the language, that soft bastard Latin,
Which melts like kisses from a female mouth.

> George Noel Gordon, Lord Byron
> *Beppo*

I would make them all learn English: and then I would
let the clever ones learn Latin as an honor, and Greek
as a treat.

> Sir Winston Churchill
> *Roving Commission: My Early Life*

He studied Latin like the violin, because he liked it.

> Robert Frost
> *The Death of the Hired Man*

Introduction

Wer fremde Sprachen nicht kennt, weiss nichts von seiner eigenen. (Goethe)
Apprendre une langue, c'est vivre de nouveau. (French proverb)

Interest in learning Latin can be considerably increased by even a limited knowledge of some background details such as are sketched in this introduction. The paragraphs on the position of the Latin language in linguistic history provide one with some linguistic perspective not only for Latin but also for English. The brief survey of Latin literature introduces the authors from whose works have come the *Sententiae Antīquae* and the *Locī Antīquī* of this book; and even this abbreviated survey provides some literary perspective which the student may never otherwise experience. The same holds for the account of the alphabet; and, of course, no introduction would be complete without a statement about the sounds which the letters represent.

THE POSITION OF THE LATIN LANGUAGE IN LINGUISTIC HISTORY

Say the words "I," "me," "is," "mother," "brother," "ten," and you are speaking words which, in one form or another, men and women of Europe and Asia have used for thousands of years. In fact, we cannot tell how old these words actually are. If their spelling and pronunciation have changed somewhat from period to period and from place to place, little wonder; what does pique the imagination is the fact that the basic elements of these symbols of human thought have had the vitality to traverse such spans of time

and space down to this very moment on this new continent. The point is demonstrated in the considerably abbreviated and simplified table that follows.[1]

English	*I*	*me*	*is*	*mother*	*brother*	*ten*
Sanskrit[2]	aham	mā	asti	mātar-	bhrātar-	daśam
Greek	egō	me	esti	mētēr	phrātēr[3]	deka
Latin	ego	mē	est	māter	frāter	decem
Anglo-Saxon[4]	ic	mē	is	mōdor	brōthor	tīen
Old Irish[5]		mé	is	máthir	bráthir	deich
Lithuanian[6]	aš	manè	esti	motė	broterėlis	dešimtis
Russian[7]	ja	menja	jest'	mat'	brat	desjat'

You can see from these columns of words that the listed languages are related.[8] And yet, with the exception of the ultimate derivation of English from Anglo-Saxon,[9] none of these languages stems directly from another in the list. Rather, they all go back through intermediate stages to a common ancestor, which is now lost but which can be predicated on the evidence of the languages which do survive. Such languages the philologist calls "cognate" (Latin for "related" or, more literally, "born together," i.e., from the same ancestry). The name most commonly given to the now lost ancestor of all these "relatives," or cognate languages, is *Indo-European,* because its descendants are found both in or near India (Sanskrit, Iranian) and also in Europe (Greek and Latin and the Germanic, Celtic, Slavic, and Baltic languages).[10] The oldest of these languages on the basis of documents writ-

---

[1] Some elements have been omitted from this table as not immediately necessary. The words in the table are only a few of the many which could be cited.

[2] The language of the sacred writings of ancient India, parent of the modern Indo-European languages of India.

[3] Though cognate with the other words in this column, classical Greek **phrātēr** meant *member of a clan.*

[4] As an example of the Germanic languages; others are Gothic, German, Dutch, Danish, Norwegian, Swedish, Icelandic, English.

[5] As an example of the Celtic languages; others are Gaulish, Breton, Scots (Gaelic). Old Irish **mé** in the chart is actually nominative case, equivalent to "I" in meaning and usage but to "me" in form.

[6] As an example of the Baltic group; others are Latvian and Old Prussian.

[7] As an example of the Slavic group; others are Polish, Bulgarian, Czech.

[8] This large family of languages shows relationship in the matter of inflections also, but no attempt is made here to demonstrate the point. An inflected language is one in which the nouns, pronouns, adjectives, and verbs have variable endings by which the relationship of the words to each other in a sentence can be indicated. In particular, note that Anglo-Saxon, like Latin, was an inflected language but that its descendant English has lost most of its inflections.

[9] The later connection between English and Latin will be pointed out below.

[10] Note that many languages (e.g., the Semitic languages, Egyptian, Basque, Chinese, the native languages of Africa and the Americas) lie outside the Indo-European family.

ten in them are Sanskrit, Iranian, Greek, and Latin, and these documents go back centuries before the time of Christ.

The difference between *derived* (from roots meaning "to flow downstream from" a source) and *cognate* languages can be demonstrated even more clearly by the relationship of the Romance languages to Latin and to each other. For here we are in the realm of recorded history and can see that with the Roman political conquest of such districts as Gaul (France), Spain, and Dacia (Roumania) there occurred also a Roman linguistic conquest. Out of this victorious ancient Latin as spoken by the common people (**vulgus**, hence "vulgar" Latin) grew the Romance languages, such as French, Spanish, Portuguese, Roumanian, and, of course, Italian. Consequently, we can say of Italian, French, and Spanish, for instance, that they are *derived* from Latin and that they are *cognate* with each other.

Parent	Cognate Romance Derivatives			
Latin	**Italian**	**Spanish**	**French**	**English Meaning**
amīcus	amico	amigo	ami	friend
liber	libro	libro	livre	book
tempus	tempo	tiempo	temps	time
manus	mano	mano	main	hand
bucca	bocca	boca	bouche	mouth (cheek *in classical Lat.*)[11]
caballus[12]	cavallo	caballo	cheval	horse
fīlius	figlio	hijo	fils	son
ille	il	el	(le)[13]	the (that *in classical Lat.*)
illa	la	la	la	the (that *in classical Lat.*)
quattuor	quattro	cuatro	quatre	four
bonus	buono	bueno	bon	good
bene	bene	bien	bien	well (*adv.*)
facere	fare	hacer	faire	make, do
dīcere	dire	decir	dire	say
legere	leggere	leer	lire	read

Although it was noted above that English ultimately stems from Anglo-Saxon, which is cognate with Latin, there is much more than that to the story of our own language. Anglo-Saxon itself had early borrowed a few words from Latin; and then in the 7th century more Latin words[14] came in as a result of the work of St. Augustine (the Lesser), who was sent by Pope Gregory to Christianize the Angles. After the victory of William the Con-

---

[11] The classical Latin word for *mouth* was ōs, ōris.
[12] The classical Latin word for *horse* was equus.
[13] Derived from ille but not actually cognate with il and el.
[14] Many of these were of Greek and Hebrew origin but had been Latinized. The Latin *Vulgate* played an important role.

INDO-EUROPEAN

Balto-Slavic

Indo-Iranian

Albanian Baltic Slavic Celtic Armenian Germanic Latin[15] Greek[15] Iranian Indic
(Sanskrit)

Anglo
Saxon

Albanian Lith. Russian Irish Welsh Armen. Scand. Dutch German English French Ital. Span. Port. Roum. Greek Persian, I-E
(Modern) etc. etc. etc. (Modern) etc. (Modern) etc. Langs.
of India
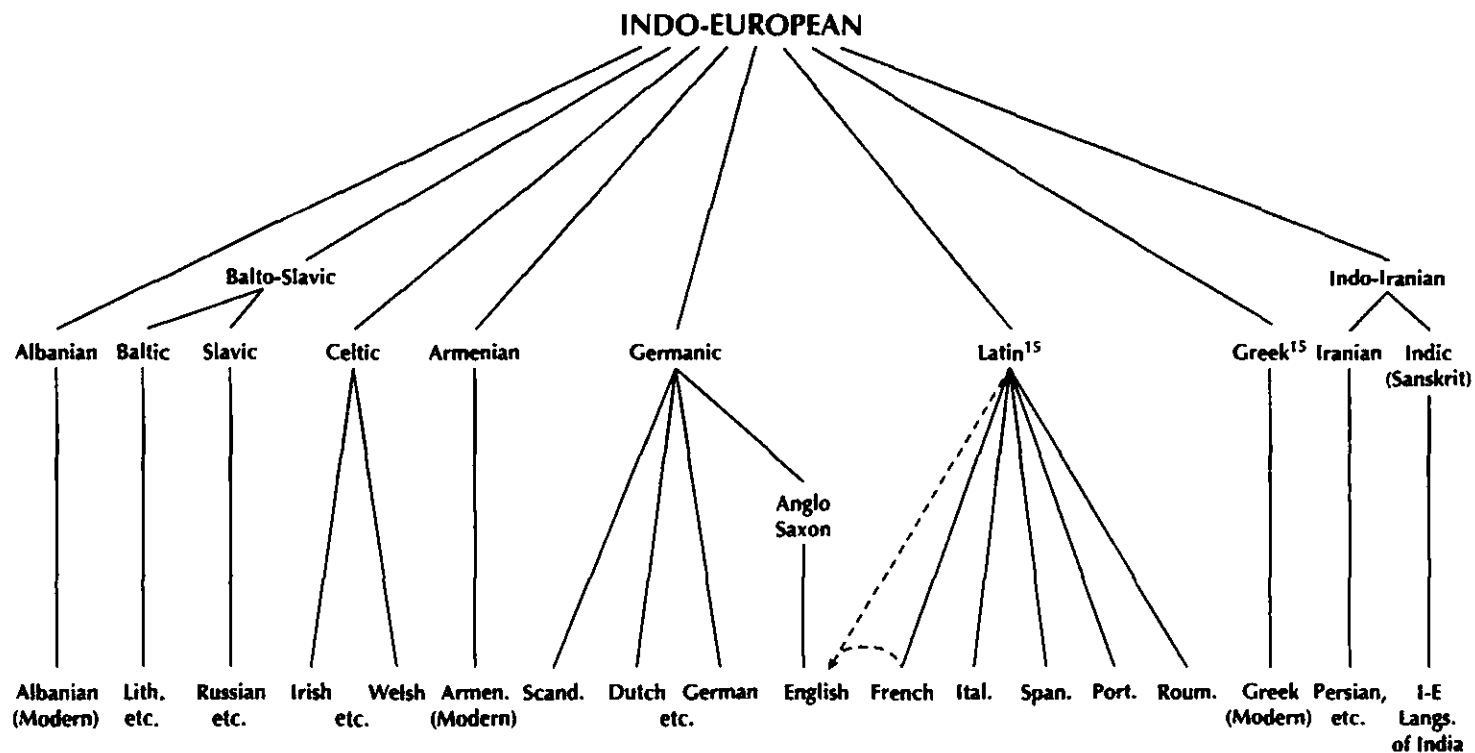
[15] Actually, Latin was only one of a number of Italic dialects (among which were Oscan and Umbrian), and some time passed before Latin won out over the other dialects in Italy. Similarly, among the Greeks there were a number of dialects (Aeolic, Attic, Ionic, Doric).

queror in 1066, Norman French became the polite language and Anglo-Saxon was held in low esteem as the tongue of vanquished men and serfs. Thus Anglo-Saxon, no longer the language of literature, became simply the speech of humble daily life. Some two centuries later, however, as the descendants of the Normans finally amalgamated with the English natives, the Anglo-Saxon language reasserted itself; but in its poverty it had to borrow hundreds of French words (literary, intellectual, cultural) before it could become the language of literature. Borrow it did abundantly, and in the 13th and 14th centuries this development produced what is called Middle English, known especially from Chaucer, who died in 1400. Along with the adoption of these Latin-rooted French words there was also some borrowing directly from Latin itself, and the renewed interest in the classics which characterized the Renaissance naturally intensified this procedure during the 16th and the 17th centuries.[16] From that time to the present Latin has continued to be a source of new words, particularly for the scientist.[17]

Consequently, since English through Anglo-Saxon is cognate with Latin and since English directly or indirectly has borrowed so many words from Latin, we can easily demonstrate both cognation and derivation by our own vocabulary. For instance, our word "brother" is *cognate* with Latin **fråter** but "fraternal" clearly is *derived* from **fråter**. Other instances are:

English	Latin Cognate[18]	English Derivative
mother	måter	maternal
two	duo	dual, duet
tooth	děns, *stem* dent-	dental
foot	pěs, *stem* ped-	pedal
heart	cor, *stem* cord-	cordial
bear	ferō	fertile

[16] Thomas Wilson (16th century) says: "The unlearned or foolish fantastical, that smells but of learning (such fellows as have been learned men in their days), will so Latin their tongues, that the simple cannot but wonder at their talk, and think surely they speak by some revelation." Sir Thomas Browne (17th century) says: "If elegancy still proceedeth, and English pens maintain that stream we have of late observed to flow from many, we shall within a few years be fain to learn Latin to understand English, and a work will prove of equal facility in either." These statements are quoted by permission from the "Brief History of the English Language" by Hadley and Kittredge in Webster's *New International Dictionary*, Second Edition, copyright, 1934, 1939, 1945, 1950, 1953, 1954, by G. & C. Merriam Co.

[17] And apparently even our 20th-century composers of advertisements would be reduced to near beggary if they could not draw on the Latin vocabulary and the classics in general.

[18] Grimm's law catalogues the Germanic shift in certain consonants (the stops). This shows how such apparently different words as English *heart* and Latin **cor, cord-**, are in origin the same word.

In fact, here you see one of the reasons for the richness of our vocabulary, and the longer you study Latin the more keenly you will realize what a limited language ours would be without the Latin element.

Despite the brevity of this survey you can comprehend the general position of Latin in European linguistic history and something of its continuing importance to us of the 20th century. It is the cognate[19] of many languages and the parent of many; it can even be called the adoptive parent of our own. In summary is offered the much abbreviated diagram on page xxx above.[20]

A BRIEF SURVEY OF LATIN LITERATURE

Since throughout this entire book you will be reading sentences and longer passages excerpted from Latin literature, a brief outline is here sketched to show both the nature and the extent of this great literature. You will find the following main divisions reasonable and easy to keep in mind, though the common warning against dogmatism in regard to the names and the dates of periods should certainly be sounded.

I. Early Period (down to ca. 80 B.C.)
II. Golden Age (80 B.C.–14 A.D.)
    A. Ciceronian Period (80–43 B.C.)
    B. Augustan Period (43 B.C.–14 A.D.)
III. Silver Age (14–ca. 138 A.D.)
IV. Patristic Period (late 2nd–5th cens. of our era)
V. Medieval Period (6th–14th cens. of our era)
VI. Period from the Renaissance (ca. 15th cen.) to the Present

THE EARLY PERIOD (DOWN TO CA. 80 B.C.)

The apogee of Greek civilization, including the highest development of its magnificent literature and art, was reached during the 5th and the 4th centuries before Christ. In comparison, Rome during those centuries had little to offer. Our fragmentary evidence shows only a rough, accentual na-

---

[19] Take particular care to note that Latin is simply cognate with Greek, not derived from it.

[20] In the interests of simplicity and clarity a number of languages and intermediate steps have been omitted. In particular it should be noted that no attempt has been made to indicate the indebtedness of English to Greek. Two branches of the Indo-European language family, Anatolian and Tocharian, are now extinct and are not shown on the chart.

tive meter called Saturnian, some native comic skits, and a rough, practical prose for records and speeches.

In the 3d century B.C., however, the expansion of Roman power brought the Romans into contact with Greek civilization. Somehow the hard-headed, politically and legally minded Romans were fascinated by what they found, and the writers among them went to school to learn Greek literature. From this time on, Greek literary forms, meters, rhetorical devices, subjects, and ideas had a tremendous and continuing influence on Roman literature, even as it developed its own character and originality in a great many ways.

In fact, the Romans themselves did not hesitate to admit as much. Although the Romans now composed epics, tragedies, satires, and speeches, the greatest extant accomplishments of this period of apprenticeship to Greek models are the comedies of Plautus (ca. 254–184 B.C.) and Terence (185–159 B.C.). These were based on Greek plays of the type known as New Comedy, the comedy of manners, and they make excellent reading today. Indeed, a number of these plays have influenced modern playwrights; Plautus' *Menaechmi,* for instance, inspired Shakespeare's *Comedy of Errors.*

THE GOLDEN AGE (80 B.C.–14 A.D.)

During the first century before Christ the Roman writers perfected their literary media and made Latin literature one of the world's greatest. It is particularly famous for its beautiful, disciplined form, which we know as classic, and for its real substance as well. If Lucretius complained about the poverty of the Latin vocabulary, Cicero so molded the vocabulary and the general usage that Latin remained a supple and a subtle linguistic tool for thirteen centuries and more.[21]

THE CICERONIAN PERIOD (80–43 B.C.). The literary work of the Ciceronian Period was produced during the last years of the Roman Republic. This was a period of civil wars and dictators, of military might against constitutional right, of selfish interest, of brilliant pomp and power, of moral and religious laxity. Outstanding authors important for the book which you have in hand are:

Lucretius (Titus Lūcrētius Cārus, ca. 98–55 B.C.): author of *Dē Rērum Nātūrā,* a powerful didactic poem on happiness achieved through the Epicurean philosophy. This philosophy was based on pleasure[22] and was buttressed by an atomic theory which made the universe a realm of natural, not divine, law and thus eliminated the fear of the gods and the tyranny of religion, which Lucretius believed had shattered men's happiness.

Catullus (Gāius Valerius Catullus, ca. 84–54 B.C.): lyric poet, the Robert

---

[21] See below under Medieval and Renaissance Latin.
[22] However, that it meant simply "eat, drink, and be merry" is a vulgar misinterpretation.

Burns of Roman literature, an intense and impressionable young provincial from northern Italy who fell totally under the spell of an urban sophisticate, Lesbia (a literary pseudonym for her real name, Clodia), but finally escaped bitterly disillusioned; over 100 of his poems have survived.

Cicero (Mārcus Tullius Cicerō, 106–43 B.C.): the greatest Roman orator, whose eloquence thwarted the conspiracy of the bankrupt aristocrat Catiline[23] in 63 B.C. and 20 years later cost Cicero his own life in his patriotic opposition to Anthony's high-handed policies; admired also as an authority on Roman rhetoric, as an interpreter of Greek philosophy to his countrymen, as an essayist on friendship (*Dē Amīcitiā*) and on old age (*Dē Senectūte*), and, in a less formal style, as a writer of self-revealing letters. Cicero's vast contributions to the Latin language itself have already been mentioned.

Caesar (Gāius Iūlius Caesar, 102 or 100–44 B.C.): orator, politician, general, statesman, dictator, author; best known for his military memoirs, *Bellum Gallicum* and *Bellum Cīvīle*.

[23] See the introductory notes to "Cicero Denounces Catiline" in Ch. 11 and "Evidence and Confession" in Ch. 30.
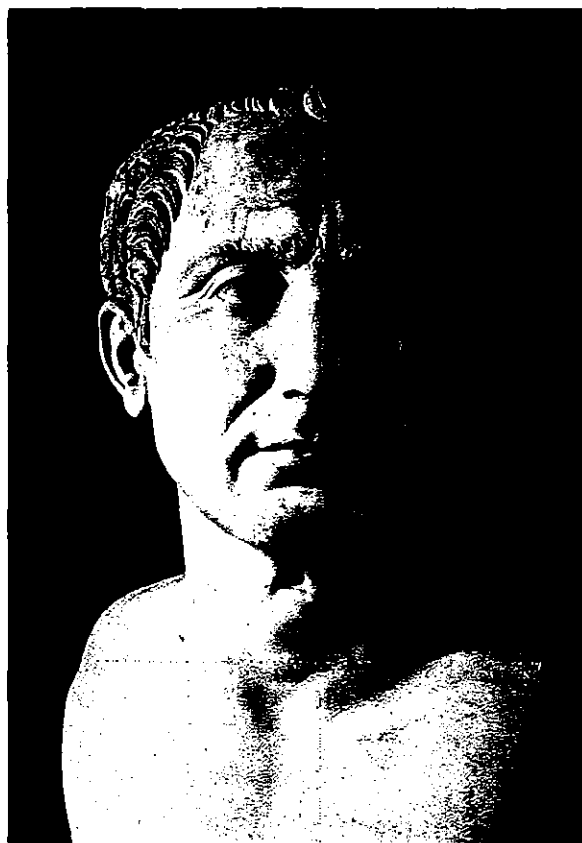
Julius Caesar
1st century B.C.
Museo Archeologico Nazionale
Naples, Italy

Nepos (Cornēlius Nepōs, 99–24 B.C.): friend of Catullus and Caesar and a writer of biographies noted rather for their relatively easy and popular style than for greatness as historical documents.

Publilius Syrus (fl. 43 B.C.): a slave who was taken to Rome and who there became famous for his mimes, which today are represented only by a collection of epigrammatic sayings.

THE AUGUSTAN PERIOD (43 B.C.–14 A.D.). The first Roman Emperor gave his name to this period. Augustus wished to correct the evils of the times, to establish civil peace by stable government, and to win the Romans' support for his new regime. With this in mind he and Maecenas, his unofficial prime minister, sought to enlist literature in the service of the state. Under their patronage Virgil and Horace became what we should call poets laureate. Some modern critics feel that this fact vitiates the noble sentiments of these poets; others see in Horace a spirit of independence and of genuine moral concern, and maintain that Virgil, through the character of his epic hero Aeneas, is not simply glorifying Augustus but is actually suggesting to the emperor what is expected of him as head of the state.[24]

Virgil (Pūblius Vergilius Marō, 70–19 B.C.): from humble origins in northern Italy; lover of nature; profoundly sympathetic student of humankind; Epicurean and mystic; severe and exacting self-critic, master craftsman, linguistic and literary architect, "lord of language"; famous as a writer of pastoral verse (the *Eclogues*) and of a beautiful didactic poem on farm life (the *Georgics*); best known as the author of one of the world's great epics,[25] the *Aeneid,* a national epic with ulterior purposes, to be sure, but one also with ample universal and human appeal to make it powerful 20th-century reading.

Horace (Quīntus Horātius Flaccus, 65–8 B.C.): freedman's son who, thanks to his father's vision and his own qualities, rose to the height of poet laureate; writer of genial and self-revealing satires; author of superb lyrics both light and serious; meticulous composer famed for the happy effects of his linguistic craftsmanship (**cūriōsa fēlīcitās,** *painstaking felicity*); synthesist of Epicurean **carpe diem** (*enjoy today*) and Stoic **virtūs** (*virtue*); preacher and practitioner of **aurea mediocritās** (*the golden mean*).

Livy (Titus Līvius, 59 B.C.–17 A.D.): friend of Augustus but an admirer of the Republic and of olden virtues; author of a monumental, epic-spirited history of Rome, and portrayer of Roman character at its best as he judged it.

---

[24] See, for instance, E. K. Rand, *The Builders of Eternal Rome* (Harvard Univ. Press, 1943).

[25] The *Aeneid* is always associated with Homer's *Iliad* and *Odyssey,* to which it owes a great deal, and with Dante's *Divine Comedy* and Milton's *Paradise Lost,* which owe a great deal to it.

Propertius (Sextus Propertius, ca. 50 B.C.–ca. 2 A.D.): author of four books of romantic elegiac poems, much admired by Ovid.

Ovid (Pūblius Ovidius Nāsō, 43 B.C.–17 A.D.): author of much love poetry which was hardly consonant with Augustus' plans; most famous today as the writer of the long and clever hexameter work on mythology entitled *Metamorphōsēs,* which has proved a thesaurus for subsequent poets. Ovid, like Pope, "lisped in numbers, for the numbers came."

THE SILVER AGE (14–CA. 138 A.D.)

In the Silver Age there is excellent writing; but often there are also artificialities and conceits, a striving for effects and a passion for epigrams, characteristics which often indicate a less sure literary sense and power—hence the traditional, though frequently overstated, distinction between "Golden" and "Silver." The temperaments of not a few emperors also had a limiting or blighting effect on the literature of this period.

Seneca (Lūcius Annaeus Seneca, 4 B.C.–65 A.D.): Stoic philosopher from Spain; tutor of Nero; author of noble moral essays of the Stoic spirit, of tragedies (which, though marred by too much rhetoric and too many conceits, had considerable influence on the early modern drama of Europe), and of the *Apocolocyntōsis* ("Pumpkinification"), a brilliantly witty, though sometimes cruel, prosimetric satire on the death and deification of the emperor Claudius.

Petronius (exact identity and dates uncertain, but probably Titus Petrōnius Arbiter, d. 65 A.D.): Neronian consular and courtier; author of the *Satyricon,* a satiric, prosimetric novel of sorts, famous for its depiction of the nouveau-riche freedman Trimalchio and his extravagant dinner-parties.

Quintilian (Mārcus Fabius Quīntiliānus, ca. 35–95 A.D.): teacher and author of the *Īnstitūtiō Ōrātōria,* a famous pedagogical work which discusses the entire education of a person who is to become an orator; a great admirer of Cicero's style and a critic of the rhetorical excesses of his own age.

Martial (Mārcus Valerius Mārtiālis, 45–104 A.D.): famed for his more than 1,500 witty epigrams and for the satirical twist which he so often gave to them. As he himself says, his work may not be great literature but people do enjoy it.

Pliny (Gāius Plīnius Caecilius Secundus, ca. 62–113 A.D.): a conscientious public figure, who is now best known for his *Epistulae,* letters which reveal both the bright and the seamy sides of Roman life during this imperial period.

Tacitus (Pūblius Cornēlius Tacitus, 55–117 A.D.): most famous as a satirical, pro-senatorial historian of the period from the death of Augustus to the death of Domitian.

Juvenal (Decimus Iūnius Iuvenālis, ca. 55–post 127 A.D.): a relentless, intensely rhetorical satirist of the evils of his times, who concludes that the

only thing for which one can pray is a **mēns sāna in corpore sānō** (*a sound mind in a sound body*). His satires inspired Dr. Samuel Johnson's *London* and *The Vanity of Human Wishes* and the whole conception of caustic, "Juvenalian" satire.

THE ARCHAISING PERIOD. The mid- to late 2nd century may be distinguished as an archaizing period, in which a taste developed for the vocabulary and style of early Latin and for the incorporation of diction from vulgar Latin; characteristic authors of the period were the orator Fronto and the antiquarian Aulus Gellius, known for his miscellaneous essays *Noctēs Atticae* ("Nights in Attica").

THE PATRISTIC PERIOD (Late 2nd Cen.–5th Cen.)

The name of the Patristic Period comes from the fact that most of the vital literature was the work of the Christian leaders, or fathers (**patrēs**), among whom were Tertullian, Cyprian, Lactantius, Jerome, Ambrose, and Augustine. These men had been well educated; they were familiar with, and frequently fond of, the best classical authors; many of them had even been teachers or lawyers before going into service of the Church. At times the classical style was deliberately employed to impress the pagans, but more and more the concern was to reach the common people (**vulgus**) with the Christian message. Consequently, it is not surprising to see vulgar Latin re-emerging[26] as an important influence in the literature of the period. St. Jerome in his letters is essentially Ciceronian, but in his Latin edition of the Bible, the *Vulgate* (383–405 A.D.), he uses the language of the people. Similarly St. Augustine, though formerly a teacher and a great lover of the Roman classics, was willing to use any idiom that would reach the people (**ad ūsum vulgī**) and said that it did not matter if the barbarians conquered Rome provided they were Christian.

THE MEDIEVAL PERIOD (6th–14th Cens.)

During the first three centuries of the Medieval Period, vulgar Latin underwent rapid changes[27] and, reaching the point when it could no longer be called Latin, it became this or that Romance language according to the locality.

---

[26] Vulgar Latin has already been mentioned as the language of the common people. Its roots are in the early period. In fact, the language of Plautus has much in common with this later vulgar Latin, and we know that throughout the Golden and the Silver Ages vulgar Latin lived on as the colloquial idiom of the people but was kept distinct from the literary idiom of the texts and the polished conversation of those periods.

[27] E.g., the loss of most declensional endings and the increased use of prepositions; extensive employment of auxiliary verbs; anarchy in the uses of the subjunctive and the indicative.

On the other hand, Latin, the literary idiom more or less modified by the *Vulgate* and other influences, continued throughout the Middle Ages as the living language of the Church and of the intellectual world. Though varying considerably in character and quality, it was an international language, and Medieval Latin literature is sometimes called "European" in contrast to the earlier "national Roman." In this Medieval Latin was written a varied and living literature (religious works, histories, anecdotes, romances, dramas, sacred and secular poetry), examples of which are included below, in the excerpt from the 7th century writer Isidore of Seville (in Ch. 29) and selections from other authors in the *Locī Antīquī.* The long life of Latin is attested in the early 14th century by the facts that Dante composed in Latin the political treatise *Dē Monarchiā,* that he wrote in Latin his *Dē Vulgārī Ēloquentiā* to justify his use of the vernacular Italian for literature, and that in Latin pastoral verses he rejected the exhortation to give up the vernacular, in which he was writing the *Divine Comedy,* and compose something in Latin.[28]

THE PERIOD FROM THE RENAISSANCE (ca. 15th Cen.) TO THE PRESENT

Because of Petrarch's new-found admiration of Cicero, Renaissance scholars scorned Medieval Latin and turned to Cicero in particular as the canon of perfection. Although this return to the elegant Ciceronian idiom was prompted by great affection and produced brilliant effects, it was an artificial movement which made Latin somewhat imitative and static compared with the spontaneous, living language which it had been during the Middle Ages. However, Latin continued to be effectively employed well into the modern period,[29] and the ecclesiastical strain is still very much alive (despite its de-emphasis in the early 1960s) as the language of the Roman Catholic Church and seminaries. Furthermore, the rediscovery of the true, humanistic spirit of the ancient Latin and Greek literatures and the fresh attention to literary discipline and form as found in the classics proved very beneficial to the native literature of the new era.

The purpose of this abbreviated outline has been to provide some sense of the unbroken sweep of Latin literature from the 3rd century B.C. down to our own times. Besides enjoying its own long and venerable history, Latin literature has also inspired, schooled, and enriched our own English and other occidental literatures to a degree beyond easy assessment. Add to this

---

[28] At the same time, by token of Dante's success and that of others in the use of the vernacular languages, it must be admitted that Latin had begun to wage a losing battle.
[29] For instance, note its use by Erasmus and Sir Thomas More in the 16th century, by Milton, Bacon, and Newton in the 17th century, and by botanists, classical scholars, and poets of the later centuries.

the wide influence of the Latin language itself as outlined above and you can hardly escape the conclusion that Latin is dead only in a technical sense of the word, and that even a limited knowledge of Latin is a great asset to anyone who works with or is interested in English and the Romance languages and literatures.

THE ALPHABET AND PRONUNCIATION

The forms of the letters which you see on this printed page are centuries old. They go back through the earliest Italian printed books of the 15th century[30] and through the finest manuscripts of the 12th and 11th centuries to the firm, clear Carolingian bookhand of the 9th century as perfected under the inspiration of the Carolingian Renaissance by the monks of St. Martin's at Tours in France. These monks developed the small letters from beautiful clear semi-uncials, which in turn lead us back to the uncials[31] and square capitals of the Roman Empire. Today we are in the habit of distinguishing the Roman alphabet from the Greek, but the fact is that the Romans learned to write from the Etruscans, who in turn had learned to write from Greek colonists who had settled in the vicinity of Naples during the 8th century B.C. Actually, therefore, the Roman alphabet is simply one form of the Greek alphabet. But the Greeks were themselves debtors in this matter, for, at an early but still undetermined date, they had received their alphabet from a Semitic source, the Phoenicians.[32] And finally the early Semites appear to have been inspired by Egyptian hieroglyphs. This brief history of the forms of the letters which you see in our books today provides one more illustration of our indebtedness to antiquity.

The Roman alphabet was like ours except that it lacked the letters **j** and **w**. Furthermore, the letter **v** originally stood for both the sound of the vowel

---

[30] Called "incunabula" because they were made in the "cradle days" of printing. The type is called "Roman" to distinguish it from the "black-letter" type which was used in northern Europe (cp. the German type). The Italian printers based their Roman type on that of the finest manuscripts of the period, those written for the wealthy, artistic, exacting Renaissance patrons. The scribes of those manuscripts, seeking the most attractive kind of script with which to please such patrons, found it in manuscripts written in the best Carolingian book-hand.

[31] The uncial letters are similar to the square capitals except that the sharp corners of the angular letters have been rounded so that they can be written with greater rapidity. An illustration can be found in Webster's *Collegiate Dictionary*, entry *uncial*.

[32] The 22 letters of the Phoenician alphabet represented only consonant sounds. The Greeks showed their originality in using some of these letters to designate vowel sounds.

Portrait of a young woman with stilus and tabella, fresco from Pompeii
Museo Archeologico Nazionale, Naples, Italy

u and the sound of the consonant w.[33] Not till the second century of our era
did the rounded u-form appear, but for convenience both v and u are em-
ployed in the Latin texts of most modern editions. The letter k was rarely

[33] Note that our letter w is simply double u of the v-shaped variety.

used, and then only before **a**, in a very few words. The letters y³⁴ and z were introduced toward the end of the Republic to be used in spelling words of Greek origin.

The following tables indicate approximately the sounds of Latin and how the letters were used by Romans of the classical period to represent those sounds (there are several differences of pronunciation in medieval and ecclesiastical Latin).

Vowels

Vowels in Latin had only two possible pronunciations, long and short. Long vowels were generally held about twice as long as short vowels (cf. half notes to quarter notes in music) and are marked in this book, as in most beginning texts (though not in the actual classical texts), with a "macron" or "long mark" (e.g., **ā**); vowels without a macron are short. Students should regard macrons as part of the spelling of a word, since the differences of pronunciation they indicate are often crucial to meaning (e.g., **liber** is a noun meaning *book,* while **līber** is an adjective meaning *free*). The pronunciations are approximately as follows:

Long	Short
ā as in *father:* **dās, cārā**	**a** as in *Dinah:* **dat, casa**
ē as in *they:* **mē, sēdēs**	**e** as in *pet:* **et, sed**
ī as in *machine:* **hīc, sīca**	**i** as in *pin:* **hic, sicca**
ō as in *clover:* **ōs, mōrēs**	**o** as in *orb, off:* **os, mora**
ū as in *rude:* **tū, sūmō**	**u** as in *put:* **tum, sum**

y, either short or long, as in French **tu** or German **über**

Diphthongs

Latin has the following six diphthongs, combinations of two vowel sounds that were collapsed together into a single syllable:

ae as *ai* in *aisle:* **cārae, saepe**
au as *ou* in *house:* **aut, laudō**
ei as in *reign:* **deinde**
eu as Latin **e** + **u**, pronounced rapidly as a single syllable: **seu.**
  The sound is not found in English and is rare in Latin.
oe as *oi* in *oil:* **coepit, proelium**
ui as in Latin **u** + **i**, spoken as a single syllable like Spanish **muy** (or like Eng. *gooey,* pronounced quickly as a single syllable). This diphthong occurs only in **huius, cuius, huic, cui, hui.** Elsewhere the two letters are spoken separately as in **fu-it, frūctu-ī.**

---

³⁴ This was really Greek **u**, upsilon (Y), a vowel with a sound intermediate between **u** and **i**, as in French **u.**

Consonants

Latin consonants had essentially the same sounds as the English consonants with the following exceptions:

bs and **bt** were pronounced *ps* and *pt* (e.g., **urbs, obtineō**); otherwise Latin **b** had the same sound as our letter (e.g., **bibēbant**).

c was always hard as in *can,* never soft as in *city:* **cum, cīvis, facilis.**

g was always hard as in *get,* never soft as in *gem:* **glōria, gerō.** When it appeared before **n,** the letter **g** represented a nasalized *ng* sound as in *hangnail:* **magnus.**

h was a breathing sound, as in English, only less harshly pronounced: **hic, haec**

i (which also represented a vowel) usually functioned as a consonant with the sound of *y* as in *yes* when used before a vowel at the beginning of a word (**iūstus** = yustus); between two vowels within a word it served in double capacity: as the vowel *i* forming a diphthong with the preceding vowel, and as the consonant *y* (**reiectus** = rei-yectus, **maior** = mai-yor, **cuius** = cui-yus); otherwise it was usually a vowel. This so-called "consonantal" **i** regularly appears in English derivatives as a *j* (a letter added to the alphabet in the Middle Ages); hence **maior** = *major,* **Iūlius** = *Julius.*

m had the sound it has in English, pronounced with the lips closed: **monet.** There is some evidence, however, that in at least certain instances final **-m** (i.e., **-m** at the end of a word), following a vowel, was pronounced with the lips open, producing a nasalization of the preceding vowel: **tum, etiam.**

q, as in English, is always followed by consonantal **u,** the combination having the sound *kw:* **quid, quoque.**

r was trilled; the Romans called it the **littera canīna,** because its sound suggested the snarling of a dog: **Rōma, cūrāre.**

s was always voiceless as in *see,* never voiced as in our word *ease:* **sed, posuissēs, mīsistis.**

t always had the sound of *t* as in *tired,* never of *sh* as in *nation* or *ch* as in *mention:* **taciturnitās, nātiōnem, mentiōnem.**

v had the sound of our *w:* **vīvō** = wīwō, **vīnum** = wīnum.

x had the sound of *ks* as in *axle,* not of *gz* as in *exert:* **mixtum, exerceō.**

ch represented Greek *chi* and had the sound of *ckh* in *block head,* not of *ch* in *church:* **chorus, Archilochus.**

ph represented Greek *phi* and had the sound of *ph* in *uphill,* not the *f* sound in our pronunciation of *philosophy:* **philosophia.**

th represented Greek *theta* and had the sound of *th* in *hot house,* not of *th* in *thin* or *the:* **theātrum.**

The Romans quite appropriately pronounced double consonants as two separate consonants; we in our haste usually render them as a single conso-

nant. For instance, the **rr** in the Latin word **currant** sounded something like the two **r**'s in *the cur ran* (except that in Latin each **r** was trilled); and the **tt** in **admittent** sounded like the two *t*'s in *admit ten*.

Syllables

In Latin as in English, a word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs.

Syllabification: In dividing a word into syllables:

1. Two contiguous vowels or a vowel and a diphthong are separated: **dea, de-a; deae, de-ae.**

2. A single consonant between two vowels goes with the second vowel: **amīcus, a-mī-cus.**

3. When two or more consonants stand between two vowels, generally only the last consonant goes with the second vowel: **mittō, mit-tō; servāre, ser-vā-re; cōnsūmptus, cōn-sūmp-tus.** However, a stop (**p, b, t, d, c, g**) + a liquid (**l, r**) generally count as a single consonant and go with the following vowel:[35] **patrem, pa-trem; castra, cas-tra.** Also counted as single consonants are **qu** and the aspirates **ch, ph, th,** which should never be separated in syllabification: **architectus, ar-chi-tec-tus; loquācem, lo-quā-cem.**

Syllable quantity: A syllable is long *by nature* if it contains a long vowel or a diphthong; a syllable is long *by position* if it contains a short vowel followed by two or more consonants[36] or by **x**, which is a double consonant (= *ks*). Otherwise a syllable is short; again, the difference is rather like that between a musical half-note and a quarter-note.

Syllables long by nature (here underlined): **lau-dō, Rō-ma, a-mī-cus.**

Syllables long by position (underlined): **ser-vat, sa-pi-en-ti-a, ax-is** (= *ak-sis*).

Examples with all long syllables, whether by nature or by position, underlined: **lau-dā-te, mo-ne-ō, sae-pe, cōn-ser-vā-tis, pu-el-lā-rum.**

Even in English, syllables have this sort of temporal quantity, i.e., some syllables take longer to pronounce than others (consider the word "enough," with its very short, clipped first syllable, and the longer second syllable), but it is not a phenomenon we think much about. The matter is important in Latin, however, for at least two reasons: first, syllable quantity was a major determinant of the rhythm of Latin poetry, as you will learn later in your

---

[35] But in poetry the consonants may be separated according to the rule for two consonants.

[36] But remember that a stop + a liquid as well as **qu** and the aspirates **ch, ph,** and **th** regularly count as a single consonant: e.g., **pa-trem, quo-que.**

study of the language; and, of more immediate importance, syllable quantity determined the position of a word's stress accent, as explained below.

Accent

Words in Latin, like those in English, were pronounced with extra emphasis on one syllable (or more than one, in the case of very long words); the placement of this "stress accent" in Latin (unlike English) followed these strict and simple rules:

1. In a word of two syllables the accent always falls on the first syllable: **sér-vo, saé-pe, ní-hil.**

2. In a word of three or more syllables (a) the accent falls on the next to last syllable (sometimes called the "penult"), if that syllable is long (**ser-vá-re, cōn-sér-vat, for-tú-na**); (b) otherwise, the accent falls on the syllable before that (the "antepenult": **mó-ne-ō, pá-tri-a, pe-cú-ni-a, vó-lu-cris**).

Because these rules for accentuation are so regular, accent marks (as opposed to macrons) are not ordinarily included when writing Latin; in this text, however, accents are provided in both the "paradigms" (sample declensions and conjugations) and the chapter vocabularies, as an aid to correct pronunciation.

Although oral-aural communication and conversational skills are sometimes—and unfortunately—given little stress in the Latin classroom, nevertheless a "correct" or at least a consistent pronunciation is essential to the mastery of any language. An ability to pronounce Latin words and sentences aloud according to the rules provided in this introduction will also enable you to "pronounce" correctly in your mind and, as you think of a word, to spell it correctly.

As you begin your study of Latin, remember that it did not merely consist of written texts to be silently read (in fact, the Romans themselves nearly always read aloud!), but it was for centuries a spoken language—a language learned and spoken by Roman boys and girls, in fact, just as your own native language was acquired and spoken by you in your childhood, and not only by famous orators, poets, and politicians. You should apply all four language learning skills in your study every day, listening and speaking as well as reading and writing; always pronounce paradigms and vocabulary items aloud, and most especially *read aloud every Latin sentence or passage you encounter,* and always read *for comprehension,* before attempting a translation into English.

MAPS

Map I: ANCIENT ITALY

Map by Richard A. LaFleur and Thomas R. Elliott, using materials provided by the Ancient World Mapping Center (http://www.unc.edu/awmc)

Map 2: THE ROMAN EMPIRE

Map by Richard A. LaFleur and Thomas R. Elliott, using materials provided by the Ancient World Mapping Center (http://www.unc.edu/awmc)

PONTUS EUXINUS

Heraclea

Philippopolis

Hebrus

Bosphorus

Scupi

Byzantium

Nicomedia

THRACE

Axius

ILLYRICUM

Propontis

Nicaea

Ancyra

Dyrrhachium

Philippi

BITHYNIA

Sangarius

MACEDONIA

Amphipolis

Cyzicus

Rhyndacus

Germa

Apollonia

Pella

Troia / Ilium

Mecesius

ASIA

Beroea

Thessalonica

Hellespontus

AEOLIS

Hermus

Caesarea

Peneus

Larissa

Lesbos

Pergamum

GRAECIA

Demetrias

AEGAEUM

Smyrna

Sardis

Apamea

Corcyra

Achelous

Artemisium

MARE

IONIA

Sagalassos

Thermopylae

EUBOEA

Chios

Ephesus

Laodicea

IONIUM

Delphi

Eretria

Samos

Priene

MINOR

MARE

Plataeae

ATTICA

Marathon

Icaria

Miletus

Perge

Side

Patrae

Athenae

Corinthus

Salamis

Delos

Halicarnassus

PELOPONNESUS

Troezen

Seriphos

Olympia

LACEDAEMON

Cos

Chidos

Xanthus

Sparta

Rhodus

Gytheum

Thera

CRETICUM

MARE

N

W   E

Cydonea

Gnosos (Cnosos)

S

Creta

Gortyna

0   50   100   150   200 Miles

0   50   100   150   200   250   300 Kilometers

Map 3: ANCIENT GREECE AND THE AEGEAN

Map by Richard A. LaFleur and Thomas R. Elliott, using materials provided by the Ancient World Mapping Center (http://www.unc.edu/awmc)

1

Verbs; First and Second Conjugations: Present Infinitive, Indicative, and Imperative Active; Translating

VERBS

One might properly consider the verb (from Lat. **verbum,** *word*), which describes the subject's activity or state of being, to be the most important word in a sentence, and so we may best begin our study of Latin with a look at that part of speech (the other parts of speech in Latin are the same as those in English: nouns, pronouns, adjectives, adverbs, prepositions, conjunctions, interjections).

In Latin as in English, verbs exhibit the following five characteristics:

PERSON (Lat. **persōna**): who is the subject, i.e., who performs (or, in the passive, receives) the action, from the speaker's point of view; 1st person = the speaker(s), *I, we;* 2nd = the person(s) spoken to, *you;* 3rd = the person(s) spoken about, *he, she, it, they.*

NUMBER (**numerus**): how many subjects, singular or plural.

TENSE (**tempus,** *time*): the time of the action; Latin has six tenses, present, future, imperfect, perfect (or present perfect), future perfect, and pluperfect (or past perfect).

MOOD (**modus,** *manner*): the manner of indicating the action or state of being of the verb; like English, Latin has the indicative (which "indicates" facts) and the imperative (which orders actions), introduced in this chapter, and the subjunctive (which describes, in particular, hypothetical or potential actions), introduced in Ch. 28.

VOICE (**vōx**): an indication, with transitive verbs (those that can take direct objects), of whether the subject performs the action (the active voice) or receives it (passive).

CONJUGATION

To conjugate (Lat. **coniugāre,** *join together*) a verb is to list together all its forms, according to these five variations of person, number, tense, mood, and voice. If asked to conjugate the English verb *to praise* in the present tense and the active voice of the indicative mood, you would say:

	Singular	**Plural**
1st person	I praise	we praise
2nd person	you praise	you praise
3rd person	he (she, it) praises	they praise

The person and the number of five of these six forms cannot be determined in English without the aid of pronouns *I, you, we, they.* Only in the third person singular can you omit the pronoun *he (she, it)* and still make clear by the special ending of the verb that *praises* is third person and singular.

PERSONAL ENDINGS

What English can accomplish in only one of the six forms, Latin can do in all six by means of "personal endings," which indicate distinctly the person, the number, and the voice of the verb. Since these personal endings will be encountered at every turn, the time taken to memorize them at this point will prove an excellent investment. For the active voice they are:

Singular

1st person	**-ō** or **-m,** which corresponds to *I.*
2nd person	**-s,** which corresponds to *you.*
3rd person	**-t,** which corresponds to *he, she, it.*

Plural

1st person	**-mus,** which corresponds to *we.*
2nd person	**-tis,** which corresponds to *you.*
3rd person	**-nt,** which corresponds to *they.*

The next step is to find a verbal "stem" to which these endings can be added.

PRESENT INFINITIVE[1] ACTIVE AND PRESENT STEM

The present active infinitives of the model verbs used in this book for the first and second conjugations are respectively:

laudāre, *to praise*   monēre, *to advise*

You see that **-āre** characterizes the first conjugation and **-ēre** characterizes the second.

Now from the infinitives drop the **-re,** which is the actual infinitive ending, and you have the "present stems":

laudā-   monē-

To this present stem add the personal endings (with the few modifications noted below), and you are ready to read or to say something in Latin about the present: e.g., **laudā-s,** *you praise;* **monē-mus,** *we advise.*

This leads to the first of many paradigms. "Paradigm" (pronounced pár-adime) derives from Greek **paradeigma,** which means *pattern, example;* and paradigms are used at numerous points throughout the chapters and in the Appendix to provide summaries of forms according to convenient patterns. Of course, the ancient Romans learned the many inflected forms from their parents and from daily contacts with other people by the direct method, as we ourselves learn English today. However, since we lack this natural Latin environment and since we usually begin the study of Latin at a relatively late age under the exigencies of time, the analytical approach through paradigms, though somewhat artificial and uninspiring, is generally found to be the most efficacious method.

In the process of memorizing all paradigms, be sure always to say them *aloud,* for this gives you the help of two senses, both sight and sound; speak-

---

[1] The *infinitive* (**īnfīnītus, īnfīnītīvus,** *not limited*) simply gives the basic idea of the verb; its form is "not limited" by person and number, though it does indicate tense and voice.

ing and listening to the language, to its basic sounds and rhythms, will be an enormous aid to acquiring mastery.

PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF
Laudō & Moneō

Singular

1. laúdō, *I praise, am praising, do praise*   móneō, *I advise,* etc.
2. laúdās, *you praise, are praising, do praise*   mónēs, *you advise,* etc.
3. laúdat, *he (she, it) praises, is praising,*   mónet, *he (she, it) advises,*
   does praise   etc.

Plural

1. laudámus, *we praise, are praising, do praise*   monḗmus, *we advise,* etc.
2. laudátis, *you praise, are praising, do praise*   monḗtis, *you advise,* etc.
3. laúdant, *they praise, are praising, do praise*   mónent, *they advise,* etc.

Note that Latin has only these present active indicative forms, and so simple or progressive or emphatic translations are possible, depending on context; e.g., **mē laudant,** *they praise me* or *they are praising me* or *they do praise me.*

Remember that the accent marks are provided in the paradigm only for convenience; they follow the strict rules for accentuation explained in the Introduction, and need not be included in your own conjugation of Latin verbs (unless you are asked to do so by your instructor).

The macrons, however, must be included, and the vowel sounds they indicate must be taken into account in memorizing the paradigm and in conjugating other first and second conjugation verbs. Notice that the stem vowel has no macron in certain forms (e.g., **moneō, laudant**); you should learn the following rule, which will make it easier to account for macrons that seem to disappear and reappear arbitrarily:

> Vowels that are normally long are usually shortened when they occur immediately before another vowel (hence **moneō** instead of *monēō[2]),
> before -m, -r, or -t at the end of a word (hence **laudat,** not *laudāt), or
> before nt or nd in any position (hence **laudant**).

In the case of first conjugation, or -ā-, verbs (by contrast with the second conjugation, -ē- verbs), the stem vowel is not merely shortened but disappears entirely in the first person singular, through contraction with the final -ō (hence **laudō,** not *laudāō).

---

[2] The asterisk here and elsewhere in this book indicates a form not actually occurring in classical Latin.

PRESENT ACTIVE IMPERATIVE

The imperative mood is used for giving commands; the singular imperative form is identical to the present stem and the plural imperative (employed when addressing two or more persons) is formed simply by adding -te to the stem:

2nd person singular	laúdã, *praise!*	móne, *advise!*
2nd person plural	laudáte, *praise!*	monéte, *advise!*

E.g., **Moné me!** *Advise me!* **Serváte me!** *Save me!*

READING AND TRANSLATING LATIN

The following simple rules will assist you with translating the sentences and the reading passage in this chapter; further assistance will be provided in subsequent chapters. First, always read each sentence from beginning to end aloud; read for comprehension, thinking about the meanings of the individual words and the likely sense of the whole sentence. The verb often comes last in a Latin sentence: remember that if its ending is either first or second person, you already know the subject ("I," "we," or "you"); if the verb is third person, look for a noun that might be the subject (frequently the first word in the sentence). Subject-object-verb (SOV) is a common pattern. Now, once you have memorized the paradigms above and the vocabulary in the following list, and practiced conjugating some of the verbs in the list, try your hand at reading and translating the sentences and short passage that conclude the chapter. **BONAM FORTÜNAM!** (*Good luck!*)

VOCABULARY

Remember, in memorizing the vocabularies always be sure to say all the Latin words *aloud* as you learn the meanings. N.B.: Like an English verb, a Latin verb has "principal parts" (usually four, vs. three in English) which must be memorized in order to conjugate the verb in all its forms. As you will see from the following list, the first principal part is the first person singular present active indicative, and the second principal part is the present active infinitive; the function of the remaining principal parts will be explained in subsequent chapters.

me, pronoun, *me, myself*
quid, pronoun, *what* (quid pro quo)
níhil, noun, *nothing* (nihilism, annihilate)

nōn, adverb, *not*

saépe, adverb, *often*

sī, conjunction, *if*

ámō, amáre, amávī, amátum, *to love, like;* **amábō tē,** idiom, *please* (lit., *I will love you*) (amatory, Amanda)

cógitō, cōgitáre, cōgitávī, cōgitátum, *to think, ponder, consider, plan* (cogitate)

débeō, dēbére, débuī, débitum, *to owe; ought, must* (debt, debit, due, duty)

dō, dáre, dédī, dátum, *to give, offer* (date, data)

érrō, erráre, errávī, errátum, *to wander; err, go astray, make a mistake, be mistaken* (erratic, errant, erroneous, error, aberration)

laúdō, laudáre, laudávī, laudátum, *to praise* (laud, laudable, laudatory)

móneō, monére, mónuī, mónitum, *to remind, advise, warn* (admonish, admonition, monitor, monument, monster, premonition)

sálveō, salvére, *to be well, be in good health;* **sálvē, salvéte,** *hello, greetings* (salvation, salver, salvage)

sérvō, serváre, servávī, servátum, *to preserve, save, keep, guard* (observe, preserve, reserve, reservoir)

cōnsérvō, cōnserváre, cōnservávī, cōnservátum (con-servō), a stronger form of **servō,** *to preserve, conserve, maintain* (conservative, conservation)

térreō, terrére, térruī, térritum, *to frighten, terrify* (terrible, terrific, terrify, terror, terrorist, deter)

váleō, valére, váluī, valitúrum, *to be strong, have power, be well;* **válē (valéte),** *good-bye, farewell* (valid, invalidate, prevail, prevalent, valedictory)

vídeō, vidére, vídī, vísum, *to see; observe, understand* (provide, evident, view, review, revise, revision, television)

vócō, vocáre, vocávī, vocátum, *to call, summon* (vocation, advocate, vocabulary, convoke, evoke, invoke, provoke, revoke)

SENTENTIAE (SENTENCES)[3]

1. Labor mē vocat. (**labor,** a noun, and one of hundreds of Latin words that come into English with their spelling unchanged; such words are often not defined in the chapters but may be found in the end Vocab., p. 470–90 below.)

2. Monē mē, amábō tē, sī errō.

3. Festīnā lentē. (a saying of Augustus.—**festīnō, festīnáre,** *to hasten, make haste.*—**lentē,** adv., *slowly.*)

4. Laudās mē; culpant mē. (**culpō, culpáre,** *to blame, censure.*)

5. Saepe peccámus. (**peccō, peccáre,** *to sin.*)

---

[3] All these sentences are based on ancient Roman originals but most of them had to be considerably adapted to meet the exigencies of this first chapter.

6. Quid dēbēmus cōgitāre?
7. Cōnservāte mē!
8. Rūmor volat. (**volō, volāre,** *to fly.*)
9. Mē nōn amat.
10. Nihil mē terret.
11. Apollō mē saepe servat.
12. Salvēte!—quid vidētis? Nihil vidēmus.
13. Saepe nihil cōgitās.
14. Bis dās, sī cito dās. (**bis,** adv., *twice.*—**cito,** adv., *quickly.*—What do you suppose this ancient proverb actually means?)
15. Sī valēs, valeō. (A friendly sentiment with which Romans often commenced a letter.)
16. What does he see?
17. They are giving nothing.
18. You ought not to praise me.
19. If I err, he often warns me.
20. If you love me, save me, please!

THE POET HORACE CONTEMPLATES AN INVITATION

Maecēnās et Vergilius mē hodiē vocant. Quid cōgitāre dēbeō? Quid dē-beō respondēre? Sī errō, mē saepe monent et culpant; sī nōn errō, mē laudant. Quid hodiē cōgitāre dēbeō?

(For Horace, and the other authors cited in these chapter reading passages, review the Introd.; the patron Maecenas and the poet Virgil were both friends of Horace, and this brief passage is very freely adapted from autobiographical references in his poetry.—**et,** conj., *and.*—**hodiē,** adv., *today.*—**respondeō, respondēre,** *to reply, respond.*)

Roman portrait medal of Horace
Museo Nazionale Romano delle Terme
Rome, Italy

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

Salvēte! Here and at the close of each subsequent chapter, you will find a variety of Latin "tidbits," for your pleasure and edification! (**Gaudium,** by the way, is the Lat. noun for *joy* or just plain *fun,* and **ūtilis** is an adj. meaning *useful.*) To start with, here is some "first day" conversational Latin:

Salvē, discipula or **discipule!** *Hello, student!* (The *-a/-e* variants distinguish between female and male students respectively.)

Salvēte, discipulae et discipulī! *Hello, students!* (Feminine and masculine plural.)

Salvē, magister or **magistra!** *Greetings, teacher!* (Again, masculine or feminine.)

Valēte, discipulī et discipulae! Valē, magister (magistra)! *Good-bye, students . . . ,* etc.

Quid est nōmen tibi? *What's your name?*

Nōmen mihi est "Mark." *My name is Mark.* (Or, better yet, how about a Latin name: **nōmen mihi est "Mārcus."**)

Remember that **labor** in sentence 1 above is just one of a great many Latin words that come directly into English without any alteration in spelling? Well, **rūmor** in sentence 8 is another, and so is **videō** in the Vocabulary. **Amō,** however, does not mean "bullets," nor is **amat** "a small rug," so beware of . . . **iocī terribilēs** (*terrible jokes*): **valēte!**

Model of Rome in the 4th century A.D.
Museo della Civiltà Romana, Rome, Italy

2

Nouns and Cases; First Declension; Agreement of Adjectives; Syntax

NOUNS AND CASES

As a Latin verb has various inflections or terminations which signal its particular role in a given sentence, so a Latin noun (from **nōmen,** *name*) has various terminations to show whether it is used as the subject or the object of a verb, whether it indicates the idea of possession, and so on. The various inflected forms of a noun are called "cases," the more common uses and meanings of which are catalogued below; you will encounter several other case uses in subsequent chapters, all of which you must be able to identify and name, so it is advisable to begin now keeping a list for each case, with definitions and examples, in your notebook or computer file. For illustrative purposes it will be convenient to refer to the following English sentences,[1] which later in the chapter will be translated into Latin for further analysis.

A. The poet is giving the girl large roses (*or* is giving large roses to the girl).
B. The girls are giving the poet's roses to the sailors.
C. Without money the girls' country (*or* the country of the girls) is not strong.

---

[1] These sentences have been limited to the material available in Chs. 1 and 2 so that they may readily be understood when turned into Latin.

Nominative Case   The Romans used the nominative case most commonly to indicate the *subject* of a finite verb; e.g., *poet* in sentence A and *girls* in sentence B.

Genitive Case   When one noun was used to modify[2] another, the Romans put the modifying, or limiting, noun in the genitive case, as we do in such instances as *poet's* in sentence B and *girls'* in sentence C. One idea very commonly conveyed by the genitive is *possession* and, although other categories besides the genitive of possession are distinguished, the meaning of the genitive can generally be ascertained by translating it with the preposition *of.* A Latin noun in the genitive case usually follows the noun it modifies.

Dative Case   The Romans used the dative to mark the person or thing indirectly affected by the action of the verb, as *girl* (*to the girl*) in sentence A and *to the sailors* in B; both of these nouns are *indirect objects,* the most common use of the dative. In most instances the sense of the dative can be determined by using *to* or *for* with the noun.

Accusative Case   The Romans used the accusative case to indicate the *direct object* of the action of the verb, the person or thing directly affected by the action of the verb. It can also be used for the object of certain prepositions: e.g., **ad,** *to;* **in,** *into;* **post,** *after, behind.*[3] In sentences A and B, *roses* is the direct object of *is* (*are*) *giving.*

Ablative Case   The ablative case we sometimes call the adverbial[4] case because it was the case used by the Romans when they wished to modify, or limit, the verb by such ideas as *means* ("by what"), *agent* ("by whom"), *accompaniment* ("with whom"), *manner* ("how"), *place* ("where; from which"), *time* ("when or within which"). The Romans used the ablative sometimes with a preposition and sometimes without one. There is no simple rule of thumb for translating this complex case. However, you will find little difficulty when a Latin preposition is used (**ab,** *by, from;* **cum,** *with;* **dē** and **ex,** *from;* **in,** *in, on*); and in general you can associate with the ablative such English preposi-

---

[2] Modify derives its meaning from Latin **modus** in the sense of "limit"; it means to limit one word by means of another. For example, in sentence B *roses* by itself gives a general idea but the addition of *poet's* modifies, or limits, *roses* so that only a specific group is in mind. The addition of *red* would have modified, or limited, *roses* still further by excluding white and yellow ones.

[3] A preposition is a word placed before (**prae-positus**) a noun or pronoun, the "object of the preposition," to indicate its relationship to another word in a sentence; prepositional phrases can function adjectivally ("a man *of wisdom*") or adverbially ("he came *from Rome*").

[4] Latin **ad verbum** means *to* or *near the verb;* an adverb modifies a verb, an adjective, or another adverb.

tions as *by, with, from, in, on, at.*[5] The more complex uses will be taken up at convenient points in the following chapters.

Vocative Case

The Romans used the vocative case, sometimes with the interjection[6] Ō, to address (**vocāre**, *to call*) a person or thing directly; e.g., (Ō) **Caesar**, (*O*) *Caesar;* Ō **fortūna**, *O fortune.* In modern punctuation the vocative (or noun of *direct address*) is separated from the rest of the sentence by commas. With one major exception to be studied in Ch. 3, the vocative has the same form as that of the nominative, and so it is ordinarily not listed in the paradigms.

FIRST DECLENSION[7] *— NOUN AND ADJECTIVE*

The listing of all the cases of a noun—or an adjective—is called a "declension." Just as we conjugate verbs by adding endings to a stem, so we "decline" nouns and adjectives by adding endings to a "base." The nominative and genitive singular forms of a noun are provided in the vocabulary entry, which must be completely memorized, and the base is then found by dropping the genitive ending; the procedure for an adjective is similar and will be clarified in Chs. 3–4. The following paradigm, which should be memorized (and remember to practice *aloud!*), illustrates the declension of a noun/adjective phrase, **porta magna,** *the large gate:*

porta, *gate* **Base: port-**	**magna,** *large* **Base: magn-**		**Endings**
Singular			
Nom. pórta	mágna	*the (a)*[8] *large gate*	**-a**
Gen. pórtae	mágnae	*of the large gate*	**-ae**
Dat. pórtae	mágnae	*to/for the large gate*	**-ae**
Acc. pórtam	mágnam	*the large gate*	**-am**
Abl. pórtā	mágnā	*by/with/from,* etc., *the large gate*	**-ā**
Voc. pórta	mágna	*O large gate*	**-a**

[5] For instance: **pecūniā,** *by* or *with money;* **ab puellā,** *by* or *from the girl;* **cum puellā,** *with the girl;* **cum īrā,** *with anger, angrily;* **ab (dē, ex) patriā,** *from the fatherland;* **in patriā,** *in the fatherland;* **in mēnsā,** *on the table;* **ūnā hōrā,** *in one hour.*

[6] Lat. **interiectiō** means, lit., *throwing something in,* i.e., without syntactical connection to the rest of the sentence.

[7] The term *declension* is connected with the verb **dē-clīnāre,** *to lean away from.* The idea of the ancient grammarians was that the other cases "lean away from" the nominative; they deviate from the nominative.

[8] Since classical Latin had no words corresponding exactly to our definite article *the* or our indefinite article *a,* **porta** can be translated as *gate* or *the gate* or *a gate.*

Plural

Nom.	pórtae	mágnae	*the large gates* or *large gates*	**-ae**
Gen.	portắrum	magnắrum	*of the large gates*	**-ārum**
Dat.	pórtīs	mágnīs	*to/for the large gates*	**-īs**
Acc.	pórtās	mágnās	*the large gates*	**-ās**
Abl.	pórtīs	mágnīs	*by/with/from,* etc., *the large gates*	**-īs**
Voc.	pórtae	mágnae	*O large gates*	**-ae**

GENDER OF FIRST DECLENSION = FEMININE

Like English, Latin distinguishes three genders: masculine, feminine, and neuter. While Latin nouns indicating male beings are naturally masculine and those indicating female beings are feminine, the gender of most other nouns was a grammatical concept, not a natural one, and so a noun's gender must simply be memorized as part of the vocabulary entry.

Nouns of the first declension are normally feminine; e.g., **puella**, *girl;* **rosa**, *rose;* **pecūnia**, *money;* **patria**, *country.* A few nouns denoting individuals engaged in what were among the Romans traditionally male occupations are masculine; e.g., **poēta**, *poet;* **nauta**, *sailor;* **agricola**, *farmer* (others not employed in this book are **aurīga**, *charioteer;* **incola**, *inhabitant;* **pīrāta**, *pirate*).

In this book, as a practical procedure the gender of a noun will not be specifically labeled *m., f.,* or *n.* in the notes, if it follows the general rules.

AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES

The normal role of adjectives is to accompany nouns and to modify, or limit, them in size, color, texture, character, and so on; and, like nouns, adjectives are declined. Naturally, therefore, an adjective agrees with its noun in gender, number, and case (an adjective that modifies more than one noun usually agrees in gender with the nearest one, though sometimes the masculine predominates). An adjective (**adiectum**, *set next to, added*) is a word *added* to a noun. As its Latin root meaning also suggests, an adjective was usually positioned next to its noun (except in poetry, where word order is much freer). Most often the adjective followed the noun, a logical arrangement since the person or thing named is generally more important than the attribute; exceptions were adjectives denoting size or number, as well as demonstratives (**hic**, *this;* **ille**, *that*), which normally precede, as do any adjectives which the speaker or writer wishes to emphasize.

SYNTAX

The Greek verb **syntattein** means *to arrange* or, in particular, to draw up an army in orderly array. Similarly, in grammatical terminology "syntax" is the orderly marshaling of words according to the service which they are to perform in a sentence. To explain the syntax of a given noun or adjective, you should state its form, the word on which it most closely depends, and the reason for the form (i.e., its grammatical use or function in the sentence). The sample sentences given above, here translated into Latin, provide some examples. Notice in the subject and verb endings the rule that *a verb must agree with its subject in person and number;* notice too that where a noun ending such as -ae can represent more than one case, word order and context provide necessary clues to a sentence's meaning (hence **puellae** is the indirect object in A, subject in B).

A. Poēta puellae magnās rosās dat.
B. Puellae nautīs rosās poētae dant.
C. Patria puellārum sine pecūniā nōn valet.

The syntax of some of these words can be conveniently stated thus:

Word	Form	Dependence	Reason
Sentence A			
poēta	nom. sg.	dat	subject
puellae	dat. sg.	dat	indirect object
magnās	acc. pl.	rosās	modifies and agrees with noun
Sentence B			
puellae	nom. pl.	dant	subject
nautīs	dat. pl.	dant	indirect object
rosās	acc. pl.	dant	direct object
poētae	gen. sg.	rosās	possession
Sentence C			
pecūniā	abl. sg.	sine	object of preposition

Be ready to explain the syntax of all nouns and adjectives in the sentences and reading passage below.

VOCABULARY

fāma, fāmae, f., *rumor, report; fame, reputation* (famous, defame, infamy)

fōrma, fōrmae, f., *form, shape; beauty* (formal, format, formula, formless, deform, inform, etc.; but not formic, formidable)

fortūna, fortūnae, f., *fortune, luck* (fortunate, unfortunate)

īra, īrae, f., *ire, anger* (irate, irascible; but not irritate)

naúta, naútae, m., *sailor* (nautical)

pátria, pátriae, f., *fatherland, native land, (one's) country* (expatriate, re-patriate)

pecúnia, -ae,[9] f., *money* (pecuniary, impecunious; cp. peculation)

philosóphia, -ae, f. (Greek **philosophia,** *love of wisdom*), *philosophy*

poéna, -ae, f., *penalty, punishment;* **poénās dáre,** idiom, *to pay the penalty* (penal, penalize, penalty, pain, subpoena)

poéta, -ae, m., *poet* (poetry)

pórta, -ae, f., *gate, entrance* (portal, portico, porch, porthole)

puélla, -ae, f., *girl*

rósa, -ae, f., *rose* (rosary, roseate, rosette)

senténtia, -ae, f., *feeling, thought, opinion, vote, sentence* (sententious, sentencing)

víta, -ae, f., *life; mode of life* (vital, vitals, vitality, vitamin, vitalize, devitalize, revitalize)

antíqua, -ae, adjective,[10] *ancient, old-time* (antique, antiquities, antiquated, antiquarian)

mágna, -ae, adj., *large, great; important* (magnify, magnificent, magnate, magnitude, magnanimous)

méa, -ae, adj., *my*

múlta, -ae, adj., *much, many* (multitude, multiply, multiple; multi-, a prefix as in multimillionaire)

túa, -ae, adj., *your,* used when speaking to only one person

et, conjunction, *and; even;* **et . . . et,** *both . . . and*

sed, conj., *but*

Ō, interjection, *O!, Oh!,* commonly used with the vocative

síne, preposition + abl., *without* (sinecure, sans)

est, *is*

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE[11]

1. Salvē, Ō patria! (Plautus.)
2. Fāma et sententia volant. (Virgil.—**volāre,** *to fly, move quickly.*)

---

[9] **pecúnia, -ae** = **pecúnia, pecúniae;** this abbreviated format will be employed in all subsequent entries for regular first decl. nouns.

[10] Given here are the adjectives' nom. and gen. forms, the latter abbreviated as with first decl. nouns; after the masculine and neuter forms are learned in the next two chapters, adj. entries will provide the nom. endings only for all three genders (see, e.g., **bónus, -a, -um** in the Ch. 4 Vocab.).

[11] Sentences of ancient Roman origin. Henceforth, the author of every ancient Latin sentence will be named. An asterisk before an author's name means that the sentence is quoted verbatim. The lack of an asterisk means that the original sentence had to be somewhat altered to bring it into line with the student's limited knowledge of Latin, but the student may be assured that the thought and the expression are those of the ancient author indicated. The specific passage from which each sentence is adapted is identified below, p. 508–10, for students who are interested in the context and wish to do further reading.

3. Dā veniam puellae, amābō tē. (Terence.—**venia, -ae,** *favor, pardon.*)
4. Clēmentia tua multās vītās servat. (Cicero.—**clēmentia, -ae,** *clemency.*)
5. Multam pecūniam dēportat. (Cicero.—**dēportāre,** *to carry away.*)
6. Fortūnam et vītam antīquae patriae saepe laudās sed recūsās. (Horace.—**recūsāre,** *to refuse, reject.*)
7. Mē vītāre turbam iubēs. (*Seneca.—**vītāre,** *to avoid;* do not confuse this verb with the noun **vīta.—turba, -ae,** *crowd, multitude.—**iubēre,** *to order.*)
8. Mē philosophiae dō. (Seneca.)
9. Philosophia est ars vītae. (*Cicero.—**ars,** nom. sg., *art.*)
10. Sānam fōrmam vītae cōnservāte. (Seneca.—**sāna, -ae,** adj., *sound, sane.*)
11. Immodica īra creat īnsāniam. (Seneca.—**immodica, -ae,** adj., *immoderate, excessive.—**creāre,** *to create.—**īnsānia, -ae,** *unsoundness, insanity.*)
12. Quid cōgitās?—dēbēmus īram vītāre. (Seneca.)
13. Nūlla avāritia sine poenā est. (*Seneca.—**nūlla, -ae,** adj., *no.—**avāritia, -ae,** *avarice.*)
14. Mē saevīs catēnīs onerat. (Horace.—**saeva, -ae,** adj., *cruel.—**catēna, -ae,** *chain.—**onerāre,** *to load, oppress.*)
15. Rotam fortūnae nōn timent. (Cicero—**rota, -ae,** *wheel.—**timēre,** *to fear.*)
16. The girls save the poet's life.
17. Without philosophy we often go astray and pay the penalty.
18. If your land is strong, nothing terrifies the sailors and you ought to praise your great fortune.
19. We often see the penalty of anger.
20. The ancient gate is large.

CATULLUS BIDS HIS GIRLFRIEND FAREWELL

Puella mea mē nōn amat. Valē, puella! Catullus obdūrat: poēta puellam nōn amat, fōrmam puellae nōn laudat, puellae rosās nōn dat, et puellam nōn bāsiat! Īra mea est magna! Obdūrō, mea puella—sed sine tē nōn valeō.

(Catullus 8; prose adaptation. For this 1st cen. B.C. poet, see the Introd., and for unadapted excerpts from the original poem, see Ch. 19.—Note the poet's shift from first person, to third, and back to first; what is the intended emotional effect?—**obdūrāre,** *to be firm, tough.—**bāsiāre,** *to kiss.—**tē,** *you.*)

ETYMOLOGY

Note that "etymology" comes from the Greek **etymos,** *true, real,* and **logos,** *word, meaning.* Consequently, the etymology of a word traces the deri-

vation of the word and shows its original meaning. Under this heading will be introduced various items not covered by the derivatives listed in the vocabularies. Each chapter so abounds in such material, however, that complete coverage cannot be attempted.

Pecūnia is connected with **pecus,** *cattle,* just as English *fee* is related to German **Vieh,** *cattle.*

Fortūna derives from **fors,** *chance, accident.*

Explain the meanings of the following English words on the basis of the appropriate Latin words found in the sentences indicated. Further aid, if needed, can be obtained from a good dictionary; *Webster's New World Dictionary* and the *American Heritage Dictionary* are especially helpful with etymologies.

volatile (2)	tenet (10)	onerous (14)
venial (3)	creature (11)	rotary, rotate (15)
turbulent (7)	nullify (13)	obdurate ("Catullus")
insane (10)	concatenation (14)	

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

Salvēte, discipulī et discipulae! From the Vocab.: To do something **sub rosā** is to do it secretly or in confidence (the rose was in antiquity a symbol of secrecy); **aqua vītae,** lit., *the water of life,* is an old Latin phrase for "whiskey"; and a "sinecure" (from **sine + cūra,** *care*) is an office or position that is largely *without responsibility.*

And here's some more conversational Latin:

Quid agis hodiē? *How are you today?*
　Optimē! *Great!*
　Pessimē! *Terrible!*
　Bene! *Good!*
　Satis bene. *So-so* or *Okay.*
　Nōn bene. *Not well.*
　Et tū? *And you?*

Discipulae et discipulī, valēte!

3

Second Declension: Masculine Nouns and Adjectives; Apposition; Word Order

THE SECOND DECLENSION

The second declension follows the rule already given for the first declension: base + endings. However, the endings differ from those of the first declension, except in the dative and the ablative plural. The nouns of this declension are regularly either masculine or neuter; the masculines are introduced below, the neuters in Ch. 4. Most second declension masculine nouns have a nominative singular ending in -us, while a few end in -er (the neuters, as we shall see in the next chapter, end with -um).

MASCULINES IN -us

	amícus, *friend*	magnus, *great*		Endings
Base:	amíc-	magn-		
Singular				
Nom.	amícus	mágnus	*a/the great friend*	**-us**
Gen.	amícī	mágnī	*of a great friend*	**-ī**
Dat.	amícō	mágnō	*to/for a great friend*	**-ō**
Acc.	amícum	mágnum	*a great friend*	**-um**
Abl.	amícō	mágnō	*by/with/from a great friend*	**-ō**
Voc.	amíce	mágne	*O great friend*	**-e**

Plural

Nom.	amícī	mágnī	*great friends*	-ī
Gen.	amīcórum	magnórum	*of great friends*	-ōrum
Dat.	amícīs	mágnīs	*to/for great friends*	-īs
Acc.	amícōs	mágnōs	*great friends*	-ōs
Abl.	amícīs	mágnīs	*by/with/from[1] great friends*	-īs
Voc.	amícī	mágnī	*O great friends*	-ī

MASCULINES IN -er

Of the second declension -er masculines, some like **puer** retain the -e- in the base, while most, like **ager,** drop the -e-, hence the special importance of learning the genitive as part of the full vocabulary entry (though a knowledge of such English derivatives as "puerile" and "agriculture" will also help you remember the base). Similar is the unique -ir masculine, **vir, virī,** *man.*

Base:	**puer,** *boy* **puer-**	**ager,** *field* **agr-**		**Endings**
Singular				
Nom.	púer[2]	áger[2]	mágnus[3]	(none)
Gen.	púerī	ágrī	mágnī	-ī
Dat.	púerō	ágrō	mágnō	-ō
Acc.	púerum	ágrum	mágnum	-um
Abl.	púerō	ágrō	mágnō	-ō
Voc.	púer	áger	mágne	(none)
Plural				
Nom.	púerī	ágrī	mágnī	-ī
Gen.	puerórum	agrórum	magnórum	-ōrum
Dat.	púerīs	ágrīs	mágnīs	-īs
Acc.	púerōs	ágrōs	mágnōs	-ōs
Abl.	púerīs	ágrīs	mágnīs	-īs
Voc.	púerī	ágrī	mágnī	-ī

[1] Remember that this is only an imperfect, makeshift way of representing the ablative, and remember that prepositions are commonly used with the ablative, especially when the noun indicates a person; in English translation a preposition is virtually always used.

[2] The underlined forms are the ones which call for special attention.

[3] Added for the sake of comparison and contrast. Note the combination of **puer magnus,** *a big boy,* and **Ō puer magne,** O *big boy.*

COMMENTS ON CASE ENDINGS

It should be helpful to note that some second declension endings are identical to those in the first (the dat. and abl. pl. in -īs) and others are similar (e.g., -am/-um in the acc. sg., -ārum/-ōrum gen. pl., and -ās/-ōs acc. pl.). As in the first declension, some second declension endings are used for different cases (e.g., what different cases may the forms amīcī, amīcō, and amīcīs represent?); again, word order and context will be in such instances essential aids to reading comprehension and translation.

It is especially important to note that only in the singular of -us nouns and adjectives of the second declension does the vocative ever differ in spelling from the nominative: singular amīcus, amīce; but plural amīcī, amīcī. Nouns in -ius (e.g., fīlius, *son*, Vergilius, *Virgil*) and the adjective meus, *my*, have a single -ī in the vocative singular: mī fīlī, *my son;* Ō Vergilī, *O Virgil.*

APPOSITION

Gāium, fīlium meum, in agrō videō.
I see Gaius, my son, in the field.

In this sentence fīlium is in apposition with Gāium. An appositive is a noun which is "put beside"[4] another noun as the explanatory equivalent of the other noun; nouns in apposition always agree in case, usually in number, and often in gender as well. An appositive is commonly separated from the preceding noun by commas.

WORD ORDER

A typical order of words in a simplified Latin sentence or subordinate clause is this: (1) the subject and its modifiers, (2) the indirect object, (3) the direct object, (4) adverbial words or phrases, (5) the verb. In formal composition, the tendency to place the verb at the end of its clause is probably connected with the Romans' fondness for the periodic style, which seeks to keep the reader or listener in suspense until the last word of a sen-

---

[4] ad (*to, near*) + pōnō, positus (*put*).

tence has been reached. Remember, too, that adjectives and genitive nouns commonly follow the words they modify. However, although the patterns described above should be kept in mind, the Romans themselves made many exceptions to these rules for the purposes of variety and emphasis. In fact, in highly inflected languages like Latin, the order of the words can be relatively unimportant to the sense, thanks to the inflectional endings, which tell so much about the interrelationship of the words in a sentence. On the other hand, in English, where the inflections are relatively few, the sense commonly depends on stricter conventions of word order.

For example, study the following idea as expressed in the one English sentence and the four Latin versions, which all mean essentially the same despite the differences of word order.

(1) *The boy is giving the pretty girl a rose.*
(2) Puer puellae bellae rosam dat.
(3) Bellae puellae puer rosam dat.
(4) Bellae puellae rosam dat puer.
(5) Rosam puer puellae bellae dat.

Whatever the order of the words in the Latin sentence, the sense remains the same (though the emphasis does vary). Note also that according to its ending, **bellae** must modify **puellae** no matter where these words stand. But if you change the order of the words in the English sentence, you change the sense:

(1) *The boy is giving the pretty girl a rose.*
(2) *The pretty girl is giving the boy a rose.*
(3) *The girl is giving the boy a pretty rose.*
(4) *The girl is giving the pretty boy a rose.*
(5) *The rose is giving the boy a pretty girl.*

In all these sentences the same words are used with the same spellings, but the sense of each sentence is different in accordance with the conventions of English word order. Furthermore, where the fifth English sentence is senseless, the fifth Latin sentence, though in much the same order, makes perfectly good sense.

VOCABULARY

áger, ágrī, m., *field, farm* (agrarian, agriculture, agronomy; cp. **agrícola**)
agrícola, -ae, m., *farmer*
amíca, -ae, f., and **amícus, amícī**, m., *friend* (amicable, amiable, amity; cp. **amō**)
fémina, -ae, f., *woman* (female, feminine, femininity)
fília, -ae, f., dat. and abl. pl. **fíliābus**, *daughter* (filiation, affiliation, affiliate, filial, hidalgo)
fílius, fíliī, m., *son* (see **fília**)

númerus, -ī,[5] m., *number* (numeral, innumerable, enumerate)

pópulus, -ī, m., *the people, a people, a nation* (populace, population, popularity, popularize, populous)

púer, púerī, m., *boy;* pl. *boys, children* (puerile, puerility)

sapiéntia, -ae, f., *wisdom* (sapience, sapient, sage, savant)

vir, vírī, m., *man, hero* (virtue, virile, triumvirate; *not* virulent)

avárus (m.), **avára** (f.), adj., *greedy, avaricious* (avarice)

paúcī (m.), **paúcae** (f.), adj., usually pl., *few, a few* (paucity)

Rōmánus (m.), **Rōmána** (f.), adj., *Roman* (Romance, romance, romantic, romanticism, Romanesque, Roumania)

dē, prep. + abl., *down from, from; concerning, about;* also as a prefix **dē-** with such meanings as *down, away, aside, out, off* (demote, from **dē-moveō**; decline, descend)

in, prep. + abl., *in, on*

hódiē, adv., *today*

sémper, adv., *always* (sempiternal)

hábeō, habére, hábuī, hábitum, *to have, hold, possess; consider, regard* (inhabit, "hold in"; ex-hibit, "hold forth"; habit, habitat)

sátiō (1),[6] *to satisfy, sate* (satiate, insatiable, satiety, satisfaction; cp. **satis,** Ch. 5)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Fīlium nautae Rōmānī in agrīs vidēmus.
2. Puerī puellās hodiē vocant.
3. Sapientiam amīcārum, Ō fīlia mea, semper laudat.
4. Multī virī et fēminae philosophiam antīquam cōnservant.
5. Sī īra valet, Ō mī fīlī, saepe errāmus et poenās damus.
6. Fortūna virōs magnōs amat.
7. Agricola fīliābus pecūniam dat.
8. Without a few friends life is not strong.
9. Today you have much fame in your country.
10. We see great fortune in your daughters' lives, my friend.
11. He always gives my daughters and sons roses.

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

1. Dēbētis, amīcī, dē populō Rōmānō cōgitāre. (Cicero.)
2. Maecēnās, amīcus Augustī, mē in numerō amīcōrum habet. (Hor-

---

[5] Regular second declension **-us** nouns will be abbreviated this way in subsequent Vocab. entries (i.e., **númerus, -ī** = **númerus, númerī**).

[6] Regular first conjugation verbs with principal parts following the pattern **-ō/-āre/-āvī/-ātum** will be indicated with this (1) in subsequent Vocab. entries.

ace.—**Maecēnās**, a name in nom. sg.; see Ch. 1 reading passage.—
Augustus, -ī.)

3. Libellus meus et sententiae meae vītās virōrum monent. (Phae-
drus.—**libellus, -ī,** *little book.*)

4. Paucī virī sapientiae student. (Cicero.—**studēre** + dat., *to be eager
for.*)

5. Fortūna adversa virum magnae sapientiae nōn terret. (Horace.—
adversus, adversa, adj. = English.)

6. Cimōn, vir magnae fāmae, magnam benevolentiam habet. (Ne-
pos.—**Cimōn,** proper name nom. sg.—**benevolentia, -ae** = Eng.)

7. Semper avārus eget. (*Horace.—**avārus** = **avārus vir.**—**egēre,** *to be
in need.*)

8. Nūlla cōpia pecūniae avārum virum satiat. (Seneca.—**nūllus, nūlla,**
adj., *no.*—**cōpia, -ae,** *abundance.*)

9. Pecūnia avārum irrītat, nōn satiat. (Publilius Syrus.—**irrītāre,** *to ex-
cite, exasperate.*)

10. Sēcrētē amīcōs admonē; laudā palam. (*Publilius Syrus.—**sēcrētē,**
adv., *in secret.*—**admonē** = **monē.**—**palam,** adv., *openly.*)

11. Modum tenēre dēbēmus. (*Seneca.—**modus, -ī,** *moderation.*—**te-
nēre,** *to have, observe.*)

THE GRASS IS ALWAYS GREENER

Agricola et vītam et fortūnam nautae saepe laudat; nauta magnam for-
tūnam et vītam poētae saepe laudat; et poēta vītam et agrōs agricolae laudat.
Sine philosophiā avārī virī dē pecūniā semper cōgitant: multam pecūniam
habent, sed pecūnia multa virum avārum nōn satiat.

(Horace, *Sermōnēs* 1.1; free prose adaptation.)

ETYMOLOGY

The following are some of the Romance words which you can recognize
on the basis of the vocabulary of this chapter.

Latin	Italian	Spanish	French
amīcus	amico	amigo	ami
fīlius	figlio	hijo	fils
numerus	numero	número	numéro
populus	popolo	pueblo	peuple
paucī	poco	poco	peu
semper	sempre	siempre	
habēre	avere	haber	avoir
dē	di	de	de

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

Salvēte, amīcae et amīcī! Quid agitis hodiē? Well, if you are in the Coast Guard, you are **semper parātus,** *always prepared,* or if you're a U.S. Marine, it's **semper fidēlis,** *always faithful* (from the same Latin root as "Fido," your trusty hound). These are just two (suggested by this chapter's Vocab.) of countless Latin mottoes representing a wide range of modern institutions and organizations. **Valēte et habēte fortūnam bonam!**

Augustus of Prima Porta
Late 1st century B.C.
Vatican Museums
Vatican State

4

Second Declension Neuters; Adjectives; Present Indicative of Sum; Predicate Nouns and Adjectives; Substantive Adjectives

SECOND DECLENSION—NEUTERS

In the first declension there are no nouns of neuter gender but in the second declension there are many. They are declined as follows, again by adding endings to a base:

	dōnum, *gift*	cōnsilium, *plan*	magnum, *great*	
Base:	dōn-	cōnsili-	magn-	Endings
Singular				
Nom.	dṓnum	cōnsílium	mágnum	**-um**
Gen.	dṓnī	cōnsíliī[1]	mágnī	**-ī**
Dat.	dṓnō	cōnsíliō	mágnō	**-ō**
Acc.	dṓnum	cōnsílium	mágnum	**-um**
Abl.	dṓnō	cōnsíliō	mágnō	**-ō**

[1] The gen. sg. of second declension nouns ending in -ius or -ium was spelled with a single -ī (fīlius, gen. fīlī; cōnsilium, gen. cōnsilī) through the Ciceronian Period. However,

Plural

Nom.	dóna	cōnsília	mágna	-a
Gen.	dōnórum	cōnsiliórum	magnórum	-ōrum
Dat.	dónīs	cōnsíliīs	mágnīs	-īs
Acc.	dóna	cōnsília	mágna	-a
Abl.	dónīs	cōnsíliīs	mágnīs	-īs

Notice that the second declension neuter endings are the same as the masculine endings, except that the nominative, accusative, and vocative are identical to one another (this is true of all neuters of all declensions): **-um** in the singular, **-a** in the plural. Word order and context will often enable you to distinguish between a neuter noun used as a subject and one used as an object (vocatives are even more easily distinguished, of course, as they are regularly set off from the rest of the sentence by commas). The plural -a ending might be mistaken for a first declension nominative singular, so you can see again how important it is to memorize all vocabulary entries completely, including the gender of nouns. Regular second declension neuters will be presented in the vocabularies in the following abbreviated form: **dónum, -ī (= dónum, dónī), n.**

DECLENSION AND AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES

The paradigms of **magnus** presented in Chs. 2–4 have illustrated the point that, while the base remains constant, the adjective has masculine, feminine, or neuter endings according to the gender of the noun with which it is used, and it likewise agrees with its noun in number and case. The full declension of **magnus** below provides a good review of the first two declensions.

	Masc.	**Fem.**	**Neut.**
Singular			
Nom.	mágnus	mágna	mágnum
Gen.	mágnī	mágnae	mágnī
Dat.	mágnō	mágnae	mágnō
Acc.	mágnum	mágnam	mágnum
Abl.	mágnō	mágnā	mágnō
Voc.	mágne	mágna	mágnum

---

since the genitive form -ī **(fílī, cōnsílī)** became established during the Augustan Period and since -ī was always the rule in adjectives (**exímius**, gen. **exímī**), this is the form which will be employed in this text.

Plural

Nom.	mágnī	mágnae	mágna
Gen.	magnórum	magnárum	magnórum
Dat.	mágnīs	mágnīs	mágnīs
Acc.	mágnōs	mágnās	mágna
Abl.	mágnīs	mágnīs	mágnīs
Voc.	mágnī	mágnae	mágna

Henceforth, such first and second declension adjectives will appear thus in the vocabularies:

méus, -a, -um   múltus, -a, -um   paúcī, -ae, -a (pl. only)

Sum: PRESENT INFINITIVE AND PRESENT INDICATIVE

As the English verb *to be* is irregular, so is the Latin **sum**. Although the personal endings can be distinguished, the stem varies so much that the best procedure is to memorize these very common forms as they are given. Notice that, because **sum** is an intransitive linking verb, we do not refer to its voice as either active or passive.

PRESENT INFINITIVE OF Sum: esse, to be

PRESENT INDICATIVE OF Sum

Singular	**Plural**
1. sum, *I am*	súmus, *we are*
2. es, *you are*	éstis, *you are*
3. est, *he (she, it) is, there is*	sunt, *they are, there are*

PREDICATE NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

As an intransitive verb, **sum** cannot take a direct object. Instead, like a coupling which connects two cars in a train, **sum** (and other linking verbs to be learned later) serves to connect the subject of a clause with a noun or adjective in the predicate[2]. Such predicate nouns and adjectives—or "predicate nominatives," as they are often called—are connected or even equated

---

[2] The two main divisions of a sentence are the subject and the predicate. The predicate is composed of the verb and all its dependent words and phrases.

with the subject by the linking verb, and so they naturally agree with the subject in number and case (usually the nominative, of course) and, wherever possible, in gender as well. In the case of compound subjects of different gender, a predicate adjective usually agrees in gender with the nearest, though the masculine often predominates. Study the following examples, and be prepared to identify the predicate nouns and adjectives in the chapter's sentences and reading passage.

Vergilius est amīcus Augustī, *Virgil is the friend of Augustus.*
Vergilius est poēta, *Virgil is a poet.*
Vergilius est magnus, *Virgil is great.*
Fāma Vergiliī est magna, *the fame of Virgil is great.*
Amīcae sunt bonae, *the girlfriends are good.*
Puerī dēbent esse bonī, *the boys ought to be good.*
Puer et puella sunt bonī, *the boy and girl are good.*
Dōnum est magnum, *the gift is large.*
Dōna sunt magna, *the gifts are large.*
Sumus Rōmānī, *we are Romans (Roman men).*
Sumus Rōmānae, *we are Roman women.*

SUBSTANTIVE ADJECTIVES

The Romans often used an adjective as a "substantive," i.e., in place of a noun, just as we do in English ("The meek shall inherit the earth"—i.e., "the meek *people*"). Such a substantive adjective should generally be translated as a noun, often by supplying *man* or *men, woman* or *women, thing* or *things,* in accordance with its number and gender, as illustrated in the following examples:

Bonās saepe laudant, *they often praise the good women.*
Multī sunt stultī, *many (men) are foolish.*
Puerī mala nōn amant, *the boys do not love bad things.*
Paucī dē perīculō cōgitant, *few (men) are thinking about the danger.*

VOCABULARY

básium, -iī (= **básiī**), n., *kiss*
béllum, -ī, n., *war* (bellicose, belligerent, rebel, rebellion, revel)
cōnsílium, -iī, n., *plan, purpose, counsel, advice, judgment, wisdom* (counsel, counselor)
cúra, -ae, f., *care, attention, caution, anxiety* (cure, curator, curious, curiosity, curio, curettage, sinecure; cp. **cúrō,** Ch. 36))
dónum, -ī, n., *gift, present* (donate, donation, condone; cp. **dō**)

exítium, -ii, n., *destruction, ruin* (exit; cp. **exeō,** Ch. 37)

magíster, magístrī, m., and **magístra, -ae,** f., *schoolmaster* or *school-mistress, teacher, master* or *mistress* (magistrate, magistracy, magisterial, maestro, mastery, mister, miss; cp. **magnus**)

móra, -ae, f., *delay* (moratorium, demur)

níhil, indeclinable, n., *nothing* (see Ch. 1)

óculus, -ī, m., *eye* (ocular, oculist, binoculars, monocle)

offícium, -ii, n., *duty, service* (office, officer, official, officious; cp. **faciō,** Ch. 10)

ótium, -ii, n., *leisure, peace* (otiose, negotiate)

perículum, -ī, n., *danger, risk* (peril, perilous, imperil, parlous)

remédium, -ii, n., *cure, remedy* (remedial, irremediable, remediation)

béllus, -a, -um, *pretty, handsome, charming* (belle, beau, beauty, embellish, belladonna, belles-lettres). Do not confuse with **bellum,** *war.*

bónus, -a, -um, *good, kind* (bonus, bonanza, bonny, bounty, bona fide)

hūmā́nus, -a, -um, *pertaining to man* (**homō,** Ch. 7), *human; humane, kind; refined, cultivated* (humanity, humanitarian, humanism, the humanities, humanist, inhuman, superhuman)

málus, -a, -um, *bad, wicked, evil* (malice, malicious, malign, malignant, malaria, malady, malefactor, malfeasance, malevolent; mal-, a prefix as in maladjustment, malnutrition, maltreat, malapropos)

párvus, -a, -um, *small, little* (parvovirus, parvule, parvicellular)

stúltus, -a, -um, *foolish;* **stúltus, -ī,** m., *a fool* (stultify, stultification)

vérus, -a, -um, *true, real, proper* (verify, verisimilitude, very, veracity)

iúvō (or **ádiuvō**), **iuvā́re, iúvī, iútum,** *to help, aid, assist; please* (adjutant, coadjutant, aid, aide-de-camp)

sum, ésse, fúī, futū́rum, *to be, exist* (essence, essential, future, futurity)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Ōtium est bonum, sed ōtium multōrum est parvum.
2. Bella (from **bellum, -ī,** n.) sunt mala et multa perīcula habent.
3. Officium nautam dē ōtiō hodiē vocat.
4. Paucī virī avārī multās fōrmās perīculī in pecūniā vident.
5. Sī multam pecūniam habētis, saepe nōn estis sine cūrīs.
6. Puellae magistram dē cōnsiliō malō sine morā monent.
7. Ō magne poēta, sumus vērī amīcī; mē iuvā, amābō tē!
8. Fēmina agricolae portam videt.
9. You (sg.) are in great danger.
10. My son's opinions are often foolish.
11. The daughters and sons of great men and women are not always great.
12. Without wisdom the sailors' good fortune is nothing and they are paying the penalty.

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

1. Fortūna est caeca. (*Cicero.—**caecus, -a, -um,** *blind.*)
2. Sī perīcula sunt vēra, īnfortūnātus es. (Terence.—**īnfortūnātus, -a, -um,** *unfortunate.*)
3. Salvē, Ō amīce; vir bonus es. (Terence.)
4. Nōn bella est fāma fīliī tuī. (Horace.)
5. Errāre est hūmānum. (Seneca.—As an indeclinable neuter verbal noun, an infinitive can be the subject of a verb.)
6. Nihil est omnīnō beātum. (Horace—**omnīnō,** adv., *wholly.*—**beātus, -a, -um,** *happy, fortunate.*)
7. Remedium īrae est mora. (Seneca.)
8. Bonus Daphnis, amīcus meus, ōtium et vītam agricolae amat. (Virgil.—Daphnis is a pastoral character.)
9. Magistrī parvīs puerīs crūstula et dōna saepe dant. (Horace.—**crūstulum, -ī,** *cookie.*)
10. Amīcam meam magis quam oculōs meōs amō. (Terence.—**magis quam,** *more than.*)
11. Salvē, mea bella puella—dā mihi multa bāsia, amābō tē! (Catullus.—**mihi,** dat., *to me.*)
12. Īnfīnītus est numerus stultōrum. (Ecclesiastes.—**īnfīnītus, -a, -um** = Eng.)
13. Officium mē vocat. (Persius.)
14. Malī sunt in nostrō numerō et dē exitiō bonōrum virōrum cōgitant. Bonōs adiuvāte; cōnservāte populum Rōmānum. (Cicero.—**nostrō,** *our.*)

THE RARITY OF FRIENDSHIP

Paucī virī vērōs amīcōs habent, et paucī sunt dignī. Amīcitia vēra est praeclāra, et omnia praeclāra sunt rāra. Multī virī stultī dē pecūniā semper cōgitant, paucī dē amīcīs; sed errant: possumus valēre sine multā pecūniā, sed sine amīcitiā nōn valēmus et vīta est nihil.

(Cicero, *Dē Amīcitiā* 21.79–80.—**dignus, -a, -um,** *worthy, deserving.* **amīcitia, -ae,** *friendship.*—**omnia,** *all* [*things*].—**praeclārus, -a, -um,** *splendid, remarkable.*—**rārus, -a, -um** = Eng.—**possumus,** *we are able.*)

ETYMOLOGY

Some Romance derivatives:

Latin	Italian	Spanish	French
oculus	occhio	ojo	œil
ōtium	ozio	ocio	oisiveté
perīculum	pericolo	peligro	péril

officium	officio	oficio	office
bonus	buono	bueno	bon
vĕrus	vero	verdadero	vrai
magister	maestro	maestro	maître
bellus	bello	bello	belle
hūmānus	umano	humano	humain
beātus	beato	beato	béat
bāsium	bacio	beso	baiser
rārus	raro	raro	rare

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

Salvĕ, amīce! There are countless Latin expressions in current English usage (remember **sub rosā?**); one of them, related to an adjective encountered in this chapter, is **rāra avis,** lit. *a rare bird,* but used for an exceptional or unusual individual or a rarity. The student of Latin in the United States was becoming a **rāra avis** in the 1960s and early 70s, but there has been a remarkable resurgence of interest since then. **Ergō,** *therefore,* is another Latin word that has come straight into English; ergo, you now know what Descartes meant in his *Discourse on Method* when he said **cōgitō ergō sum. Semper cōgitā, amīce, et valē!**

Cicero
Uffizi
Florence, Italy

5

First and Second Conjugations: Future and Imperfect; Adjectives in -er

THE FUTURE AND IMPERFECT TENSES

The Romans indicated future time in the first two conjugations by inserting the future tense sign (**-bi-** in most forms) between the present stem and the personal endings. The tense sign **-bā-** was similarly employed (in all four conjugations) for the imperfect tense, a past tense generally equivalent to the English past progressive. The forms of these future and imperfect endings are seen in the following paradigms:

FUTURE AND IMPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF Laudō AND Moneō

Future	Imperfect
Singular	
1. laudá-bō, *I shall praise*	laudá-ba-m, *I was praising, kept praising, used to praise, praised*
2. laudá-bi-s, *you will praise*	laudá-bā-s, *you were praising,* etc.
3. laudá-bi-t, *he, she, it will praise*	laudá-ba-t, *he was praising,* etc.
Plural	
1. laudábimus, *we shall praise*	laudábámus, *we were praising,* etc.
2. laudábitis, *you will praise*	laudábátis, *you were praising,* etc.
3. laudábunt, *they will praise*	laudábant, *they were praising,* etc.

Singular

1. moné-bō, *I shall advise*   moné-ba-m, *I was advising, kept advising, used to advise, advised*
2. moné-bi-s, *you will advise*   moné-bā-s, *you were advising,* etc.
3. moné-bi-t, *he, she, it will advise*   moné-ba-t, *he was advising,* etc.

Plural

1. monébimus, *we shall advise*   monēbámus, *we were advising,* etc.
2. monébitis, *you will advise*   monēbátis, *you were advising,* etc.
3. monébunt, *they will advise*   monébant, *they were advising,* etc.

Notice the vowel change in the first person singular and third plural future endings (remember **bō/bi/bi/bi/bi/bu**—sounds like baby talk!), and the shortened -**a**- in the first and third singular and third plural of the imperfect (remember that vowels which are normally long are regularly shortened before -**m**, -**r**, and -**t** at the end of a word, and before **nt** or another vowel in any position).

The "infixes" -**bi**- and -**bā**- (with the distinctive -**i**- and -**ā**-) can be easily remembered as signs of the future and imperfect tenses, respectively, if they are associated with the English auxiliary verbs "will" and "was" (also spelled with -*i*- and -*a*-), which are generally used to translate those two tenses. Note that, where English requires three separate words for the ideas *he will praise* or *he was praising,* Latin requires only a single word with the three components of stem + tense sign + personal ending (**laudā + bi + t** = *praise-will-he* or **laudā-ba-t** = *praising-was-he*).

TRANSLATION

Translation of the future tense, usually with *shall* in the first person and *will* in the second and third, should present no difficulty: **dē amīcō cōgitābō,** *I shall think about my friend;* **multam sapientiam habēbunt,** *they will have much wisdom.*

The imperfect tense commonly indicates an action that was continuing or progressive in the past, as suggested by the term "imperfect" (from **imperfectum,** *not completed*), including actions that were *going on, repeated, habitual, attempted,* or *just beginning.* All the following translations are possible, *depending upon the context in which the sentence appears:*

Nautam monēbam, *I was warning (kept warning, used to warn, tried to warn, was beginning to warn) the sailor.*

Poētae vītam agricolae laudābant, *poets used to praise the farmer's life.*

Magister puerōs vocābat, *the teacher kept calling (was calling) the boys.*

Occasionally the imperfect may be translated as a simple past tense, especially with an adverb that in itself indicates continuing action: **nautam saepe monēbam,** *I often warned the sailor.*

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION IN -er

The problem with e before r appears in adjectives as well as in nouns like **puer** and **ager** (Ch. 3). This problem is no great one if you memorize the forms of the adjectives as given in the vocabularies (nominative masculine, feminine, neuter), since the base, whether with or without the -e-, appears in the feminine and the neuter forms, as seen in the following examples; likewise, just as with the -er nouns, your familiarity with English derivatives can be an aid to remembering the base ("liberal" from **līber,** "pulchritude" from **pulcher,** "miserable" from **miser,** etc.).

| līber | līber-a | līber-um | *free* |
| pulcher | pulchr-a | pulchr-um | *beautiful* |

The rest of the paradigm continues with the base and the regular endings:

	Masc.	**Fem.**	**Neut.**	**Masc.**	**Fem.**	**Neut.**
Nom.	līber	lībera	līberum	púlcher	púlchra	púlchrum
Gen.	līberī	līberae	līberī	púlchrī	púlchrae	púlchrī
Dat.	līberō	līberae	līberō	púlchrō	púlchrae	púlchrō
		(etc.)			(etc.)	

For the singular of these samples fully declined, see the Summary of Forms, p. 447, and remember to refer to this Summary on a regular basis, when reviewing declensions and conjugations.

VOCABULARY

adulēscéntia, -ae, f., *youth, young manhood; youthfulness* (adolescence, adolescent)

ánimus, -ī, m., *soul, spirit, mind;* **ánimī, -órum,** *high spirits, pride, courage* (animus, animosity, magnanimous, unanimous, pusillanimous)

caélum, -ī, n., *sky, heaven* (ceiling, celestial, Celeste, cerulean)

cúlpa, -ae, f., *fault, blame* (cp. **culpō** below; culpable, culprit, exculpate, inculpate)

glória, -ae, f., *glory, fame* (glorify, glorification, glorious, inglorious)

vérbum, -ī, n., *word* (verb, adverb, verbal, verbiage, verbose, proverb)

tē, abl. and acc. sg., *you; yourself;* cp. **mē**

līber, lībera, līberum, *free* (liberal, liberality, libertine; cp. **lībertās,** Ch. 8, **līberō,** Ch. 19)

nóster, nóstra, nóstrum, *our, ours* (nostrum, paternoster)

púlcher, púlchra, púlchrum, *beautiful, handsome; fine* (pulchritude)

sā́nus, -a, -um, *sound, healthy, sane* (sanity, sanitary, sanitation, sanitarium, insane)

igitur, conj., postpositive,[1] *therefore, consequently*

-ne, enclitic or suffix added to the emphatic word placed at the beginning of a sentence to indicate a question the answer to which is uncertain. (For other types of direct questions, see **nōnne** and **num** in Ch. 40.)

própter, prep. + acc., *on account of, because of*

crās, adv., *tomorrow* (procrastinate, procrastination)

herī, adv., *yesterday*

quándō, interrogative and relative adv. and conj., *when;* **sī quándō,** *if ever*

sátis, indecl. noun, adj., and adv., *enough, sufficient (-ly)* (cp. **satiō;** satisfy, satisfactory, satiate, insatiable, sate; assets, from **ad,** *up to* + **satis)**

tum, adv., *then, at that time; thereupon, in the next place*

cḗnō (1), *to dine* (cenacle; cp. **cēna,** Ch. 26)

cúlpō (1), *to blame, censure* (cp. **culpa** above)

remáneō, remanḗre, remā́nsī, remā́nsum, or **máneō, manḗre, mā́nsī, mā́nsum,** *to remain, stay, stay behind, abide, continue* (permanent, remnant, mansion, manor, immanent—do not confuse with imminent)

súperō (1), *to be above* (cp. **super,** adv. and prep. + abl. or acc., *above*), *have the upper hand, surpass; overcome, conquer* (superable, insuperable)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Officium līberōs virōs semper vocābat.
2. Habēbimusne multōs virōs et fēminās magnōrum animōrum?
3. Perīcula bellī nōn sunt parva, sed patria tua tē vocābit et agricolae adiuvābunt.
4. Propter culpās malōrum patria nostra nōn valēbit.
5. Mora animōs nostrōs superābat et remedium nōn habēbāmus.
6. Multī in agrīs herī manēbant et Rōmānōs iuvābant.
7. Paucī virī dē cūrā animī cōgitābant.
8. Propter īram in culpā estis et crās poenās dabitis.
9. Vērum ōtium nōn habēs, vir stulte!
10. Nihil est sine culpā; sumus bonī, sī paucās habēmus.
11. Poēta amīcae multās rosās, dōna pulchra, et bāsia dabat.

---

[1] A postpositive word is one which does not appear as the first word of a sentence; it is put after (**post-pōnō**) the first word or phrase.

12. Will war and destruction always remain in our land?

13. Does money satisfy the greedy man?

14. Therefore, you (sg.) will save the reputation of our foolish boys.

15. Money and glory were conquering the soul of a good man.

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

1. Invidiam populī Rōmānī crās nōn sustinēbis. (Cicero.—**invidia, -ae,** *dislike.*—**sustinēre,** *to endure, sustain.*)

2. Perīculumne igitur herī remanēbat? (Cicero.)

3. Angustus animus pecūniam amat. (Cicero.—**angustus, -a, -um,** *narrow.*)

4. Superā animōs et īram tuam. (Ovid.)

5. Culpa est mea, Ō amīcī. (Cicero.)

6. Dā veniam fīliō et fīliābus nostrīs. (Terence.—**venia, -ae,** *favor, pardon.*)

7. Propter adulēscentiam, fīliī meī, mala vītae nōn vidēbātis. (Terence.)

8. Amābō tē, cūrā fīliam meam. (Cicero.—**cūrāre,** *to take care of.*)

9. Vīta hūmāna est supplicium. (Seneca.—**supplicium, -iī,** *punishment.*)

10. Satisne sānus es? (Terence.)

11. Sī quandō satis pecūniae habēbō, tum mē cōnsiliō et philosophiae dabō. (Seneca.—**pecūniae,** gen. case.)

12. Semper glōria et fāma tua manēbunt. (Virgil.)

13. Vir bonus et perītus aspera verba poētārum culpābit. (Horace.—**perītus, -a, -um,** *skillful.*—**asper, aspera, asperum,** *rough, harsh.*)

HIS ONLY GUEST WAS A REAL BOAR!

Nōn cēnat sine aprō noster, Tite, Caeciliānus:
  bellum convīvam Caeciliānus habet!

(*Martial 7.59. This is the first of several selections included in this book from the *Epigrams* of Martial, a popular poet of the late 1st cen. A.D., briefly discussed in the Introd.; these poems are generally quite short, like this two-verse elegiac couplet, satirical, and targeted at a specific, but usually fictitious, character, here the glutton Caecilianus.—**Titus,** the poem's addressee, but not its victim.—**aper, aprī,** *boar, pig.*—**convīva, -ae,** one of a few masc. first decl. nouns, *dinner-guest.*)

THERMOPYLAE: A SOLDIER'S HUMOR

"Exercitus noster est magnus," Persicus inquit, "et propter numerum sagittārum nostrārum caelum nōn vidēbitis!" Tum Lacedaemonius respondet: "In umbrā, igitur, pugnābimus!" Et Leōnidās, rēx Lacedaemoniōrum, exclāmat: "Pugnāte cum animīs, Lacedaemoniī; hodiē apud īnferōs fortasse cēnābimus!"

(Cicero, *Tusculānae Disputātiōnēs* 1.42.101; an anecdote from the battle of Thermopylae, 480 B.C., in which the Persians under king Xerxes defeated the Spartans under Leonidas.—**exercitus**, *army.*—**Persicus, -ī,** *a Persian.*—**inquit,** *says.*—**sagitta, -ae,** *arrow.*—**Lacedaemonius, -ī,** *a Spartan.*—**respondēre** = Eng.—**umbra, -ae,** *shade, shadow; ghost.*—**pugnāre,** *to fight.*—**rēx,** *king.*—**exclāmāre,** *to shout.*—**cum** + abl., *with.*—**apud** + acc., *among.*—**īnferī, -ōrum,** *those below, the dead.*—**fortasse,** adv., *perhaps.*)

ETYMOLOGY

Related to **animus** is **anima, -ae,** *the breath of life;* hence: animal, animated, inanimate.

"Envy" came to us from **invidia** (sent. 1) indirectly through French; "invidious" we borrowed directly from Latin.

"Expert" and "experience" are both related to **perītus** (13). The ex here is intensive (= *thoroughly*) and the stem **perī-** means *try, make trial of.* What, then, is an "experiment"? Apparently there is no experiment without some risk (**perī-culum**).

In sent. 13: asperity, exasperate (ex again intensive). In "Thermopylae": sagittate; umbrella (through Italian, with diminutive ending), umbrage, adumbrate; pugnacious, pugilist.

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

Salvēte, et amīcī et amīcae meae! Quid agitis hodiē? In fact, I hope you are **sānī et sānae,** both physically and spiritually; if so, you have attained what the 1st cen. A.D. Roman satirist Juvenal suggested was the highest good in life, **mēns sāna in corpore sānō,** *a healthy mind in a healthy body* (you'll encounter the two third decl. nouns **mēns** and **corpus** later on, but in the meantime you can keep this famous quotation **in mente**). It's rumored, by the way, that the athletic gear brand-name ASICS is an acronym for **animus sānus in corpore sānō;** with a glance back at the Vocab. you can figure that one out too. NIKE, an ASICS competitor, takes its name from the Greek word for "victory," which in Latin is **victōria,** a winning name for a queen or any powerful lady (whose male counterpart might well be dubbed "Victor," from Lat. **victor**).

You may have encountered the expressions **verbum sap** and **mea culpa** before; if not, you will. The former is an abbreviation of **verbum satis sapientī est: sapientī** is dat. of the third decl. adj. **sapiēns,** *wise,* used here as a noun (remember substantive adjs. from Ch. 4?), so you should already have deduced that the phrase means *a word to the wise is sufficient.* If you couldn't figure that out, just shout **"mea culpa!"** and (here's a **verbum sap**) go back and review the vocabulary in Chs. 1–5. **Valēte!**

6

Sum: Future and Imperfect Indicative; Possum: Present, Future, and Imperfect Indicative; Complementary Infinitive

FUTURE AND IMPERFECT INDICATIVE OF Sum

As we return to the irregular verb **sum, esse,** the best procedure for learning the future and imperfect tenses is again simply to memorize the paradigms below; these forms are more regular than those for the present tense, however, each formed on the stem **er-** and with the familiar present system personal endings (**-ō/-m, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt**).

	Future Indicative	Imperfect Indicative
Sg.	1. érō, *I shall be*	éram, *I was*
	2. éris, *you will be*	érās, *you were*
	3. érit, *he (she, it, there) will be*	érat, *he (she, it, there) was*
Pl.	1. érimus, *we shall be*	erámus, *we were*
	2. éritis, *you will be*	erátis, *you were*
	3. érunt, *they (there) will be*	érant, *they (there) were*

IRREGULAR *Possum, Posse, Potuī:* To Be Able, Can, Could

The very common verb **possum, posse, potuī,** is simply a compound of **pot-,** from the irregular adjective **potis** (*able, capable;* cp. "potent," "potential") + **sum.** Before forms of **sum** beginning with s-, the -t- was altered or "assimilated" to -s- (hence **possum** from *__potsum__); otherwise the -t- remained unchanged. The irregular present infinitive **posse** developed from an earlier form which followed this rule (**potesse**).

	Present Indicative	Future Indicative	Imperfect Indicative
	I am able, can	*I shall be able*	*I was able, could*
	1. pós-sum	pót-erō	pót-eram
Sg.	2. pót-es	pót-eris	pót-erās
	3. pót-est	pót-erit	pót-erat
	1. pós-sumus	pot-érimus	pot-erámus
Pl.	2. pot-éstis	pot-éritis	pot-erátis
	3. pós-sunt	pót-erunt	pót-erant

For both **sum** and **possum** it may be helpful to note the similarity of the future and imperfect endings, **-ō/-is/-it,** etc., and **-am/-ās/-at,** etc., to the first and second conjugation future and imperfect endings, **-bō/-bis/-bit,** etc., and **-bam/-bās/-bat,** etc., which were introduced in the previous chapter.

COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE

Possum, exactly like the English *to be able* or *can,* regularly requires an infinitive to complete its meaning. Hence we have the term "complementary" infinitive, which simply means "completing" infinitive, a point that is emphasized by the spelling: comp*le*mentary in contrast to comp*li*mentary. You have already seen the complementary infinitive used with **dēbeō,** and you will find it employed with other verbs.

Our friends were able to overcome (could overcome) many dangers.
Amīcī nostrī poterant superāre multa perīcula.

My friend is not able to remain (cannot remain).
Amīcus meus nōn potest remanēre.

You ought to save your money.
Dēbēs cōnservāre pecūniam tuam.

Note that a complementary infinitive has no separate subject of its own; its subject is the same as that of the verb on which it depends.

VOCABULARY

déa, -ae, f., dat. and abl. pl. **deābus,** *goddess,* and **déus, -ī,** m., voc. sg. **deus,** nom. pl. **dī,** dat. and abl. pl. **dīs** (the plurals **deī** and **deīs** became common during the Augustan Period), *god* (adieu, deify, deity)

discípula, -ae, f., and **discípulus, -ī,** m., *learner, pupil, student* (disciple, discipline, disciplinary; cp. **discō,** Ch. 8)

īnsídiae, -árum, f. pl., *ambush, plot, treachery* (insidious)

líber, líbrī, m., *book* (library, libretto); not to be confused with **līber,** *free*

tyránnus, -ī, m., *absolute ruler, tyrant* (tyrannous, tyrannicide)

vítium, -iī, n., *fault, crime, vice* (vitiate, vicious; but not vice in vice versa)

Graécus, -a, -um, *Greek;* **Graécus, -ī,** m., *a Greek*

perpétuus, -a, -um, *perpetual, lasting, uninterrupted, continuous* (perpetuate, perpetuity)

plénus, -a, -um, *full, abundant, generous* (plenary, plenteous, plentiful, plenitude, plenty, replenish, plenipotentiary)

sálvus, -a, -um, *safe, sound* (cp. **salveō**)

secúndus, -a, -um, *second; favorable* (secondary)

véster, véstra, véstrum, *your* (pl., i.e., used in addressing more than one person, vs. **tuus, -a, -um**), *yours*

-que, enclitic conj., *and.* It is appended to the second of two words to be joined: **fāma glōriaque,** *fame and glory.*

úbi: (1) rel. adv. and conj., *where, when;* (2) interrog. adv. and conj., *where?* (ubiquitous)

íbi, adv., *there* (ib. or ibid.)

nunc, adv., *now, at present* (quidnunc)

quárē, adv., lit. *because of which thing* (**quā rē**), *therefore, wherefore, why*

póssum, pósse, pótuī, *to be able, can, could, have power* (posse, possible, potent, potentate, potential, puissant, omnipotent)

tólerō (1), *to bear, endure* (tolerate, toleration, tolerable, intolerable, intolerance; cp. **tollō,** Ch. 22, **ferō,** Ch. 31)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Oculī nostrī nōn valēbant; quārē agrōs bellōs vidēre nōn poterāmus.
2. Sine multā pecūniā et multīs dōnīs tyrannus satiāre populum Rōmānum nōn poterit.
3. Nōn poterant, igitur, tē dē poenā amīcōrum tuōrum herī monēre.
4. Parvus numerus Graecōrum crās ibi remanēre poterit.
5. Magister puerōs malōs sine morā vocābit.

6. Fīliae vestrae dē librīs magnī poētae saepe cōgitābant.
7. Quandō satis sapientiae habēbimus?
8. Multī librī antīquī propter sapientiam cōnsiliumque erant magnī.
9. Glōria bonōrum librōrum semper manēbit.
10. Possuntne pecūnia ōtiumque cūrās vītae hūmānae superāre?
11. Therefore, we cannot always see the real vices of a tyrant.
12. Few free men will be able to tolerate an absolute ruler.
13. Many Romans used to praise the great books of the ancient Greeks.
14. Where can glory and (use **-que**) fame be perpetual?

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

1. Dionȳsius tum erat tyrannus Syrācūsānōrum. (Cicero.—**Dionȳsius,
   -iī,** a Greek name.—**Syrācūsānus, -ī,** *a Syracusan.*)
2. Optāsne meam vītam fortūnamque gustāre? (Cicero.—**optāre,** *to
   wish.*—**gustāre,** *to taste.*)
3. Possumusne, Ō dī, in malīs īnsidiīs et magnō exitiō esse salvī? (Cic-
   ero.—Can you explain why the nom. pl. **salvī** is used here?)
4. Propter cūram meam in perpetuō perīculō nōn eritis. (Cicero.)
5. Propter vitia tua multī tē culpant et nihil tē in patriā tuā dēlectāre
   nunc potest. (Cicero.—**dēlectāre,** *to delight.*)
6. Fortūna Pūnicī bellī secundī varia erat. (Livy.—**Pūnicus, -a, -um,**
   Punic, Carthaginian.—**varius, -a, -um,** *varied.*)
7. Patria Rōmānōrum erat plēna Graecōrum librōrum statuārumque
   pulchrārum. (Cicero.—**statua, -ae,** Eng.)
8. Sine dīs et deābus in caelō animus nōn potest sānus esse. (Seneca.)
9. Sī animus īnfirmus est, nōn poterit bonam fortūnam tolerāre.
   (Publilius Syrus.—**īnfirmus, -a, -um,** *not strong, weak.*)
10. Ubi lēgēs valent, ibi populus līber potest valēre. (Publilius Syrus.—
    lēgēs, nom. pl., *laws.*)

"I DO NOT LOVE THEE, DOCTOR FELL"

Nōn amo tē, Sabidī, nec possum dīcere quārē.
Hoc tantum possum dīcere: nōn amo tē.

(*Martial 1.32; meter: elegiac couplet. **amo:** final -ō was often shortened in Latin
poetry.—**Sabidius, -iī.**—**nec** = **et nōn.**—**dīcere,** *to say.*—**hoc,** *this,* acc. case.—
tantum, adv., *only.*)

THE HISTORIAN LIVY LAMENTS THE DECLINE OF ROMAN MORALS

Populus Rōmānus magnōs animōs et paucās culpās habēbat. Dē officiīs
nostrīs cōgitābāmus et glōriam bellī semper laudābāmus. Sed nunc multum
ōtium habēmus, et multī sunt avārī. Nec vitia nostra nec remedia tolerāre
possumus.

(Livy, from the preface to his history of Rome, *Ab Urbe Conditā;* see Introd.— **nec . . . nec,** conj., *neither . . . nor.*)

ETYMOLOGY

Eng. "library" is clearly connected with **liber.** Many European languages, however, derive their equivalent from **bibliothēca,** a Latin word of Greek origin meaning in essence the same thing as our word. What, then, do you suppose **biblos** meant in Greek? Cp. the *Bible.*

In the readings[1]   2. option, adopt.—gusto, disgust. 5. delectable, delight. 10. legal, legislative, legitimate, loyal.

French **y** in such a phrase as **il y a** *(there is)* may prove more understandable when you know that **y** derives from **ibi.**

The following French words are derived from Latin as indicated: **êtes** = **estis; nôtre = noster; vôtre = vester; goûter = gustāre.** What, then, is one thing which the French circumflex accent indicates?

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

Salvēte, discipulī et discipulae! Quid hodiē agitis, amīcī? Cōgitātisne dē linguā Latīnā? Well, I assume by now that your etymological sense will tell you that **lingua Latīna** means . . . *the Latin language* or just "Latin," your favorite subject. Now that you've developed a taste for the language, I know that you study with great "gusto"! (If you missed that bit of etymologizing, see S.A. 2 above.) The new Vocab. item **deus** turns up in the expression **deus ex machinā,** *god from a machine,* which refers (in drama and other contexts) to any person or mechanism that performs an amazing rescue from some seemingly hopeless dilemma.

Do you know that **sub** is a preposition meaning *under,* as in "subterranean," under the **terra,** *earth;* if so, you can laugh at this old favorite: **semper ubi sub ubi!** (Good hygiene and prevents rash!) And speaking of **ubi,** it asks the question that **ibi** answers; a compound form of the latter constructed with the intensifying suffix **-dem,** *the same* (see Ch. 11 for a similar use of **-dem), ibidem,** gives us **ibid.,** *in the same place cited,* just one of many Latin-based abbreviations commonly employed in English. Here are some others:

cf. = **cōnfer,** *compare*
cp. = **comparā,** *compare*
e.g. = **exemplī grātiā,** *for the sake of example*
et al. = **et aliī/aliae,** *and others* (of persons)

---

[1] For the sake of brevity this phrase will henceforth be used to direct attention to words etymologically associated with words in the sentences indicated.

etc. = **et cētera,** *and others* (of things)

i.e. = **id est,** *that is*

n.b. = **nōtā bene,** *note carefully* (i.e., pay close attention)

v.i. and v.s. = **vidē īnfrā** and **vidē suprā,** *see below* and *see above*

Semper ubi sub ubi AND the scholarly **ibid.** both in the same lesson? Well, that's what the title means: **Latīna EST gaudium—et ūtilis! Valēte!**

Paquius Proculus (?) and wife
Wallpainting from Pompeii, house at region VII.ii.6, 1st century A.D.
Museo Archeologico Nazionale, Naples, Italy

7

Third Declension Nouns

The third of Latin's five declensions contains nouns of all three genders with a great variety of nominative singular endings, but all characterized by the genitive singular in -is; because of this variety of gender and nominative form, it is especially important to memorize the full vocabulary entry (which in the chapter vocabularies will include the complete, unabbreviated genitive form—abbreviations will be used only in the notes). The declension itself is a simple matter, following the same principles already learned for first and second declension nouns: find the base (by dropping the genitive singular -is¹) and add the endings. Because the vocative is always identical to the nominative (with the sole exception of second declension -us/-ius words), it will not appear in any subsequent paradigms.

NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

	rēx, m. *king* rēg-	virtūs, f. *merit* virtūt-	homō, m. *man* homin-	corpus, n. *body* corpor-	Case Endings M./F.	N.
Base						
Nom.	rēx (rēg-s)	vírtūs	hómō	córpus	—	—
Gen.	rḗg-is	virtū́tis	hóminis	córporis	-is	-is
Dat.	rḗg-ī	virtū́tī	hóminī	córporī	-ī	-ī
Acc.	rḗg-em	virtū́tem	hóminem	córpus	-em	—
Abl.	rḗg-e	virtū́te	hómine	córpore	-e	-e

¹ As has been pointed out before, English derivatives can also be helpful in remembering the base; e.g., **iter, itineris,** *journey:* itinerary; **cor, cordis,** *heart:* cordial; **custōs, custōdis,** *guard:* custodian.

Nom.	rḗg-ēs	virtū́tēs	hóminēs	córpora	-ēs	-a
Gen.	rḗg-um	virtū́tum	hóminum	córporum	-um	-um
Dat.	rḗg-ibus	virtū́tibus	hominibus	corpóribus	-ibus	-ibus
Acc.	rḗg-ēs	virtū́tēs	hóminēs	córpora	-ēs	-a
Abl.	rḗg-ibus	virtū́tibus	homínibus	corpóribus	-ibus	-ibus

GENDER

Rules have been devised to assist you in remembering the gender of the many third declension nouns, but, aside from the fact that those denoting human beings are masculine or feminine according to sense, the exceptions to most of the other rules are numerous.[2] The safest procedure is to learn the gender of each noun as you first encounter it.[3]

TRANSLATION

In translating (as well as declining), take very careful note of the fact that a third declension noun may be modified by a first or second declension adjective; e.g., *great king* in Latin is **magnus rēx, magnī rēgis**, etc., *true peace* is **vēra pāx, vērae pācis**, etc. While an adjective and noun must agree in number, gender, and case, the spelling of their endings will not necessarily be identical.

Because some of the endings of third declension nouns are identical to the endings of different cases of nouns in other declensions (e.g., the dative singular -ī is the same as the genitive singular and the masculine nominative plural in the second declension), it is absolutely essential when reading and translating not only to pay attention to word order and context but also to recognize a particular noun's declension. Again, meticulous study of the vocabulary is the key to success.

---

[2] However, the following rules have few or no exceptions:

Masculine

-or, -ōris (amor, -ōris; labor, -ōris; arbor, *tree,* is a principal exception)
-tor, -tōris (victor, -tōris; scrīptor, -tōris, *writer*)
Feminine (including a large group of abstract nouns)
-tās, -tātis (vēritās, -tātis, *truth;* lībertās, -tātis)
-tūs, -tūtis (virtūs, -tūtis; senectūs, -tūtis, *old age*)
-tūdō, -tūdinis (multitūdō, -tūdinis; pulchritūdō, -tūdinis)
-tiō, -tiōnis (nātiō, -tiōnis; ōrātiō, -tiōnis)
Neuter
-us (corpus, corporis; tempus, temporis; genus, generis)
-e, -al, -ar (mare, maris, *sea;* animal, animālis)
-men (carmen, carminis; nōmen, nōminis)
The gender of nouns following these rules will not be given in the notes.

[3] A helpful device is to learn the proper form of some adjective like **magnus, -a, -um,** with each noun. This practice provides an easily remembered clue to the gender and is comparable to learning the definite article with nouns in Romance languages. For example: **magna virtūs, magnum corpus, magnus labor.**

VOCABULARY

ámor, amóris, m., *love* (amorous, enamored; cp. **amō, amīcus**)

cármen, cárminis, n., *song, poem* (charm)

cīvitās, cīvitātis, f., *state, citizenship* (city; cp. **cīvis,** Ch. 14)

córpus, córporis, n., *body* (corps, corpse, corpuscle, corpulent, corporal, corporeal, corporate, corporation, incorporate, corsage, corset)

hómō, hóminis, m., *human being, man* (homicide, homage; homo sapiens, but not the prefix homo-; cp. **hūmānus** and **vir**)

lábor, labóris, m., *labor, work, toil; a work, production* (laboratory, belabor, laborious, collaborate, elaborate; cp. **labōrō,** Ch. 21)

líttera, -ae, f., *a letter of the alphabet;* **litterae, -árum,** pl., *a letter (epistle), literature* (literal, letters, belles-lettres, illiterate, alliteration)

mŏs, móris, m., *habit, custom, manner;* **mórēs, mórum,** pl., *habits, morals, character* (mores, moral, immoral, immorality, morale, morose)

nómen, nóminis, n., *name* (nomenclature, nominate, nominative, nominal, noun, pronoun, renown, denomination, ignominy, misnomer)

pāx, pácis, f., *peace* (pacify, pacific, pacifist, appease, pay)

rēgína, -ae, f., *queen* (Regina, regina, reginal; cp. **regō,** Ch. 16)

rēx, régis, m., *king* (regal, regalia, regicide, royal; cp. rajah)

témpus, témporis, n., *time; occasion, opportunity* (tempo, temporary, contemporary, temporal, temporize, extempore, tense [of a verb])

térra, -ae, f., *earth, ground, land, country* (terrestrial, terrace, terrier, territory, inter [verb], parterre, subterranean, terra cotta)

úxor, uxóris, f., *wife* (uxorial, uxorious, uxoricide)

vírgō, vírginis, f., *maiden, virgin* (virgin, virginal, virginity, Virginia)

vírtūs, virtūtis, f., *manliness, courage; excellence, character, worth, virtue* (virtuoso, virtuosity, virtual; cp. **vir**)

nóvus, -a, -um, *new; strange* (novel, novelty, novice, innovate)

post, prep. + acc., *after, behind* (posterity, posterior, posthumous, post mortem, P.M. = post meridiem, preposterous, post- as a prefix, postgraduate, postlude, postwar, etc.; cp. **postrēmum,** Ch. 40)

sub, prep. + abl. with verbs of rest, + acc. with verbs of motion, *under, up under, close to* (sub- or by assimilation suc-, suf-, sug-, sup-, sus-, in countless compounds: subterranean, suburb, succeed, suffix, suggest, support, sustain)

aúdeō, audére, aúsus sum (the unusual third principal part of this "semi-deponent" verb is explained in Ch. 34), *to dare* (audacious, audacity)

nécō (1), *to murder, kill* (internecine; related to **noceō,** Ch. 35, and **necro-** from Gk. **nekros**).

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Secundās litterās discipulae herī vidēbās et dē verbīs tum cōgitābās.
2. Fēminae sine morā cīvitātem dē īnsidiīs et exitiō malō monēbunt.

3. Rēx et rēgīna igitur crās nōn audēbunt ibi remanēre.
4. Mōrēs Graecōrum nōn erant sine culpīs vitiīsque.
5. Quandō hominēs satis virtūtis habēbunt?
6. Corpora vestra sunt sāna et animī sunt plēnī sapientiae.
7. Propter mōrēs hūmānōs pācem vēram nōn habēbimus.
8. Poteritne cīvitās perīcula temporum nostrōrum superāre?
9. Post bellum multōs librōs dē pāce et remediīs bellī vidēbant.
10. Officia sapientiamque oculīs animī possumus vidēre.
11. Without sound character we cannot have peace.
12. Many students used to have small time for Greek literature.
13. After bad times true virtue and much labor will help the state.
14. The daughters of your friends were dining there yesterday.

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

1. Homō sum. (*Terence.)
2. Nihil sub sōle novum (*Ecclesiastes.—**sōl, sōlis,** m., *sun.*—**novum:** sc. **est.**)
3. Carmina nova dē adulēscentiā virginibus puerīsque nunc cantō. (Horace.—**cantāre,** *to sing.*)
4. Laudās fortūnam et mōrēs antīquae plēbis. (*Horace.—**plēbs, plēbis,** f., *the common people.*)
5. Bonī propter amōrem virtūtis peccāre ōdērunt. (Horace.—**peccāre,** *to sin.*—**ōdērunt,** defective vb., 3d per. pl., *to hate.*)
6. Sub prīncipe dūrō temporibusque malīs audēs esse bonus. (Martial.—**prīnceps, -cipis,** m., *chief, prince;* **dūrus, -a, -um,** *hard, harsh.*)
7. Populus stultus virīs indignīs honōrēs saepe dat. (Horace.—**honor, -nōris,** *honor, office.*—**indignus, -a, -um,** *unworthy.*)
8. Nōmina stultōrum in parietibus et portīs semper vidēmus. (Cicero.—The desire to scribble names and sentiments in public places is as old as antiquity!—**pariēs, -etis,** m., *wall of a building.*)
9. Ōtium sine litterīs mors est. (*Seneca.—**mors, mortis,** f., *death.*)
10. Multae nātiōnēs servitūtem tolerāre possunt; nostra cīvitās nōn potest. Praeclāra est recuperātiō lībertātis. (Cicero.—**nātiō, -ōnis** = Eng.—**servitūs, -tūtis,** *servitude.*—**praeclārus, -a, -um,** *noble, remarkable.*—**recuperātiō, -ōnis,** *recovery.*—**lībertās, -tātis** = Eng.)
11. Nihil sine magnō labōre vīta mortālibus dat. (Horace.—**mortālis, -tālis,** *a mortal.*)
12. Quōmodo in perpetuā pāce salvī et līberī esse poterimus? (Cicero.—**quōmodo,** *how.*)
13. Glōria in altissimīs Deō et in terrā pāx hominibus bonae voluntātis. (*Luke.—**altissimīs,** abl. pl., *the highest.*—**voluntās, -tātis,** *will.*)

THE RAPE OF LUCRETIA

Tarquinius Superbus erat rēx Rōmānōrum, et Sextus Tarquinius erat fīlius malus tyrannī. Sextus Lucrētiam, uxōrem Collātīnī, rapuit, et fēmina bona, propter magnum amōrem virtūtis, sē necāvit. Rōmānī antīquī virtūtem animōsque Lucrētiae semper laudābant et Tarquiniōs culpābant.

(Livy 1.58; Tarquinius Superbus was Rome's last king, Collatinus a Roman nobleman; according to legend, the rape of Lucretia led to the overthrow of the Tarquin dynasty, the end of monarchy, and the establishment of the Roman Republic in 509 B.C.—**rapuit**, *raped.*—**sē**, *herself.*—**necāvit**, a past tense form.)

Tarquin and Lucretia
Titian, 1570–75
Akademie der Bildenden Kuenste, Vienna, Austria

CATULLUS DEDICATES HIS POETRY BOOK

Cornēliō, virō magnae sapientiae, dabō pulchrum librum novum. Cornēlī, mī amīce, librōs meōs semper laudābās, et es magister doctus litterārum! Quārē habē novum labōrem meum: fāma librī (et tua fāma) erit perpetua.

(Catullus 1, prose adaptation; see L.I. 1. Catullus dedicated his first book of poems to the historian and biographer Cornelius Nepos.—**doctus, -a, -um**, *learned, scholarly.*)

ETYMOLOGY

From what Latin word do you suppose It. **uomo**, Sp. **hombre**, and Fr. **homme** and **on** are derived?

"Tense" meaning the "time" of a verb comes from **tempus** through old

Fr. **tens**; but "tense" meaning "stretched tight" goes back to **tendō, tendere, tetendī, tēnsum,** *to stretch.*

In late Latin **cīvitās** came to mean *city* rather than *state,* and thus it became the parent of the Romance words for city: It. **città,** Sp. **ciudad,** Fr. **cité.**

In the readings

2. solar, solstice.—novel, novelty, novice, novitiate, innovate, renovate. 3. chant, enchant, incantation, cant, recant, canto, cantabile, precentor. 4. plebeian, plebe, plebiscite. 5. peccant, peccadillo. 6. dour, duration, endure, obdurate. 13. volunteer, involuntary.

It may prove helpful to list the Romance and English equivalents of three of the suffixes given in n. 2.

Latin	Italian	Spanish	French	English
-tās, -tātis	-tà	-dad	-té	-ty
vēritās	verità	verdad	vérité	verity (truth)
antīquitās	antichità	antigüedad	antiquité	antiquity
-tiō, -tiōnis	-zione	-ción	-tion	-tion
nātiō	nazione	nación	nation	nation
ratiō	razione	ración	ration	ration
-tor, -tōris	-tore	-tor	-teur	-tor
inventor	inventore	inventor	inventeur	inventor
actor	attore	actor	acteur	actor

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

Salvēte, et discipulī et discipulae! Quid nunc agitis? You are beginning to see by now that Latin is living everywhere in our language; in fact, it's a **rāra avis** these days who considers Latin a dead language. To anyone who does, you might quip, **quot hominēs, tot sententiae**—an old proverb from the 2nd cen. B.C. comic playwright Terence meaning, freely, *there are as many opinions as there are men.*

Notice **terra** in the Vocab.: we met "subterranean" in the last chapter, now do you think of ET? In the 1980s the little guy was everybody's favorite *ExtraTerrestrial* (from **extrā,** prep. + acc., *beyond,* + **terra**). Until he became familiar with the terrain, he was in a **terra incognita;** but once he'd learned the territory he felt he was on **terra firma** (look all four of those up in your Funk and Wagnall's—if you need to!). And, speaking of movies, Stephen Spielberg's top-grossing *Jurassic Park* reminded us all that Tyrannosaurus rex was truly both a "tyrant" and a "king" (though Spielberg's "velociraptors" were certainly terrifying "swift-snatchers," from the Lat. adj. **vēlōx,** *fast,* as in "velocity," + **raptor,** a third decl. noun based on the verb **rapere,** *to seize, snatch, grab*). **Latīnam semper amābitis—valēte!**

8

Third Conjugation: Present Infinitive, Present, Future, and Imperfect Indicative, Imperative

The third conjugation, particularly in its present system tenses (present, future, and imperfect), is the most problematic of the four Latin conjugations. Because the stem vowel was short (-e-) and generally unaccented, unlike the stem vowels of the other three conjugations (-ā- in the first, -ē- in the second, and -ī- in the fourth, introduced in Ch. 10—cf. **laudāre, monēre,** and **audīre** with **ágere**), it had undergone a number of sound and spelling changes by the classical period. The surest procedure, as always, is to memorize the following paradigms; a little extra effort invested in mastering these forms now will pay rich dividends in every subsequent chapter.

PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE			FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE		
	1. ág-ō	(*I lead*)		1. ág-am	(*I shall lead*)
Sg.	2. ág-is	(*you lead*)		2. ág-ēs	(*you will lead*)
	3. ág-it	(*he, she, it leads*)		3. ág-et	(*he, she, it will lead*)
	1. ágimus	(*we lead*)		1. agēmus	(*we shall lead*)
Pl.	2. ágitis	(*you lead*)		2. agētis	(*you will lead*)
	3. águnt	(*they lead*)		3. ágent	(*they will lead*)

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

	1. ag-ébam	(*I was leading, used to lead,* etc.)
Sg.	2. ag-ébās	(*you were leading,* etc.)
	3. ag-ébat	(*he, she, it was leading,* etc.)
	1. agēbámus	(*we were leading,* etc.)
Pl.	2. agēbátis	(*you were leading,* etc.)
	3. agébant	(*they were leading,* etc.)

PRESENT IMPERATIVE ACTIVE

2. Sg. áge (*lead*)   2. Pl. ágite (*lead*)

PRESENT INFINITIVE

As -āre and -ēre by this time immediately indicate to you the first and the second conjugations respectively, so -ere will indicate the third. Once again you can see the importance of meticulous vocabulary study, including attention to macrons: you must be especially careful to distinguish between second conjugation verbs in -ēre and third conjugation verbs in -ere.

PRESENT STEM AND PRESENT INDICATIVE

According to the rule for finding the present stem, you drop the infinitive ending -re and have age- as the present stem. To this you would naturally expect to add the personal endings to form the present indicative. But in fact the short, unaccented stem vowel disappears altogether in the first person singular, and it was altered to -i- in the second and third persons singular and the first and second persons plural, and appears as -u- in the third plural. Consequently, the practical procedure is to memorize the endings.[1]

FUTURE INDICATIVE

The striking difference of the future tense in the third conjugation (and the fourth, as we shall see in Ch. 10) is the lack of the tense sign -bi-. Here -ē- is the sign of the future in all the forms except the first singular, and by contraction the stem vowel itself has disappeared.

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE

The imperfect tense is formed precisely according to the rules learned for the first two conjugations (present stem + -bam, -bās, etc.), except that

[1] This mnemonic device may help: (a) for the present use an IOU (i in 4 forms, o in the first, u in the last); (b) for the future you have the remaining vowels, a and e. It may also be helpful to note that the vowel alternation is exactly the same as that seen in the future endings of first and second conjugation verbs (-bō, -bis, -bit, -bimus, -bitis, -bunt).

the stem vowel has been lengthened to -ē-, yielding forms analogous to those in the first and second conjugations.

PRESENT IMPERATIVE

Also in accordance with the rule already learned, the second person singular of the present imperative is simply the present stem; e.g., **mitte** (from **mittere**, *to send*), **pōne** (**pōnere**, *to put*). In the plural imperative, however, we see again the shift of the short, unaccented -e- to -i-: hence, **mittite** and **pōnite** (not *mittete or *pōnete).

The singular imperative of **dūcere** was originally **dūce**, a form seen in the early writer Plautus. Later, however, the -e was dropped from **dūce**, as it was from the imperatives of three other common third conjugation verbs: **dīc** (**dīcere**, *say*), **fac** (**facere**, *do*), and **fer** (**ferre**, *bear*). The other verbs of this conjugation follow the rule as illustrated by **age, mitte,** and **pōne**; the four irregulars, **dīc, dūc, fac,** and **fer,** should simply be memorized.

VOCABULARY

Cícerō, Cicerónis, m., (*Marcus Tullius*) *Cicero* (Ciceronian, cicerone)

cópia, -ae, f., *abundance, supply;* **cópiae, -árum,** pl., *supplies, troops, forces* (copious, copy, cornucopia)

fráter, frátris, m., *brother* (fraternal, fraternity, fraternize, fratricide)

laus, laúdis, f., *praise, glory, fame* (laud, laudable, laudation, laudatory, magna cum laude; cp. **laudō**)

lībértās, lībertátis, f., *liberty* (cp. **līber, līberō,** Ch. 19, **līberālis,** Ch. 39)

rátiō, ratiónis, f., *reckoning, account; reason, judgment, consideration; system; manner, method* (ratio, ration, rational, irrational, ratiocination)

scríptor, scríptóris, m., *writer, author* (scriptorium; cp. **scrībō** below)

sóror, soróris, f., *sister* (sororal, sororate, sororicide, sorority)

victória, -ae, f., *victory* (victorious; see **Latīna Est Gaudium,** Ch. 5, and cp. **vincō** below)

dum, conj., *while, as long as, at the same time that;* + subjunctive, *until*

ad, prep. + acc., *to, up to, near to,* in the sense of "place to which" with verbs of motion; contrast the dat. of indirect object (administer, ad hoc, ad hominem). In compounds the **d** is sometimes assimilated to the following consonant so that **ad** may appear, for instance, as **ac-** (**accipiō: ad-capiō**), **ap-** (**appellō: ad-pellō**), **a-** (**aspiciō: ad-spiciō**).

ex or **ē,** prep. + abl., *out of, from, from within; by reason of, on account of;* following cardinal numbers, *of* (exact, except, exhibit, evict). The Romans used **ex** before consonants or vowels; **ē** before consonants only. Like **ad** and many other prepositions, **ex/ē** was often used as a prefix in compounds, sometimes with the **x** assimilated to the following consonant; e.g., **excipiō, ēdūcō, ēventus, efficiō** from **ex** + **faciō,** etc.

númquam, adv., *never* (cp. **umquam,** Ch. 23)

támen, adv., *nevertheless, still*

ágō, ágere, égī, áctum, *to drive, lead, do, act; pass, spend* (life or time); **grātiās agere** + dat., *to thank someone,* lit., *to give thanks to* (agent, agenda, agile, agitate, active, actor, action, actual, actuate)

dēmónstrō (1), *to point out, show, demonstrate* (demonstrable, demonstration, demonstrative; see the demonstrative pronouns in Ch. 9)

díscō, díscere, dídicī, *to learn* (cp. **discípulus, discípula**)

dóceō, docére, dócuī, dóctum, *to teach* (docent, docile, document, doctor, doctrine, indoctrinate)

dúcō, dúcere, dúxī, dúctum, *to lead; consider, regard; prolong* (ductile, abduct, adduce, deduce, educe, induce, produce, reduce, seduce)

gérō, gérere, géssī, géstum, *to carry; carry on, manage, conduct, wage, accomplish, perform* (gerund, gesture, gesticulate, jest, belligerent, congest, digest, suggest, exaggerate, register, registry)

scríbō, scríbere, scrípsī, scríptum, *to write, compose* (ascribe, circumscribe, conscript, describe, inscribe, proscribe, postscript, rescript, scripture, subscribe, transcribe, scribble, scrivener, shrive)

tráhō, tráhere, tráxī, tráctum, *to draw, drag; derive, acquire* (attract, contract, retract, subtract, tractor, etc.; see Etymology section below)

víncō, víncere, vícī, víctum, *to conquer, overcome* (convince, convict, evince, evict, invincible, Vincent, victor, Victoria, vanquish)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Tempora nostra nunc sunt mala; vitia nostra, magna.
2. Quārē soror mea uxōrī tuae litterās scrībit (scrībet, scrībēbat)?
3. Tyrannus populum stultum ē terrā vestrā dūcet (dūcit, dūcēbat).
4. Ubi satis ratiōnis animōrumque in hominibus erit?
5. Cōpia vērae virtūtis multās culpās superāre poterat.
6. In līberā cīvitāte adulēscentiam agēbāmus.
7. Rēgem malum tolerāre numquam dēbēmus.
8. Post parvam moram multa verba dē īnsidiīs scrīptōrum stultōrum scrībēmus.
9. The body will remain there under the ground.
10. Write (sg. and pl.) many things about the glory of our state.
11. Does reason always lead your (pl.) queen to virtue?
12. We shall always see many Greek names there.

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

1. Frāter meus vītam in ōtiō semper aget. (Terence.)
2. Age, age! Iuvā mē! Dūc mē ad secundum fīlium meum. (Terence.— **age, age** = *come, come!*)

3. Ō amīcī, lībertātem perdimus. (Laberius.—**perdere,** *to destroy.*)
4. Nova perīcula populō Rōmānō expōnam sine morā. (Cicero.—**expōnere,** *to set forth.*)
5. Numquam perīculum sine perīculō vincēmus. (Publilius Syrus.)
6. Ex meīs errōribus hominibus rēctum iter dēmōnstrāre possum. (Seneca.—**error, -rōris.**[2]—**rēctus, -a, -um,** *right.*—**iter, itineris,** *n.*, *road, way.*)
7. Catullus Mārcō Tulliō Cicerōnī magnās grātiās agit. (Catullus.—See "Thanks a Lot, Tully!" Ch. 27.)
8. Eximia fōrma virginis oculōs hominum convertit. (Livy.—**eximius, -a, -um,** *extraordinary.*—**convertere,** *to turn around, attract.*)
9. Agamemnon magnās cōpiās ē terrā Graecā ad Trōiam dūcet, ubi multōs virōs necābit. (Cicero.—**Agamemnon, -nonis.**)
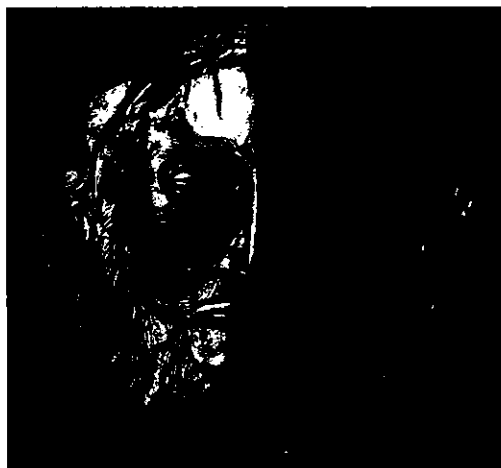
Gold funerary mask of "Agamemnon"
Mycenae, 16th century B.C.
National Archaeological Museum, Athens, Greece

10. Amor laudis hominēs trahit. (Cicero.)
11. Auctōrēs pācis Caesar cōnservābit. (Cicero.—**auctor, -tōris,** *author.*—**Caesar, -saris.**)
12. Inter multās cūrās labōrēsque carmina scrībere nōn possum. (Horace.—**inter,** prep. + acc., *among.*)
13. Dum in magnā urbe dēclāmās, mī amīce, scrīptōrem Trōiānī bellī in ōtiō relegō. (Horace.—**urbs, urbis,** f., *city.*—**dēclāmāre,** *to declaim.*—**Trōiānus, -a, -um.**—**relegere,** *to re-read.*)
14. Nōn vītae, sed scholae, discimus. (*Seneca.—**vītae** and **scholae,** datives expressing purpose; see S.S., p. 443—**schola, -ae,** *school.*)
15. Hominēs, dum docent, discunt. (*Seneca.)
16. Ratiō mē dūcet, nōn fortūna. (Livy.)

---

[2] Hereafter in the notes, when a Latin word easily suggests an English derivative, the English meaning will be omitted.

CICERO ON THE ETHICS OF WAGING WAR

Cīvitās bellum sine causā bonā aut propter īram gerere nōn dēbet. Sī fortūnās et agrōs vītāsque populī nostrī sine bellō dēfendere poterimus, tum pācem cōnservāre dēbēbimus; sī, autem, nōn poterimus esse salvī et servāre pātriam lībertātemque nostram sine bellō, bellum erit necessārium. Semper dēbēmus dēmōnstrāre, tamen, magnum officium in bellō, et magnam clēmentiam post victōriam.

(Cicero, *Dē Officiīs* 1.11.34–36 and *Dē Rē Pūblicā* 3.23.34–35, and see L.A. 7 for a fuller adaptation.—**causa, -ae.**—**dēfendere.**—**autem,** conj., *however.*—**necessārius, -a, -um.**—**clēmentia, -ae.**)

ETYMOLOGY

Also connected with **trahō** are: abstract, detract, detraction, distract, distraction, distraught, extract, protract, portray, portrait, retreat, trace, tract, tractable, intractable, traction, contraction, retraction, trait, treat, treaty, train, training.

In the readings   6. rectitude; cp. Eng. cognate "right."—itinerary, itinerant. 11. kaiser, czar. 14. "School" comes through Lat. **schola** from Greek **scholē,** *leisure.* "Waging War": causation; defense, defensive; necessary; clement, clemency.

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

Salvēte! With this chapter's copious new vocabulary, you can see again what a veritable linguistic cornucopia (a "horn of plenty," from **cōpia** + **cornū,** *horn,* which is cognate with "cornet"!) you have in Latin. **Scrīptor** is one of a large group of masc. third decl. nouns formed by replacing the **-um** of a verb's fourth principal part with **-or,** a suffix meaning essentially *one who performs the action of the verb.* So, a **monitor, -tōris,** is *one who advises,* i.e., *an advisor;* an **amātor** is *a lover;* etc. What would be the similarly formed nouns from **docēre** and **agō?** Look at the other verbs introduced in this chapter and at the vocabularies in the previous chapters; what other such **-or** nouns can you form and recognize?

The point is that if you know one Latin root word, then you will often discover and be able to deduce the meanings of whole families of words: the verb **discere,** e.g., is related to **discipulus** and **discipula,** of course, and also to the noun **disciplīna.** I like to point out that "discipline" is *not* "punishment" but "learning." If you saw the popular 1993 film *Man Without a Face,* you heard lots of Latin, including a favorite old injunction and the motto of England's Winchester College, **aut disce aut discēde,** *either learn or leave* (I have this posted on my office door). You'll be learning, not leaving, I have no doubt, but for now, **valēte, discipulī et discipulae!**

9

Demonstratives Hic, Ille, Iste; Special -īus Adjectives

DEMONSTRATIVES

The Latin demonstratives (from **dēmōnstrāre,** *to point out*) function either as pronouns or adjectives equivalent to English *this/these* and *that/those;* the declension generally follows that of **magnus, -a, -um** (see Ch. 4), with the exception of the forms underlined in the following paradigms (which, as always, should be memorized by repeating the forms aloud, from left to right, **hic, haec, hoc; huius, huius, huius;** etc.).

	ille, *that, those*			**hic,** *this, these*		
	M.	**F.**	**N.**	**M.**	**F.**	**N.**
Singular						
Nom.	ílle	ílla	íllud	hic	haec	hoc
Gen.	illíus	illíus	illíus	húius	húius	húius
Dat.	illī	illī	illī	huic	huic	huic
Acc.	íllum	íllam	íllud	hunc	hanc	hoc
Abl.	íllō	illā	íllō	hōc	hāc	hōc
Plural						
Nom.	illī	íllae	ílla	hī	hae	haec
Gen.	illórum	illárum	illórum	hórum	hárum	hórum
Dat.	illīs	illīs	illīs	hīs	hīs	hīs
Acc.	íllōs	illās	ílla	hōs	hās	haec
Abl.	illīs	illīs	illīs	hīs	hīs	hīs

DECLENSION

Iste, ista, istud, *that (near you), that of yours, such,* follows the declension of **ille:** *nom.* iste, ista, istud; *gen.* istíus, istíus, istíus; *dat.* istī, istī, istī; etc. Be ready to give all the forms orally.

Again, all three demonstratives follow the pattern of **magnus, -a, -um** quite closely, entirely in the plural with the exception of the neuter **haec.** The most striking differences are in the distinctive genitive and dative singular forms (shared by the nine other special adjectives discussed below) and the -c in several forms of **hic,** a shortened form of the demonstrative enclitic -ce. Note that **huius** and **huic** are among the few words in which **ui** functions as a diphthong; for the special pronunciation of **huius** (= **hui-yus**) see the Introduction (p. xli).

USAGE AND TRANSLATION

In general the demonstratives point out persons or things either near the speaker (**hic liber,** *this book* = *this book of mine, this book here*) or near the addressee (**iste liber,** *that book, that book of yours, that book next to you*), or distant from both (**ille liber,** *that book* = *that book over there, that book of his or hers*). **Ille** and **hic** are sometimes equivalent to *the former* and *the latter,* respectively, and occasionally they have little more force than our personal pronouns, *he, she, it, they;* **ille** can also mean *the famous . . . ;* **iste** is sometimes best translated *such,* and occasionally has a disparaging sense, as in **ista īra,** *that awful anger of yours.*

When demonstratives modify nouns, they function as adjectives; since they are by nature emphatic, they regularly precede the nouns they modify. The following examples will provide practice with some of the more troublesome forms.

hic liber, *this book*	hanc cīvitātem, *this state*
ille liber, *that book*	huic cīvitātī, *to this state*
illīus librī, *of that book*	illī cīvitātī, *to that state*
illī librī, *those books*	illae cīvitātēs, *those states*
illī librō, *to that book*	haec cīvitās, *this state*
illō librō, *by that book*	haec cōnsilia, *these plans*
istíus amīcī, *of that friend (of yours)*	hoc cōnsilium, *this plan*
istī amīcī, *those friends (of yours)*	hōc cōnsiliō, *by this plan*
istī amīcō, *to that friend (of yours)*	huic cōnsiliō, *to this plan*

When used alone, demonstratives function as pronouns (from Lat. **prō,** *for, in place of,* + **nōmen,** *name, noun*) and can commonly be translated as *this man, that woman, these things,* and the like, according to their gender, number, and context.

hic, *this man*	ille, *that man*
hanc, *this woman*	illa, *that woman*
hunc, *this man*	illa, *those things*
haec, *this woman*	huius, *of this man or woman*[1]
haec, *these things*	illī, *to that man or woman*[1]
istum, *that man*	illī, *those men*
istārum, *of those women*	

SPECIAL -*ius* ADJECTIVES

The singular of nine adjectives of the first and the second declensions is irregular in that the genitive ends in -**ius** and the dative in -**ī**, following the pattern of **illīus** and **illī** above. Elsewhere in the singular and throughout the plural these are regular adjectives of the first and the second declensions, following the pattern of **magnus, -a, -um.**[2]

	sōlus, -a, -um, *alone, only*			**alius, alia, aliud,** *another, other*		
Singular						
Nom.	sólus	sóla	sólum	álius	ália	áliud
Gen.	sōlíus	sōlíus	sōlíus	alteríus[3]	alteríus	alteríus
Dat.	sólī	sólī	sólī	áliī	áliī	áliī
Acc.	sólum	sólam	sólum	álium	áliam	áliud
Abl.	sólō	sólā	sólō	áliō	áliā	áliō
Plural						
Nom.	sólī	sólae etc.	sóla	áliī	áliae etc.	ália

The nine adjectives in this group can be easily remembered via the acronym UNUS NAUTA, each letter of which represents the first letter of one of the adjectives (and which at the same time includes one of the nine words, **ūnus,** and even reminds you that **nauta,** though a first declension noun, is masculine, hence the masculine form **ūnus**). Note, too, that each of the nine words indicates some aspect of number:

[1] As a rule, the neuter was used as a pronoun only in the nominative and the accusative. In the genitive, the dative, and the ablative cases the Romans preferred to use the demonstrative as an adjective in agreement with the noun for "thing"; e.g., **huius reī,** *of this thing.*

[2] Except for the neuter singular form **aliud** (cp. **illud**).

[3] This form, borrowed from **alter,** is more common than the regular one, **alīus.**

UNUS:

ūnus, -a, -um (ūnīus, etc.), *one*
nūllus, -a, -um (nūllīus, etc.), *no, none*
ūllus, -a, -um, *any*
sōlus, -a, -um, *alone, only*

NAUTA:

neuter, neutra, neutrum, *neither*
alius, -a, -ud, *another, other*
uter, utra, utrum, *either, which (of two)*
tōtus, -a, -um, *whole, entire*
alter, altera, alterum, *the other (of two)*

VOCABULARY

lócus, -ī, m., *place; passage in literature;* pl., lóca, -órum, n., *places, region;* lócī, -órum, m., *passages in literature* (allocate, dislocate, locality, locomotion)

mórbus, -ī, m., *disease, sickness* (morbid, morbidity)

stúdium, -iī, n. *eagerness, zeal, pursuit, study* (studio, studious; cp. stúdeō, Ch. 35)

hic, haec, hoc, *this; the latter;* at times weakened to *he, she, it, they* (ad hoc)

ílle, ílla, íllud, *that; the former; the famous; he, she, it, they*

iste, ísta, ístud, *that of yours, that; such;* sometimes with contemptuous force

álius, -a, -ud, *other, another;* álīī . . . álīī, *some . . . others* (alias, alibi, alien)

álter, áltera, álterum, *the other (of two), second* (alter, alteration, alternate, alternative, altercation, altruism, adulterate, adultery)

neúter, neútra, neútrum, *not either, neither* (neutrality, neutron)

núllus, -a, -um, *not any, no, none* (null, nullify, nullification, annul)

sólus, -a, -um, *alone, only, the only;* nōn sólum . . . sed étiam, *not only . . . but also* (sole, solitary, soliloquy, solo, desolate, sullen)

tótus, -a, -um, *whole, entire* (total, totality, factotum, in toto)

úllus, -a, -um, *any*

únus, -a, -um, *one, single, alone* (unit, unite, union, onion, unanimous, unicorn, uniform, unique, unison, universal, university)

úter, útra, útrum, *either, which (of two)*

énim, postpositive conj., *for, in fact, truly*

in, prep. + acc., *into, toward; against* (also in + abl., *in, on,* see Ch. 3). In compounds in- may also appear as il-, ir-, im-; and it may have its literal meanings or have simply an intensive force. (Contrast the inseparable negative prefix in-, *not, un-, in-.*)

nímis or nímium, adv., *too, too much, excessively*

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Hic tōtus liber litterās Rōmānās semper laudat.
2. Hī igitur illīs deābus herī grātiās agēbant.
3. Illud dē vitiīs istīus rēgīnae nunc scrībam, et ista poenās dabit.
4. Neuter alterī plēnam cōpiam pecūniae tum dabit.
5. Potestne laus ūllīus terrae esse perpetua?
6. Labor ūnīus numquam poterit hās cōpiās vincere.
7. Mōrēs istīus scrīptōris erant nimis malī.
8. Nūllī magistrī, tamen, sub istō vēra docēre audēbant.
9. Valēbitne pāx in patriā nostrā post hanc victōriam?
10. Dum illī ibi remanent, aliī nihil agunt, aliī discunt.
11. Cicero was writing about the glory of the other man and his wife.
12. The whole state was thanking this man's brother alone.
13. On account of that courage of yours those (men) will lead no troops into these places tomorrow.
14. Will either book be able to overcome the faults of these times?

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

1. Ubi illās nunc vidēre possum? (Terence.)
2. Hic illam virginem in mātrimōnium dūcet. (Terence.—**mātrimōnium, -iī.**)
3. Huic cōnsiliō palmam dō. (Terence.—**palma, -ae,** *palm branch* of victory.)
4. Virtūtem enim illīus virī amāmus. (Cicero.)
5. Sōlus hunc iuvāre potes. (Terence.)
6. Poena istīus ūnīus hunc morbum cīvitātis relevābit sed perīculum semper remanēbit. (Cicero.—**relevāre,** *to relieve, diminish.*)
7. Hī enim dē exitiō huius cīvitātis et tōtīus orbis terrārum cōgitant. (Cicero.—**orbis, orbis,** m., *circle, orb;* **orbis terrārum,** idiom, *the world.*)
8. Est nūllus locus utrī hominī in hāc terrā. (Martial.)
9. Nōn sōlum ēventus hoc docet—iste est magister stultōrum!—sed etiam ratiō. (Livy.—**ēventus,** *outcome.*)

WHEN I HAVE ... ENOUGH!

Habet Āfricānus mīliēns, tamen captat.
Fortūna multīs dat nimis, satis nūllī.

(*Martial 12.10; meter: choliambic.—**Āfricānus, -ī,** a personal name.—**mīliēns,** call it *millions.*—**captāre,** *to hunt for legacies.*)

Sī vīs studēre philosophiae animōque, hoc studium nōn potest valēre sine frūgālitāte. Haec frūgālitās est paupertās voluntāria. Tolle, igitur, istās excūsātiōnēs: "Nōndum satis pecūniae habeō. Sī quandō illud 'satis' ha-

bēbō, tum mē tōtum philosophiae dabō." Incipe nunc philosophiae, nōn pecūniae, studēre.

(Seneca, *Epistulae* 17.5.—vīs, irreg. form, *you wish.*—studēre + dat., *to be eager for, devote oneself to.*—frūgālitās -tātis.—paupertās, -tātis, *small means, poverty.*—voluntārius, -a, -um.—tollere, *to take away.*—excūsātiō, -ōnis.—nōndum, adv., *not yet.*—incipe, imper., *begin.*)
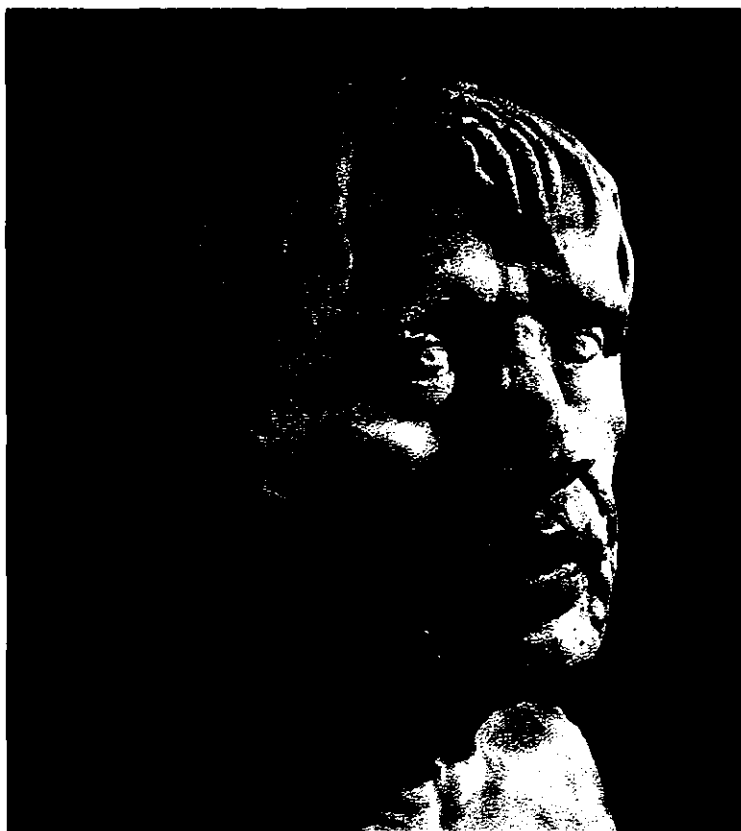
Seneca (the Younger)
Museo Archeologico Nazionale
Naples, Italy

ETYMOLOGY

A few examples of **in-** as a prefix connected with the preposition: invoke, induce, induct, inscribe, inhibit, indebted.

Some examples of **in-** as an inseparable negative prefix: invalid, innumerable, insane, insuperable, intolerant, inanimate, infamous, inglorious, impecunious, illiberal, irrational.

Latin **ille** provided Italian, Spanish, and French with the definite article and with pronouns of the third person; and Latin **ūnus** provided these languages with the indefinite article. Some of these forms and a few other derivatives are shown in the following table:

Latin	Italian	Spanish	French
ille, illa	il, la	el, la	le, la
ille, illa	egli, ella	él, ella	il, elle
ūnus, ūna	un(o), una	un(o), una	un, une
tōtus	tutto	todo	tout
sōlus	solo	solo	seul
alter	altro	otro	autre

Fr. **là** (*there*) comes from **illāc** (**viā**), an adverbial form meaning *there* (*that way*); similarly, It. **là** and Sp. **allá.**

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

Salvēte! Here is a mysterious old inscription, found on a hitching post out west in Dodge City:

<div align="center">

TOTI

EMUL

ESTO

</div>

Aha!—looks like the newly learned dat. of **tōtus** + **emul**, like **simul,** *simultaneously?* + some form of **sum, es, est,** the exotic future imperative, perhaps? (NOT!—that old post was just "to tie mules to"!)

Here are some more vocab. items useful for Latin conversation and other classroom activities: **surgere,** *to rise, stand up* (surge, resurgence, insurgence); **sedēre,** *to sit* (sedentary); **ambulāre,** *to walk* (ambulatory, amble, ambulance); **aperīre** (fourth conj.), *to open* (aperture); **claudere,** *to close* (clause, closet); **dēclīnāre; coniugāre; crēta, -ae,** *chalk* (cretaceous); **ērāsūra, -ae,** *eraser;* **stilus, -ī,** *pen* or *pencil* (actually a stylus); **tabula, -ae,** *chalkboard* (tabular, tabulate); **tabella, -ae,** the diminutive form of **tabula,** *notebook, writing pad* (tablet); **iānua, -ae,** *door* (janitor, Janus, January); **fenestra, -ae,** *window;* **cella, -ae,** *room* (cell); **sella, -ae,** *chair;* **mēnsa, -ae,** *table;* **podium, -iī.** Now you'll know just what to do when your instructor says to you, **Salvē, discipula** (or **discipule)! Quid agis hodiē? Surge ex sellā tuā, ambulā ad tabulam, et dēclīnā** "**hic, haec, hoc.**" Next thing you know, you'll be speaking Latin—not so difficult (even Roman toddlers did!): **semper valēte, amīcae amīcīque!**

10

Fourth Conjugation and -iō Verbs of the Third

This chapter introduces the last of the regular conjugations, in the active voice, the fourth conjugation (illustrated here by **audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītum**, *to hear*) and **-iō** verbs of the third (illustrated by **capiō, capere, cēpī, captum**, *to take, seize*). Like the first two conjugations, the fourth is characterized by a long stem vowel; as seen in the paradigm below, the -ī- is retained through all the present system tenses (present, future, imperfect), although it is shortened before vowels as well as before final -t. Certain third conjugation verbs are formed in the same way in the present system, except that the -i- is everywhere short and e appears as the stem vowel in the singular imperative (**cape**) and the present active infinitive (**capere**). Agō is presented alongside these new paradigms for comparison and review (see Ch. 8).

PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

		ágō	aúdi-ō	cápi-ō	
	1.	ágō	aúdi-ō	cápi-ō	(*I hear, take*)
Sg.	2.	ágis	aúdī-s	cápi-s	(*you hear, take*)
	3.	ágit	aúdi-t	cápi-t	(*he, she, it hears, takes*)
	1.	ágimus	audímus	cápimus	(*we hear, take*)
Pl.	2.	ágitis	audítis	cápitis	(*you hear, take*)
	3.	águnt	aúdiunt	cápiunt	(*they hear, take*)

FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE

	1.	ágam	aúdi-am	cápi-am	(*I shall hear, take*)
Sg.	2.	ágēs	aúdi-ēs	cápi-ēs	(*you will hear, take*)
	3.	áget	aúdi-et	cápi-et	(*he, she, it will hear, take*)
	1.	agémus	audiémus	capiémus	(*we shall hear, take*)
Pl.	2.	agétis	audiétis	capiétis	(*you will hear, take*)
	3.	ágent	aúdient	cápient	(*they will hear, take*)

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

	1.	agébam	audi-ébam	capi-ébam	(*I was hearing, taking*)
Sg.	2.	agébās	audi-ébās	capi-ébās	(*you were hearing, taking*)
	3.	agébat	audi-ébat	capi-ébat	(*he, she, it was hearing, taking*)
	1.	agēbámus	audiēbámus	capiēbámus	(*we were hearing, taking*)
Pl.	2.	agēbátis	audiēbátis	capiēbátis	(*you were hearing, taking*)
	3.	agébant	audiébant	capiébant	(*they were hearing, taking*)

PRESENT IMPERATIVE ACTIVE

Sg.	2.	áge	aúdī	cápe	(*hear, take*)
Pl.	2.	ágite	audí-te	cápi-te	(*hear, take*)

CONJUGATION OF *Audiō*

The -īre distinguishes the infinitive of the fourth conjugation from the infinitives of the other conjugations (**laud-áre, mon-ére, ág-ere, aud-íre, cá-pere**).

As in the case of the first two conjugations, the rule for the formation of the present indicative is to add the personal endings to the present stem (**audī-**). In the third person plural this rule would give us *audi-nt but the actual form is **audi-unt**, an ending reminiscent of **águnt**.

For the future of **audiō** a good rule of thumb is this: shorten the ī of the present stem, **audi-**, and add the future endings of **agō**: -am, -ēs, -et, -ēmus, -ētis, -ent. Once again, as in the third conjugation, -ē- is the characteristic vowel of the future.

The imperfect is formed with -iē-, instead of simply the stem vowel -ī-, before the -bā- tense sign, so that the forms are **audiēbam, audiēbās**, etc. (rather than *audībam, etc., as might be expected).

The imperatives, however, follow exactly the pattern of the first and second conjugations, i.e., the singular is the same as the present stem (**audī**) and the plural merely adds -te (**audīte**).

CONJUGATION OF Capiō

The infinitive **capere** is clearly an infinitive of the third conjugation, not of the fourth. The imperative forms also show that this is a verb of the third conjugation.

The present, future, and imperfect indicative of **capiō** follow the pattern of **audiō**, except that **capiō**, like **agō**, has a short **-i-** in **cápis, cápimus, cápitis**.

Note again very carefully the rule that the **-i-** appears in all present system active indicative forms for both fourth and third **-iō** verbs, and remember that two vowels, **-iē-**, appear before the **-bā-** in the imperfect.

VOCABULARY

amīcítia, -ae, f., *friendship* (cp. **amō, amīca, amīcus**)

cupídítās, cupiditátis, f., *desire, longing, passion; cupidity, avarice* (cp. **cupīo,** Ch. 17)

hóra, -ae, f., *hour, time*

nātúra, -ae, f., *nature* (natural, preternatural, supernatural; cp. **nāscor,** Ch. 34)

senéctūs, senectútis, f., *old age* (cp. **senex,** Ch. 16)

tímor, timóris, m., *fear* (timorous; cp. **timeō,** Ch. 15)

vérítās, vēritátis, f., *truth* (verify, veritable, verity; cp. **vērus, vērō,** Ch. 29)

via, -ae, f., *way, road, street* (via, viaduct, deviate, devious, obvious, pervious, impervious, previous, trivial, voyage, envoy)

volúptās, voluptátis, f., *pleasure* (voluptuary, voluptuous)

beátus, -a, -um, *happy, fortunate, blessed* (beatific, beatify, beatitude, Beatrice)

quóniam, conj., *since, inasmuch as*

cum, prep. + abl., *with*. As a prefix **cum** may appear as **com-, con-, cor-, col-, co-,** and means *with, together, completely,* or simply has an intensive force (complete, connect, corroborate, collaborate)

aúdiō, audíre, audívī, audítum, *to hear, listen to* (audible, audience, audit, audition, auditory; cp. **audītor,** Ch. 16)

cápiō, cápere, cépī, cáptum, *to take, capture, seize, get.* In compounds the **-a-** becomes **-i-, -cipiō: ac-cipiō, ex-cipiō, in-cipiō, re-cipiō,** etc. (capable, capacious, capsule, captious, captive, captor)

dícō, dícere, díxī, dictum, *to say, tell, speak; name, call* (dictate, dictum, diction, dictionary, dight, ditto, contradict, indict, edict, verdict)

fáciō, fácere, fécī, fáctum, *to make, do, accomplish.* In compounds the **-a-** becomes **-i-, -ficiō: cōn-ficiō, per-ficiō,** etc. (facile, fact, faction, factotum, facsimile, faculty, fashion, feasible, feat)

fúgiō, fúgere, fúgī, fúgitúrum, *to flee, hurry away; escape; go into exile; avoid, shun* (fugitive, fugue, centrifugal, refuge, subterfuge)

véniō, veníre, vénī, véntum, *to come* (advent, adventure, avenue, convene, contravene, covenant, event, inconvenient, intervene, parvenu, prevent, provenience)

invéniō, invenīre, -vénī, -véntum, *to come upon, find* (invent, inventory)

vīvō, vívere, vīxī, victum, *to live* (convivial, revive, survive, vivacity, vivid, vivify, viviparous, vivisection, victual, vittle; cp. vīta)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Quid discipulae hodiē discere dēbent?
2. Frātrēs nihil cum ratiōne herī gerēbant.
3. Ille magnam virtūtem labōris et studiī docēre saepe audet.
4. Hic dē senectūte scrībēbat; ille, dē amōre; et alius, dē lībertāte.
5. Ex librīs ūnīus virī nātūram hārum īnsidiārum dēmōnstrābimus.
6. Istī sōlī victōriam nimis amant; neuter dē pāce cōgitat.
7. Ubi cīvitās ūllōs virōs magnae sapientiae audiet?
8. Ex illīs terrīs in hunc locum cum amīcīs vestrīs venīte.
9. Post paucās hōrās sorōrem illīus invenīre poterāmus.
10. Cōpiae vestrae utrum virum ibi numquam capient.
11. Alter Graecus remedium huius morbī inveniet.
12. Carmina illīus scrīptōris sunt plēna nōn sōlum vēritātis sed etiam virtūtis.
13. We shall then come to your land without any friends.
14. While he was living, nevertheless, we were able to have no peace.
15. The whole state now shuns and will always shun these vices.
16. He will, therefore, thank the queen and the whole people.

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

1. Cupiditātem pecūniae glōriaeque fugite. (Cicero.)
2. Officium meum faciam. (*Terence.)
3. Fāma tua et vīta fīliae tuae in perīculum crās venient. (Terence.)
4. Vīta nōn est vīvere sed valēre. (Martial.)
5. Semper magnō cum timōre incipiō dīcere. (Cicero.— **incipiō, -ere,** *to begin*.)
6. Sī mē dūcēs, Mūsa, corōnam magnā cum laude capiam. (Lucretius.—**Mūsa, -ae,** *Muse.*—**corōna, -ae,** *crown.*)
7. Vīve memor mortis; fugit hōra. (Persius.—**memor,** adj. nom. sg. m. or f., *mindful.*—**mors, mortis,** f., *death.*)
8. Rapite, amīcī, occāsiōnem dē hōrā. (Horace.— **rapiō, -ere,** *to snatch, seize.*—**occāsiō, -ōnis,** f., *opportunity.*)
9. Paucī veniunt ad senectūtem. (*Cicero.)
10. Sed fugit, intereā, fugit tempus. (Virgil.—**intereā,** adv., *meanwhile.*— The verb is repeated for emphasis.)
11. Fāta viam invenient. (*Virgil.—**fātum, -ī,** *fate.*)

12. Bonum virum nātūra, nōn ōrdō, facit. (*Publilius Syrus.—**ōrdō, -dinis,** m., *rank.*)

13. Obsequium parit amīcōs; vēritās parit odium. (Cicero.—**ob-sequium, -iī,** *compliance.*—**pariō, -ere,** *to produce.*—**odium, -iī,** *hate.*)

THE INCOMPARABLE VALUE OF FRIENDSHIP

Nihil cum amīcitiā possum comparāre; dī hominibus nihil melius dant. Pecūniam aliī mālunt; aliī, corpora sāna; aliī, fāmam glōriamque; aliī, volup-tātēs—sed hī virī nimium errant, quoniam illa sunt incerta et ex fortūnā veniunt, nōn ex sapientiā. Amīcitia enim ex sapientiā et amōre et mōribus bonīs et virtūte venit; sine virtūte amīcitia nōn potest esse. Sī nūllōs amīcōs habēs, habēs vītam tyrannī; sī inveniēs amīcum vērum, vīta tua erit beāta.

(Cicero, *Dē Amīcitiā*, excerpts; see L.A. 6.—**comparāre.**—**melius,** *better.*—**mā-lunt,** *prefer.*—**incertus, -a, -um,** *uncertain.*)

ETYMOLOGY

Audiō is the ultimate ancestor of these surprising descendants: "obey" through Fr. **obéir** from Lat. **obēdīre (ob + audīre);** "obedient" **(ob + audiēns);** "oyez, oyez" from Fr. **ouir,** Lat. **audīre.**

In the readings   5. incipient, inception. 6. museum, music.—corona, coronation, coro-nary, coroner, corolla, corollary. 7. memory, memoir, commemorate. 8. rapid, rapture, rapacious. 13. obsequious.—odium, odious. "Friendship": comparable.—certainty.

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

Salvēte! Do you remember being introduced to masc. **-or** nouns formed from the fourth principal parts of verbs? (That was back in Ch. 8.) Well, there are lots of others related to the new verbs in this chapter: **audītor,** Eng. *auditor, listener,* is one; can you find others? Look at the section on Etymological Aids in the App., p. 435–42 below, and you'll learn a great deal more about word families, including another group of third decl. nouns, mostly fem., formed by adding the suffix **-iō (-iōnis, -iōnī,** etc.) to the same fourth principal part. Such nouns generally indicate the performance or re-sult of an action, e.g., **audītiō, audītiōnis,** f., *listening, hearing,* and many have Eng. derivatives in *-ion* (like "audition"). Another example from this chapter's Vocab. is **dictiō,** *(the act of) speaking, public speaking,* which gives us such Eng. derivatives as "diction" (the manner or style of one's speaking or writing), "dictionary," "benediction," "contradiction," etc. How many other Latin nouns and Eng. derivatives can you identify from the new verbs in this chapter? Happy hunting, but in the meantime **tempus fugit,** so I'll have to say **valēte!**

11

Personal Pronouns Ego, Tū, and Is; Demonstratives Is and Īdem

PERSONAL PRONOUNS

A personal pronoun is a word used in place of a noun (remember **prō + nōmen**) to designate a particular person, from the speaker's point of view: the first person pronoun indicates the speaker himself or herself (Lat. **ego/ nōs,** *I/me, we/us*), the second person pronoun indicates the person(s) addressed by the speaker (**tū/vōs,** *you*), and the third person indicates the person(s) or thing(s) the speaker is talking about (**is, ea, id,** and their plurals, *he/him, she/her, it, they/them*).

THE FIRST AND SECOND PERSON PRONOUNS Ego/Nōs, Tū/Vōs

While the first and second person pronouns are irregular in form, their declensions are quite similar to one another and are easily memorized; note that there are two different forms for the genitive plural.

1st Person—Ego, *I*			2nd Person—Tū, *You*	
Singular				
Nom.	égo	(*I*)	tū	(*you*)
Gen.	méī	(*of me*)	túī	(*of you*)
Dat.	mihi	(*to/for me*)	tíbi	(*to/for you*)
Acc.	mē	(*me*)	tē	(*you*)
Abl.	mē	(*by/with/from me*)	tē	(*by/with/from you*)

Plural

Nom.	nōs	(*we*)	vōs	(*you*)
Gen.	nóstrum	(*of us*)	véstrum	(*of you*)
	nóstrī	(*of us*)	véstrī	(*of you*)
Dat.	nôbīs	(*to/for us*)	vóbīs	(*to/for you*)
Acc.	nōs	(*us*)	vōs	(*you*)
Abl.	nôbīs	(*by/with/from us*[1])	vóbīs	(*by/with/from you*)

THE THIRD PERSON/DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN Is, Ea, Id

The declension of the pronoun **is, ea, id** is comparable to those of **hic** and **ille** (Ch. 9), i.e., the pattern is that of **magnus, -a, -um** (Ch. 4), with the exception of the forms underlined below; note that the base is e- in all but four forms (including the alternate nominative plural **iī**).

	Masculine		**Feminine**		**Neuter**	
Singular						
N.	is	(*he*[2])	éa	(*she*[2])	id	(*it*[2])
G.	éius[3]	(*of him, his*)	éius	(*of her, her*)	éius	(*of it, its*)
D.	éī	(*to/for him*)	éī	(*to/for her*)	éī	(*to/for it*)
A.	éum	(*him*)	éam	(*her*)	id	(*it*)
A.	éō	(*by/w./fr. him*)	éā	(*by/w./fr. her*)	éō	(*by/w./fr. it*)
Plural						
N.	éī, iī	(*they,* masc.)	éae	(*they,* fem.)	éa	(*they,* neut.)
G.	eórum	(*of them, their*)	eárum	(*of them, their*)	eórum	(*of them, their*)
D.	éīs	(*to/for them*)	éīs	(*to/for them*)	éīs	(*to/for them*)
A.	éōs	(*them*)	éās	(*them*)	éa	(*them*)
A.	éīs	(*by/w./fr. them*)	éīs	(*by/w./fr. them*)	éīs	(*by/w./fr. them*)

USAGE

Since these pronouns are employed as substitutes for nouns, they are in general used as their corresponding nouns would be used: as subjects, direct objects, indirect objects, objects of prepositions, and the like.

Ego tibi (vōbīs) librōs dabō, *I shall give the books to you.*
Ego eī (eīs) librōs dabō, *I shall give the books to him* or *her (to them).*
Tū mē (nōs) nōn capiēs, *you will not capture me (us).*

---

[1] You will find that a preposition is used in Latin with most ablatives when the noun or pronoun in the ablative indicates a person.
[2] Also *this/that man, woman, thing.*
[3] Pronounced ei-yus (cp. **huius**, Ch. 9).

Eī id ad nōs mittent, *they* (masc.) *will send it to us.*
Vōs eōs (eās, ea) nōn capiētis, *you will not capture them (them).*
Eae ea ad tē mittent, *they* (fem.) *will send them (those things) to you.*

Notice, however, that the Romans used the nominatives of the pronouns (**ego, tū,** etc.) *only* when they wished to stress the subject. Commonly, therefore, the pronominal subject of a Latin verb is not indicated except by the ending.

Eīs pecūniam dabō, *I shall give them money.*
Ego eīs pecūniam dabō; quid tū dabis? *I shall give them money; what will you give?*

Another point of usage: when **cum** was employed with the ablative of the personal pronouns (as well as the relative and reflexive pronouns, to be studied later), it was generally suffixed to the pronoun, rather than preceding it as a separate preposition: **eōs nōbīscum ibi inveniēs,** *you will find them there with us.*

Notice also that the genitives of **ego** and **tū** (namely **meī, nostrum, nostrī; tuī, vestrum, vestrī**) were *not* used to indicate possession.[4] To convey this idea, the Romans preferred the possessive pronominal adjectives, which you have already learned:

meus, -a, -um, *my*	tuus, -a, -um, *your*
noster, -tra, -trum, *our*	vester, -tra, -trum, *your*

English usage is comparable: just as Latin says **liber meus,** not **liber meī,** so English says *my book,* not *the book of me.*

The genitives of **is, ea, id,** on the other hand, *were* quite commonly used to indicate possession. Hence, while **eius** can sometimes be translated *of him/ of her/of it,* it is very often best translated *his/her/its;* likewise **eōrum/eārum/ eōrum** can be rendered *of them,* but its common possessive usage should be translated *their.* Study the possessives in the following examples, in which **mittam** governs all the nouns.

Mittam (*I shall send*)

pecūniam meam (*my money*).	amīcōs meōs (*my friends*).
pecūniam nostram (*our money*).	amīcōs nostrōs (*our friends*).
pecūniam tuam (*your money*).	amīcōs tuōs (*your friends*).

[4] **Meī** and **tuī** were used as objective genitives (e.g., **timor tuī,** *fear of you*—see S.S., p. 442–43 below) and partitive genitives (or "genitives of the whole," e.g., **pars meī,** *part of me*—see Ch. 15), **nostrī** and **vestrī** only as objective gens., and **nostrum** and **vestrum** only as partitive gens.

pecūniam vestram (*your money*).	amīcōs vestrōs (*your friends*).
pecūniam eius (*his, her money*).	amīcōs eius (*his, her friends*).
pecūniam eōrum (*their money*).	amīcōs eōrum (*their friends*).
pecūniam eārum (*their money*).	amīcōs eārum (*their friends*).

The possessive pronominal adjectives of the first and the second persons naturally agree with their noun in *gender, number,* and *case,* as all adjectives agree with their nouns. The possessive genitives **eius, eōrum,** and **eārum,** being genitive pronouns, remain unchanged regardless of the gender, number, and case of the noun on which they depend.

A last important point regarding possessives is the fact that Latin frequently omits them, except for emphasis or to avoid ambiguity. English, on the other hand, employs possessives regularly, and so you will often need to supply them in translating from Latin (just as you do the articles "a," "an," and "the"), in order to produce an idiomatic translation; e.g., **patriam amāmus,** *we love our country.*

Is, Ea, Id AS DEMONSTRATIVE

While commonly serving as Latin's third person pronoun, **is** was also used as a demonstrative, somewhat weaker in force than **hic** or **ille** and translatable as either *this/these* or *that/those.* In general you should translate the word in this way when you find it immediately preceding and modifying a noun (in the same number, gender, and case); contrast the following:

Is est bonus, *he is good.*
Is amīcus est vir bonus, *this friend is a good man.*

Vidēsne eam, *do you see her?*
Vidēsne eam puellam, *do you see that girl?*

DEMONSTRATIVE *Īdem, Eadem, Idem,*
the Same

The very common demonstrative **īdem, eadem, idem,** *the same (man, woman, thing),* is formed simply by adding **-dem** directly to the forms of **is, ea, id,** e.g., gen. **eiusdem,** dat. **eīdem,** etc.; besides the singular nominatives **īdem** (masc., for **isdem*) and **idem** (neut., rather than **iddem*), the only forms not following this pattern exactly are those shown below, where final **-m** changes to **-n-** before the **-dem** suffix (for the full declension of **īdem,** see the Summary of Forms, p. 449 below).

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Singular			
Acc.	eúndem[5]	eándem	ídem
Plural			
Gen.	eōrúndem[5]	eārúndem	eōrúndem

Like other demonstratives, **īdem** may function as an adjective or a pronoun: **eōsdem mittō**, *I am sending the same men;* **dē eādem ratiōne cōgitābāmus**, *we were thinking about the same plan.*

VOCABULARY

cáput, cápitis, n., *head; leader; beginning; life; heading; chapter* (cape = headland, capital, capitol, capitulate, captain, chief, chieftain, chef, cattle, chattels, cadet, cad, achieve, decapitate, recapitulate, precipice, occiput, sinciput, kerchief)

cónsul, cónsulis, m., *consul* (consular, consulate, consulship; cp. **cōnsilium**)

némō, nūllíus,[6] **némin , néminem, núllō**[6] or **núllā**, m. or f., *no one, nobody*

égo, méī, *I* (ego, egoism, egotism, egotistical)

tū, túī, *you*

is, éa, id, *this, that; he, she, it* (i.e. = **id est**, *that is*)

ídem, éadem, ídem, *the same* (id., identical, identity, identify)

amícus, -a, -um, *friendly* (amicable, amiable, amiably—cp. **amō** and the nouns **amīcus, amīca**, and **amīcitia**).

cárus, -a, -um, *dear* (caress, charity, charitable, cherish)

quod, conj., *because*

néque, nec, conj. *and not, nor;* **néque . . . néque** or **nec . . . nec**, *neither . . . nor*

aútem, postpositive conj., *however; moreover*

béne, adv. of **bonus**, *well, satisfactorily, quite* (benediction, benefit, benefactor, beneficent, benevolent)

étiam, adv., *even, also*

intéllegō, intellégere, intelléxī, intelléctum, *to understand* (intelligent, intellegentsia, intelligible, intellect, intellectual; cp. **legō**, Ch. 18)

mittō, míttere, mísī, míssum, *to send, let go* (admit, commit, emit, omit, permit, promise, remit, submit, transmit, compromise, demise)

séntiō, sentíre, sénsī, sénsum, *to feel, perceive, think, experience* (assent, consent, dissent, presentiment, resent, sentimental, scent)

---

[5] Try pronouncing ***eumdem** or ***eōrumdem** rapidly and you will probably end up changing the -m- to -n- before -d-, just as the Romans did.

[6] The genitive and ablative forms of **nūllus** are usually found in place of **nēminis** and **nēmine**.

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Eum ad eam cum aliō agricolā herī mittēbant.
2. Tū autem fīliam beātam eius nunc amās.
3. Propter amīcitiam, ego hoc faciō. Quid tū faciēs, mī amīce?
4. Vōsne eāsdem litterās ad eum mittere crās audēbitis?
5. Dūc mē ad eius discipulam (ad eam discipulam), amābō tē.
6. Post labōrem eius grātiās magnās eī agēmus.
7. Tūne vēritātem in eō librō dēmōnstrās?
8. Audē, igitur, esse semper īdem.
9. Venitne nātūra mōrum nostrōrum ex nōbīs sōlīs?
10. Dum ratiō nōs dūcet, valēbimus et multa bene gerēmus.
11. Illum timōrem in hōc virō ūnō invenīmus.
12. Sine labōre autem nūlla pāx in cīvitātem eōrum veniet.
13. Studium nōn sōlum pecūniae sed etiam voluptātis hominēs nimium trahit; aliī eās cupiditātēs vincere possunt, aliī nōn possunt.
14. His life was always dear to the whole people.
15. You will often find them and their friends with me in this place.
16. We, however, shall now capture their forces on this road.
17. Since I was saying the same things to him about you and his other sisters, your brother was not listening.

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

1. Virtūs tua mē amīcum tibi facit. (Horace.)
2. Id sōlum est cārum mihi. (Terence.—**cārus** and other adjectives indicating relationship or attitude often take the dat., translated *to* or *for;* see Ch. 35).
3. Sī valēs, bene est; ego valeō. (Pliny.—**bene est,** idiom, *it is well.*)
4. Bene est mihi quod tibi bene est. (Pliny.)
5. "Valē." "Et tū bene valē." (Terence.)
6. Quid hī dē tē nunc sentiunt? (Cicero.)
7. Omnēs idem sentiunt. (*Cicero.—**omnēs,** *all men,* nom. pl.)
8. Videō nēminem ex eīs hodiē esse amīcum tibi. (Cicero.—The subject of an infinitive is regularly in the acc., hence **nēminem;** add this to your list of acc. case uses, and see Ch. 25.)
9. Hominēs vidēre caput Cicerōnis in Rōstrīs poterant. (Livy.—Antony proscribed Cicero and had the great orator's head cut off and displayed on the Rostra!—**Rōstra, -ōrum;** see Etymology below.)
10. Nōn omnēs eadem amant aut eāsdem cupiditātēs studiaque habent. (Horace.)
11. Nec tēcum possum vīvere nec sine tē (*Martial.)
12. Vērus amīcus est alter īdem. (Cicero.—Explain how **alter īdem** can mean "a second self.")

CICERO DENOUNCES CATILINE IN THE SENATE

Quid facis, Catilīna? Quid cōgitās? Sentīmus magna vitia īnsidiāsque tuās. Ō tempora! Ō mōrēs! Senātus haec intellegit, cōnsul videt. Hic tamen vīvit. Vīvit? Etiam in senātum venit; etiam nunc cōnsilia agere audet; oculīs dēsignat ad mortem nōs! Et nōs, bonī virī, nihil facimus! Ad mortem tē, Catilīna, cōnsul et senātus dūcere dēbent. Cōnsilium habēmus et agere dēbēmus; sī nunc nōn agimus, nōs, nōs—apertē dīcō—errāmus! Fuge nunc, Catilīna, et dūc tēcum amīcōs tuōs. Nōbīscum remanēre nōn potes; nōn tē, nōn istōs, nōn cōnsilia vestra tolerābō!

(Cicero, *In Catilīnam* 1.1.ff. Lucius Sergius Catilina, "Catiline," masterminded a conspiracy against the Roman government during Cicero's consulship; this excerpt is adapted from the first oration Cicero delivered against him, before the senate, in 63 B.C. See L.I. 5–6 and the reading passage in Ch. 14 below.—**senātus,** *senate.*—**dēsignāre.**—**mors, mortis,** f., *death.*—**apertē,** adv., *openly.*)

Cicero Denouncing Catiline in the Roman Senate
Cesare Maccari, 19th century
Palazzo Madama, Rome, Italy

ETYMOLOGY

Cārus was sometimes used in the sense of *expensive* just as Eng. "dear" and Fr. **cher** can be used.

In the sentences   9. **Rōstra**, the ramming beaks of captured ships affixed to the speakers' platform in the Roman Forum to attest a victory won in 338 B.C. at Antium (Anzio). These beaks gave their name to the platform. Though the pl. *rostra* is still the regular Eng. form, we sometimes use the sg. *rostrum*. "Cicero Denounces Catiline": senator, senatorial; senile.—designate, designation.— mortal, mortality.—aperture; cp. **aperīre,** *to open.*

Some Romance derivatives from the Lat. personal pronouns follow.

Latin	Italian	Spanish	French
ego, tū	io, tu	yo, tu	je, tu
mihi, tibi	mi, ti		
mě, tě	me, te	me, te	me, moi, te, toi[7]
nōs, vōs (nom.)	noi, voi	nosotros, vosotros[8]	nous, vous
nōs, vōs (acc.)		nos, os	nous, vous

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

Salvēte, discipulī et discipulae cārae! Notice the ending on that adj. **cārae?**—remember that when adjs. modify two nouns of different gender, the tendency is to have it agree with the one closer to it in the sentence. By the way, now you know the source of Freud's **ego** and **id,** and the meaning of the salutation **pāx vōbīscum/pāx tēcum.** And, you Caesar fans, can you believe that all three of the following have the same translation (well . . . sort of!): **Caesar, Caesar! Caesar eam videt. Caesar, cape eam!** According to tradition, Caesar's last words to the assassin Brutus were **et tū, Brūte?** (To which Brutus hungrily replied, according to the late great Brother Dave Gardner, "Nah, I ain't even et one yet!")

Did you notice in the Vocab. the origin of the abbreviations **i.e.** and **id.?** There are dozens of Latin abbreviations in current usage; for some others, besides those at the end of Ch. 6, see the list below, p. 492–93.

And remember those **-or/-iō** nouns? From the verbs in this Vocab. come **missor, missōris,** m., *a shooter* (of "missiles"—lit., *a sender*) and **missiō, missiōnis,** f., lit. *a sending forth* and used in classical Lat. for *release from captivity, liberation* (itself from **līberāre,** *to free*), *discharge* (from military service), *dismissal,* and, of course, *mission;* from compounds of **mittō** come a host of Latin nouns with further English derivatives such as "admission," "commission," "emission," "permission," etc. Can you think of others, both the Lat. nouns and the Eng. derivatives, from **mittō?** And how about **sentiō?**

Well, **tempus fugit,** so **pāx vōbīscum et valēte!**

---

[7] Fr. **moi, toi** came from accented Lat. **mě, tě,** and Fr. **me, te** came from unaccented Lat. **mě, tě.**

[8] **-otros** from **alterōs.**

12

Perfect Active System of All Verbs

You are already familiar with the formation and translation of the present, future, and imperfect tenses, the three tenses that constitute the present system, so-called because they are all formed on the present stem and all look at time from the absolute perspective of the present. In Latin, as in English, there are three other tenses, the perfect (sometimes called the "present perfect"), the future perfect, and the pluperfect (or "past perfect"), which constitute the "perfect system," so-called because they are formed on a perfect (active or passive) stem and look at time from a somewhat different perspective.

Learning the forms for these three tenses in the active voice (the perfect passive system is taken up in Ch. 19) is a relatively easy matter, since verbs of all conjugations follow the same simple rule: perfect active stem + endings.

PRINCIPAL PARTS

To ascertain the perfect active stem of a Latin verb you must know the principal parts of the verb, just as you must similarly know the principal parts of an English verb if you want to use English correctly.[1] As you have

[1] In fact the principal parts of an English verb to some extent parallel those of a Latin verb:
(1) Present Tense:
    praise   lead   take   see   sing   be/am
(2) Past Tense:
    praised   led   took   saw   sang   was
(3) Past Participle:
    praised   led   taken   seen   sung   been
Note that, since the pres. indic. and the pres. inf. are normally identical in English, only one form need be given. Note also that the past participle is really a past passive participle like the Latin **laudātum**.

seen from your vocabulary study, most regular Latin verbs have four principal parts, as illustrated by **laudō** in the following paradigm:

1. Present Active Indicative: laúdō, *I praise*
2. Present Active Infinitive: laudáre, *to praise*
3. Perfect Active Indicative: laudávī, *I praised, have praised*
4. Perfect Passive Participle: laudátum, *praised, having been praised*

The principal parts of the verbs which have appeared in the paradigms are as follows:

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Perf. Pass. Partic.
laúdō	laudáre	laudávī, *I praised*	laudátum, *having been praised*
móneō	monére	mónuī, *I advised*	mónitum, *having been advised*
ágō	ágere	égī, *I led*	áctum, *having been led*
cápiō	cápere	cépī, *I took*	cáptum, *having been taken*
aúdiō	audíre	audívī, *I heard*	audítum, *having been heard*
sum	ésse	fúī, *I was*	futúrum, *about to be*
póssum	pósse	pótuī, *I was able*	———

The first two principal parts, necessary for conjugating a verb in the present system, have been dealt with extensively already. As the first person singular of the perfect active indicative, which always ends in -ī, a verb's third principal part is analogous to its first (which is, of course, the first person singular of the present active indicative and regularly ends in -ō). The fourth principal part, while given in its neuter form in this book, is for regular transitive verbs the perfect passive participle, a fully declinable verbal adjective of the -us/-a/-um variety (**laudātus, -a, -um**, etc.—some uses of participles will be explained in Chs. 19 and 23–24). Verbs lacking a perfect passive participle substitute the accusative supine (see Ch. 38), and some verbs like **sum** and other intransitives substitute a future active participle (e.g., **futūrum** = **futūrus, -a, -um**), while others like **possum** have no fourth principal part at all.

THE PERFECT ACTIVE STEM

While the first and second principal parts for regular verbs follow a very consistent pattern, there are no simple rules to cover the many variations in the third and fourth principal parts (though, as we have seen, most first conjugation verbs, marked by a [1] in the vocabularies, do follow the -ō/ -āre/-āvī/-ātum pattern of **laudō**, and many second and fourth conjugation verbs follow the patterns of **moneō** and **audiō**); hence, as pointed out earlier, it is crucial to memorize all the principal parts in the vocabulary entry for each verb by both *saying them aloud* and *writing them out*. Your knowledge of English will help you in this memorization, since there are many derivatives from both the present stem and the perfect participial stem, as you have already discovered (e.g., "docile" and "doctor," "agent" and "action," etc.).

Once you know a verb's principal parts, finding the perfect active stem is easy: simply drop the final -ī which characterizes the third principal part of every verb. The stems for the sample verbs in the preceding list are: **laudāv-, monu-, ēg-, cēp-, audīv-, fu-,** and **potu-.** The following paradigms show you the endings for the three perfect system tenses.

Perfect Active Indicative

		I praised, have praised	*I led, have led*	*I was, have been*	**Endings**
Sg.	1.	laudāv-ī	ēg-ī	fú-ī	-ī
	2.	laudāv-istī	ēg-istī	fu-istī	-istī
	3.	laudāv-it	ēg-it	fú-it	-it
Pl.	1.	laudāvimus	ēgimus	fúimus	-imus
	2.	laudāvistis	ēgistis	fuistis	-istis
	3.	laudāvērunt	ēgērunt	fuērunt	-ērunt, -ēre[2]

Pluperfect Active Indicative   **Future Perfect Active Indicative**

		I had praised	*I had been*	*I shall have praised*	*I shall have been*
Sg.	1.	laudāv-eram	fú-eram	laudāv-erō	fú-erō
	2.	laudāv-erās	fú-erās	laudāv-eris	fú-eris
	3.	laudāv-erat	fú-erat	laudāv-erit	fú-erit
Pl.	1.	laudāverāmus	fuerāmus	laudāvérimus	fuérimus
	2.	laudāverātis	fuerātis	laudāvéritis	fuéritis
	3.	laudāverant	fúerant	laudāverint	fúerint

The perfect endings (**-ī, -istī, -it,** etc.) are quite new and must be memorized. The pluperfect is in effect the perfect stem + **eram,** the imperfect of **sum.** The future perfect is in effect the perfect stem + **erō,** the future of **sum,** except that the third person plural is **-erint,** not **-erunt.**

USAGE, TRANSLATION, AND DISTINCTION FROM THE IMPERFECT

The perfect tense, like the imperfect, is sometimes translated as a simple past tense, hence both **puer amīcum monuit** and **puer amīcum monēbat** may in certain contexts be translated *the boy warned his friend.* But whereas the imperfect tense is like a video of the past, the perfect tense (from **perficiō, perficere, perfēcī, perfectum,** *to finish, complete*) is rather like a snapshot: with the imperfect the action is viewed as going on, repeated, or habitual, so a more exact translation of **puer amīcum monēbat,** depending upon the

---

[2] The alternate ending **-ēre (laudāvēre, ēgēre, fuēre),** while fairly common, especially in Lat. poetry, appears only once or twice in this book.

context, might be *the boy was warning/kept warning/used to warn his friend.* Conversely, the more static perfect tense looks back at an action as a single, completed event (*he warned his friend once*), or as an event that, although completed, has consequences for the present; in this latter case, you should regularly translate using the auxiliary "has/have" (*he has warned his friend, and so his friend is now prepared*).

The pluperfect (from **plūs quam perfectum,** *more than complete,* i.e., time "prior to the perfect") and the future perfect are employed generally as they are in English and, like the perfect tense, generally look at the consequences of completed actions. Consider these English sentences, illustrating the pluperfect, perfect, and future perfect, respectively, and note the use of the English auxiliary verbs "had," "has," and "will have" (the past, present, and future tenses of the verb "to have"): "he had studied the material and so he knew it well"; "he has studied the material and so he knows it well"; "he will have studied the material and so he will know it well." You can see from these examples how the three perfect system tenses parallel the three tenses of the present system; in the latter we simply look at events of the past, present, or future, while in the former we look at events of the past, present, or future and consider the impact of previously completed actions on those events.

VOCABULARY

aduléscēns, adulēscéntis, m. and f., *young man* or *woman* (adolescent, adolescence, adult; cp. **adulēscentia**)

ánnus, -ī, m., *year* (annals, anniversary, annuity, annual, biennial, perennial, centennial, millennium, superannuated)

Ásia, -ae, f., *Asia,* commonly referring to Asia Minor

Caésar, Caésaris, m., *Caesar* (Caesarian, Caesarism, kaiser, czar, tsar)

máter, mátris, f., *mother* (maternal, maternity, matriarchy, matrimony, matricide, matriculate, matrilineal, matrix, matron)

médicus, -ī, m., and **médica, -ae,** f., *doctor, physician* (medic, medical, medicate, medicine, medicinal)

páter, pátris, m., *father* (paternal, paternity, patrician, patrimony, patron, patronage, patronize, patter, padre, père; cp. **patria**)

patiéntia, -ae, f., *suffering: patience, endurance* (patient, impatient; cp. **patior,** Ch. 34)

princípium, -iī, n., *beginning* (principal, principle; cp. **princeps,** Ch. 28)

acérbus, -a, -um, *harsh, bitter, grievous* (acerbity, exacerbate)

prō, prep. + abl., *in front of, before, on behalf of, for the sake of, in return for, instead of, for, as;* also as prefix (pros and cons, pro- as a prefix)

diū, adv., *long, for a long time*

nūper, adv., *recently*

āmíttō, -míttere, -mísī, -míssum, *to lose, let go*

cádō, cádere, cécidī, cāsúrum, *to fall* (cadence, case, casual, cascade, chance, accident, incident, decadence, decay, deciduous)

créō (1), *to create* (creation, creativity, creature, procreate)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Vōs nōbīs dē voluptātibus adūlēscentiae tum scrīpsistis.
2. Ratiōnēs alterīus fīliae herī nōn fuērunt eaedem.
3. Nēmō in hanc viam ex utrā portā fūgerat.
4. Illī autem ad nōs cum medicā eius nūper vēnērunt.
5. Illī adulēscentēs ad nōs propter amīcitiam saepe veniēbant.
6. Eundem timōrem in istō cōnsule sēnsimus.
7. Post paucās hōrās Caesar Asiam cēpit.
8. Illa fēmina beāta sōla magnam cupiditātem pācis sēnsit.
9. Potuistisne bonam vītam sine ūllā lībertāte agere?
10. Vēritās igitur fuit tōtī populō cāra.
11. Neuter medicus nōmen patris audīverat.
12. That friendly queen did not remain there a long time.
13. Our mothers had not understood the nature of that place.
14. However, we had found no fault in the head of our country.
15. They kept sending her to him with me.

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

1. In prīncipiō Deus creāvit caelum et terram; et Deus creāvit hominem. (Genesis.)
2. In triumphō Caesar praetulit hunc titulum: "Vēnī, vīdī, vīcī." (Suetonius.—**triumphus, -ī**, *triumphal procession,* here celebrating his quick victory at Zela in Asia Minor in 47 B.C.—**praeferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum,** *to display.*—**titulus, -ī,** *placard.*)
3. Vīxit, dum vīxit, bene. (*Terence.)
4. Adulēscēns vult diū vīvere; senex diū vīxit. (Cicero.—**vult,** irreg., *wishes.*—**senex, senis,** m., *old man.*)
5. Nōn ille diū vīxit, sed diū fuit. (*Seneca.)
6. Hui, dīxistī pulchrē! (*Terence.—**hui,** interj., comparable to Eng. "whee!"—**pulchrē,** adv. from **pulcher;** advs. were commonly formed from adjs. in this way. See Chs. 26–27, and cp., e.g., **vērē** from **vērus, lībere** from **līber,** and the irregular **bene** from **bonus.**)
7. Sophoclēs ad summam senectūtem tragoediās fēcit. (*Cicero.— **Sophoclēs, -clis,** the famous Athenian playwright.—**summus, -a, -um,** *extreme.*—**tragoedia, -ae,** *tragedy.*)
8. Illī nōn sōlum pecūniam sed etiam vītam prō patriā prōfūdērunt. (Cicero.—**prōfundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsum,** *to pour forth.*)
9. Rēgēs Rōmam ā prīncipiō habuērunt; lībertātem Lūcius Brūtus Rōmānīs dedit. (Tacitus.—**ā** + abl., *from.*)

10. Sub Caesare autem lībertātem perdidimus. (Laberius.—**perdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum,** *to destroy, lose.*)

11. Quandō lībertās ceciderit, nēmō līberē dīcere audēbit. (Publilius Syrus.)

PLINY WRITES TO MARCELLINUS ABOUT THE DEATH OF FUNDANUS' DAUGHTER

Salvē, Marcellīne! Haec tibi scrībō dē Fundānō, amīcō nostrō; is fīliam cāram et bellam āmīsit. Illa puella nōn XIII annōs vīxerat, sed nātūra eī multam sapientiam dederat. Mātrem patremque, frātrem sorōremque, nōs et aliōs amīcōs, magistrōs magistrāsque semper amābat, et nōs eam amābāmus laudābāmusque. Medicī eam adiuvāre nōn poterant. Quoniam illa autem magnōs animōs habuit, morbum nimis malum cum patientiā tolerāvit. Nunc, mī amīce, mitte Fundānō nostrō litterās dē fortūnā acerbā fīliae eius. Valē.

(Pliny, *Epistulae* 5.16; see L.I. 40.—**XIII annōs,** *for 13 years,* acc. of duration of time, Ch. 37. Minicius Fundanus was a consul in A.D. 107; his daughter's funerary urn and the following epitaph were found in the family's tomb outside of
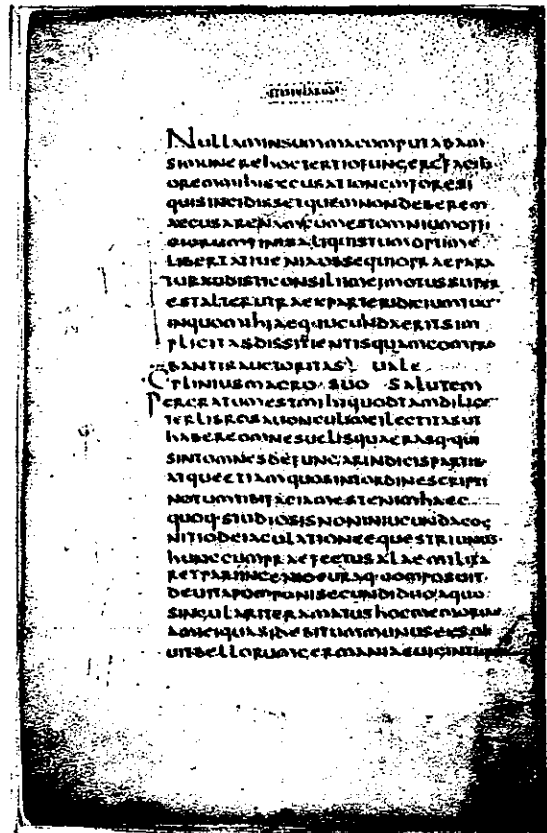
*Page from manuscript of Pliny's Epistulae
(Epist. III.4.8–9 and III.5.1–3)
6th century A.D., Italy
The Pierpont Morgan Library, New York*

Rome: **D|ĩs| M|ānibus| Miniciae Marcellae Fundānĩ f|ĩliae|; v|ĩxit| a|nnõs| XII m|ēnsēs| XI d|iēs| VII.**—The bracketed text was abbreviated in the original inscription.—The **dĩ mānēs** were the *spirits of the dead,* who protected the deceased.—**mēnsēs,** *months.*—**diēs,** *days.*)

DIAULUS STILL BURIES HIS CLIENTS

Nũper erat medicus, nunc est vespillo Diaulus.
  Quod vespillo facit, fēcerat et medicus.

(*Martial 1.47; meter: elegiac couplet.—**vespillõ, -lõnis,** m., *undertaker.*—Diaulus' name is delayed for suspense.—**quod,** *what.*—**et** = **etiam.**)

ETYMOLOGY

Further examples of the help of English words in learning principal parts of Latin verbs are:

Latin Verb	Pres. Stem in Eng. Word	Perf. Partic. Stem in Eng. Word
videõ	provide (vidēre)	provision (vĩsum)
maneõ	permanent (manēre)	mansion (mānsum)
vĩvõ	revive (vĩvere)	victuals (vĩctum)
sentiõ	sentiment (sentĩre)	sense (sēnsum)
veniõ	intervene (venĩre)	intervention (ventum)
faciõ	facile (facere)	fact (factum)

The connection between Latin **pater** and **patria** (*father-land*) is obvious. However, although English "patriarch," "patriot," and "patronymic" have in them a stem, **patr-,** which is meaningful to one who knows the Latin words, nevertheless these English words are actually derived from Greek, in which the stem **patr-** is cognate with the same stem in Latin; cp. Greek **patér,** *father,* **pátrā** or **patrís,** *fatherland,* **patriá,** *lineage.*

In the readings   2. prefer, prelate.—title, titular. 8. confound, confuse, effuse, effusive, fuse, fusion, refund, refuse, transfusion. 10. perdition.

LATĨNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŨTILIS!

Salvēte, discipulae discipulĩque cārĩ! As we saw in S. A. 2 above, Caesar is said to have proclaimed **vēnĩ, vĩdĩ, vĩcĩ** in propagandizing his victory at Zela—a good example of the perfect tense, a "snapshot" of the action whose rapid conclusion the general wanted to emphasize. There are now some 20th-cen. variants on this boast: from the mall-masters, **VENI, VIDI, VISA,** "I came, I saw, I bought everything in sight!" and from the vegetarians, **VENI, VIDI, VEGI,** "I came, I saw, I had a salad." Are you groaning?!!—but remember, **patientia est virtũs,** and there may yet be worse to come: meantime, **rĩdēte** (from **rĩdēre,** *to smile*) **et valēte!**

13

Reflexive Pronouns and Possessives; Intensive Pronoun

REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

Reflexive pronouns differ from other pronouns in that they are used ordinarily only in the predicate and refer back to the subject. "Reflexive," which derives from **re-flexus, -a, -um (reflectō, -ere, -flexī, -flexum,** *to bend back*) means "bent back," and so reflexive pronouns "bend back" to the subject, or, to put it another way, they "reflect" or refer to the subject. English examples are:

Reflexive Pronouns	**Personal Pronouns**
I praised *myself.*	You praised *me.*
Cicero praised *himself.*	Cicero praised *him* (Caesar).

DECLENSION OF REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

Since reflexive pronouns refer to the subject, they cannot serve as subjects of finite[1] verbs and they have no nominative case. Otherwise, the declension of the reflexives of the first and the second persons is the same as that of the corresponding personal pronouns.

---

[1] "Finite" verb forms are those which are limited (**fīnītus, -a, -um,** *having been limited, bounded*) by person and number; reflexives can serve as the subject of an infinitive, however, as you will see in Ch. 25.

The reflexive pronoun of the third person, however, has its own peculiar forms; these are easily recognizable because, as seen from the following chart, they are identical to the singular of **tū**, except that the nominative is lacking and the forms begin with s- rather than t-. Note also that the singular and plural are identical, or, to put it another way, singular and plural were not distinguished and did not need to be, since reflexives in fact "reflect" the number (as well as the gender) of the subject; e.g., **sē** is easily understood to mean *herself* in the sentence **fēmina dē sē cōgitābat** (*the woman was thinking about herself*) and *themselves* in the sentence **virī dē sē cōgitābant** (*the men were thinking about themselves*).

	1st Pers.	2nd Pers.	3rd Pers.
Singular			
Nom.	—	—	—
Gen.	méī (*of myself*)	túī	súī (*of himself, herself, itself*)
Dat.	mihi (*to/for myself*)	tibi	sibi (*to/for himself, etc.*)
Acc.	mē (*myself*)	tē	sē (*himself, herself, itself*)
Abl.	mē (*by/w./fr. myself*[2])	tē	sē (*by/w./fr. himself, etc.*)
Plural			
Nom.	—	—	—
Gen.	nóstrī (*of ourselves*)	véstrī	súī (*of themselves*)
Dat.	nóbīs (*to/for ourselves*)	vóbīs	sibi (*to/for themselves*)
Acc.	nōs (*ourselves*)	vōs	sē (*themselves*)
Abl.	nóbīs (*by/w./fr. ourselves*)	vóbīs	sē (*by/w./fr. themselves*)

PARALLEL EXAMPLES OF REFLEXIVE AND PERSONAL PRONOUNS OF 1ST AND 2ND PERSONS.[3]

1. Tū laudāvistī **tē**, *you praised* **yourself**.
2. Cicerō laudāvit **tē**, *Cicero praised you.*

3. Nōs laudāvimus **nōs**, *we praised* **ourselves**.
4. Cicerō laudāvit **nōs**, *Cicero praised us.*

5. Ego scrīpsī litterās **mihi**, *I wrote a letter to* **myself**.
6. Cicerō scrīpsit litterās **mihi**, *Cicero wrote a letter to* **me**.

PARALLEL EXAMPLES OF REFLEXIVE AND PERSONAL PRONOUNS OF 3RD PERSON

1. Cicerō laudāvit **sē**, *Cicero praised* **himself**.
2. Cicerō laudāvit **eum**, *Cicero praised him* (e.g., Caesar).

[2] See Ch. 11, n. 1.
[3] The word order in these examples is modified for the sake of clarity.

3. Rōmānī laudāvērunt **sē**, *the Romans praised **themselves.***
4. Rōmānī laudāvērunt **eōs**, *the Romans praised **them*** (e.g., the Greeks).

5. Puella servāvit **sē**, *the girl saved **herself.***
6. Puella servāvit **eam**, *the girl saved **her*** (i.e., another girl).

REFLEXIVE POSSESSIVES

The reflexive possessives of the first and the second persons are identical with the regular possessives already familiar to you: **meus, tuus, noster, vester** (i.e., *my, my own; your, your own;* etc.). They will never cause you any difficulty.

The reflexive possessive of the third person, however, is the adjective **suus, sua, suum**, *his (own), her (own), its (own), their (own).* While the forms themselves are easily declined (on the same pattern as **tuus, -a, -um,** a regular first/second declension adjective), a few important points must be kept in mind regarding the word's usage and translation. First, like any adjective, **suus, -a, -um,** must agree with the noun it modifies in number, gender, and case. Its English translation, however, like that of the reflexive pronoun, must naturally reflect the gender and number of the subject to which it refers (e.g., **vir fīlium suum laudat,** *the man praises his [own] son,* vs. **fēmina fīlium suum laudat,** *the woman praises her [own] son,* and **virī patriam suam laudant,** *the men praise their [own] country*). Finally, the reflexive possessive adjective **suus, -a, -um** must be carefully distinguished from the nonreflexive possessive genitives **eius, eōrum, eārum** (*his/her, their:* see Ch. 11), which do not refer to the subject.

1. Cicerō laudāvit amīcum **suum,** *Cicero praised his (own) friend.*
2. Cicerō laudāvit amīcum **eius,** *Cicero praised his* (Caesar's) *friend.*

3. Rōmānī laudāvērunt amīcum **suum,** *the Romans praised their (own) friend.*
4. Rōmānī laudāvērunt amīcum **eōrum,** *the Romans praised their* (the Greeks') *friend.*

5. Fēmina scrīpsit litterās amīcīs **suīs,** *the woman wrote a letter to her (own) friends.*
6. Fēmina scrīpsit litterās amīcīs **eius,** *the woman wrote a letter to his* (or *her,* i.e., someone else's) *friends.*
7. Fēmina scrīpsit litterās amīcīs **eōrum,** *the woman wrote a letter to their* (some other persons') *friends.*

THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN Ipse, Ipsa, Ipsum

The intensive **ipse, ipsa, ipsum** follows the peculiar declensional pattern of the demonstratives in the genitive and the dative singular (i.e., gen. **ipsīus, ipsīus, ipsīus,** dat. **ipsī, ipsī, ipsī**); otherwise, it is like **magnus, -a, -um.**[4] The Romans used the intensive pronoun to emphasize a noun or pronoun of any person in either the subject or the predicate of a sentence; consequently its possible translations include *myself/ourselves* (1st pers.), *yourself/yourselves* (2nd pers.), and *himself/herself/itself/themselves* (3rd pers.), as well as *the very* and *the actual,* as illustrated in the following examples:

Cicerō **ipse** laudāvit mē, *Cicero himself praised me.*

Cicerō laudāvit mē **ipsum,** *Cicero praised me myself* (i.e., *actually praised me)*

Ipse laudāvī eius amīcum, *I myself praised his friend.*

Fīlia scrīpsit litterās vōbīs **ipsīs,** *your daughter wrote a letter to you yourselves.*

Cicerō vīdit Caesaris litterās **ipsās,** *Cicero saw Caesar's letter itself* (i.e., *Caesar's actual letter).*

VOCABULARY

dīvitiae, -árum, f. pl., *riches, wealth* (cp. **dīves,** Ch. 32)

fáctum, -ī, n., *deed, act, achievement* (fact, faction, feat; cp. **faciō)**

signum, -ī, n., *sign, signal, indication; seal* (assign, consign, countersign, design, ensign, insignia, resign, seal, signet)

ipse, ipsa, ipsum, intensive pron., *myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself,* etc., *the very, the actual* (ipso facto, solipsistic)

quisque, quídque (gen. **cuiúsque;** dat. **cuíque**—cp. **quis,** Ch. 19), indefinite pron., *each one, each person, each thing*

suī, reflexive pron. of 3rd pers., *himself, herself, itself, themselves* (suicide, sui generis, per se)

dóctus, -a, -um, *taught, learned, skilled* (doctor, doctorate, doctrine, indoctrinate; cp. **doceō)**

fortūnátus, -a, -um, *lucky, fortunate, happy* (unfortunate; cp. **fortūna)**

súus, -a, -um, reflexive possessive adj. of 3rd pers., *his own, her own, its own, their own*

nam, conj., *for*

ánte, prep. + acc., *before* (in place or time), *in front of;* adv., *before, previously;* not to be confused with Greek **anti,** *against* (antebellum, antedate, ante-room, anterior, antediluvian, A.M. = **ante merīdiem,** advance, advantage)

[4] See the Summary of Forms, p. 448, for the full declension.

per, prep. + acc., *through;* with reflexive pron., *by;* **per-** (assimilated to **pel-** before forms beginning with **l-**), as a prefix, *through, through and through* = *thoroughly, completely, very* (perchance, perforce, perhaps, perceive, perfect, perspire, percolate, percussion, perchloride, pellucid)

ólim, adv., *at that time, once, formerly; in the future*

álō, álere, áluī, áltum, *to nourish, support, sustain, increase; cherish* (alible, aliment, alimentary, alimony, coalesce, adolescence)

díligō, dīligere, dīléxī, dīléctum, *to esteem, love* (diligent, diligence; cp. **legō,** Ch. 18)

iúngō, iúngere, iúnxī, iúnctum, *to join* (join, joint, junction, juncture, adjunct, conjunction, enjoin, injunction, subjunctive)

stō, stáre, stétī, státum, *to stand, stand still* or *firm* (stable, state, station, statue, stature, statute, establish, instant, instate, reinstate, stay; cp. **praestō,** Ch. 28)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Cōnsulēs sē nec tēcum nec cum illīs aliīs iungēbant.
2. Tōtus populus Rōmānus lībertātem āmīsit.
3. Rēx malus enim mē ipsum capere numquam potuit.
4. Ad patrem mātremque eōrum per illum locum tum fūgistis.
5. Dī animōs creant et eōs in corpora hominum ē caelō mittunt.
6. Ipsī per sē eum in Asiā nūper vīcērunt.
7. In hāc viā Cicerō medicum eius vīdit, nōn suum.
8. Nēmō fīliam acerbam cōnsulis ipsīus diū dīligere potuit.
9. Hī Cicerōnem ipsum sēcum iūnxērunt, nam eum semper dīlēxerant.
10. Fēmina ante illam hōram litterās suās mīserat.
11. Ille bonam senectūtem habuit, nam bene vīxerat.
12. Māter fīlium bene intellēxit, et adulēscēns eī prō patientiā grātiās ēgit.
13. However, those young men came to Caesar himself yesterday.
14. Cicero, therefore, will never join his (Caesar's) name with his own.
15. Cicero always esteemed himself and even you esteem yourself.
16. Cicero used to praise his own books and I now praise my own books.
17. The consul Cicero himself had never seen his (Caesar's) book.

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

1. Ipse ad eōs contendēbat equitēsque ante sē mīsit. (Caesar.—**contendō, -ere,** *to hasten.* —**eques, equitis,** m., *horseman.*)
2. Ipsī nihil per sē sine eō facere potuērunt. (Cicero.)
3. Ipse signum suum et litterās suās ā prīncipiō recognōvit. (Cicero.—**recognōscō, -ere, -cognōvī, -cognitum,** *to recognize.*)
4. Quisque ipse sē dīligit, quod quisque per sē sibi cārus est. (Cicero.)

5. Ex vitiō alterīus sapiēns ēmendat suum. (*Publilius Syrus.—sapi-
   ēns, -entis, m., *wise man, philosopher.*—ēmendāre, *to correct.*)
6. Recēde in tē ipsum. (*Seneca.—recēdō, -ere, *to withdraw.*)
7. Animus sē ipse alit. (*Seneca.)
8. Homō doctus in sē semper dīvitiās habet. (Phaedrus.)

ALEXANDER THE GREAT AND THE POWER OF LITERATURE

Magnus ille Alexander multōs scrīptōrēs factōrum suōrum sēcum sem-
per habēbat. Is enim ante tumulum Achillis ōlim stetit et dīxit haec verba:
"Fuistī fortūnātus, ō adulēscēns, quod Homērum laudātōrem virtūtis tuae
invēnistī." Et vērē! Nam, sine *Iliade* illā, īdem tumulus et corpus eius et nō-
men obruere potuit. Nihil corpus humānum cōnservāre potest; sed litterae
magnae nōmen virī magnī saepe cōnservāre possunt.

(Cicero, *Prō Archiā* 24. —**ille,** usually when placed after the word it modifies,
can mean *that famous.*—**tumulus, -ī,** *tomb, grave.*—**Achillēs, -lis,** m.—**Ho-
mērus, -ī.**—**laudātor, -tōris,** *one who praises* [see Ch. 8, **Latīna Est Gaudium**], here
chronicler.—**vērē,** adv. of **vērus.**—**Īlias, -adis,** f.—**obruō, -ere,** *to overwhelm, bury.*)
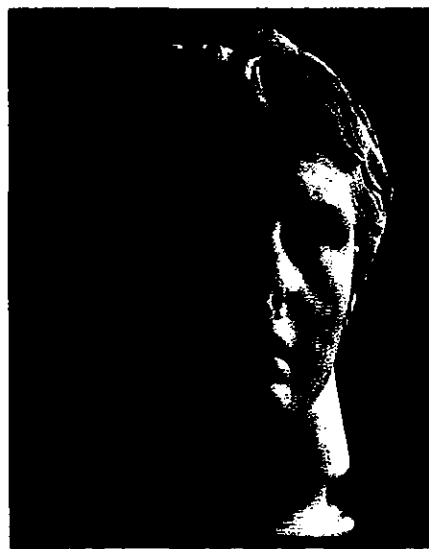
Alexander the Great
Pergamon, 3rd century B.C.
Archaeological Museum, Istanbul, Turkey

THE AUTHORITY OF A TEACHER'S OPINION

Magistrī bonī discipulīs sententiās suās nōn semper dīcere dēbent. Dis-
cipulī Pȳthagorae in disputātiōnibus saepe dīcēbant: "Ipse dīxit!" Pȳthago-
rās, eōrum magister philosophiae, erat "ipse": sententiae eius etiam sine rati-
ōne valuērunt. In philosophiā autem ratiō sōla, nōn sententia, valēre dēbet.

(Cicero, *Dē Nātūrā Deōrum* 1.5.10.—**Pȳthagorās, -ae,** m.—**disputātiō, -ōnis,** *ar-
gument, debate.*—sc. **id** as direct obj. of **ipse dīxit.**)

ETYMOLOGY

The adj. **altus, -a, -um,** *high,* literally means *having been nourished,* and so, *grown large;* hence altitude, alto, contralto, exalt, hautboy, oboe.

In the readings   1. contend, contention, contentious.—equestrian; cp. **equus,** *horse.* 5. emend, emendation, mend. 6. recede, recession. "Alexander": tumulus, tumular, tumulose.—laudatory. "Authority": disputable, dispute, disputant, disputation, disputatious.

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

Salvēte! If you've spent much time in court, or even watching *Perry Mason* reruns, you've doubtless encountered some legal Latin. **Ipse** turns up more than once in the lawyer's lexicon: there's **ipsō factō,** *by that very fact;* **ipsō jūre** (classical **iūre**), *by the law itself;* and **rēs ipsa loquitur,** *the matter speaks for itself.* And from the third pers. reflexive there's **suī jūris (iūris),** lit. *of his own right,* i.e., legally competent to manage one's own affairs. Not a legal term, but from the reflexive and common in Eng. is **suī generis,** lit. *of his/her/its own kind* (see **genus,** Ch. 18), used of a person or thing that is unique. Another common Eng. phrase, seen in the above reading on Pythagoras, is **ipse dīxit,** used of any dogmatic or arbitrary statement; likewise from the intensive pronoun are the phrase **ipsissima verba,** *the very words* (of a person being quoted), the medical term "ipsilateral," meaning "on or affecting the same side of the body" (from Lat. **latus, lateris,** n., *side*), and the word "solipsism," for the philosophical theory that the self alone is the only reality or that it conditions our perception of reality.

By now you've had all the vocabulary needed to translate the famous quotation from Constantine, **in hōc signō vincēs** (*under this standard*—i.e., the cross—*you shall prevail*), seen in more recent decades on a well-known brand of cigarettes; freely it means, *You'll win with this brand* (but would the U.S. Surgeon General agree?). Well, **tempus iterum fūgit: valēte!**

School of Athens, detail of Pythagoras and a boy
Raphael, 1508
Stanza della Segnatura
Vatican Palace, Vatican State

14

I-Stem Nouns of the Third Declension; Ablatives of Means, Accompaniment, and Manner

Some nouns of the third declension differ from those introduced in Ch. 7 in that they have a characteristic **i** in certain case endings. Because of this **i** these nouns are called **i-stem nouns**, and the rest are known as consonant-stems. As you will see from the following paradigms, the only new ending shared by all i-stems is the genitive plural in **-ium** (rather than simply **-um**); neuters have, in addition, **-ī** instead of **-e** in the ablative singular and **-ia** instead of **-a** in the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural; **vīs** is a common irregular i-stem and should be memorized (its gen. and dat. sg., given in parentheses, are rarely used).

Cons.-stem Reviewed	Parisyllabics		Base in 2 Consonants	Neut. in -e, -al, -ar	Irregular
rēx, rēgis, m., *king*	cīvis, -is, m., *citizen*	nūbēs, -is, f., *cloud*	urbs, -is, f., *city*	mare, -is, n., *sea*	vīs, vīs, f., *force;* pl. *strength*
N. rēx	cīvis	nūbēs	urbs	máre	vīs
G. rēgis	cīvis	nūbis	urbis	máris	(vīs)
D. rēgī	cīvī	nūbī	urbī	márī	(vī)
A. rēgem	cīvem	nūbem	urbem	máre	vim
A. rēge	cīve	nūbe	urbe	márī	vī

N.	régēs	cívēs	núbēs	úrbēs	mária	vírēs
G.	régum	cívium	núbium	úrbium	márium	vírium
D.	régibus	cívibus	núbibus	úrbibus	máribus	víribus
A.	régēs	cívēs	núbēs	úrbēs	mária	vírēs
A.	régibus	cívibus	núbibus	úrbibus	máribus	víribus

An important alternate masculine and feminine accusative plural ending in -īs (e.g., cīvīs for cīvēs), though rarely appearing in this book, was frequently employed throughout Republican literature and into the Augustan Period and should be remembered.

Besides learning these few new endings, it is also important to be able to recognize that a noun is an i-stem when you encounter it in a vocabulary list or a reading. The following three rules will enable you to do so and should be memorized.

MASCULINE AND FEMININE i-STEMS

1. Masculine and feminine nouns with a nominative singular in -is or -ēs and having the same number of syllables in both the nominative and genitive (often called "parisyllabic," from **pār**, *equal,* + **syllaba**).[1]

> hostis, hostis, m.; hostium; *enemy*
> nāvis, nāvis, f.; nāvium; *ship*
> mōlēs, mōlis, f.; mōlium; *mass, structure*

2. Masculine and (chiefly) feminine nouns with a nominative singular in -s or -x which have a base ending in two consonants; most, like the following examples, have monosyllabic nominatives.

> ars, art-is, f.; artium; *art, skill*
> dēns, dent-is, m.; dentium; *tooth*
> nox, noct-is, f.; noctium; *night*
> arx, arc-is, f.; arcium; *citadel*

Again, the only ending ordinarily distinguishing these masculine and feminine nouns from consonant stems is the genitive plural in -ium.

NEUTER i-STEMS

3. Neuter nouns with a nominative singular in -al, -ar, or -e. Again, these have the characteristic i not only in the genitive plural -ium but also in the ablative singular -ī and the nominative/accusative/vocative plural -ia.

---

[1] Canis, canis, *dog,* and iuvenis, -is, *youth,* are exceptions, having -um in the gen. pl. There are a few nouns with -er nominatives in this category, e.g., imber, imbris, m., *shower, rain* (gen. pl. imbrium).

animal, animālis, n., *animal*
exemplar, exemplāris, n., *model, pattern, original*
mare, maris, n., *sea*

IRREGULAR Vīs

The common and irregular vīs must be thoroughly memorized and must be carefully distinguished from vir. Note that the characteristic ī appears in most forms. Practice with the following forms: **virī, vīrēs, virīs, vīrium, vīribus, virōs, virum.**

ABLATIVE CASE USES

So far the ablative has generally appeared along with prepositions and for that reason has occasioned little difficulty. However, the Romans frequently used a simple ablative without a preposition to express ideas which in English are introduced by a preposition. The proper interpretation of such ablatives requires two things: (1) a knowledge of the prepositionless categories and (2) an analysis of the context to see which category is the most logical.

Following are three common uses (or "constructions") of the ablative case, which should be added to the one you have already learned (i.e., object of certain prepositions); several additional uses for this case will be introduced in later chapters, so it is important to maintain a list in your notebook or computer file, complete with the name, a definition, and examples for each (you should be maintaining similar lists, of course, for all of the other cases as well).

ABLATIVE OF MEANS OR INSTRUMENT

The ablative of means or instrument is one of the most important of the prepositionless categories. It answers the questions *by means of what (instrument)?*, *by what?*, *with what?* and its English equivalent is a phrase introduced by the prepositions *by, by means of, with.*

Litterās stilō scrīpsit, *he wrote the letter with a pencil* (stilus, -ī).
Cīvēs pecūniā vīcit, *he conquered the citizens with/by money.*
Id meīs oculīs vīdī, *I saw it with my own eyes.*
Suīs labōribus urbem cōnservāvit, *by his own labors he saved the city.*

You have already encountered this construction a few times in the reading and translation exercises.

ABLATIVES OF ACCOMPANIMENT AND MANNER

You have also already encountered the use of **cum** + ablative to indicate (1) accompaniment, which answers the question *with whom?* and (2) manner, which answers the question *how?*

Cum amīcīs vēnērunt, *they came with friends* (= with whom?)
Cum celeritāte vēnērunt, *they came with speed* (= how?; *speedily.* —celeritās, -tātis).
Id cum eīs fēcit, *he did it with them* (= with whom?).
Id cum virtūte fēcit, *he did it with courage* (= how?; *courageously*).

You will notice that each of these three constructions may be translated using the English preposition "with" (among other possibilities), but the three constructions are conceptually different and must be very carefully distinguished. Remember that ablative constructions generally function adverbially, telling you something about the action of the verb; in these three instances they tell you, respectively, by what means or with what instrument the action was performed, with whom the action was performed, and in what manner the action was performed.

Your only real difficulty will come in translating from English to Latin. If *with* tells *with whom* or *in what manner*, use **cum** + ablative; if *with* tells *by means of what*, use the ablative without a preposition.

VOCABULARY

ánimal, animális, n., *a living creature, animal* (related to **anima,** Ch. 34, *breath, air, spirit, soul,* and **animus;** animate, animation)

áqua, -ae, f., *water* (aquatic, aquarium, Aquarius, aqueduct, subaqueous, ewer, sewer, sewage, sewerage)

ars, ártis, f., *art, skill* (artifact, artifice, artificial, artless, artist, artisan, inert, inertia)

aúris, aúris, f., *ear* (aural, auricle, auricular, auriform; not to be confused with "auric," "auriferous," from **aurum,** *gold*)

cívis, cívis, m. and f., *citizen* (civil, civilian, civility, incivility, civilize, civic; cp. **civitâs, cívilis,** *related to one's fellow citizens*)

iūs, iúris, n., *right, justice, law* (jurisdiction, jurisprudence, juridical, jurist, juror, jury, just, justice, injury; cp. **iniûria,** Ch. 39, **iûstus,** Ch. 40)

máre, máris, n., *sea* (marine, mariner, marinate, maritime, submarine, cormorant, rosemary, mere = Eng. cognate, archaic for "small lake.")

mors, mórtis, f., *death* (mortal, immortal, mortify, mortgage; murder = Eng. cognate; cp. **mortális,** Ch. 18, **immortális,** Ch. 19)

núbēs, núbis, f., *cloud* (nubilous)

ōs, óris, n., *mouth, face* (oral, orifice)

pars, pártis, f., *part, share; direction* (party, partial, partake, participate, participle, particle, particular, partisan, partition, apart, apartment, depart, impart, repartee)

Róma, -ae, f., *Rome* (romance, romantic, romanticism; cp. **Rōmánus**)

túrba, -ae, f., *uproar, disturbance; mob, crowd, multitude* (cp. **turbáre,** *to disturb, throw into confusion;* turbid, turbulent, turbine, turbo, disturb, perturb, imperturbable, trouble)

urbs, úrbis, f., *city* (urban, urbane, urbanity, suburb, suburban)

vīs, vīs, f., *force, power, violence;* **vírēs, vírium,** pl., *strength* (vim, violate, violent; do not confuse with **vir**)

ā (before consonants), **ab** (before vowels or consonants), prep. + abl., *away from, from; by* (personal agent); frequent in compounds (aberration, abject, abrasive, absolve, abstract, abundant, abuse)

trāns, prep. + acc., *across;* also a prefix (transport, transmit)

appéllō (1), *to speak to, address (as), call, name* (appellation, appellative, appeal, appellant, appellate)

cúrrō, cúrrere, cucúrrī, cúrsum, *to run, rush, move quickly* (current, cursive, cursory, course, coarse, discursive, incur, occur, recur)

mū́tō (1), *to change, alter; exchange* (mutable, immutable, mutual, commute, permutation, transmutation, molt)

téneō, tenére, ténuī, téntum, *to hold, keep, possess; restrain;* **-tineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum** in compounds, e.g., **contineō** (tenable, tenacious, tenant, tenet, tenure, tentacle, tenor; continue, content, continent, pertinent, pertinacity, lieutenant, appertain, detain, retain, sustain)

vítō (1), *to avoid, shun;* not to be confused with **vívō** (inevitable)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Magnam partem illārum urbium post multōs annōs vī et cōnsiliō capiēbat.
2. Ante Caesaris ipsíus oculōs trāns viam cucurrimus et cum amīcīs fūgimus.
3. Nēmō vitia sua videt, sed quisque illa alterīus.
4. Monuitne nūper eōs dē vīribus illārum urbium in Asiā?
5. Ipsī autem lībertātem cīvium suōrum magnā cum cūrā aluerant.
6. Nōmina multārum urbium nostrārum ab nōminibus urbium antīquārum trāximus.
7. Pars cīvium dīvitiās cēpit et per urbem ad mare cucurrit.

8. Hodiē multae nūbēs in caelō sunt signum īrae acerbae deōrum.
9. Illud animal herī ibi cecidit et sē trāns terram ab agrō trahēbat.
10. That wicked tyrant did not long preserve the rights of these citizens.
11. Great is the force of the arts.
12. His wife was standing there with her own friends and doing that with patience.
13. Cicero felt and said the same thing concerning his own life and the nature of death.

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

1. Et Deus aquās maria in prīncipiō appellāvit. (Genesis; **aquās** is direct object; **maria** is predicate acc. or objective complement.[2])
2. Terra ipsa hominēs et animālia ōlim creāvit. (Lucretius.)
3. Pān servat ovēs et magistrōs fortūnātōs ovium. (Virgil.—Pan, the god of pastures and shepherds.—**ovis, ovis,** f., *sheep.*)
4. Parva formīca onera magna ōre trahit. (Horace.—**formīca, -ae,** *ant.*—**onus, oneris,** n., *load.*)
5. Auribus teneō lupum. (*Terence.—a picturesque, proverbial statement of a dilemma, like Eng. "to have a tiger by the tail."—**lupus, -ī,** *wolf.*)
6. Ille magnam turbam clientium sēcum habet. (Horace.—**cliēns, -entis,** m., *client, dependent.*)
7. Hunc nēmō vī neque pecūniā superāre potuit. (Ennius.)
8. Animus eius erat ignārus artium malārum. (Sallust.—**ignārus, -a, -um,** *ignorant.*)
9. Magna pars meī mortem vītābit. (Horace.—**meī,** partitive gen., Ch. 15.)
10. Vōs, amīcī doctī, exemplāria Graeca semper cum cūrā versāte. (Horace.—**exemplar, -plāris,** *model, original.*—**versāre,** *to turn; study.*)
11. Nōn vīribus et celeritāte corporum magna gerimus, sed sapientiā et sententiā et arte. (Cicero.—**celeritās, -tātis,** *swiftness.*)
12. Istī caelum, nōn animum suum, mūtant, sī trāns mare currunt. (Horace.)

STORE TEETH

Thāis habet nigrōs, niveōs Laecānia dentēs.
   Quae ratiō est? Ēmptōs haec habet, illa suōs.

(*Martial 5.43; meter: elegiac couplet.—**Thāis** and **Laecānia** are names of women; take **habet** ... **dentēs** with both these subjects.—**niger, -gra, -grum,**

---

[2] Such verbs as *to call* (**appellō, vocō**), *consider* (**dūcō, habeō**), *choose* (**legō**), *make* (**faciō, creō**) may be followed by two accusatives: one is the direct object; the other is a type of predicate noun or adjective sometimes called an "objective complement."

black.—**niveus, -a, -um,** *snowy.*—**dēns, dentis,** m., *tooth.*—**quae** (interrogative adj. modifying **ratiō**), *what.*—**ēmptōs |dentēs|,** perf. pass. partic., *bought, purchased.*)

CICERO IMAGINES THE STATE OF ROME ITSELF URGING HIM TO PUNISH THE CATILINARIAN CONSPIRATORS

M. Tullī Cicerō, quid agis? Istī prō multīs factīs malīs poenās dare nunc dēbent; eōs enim ad mortem dūcere dēbēs, quod Rōmam in multa perīcula traxērunt. Saepe Rōmānī in hāc cīvitāte etiam cīvēs morte multāvērunt. Sed nōn dēbēs cōgitāre hōs malōs esse cīvēs, nam numquam in hāc urbe prōditōrēs patriae iūra cīvium tenuērunt; hī iūra sua āmīsērunt. Populus Rōmānus tibi magnās grātiās aget, M. Tullī, sī istōs cum virtūte nunc multābis.

(Cicero, *In Catilīnam* 1.11.27–28; see the readings in Ch. 11 above and Ch. 20 below.—**M.** = **Mārcus.**—**multāre,** *to punish.*—**prōditor, -tōris,** *betrayer.*)

ETYMOLOGY

In the readings   4. formic, formaldehyde.—onus, onerous. 11. celerity, accelerate, accelerator. "Store Teeth": Negro (Spanish from **niger**), Negroid; dental, dentist, dentifrice, dentil, indent, dandelion (Fr. **dent de lion**), tooth = Eng. cognate.

Pan (sent. 3), the Greek god of woods and countryside, was accredited with the power of engendering sudden fear in people. Hence from Greek comes our word "panic." (However, "pan-," as in "Pan-American," comes from another Greek word meaning *all.*)

Study the following Romance derivatives:

Latin	Italian	Spanish	French
ars, artis; artem	arte	arte	art
mors, mortis; mortem	morte	muerte	mort
pars, partis; partem	parte	parte	parti
pēs, pedis; pedem	piede	pie	pied
dēns, dentis; dentem	dente	diente	dent
nāvis, nāvis; nāvem	nave	nave	navire
			nef (*nave*)
nox, noctis; noctem	notte	noche	nuit

Clearly these Romance derivatives do not come from the nominative of the Latin words. The rule is that Romance nouns and adjectives of Latin origin generally derive from the accusative form, often with the loss of some sound or feature of the final syllable.[3]

---

[3] One exception thus far in this book has been Fr. **fils,** *son,* from Lat. **fīlius.** (Old Fr. **fiz,** whence Eng. "Fitz-," *natural son,* e.g., Fitzgerald.)

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

Quid agitis, amīcī et amīcae! Here's hoping yours is a **mēns sāna in corpore sānō,** in all of its **partēs.** You've now learned the Latin names for several: **oculus, auris, ōs,** and **dēns** (remember Thais and Laecania?). Here are some others, from the **caput** up only, that can be easily remembered from their Eng. derivatives: **collum, -ī,** *neck* ("collar"); **nāsus, -ī,** *nose* ("nasal"); **supercilium, -ī,** *eyebrow* (let's hope you've never raised an eyebrow superciliously at a friend); **coma, -ae,** *hair* (astronomy buffs know the constellation **Coma Berenīcēs,** *Berenice's lock*—sorry, no connection with "comb," but "comet" is related); **lingua, -ae,** *tongue* as well as *language* ("multilingual," "lingo," and even "linguine," which is long and flat like a tongue!). For more **partēs corporis,** see Ch. 20.

Languages, by the way, should be learned with "oral-aural" techniques, and not just through reading and writing, so I hope you're remembering to practice your declensions and conjugations aloud, and to say **salvē** or **tē amō** to someone everyday.

Oops—looking back at the Vocab. and the new **i**-stems, I am reminded of **ars grātiā artis,** *art for the sake of art,* the motto of M.G.M. film studios, and B.A. and M.A. for **Baccalaureus Artium** and **Magister Artium,** academic degrees you may have or aspire to. Then there's the familiar Latin phrase, **mare nostrum,** which is either what the Romans used to call the Mediterranean (*our sea*) or, perhaps somewhat less likely, Caesar's critical comment on his unmusical equine ("my horse doesn't play the guitar"—groan!!!). **Valēte!**

The Forum, Rome, Giovanni Paolo Pannini, 18th century
Private Collection

15

Numerals; Genitive of the Whole; Genitive and Ablative with Cardinal Numerals; Ablative of Time

NUMERALS

The commonest numerals in Latin, as in English, are the "cardinals" (from **cardō, cardinis,** m., *hinge,* the "pivotal" numbers in counting, "one, two, three . . . ," etc.) and the "ordinals" (from **ōrdō, ōrdinis,** m., *rank, order,* the numerals indicating "order" of occurrence, "first, second . . . ," etc.).

CARDINAL NUMERALS

In Latin most cardinal numerals through 100 are indeclinable adjectives; the one form is used for all cases and genders. The following, however, are declined as indicated.

ūnus, ūna, ūnum, *one* (see Ch. 9.)

	duo, *two*			trēs, *three*		mīlle, *thousand* mīlia, *thousands*	
	M.	F.	N.	M. & F.	N.	M.F.N.	N.
N.	dúo	dúae	dúo	trēs	tría	mílle	mília
G.	duórum	duárum	duórum	trium	tríum	mílle	mílium
D.	duóbus	duábus	duóbus	tríbus	tríbus	mílle	mílibus
A.	dúōs	dúās	dúo	trēs	tría	mílle	mília
A.	duóbus	duábus	duóbus	tríbus	tríbus	mílle	mílibus

The cardinals indicating the hundreds from 200 through 900 are declined like plural adjectives of the first and second declensions; e.g., **ducentī, -ae, -a,** *two hundred.*

Mīlle, 1,000, is an indeclinable *adjective* in the singular, but in the plural it functions as a neuter i-stem *noun* of the third declension (e.g., **mīlle virī,** *a thousand men;* **mīlia virōrum,** *thousands of men*).

The cardinals from **ūnus** through **vīgintī quīnque** should be memorized (see the list in the Appendix, p. 451) and with them **centum** (100) and **mīlle.** The following sentences illustrate these various forms and uses of cardinal numerals:

Trēs puerī rosās dedērunt duābus puellīs, *three boys gave roses to two girls.*

Octō puerī librōs dedērunt decem puellīs, *eight boys gave books to ten girls.*

Ūnus vir vēnit cum quattuor amīcīs, *one man came with four friends.*

Cōnsul vēnit cum centum virīs, *the consul came with 100 men.*

Cōnsul vēnit cum ducentīs virīs, *the consul came with 200 men.*

Cōnsul vēnit cum mīlle virīs, *the consul came with 1,000 men.*

Cōnsul vēnit cum sex mīlibus virōrum, *the consul came with six thousand(s) (of) men.*

ORDINAL NUMERALS

The ordinal numerals, which indicate the order of sequence, are regular adjectives of the first and the second declensions (**prīmus, -a, -um; secundus, -a, -um;** etc.—see Appendix, p. 451). The ordinals from **prīmus** through **duodecimus** should be learned.

GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE

The genitive of a word indicating the whole of some thing or group is used after a word designating a part of that whole.

pars urbis, *part of the city* (city = the whole)
nēmō amīcōrum meōrum, *no one of my friends*

This genitive of the whole (sometimes called the "partitive genitive") can also be used after the neuter nominative and accusative of certain pronouns and adjectives such as **aliquid, quid, multum, plūs, minus, satis, nihil, tantum, quantum.**

nihil temporis, *no time (nothing of time)*
quid cōnsiliī, *what plan?*
satis ēloquentiae, *sufficient eloquence*

The genitive of the whole may itself be the neuter singular of a *second* declension adjective.

multum bonī, *much good* (lit. *of good*)
quid novī, *what (is) new?*
nihil certī, *nothing certain*

GENITIVE AND ABLATIVE WITH CARDINAL NUMERALS

With **mīlia** the genitive of the whole is used.

decem mīlia virōrum, *10,000 men* (*but* mīlle virī, *1,000 men*)

With other cardinal numerals and with **quīdam** (*a certain one,* introduced in Ch. 26) the idea of the whole is regularly expressed by ex or **dē** and the ablative. This construction is sometimes found after other words.

trēs ex amīcīs meīs, *three of my friends* (*but* trēs amīcī = *three friends*)
quīnque ex eīs, *five of them*
centum ex virīs, *100 of the men*
quīdam ex eīs, *a certain one of them*

ABLATIVE OF TIME WHEN OR WITHIN WHICH

The Romans expressed the idea of "time when" or "within which" using the ablative without a preposition. The English equivalent is usually a prepositional phrase introduced by *at, on, in,* or *within,* depending on the English idiom (*for,* which indicates "duration of time," is *not* an option: see Ch. 37).

Eō tempore nōn poteram id facere, *at that time I could not do it.*
Agricolae bonīs annīs valēbant, *in good years the farmers flourished.*
Eōdem diē vēnērunt, *they came on the same day* (**diē,** abl. of **diēs,** *day*).
Aestāte lūdēbant, *in the summer they used to play.* (**aestāte,** abl. of **aestās,** *summer*)
Paucīs hōrīs id faciet, *in (within) a few hours he will do it.*

Since this construction always involves some noun indicating a unit of time, without a preposition, you should easily distinguish it from the other ablative case uses you have now learned (object of certain prepositions, means, manner, and accompaniment, abl. with cardinal numerals); you must be able to recognize, name, and translate each of the six types of ablative usages.

VOCABULARY

Itália, -ae, f., *Italy* (italics, italicize)

memória, -ae, f., *memory, recollection* (memoir, memorial, memorize, memorandum, commemorate)

tempéstās, tempestátis, f., *period of time, season; weather, storm* (tempest, tempestuous; cp. **tempus**)

Cardinal numerals from **únus** to **vigíntī quínque** (App., p. 451)

Ordinal numerals from **prímus** to **duodécimus** (App., p. 451)

céntum, indecl. adj., *a hundred* (cent, centenary, centennial, centi-, centigrade, centimeter, centipede, centurion, century, bicentenary, bicentennial, sesquicentennial, tercentenary)

mílle, indecl. adj. in sg., *thousand;* **mília, mílium,** n. pl., *thousands* (millennium, millennial, mile, milli-, milligram, millimeter, millipede, million, mill (= 1/10 cent), bimillennium, millefiori)

míser, mísera, míserum, *wretched, miserable, unfortunate* (misery, Miserere, commiserate)

ínter, prep. + acc., *between, among* (intern, internal; common as Eng. prefix, e.g., interact, intercept, interdict)

ítaque, adv., *and so, therefore*

commíttō, -míttere, -mísī, -míssum, *to entrust, commit* (committee, commission, commissary, commitment, noncommissioned, noncom)

exspéctō (1), *to look for, expect, await* (expectancy, expectation)

iáciō, iácere, iếcī, iáctum, *to throw, hurl.* This verb appears in compounds as **-iciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum:** e.g., **ēiciō, ēicere, ēiēcī, ēiectum,** *to throw out, drive out* (abject, adjective, conjecture, dejected, eject, inject, interject, object, project, subject, reject, trajectory)

tímeō, timére, tímuī, *to fear, be afraid of, be afraid* (timid, timorous, intimidate; cp. **timor**)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Illae quínque féminae inter ea animália mortem nōn timébant.
2. Duo ex fíliīs ā portā per agrōs cum patre suō herī currébant et in aquam cecidérunt.
3. Prīmus rēx dīvitiās in mare iēcit, nam magnam īram et vim turbae timuit.
4. Nēmō eandem partem Asiae ūnō annō vincet.

5. Rōmānī quattuor ex eīs urbibus prīmā viā iūnxērunt.
6. Itaque mīlia librōrum eius ab urbe trāns Italiam mīsistis.
7. Lībertātem et iūra hārum urbium artibus bellī cōnservāvimus.
8. Dī Graecī sē inter hominēs cum virtūte saepe nōn gerēbant.
9. Cicerō mīlia Rōmānōrum vī sententiārum suārum dūcēbat.
10. Sententiae medicī eum cārum mihi numquam fēcērunt.
11. The tyrant used to entrust his life to those three friends.
12. The greedy man never has enough wealth.
13. At that time we saved their mother with those six letters.
14. Through their friends they conquered the citizens of the ten cities.

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

1. Diū in istā nāve fuī et propter tempestātem nūbēsque semper mortem exspectābam. (Terence.—**nāvis, nāvis,** *f.,* ship.)
2. Septem hōrīs ad eam urbem vēnimus. (Cicero.)
3. Italia illīs temporibus erat plēna Graecārum artium, et multī Rōmānī ipsī hās artēs colēbant. (Cicero.—**artēs,** in the sense of studies, literature, philosophy.—**colō, -ere,** *to cultivate, pursue.*)
4. Inter bellum et pācem dubitābant. (Tacitus.—**dubitāre,** *to hesitate, waver.*)
5. Eō tempore istum ex urbe ēiciēbam. (Cicero.)
6. Dīcēbat quisque miser: "Cīvis Rōmānus sum." (Cicero.)
7. Mea puella passerem suum amābat, et passer ad eam sōlam semper pīpiābat nec sē ex gremiō movēbat. (Catullus.—**passer, -seris,** m., *sparrow,* a pet bird.—**pīpiāre,** *to chirp.*—**gremium, -iī,** lap.—**movēre.**)
8. Fīliī meī frātrem meum dīligēbant, mē vītābant; mē patrem acerbum appellābant et meam mortem exspectābant. Nunc autem mōrēs meōs mūtāvī et duōs fīliōs ad mē crās traham. (Terence.)
9. Dionȳsius tyrannus, quoniam tōnsōrī caput committere timēbat, fīliās suās barbam et capillum tondēre docuit; itaque virginēs tondēbant barbam et capillum patris. (Cicero.—**tōnsor, -sōris,** *barber.*—**barba, -ae,** *beard.*—**capillus, -ī,** *hair.*—**tondēre,** *to shave, cut.*)

CYRUS' DYING WORDS ON IMMORTALITY

Ō meī fīliī trēs, nōn dēbētis esse miserī. Ad mortem enim nunc veniō, sed pars meī, animus meus, semper remanēbit. Dum eram vōbīscum, animum nōn vidēbātis, sed ex factīs meīs intellegēbātis eum esse in hōc corpore. Crēdite igitur animum esse eundem post mortem, etiam sī eum nōn vidēbitis, et semper cōnservāte mē in memoriā vestrā.

(Cicero, *Dē Senectūte* 22.79–81.—Cyrus the Great, whom Cicero quotes here, was a Persian king of the 6th cen. B.C.—**crēdō, -ere,** *to believe.*)

FABIAN TACTICS

Etiam in senectūte Quīntus Fabius Maximus erat vir vērae virtūtis et bella cum animīs adulēscentis gerēbat. Dē eō amīcus noster Ennius, doctus ille poēta, haec verba ōlim scrīpsit: "Ūnus homō cīvitātem fortūnātam nōbīs cūnctātiōne cōnservāvit. Rūmōrēs et fāmam nōn pōnēbat ante salūtem Rōmae. Glōria eius, igitur, nunc bene valet et semper valēbit."

(Ibid. 4.10.—Quintus Fabius Maximus enjoyed considerable success against Hannibal in the Second Punic War [218–201 B.C.] through his delaying tactics, thus earning the epithet **Cūnctātor,** *the Delayer.*—**Ennius,** an early Roman poet.—**cūnctātiō, -ōnis,** *delaying.*—**rūmor, -mōris,** *rumor, gossip.*—**pōnō, -ere,** *to put, place.*—**salūs, salūtis,** f., *safety.*)

Hamilcar Asks Hannibal to Swear His Hatred Against the Romans
Giovanni Battista Pittoni, 18th century
Pinacoteca di Brera, Milan, Italy

ETYMOLOGY

The following are some of the Eng. derivatives from the Lat. cardinals and ordinals 2–12: (2) dual, duel, duet, double (cp. doubt, dubious), duplicity; second; (3) trio, triple, trivial; (4) quart, quarter, quartet, quatrain; (5) quinquennium, quintet, quintuplets, quincunx; (6) sextet, sextant; (7) September; (8) October, octave, octavo; (9) November, noon; (10) December, decimal, decimate, dime, dean; (12) duodecimal, dozen.

The following table lists some Romance cardinal numbers derived from Latin.

Latin	Italian	Spanish	French
ūnus	un(o)	un(o)	un
duo	due	dos	deux
trēs	tre	tres	trois
quattuor	quattro	cuatro	quatre
quīnque	cinque	cinco	cinq
sex	sei	seis	six
septem	sette	siete	sept
octō	otto	ocho	huit
novem	nove	nueve	neuf
decem	dieci	diez	dix
ūndecim	undici	once	onze
duodecim	dodici	doce	douze
centum	cento	ciento	cent
mīlle	mille	mil	mille

In the readings   3. cult, culture, agriculture, horticulture (**hortus,** *garden*), colony. 7. passerine.—"pipe," both verb and noun, an onomatopoetic (imitative) word widely used; e.g., Gk. **pipos,** *a young bird,* and **pipizein** or **peppizein,** *to peep, chirp,* Ger. **piepen** and **pfeifen,** Eng. "peep," Fr. **piper.** 9. tonsorial, tonsure.—barber, barb, barbed, barbate.—capillary, capillaceous. "Cyrus": credo, creed, credible, credulous (see Vocab., Ch. 25). "Fabian": cunctation.—component, etc. (Ch. 27).—salutation, salutary; cf. **salvēre.**

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

Salvēte! Quid novī, meī amīcī amīcaeque? Latin has other types of numerals, besides the cardinals and ordinals, which you will encounter later in your study of the language and many of which are already familiar. "Roman numerals" developed from counting on the fingers: 1 = one finger, II = two, etc., V = five (the hand held outstretched with the thumb and index finger making a "V"), VI = a "handful of fingers" plus one, etc., X = two V's, one inverted on the other, and so on. There were also "distributive" numerals, **singulī, -ae, -a** (*one each*); **bīnī, -ae, -a** (*two each*), **ternī, -ae, -a,** etc., and "multiplicatives," **simplex, simplicis** (*single*), **duplex** (*double*), **triplex,** etc.; likewise numeral adverbs, **semel** (*once*), **bis** (*twice*), **ter** (*three times*), etc. All these words have numerous (pardon the pun) Eng. derivatives!

"Me, I believe in grammar, but I did not really know about it until I learnt a little Latin—and that is a gift, an absolute gift."—Margaret Thatcher. **Id est bonum cōnsilium,** whatever your politics. **Valēte!**

16

Third Declension Adjectives

Latin has two major categories of adjectives. You are already quite familiar with those having first and second declension forms like **magnus, -a, -um** (Ch. 4) and the small sub-category of first/second declension adjectives that have **-īus** in the genitive singular and **-ī** in the dative singular (Ch. 9).

Adjectives of the second major group generally have third declension i-stem forms and are declined exactly like i-stem nouns of the third declension, except that the ablative singular of all genders (not just the neuter) ends with **-ī.**

Adjectives of this group fall into three categories that differ from each other in simply one respect. Some, called "adjectives of three endings," have distinct forms of the _nominative singular_ that differentiate each of the three genders, just as **magnus, magna,** and **magnum** do (e.g., **ācer** M., **ācris** F., and **ācre** N.); those of "two endings" (the largest category of third declension adjectives) have a single nominative form for both masculine and feminine, and another for the neuter (e.g., **fortis** M. and F., **forte** N.); and those of "one ending" do not differentiate the genders at all in the nominative singular (e.g., **potēns** is the M., F., and N. nom. sg. form). In all other respects the adjectives of all three categories are the same, with the masculine and feminine endings differing from the neuters only in the accusative singular and the nominative (= vocative) and accusative plural.

Paradigms are given below, with the distinctive i-stem endings in bold; the nouns **cīvis** and **mare** are provided for comparison (review Ch. 14, if necessary) and to show that there is very little new to be learned in order to master third declension adjectives.

	I-Stem Nouns Reviewed		**Adj. of 2 Endings** **fortis, forte,** *strong, brave*	
	M. or F.	**N.**	**M. & F.**	**N.**
Nom.	cívis	máre	fórtis	fórte
Gen.	cívis	máris	fórtis	fórtis
Dat.	cívī	márī	fórtī	fórtī
Acc.	cívem	máre	fórtem	fórte
Abl.	cíve	márī	fórtī	fórtī
Nom.	cívēs	mária	fórtēs	fórtia
Gen.	cívium	márium	fórtium	fórtium
Dat.	cívibus	máribus	fórtibus	fórtibus
Acc.	cívēs¹	mária	fórtēs¹	fórtia
Abl.	cívibus	máribus	fórtibus	fórtibus

	Adj. of 3 Endings **ăcer, ăcris, ăcre,** *keen, severe, fierce*		**Adj. of 1 Ending** **potĕns, gen. potentis,** *powerful*	
	M. & F.	**N.**	**M. & F.**	**N.**
Nom.	ăcer, ăcris	ăcre	pótēns	pótēns
Gen.	ăcris	ăcris	poténtis	poténtis
Dat.	ăcrī	ăcrī	poténtī	poténtī
Acc.	ăcrem	ăcre	poténtem	pótēns
Abl.	ăcrī	ăcrī	poténtī	poténtī
Nom.	ăcrēs	ăcria	poténtēs	poténtia
Gen.	ăcrium	ăcrium	poténtium	poténtium
Dat.	ăcribus	ăcribus	poténtibus	poténtibus
Acc.	ăcrēs¹	ăcria	poténtēs¹	poténtia
Abl.	ăcribus	ăcribus	poténtibus	poténtibus

OBSERVATIONS

Note carefully the places in which the characteristic i appears,[2] as indicated in the paradigms:

(1) -ī in the ablative singular of all genders.
(2) -ium in the genitive plural of all genders.
(3) -ia in the nominative and accusative plural of the neuter.

[1] Remember that i-stem nouns and adjectives have an alternate -īs ending in the acc. pl. (the regular ending until the Augustan Period), but it will rarely be used in this book.
[2] A few third-declension adjectives of one ending are declined without this characteristic i in one or more of the three places; e.g., **vetus, veteris,** *old:* **vetere** (abl. sg.), **veterum** (gen. pl.), **vetera** (neut. nom. and acc. pl.). The forms of comparatives and present participles will be taken up later.

Note also that an adjective of the third declension can be used with a noun of any declension just as an adjective of the first and the second declensions can. In the following illustrations **omnis, -e,** *every, all,* is used as the example of an adjective of two endings.

omnis amīcus *or* homō	ācer amīcus/homō	potēns amīcus/homō
omnis rēgīna *or* māter	ācris rēgīna/māter	potēns rēgīna/māter
omne bellum *or* animal	ācre bellum/animal	potēns bellum/animal

For the sake of practice, study and analyze the forms in the following phrases:

omnī fōrmae	in omnī fōrmā	omnium fōrmārum
omnī animō	in omnī animō	omnium animōrum
omnī hominī	in omnī homine	omnium hominum
omnī urbī	in omnī urbe	omnium urbium
omnī marī	in omnī marī	omnium marium

The vocabulary entries for adjectives of three endings (**-er** words like **ācer,** some of which retain the -e- in the base, some of which drop it) and two endings (of the **-is/-e** variety) list the different nominative endings; the base can be determined from the feminine or neuter form. For adjectives of one ending (many of these end in **-ns** or **-x**) the genitive is provided so that you can determine the base (by dropping the **-is** ending, e.g., **potēns, potent-is**).

USAGE

Third declension adjectives function in the same ways as other adjectives: they modify nouns (**omnēs agricolae,** *all the farmers,* sometimes called the "attributive" use); they can serve as "predicate nominatives" (**virī erant ācrēs,** *the men were fierce*) or "objective complements" (**virtūs fēcit virōs fortēs,** *virtue made the men brave*); they can take the place of nouns (**fortūna fortēs adiuvat,** *fortune helps the brave,* sometimes called the "substantive" use). Remember, too, that attributive adjectives usually follow the nouns they modify, except those that denote size or quantity, demonstratives, and any that are meant to be emphasized.

VOCABULARY

aétās, aetátis, f., *period of life, life, age, an age, time* (eternal, eternity)

audítor, audītóris, m., *hearer, listener, member of an audience* (auditor, auditory, auditorium; cp. **audiō**)

cleméntia, -ae, f., *mildness, gentleness, mercy* (clement, clemency, inclement, Clement, Clementine)

mēns, méntis, f., *mind, thought, intention* (mental, mentality, mention, demented; Minerva [?]; cp. mind)

sátura, -ae, f., *satire* (satirist, satirical, satirize)

ácer, ácris, ácre, *sharp, keen, eager, severe, fierce* (acrid, acrimony, acrimonious, eager, vinegar)

brévis, bréve, *short, small, brief* (brevity, breviary, abbreviate, abridge)

céler, céleris, célere, *swift, quick, rapid* (celerity, accelerate)

difficilis, difficile, *hard, difficult, troublesome* (difficulty)

dúlcis, dúlce, *sweet; pleasant, agreeable* (dulcify, dulcet, dulcimer)

fácilis, fácile, *easy, agreeable* (facile, facility, facilitate; cp. **faciō**)

fórtis, fórte, *strong, brave* (fort, forte, fortify, fortitude, force, comfort)

íngēns, gen. **ingéntis,** *huge*

iūcúndus, -a, -um, *pleasant, delightful, agreeable, pleasing* (jocund)

lóngus, -a, -um, *long* (longitude, longevity, elongate, oblong, prolong; Eng. "long" is cognate.)

ómnis, ómne, *every, all* (omnibus, bus, omnipresent, omnipotent, omniscient, omnivorous; cp. **omnīnō,** Ch. 40)

pótēns, gen. **poténtis,** pres. part. of **possum** as an adj., *able, powerful, mighty, strong* (potent, impotent, omnipotent, potentate, potential)

sénex, gen. **sénis,** adj. and noun, *old, aged; old man* (senate, senator, senescent, senile, senior, seniority, sir, sire)

quam, adv., *how*

régō, régere, réxī, réctum, *to rule, guide, direct* (regent, regime, regiment, regular, regulate, correct, direction, rectitude; cp. **rēx, rēgīna**)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Fortēs virī et fēminae ante aetātem nostram vīvēbant.
2. Eōs centum senēs miserōs ab Italiā trāns maria difficilia herī mittēbat.
3. Illī duo virī omnēs cupiditātēs ex sē ēiēcērunt, nam nātūram corporis timuērunt.
4. Potēns rēgīna, quoniam sē dīlēxit, istōs trēs vītāvit et sē cum eīs numquam iūnxit.
5. Itaque inter eōs ibi stābam et signum cum animō fortī diū exspectābam.
6. Celer rūmor per ōra aurēsque omnium sine morā currēbat.
7. Vīs bellī acerbī autem vītam eius paucīs hōrīs mūtāvit.
8. Quīnque ex nautīs sē ex aquā trāxērunt sēque Caesarī potentī commīsērunt.
9. Caesar nōn poterat suās cōpiās cum celeribus cōpiīs rēgis iungere.
10. Themistoclēs omnēs cīvēs ōlim appellābat et nōmina eōrum ācrī memoriā tenēbat.
11. In caelō sunt multae nūbēs et animālia agricolae tempestāte malā nōn valent.
12. The father and mother often used to come to the city with their two sweet daughters.

13. The souls of brave men and women will never fear difficult times.
14. Does he now understand all the rights of these four men?
15. The doctor could not help the brave girl, for death was swift.

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

1. Quam dulcis est lībertās! (Phaedrus.)
2. Labor omnia vīcit. (*Virgil.)
3. Fortūna fortēs adiuvat. (Terence.)
4. Quam celeris et ācris est mēns! (Cicero.)
5. Polyphēmus erat mōnstrum horrendum, īnfōrme, ingēns. (Virgil.—
   mōnstrum, -ī.—**horrendus, -a, -um.**—**īnfōrmis, -e,** *formless, hideous.*)

The blinding of Polyphemus
Hydria from Cerveteri, 525 B.C.
Museo Nazionale di Villa Giulia, Rome, Italy

6. Varium et mūtābile semper fēmina. (*Virgil.—Order: **fēmina semper
   |est| varium et mūtābile.**—**varius, -a, -um,** *varying, fickle.*—**mūtā-
   bilis, -e,** *changeable;* the neuters **varium** and **mūtābile** are used to
   mean "a fickle and changeable *thing.*")
7. Facile est epigrammata belle scrībere, sed librum scrībere difficile
   est. (*Martial.—**epigramma, -matis,** n., *short poem, epigram.*—**belle,**
   adv. from **bellus, -a, -um.**)
8. Īra furor brevis est; animum rege. (*Horace.—**furor, -rōris,** *madness.*)
9. Ars poētica est nōn omnia dīcere. (*Servius.—**poēticus, -a, -um.**)
10. Nihil est ab omnī parte beātum. (*Horace.)
11. Liber meus hominēs prūdentī cōnsiliō alit. (Phaedrus.—**prūdēns,**
    gen. **prūdentis.**)
12. Māter omnium bonārum artium sapientia est. (*Cicero.)
13. Clēmentia rēgem salvum facit; nam amor omnium cīvium est in-
    expugnābile mūnīmentum rēgis. (Seneca.—**inexpugnābilis, -e,** *im-
    pregnable.*—**mūnīmentum, -ī,** *fortification, defense.*)
14. Vīta est brevis; ars, longa. (Hippocrates, quoted by Seneca.)
15. Breve tempus aetātis autem satis longum est ad bene vīvendum.
    (Cicero.—**vīvendum,** *living,* verbal noun obj. of **ad,** *for.*)
16. Vīvit et vīvet per omnium saeculōrum memoriam. (*Velleius Pa-
    terculus.—**saeculum, -ī,** *century, age.*)

JUVENAL EXPLAINS HIS IMPULSE TO SATIRE

Semper ego audītor erō? Est turba poētārum in hāc urbe—ego igitur erō poēta! Sunt mīlia vitiōrum in urbe—dē istīs vitiīs scrībam! Difficile est saturam nōn scrībere. Sī nātūra mē adiuvāre nōn potest, facit indignātiō versum. In librō meō erunt omnia facta hominum—timor, īra, voluptās, culpa, cupiditās, īnsidiae. Nunc est plēna cōpia vitiōrum in hāc miserā urbe Rōmae!

(Juvenal, *Saturae* 1.1ff; prose adaptation from the opening of Juvenal's programmatic first satire.—**indignātiō, -ōnis.**—**versus,** *verse, poetry.*)

ON A TEMPERAMENTAL FRIEND

Difficilis facilis, iūcundus acerbus—es īdem:
    nec tēcum possum vīvere nec sine tē.

(*Martial, 12.46; meter: elegiac couplet.)

ETYMOLOGY

In the readings   5. monstrous.—horrendous.—informal, inform (adj. with neg. prefix **in-**) 6. variety, variegated, vary, unvaried, invariable. 8. furor. 11. **prūdēns,** syncopated form of **prōvidēns** as seen in "providence," "providential." "Juvenal": indignation, indignant.—verse, versify, versification.

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

Salvēte! Quid agitis? Quid hodiē est tempestās? Here are some possible answers, many of which you can again recognize from Eng. derivatives: **frīgida** (**tempestās** is fem., as you recall from Ch. 15, hence the fem. adj., from **frīgidus, -a, -um**); **calida** (Eng. "scald" is a derivative); **nimbōsa** (from **nimbus,** which means the same as **nūbēs,** + the common suffix **-ōsus, -a, -um,** *full of,* hence "cloudy"—cp. Eng. "cumulonimbus clouds"); **ventōsa** (an identical formation from **ventus,** *wind*); **sōl lūcet,** *the sun is shining* (cp. "solar," "translucent"); **pluit,** *it's raining* ("pluvial," "pluviometer"); **ningit,** *it's snowing* (Eng. "niveous" from Lat. **niveus, -a, -um** is related).

Well, enough of the weather. Here's an omnibus of **omni-** words and phrases to delight you all: If you were "omnific" (from **facere**) and "omnipresent" (**-sent** from **sum**) and your appetite "omnivorous" (**vorāre,** *to eat,* cp. "carnivorous," "herbivorous") and your sight were "omnidirectional" (see **regō** in the Vocab. above), then you might potentially be "omnipotent" and even "omniscient" (**scīre,** *to know*). But as a proverbial saying from Virgil reminds us, **nōn omnēs possumus omnia.** (By the way **regō,** mentioned above, does NOT mean *to go again* nor should **regit** be translated *leave, and this time I mean it!*)

Valēte, omnēs amīcī et amīcae meae, et semper amāte Latīnam!

17

The Relative Pronoun

The relative pronoun **quī, quae, quod,** as common in Latin as its English equivalent *who/which/that,* ordinarily introduces a subordinate clause and refers back to some noun or pronoun known as its "antecedent"; the relative clause itself has an adjectival function, providing descriptive information about the antecedent (e.g., "the man who was from Italy" . . . = "the Italian man").

The forms of the relative pronoun are so diverse that the only practical procedure is to memorize them. However, it is easy to see that the endings of the genitive **cuius** and dative **cui** are related to those of **illīus** and **illī;** and it is easy to identify the case, the number, and often the gender of most of the remaining forms.

QUĪ, QUAE, QUOD, *who, which, that*

Singular			**Plural**		
M.	**F.**	**N.**	**M.**	**F.**	**N.**
quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
cuius[1]	cuius	cuius	quórum	quárum	quórum
cui[1]	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

USAGE AND AGREEMENT

Since the relative pronoun (from Lat. **referō, referre, rettulī, relātum,** Ch. 31) refers to and is essentially equivalent to its antecedent (from **antecēdere,**

---

[1] For the pronunciation of the **ui** in **cuius** (as if spelled *cui-yus*) and in **cui,** cp. **huius** and **huic** (Ch. 9) and see the Introd., p. xli.

to go before, since the antecedent usually appears in a preceding clause), the two words naturally agree in number and gender; the case of the relative, however, like that of any noun or pronoun, is determined by its use within its own clause. The logic of this can be demonstrated by analyzing and translating the following sentence:

The woman whom you are praising is talented.

1. The main clause of the sentence reads:

    The woman . . . is talented. Fēmina . . . est docta.

2. *Whom* introduces a subordinate, relative clause modifying *woman.*

3. *Woman* (**fēmina**) stands before the relative *whom* and is its antecedent.

4. *Whom* has a double loyalty: (1) to its antecedent, **fēmina,** and (2) to the subordinate clause in which it stands.

    a. Since the antecedent, **fēmina,** is feminine and singular, *whom* in Latin will have to be feminine and singular.
    b. Since in the subordinate clause *whom* is the direct object of (*you*) *are praising* (**laudās**), it must be in the accusative case in Latin.
    c. Therefore, the Latin form must be *feminine* and *singular* and *accusative:* **quam.**

The complete sentence in Latin appears thus:

Fēmina quam laudās est docta.

Again, succinctly, the rule is this: the *gender* and the *number* of a relative are determined by its antecedent; the *case* of a relative is determined by its use in its own clause.

Analyze the gender, the number, and the case of each of the relatives in the following sentences:

1. Dīligō puellam **quae** ex Italiā vēnit, *I admire the girl who came from Italy.*

2. Homō dē **quō** dīcēbās est amīcus cārus, *the man about whom you were speaking is a dear friend.*

3. Puella **cui** librum dat est fortūnāta, *the girl to whom he is giving the book is fortunate.*

4. Puer **cuius** patrem iuvābāmus est fortis, *the boy whose father we used to help is brave.*

5. Vītam meam committam eīs virīs **quōrum** virtūtēs laudābās, *I shall entrust my life to those men whose virtues you were praising.*

6. Timeō idem perīculum **quod** timētis, *I fear the same danger which you fear.*

In translating, be sure not to introduce words from the relative clause into the main clause or vice versa; e.g., in the third sentence above, **puella** should not be mistaken as the subject of **dat**. Note that a relative clause is a self-contained unit, beginning with the relative pronoun and often ending with the very first verb you encounter (**cui ... dat** in the third sample sentence); in complex sentences, like S.A. 3 below, you may find it helpful first to identify and actually even bracket the relative clause(s):

Multī cīvēs aut ea perīcula [quae imminent] nōn vident aut ea [quae vident] neglegunt.

Begin next to read the rest of the sentence and then, as soon as you have translated the relative pronoun's antecedent (which very often precedes the relative pronoun immediately), translate the relative clause.

VOCABULARY

libéllus, -ī, m., *little book* (libel, libelous; diminutive of **liber**)

quī, quae, quod, rel. pron., *who, which, what, that* (quorum)

caécus, -a, -um, *blind* (caecum, caecal, caecilian)

lévis, léve, *light; easy; slight, trivial* (levity, lever, levy, levee, Levant, leaven, legerdemain, alleviate, elevate, relevant, irrelevant, relieve)

aut, conj., *or;* **aut ... aut,** *either ... or*

cíto, adv., *quickly* (excite, incite, recite; cp. **recitō,** below)

quóque, adv., *also, too*

admíttō, -míttere, -mísī, -míssum, *to admit, receive, let in* (admission, admissible, inadmissible, admittedly)

coépī, coepísse, coéptum, *began,* defective verb used in the perfect system only; the present system is supplied by **incipiō** (below).

cúpiō, cúpere, cupívī, cupítum, *to desire, wish, long for* (Cupid, cupidity, concupiscence, covet, covetous, Kewpie doll; cp. **cupidítās, cupídō,** Ch. 36, **cupidus,** Ch. 39)

déleō, délére, délévī, délétum, *to destroy, wipe out, erase* (delete, indelible)

désíderō (1), *to desire, long for, miss* (desiderate, desideratum, desiderative, desire, desirous)

incípiō, -cipere, -cépī, -céptum, *to begin* (incipient, inception; cp. **capiō**)

návigō (1), *to sail, navigate* (navigation, navigable; cp. **nauta**)

néglegō, neglégere, negléxī, negléctum, *to neglect, disregard* (negligent, negligee, negligible; cp. **legō,** Ch. 18)

récitō (1), *to read aloud, recite* (recital, recitation, recitative)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Potēns quoque est vīs artium, quae nōs semper alunt.
2. Miserōs hominēs, autem, sēcum iungere coeperant.
3. Nam illā aetāte pars populī in Italiā iūra cīvium numquam tenuit.
4. Incipimus vēritātem intellegere, quae mentēs nostrās semper regere dēbet et sine quā valēre nōn possumus.
5. Quam difficile est bona aut dulcia ex bellō trahere!
6. Centum ex virīs mortem diū timēbant et nihil clēmentiae exspectābant.
7. Puer mātrem timēbat, quae eum saepe neglegēbat.
8. Inter omnia perīcula illa fēmina sē cum sapientiā gessit.
9. Itaque celer rūmor ācris mortis per ingentēs urbēs cucurrit.
10. Quoniam memoria factōrum nostrōrum dulcis est, beātī nunc sumus et senectūtem facilem agēmus.
11. Multī audītōrēs saturās ācrēs timēbant quās poēta recitābat.
12. They feared the powerful men whose city they were ruling by force.
13. We began to help those three pleasant women to whom we had given our friendship.
14. We fear that book with which he is beginning to destroy our liberty.

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

1. Salvē, bone amīce, cui fīlium meum herī commīsī. (Terence.)
2. Dionȳsius, dē quō ante dīxī, ā Graeciā ad Siciliam per tempestātem nāvigābat. (Cicero.—**Sicilia, -ae,** *Sicily.*)
3. Multī cīvēs aut ea perīcula quae imminent nōn vident aut ea quae vident neglegunt. (Cicero.—**imminēre,** *to impend, threaten.*)
4. Bis dat quī cito dat. (Publilius Syrus.—**bis,** adv., *twice.*)
5. Quī coepit, dīmidium factī habet. Incipe! (Horace.—**dīmidium, -ī,** *half.*)
6. Levis est fortūna: id cito repōscit quod dedit. (Publilius Syrus.—**repōscō, -ere,** *to demand back.*)
7. Fortūna eum stultum facit quem nimium amat. (Publilius Syrus.)
8. Nōn sōlum fortūna ipsa est caeca sed etiam eōs caecōs facit quōs semper adiuvat. (Cicero.)
9. Bis vincit quī sē vincit in victōriā. (*Publilius Syrus.)
10. Simulātiō dēlet vēritātem, sine quā nōmen amīcitiae valēre nōn potest. (Cicero.—**simulātiō, -ōnis,** *pretense, insincerity.*)
11. Virtūtem enim illīus virī amāvī, quae cum corpore nōn periit. (Cicero.—**pereō, -īre, -iī, -itum,** *to perish.*)
12. Turbam vītā. Cum hīs vīve quī tē meliōrem facere possunt; illōs admitte quōs tū potes facere meliōrēs. (Seneca.—**melior,** *better.*)

ON THE PLEASURES OF LOVE IN OLD AGE

Estne amor in senectūte? Voluptās enim minor est, sed minor quoque est cupiditās. Nihil autem est cūra nōbīs, sī nōn cupimus, et nōn caret is quī nōn dēsīderat. Adulēscentēs nimis dēsīderant; senēs satis amōris saepe habent et multum sapientiae. Cōgitō, igitur, hoc tempus vītae esse iūcundum.

(Cicero, *Dē Senectūte* 14.47-48.—**minor,** *less.*—**carēre,** *to lack, want.*)

IT'S ALL IN THE DELIVERY

Quem recitās meus est, ō Fīdentīne, libellus;
  sed male cum recitās, incipit esse tuus!

(*Martial, 1.38; meter: elegiac couplet.—**Fīdentīnus,** a fellow who had publicly recited some of Martial's poems.—**libellus,** diminutive of **liber,** is the delayed antecedent of **quem;** in prose the order would be **libellus quem recitās est meus.**—**male,** adv. of **malus.**—**cum,** conj., *when.*)

A Reading from Homer, Sir Lawrence Alma-Tadema, 1885
Philadelphia Museum of Art: The George W. Elkins Collection

ETYMOLOGY

The Lat. rel. pron. was the parent of the following Romance forms: It. **chi, che;** Sp. **que;** Fr. **qui, que.**

If the suffix **-scō** shows a Latin verb to be an "inceptive" verb, what force or meaning does this ending impart to the verb?—**tremō,** *tremble;* **tremēscō** = ?

In medieval manuscripts many texts begin with an "incipit"; e.g., **liber prīmus Epistulārum Plīniī incipit.**

To Latin **aut** can be traced It. **o,** Sp. **o,** Fr. **ou.**

In the readings 3. imminent. 10. simulation, simulator, dissimulation. 11. **perīre:** Fr. **périr, périssant:** Eng. "perish." 12. ameliorate. "Old Age": minority.—caret.

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

Iterum salvēte! There are a couple of Eng. abbreviations from **quī, quae, quod** which you may have seen: **q.v.** = **quod vidē,** *which see* (i.e., "see this item"), and **Q.E.D.** = **quod erat dēmōnstrandum,** *that which was to be proved* (used, e.g., in mathematical proofs—for the verbal form, a "passive periphrastic," see Ch. 24). Less common are **q.e.** = **quod est,** *which is,* and **Q.E.F.** = **quod erat faciendum,** *which was to be done.* You are beginning to see that for a truly literate person Latin is **sine quā nōn** (*indispensable,* lit. something *without which* one can *not* manage), and that's a point we needn't "quibble" over (a diminutive derived from the frequent use of **quibus** in legal documents).

The root meaning of **recitāre,** by the way, is *to arouse again* (cp. "excite," "incite"); when we "recite" a text, we are quite literally "reviving" or bringing it back to life, which is why we—just like the Romans—should always read literature, especially poetry, aloud!

Here's some good advice on doing your translations: **semper scrībe sententiās in tabellā tuā** (*your notebook*). An ancient proverb tells you why: **quī scrībit, bis discit!** And here's an old proverb with the new Vocab. item **cito: cito matūrum, cito putridum,** *quickly ripe, quickly rotten.* So let's not go too fast: **valēte!**

18

First and Second Conjugations: Passive Voice of the Present System; Ablative of Agent

FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATION: PRESENT SYSTEM PASSIVE VOICE

In Latin as in English there are passive verb forms and passive sentence types, in which the subject is *recipient* of the action (rather than *performing* the action, as in the active voice). The rule for forming the passive of first and second conjugation present system passives (i.e., passives of the present, future, and imperfect tenses) is an easy one: simply substitute the new passive endings (**-r, -ris, -tur; -mur, -minī, -ntur**) for the active ones learned in Ch. 1 (**-ō/-m, -s, -t; -mus, -tis, -nt**). The few exceptions to this rule are highlighted in bold in the following paradigms.

PRESENT INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF Laudō and Moneō

PASSIVE ENDINGS			
1. -r	laúd-**or**	móne**or**	*I am (am being) praised, warned*
2. -ris	laudá-ris	monéris	*you are (are being) praised, warned*
3. -tur	laudá-tur	monétur	*he is (is being) praised, warned*

1. -mur	laudá-mur	monémur	*we are (are being) praised, warned*
2. -minī	laudá-minī	monéminī	*you are (are being) praised, warned*
3. -ntur	laudá-ntur	monéntur	*they are (are being) praised, warned*

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE

I was (being) praised,	*I was (being) warned,*
used to be praised, etc.	*used to be warned,* etc.
1. laudá-ba-r	monébar
2. laudā-bá-ris	monēbáris
3. laudā-bá-tur	monēbátur
1. laudā-bá-mur	monēbámur
2. laudā-bá-minī	monēbáminī
3. laudā-bá-ntur	monēbántur

FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE

I shall be praised	*I shall be warned*
1. laudá-**b-or**	mon**é**bor
2. laudá-**be**-ris	mon**é**beris
3. laudá-bi-tur	monébitur
1. laudá-bi-mur	monébimur
2. laudā-bí-minī	monēbíminī
3. laudá-bú-ntur	monēbúntur

The exceptional forms, highlighted in bold above, are few: in the first person singular, present and future, the **-r** is added *directly* to the full active form (with the **-o-** shortened before final **-r**); **-bi-** is changed to **-be-** in the future second person singular. Notice, too, that the stem vowel remains short in **laudantur/monentur** but is long in **laudātur/monētur** (review the rule in Ch. 1: vowels are generally shortened before **nt** in any position but only before a *final* **-m, -r,** or **-t,** hence **laudat** but **laudātur**). You should note the existence of an alternate second person singular passive ending in **-re** (e.g., **laudābere** for **laudāberis**); this ending is not employed in this book, but you will certainly encounter it in your later readings.

THE PRESENT PASSIVE INFINITIVE

The present passive infinitive of the first and the second conjugations is formed simply by changing the final **-e** of the active to **-ī.**

laudár-ī, *to be praised*   monér-ī, *to be warned*

THE PASSIVE VOICE

When the verb is in the active voice (from **agō, agere, ēgī, āctum,** *to act*), the subject performs the action of the verb. When the verb is in the passive voice (from **patior, patī, passus sum,** *to undergo, experience*) the subject is acted upon: it suffers or passively permits the action of the verb. As a rule, only transitive verbs can be used in the passive; and what had been the object of the transitive verb (receiving the action of the verb) now becomes the subject of the passive verb (still receiving the action of the verb).

Caesarem admonet, *he is warning Caesar.*
Caesar admonētur, *Caesar is being warned.*

Urbem dēlēbant, *they were destroying the city.*
Urbs dēlēbātur, *the city was being destroyed.*

Patriam cōnservābit, *he will save the country.*
Patria cōnservābitur, *the country will be saved.*

ABLATIVE OF PERSONAL AGENT

The personal *agent by whom* the action of a passive verb is performed is indicated by **ab** and the "ablative of agent"; the *means by which* the action is accomplished is indicated by the "ablative of means" without a preposition, as you have already learned in Ch. 14.

Dī Caesarem admonent, *the gods are warning Caesar.*
Caesar ā dīs admonētur, *Caesar is warned by the gods.* (Agent)
Caesar hīs prōdigiīs admonētur, *Caesar is warned by these omens.* (Means); prōdigium, -iī, *omen.*
Malī virī urbem dēlēbant, *evil men were destroying the city.*
Urbs ab malīs virīs dēlēbātur, *the city was being destroyed by evil men.* (Agent)
Urbs flammīs dēlēbātur, *the city was being destroyed by flames.* (Means); flamma, -ae.
Hī cīvēs patriam cōnservābunt, *these citizens will save the country.*
Patria ab hīs cīvibus cōnservābitur, *the country will be saved by these citizens.* (Agent)
Patria armīs et vēritāte cōnservābitur, *the country will be saved by arms and truth.* (Means)

In summary, and as seen in the preceding examples, an active sentence construction can generally be transformed to a passive construction as follows: what was the direct object becomes the subject, the recipient of the

action; what was the subject becomes an ablative of agent (remember to add this to your list of ablative uses), if a person, or an ablative of means, if a thing; and the appropriate passive verb form is substituted for the active.

VOCABULARY

flúmen, flúminis, n., *river* (flume; cp. **fluō,** below)

génus, géneris, n., *origin; kind, type, sort, class* (genus, generic, genitive, gender, general, generous, genuine, degenerate, genre, congenial; cp. **gēns,** Ch. 21, **ingenium,** Ch. 29)

hóstis, hóstis, m., *an enemy* (of the state); **hóstēs, -ium,** *the enemy* (hostile, hostility, host)

lúdus, -ī, m., *game, sport; school* (ludicrous, delude, elude, elusive, allude, allusion, illusion, collusion, interlude, prelude, postlude)

próbitās, probitátis, f., *uprightness, honesty* (probity; cp. **probāre,** Ch. 27)

sciéntia, -ae, f., *knowledge* (science, scientific; cp. **sciō,** Ch. 21)

clárus, -a, -um, *clear, bright; renowned, famous, illustrious* (clarify, clarity, claret, clarinet, clarion, declare, Clara, Clarissa, Claribel)

mortális, mortále, *mortal* (mortality, immortality; cp. **mors**)

cūr, adv., *why*

deínde, adv., *thereupon, next, then*

flúō, flúere, flúxī, flúxum, *to flow* (fluid, fluent, flux, influx, affluence, effluence, influence, confluence, influenza, flu, mellifluous, superfluous)

légō, légere, légī, léctum, *to pick out, choose; read* (elect, elegant, eligible, lecture, legend, legible, intellect; cp. **intellegō, neglegō**)

mísceō, miscére, míscuī, míxtum, *to mix, stir up, disturb* (miscellanea, miscellaneous, miscellany, miscible, meddle, meddlesome, medley, melee, admixture, intermixture, promiscuous)

móveō, movére, móvī, mótum, *to move; arouse, affect* (mobile, motion, motive, motor, commotion, emotion, remote, locomotive, mutiny)

vídeor, vidérī, vísus sum, pass. of **videō,** *to be seen, seem, appear*

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Multī morte etiam facilī nimis terrentur.
2. Beāta memoria amīcitiārum dulcium numquam dēlēbitur.
3. Illa fēmina caeca omnia genera artium quoque intellēxit et ab amīcīs iūcundīs semper laudābātur.
4. Pater senex vester, ā quō saepe iuvābāmur, multa dē celeribus perīculīs ingentis maris herī dīcere coepit.
5. Mentēs nostrae memoriā potentī illōrum duōrum factōrum cito moventur.
6. Cōnsilia rēgīnae illō tertiō bellō longō et difficilī dēlēbantur.

7. Itaque māter mortem quartī fīliī exspectābat, quī nōn valēbat et cuius aetās erat brevis.
8. Bella difficilia sine cōnsiliō et clēmentiā numquam gerēbāmus.
9. Tē cum novem ex aliīs miserīs ad Caesarem crās trahent.
10. Rēgem ācrem, quī officia neglēxerat, ex urbe suā ēiēcērunt.
11. Ille poēta in tertiō libellō saturārum scrīpsit dē hominibus avārīs quī ad centum terrās aliās nāvigāre cupiunt quod pecūniam nimis dēsīderant.
12. Mercy will be given by them even to the citizens of other cities.
13. Many are moved too often by money but not by truth.
14. The state will be destroyed by the powerful king, whom they are beginning to fear.
15. Those ten women were not frightened by plans of that trivial sort.

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

1. Possunt quia posse videntur. (*Virgil.—**quia**, conj., *because.*)
2. Etiam fortēs virī subitīs perīculīs saepe terrentur. (Tacitus.—**subitus, -a, -um,** *sudden.*)
3. Tua cōnsilia sunt clāra nōbīs; tenēris scientiā hōrum cīvium omnium. (Cicero.)
4. Malum est cōnsilium quod mūtārī nōn potest. (*Publilius Syrus.)
5. Fās est ab hoste docērī. (Ovid.—**fās est,** *it is right.*)
6. Eō tempore erant circēnsēs lūdī, quō genere levī spectāculī numquam teneor. (Pliny.—**circēnsēs lūdī,** *contests in the Circus.*—As here with **genere,** the antecedent is often attracted into the rel. clause.—**spectāculum, -ī.**)

Relief with scene of
Circus Maximus
Museo Archeologico
Foligno, Italy
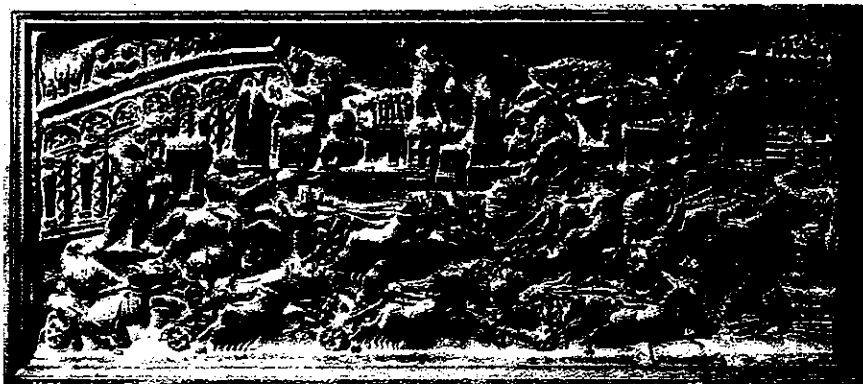
7. Haec est nunc vīta mea: admittō et salūtō bonōs virōs quī ad mē veniunt; deinde aut scrībō aut legō; post haec omne tempus corporī datur. (Cicero.—**salūtāre,** *to greet* at the early morning reception.)
8. Nihil igitur mors est, quoniam nātūra animī habētur mortālis. (Lucretius.)

9. Amor miscērī cum timōre nōn potest. (*Publilius Syrus.)

10. Numquam enim temeritās cum sapientiā commiscētur. (*Cicero.—**temeritās, -tātis,** *rashness.*)

11. Dīligēmus eum quī pecūniā nōn movētur. (Cicero.)

12. Laudātur ab hīs; culpātur ab illīs. (*Horace.)

13. Probitās laudātur—et alget. (*Juvenal.—**algēre,** *to be cold, be neglected.*)

ON DEATH AND METAMORPHOSIS

Ō genus hūmānum, quod mortem nimium timet! Cūr perīcula mortis timētis? Omnia mūtantur, omnia fluunt, nihil ad vēram mortem venit. Animus errat et in alia corpora miscētur; nec manet, nec eāsdem fōrmās servat, sed in fōrmās novās mūtātur. Vīta est flūmen; tempora nostra fugiunt et nova sunt semper. Nostra corpora semper mūtantur; id quod fuimus aut sumus, nōn crās erimus.

(Ovid, *Metamorphōsēs* 15.153–216; prose adaptation.—The ancients had some imaginative views on the transmigration of souls.)

ETYMOLOGY

Hostis meant originally *stranger* and then *enemy,* since any stranger in early times was a possible enemy. From **hostis,** *enemy,* stems our "host" in the sense of "army." **Hospes, hospitis,** which is an ancient compound of **hostis,** *stranger,* and **potis,** *having power over, lord of* (cf. Russ. **gospodin,** *lord, gentleman*), means *host* (one who receives strangers or guests) and also *guest;* cp. "hospital," "hospitality," "hostel," "hotel" (Fr. **hôtel**), and Eng. cognate "guest."

In the readings   6. circus.—spectator, spectacle, specter, spectacular. 10. temerity (contrast "timidity").

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

Salvēte! Wondering how the same verb, **legere,** can mean both *to pick out* and *to read?* Because the process of reading was likened to gathering and collecting the words of a text. What a splendid metaphor: we are all of us (especially Latin students) "word collectors"! "Gather ye rosebuds while ye may" . . . and also the delights of language.

Remember the special pass. meaning of **videor** introduced in this Vocab.; here it is in the pres. pass. inf. form, also newly introduced in this chapter: **esse quam vidērī,** *to be rather than to seem,* the state motto of North Carolina. **Scientia** also turns up in several mottoes: **scientia est potentia,** *knowledge is power,* is one favorite, and another is **scientia sōl mentis est,** *knowledge is the sun of the mind* (motto of the University of Delaware). **Valēte, discipulae discipulīque!**

19

Perfect Passive System of All Verbs; Interrogative Pronouns and Adjectives

THE PERFECT PASSIVE SYSTEM

The construction of the forms of the perfect passive system is quite simple: a verb's perfect passive participle (the fourth principal part) is combined with **sum, erō,** and **eram** to form the perfect, future perfect, and pluperfect passive, respectively. The same pattern is employed for verbs of all conjugations; thus, in the following paradigms, **monitus, āctus, audītus, captus,** or any other perfect passive participle could be substituted for **laudātus.**

PERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE

1. laudátus, -a, -um sum — *I was praised, have been praised*
2. laudátus, -a, -um es — *you were praised, have been praised*
3. laudátus, -a, -um est — *he, she, it was praised, has been praised*

1. laudátī, -ae, -a súmus — *we were praised, have been praised*
2. laudátī, -ae, -a éstis — *you were praised, have been praised*
3. laudátī, -ae, -a sunt — *they were praised, have been praised*

FUTURE PERFECT PASSIVE

I shall have been praised, etc.
1. laudátus, -a, -um érō
2. laudátus, -a, -um éris
3. laudátus, -a, -um érit

PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE

I had been praised, etc.
1. laudátus, -a, -um éram
2. laudátus, -a, -um érās
3. laudátus, -a, -um érat

1. laudátī, -ae, -a érimus	1. laudátī, -ae, -a erámus
2. laudátī, -ae, -a éritis	2. laudátī, -ae, -a erátis
3. laudátī, -ae, -a érunt	3. laudátī, -ae, -a érant

USAGE AND TRANSLATION

Although **sum** + the participle function together in Latin as a verbal unit, the participle in essence is a type of predicate adjective; i.e., **puella laudāta est** = **puella est laudāta**, cp. **puella est bona**. Consequently, and logically, the participle agrees with the subject in gender, number, and case.

Just as Latin uses the present, future, and imperfect of **sum, esse** to form these perfect system passive verbs, so English uses the present, future, and past tenses of the verb *to have* as perfect system (active and passive) auxiliaries: **laudātus est,** *he has been praised* (or, simple past, *was praised*); **laudātus erit,** *he will have been praised;* **laudātus erat,** *he had been praised.*[1] Be careful to avoid such common mistranslations as *is praised* for **laudātus est** and *was praised* for **laudātus erat** (caused by looking at the forms of **esse** and the participle separately, rather than seeing them as a unit).

The following examples illustrate these rules of form, usage, and translation:

Puella laudāta est, *the girl has been* (or *was) praised.*
Puellae laudātae erant, *the girls had been praised.*
Puellae laudātae erunt, *the girls will have been praised.*
Puerī monitī sunt, *the boys have been* (*were) warned.*
Perīculum nōn vīsum erat, *the danger had not been seen.*
Perīcula nōn vīsa sunt, *the dangers were not seen.*
Litterae scrīptae erunt, *the letter will have been written.*

THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN

As with the English interrogative pronoun (who, whose, whom? what, which?), the Latin interrogative pronoun **quis, quid** asks for the identity of a person or thing: e.g., **quid legis?** *what are you reading?* and **quis illum librum legit?** *who is reading that book?* In the plural the forms of the Latin interrogative pronoun are identical to those of the relative pronoun; in the singular, also, it follows the pattern of the relative with two exceptions: (1) the mascu-

---

[1] The perfect system tenses are sometimes (and with greater clarity, in fact) called the present perfect, future perfect, and past perfect; from the use of present, future, and past tense auxiliaries discussed in this chapter, you can see the appropriateness of this terminology.

line and the feminine have the same forms, (2) the nominative forms have their distinctive spellings **quis, quid** (and **quid** is also, of course, the neut. acc. form).

	Singular		**Plural**		
	M. & F.	**N.**	**M.**	**F.**	**N.**
Nom.	quis	quid	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	cuius	cuius	quórum	quárum	quórum
Dat.	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quid	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

THE INTERROGATIVE ADJECTIVE

As with the English interrogative adjective (which, what, what kind of), the Latin interrogative adjective **quī, quae, quod** asks for more specific identification of a person or thing: e.g., **quem librum legis?** *which (or what) book are you reading?* and **quae fēmina illum librum legit?** *which woman is reading that book?* The forms of the interrogative adjective are identical to those of the relative pronoun, in both the singular and the plural.

THE INTERROGATIVES AND RELATIVE DISTINGUISHED

The forms **quis** and **quid** are easily recognized as interrogative pronouns, but otherwise the interrogative pronoun, the interrogative adjective, and the relative pronoun can only be distinguished by their function and context, not by their forms. The following points will make the distinction simple:

the *relative pronoun* usually introduces a subordinate clause, has an antecedent, and does not ask a question (in fact, relative clauses *answer* questions, in the sense that they are adjectival and provide further information about their antecedents: e.g., **liber quem legis est meus,** *the book which you are reading is mine*);

the *interrogative pronoun* asks a question about the identity of a person or thing, has no antecedent, and often introduces a sentence with a question mark at the end (an exception is the "indirect question," introduced in Ch. 30); and

the *interrogative adjective* asks for more specific identification of a person or thing and both precedes and agrees in gender, number, and case with the noun it is asking about.

Consider these additional examples, and determine whether a relative pronoun, an interrogative pronoun, or an interrogative adjective is used in each one:

Quis librum tibi dedit? *Who gave the book to you?*
Vir **quī** librum tibi dedit tē laudāvit, *the man who gave the book to you praised you.*
Quem librum tibi dedit? *Which book did he give you?*

Cuius librum Cicerō tibi dedit? *Whose book did Cicero give to you?*
Cuius librī fuit Cicerō auctor? *Of which book was Cicero the author?*
Vir **cuius** librum Cicerō tibi dedit tē laudāvit, *the man whose book Cicero gave to you praised you.*

Cui amīcō librum dedistī? *To which friend did you give the book?*
Cui librum Cicerō dedit? *To whom did Cicero give the book?*
Vir **cui** Cicerō librum dedit tē laudāvit, *the man to whom Cicero gave the book praised you.*

Quid dedit? *What did he give?*
Quod praemium dedit? *What reward did he give?* (**praemium, -iī.**)
Praemium **quod** dedit erat magnum, *the reward which he gave was large.*

Ā quō praemium datum est? *By whom was the reward given?*
Vir **ā quō** praemium datum est tē laudāvit, *the man by whom the reward was given praised you.*
Quō praemiō ille mōtus est? *By which reward was that man motivated?*

VOCABULARY

argūméntum, -ī, n., *proof, evidence, argument* (argumentation, argumentative)
aúctor, auctóris, m., *increaser, author, originator* (authority, authorize)
benefícium, -iī, n., *benefit, kindness; favor* (benefice, beneficence, beneficial, beneficiary; cp. **faciō**)
família, -ae, f., *household, family* (familial, familiar, familiarity, familiarize)
Graécia, -ae, f., *Greece*
iúdex, iúdicis, m., *judge, juror* (judge, judgment; cp. **iūdicium,** below, **iūs, iniūria,** Ch. 39, **iūstus,** Ch. 40)
iūdicium, -iī, n., *judgment, decision, opinion; trial* (adjudge, adjudicate, judicial, judicious, injudicious, misjudge, prejudge, prejudice)
scélus, scéleris, n., *evil deed, crime, sin, wickedness*
quis? quid?, interrog. pron., *who? whose? whom? what? which?* (quiddity, quidnunc, quip)
quī? quae? quod? interrog. adj., *what? which? what kind of?* (quo jure)

cértus, -a, -um, *definite, sure, certain, reliable* (ascertain, certify, certificate)

grávis, gráve, *heavy, weighty; serious, important; severe, grievous* (aggravate, grief, grievance, grieve, grave, gravity)

immortális, immortále, *not subject to death, immortal* (cp. **mors**)

at, conj. *but; but, mind you; but, you say;* a more emotional adversative than **sed**

nísi, conj., *if . . . not, unless; except* (nisi prius)

cóntrā, prep. + acc., *against* (contra- in compounds such as contradict, contrast, contravene, contrapuntal; contrary, counter, encounter, country, pro and con)

iam, adv., *now, already, soon*

dēléctō (1), *to delight, charm, please* (delectable, delectation; cp. **dēlectātiō,** Ch. 27)

líberō (1), *to free, liberate* (liberate, liberation, liberal, deliver; cp. **líber, lībertās**)

párō (1), *to prepare, provide; get, obtain* (apparatus, compare, parachute, parapet, parasol, pare, parry, repair, reparation, separate, several)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Quis lībertātem eōrum eō tempore dēlēre coepit?
2. Cuius lībertās ab istō auctōre deinde dēlēta est?
3. Quōs librōs bonōs poēta caecus herī recitāvit?
4. Fēminae librōs difficilēs crās legent quōs mīsistī.
5. Omnia flūmina in mare fluunt et cum eō miscentur.
6. Itaque id genus lūdōrum levium, quod ā multīs familiīs laudābātur, nōs ipsī numquam cupimus.
7. Puerī et puellae propter facta bona ā mātribus patribusque laudātae sunt.
8. Cūr istī vēritātem timēbant, quā multī adiūtī erant?
9. Hostis trāns ingēns flūmen in Graeciā deinde nāvigāvit.
10. Quī vir fortis clārusque, dē quō lēgistī, aetātem brevem mortemque celerem exspectābat?
11. Quae studia gravia tē semper dēlectant, aut quae nunc dēsīderās?
12. Who saw the six men who had prepared this?
13. What was neglected by the second student yesterday?
14. We were helped by the knowledge which had been neglected by him.
15. Whose plans did the old men of all cities fear? Which plans did they esteem?

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

1. Quae est nātūra animī? Est mortālis. (Lucretius.)
2. Illa argūmenta vīsa sunt et gravia et certa. (Cicero.)

3. Quid nōs facere contrā istōs et scelera eōrum dēbēmus? (Cicero.)

4. Quid ego ēgī? In quod perīculum iactus sum? (Terence.)

5. Ō dī immortālēs! In quā urbe vīvimus? Quam cīvitātem habēmus? Quae scelera vidēmus? (Cicero.)

6. Quī sunt bonī cīvēs nisi eī quī beneficia patriae memoriā tenent? (Cicero.)

7. Alia, quae pecūniā parantur, ab eō stultō parāta sunt; at mōrēs eius vērōs amīcōs parāre nōn potuērunt. (Cicero.)

THE AGED PLAYWRIGHT SOPHOCLES HOLDS HIS OWN

Quam multa senēs in mentibus tenent! Sī studium grave et labor et probitās in senectūte remanent, saepe manent etiam memoria, scientia, sapientiaque.

Sophoclēs, scrīptor ille Graecus, ad summam senectūtem tragoediās fēcit; sed propter hoc studium familiam neglegere vidēbātur et ā fīliīs in iūdicium vocātus est. Tum auctor eam tragoediam quam sēcum habuit et quam proximē scrīpserat, "Oedipum Colōnēum," iūdicibus recitāvit. Ubi haec tragoedia recitāta est, senex sententiīs iūdicum est līberātus.

(Cicero, *Dē Senectūte*, 7.22.—**summam,** *extreme.*—**tragoedia, -ae;** the diphthong **oe** has become e in the English word.—**proximē,** adv., *shortly before.*—"Oedipus at Colonus.")

Sophocles
Roman copy, 4th century B.C.
Museo Gregoriano Profano
Vatican Museums, Vatican State

CATULLUS BIDS A BITTER FAREWELL TO LESBIA

Valē, puella—iam Catullus obdūrat.

. . .

15 Scelesta, vae tē! Quae tibī manet vīta?
Quis nunc tē adībit? Cui vidēberis bella?
Quem nunc amābis? Cuius esse dīcēris?
Quem bāsiābis? Cui labella mordēbis?
At tū, Catulle, dēstinātus obdūrā.

(*Catullus 8.12, 15–19; meter: choliambic. See L.A. 1, below (and cp. the adaptation of this passage in Ch. 2). **obdūrāre**, *to be hard.*—**scelestus, -a, -um,** *wicked, accursed.*—**vae tē,** *woe to you.*—**Quae,** with **vīta.**—**adībit,** *will visit.*—**dīcēris,** *will you be said.*—**bāsiāre,** *to kiss.*—**cui,** here = **cuius.**—**labellum, -ī,** *lip.*—**mordēre,** *to bite.*—**dēstinātus, -a, -um,** *resolved, firm.*)

MESSAGE FROM A BOOKCASE

Sēlectōs nisi dās mihī libellōs,
admittam tineās trucēsque blattās!

(*Martial 14.37; meter: hendecasyllabic.—**sēlectus, -a, -um,** *select, carefully chosen.*—**tinea, -ae,** *maggot, bookworm.*—**trux,** gen. **trucis,** *fierce, savage.*—**blatta, -ae,** *cockroach.*)

ETYMOLOGY

In the readings   "Catullus": obdurate, mordant, mordent.—destine, destination, destiny. "Sophocles": sum, summary, consummate—proximate, approximate. "Message": truculent.

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

Salvēte!—quid agitis? We've been seeing **quid** in that idiom (*how are you doing?* not *what are you doing?*) ever since Ch. 2, and do you recall **quid novī,** *what's new?,* from the discussion of the gen. of the whole in Ch. 15? Even before beginning your study of Latin you'd likely encountered the common phrase **quid prō quō,** *one thing in return for another* (= "tit for tat"—**quid** was often equivalent to the indefinite *something*) and you may even have run into **quidnunc,** a "busybody" (lit., *what-now?!*). The interrogative adj. has also come into Eng.: **quō jūre** (= classical **iūre**), *by what (legal) right,* **quō animō,** *with what intention,* and **quō modō,** *in what manner.*

You learned **iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactum** in Ch. 15: you can now recognize the perfect passive form in Julius Caesar's famous dictum, **alea iacta est,** *the die has been cast,* a remark he made when crossing the Rubicon river in northern Italy in 49 B.C. and embarking upon civil war with Pompey the Great. **Discipulī discipulaeque, valēte!**

20

Fourth Declension; Ablatives of Place from Which and Separation

FOURTH DECLENSION

The fourth declension presents fewer problems than the third and contains fewer nouns; most are masculine, with the nominative singular in **-us,** but there are some feminines, also in **-us (manus,** *hand,* and **domus,** *house,* appear in this book), and a very few neuters, with the nominative singular in **-ū.**

As with all nouns, in order to decline, simply add the new endings presented below to the base; note that the characteristic vowel **u** appears in all the endings except the dative and ablative plural (and even there a few nouns have **-ubus** for **-ibus**) and that, of all the **-us** endings, only the masculine and feminine nominative singular has a short **-u-.**

	frūctus, -ūs, m. *fruit*	cornū, -ūs, n. *horn*	Endings M. & F.	N.
Nom.	frúctus	córnū	-us	-ū
Gen.	frúctūs	córnūs	-ūs	-ūs
Dat.	frúctuī	córnū	-uī	-ū
Acc.	frúctum	córnū	-um	-ū
Abl.	frúctū	córnū	-ū	-ū

Nom.	frúctūs	córnua	-ūs	-ua
Gen.	frúctuum	córnuum	-uum	-uum
Dat.	frúctibus	córnibus	-ibus	-ibus
Acc.	frúctūs	córnua	-ūs	-ua
Abl.	frúctibus	córnibus	-ibus	-ibus

Remember that there are also **-us** nouns in the second and third declensions, e.g., **amīcus** and **corpus;** it is a noun's genitive ending, not the nominative, that determines its declension, so it is imperative that you memorize the full vocabulary entry for every new noun you encounter. Remember, too, that a noun and modifying adjective, though they must agree in number, gender, and case, will not necessarily have the same endings, hence **frūctus dulcis, frūctūs dulcis,** etc., *sweet fruit;* **manus mea, manūs meae,** etc., *my hand;* **cornū longum, cornūs longī,** etc., *a long horn;* etc.

ABLATIVES OF PLACE FROM WHICH AND SEPARATION

The ablatives of place from which and separation are two very common and closely related constructions (which should be added now to your list of ablative case uses). The principal difference is that the former, which you have in fact already encountered in your readings, virtually always involves a *verb of active motion* from one place to another; nearly always, too, the ablative is governed by one of the prepositions **ab, dē,** or **ex** (*away from, down from, out of*):

Graecī ā patriā suā ad Italiam navigāvērunt, *the Greeks sailed from their own country to Italy.*

Flūmen dē montibus in mare flūxit, *the river flowed down from the mountains into the sea.*

Multī ex agrīs in urbem venient, *many will come from the country into the city.*

Cicerō hostēs ab urbe mīsit, *Cicero sent the enemy away from the city.*

The ablative of separation, as the terminology suggests, implies only that some person or thing is separated from another; there is no active movement from one place to another; and sometimes there is no preposition, particularly with certain verbs meaning "to free," "to lack," and "to deprive," which commonly take an ablative of separation:

Cicerō hostēs ab urbe prohibuit, *Cicero kept the enemy away from the city* (cp. the similar example above).

Eōs timōre līberāvit, *he freed them from fear.*

Agricolae pecūniā saepe carēbant, *the farmers often lacked money.*

VOCABULARY

coniūrátī, -órum, m. pl., *conspirators* (conjure, conjurer; cp. **coniūrātiō,** *conspiracy,* conjuration)

córnū, córnūs, n., *horn* (corn—not the grain, but a thick growth of skin; cornea, corner, cornet, cornucopia, unicorn)

frúctus, frúctūs, m., *fruit; profit, benefit, enjoyment* (fructify, fructose, frugal)

génū, génūs, n., *knee* (genuflect, genuflection; *knee* and **genū** are cognates)

mánus, mánūs, f., *hand; handwriting; band* (manual, manufacture, manumit, manuscript, emancipate, manacle, manage, manicle, maneuver)

métus, -ūs (= métūs; subsequent 4th decl. nouns will be abbreviated in this way), m., *fear, dread, anxiety* (meticulous; cp. **metuō,** Ch. 38)

mōns, móntis, m., *mountain* (mount, mountainous, Montana, amount, catamount, paramount, surmount, tantamount)

senátus, -ūs, m., *senate* (senatorial; cp. **senex**)

sénsus, -ūs, m., *feeling, sense* (sensation, sensory, sensual, sensuous, senseless, insensate, sensible, sensitive; cp. **sentiō**)

sérvitūs, servitūtis, f., *servitude, slavery* (cp. **servō**)

spíritus, -ūs, m., *breath, breathing; spirit, soul* (spiritual, spiritous, conspire, inspire, expire, respiratory, transpire; cp. **spīrāre,** *to breathe*)

vérsus, -ūs, m., *line of verse* (versify, versification; cp. **vertō,** Ch. 23)

commúnis, commúne, *common, general, of/for the community* (communal, commune, communicate, communicable, communion, communism, community, excommunicate)

déxter, déxtra, déxtrum, *right, right-hand* (dexterity, dextrous, ambidextrous)

siníster, sinístra, sinístrum, *left, left-hand; harmful, ill-omened* (sinister, sinistral, sinistrodextral, sinistrorse)

cáreō, carére, cáruī, caritūrum + abl. of separation, *to be without, be deprived of, want, lack; be free from* (caret)

dēféndō, -féndere, -féndī, -fénsum, *to ward off; defend, protect* (defendant, defense, defensible, defensive, fence, fencing, fend, fender, offend)

discédō, -cédere, -céssī, -céssum, *to go away, depart* (cp. **cēdō,** Ch. 28)

ódī, ōdísse, ōsūrum (a so-called "defective" verb, having only perf. system forms and a fut. act. participle), *to hate* (odious; cp. **odium,** Ch. 38)

prohíbeō, -hibére, -híbuī, -híbitum, *to keep (back), prevent, hinder, restrain, prohibit* (prohibitive, prohibition, prohibitory; cp. **habeō**)

prōnúntiō (1), *to proclaim, announce; declaim; pronounce* (pronounce-ment, pronunciation; cp. **nūntius,** *messenger, message*)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Etiam senēs frūctibus sapientiae et cōnsiliīs argūmentīsque certīs saepe carent.
2. Aut ingentēs montēs aut flūmina celeria quae dē montibus fluēbant hostēs ab urbe prohibēbant.
3. Quoniam nimis fortia facta faciēbat, aetās eius erat brevis.
4. Illa medica facere poterat multa manū dextrā sed sinistrā manū pauca.
5. Vēritās nōs metū gravī iam līberābit quō diū territī sumus.
6. Quibus generibus scelerum sinistrōrum illae duae cīvitātēs dēlētae sunt?
7. Quī mortālis sine amīcitiā et probitāte et beneficiō in aliōs potest esse beātus?
8. Pater pecūniam ex Graeciā in suam patriam movēre coeperat, nam familia discēdere cupīvit.
9. Ā quibus studium difficilium artium eō tempore neglēctum est?
10. Ubi versūs illīus auctōris clārī lēctī sunt, audītōrēs delectātī sunt.
11. Sē cito iēcērunt ad genua iūdicum, quī autem nūllam clēmentiam dēmōnstrāvērunt.
12. We cannot have the fruits of peace, unless we ourselves free our families from heavy dread.
13. Those bands of unfortunate men and women will come to us from other countries in which they are deprived of the benefits of citizenship.
14. The old men lacked neither games nor serious pursuits.
15. Who began to perceive our common fears of serious crime?

SENTENTIAE ANTÎQUAE

1. Cornua cervum ā perīculīs dēfendunt. (Martial.—**cervus, -ī,** *stag.*)
2. Oedipūs duōbus oculīs sē prīvāvit. (Cicero.—**prīvāre,** *to deprive.*)
3. Themistoclēs bellō Persicō Graeciam servitūte līberāvit. (Cicero.—**Persicus, -a, -um,** *Persian.*)
4. Dēmosthenēs multōs versūs ūnō spīritū prōnūntiābat. (Cicero.)
5. Persicōs apparātūs ōdī. (Horace.—**apparātus, -ūs,** *equipment, display.*)
6. Iste commūnī sēnsū caret. (Horace.)
7. Senectūs nōs prīvat omnibus voluptātibus neque longē abest ā morte. (Cicero.—**longē,** adv. of **longus.**—**absum,** *to be away.*)
8. Nūllus accūsātor caret culpā; omnēs peccāvimus. (Seneca.—**accūsā-tor, -tōris.**—**peccāre,** *to sin.*)

9. Nūlla pars vītae vacāre officiō potest. (Cicero.—**vacāre,** *to be free from.*)

10. Prīma virtūs est vitiō carēre. (Quintilian.)

11. Vir scelere vacuus nōn eget iaculīs neque arcū. (Horace.—**vacuus, -a, -um,** *free from.*—**egēre,** *to need.*—**iaculum, -ī,** *javelin.*—**arcus, -ūs,** *bow.*)

12. Magnī tumultūs urbem eō tempore miscēbant. (Cicero.—**tumultus, -ūs.**)

13. Litterae senātuī populōque Allobrogum manibus coniūrātōrum ipsōrum erant scrīptae. (Cicero.—**Allobrogēs, -gum,** m. pl., a Gallic tribe whom the Catilinarian conspirators tried to arouse against Rome.)

CICERO URGES CATILINE'S DEPARTURE FROM ROME

Habēmus senātūs cōnsultum contrā tē, Catilīna, vehemēns et grave; ācre iūdicium habēmus, et vīrēs et cōnsilium cīvitās nostra habet. Quid est, Catilīna? Cūr remanēs? Ō dī immortālēs! Discēde nunc ex hāc urbe cum malā manū scelerātōrum; magnō metū mē līberābis, sī omnēs istōs coniūrātōs tēcum ēdūcēs. Nisi nunc discēdēs, tē cito ēiciēmus. Nihil in cīvitāte nostrā tē dēlectāre potest. Age, age! Deinde curre ad Manlium, istum amīcum malum; tē diū dēsīderāvit. Incipe nunc; gere bellum in cīvitātem! Brevī tempore tē omnēsque tuōs, hostēs patriae, vincēmus, et omnēs vōs poenās gravēs semper dabitis.

(Cicero, *In Catilīnam* 1.1.3ff; see the readings in Chs. 11 and 14 above, and "Evidence and Confession," Ch. 30.—**cōnsultum, -ī,** *decree.*—**vehemēns,** gen. **vehementis.**—**scelerātus, -a, -um,** adj. from **scelus.**—Manlius was one of Catiline's principal fellow conspirators.)

Cicero
Museo Capitolino, Rome, Italy

ETYMOLOGY

The Roman *senate* was in origin a council of elders, hence the connection with **senex**.

If one knows the derivation of "caret," one is not likely to confuse this word with "carat."

In the readings

5. peach (Persian apple). 7. absent. 9. vacant, vacuous, vacate, vacation, vacuity, evacuate. 11. arc, arcade. 12. tumult, tumultuous. "Cicero": consult, consultation.—vehement, vehemence.)

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

Salvēte! This chapter's Vocab. provides some "handy" items: can you explain the etymologies of "manumit," "manuscript," and "manufacture"? A "manual" is the Latinate equivalent of the Germanic "handbook." Then there's the old Roman proverb **manus manum lavat (lavāre**, *to bathe*, gives us "lavatory"), *one hand washes the other.* You can see the right-handed bias in the etymologies of "dexterity" and "sinister" (from the ancient superstition that bad signs and omens appeared to one's left) and even "ambidextrous" (from **ambo**, *both, two:* is having "two right hands" better than having two left hands?).

And speaking of hands, how about fingers? The Latin word is **digitus, -ī**, which gives us "digit," "digital," "prestidigitation" (for a magician's quick fingers), and even "digitalis," a heart medication from a plant whose flowers are finger-shaped. These appendages are also handy for counting (**numerāre**): **prīmus digitus, secundus digitus, tertius . . .** etc. (**Potestisne numerāre omnēs digitōs vestrōs, discipulī et discipulae?** If not, look back at Ch. 15 and review your **numerī!**) The Romans had special names for each of the fingers, beginning with the thumb, **pollex**, then **index** (from **indicāre**, *to point*), **medius** (*middle*) or **īnfāmis** (*infamous, evil*—not all our body language is new!), **quartus** or **ānulārius** (where they often wore **ānulī**, *rings:* see "Ringo," Ch. 31), and **minimus** (*the smallest*) or **auriculārius** (the **parvus digitus**, and so handy for scratching or cleaning one's **aurēs!**). **Valēte!**

21

Third and Fourth Conjugations: Passive Voice of the Present System

The pattern of substituting passive endings for active endings, which you learned in Ch. 18 for the present system passives of first and second conjugation verbs, generally applies to third and fourth conjugation verbs as well; the only exceptions are in the second person singular present tense (set in bold in the following paradigms) and the present infinitive of third conjugation verbs.

PRESENT INDICATIVE PASSIVE

1. ágor	aúdior	cápior
2. **ágeris**	audíris	**cáperis**
3. ágitur	audítur	cápitur
1. ágimur	audímur	cápimur
2. agíminī	audíminī	capíminī
3. agúntur	audiúntur	capiúntur

FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE

1. ágar	aúdiar	cápiar
2. agéris	audiḗris	capiḗris
3. agétur	audiḗtur	capiḗtur

1. agémur	audiémur	capiémur
2. agéminī	audiéminī	capiéminī
3. agéntur	audiéntur	capiéntur

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE

1. agébar	audiébar	capiébar
2. agēbáris	audiēbáris	capiēbáris
3. agēbátur	audiēbátur	capiēbátur

1. agēbámur	audiēbámur	capiēbámur
2. agēbáminī	audiēbáminī	capiēbáminī
3. agēbántur	audiēbántur	capiēbántur

Be careful not to confuse the second person singular present and future third conjugation forms, which are distinguished only by the vowel quantity (**ageris** vs. **agēris**). Note that **capiō** and **audiō** are identical throughout the present system active and passive, except for variations in -i- vs. -ī- (in the present tense only) and the second singular passive **caperis** vs. **audīris**. Remember that the perfect passive system for third and fourth conjugation verbs follows the universal pattern introduced in Ch. 19.

PRESENT INFINITIVE PASSIVE

The present infinitive passive of the fourth conjugation is formed by changing the final -e to -ī, as in the first two conjugations; but in the third conjugation, including -iō verbs, the whole -ere is changed to -ī.

audíre, *to hear*	audírī, *to be heard* (cp. laudárī, monérī)
ágere, *to lead*	ágī, *to be led*
cápere, *to take*	cápī, *to be taken*

SYNOPSIS

To test your ability to conjugate a Latin verb completely, you may be asked to provide a labelled "synopsis" of the verb in a specified person and number, in lieu of writing out all of the verb's many forms. Following is a sample third person singular synopsis of **agō** in the indicative mood:

	Pres.	**Fut.**	**Impf.**	**Perf.**	**Fut. Perf.**	**Plupf.**
Act.	ágit	áget	agébat	égit	égerit	égerat
Pass.	ágitur	agétur	agēbátur	áctus est	áctus érit	áctus érat

VOCABULARY

cása, -ae, f., *house, cottage, hut* (casino)

caúsa, -ae, f., *cause, reason; case, situation;* **caúsā,** abl. with a preceding gen., *for the sake of, on account of* (accuse, because, excuse)

fenéstra, -ae, f., *window* (fenestra, fenestrated, fenestration, fenestella, defenestration)

fínis, fínis, m., *end, limit, boundary; purpose;* **fínēs, -ium,** *boundaries, territory* (affinity, confine, define, final, finale, finance, fine, finesse, finial, finicky, finish, finite, infinite, paraffin, refine)

gēns, géntis, f., *clan, race, nation, people* (gentile, gentle, genteel, gentry; cp. **genus, ingenium,** Ch. 29)

múndus, -ī, m., *world, universe* (mundane, demimonde)

návis, návis, f., *ship, boat* (naval, navy, navigable, navigate, nave; cp. **návigāre, nauta**)

sálūs, salútis, f., *health, safety; greeting* (salubrious, salutary, salutation, salute, salutatorian, salutatory; cp. **salveō, salvus**)

Tróia, -ae, f., *Troy*

vicínus, -ī, m., and **vicína, -ae,** f., *neighbor* (vicinity)

vúlgus, -ī, n. (sometimes m.), *the common people, mob, rabble* (vulgar, vulgarity, vulgarize, vulgate, divulge)

ásper, áspera, ásperum, *rough, harsh* (asperity, exasperate, exasperation)

átque or **ac** (only before consonants), conj., *and, and also, and even*

íterum, adv., *again, a second time* (iterate, iterative, reiterate, reiteration)

contíneō, -tinére, -tínuī, -téntum, *to hold together, contain, keep, enclose, restrain* (content, discontent, malcontent, continual, continuous, incontinent, countenance; cp. **teneō**)

iúbeō, iubére, iússī, iússum, *to bid, order, command* (jussive)

labórō (1), *to labor; be in distress* (laboratory, laborer, belabor; cp. **labor**)

rápiō, rápere, rápuī, ráptum, *to seize, snatch, carry away* (rapacious, rapid, rapine, rapture, ravage, ravine, ravish; cp. **ēripiō,** Ch. 22)

relínquō, -línquere, -líquī, -líctum, *to leave behind, leave, abandon, desert* (relinquish, reliquary, relict, relic, delinquent, dereliction)

sciō, scíre, scívī, scítum, *to know* (science, scientific, conscience, conscious, prescience, scilicet; cp. **scientia, nesciō,** Ch. 25)

tángō, tángere, tétigī, táctum, *to touch* (tangent, tangible, tact, tactile, contact, contagious, contiguous, contingent, integer, taste, tax)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Laus autem nimis saepe est neque certa neque magna.
2. Senēs in gente nostrā ab fīliīs numquam neglegēbantur.
3. Quis tum iussus erat Graeciam metū līberāre, familiās dēfendere, atque hostēs ā patriā prohibēre?

4. Salūtis commūnis causā eōs coniūrātōs ex urbe discēdere ac trāns flūmen ad montēs dūcī iussit.

5. Aliī auctōrēs coepērunt spīritūs nostrōs contrā iūdicium atque argūmenta senātūs iterum movēre, quod omnēs metū novō territī erant.

6. Omnia genera servitūtis nōbīs videntur aspera.

7. Rapiēturne igitur Cicerō ex manibus istōrum?

8. Quī fīnis metūs atque servitūtis in eā cīvitāte nunc potest vidērī?

9. At senectūtis bonae causā iam bene vīvere dēbēmus.

10. In familiā eōrum erant duae fīliae atque quattuor fīliī.

11. Casa vīcīnī nostrī habuit paucās fenestrās per quās vidēre potuit.

12. Quandō cornū audīvit, senex in genua cecidit et deīs immortālibus grātiās prōnūntiābat.

13. Propter beneficia et sēnsum commūnem tyrannī, paucī eum odērunt.

14. The truth will not be found without great labor.

15. Many nations which lack true peace are being destroyed by wars.

16. Their fears can now be conquered because our deeds are understood by all.

17. Unless serious pursuits delight us, they are often neglected for the sake of money or praise.

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

1. Numquam perīculum sine perīculō vincitur. (Publilius Syrus.)

2. Novius est vīcīnus meus et manū dextrā tangī dē fenestrīs meīs potest. (Martial.—**Novius,** a personal name.)

3. Nōnne iūdicēs iubēbunt hunc in vincula dūcī et ad mortem rapī? (Cicero.—**nōnne** introduces a question which anticipates the answer "yes"; see Ch. 40.—**vinculum, -ī,** *chain.*)

4. Altera aetās bellīs cīvīlibus teritur et Rōma ipsa suīs vīribus dēlētur. (Horace.—**cīvīlis, -e.**—**terō, -ere, trīvī, trītum,** *to wear out.*)

5. At amīcitia nūllō locō exclūditur; numquam est intempestīva aut sinistra; multa beneficia continet. (Cicero.—**exclūdō, -ere,** *to shut out.*—**intempestīvus, -a, -um,** *untimely.*)

6. Futūra scīrī nōn possunt. (Cicero.—**futūrus, -a, -um.**)

7. Prīncipiō ipse mundus deōrum hominumque causā factus est, et quae in eō sunt, ea parāta sunt ad frūctum hominum. (Cicero.)

8. Quam cōpiōsē ā Xenophonte agrīcultūra laudātur in eō librō quī "Oeconomicus" īnscrībitur. (Cicero.—**cōpiōsē,** adv., cp. **cōpia.**—**Xenophōn, -phontis.**—**agrīcultūra, -ae.**—**īnscrībō, -ere,** *to entitle.*)

9. Vulgus vult dēcipī. (*Phaedrus.—**vult,** *want* (irreg. form).—**dēcipiō, -ere,** *to deceive.*)

10. Ubi scientia ac sapientia inveniuntur? (Job.)

11. Vēritās nimis saepe labōrat; exstinguitur numquam. (Livy.—**exstinguō, -ere.**)

VIRGIL'S MESSIANIC ECLOGUE

Venit iam magna aetās nova; dē caelō mittitur puer, quī vītam deōrum habēbit deōsque vidēbit et ipse vidēbitur ab illīs. Hic puer reget mundum cui virtūtēs patris pācem dedērunt. Pauca mala, autem, remanēbunt, quae hominēs iubēbunt labōrāre atque bellum asperum gerere. Erunt etiam altera bella atque iterum ad Trōiam magnus mittētur Achillēs. Tum, puer, ubi iam longa aetās tē virum fēcerit, erunt nūllī labōrēs, nūlla bella; nautae ex navibus discēdent, agricolae quoque iam agrōs relinquent, terra ipsa omnibus hominibus omnia parābit. Currite, aetātēs; incipe, parve puer, scīre mātrem, et erit satis spīritūs mihi tua dīcere facta.

(Virgil, *Eclogae* 4; written ca. 40 B.C., the poem from which this reading is adapted was taken by many early Christians as a prophecy of the birth of Christ.—**altera bella,** *the same wars over again.*—**scīre mātrem,** i.e., to be born.)
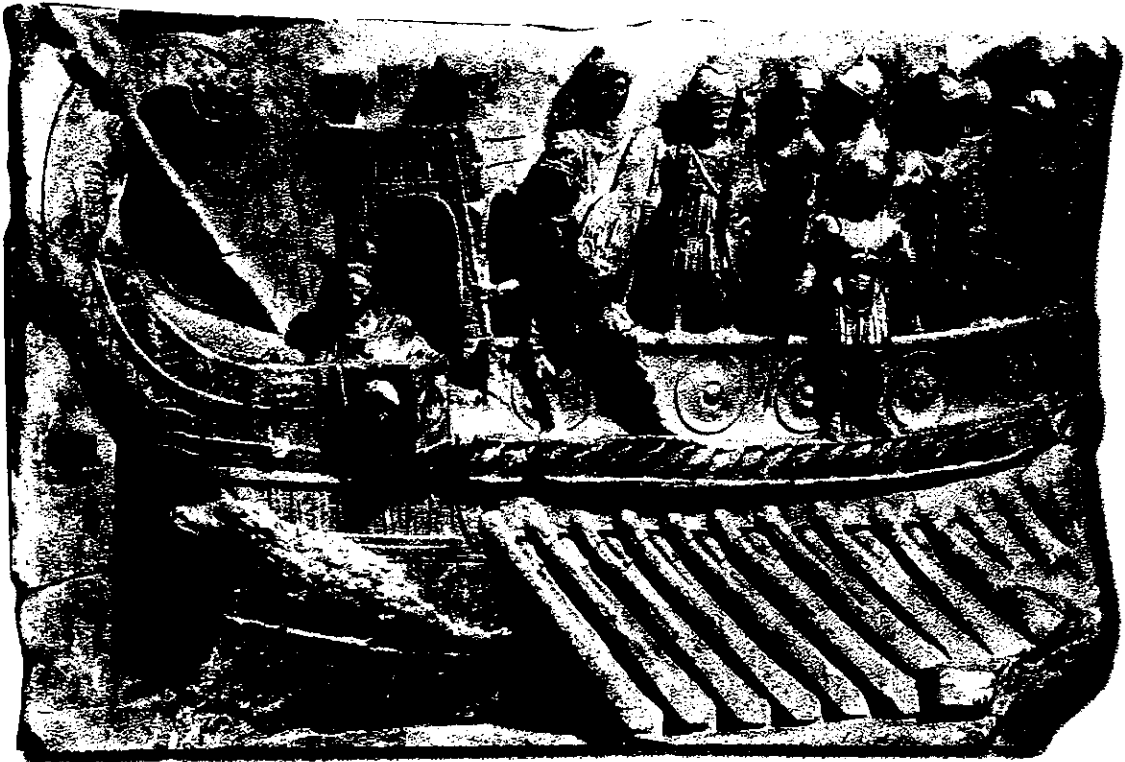
Relief of warship, temple of Fortuna Primigenia, Praeneste
1st century A.D., Museo Pio Clementino, Vatican Museums, Vatican State

ETYMOLOGY

Exemplī causā was Cicero's equivalent of the somewhat later **exemplī grātiā**, whence our abbreviation e.g.

Romance derivatives from some of the words in the vocabulary:

Latin	Italian	Spanish	French
causa	cosa	cosa	chose
fīnis	fine	fin	fin
gēns	gente	gente	gent; gens (pl.)
continēre	continere	contener	contenir
mundus	mondo	mundo	monde

In the readings   3. vinculum (in mathematics). 4. civil; cp. **cīvis, cīvitās.**—trite, contrite, contrition, attrition, detriment. 5. **ex + claudō** (-ere, **clausī, clausum,** *to shut, close*): conclude, include, preclude, seclude, recluse, clause, close, closet, cloister.

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

Salvēte, discipulae atque discipulī! Quid novī? Well, how about some more well-known Latin phrases and mottoes related to the **verba nova** in this chapter's Vocab.? First, for you *Godfather* fans, there's It. **cosa nostra,** from **causa nostra** (shh!). **Vestra causa tōta nostra est** is the motto of the American Classical League, one of our national professional organizations for teachers of Latin, Greek, and classical humanities. The University of Georgia's motto is **et docēre et rērum exquīrere causās,** *both to teach and to seek out the causes of things* (i.e., to conduct research—for **rērum,** see the next chapter). Here are some others: **fīnis corōnat opus,** *the end crowns the work;* **gēns togāta,** *the toga-clad nation* (a phrase Virgil applies to Rome, where the toga was a man's formal attire); **tangere ulcus,** *to touch a sore spot* (lit., *ulcer*); **sīc trānsit glōria mundī,** *so passes the glory of the world* (Thomas à Kempis, on the transitory nature of worldly things—some comedian who shall forever remain nameless has offered an alternate translation, to wit, "Gloria always gets sick on the subway at the beginning of the week"!!!); and the abbreviation **sc.,** meaning *supply* (something omitted from a text but readily understood), comes from **scīlicet,** short for **scīre licet,** lit. *it is permitted for you to understand.* **Hic est fīnis: valēte!**

22

Fifth Declension; Ablative of Place Where; Summary of Ablative Uses

THE FIFTH DECLENSION

This chapter introduces the fifth and last of the Latin noun declensions. The characteristic vowel is -ē-, and -ēī or -eī is the genitive and dative ending (the gen./dat. -e- is long when preceded by a vowel, short when preceded by a consonant; cp. **diēī** and **reī** below); to avoid confusion, the genitive form will be spelled out in full for fifth declension nouns (as they are with third declension nouns) in the chapter vocabularies. Nouns of this declension are all feminine, except **diēs** (*day*) and its compound **merīdiēs** (*midday*), which are masculine.

To decline, follow the usual pattern, i.e., drop the genitive ending to find the base, then add the new endings.

	rēs, reī, f. *thing*	**diēs, diēī**, m. *day*	**Case Endings**
Nom.	rēs	diēs	-ēs
Gen.	réī	diéī	-eī, -ēī
Dat.	réī	diéī	-eī, -ēī
Acc.	rem	díem	-em
Abl.	rē	diē	-ē
Nom.	rēs	diēs	-ēs
Gen.	rérum	diérum	-ērum
Dat.	rébus	diébus	-ēbus
Acc.	rēs	diēs	-ēs
Abl.	rébus	diébus	-ēbus

OBSERVATIONS

Notice that the genitive and dative singular are identical (true of the first declension also), as are the nominative singular and the nominative and accusative plural (the vocatives, too, of course), and the dative and ablative plural (true of all declensions); word order, context, and other cues such as subject-verb agreement will help you distinguish them in a sentence.

ABLATIVE OF PLACE WHERE AND SUMMARY OF ABLATIVE USES

You have thus far been introduced to these specific ablative case uses: ablative of means, manner, accompaniment (Ch. 14), ablative with cardinal numerals and ablative of time (Ch. 15), ablative of agent (Ch. 18), place from which and separation (Ch. 20).

You have in fact also encountered frequently the construction known as ablative of "place where," which consists most commonly of the preposition **in**, *in/on,* or **sub**, *under,* plus a noun in the ablative to describe where someone or something is located or some action is being done:

In magnā casā vīvunt, *they live in a large house.*

Nāvis sub aquā fuit, *the ship was under water.*

Some of these case uses require a preposition in Latin, others do not, and in some instances the practice was variable. A case in point, and something to be carefully noted, is that in the ablative of manner construction, when the noun is modified by an adjective, **cum** is frequently omitted; if **cum** is used, it is usually preceded by the adjective (e.g., **id magnā cūrā fēcit** and **id magnā cum cūrā fēcit,** both meaning *he did it with great care*).

The following summary reviews each of the ablative uses studied thus far:

I. THE ABLATIVE WITH A PREPOSITION

The ablative is used with:

1. **cum** to indicate *accompaniment*
   Cum amīcō id scrīpsit, *he wrote it with his friend.*
2. **cum** to indicate *manner;* cp. II.2 below
   Cum cūrā id scrīpsit, *he wrote it with care.*
   Magnā cum cūrā id scrīpsit, *he wrote it with great care.*
3. **in** and **sub** to indicate *place where*
   In urbe id scrīpsit, *he wrote it in the city.*

4. **ab, dē, ex** to indicate *place from which*
Ex urbe id mīsit, *he sent it from the city.*
5. **ab, dē, ex** to indicate *separation;* cp. II. 4 below
Ab urbe eōs prohibuit, *he kept them from the city.*
6. **ab** to indicate *personal agent*
Ab amīcō id scrīptum est, *it was written by his friend.*
7. **ex** or **dē** following certain *cardinal numerals* to indicate a group of which some part is specified
Trēs ex nāvibus discessērunt, *three of the ships departed.*

II. THE ABLATIVE WITHOUT A PREPOSITION

The ablative is used without a preposition to indicate:

1. *means*
Suā manū id scrīpsit, *he wrote it with his own hand.*
2. *manner,* when an adjective is used
Magnā cūrā id scrīpsit, *he wrote it with great care.*
3. *time when or within which*
Eō tempore *or* ūnā hōrā id scrīpsit, *he wrote it at that time* or *in one hour.*
4. *separation,* especially with ideas of freeing, lacking, depriving
Metū eōs līberāvit, *he freed them from fear.*

VOCABULARY

diēs, diēī, m., *day* (diary, dial, dismal, diurnal, journal, adjourn, journey, meridian, sojourn)

férrum, -ī, n., *iron; sword* (ferric, ferrite, ferro-, farrier)

fidēs, fideī, f., *faith, trust, trustworthiness, fidelity; promise, guarantee, protection* (confide, diffident, infidel, perfidy, fealty)

ígnis, ígnis, m., *fire* (igneous, ignite, ignition)

módus, -ī, m., *measure, bound, limit; manner, method, mode, way* (model, moderate, modern, modest, modicum, modify, mood)

rēs, réī, f., *thing, matter, business, affair* (real, realistic, realize, reality, real estate)

rēs pública, réī públicae, f., *state, commonwealth, republic* (Republican)

spēs, spéī, f., *hope* (despair, desperate; cf. **spērō,** Ch. 25)

aéquus, -a, -um, *level, even; calm; equal, just; favorable* (equable, equanimity, equation, equator, equilateral, equilibrium, equinox, equity, equivalent, equivocal, inequity, iniquity, adequate, coequal)

félīx, gen. **fēlícis,** *lucky, fortunate, happy* (felicitate, felicitation, felicitous, infelicitous, felicity, infelicity, Felix)

incértus, -a, -um (in-certus), *uncertain, unsure, doubtful* (incertitude)

Latínus, -a, -um, *Latin* (Latinate, Latinist, Latinity, Latinize, Latino)

médius, -a, -um, *middle;* used partitively, *the middle of:* **media urbs,** *the middle of the city* (mediterranean, medium, median, mediate, mean, medieval, meridian, demimonde, immediate, intermediary; cp. **mediocris,** Ch. 31)

quóndam, adv., *formerly, once* (quondam)

últrā, adv. and prep. + acc., *on the other side of, beyond* (ultra, ultrasonic, ultrasound, ultraviolet, outrage, outrageous)

prótinus, adv., *immediately*

cérnō, cérnere, crévī, crétum, *to distinguish, discern, perceive* (discern, discernible, discreet, discrete, discretion; cp. **dēcernō,** Ch. 36)

ēripiō, -rípere, -ripuī, -réptum (ē-rapiō), *to snatch away, take away; rescue*

ínquit, defective verb, *he says* or *said,* placed after one or more words of a direct quotation but usually translated first

tóllō, tóllere, sústulī, sublátum, *to raise, lift up; take away, remove, destroy* (extol; cp. **tolerō, ferō,** Ch. 31)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Vīcīnī nostrī sē in genua prótinus iēcērunt et omnēs deōs in mundō laudāvērunt.
2. Gentēs Graeciae ingentibus montibus et parvīs fīnibus continēbantur.
3. Quis iussit illam rem pūblicam servitūte asperā līberārī?
4. "Iste," inquit, "sceleribus suīs brevī tempore tollētur."
5. Contrā aliās manūs malōrum cīvium eaedem rēs iterum parābuntur; rem pūblicam dēfendēmus et istī cito discēdent.
6. Senectūs senēs ā mediīs rēbus saepe prohibet.
7. At rēs gravēs neque vī neque spē geruntur sed cōnsiliō.
8. Sī versūs hōrum duōrum poētārum neglegētis, magnā parte Rōmānārum litterārum carēbitis.
9. Eōdem tempore nostrae spēs salūtis commūnis vestrā fidē altae sunt, spīritūs sublātī sunt, et timōrēs relictī sunt.
10. Nova genera scelerum in hāc urbe inveniuntur quod multī etiam nunc bonīs mōribus et sēnsū commūnī carent ac nātūram sinistram habent.
11. Vulgus multa ex fenestrīs casārum ēiciēbat.
12. Great fidelity can now be found in this commonwealth.
13. His new hopes had been destroyed by the common fear of uncertain things.
14. On that day the courage and the faith of the brave Roman men and women were seen by all.
15. With great hope the tyrant ordered those ships to be destroyed.
16. He could not defend himself with his left hand or his right.

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

1. Dum vīta est, spēs est. (Cicero.)
2. Aequum animum in rēbus difficilibus servā. (Horace.)
3. Ubi tyrannus est, ibi plānē est nūlla rēs pūblica. (*Cicero.—**plānē,** adv., *clearly.*)
4. Fuērunt quondam in hāc rē pūblicā virī magnae virtūtis et antīquae fideī. (Cicero.)
5. Hanc rem pūblicam salvam esse volumus. (*Cicero.—**volumus,** *we wish.*)
6. Spēs coniūrātōrum mollibus sententiīs multōrum cīvium alitur. (Cicero.—**mollis, -e,** *soft, mild.*)
7. Rēs pūblica cōnsiliīs meīs eō diē ex igne atque ferrō ērepta est. (Cicero.)
8. Quod bellum ōdērunt, prō pāce cum fidē labōrābant. (Livy.)
9. Dīc mihi bonā fidē: tū eam pecūniam ex eius manū dextrā nōn ēripuistī? (Plautus.)
10. Amīcus certus in rē incertā cernitur. (Ennius.)
11. Homērus audītōrem in mediās rēs rapit. (Horace.)
12. Fēlīx est quī potest causās rērum intellegere; et fortūnātus ille quī deōs antīquōs dīligit. (Virgil.)
13. Stōicus noster, "Vitium," inquit, "nōn est in rēbus sed in animō ipsō." (Seneca.—**Stōicus, -ī,** *a Stoic.*)
14. Et mihi rēs subiungam, nōn mē rēbus. (Horace.—**subiungō, -ere,** *to subject.*)
15. Est modus in rēbus; sunt certī fīnēs ultrā quōs virtūs invenīrī nōn potest. (Horace.)
16. Hoc, Fortūna, tibi vidētur aequum? (*Martial.)

A VISIT FROM THE YOUNG INTERNS

Languēbam: sed tū comitātus prōtinus ad mē
   vēnistī centum, Symmache, discipulīs.
Centum mē tetigēre manūs aquilōne gelātae:
   nōn habuī febrem, Symmache, nunc habeō!

(*Martial 5.9; meter: elegiac couplet.—**languēre,** *to be weak, sick.*—**comitātus, -a, -um,** *accompanied (by).*—**Symmachus,** a Greek name, used here for a medical school professor.—**centum . . . discipulīs,** abl. of agent with **comitātus;** the preposition was often omitted in poetry.—**tetigēre** = **tetigērunt;** for this alternate ending, see Ch. 12.—**aquilō, -lōnis,** m., *the north wind.*—**gelātus, -a, -um,** *chilled,* here modifying **centum . . . manūs;** cp. Eng. gel, gelatin.—**febris, febris,** f., *fever.*)

ON AMBITION AND LITERATURE, BOTH LATIN AND GREEK

Poëtae per litterās hominibus magnam perpetuamque fāmam dare possunt; multī virī, igitur, litterās dē suīs rēbus scrībī cupiunt. Trahimur omnēs studiō laudis et multī glōriā dūcuntur, quae aut in litterīs Graecīs aut Latīnīs invenīrī potest. Quī, autem, videt multum frūctum glōriae in versibus Latīnīs sed nōn in Graecīs, nimium errat, quod litterae Graecae leguntur in omnibus ferē gentibus, sed Latīnae in fīnibus suīs continentur.

(Cicero, *Prō Archiā* 11.26, 10.23.—ferē, adv., *almost.*)

ETYMOLOGY

Connected with **diēs** is the adj. **diurnus**, *daily,* whence come the words for "day" in Italian and French: It. **giorno**, Fr. **jour, journée**; cp. Sp. **dia**. In late Latin there was a form **diurnālis**, from which derive It. **giornale**, Fr. **journal**, Eng. "journal"; cp. Sp. **diario**. English "dismal" stems ultimately from **diēs malus**.

The stem of **fidēs** can be found in the following words even though it may not be immediately obvious: affidavit, defy, affiance, fiancé. Eng. "faith" is from early Old Fr. **feit, feid**, from Latin **fidem**.

Other words connected with **modus** are: modulate, accommodate, commodious, discommode, incommode, à la mode, modus operandi.

In the readings   6. mollify, emollient, mollusk. 13. The Stoic philosophy was so called because Zeno, its founder, used to teach in a certain stoa (portico) at Athens. 14. subjunctive.

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

Salvēte! Now that you've encountered **merīdiēs**, you understand **a.m.** and **p.m.**, from **ante** and **post merīdiem**. Your physician might prescribe a medication **diēbus alternīs**, *every other day,* or **diēbus tertiīs**, *every third day,* or even **b.i.d.** or **t.i.d.**, **bis in diē** or **ter in diē** (if you've thought about those last two twice or thrice and still can't figure them out, look back at Ch. 15!). Other items you might encounter one of these days: **diem ex diē**, *day by day;* **diēs fēlīx**, *a lucky day;* the legal terms **diēs jūridicus** and **nōn jūridicus**, days when court is and is not in session; and the **Diēs Īrae**, a medieval hymn about the Day of Judgment, part of the requiem mass. And surely you follow Horace's advice every day and **carpe diem** (an agricultural metaphor, since **carpō, carpere** really means *to pluck* or *harvest* from the vine or stalk—so your day, once seized, should be a bountiful cornucopia).

Now you know, too, what is meant by the common phrase, **amīcus certus in rē incertā**; a **bonā fidē** agreement is made *with good faith* (recognize the abl. usage?); and if your "friend indeed" is your trusty dog, you should consider dubbing him "Fido." **Carpite omnēs diēs, discipulī discipulaeque, et valēte!**

23

Participles

Like English, Latin has a set of verbal adjectives, i.e., adjectives formed from a verb stem, called "participles." Regular transitive verbs in Latin have four participles, two of them in the active voice (the present and future), and two in the passive (future and perfect); they are formed as follows:

	Active	Passive
Pres.	present stem + -ns (gen. -ntis)	————
Perf.	————	partic. stem + -us, -a, -um
Fut.	participial stem + -ūrus, -ūra, -ūrum[1]	pres. stem + -ndus, -nda, -ndum

It is important to know the proper stem for each participle as well as the proper ending. Note that the present active and the future passive are formed on the present stem, while the perfect passive and future active are formed on the so-called "participial stem" (found by dropping the endings from the perfect passive participle, which is itself most often a verb's fourth principal part: i.e., **laudāt-** from **laudātus, -a, -um**). This pattern can perhaps best be recalled by memorizing the participles of **agō**, in which the difference between the present stem and the participial stem is sufficient to eliminate any confusion. It is also helpful to note that the base of the present participle is marked by **-nt-**, the future active by **-ūr-'**, and the future passive, often called the "gerundive," by **-nd-**.

---

[1] The ending of the future active participle is very easy to remember if you keep in mind the fact that our word *future* comes from **futūrus, -a, -um**, the future (and, incidentally, the only) participle of sum.

agō, agere, ēgi, āctum, *to lead*

	Active	Passive
Pres.	ágēns, agéntis, *leading*	———
Perf.	———	áctus, -a, -um, *led, having been led*
Fut.	āctúrus, -a, -um, *about to lead, going to lead*	agéndus, -a, -um, *(about) to be led,* *deserving or fit to be led*

English derivatives are illustrative of the sense of three of these participles: "agent" (from **agēns**), *a person doing something;* "act" (**āctus, -a, -um**), *something done;* "agenda" (**agendus, -a, -um**), *something to be done.* The participles of three of the model verbs follow.

	Act.	Pass.	Act.	Pass.	Act.	Pass.
Pres.	ágēns	———	aúdiēns	———	cápiēns	———
Perf.	———	áctus	———	audítus	———	cáptus
Fut.	āctúrus	agéndus	audītúrus	audiéndus	captúrus	capiéndus

Note carefully that fourth conjugation and third conjugation **-iō** verbs have **-ie-** in both the present active participle (**-iēns, -ientis**) and the future passive (**-iendus, -a, -um**). Notice too that while Latin has present active, perfect passive, and future active and passive participles, the equivalents of *praising, having been praised, about to praise,* and *(about) to be praised,* it lacks both a present passive participle (*being praised*) and a perfect active participle (*having praised*).

DECLENSION OF PARTICIPLES

Three of the four participles are declined on the pattern of **magnus, -a, -um.** Only the present participle has third declension forms, following essentially the model of **potēns** (Ch. 16), except that the ablative singular sometimes ends in **-e**, sometimes **-ī**[2]; the vowel before **-ns** in the nominative singular is always long, but before **-nt-** (according to the rule learned earlier) it is always short.

	M. & F.	N.
Nom.	ágēns	ágēns
Gen.	agéntis	agéntis
Dat.	agéntī	agéntī
Acc.	agéntem	ágēns
Abl.	agéntī, agénte	agéntī, agénte

[2] The present participle has -ī in the ablative singular when used strictly as an attributive adjective (**ā patre amantī,** *by the loving father*) but -e when it functions verbally (e.g., with an object, **patre fīlium amante,** *with the father loving his son*) or as a substantive (**ab amante,** *by a lover*).

Nom.	agéntēs	agéntia
Gen.	agéntium	agéntium
Dat.	agéntibus	agéntibus
Acc.	agéntēs	agéntia
Abl.	agéntibus	agéntibus

PARTICIPLES AS VERBAL ADJECTIVES

The etymology of the term participle, from **participere**, *to share in* (**pars + capere**), reflects the fact that participles share in the characteristics of both adjectives and verbs. As *adjectives*, participles naturally agree in gender, number, and case with the words which they modify. Sometimes also, like adjectives, they modify no expressed noun but function as nouns themselves: **amāns,** *a lover;* **sapiēns,** *a wise man, philosopher;* **venientēs,** *those coming.*

As *verbs*, participles have tense and voice; they may take direct objects or other constructions used with the particular verb; and they may be modified by an adverb or an adverbial phrase:

Patrem in casā videntēs, puella et puer ad eum cucurrērunt, *seeing their father in the house, the boy and girl ran up to him.*

In Latin as in English, the tense of a participle, it should be carefully noted, is not absolute but is relative to that of the main verb. For example, the action of a present participle is contemporaneous with the action of the verb of its clause, no matter whether that verb is in a present, a past, or a future tense; in the preceding sample you can see that it was at some time in the past that the children first saw and then ran toward their father (seeing him, i.e., when they saw him, they ran up to him). A similar situation obtains for the perfect and future participles, as can be seen in the following table:

1. Present participle = action *contemporaneous* with that of the verb (the same time).

2. Perfect participle = action *prior* to that of the verb (time before).

3. Future participle = action *subsequent* to that of the verb (time after).

Graecī nautae, videntēs Polyphēmum, timent, timuērunt, timēbunt.
The Greek sailors, seeing Polyphemus, are afraid, were afraid, will be afraid.

Graecī nautae, vīsī ā Polyphēmō, timent, timuērunt, timēbunt.
The Greek sailors, (having been) seen by P., are afraid, were afraid, will be afraid.

Graecī nautae, vīsūrī Polyphēmum, timent, timuērunt, timēbunt.
The Greek sailors, about to see Polyphemus, are afraid, were afraid, will be afraid.

TRANSLATING PARTICIPIAL PHRASES AS CLAUSES

Participial phrases are used much more frequently in Latin than in English, which prefers clauses with regular finite verbs. In translating from Latin to idiomatic English, therefore, it is often preferable to transform a participial phrase (especially if it sounds stilted in English) into a subordinate clause.

In doing so you need to consider 1) the relationship between the action in the phrase and the action in the clause to which it is attached, so that you can then choose an appropriate subordinating conjunction (especially "when," "since," or "although"), and 2) the relativity of participial tenses, so that you can then transform the participle into the appropriate verb tense.

Thus the example given earlier, **patrem in casā videntēs, puella et puer ad eum cucurrērunt**, can be translated *seeing their father in the house, the girl and boy ran up to him* or, more idiomatically, *when they saw their father in the house, the girl and boy ran up to him*. Likewise **Graecī nautae, vīsī ā Polyphēmō, timuērunt** is better translated *when they had been seen* [time prior to main verb] *by Polyphemus, the Greek sailors were afraid* than the more literal *having been seen by Polyphemus, the Greek sailors were afraid*. Consider these further examples:

Māter, fīlium amāns, auxilium dat, *since she loves her son* [lit., *loving her son*], *the mother gives him assistance*.

Pater, fīliam vīsūrus, casam parābat, *since he was about to see his daughter, the father was preparing the house*.

Puella, in casam veniēns, gaudēbat, *when she came into the house* [lit., *coming into the house*], *the girl was happy*.

VOCABULARY

arx, árcis, f., *citadel, stronghold*

dux, dúcis, m., *leader, guide; commander, general* (duke, ducal, ducat, duchess, duchy, doge; cp. **dūcō**)

équus, -ī, m., *horse* (equestrian, equine; cp. **equa, -ae,** *mare*)

hásta, -ae, f., *spear* (hastate)

ínsula, -ae, f., *island* (insular, insularity, insulate, isolate, isolation, peninsula)

lítus, lítoris, n., *shore, coast* (littoral)

míles, mílitis, m., *soldier* (military, militaristic, militate, militant, militia)

ōrátor, ōrātóris, m., *orator, speaker* (oratory, oratorio; cp. **ōrō,** Ch. 36, **ōrātiō,** Ch. 38)

sacérdōs, sacerdótis, m., *priest* (sacerdotal; cp. **sacer,** *sacred*)

áliquis, áliquid (gen. **alicuíus,** dat. **álicui,** etc.; cp. decl. of **quis, quid;** nom. and acc. neut. pl. are **áliqua**), indef. pron., *someone, somebody, something*

quísquis, quídquid (quis repeated; cases other than nom. rare), indef. pron., *whoever, whatever*

magnánimus, -a, -um, *great-hearted, brave, magnanimous* (magnanimity)

úmquam, adv., in questions or negative clauses, *ever, at any time* (cp. **numquam)**

éducō (1), *to bring up, educate* (education, educator, educable; do not confuse with **ēdūcō,** *to lead out*)

gaúdeō, gaudére, gāvísus sum, *to be glad, rejoice* (gaudeamus; cp. **gaudium, -iī,** *joy,* as in **Latīna est gaudium!**)

osténdō, osténdere, osténdī, osténtum, *to exhibit, show, display* (ostentation, ostentatious, ostensible, ostensive; cp. **tendō,** *stretch, extend)*

pétō, pétere, petívī, petítum, *to seek, aim at, beg, beseech* (appetite, compete, competent, impetuous, petition, petulant, repeat; cp. **perpetuus)**

prémō, prémere, préssī, préssum, *to press; press hard, pursue;* **-primō** in compounds as seen in **opprimō** below (compress, depress, express, impress, imprint, print, repress, reprimand, suppress)

ópprimō, -prímere, -préssī, -préssum, *to suppress, overwhelm, overpower, check* (oppress, oppression, oppressive, oppressor)

vértō, vértere, vértī, vérsum, *to turn; change;* so **āvertō,** *turn away, avert,* **revertō,** *turn back,* etc. (adverse, advertise, avert, averse, convert, controversy, divers, diverse, divorce, invert, obverse, pervert, revert, subvert, subversive, transverse, verse, version, animadvert)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Aliquid numquam ante audītum cernō.
2. Illum ōrātōrem in mediō senātū iterum petentem fīnem bellōrum ac scelerum nōn adiūvistis.
3. Certī frūctūs pācis ab territō vulgō atque senātū cupiēbantur.
4. Quī vir magnanimus aliās gentēs gravī metū servitūtis līberābit?
5. Nēmō fidem neglegēns timōre umquam carēbit.
6. Illa fēmina fortūnāta haec cōnsilia contrā eōs malōs quondam aluit et salūtis commūnis causā semper labōrābat.
7. Illam gentem Latīnam oppressūrī et dīvitiās raptūrī, omnēs virōs magnae probitātis premere ac dēlēre prōtinus coepērunt.
8. Tollēturne fāma huius medicī istīs versibus novīs?
9. At vīta illīus modī aequī aliquid iūcundī atque fēlicis continet.
10. Quō diē ex igne et ferrō atque morte certā ēreptus es?
11. We gave many things to nations lacking hope.
12. Those ten men, (when) called, will come again with great eagerness.
13. Through the window they saw the second old man running out of his neighbor's house and away from the city.
14. He himself was overpowered by uncertain fear because he desired neither truth nor liberty.

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

1. Vīvēs meīs praesidiīs oppressus. (Cicero.—**praesidium, -iī,** *guard.*)
2. Illī autem, tendentēs manūs dextrās, salūtem petēbant. (Livy.—**tendō, -ere,** *to stretch, extend.*)
3. Tantalus sitiēns flūmina ab ōre fugientia tangere dēsīderābat. (Horace.—**sitīre,** *to be thirsty.*)
4. Signa rērum futūrārum mundō ā dīs ostenduntur. (Cicero.)
5. Graecia capta asperum victōrem cēpit. (Horace.—**victor, -tōris,** here = Rome.)
6. Atticus Cicerōnī ex patriā fugientī multam pecūniam dedit. (Nepos.—**Atticus,** a friend of Cicero.)
7. Sī mihi eum ēducandum committēs, studia eius fōrmāre ab īnfantiā incipiam. (Quintilian.—**fōrmāre.—īnfantia, -ae.**)
8. Saepe stilum verte, bonum libellum scrīptūrus. (Horace.—**stilum vertere,** *to invert the stilus* = to use the eraser.)
9. Cūra ōrātōris dictūrī eōs audītūrōs dēlectat. (Quintilian.)
10. Mortī Sōcratis semper illacrimō, legēns Platōnem. (Cicero.—**Sōcratēs, -cratis.—illacrimāre,** *to weep over.*—**Platō, -tōnis.**)
11. Memoria vītae bene āctae multōrumque bene factōrum iūcunda est. (Cicero.)
12. Quī timēns vīvet, līber nōn erit umquam. (Horace.—**quī,** as often, = is quī.)
13. Nōn is est miser quī iussus aliquid facit, sed is quī invītus facit. (Seneca.—**invītus, -a, -um,** *unwilling;* the adj. here has adverbial force, as it commonly does in Latin.)
14. Verbum semel ēmissum volat irrevocābile. (Horace.—**semel,** adv., *once.*—**ē-mittere.—volāre,** *to fly.*—**irrevocābilis, -e.**)

LAOCOON SPEAKS OUT AGAINST THE TROJAN HORSE

Oppressī bellō longō et ā deīs aversī, ducēs Graecōrum, iam post decem annōs, magnum equum ligneum arte Minervae faciunt. Uterum multīs mīlitibus complent, equum in lītore relinquunt, et ultrā īnsulam proximam nāvigant. Trōiānī nūllās cōpiās aut nāvēs vident; omnis Trōia gaudet; panduntur portae. Dē equō, autem, Trōiānī sunt incertī. Aliī eum in urbem dūcī cupiunt; aliī eum Graecās īnsidiās appellant. Prīmus ibi ante omnēs, dē arce currēns, Lāocoōn, sacerdōs Trōiānus, haec verba dīcit: "Ō miserī cīvēs, nōn estis sānī! Quid cōgitātis? Nōnne intellegitis Graecōs et īnsidiās eōrum? Aut inveniētis in istō equō multōs mīlitēs ācrēs, aut equus est machina bellī, facta contrā nōs, ventūra in urbem, vīsūra casās nostrās et populum. Aut aliquid latet. Equō nē crēdite, Trōiānī: quidquid id est, timeō Danaōs et dōna gerentēs!" Dīxit, et potentem hastam magnīs vīribus manūs sinistrae in uterum equī iēcit; stetit illa, tremēns.

(Virgil, *Aeneid* 2.13–52; prose adaptation.—**ligneus, -a, -um**, *wooden, of wood.*—Minerva, goddess of war and protectress of the Greeks.—**uterus, -ī.**—**complēre**, *to fill up, make pregnant.*—**proximus, -a, -um**, *nearby.*—**Trōiānus, -a, -um**, *Trojan.*—**pandō, -ere**, *to open.*—**Lāocoōn, -ontis**, m.—**Nōnne** introduces a question anticipating an affirmative answer, *Don't you . . . ?*—**machina, -ae.**—**vīsūra**, here *to spy on.*—**latēre**, *to be hidden, be concealed.*—**equō**, dat. with **crēdite** (see Ch. 35).—**nē** = **nōn.**—**Danaōs** = **Graecōs.**—**et** (with **gerentēs**) = **etiam.**—**tremō, -ere**, *to tremble, shake, vibrate.*—To be continued. . . .)

Trojan horse with Greek soldiers
Relief from neck of an amphora, Mykonos, 7th century B.C.
Archaeological Museum, Mykonos, Greece

ETYMOLOGY

In the readings   2. tend, tent, tense, attend, contend, distend, extend, extent, extensive, intend, intent, intense, portend, pretend, subtend, superintendent; cp. **ostendō** in the vocabulary. 3. tantalize, Gk. derivative. 8. stilus, style. 10. lachrymose. 14. volatile, volley. "Laocoon": uterine.—complete, completion, complement, complementary.—proximity, approximate.—expand, expansive.—machine, machinery, machination.—latent.—tremor, tremulous, tremulant, tremble, tremendous.

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

Salvēte! This chapter's Vocab. suggests a couple of literary titles from ancient Rome: among Cicero's dozens of books was a rhetorical treatise titled **Dē Ōrātōre,** and one of Plautus' most popular plays was the **Mīles Glōriōsus,** usually translated *The Braggart Soldier.* Then there's the medieval student song with the famous line (quite apt for college Latin students) **gaudeāmus, igitur, iuvenēs dum sumus,** *so let us rejoice, while we are young!*

From **vertere** is **verte** for *turn the page* and **versō** for the left-hand page in a book (i.e., the side you see when you have just *turned* the page); printers call the the right-hand page the **rectō.**

And from the reading passage: the expression "a Trojan horse" is used of any person, group, or device that tries to subvert a government or any organization from within. Also from the Trojan saga and Virgil's story of Aeneas' sojourn in Carthage is the famous quotation **dux fēmina factī,** *a woman (was) leader of the action!* **Gaudēte atque valēte!**
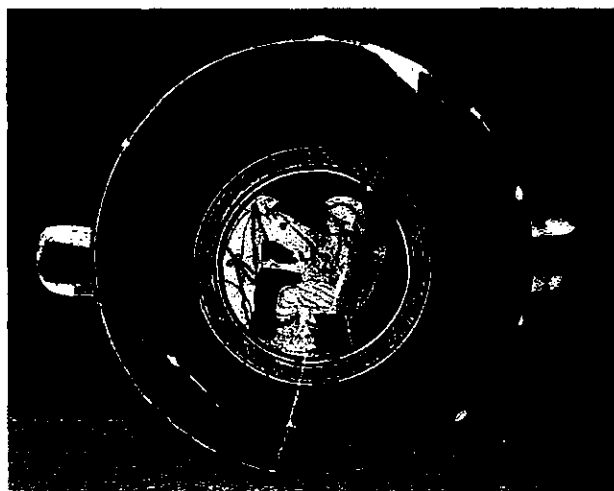
Athena (Minerva) constructing the Trojan horse
Red-figure Greek kylix, the Sabouroff Painter, 470–460 B.C.
Museo Archeologico, Florence, Italy

24

Ablative Absolute; Passive Periphrastic; Dative of Agent

The participles which you learned in the last chapter were employed by the Romans in two very common constructions introduced below, the "ablative absolute" and the "passive periphrastic."

ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

The ablative absolute is a type of participial phrase generally consisting of a noun (or pronoun) and a modifying participle in the ablative case; somewhat loosely connected to the rest of the sentence (hence the term, from **absolūtum**, *loosened from, separated*) and usually set off by commas, the phrase describes some general circumstances under which the action of the sentence occurs.

Rōmā vīsā, virī gaudēbant, *Rome having been seen, the men rejoiced.*

As typified by this example, the ablative absolute always is self-contained, i.e., the participle and the noun it modifies are both in the same phrase and the noun of the ablative absolute phrase is not referred to at all in the attached clause. In other types of participial phrases (such as those seen in

Ch. 23), the participles modify some noun or pronoun in the attached clause; compare the following example, which has an ordinary participial phrase, with the previous example:

Rōmam videntēs, virī gaudēbant, *seeing Rome, the men rejoiced.*

In this instance the participle modifies the subject of the main clause, and so an ablative absolute cannot be used.

Like other participial phrases, the ablative absolute can be translated quite literally, as in **Rōmā vīsā,** (*with*) *Rome having been seen.* Often, however, it is better style to transform the phrase to a clause, converting the participle to a verb in the appropriate tense, treating the ablative noun as its subject, and supplying the most logical conjunction (usually "when," "since," or "although"), as explained in the last chapter; thus, a more idiomatic translation of **Rōmā vīsā, virī gaudēbant** would be *when Rome was* (*had been*) *seen, the men rejoiced.* Compare the following additional examples:

Hīs rēbus audītīs, coepit timēre.
These things having been heard, he began to be afraid.

Or in much better English:
When (*since, after,* etc., depending on the context) *these things had been heard, he began . . .*
When (*since, after,* etc.) *he had heard these things, he began . . .*

Eō imperium tenente, ēventum timeō.

$$\left.\begin{array}{l}\textit{With him holding the power,}\\ \textit{Since he holds the power,}\\ \textit{When he holds the power,}\\ \textit{If he holds the power,}\\ \textit{Although he holds the power.}\end{array}\right\}\quad \textit{I fear the outcome.}$$

In the ablative absolute, the ablative noun/pronoun regularly comes first, the participle last; when the phrase contains additional words, like the direct object of the participle in the preceding example, they are usually enclosed within the noun/participle "frame."

As seen in the following examples, even two nouns, or a noun and an adjective, can function as an ablative absolute, with the present participle of **sum** (lacking in classical Latin) to be understood:

Caesare duce, nihil timēbimus.

$$\left.\begin{array}{l}\textit{Caesar being the commander,}\\ \textit{Under Caesar's command,}\\ \textit{With Caesar in command,}\\ \textit{Since (when, if, etc.) Caesar is the commander,}\end{array}\right\}\quad \textit{we shall fear nothing.}$$

Caesare incertō, bellum timēbāmus.

Since Caesar was uncertain (with Caesar uncertain), we were afraid of war.

THE PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION: GERUNDIVE + Sum

Despite its horrendous name, the passive periphrastic conjugation is simply a passive verb form consisting of the gerundive (i.e., the future passive participle) along with a form of **sum.**[1] The gerundive, as a predicate adjective, agrees with the subject of **sum** in gender, number, and case, e.g., **haec fēmina laudanda est,** *this woman is to be praised.*

The gerundive often conveys an idea of necessary, obligatory, or appropriate action, rather than simple futurity, and this is the case in the passive periphrastic construction. Hence **id faciendum est** means not simply *this is about to be done,* but rather *this has to be done;* **hic liber cum cūrā legendus erit,** *this book will have to be (must be) read with care.*

Just as Latin uses the auxiliary **sum** in its various tenses in this construction, English commonly uses the expressions "has to be," "had to be," "will have to be"; "should," "ought," and "must" are other auxiliaries commonly used in translating the passive periphrastic (cp. **dēbeō,** which, as you have already learned, is also used to indicate obligatory action).

THE DATIVE OF AGENT

Instead of the ablative of agent, the dative of agent is used with the passive periphrastic. A literal translation of the passive periphrastic + dative of agent generally sounds awkward, and so it is often best to transform such a clause into an active construction; consider the following examples:

Hic liber mihi cum cūrā legendus erit, *this book will have to be read by me with care* or (better) *I will have to (ought to, must, should) read this book with care.*

---

[1] The word "periphrasis" (adj. "periphrastic") comes from the Gk. equivalent of Lat. **circumlocūtiō,** *a roundabout way of speaking,* and simply refers to the form's construction from a participle plus **sum** as an auxiliary (even "did sing" in Eng. is a periphrastic for "sang"); the entire perfect passive system is similarly "periphrastic," consisting of **sum** + the perfect passive participle rather than the gerundive (be careful not to confuse the two: the pass. periphrastic will always contain an -nd- gerundive).

Illa fēmina omnibus laudanda est, *that woman should be praised by all* or *everyone should praise that woman.*

Pāx ducibus nostrīs petenda erat, *peace had to be sought by our leaders* or *our leaders had to seek peace.*

VOCABULARY

Carthágō, Cartháginis, f., *Carthage* (a city in North Africa)

fábula, -ae, f., *story, tale; play* (fable, fabulous, confabulate; cp. **fáma**)

imperátor, imperātóris, m., *general, commander-in-chief, emperor* (cp. **parō, imperium, imperō,** Ch. 35)

impérium, -iī, n., *power to command, supreme power, authority, command, control* (imperial, imperialism, imperious, empire)

perfúgium, -iī, n., *refuge, shelter* (cp. **fugiō**)

sérvus, -ī, m., and **sérva, -ae,** f., *slave* (serf, servant, servile, service; cp. **serviō,** Ch. 35)

sōlácium, -iī, n., *comfort, relief* (solace, consolation, inconsolable)

vúlnus, vúlneris, n., *wound* (vulnerable, invulnerable)

re- or **red-,** prefix, *again, back* (recede, receive, remit, repeat, repel, revert)

ut, conj. + indic., *as, just as, when*

pósteā, adv., *afterwards* (cp. **post**)

accípiō, -cípere, -cépī, -céptum, *to take* (to one's self), *receive, accept* (cp. **capiō**)

excípiō, -cípere, -cépī, -céptum, *to take out, except; take, receive, capture* (exception, exceptionable)

recípiō, -cípere, -cépī, -céptum, *to take back, regain; admit, receive* (recipe, R$_x$, receipt, recipient, receptacle, reception)

péllō, péllere, pépulī, púlsum, *to strike, push; drive out, banish* (compel, compulsion, compulsory, dispel, expel, impel, propel, repel, pelt, pulsate, pulse)

expéllō, -péllere, -pulī, -púlsum, *to drive out, expel, banish* (expulsion)

nárrō (1), *to tell, report, narrate* (narration, narrative, narrator)

quaérō, quaérere, quaesívī, quaesítum, *to seek, look for, strive for, ask, inquire, inquire into* (acquire, conquer, exquisite, inquire, inquest, inquisition, perquisite, query, quest, question, request, require)

rídeō, rīdére, rísī, rísum, *to laugh, laugh at* (deride, derisive, ridicule, ridiculous, risibilities; cf. **rīdiculus,** Ch. 30, **subrīdeō,** Ch. 35)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Igne vīsō, omnēs virī et uxōrēs territae sunt et ultrā urbem ad lītus īnsulae nāvigāvērunt, ubi perfugium inventum est.
2. Populō metū oppressō, iste imperātor nōbīs ex urbe pellendus est.

3. Ōrātor, signō ā sacerdōte datō, eō diē revēnit et nunc tōtus populus Latīnus gaudet.
4. Gēns Rōmāna versūs illīus scrīptōris magnā laude quondam recēpit.
5. Laudēs atque dōna huius modī ab ōrātōribus dēsīderābantur.
6. Imperiō acceptō, dux magnanimus fidem suam reī pūblicae ostendit.
7. Aliquis eōs quīnque equōs ex igne ēripī posteā iusserat.
8. Cernisne omnia quae tibi scienda sunt?
9. Ille, ab arce urbis reveniēns, ab istīs hominibus premī coepit.
10. Cupiō tangere manum illīus mīlitis quī metū caruit atque gravia scelera contrā rem pūblicam oppressit.
11. Iste dux prōtinus expulsus est, ut imperium excipiēbat.
12. Illae servae, autem, perfugium sōlāciumque ab amīcīs quaerēbant.
13. Cornū audītō, ille mīles, incertus cōnsiliī, cōpiās ad mediam īnsulam vertit.
14. When the common danger had been averted, two of our sons and all our daughters came back from Asia.
15. Our hopes must not be destroyed by those three evil men.
16. Since the people of all nations are seeking peace, all leaders must conquer the passion for (= of) power. (Use an ablative absolute and a passive periphrastic.)
17. The leader, having been driven out by both the free men and the slaves, could not regain his command.

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

1. Carthāgō dēlenda est. (Cato.)
2. Asiā victā, dux Rōmānus fēlīx multōs servōs in Italiam mīsit. (Pliny the Elder.)
3. Omnibus ferrō mīlitis perterritīs, quisque sē servāre cupiēbat. (Caesar.)
4. Quidquid dīcendum est, līberē dīcam. (Cicero.—**līberē,** adv. of **līber.)**
5. Haec omnia vulnera bellī tibi nunc sānanda sunt. (Cicero.—**sānāre,** *to heal.*)
6. Nec tumultum nec hastam mīlitis nec mortem violentam timēbō, Augustō terrās tenente. (Horace.—**tumultus -ūs,** *disturbance, civil war.*—**violentus, -a, -um.**—**Augustus, -ī.**)
7. Tarquiniō expulsō, nōmen rēgis audīre nōn poterat populus Rōmānus. (Cicero.)
8. Ad ūtilitātem vītae omnia cōnsilia factaque nōbīs regenda sunt. (Tacitus.—**ūtilitās, -tātis,** *benefit, advantage.*)

DĒ CUPIDITĀTE

Homō stultus, "Ō cīvēs, cīvēs," inquit, "pecūnia ante omnia quaerenda est; virtūs et probitās post pecūniam."

Pecūniae autem cupiditās fugienda est. Fugienda etiam est cupiditās glōriae; ēripit enim lībertātem. Neque imperia semper petenda sunt neque semper accipienda; etiam dēpōnenda nōn numquam.

(Horace, *Epistulae* 1.1.53, and Cicero, *Dē Officiīs* 1.20.68.—**dēpōnō, -ere,** *to put down, resign.*)

Caelō receptus propter virtūtem, Herculēs multōs deōs salūtāvit; sed Plūtō veniente, quī Fortūnae est fīlius, āvertit oculōs. Tum, causā quaesītā, "Ōdī," inquit, "illum, quod malīs amīcus est atque omnia corrumpit lucrī causā."

(Phaedrus, *Fābulae* 4.12.—**Herculēs, -lis.**—**salūtāre,** *to greet.*—**Plūtus, -ī,** god of wealth.—**Fortūnae,** here personified.—**corrumpō, -ere,** *to corrupt.*—**lucrum, -ī,** *gain, profit.*)

Heracles (Hercules) fighting the Nemean lion, one of his 12 labors
Attic black-figure kalpis, Early 5th century B.C.
Kunsthistorisches Museum, Vienna, Austria

THE SATIRIST'S MODUS OPERANDI

Rīdēns saturās meās percurram, et cūr nōn? Quid vetat mē rīdentem dīcere vērum, ut puerīs ēducandīs saepe dant crūstula magistrī? Quaerō rēs gravēs iūcundō lūdō et, nōminibus fictīs, dē multīs culpīs vitiīsque nārrō. Sed quid rīdēs? Mūtātō nōmine, dē tē fābula nārrātur!

(Horace, *Sermōnēs* 1.1.23–27, 69–70; prose adaptation.—**per + currō.**—**vetāre,** *to forbid.*—**puerīs . . . magistrī,** the order of the nouns is varied for effect: indi-

rect obj., direct obj., subject.—**crūstulum, -ī,** *cookie, pastry.*—**fingō, -ere, fīnxī, fictum,** *to form, invent, make up.*)

ETYMOLOGY

In the readings

6. tumultuous.—"Violent" is clearly based on **vīs.**—Originally the Romans, counting March as the first month of the year, named the fifth month **Quīntīlis (quīntus,** *fifth*), but Julius Caesar renamed it **Iūlius** (July) because he was born in July. Subsequently, when the Roman Senate gave Octavian, Caesar's heir, the title of "Augustus" (the august, the revered one), the Senate also changed the name of the sixth month (**Sextīlis**) to **Augustus** (August). "**Dē Cupiditāte**": Herculean—salute; cp. **salvēre, salūs.**—plutocrat, a word of Gk. origin.—lucre, lucrative.—"The Satirist": veto.—crust.—fiction, fictitious, fictive.

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

Salvēte, amīcae amīcīque! Quid agitis hodiē? Bet you didn't know that R$_x$ and "recipe" came from the same word (see **recipiō** in the Vocab.), but now, thanks to Latin, you do! There are countless derivatives from the **capiō** family, as you have seen already; and from **excipere** there are some "exceptionally" familiar phrases: **exceptiō probat regulam,** *the exception proves the rule,* and **exceptīs excipiendīs,** *with all the necessary exceptions* (lit., *with things excepted that should be excepted:* recognize the gerundive?). And, by analogy with this last, what are the idiomatic and the literal meanings of the very common phrase **mūtātīs mūtandīs?** (If you can't figure that out, it's in your Webster's, along with hundreds of other Latin phrases, mottoes, words, and abbreviations in current Eng. usage!)

Some other gerundives that pop up in Eng.: **agenda** (*things to be done*), **corrigenda** (*things to be corrected,* i.e., an **errāta** list), and even the passive periphrastics **dē gustibus nōn disputandum est,** sometimes shortened simply to **dē gustibus** (*you can't argue about taste*), and **quod erat dēmōnstrandum** (which we've seen before), abbreviated **Q.E.D.** at the end of a mathematical proof.

Servus, also in the new Vocab., gives us one of the Pope's titles, **servus servōrum deī** (another is **pontifex,** the name of an ancient Roman priestly office, which may originally have meant *bridge-builder*—because priests bridge the gap between men and gods?); and **quaere** is used in Eng. as a note to request further information. **Nunc est satis: valēte atque semper rīdēte!**

25

Infinitives; Indirect Statement

INFINITIVES

Having surveyed the forms and uses of the verbal adjectives known as participles in the last two chapters, we turn now to the common verbal noun known as the infinitive (e.g., **amāre,** *to love*—two other verbal nouns, the supine and the gerund, are introduced in Chs. 38–39). Most transitive verbs have six infinitives, the present, future, and perfect, active and passive, though the future passive is rare[1]; intransitive verbs usually lack the passive. You are already familiar with the present active and passive infinitives, whose forms vary with each of the four conjugations; the perfect and future infinitives are all formed according to the following patterns, regardless of conjugation:

	Active	Passive
Pres.	-āre, -ēre, -ere, -īre[2]	-ārī, -ērī, -ī, -īrī
Perf.	perfect stem + -isse	perf. pass. participle + esse
Fut.	fut. act. participle + esse	[supine in -um + īrī][3]

[1] In other words, there are active and passive infinitives for each of the three basic time frames, past, present, and future; contrast participles, which lack present passive and perfect active forms.

[2] Actually, the ending of the present active infinitive is -re, which is added to the present stem; but for purposes of distinction it is convenient to include here the stem vowel as well.

[3] The future passive infinitive is given in brackets here because it is not a common form and does not occur in this book. The Romans preferred a substitute expression like fore ut + subjunctive (result clause). The supine in -um has the same spelling as that of the perf. pass. part. in the nom. neut. sg.

INFINITIVES OF agō, agere, ēgī, āctum, *to lead*

	Active	Passive
Pres.	ágere, *to lead*	ágī, *to be led*
Perf.	ēgisse, *to have led*	áctus, -a, -um⁴ ésse, *to have been led*
Fut.	āctúrus, -a, -um⁴ ésse, *to be about to lead, to be going to lead*	áctum írī, *to be about to be led, to be going to be led*

The literal translations of the six infinitives given above are conventional; in actual use (especially in indirect statement, as explained below) the perfect and particularly the future infinitives are rarely translated literally.

The infinitives of the other model verbs are as follows:

Active

Pres.	laudáre	monére	audíre	cápere
Perf.	laudávisse	monuísse	audívisse	cēpísse
Fut.	laudātúrus, -a, -um, ésse	monitúrus, -a, -um, ésse	audītúrus, -a, -um, ésse	captúrus, -a, -um, ésse

Passive

Pres.	laudárī	monérī	audírī	cápī
Perf.	laudátus, -a, -um, ésse	mónitus, -a, -um, ésse	audítus, -a, -um, ésse	cáptus, -a, -um, ésse
Fut.	laudátum írī	mónitum írī	audítum írī	cáptum írī

USAGE

As a verbal noun, an infinitive can function in a variety of ways. We have seen its use as a subject (**errāre est humānum,** *to err is human*) and as a complement with such verbs as **possum** and **dēbeō** (**discēdere nunc possunt,** *they can leave now*—Ch. 6), and the infinitive, with its own accusative subject, can also serve as a direct object (**iussit eōs venīre,** *he ordered them to come:* see S.S., p. 445). One of the commonest uses of the infinitive, however, is in a construction known as "indirect statement."

---

⁴The participles are regarded as predicate adjectives and so are made to agree with the subject of **esse.**

INFINITIVE IN INDIRECT STATEMENT WITH ACCUSATIVE SUBJECT

An indirect statement simply reports indirectly (i.e., not in direct quotation) what someone has said, thought, felt, etc. The following is a *direct* statement, made by a teacher:

Julia is a good student.

Here the teacher's comment is *directly* reported or quoted:

"Julia is a good student," says the teacher.
The teacher said, "Julia is a good student."

Latin also uses direct quotations with certain verbs of speaking, etc., including **inquit** (Ch. 22 Vocab.):

"Iūlia," magister inquit, "est discipula bona."

Often, however, both Latin and English will report someone's remarks (or thoughts or feelings) indirectly. In English we regularly put such indirect statements into a subordinate clause introduced by *that:*

The teacher says that Julia is a good student.
The teacher said that Julia was a good student.

Latin, on the other hand, uses no introductory word for *that* and employs an infinitive phrase with an accusative subject, instead of a clause:

Magister dīcit Iūliam esse discipulam bonam.
Magister dīxit Iūliam esse discipulam bonam.

This indirect statement construction is regularly employed in Latin after verbs of "speech," "mental activity," or "sense perception" (i.e., saying, thinking, knowing, perceiving, feeling, seeing, hearing, etc.: see the list of Latin verbs following the Vocab.). English uses a similar objective case + infinitive construction after a few verbs of this type (e.g., "the teacher considers *her to be* a good student"), but in classical Latin this pattern is always followed and the accusative subject is always expressed, even when it is the same as the subject of the verb of *saying,* etc. (in which case the subject is ordinarily a reflexive pronoun):

Iūlia putat sē esse bonam discipulam, *Julia thinks that she (herself) is a good student.*

Recognizing indirect statements is easy: look for the main verb of speech, mental activity, or sense perception with an accusative + infinitive

phrase following. The greater challenge is in translation, since you must nearly always supply *that* and convert the infinitive phrase into a regular clause, as in the above examples, where literal translations (e.g., *the teacher says Julia to be a good student* or *Julia thinks herself to be a good student*) would not produce idiomatic English. After supplying *that* and translating the accusative subject as if it were a nominative, you must then transform the infinitive into a regular finite verb *in the correct tense*, noting that tenses of the infinitive, like those of the participle, are relative not absolute.

INFINITIVE TENSES IN INDIRECT STATEMENT

Study carefully the *tenses* in the following groups of sentences.

1. Dīcunt— **They say**	A. eum **iuvāre** eam. B. eum **iūvisse** eam. C. eum **iūtūrum esse** eam.	*that he is helping her.* *that he helped her.* *that he will help her.*
2. Dīxērunt— **They said**	A. eum **iuvāre** eam. B. eum **iūvisse** eam. C. eum **iūtūrum esse** eam.	*that he was helping her.* *that he had helped her.* *that he would help her.*
3. Dīcent— **They will say**	A. eum **iuvāre** eam. B. eum **iūvisse** eam. C. eum **iūtūrum esse** eam.	*that he is helping her.* *that he helped her.* *that he will help her.*

You probably noticed that after any tense of the main verb (*dīcunt, dīxērunt, dīcent*) the present, the perfect, or the future tense of the infinitive may be used. This fact shows that the tenses of the infinitive are not absolute but are relative.

To put it another way, *regardless of the tense of the main verb:*

1. the *present infinitive* indicates the *same time as* that of the main verb (= contemporaneous infinitive).

2. the *perfect infinitive* indicates *time before* that of the main verb (= prior infinitive).

3. the *future infinitive* indicates *time after* that of the main verb (= subsequent infinitive).

Here are some further examples; note carefully the translation of tenses, the use of reflexives, the agreement of participial endings with the accusative subjects, and the use in one instance of the passive periphrastic infinitive (gerundive + **esse**, to indicate obligatory action).

Gāius dīcit sē iūvisse eam,
> *Gaius says that he* (Gaius) *helped her.*

Gāius dīxit **eum** iūvisse eam,
> *Gaius said that he* (e.g., Marcus) *had helped* her.

Gāius dīcit litterās ā sē scrīptās esse,
> *G. says that the letter was written by him* (Gaius).

Gāius dīcit litterās tibi scrībendās esse,
> *G. says that the letter ought to be written by you* (or *that you ought to write the letter*).

Discipulī putant sē linguam Latīnam amātūrōs esse,
> *the (male) students think that they will love the Latin language.*

Magistra scīvit discipulās Latīnam amātūrās esse,
> *the (female) teacher knew that the (female) students would love Latin.*

VOCABULARY

lingua, -ae, f., *tongue; language* (linguist, linguistics, bilingual, lingo, linguine: see **Latīna Est Gaudium**, Ch. 14)

férōx, gen. **ferōcis,** *fierce, savage* (ferocious, ferocity; cp. **ferus, -ī,** *beast*)

fidélis, fidéle, *faithful, loyal* (fidelity, infidelity, infidel; cp. **fidēs**)

géminus, -a, -um, *twin* (geminate, gemination, Gemini)

sápiēns, gen. **sapiéntis,** as adj., *wise, judicious;* as noun, *a wise man, philosopher* (homo sapiens, sapience, insipience, sapid, insipid, verbum sapienti, savant, sage; cp. **sapientia, sapiō,** Ch. 35)

últimus, -a, -um, *farthest, extreme; last, final* (ultimate, ultimatum, penultimate, antepenult)

déhinc, adv., *then, next*

hīc, adv., *here*

áit, áiunt, *he says, they say, assert,* commonly used in connection with proverbs and anecdotes (adage)

crédō, crédere, crédidī, créditum + acc. or (Ch. 35) dat., *to believe, trust* (credence, credentials, credible, incredible, credulity, credulous, creed, credibility, credo, credit, creditable, accreditation, miscreant, grant)

iáceō, iacére, iácuī, *to lie; lie prostrate; lie dead* (adjacent, adjacency, interjacent, subjacent, gist, joist; do not confuse with **iaciō, iacere**)

négō (1), *to deny, say that . . . not* (negate, negative, abnegate, renegade, renege, denial, runagate)

nésciō, nescíre, nescívī, nescítum, *not to know, be ignorant* (nice; cp. **sciō**)

núntiō (1), *to announce, report, relate* (denounce, enunciate, pronounce, renounce, nuncio; cp. **prōnūntiō, nūntius, -ī,** *messenger*)

patefáciō, -fácere, -fécī, -fáctum, *to make open, open; disclose, expose*

pútō (1), *to reckon, suppose, judge, think, imagine* (compute, count, account, depute, dispute, impute, putative, repute, amputate)

spérō (1), *to hope for, hope,* regularly + fut. inf. in ind. state. (despair, desperado, desperate, desperation, prosper; cp. spēs.)

suscípiō, -cípere, -cépī, -céptum (sub-capiō), *to undertake* (susceptible, susceptibility)

LIST OF VERBS CAPABLE OF INTRODUCING INDIRECT STATEMENT[5]

1. *saying:* dícō, négō, áit, nûntiō, prōnûntiō, nárrō, scríbō, dóceō, osténdō, dĕmônstrō, móneō, pétō
2. *knowing:* sciō, nésciō, intéllegō, memóriā téneō, díscō
3. *thinking:* cérnō, cógitō, crédō, hábeō, pútō, spérō
4. *perceiving and feeling:* aúdiō, vídeō, séntiō, gaúdeō

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. "Quisque," inquit, "semper putat suās rēs esse magnās."
2. Posteā audīvimus servōs dōnōrum causā labōrāvisse, ut mīlitēs fidēlēs herī narrāverant.
3. Vīcīnī nostrī vim ignis magnā virtūte dehinc āvertērunt, quod laudem atque dōna cupīvērunt.
4. Hoc signum perīculī tōtam gentem nostram tanget, nisi hostem ex urbe excipere ac ab Italiā pellere poterimus.
5. Duce ferōcī Carthāginis expulsō, spēs fidēsque virōrum magnanimōrum rem pūblicam continēbunt.
6. Cūr iūcundus Horātius culpās hūmānās in saturīs semper ostendēbat atque rīdēbat?
7. Crēdimus fidem antīquam omnibus gentibus iterum alendam esse.
8. Dux, ad senātum missus, imperium accēpit et imperātor factus est.
9. Rēs pūblica, ut áit, libellīs huius modī tollī potest.
10. Aliquī negant hostēs victōs servitūte umquam opprimendōs esse.
11. Crēdunt magistram sapientem vēritātem patefactūram esse.
12. Quisquis vēritātem recipiet bene ēducābitur.
13. We thought that your sisters were writing the letter.
14. They will show that the letter was written by the brave slavegirl.
15. He said that the letter had never been written.
16. We hope that the judge's wife will write those two letters tomorrow.

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

1. Id factum esse tum nōn negāvit. (Terence.)
2. Hīs rēbus prōnûntiātīs, igitur, eum esse hostem scīvistī. (Cicero.)

[5] Others to be introduced later are **respondeō,** *answer;* **cognōscō,** *learn, know;* **arbitror,** *think;* **opīnor,** *think, suppose;* **prōmittō,** *promise;* **dēcernō,** *decide;* **doleō,** *grieve.*

3. Eum ab hostibus exspectārī nunc sentīs. (Cicero.)
4. Vīdī eōs in urbe remānsisse et nōbīscum esse. (Cicero.)
5. Itaque aeternum bellum cum malīs cīvibus ā mē susceptum esse cernō. (Cicero.)
6. Idem crēdō tibi faciendum esse. (Cicero.)
7. Tē enim esse fidēlem mihi sciēbam. (Terence.)
8. Hostibus sē in cīvitātem vertentibus, senātus Cincinnātō nūntiāvit eum factum esse dictātōrem. (Cicero.—**Cincinnātus, -ī.—dictātor, -tōris.**)
9. Dīcō tē, Pyrrhe, Rōmānōs posse vincere. (Ennius.—**Pyrrhus, -ī.**)
10. Dīc, hospes, Spartae tē nōs hīc iacentēs vīdisse, patriae fidēlēs. (Cicero; epigram on the Spartans who died at Thermopylae.—**hospes, -pitis**, m., *stranger.*—**Spartae,** *to Sparta.*)
11. Sōcratēs putābat sē esse cīvem tōtīus mundī. (Cicero.)
12. Illī magistrī negant quemquam virum esse bonum nisi sapientem. (Cicero.—**quisquam, quidquam,** *anyone, anything; any.*)
13. Negāvī, autem, mortem timendam esse. (Cicero.)
14. Crēdō deōs immortālēs sparsisse spīritūs in corpora hūmāna. (Cicero.—**spargō, -ere, sparsī, sparsum,** *to scatter, sow.*)
15. Adulēscēns spērat sē diū vīctūrum esse; senex potest dīcere sē diū vīxisse. (Cicero.—Do not confuse **vīctūrum,** from **vīvō,** with **victūrum,** from **vincō**).
16. Āiunt enim multum legendum esse, nōn multa. (*Pliny.*)

THE DEATH OF LAOCOON . . . AND TROY

Hīc alius magnus timor (Ō fābula misera!) animōs caecōs nostrōs terret. Lāocoōn, sacerdōs Neptūnī fortūnā factus, ācrem taurum ad āram in lītore mactābat. Tum geminī serpentēs potentēs, mare prementēs, ab īnsulā ad lītora currunt. Iamque agrōs tenēbant et, oculīs igne ardentibus, ōra linguīs sībilīs lambēbant.

Nōs omnēs fugimus; illī viā certā Lāocoonta fīliōsque eius petunt. Prīmum parva corpora duōrum puerōrum capiunt et lacerant necantque dēvōrantque. Tum patrem fortem, ad fīliōs miserōs currentem, rapiunt et magnīs spīrīs tenent et superant. Nec sē ā vulneribus dēfendere nec fugere potest, et ipse, ut taurus saucius ad āram, clāmōrēs horrendōs ad caelum tollit. Eōdem tempore serpentēs fugiunt, petuntque perfugium in arce Minervae ācris.

Quod Lāocoōn in equum Minervae hastam iēcerat, nōs putāvimus eum errāvisse et poenās dedisse; vēritātem acerbam nescīvimus. Portās patefacimus et admittimus istum equum in urbem; atque puerī puellaeque—Ō patria, Ō dī magnī, Ō Trōia!—eum tangere gaudent. Et quoque gaudēmus nōs miserī, quibus ille diēs fuit ultimus ac quibus numquam erit ūllum sōlācium.

(Virgil, *Aeneid* 2.199–249; prose adaptation.—**Lāocoŏn, -ontis,** m.—**Neptûnus,** god of the sea, took the side of the Greeks in the Trojan war.—**taurus, -ī,** *bull.*— **āra, -ae,** *altar.*—**mactāre,** *to sacrifice, sacrificially slaughter.*—**serpēns, -pentis,** m.—**ardēre,** *to blaze.*—**sībilus, -a, -um,** *hissing.*—**lambō, -ere,** *to lick.*—**Lāo- coonta,** Gk. acc.—**prīmum,** adv. of **prīmus.**—**lacerāre,** *to tear to pieces, man- gle.*—**dēvōrāre,** *to devour.*—**spīra, -ae,** *coil.*—**saucius, -a, -um,** *wounded.*— **clāmor, -mōris,** *shout, scream.*—**horrendus, -a, -um.**)

The Laocoon group
Roman copy, perhaps after Agesander, Athenodorus, and Polydorus of Rhodes
1st century B.C., Vatican Museums, Vatican State

ETYMOLOGY

In the readings   8. propinquity.—"Cincinnati," both the organization composed origi-
nally of the officers who served under George Washington and also the city
named after the organization. 9. Pyrrhus, the Greek general, defeated the
Romans twice, but the victories cost him almost as many men as they cost
the Romans; hence the term "Pyrrhic victory." 14. aspersion, disperse, in-
tersperse, sparse. "Laocoon": toreador.—serpent, serpentine; "herpes" is
cognate.—lambent.—lacerate, laceration.—voracious.—spire, spiral.—
clamor, clamorous; cp. **clāmāre, dēclāmāre, exclāmāre.**—horrendous.

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

Quid agitis hodiē, amīcī et amīcae? Also from **iacēre** in the new Vocab. is
the phrase **hīc iacet,** *here lies . . . ,* often inscribed on tombstones (sometimes
spelled **hīc jacet** and mistaken to mean *a country boy's sportcoat!*). And here
are some other well-known mottoes and phrases: **dum spīrō, spērō,** *while I
breathe, I hope* (South Carolina's state motto—the verb **spīrāre** is related
to **spīritus,** Ch. 20, and gives us "conspire," "expire," "inspire," "perspire,"
"respiratory," "transpire," etc.); **crēde Deō,** *trust in God* (for **crēdere** + dat.,
see Ch. 35); and It. **lingua franca,** lit. *Frankish language,* used of any hybrid
language that is employed for communication among different cultures.
Spīrāte, spērāte, rīdēte, atque valēte!

*Trojan horse fresco from the House of Menander
Pompeii, mid- to late 1st century A.D.
Museo Archeologico Nazionale, Naples, Italy*

26

Comparison of Adjectives; Declension of Comparatives; Ablative of Comparison

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

The adjective forms you have learned thus far indicate a basic characteristic (a quality or quantity) associated with the modified noun, e.g., **vir beātus,** *a happy man.* This is called the "positive degree" of the adjective.

In Latin, as in English, an adjective may be "compared" in order to indicate whether a person or thing being described has a greater degree of a particular characteristic than some other person(s) or thing(s), or more than is usual or customary. When comparing a person/thing with just one other, the "comparative degree" is used: **vir beātior,** *the happier man.* When comparing a person/thing with two or more others, the "superlative degree" is employed: **vir beātissimus,** *the happiest man.*

FORMATION OF THE COMPARATIVE AND THE SUPERLATIVE

The form of the positive degree is learned from the vocabulary. The forms of the comparative and the superlative of regular adjectives are ordinarily made on the *base* of the positive, which is identified, as you know, by dropping the ending of the genitive singular.[1]

[1] Occasionally an adjective is compared by adding **magis** (*more*) and **maximē** (*most*) to the positive. This is regular in adjectives like **idōneus, -a, -um** (*suitable*) where a vowel precedes the endings: **magis idōneus, maximē idōneus.**

Comparative: base of positive + **-ior** (m. & f.), **-ius** (n.); **-iōris**, gen.
Superlative: base of positive + **-issimus, -issima, -issimum**

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
cārus, -a, -um *(dear)*	cárior, -ius *(dearer)*	cārissimus, -a, -um *(dearest)*
lóngus, -a, -um *(long)*	lóngior, -ius *(longer)*	longissimus, -a, -um *(longest)*
fórtis, -e *(brave)*	fórtior, -ius *(braver)*	fortíssimus, -a, -um *(bravest)*
félīx, *gen.* félícis *(happy)*	félícior, -ius *(happier)*	félícíssimus, -a, -um *(happiest)*
pótēns, *gen.* poténtis *(powerful)*	poténtior, -ius *(more powerful)*	potentíssimus, -a, -um *(most powerful)*
sápiēns, *gen.* sapiéntis *(wise)*	sapiéntior, -ius *(wiser)*	sapientíssimus, -a, -um *(wisest)*

DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES

The declension of superlatives quite simply follows the pattern of **magnus, -a, -um**. Comparatives, however, are two-ending adjectives of the third declension, but they follow the *consonant declension;* and so they constitute the chief exception to the rule that adjectives of the third declension belong to the **i**-stem declension (i.e., comparatives do *not* have the **-ī** abl. sg., **-ium** gen. pl., or **-ia** neut. nom./acc. pl. endings that characterize other third declension adjectives, as seen in Ch. 16). Memorize the following paradigm, taking special note of the endings given in bold.

| | **Singular** | | **Plural** | |
	M. & F.	**N.**	**M. & F.**	**N.**
Nom.	fórtior	fórtius	fortiórēs	fortióra
Gen.	fortióris	fortióris	fortiórum	fortiórum
Dat.	fortiórī	fortiórī	fortióribus	fortióribus
Acc.	fortiórem	fórtius	fortiórēs	fortióra
Abl.	fortióre	fortióre	fortióribus	fortióribus

USAGE AND TRANSLATION

Comparative degree adjectives are commonly translated with *more* or the suffix *-er* and superlatives with *most* or *-est,* depending on the context and English idiom, e.g.: **fémina sapiéntior,** *the wiser woman;* **urbs antīquior,**

a more ancient city; **tempus incertissimum,** *a most uncertain time;* **lūx clārissima,** *the brightest light.* Though there is no direct connection between the forms, it may be helpful for mnemonic purposes to associate the Latin comparative marker **-ōr-** with English *more/-er* and the superlative marker **-ss-** with English *most/-est.*

The comparative sometimes has the force of *rather,* indicating a greater degree of some quality than usual (**lūx clārior,** *a rather bright light*), or *too,* indicating a greater degree than desirable (**vīta eius erat brevior,** *his/her life was too short*). The superlative is sometimes translated with *very,* especially when comparing a person/thing to what is usual or ideal: **vīta eius erat brevissima,** *his/her life was very short.*

Quam WITH THE COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE

When **quam** *follows a comparative* degree adjective it functions as a coordinating conjunction meaning *than,* linking two items that are being compared; the same case or construction follows **quam** as precedes:

Hī librī sunt clāriōrēs quam illī, *these books are more famous than those.*

Dīcit hōs librōs esse clāriōrēs quam illōs, *he says that these books are more famous than those.*

When **quam** *precedes* a *superlative,* it functions adverbially and indicates that the person/thing modified has the greatest possible degree of a particular quality:

Amīcus meus erat vir quam iūcundissimus, *my friend was the pleasantest man possible* or *as pleasant as can be.*

ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON

When the first element to be compared was in the nominative or accusative case, **quam** was often omitted and the second element followed in the ablative case, the so-called "ablative of comparison" (which should be added to your now extensive list of ablative case uses).

Cōnsilia tua sunt clāriōra lūce, *your plans are clearer than light.*
(Cp. **cōnsilia tua sunt clāriōra quam lūx,** which means the same.)

Quis in Italiā erat clārior Cicerōne? *Who in Italy was more famous than Cicero?*

Vīdī paucōs fēlīciōrēs patre tuō, *I have seen few men happier than your father.*

VOCABULARY

céna, -ae, f., *dinner* (cenacle)

fórum, -ī, n., *marketplace, forum* (forensic)

lēx, légis, f., *law, statute;* cp. **iūs,** which emphasizes *right, justice* (legal, legislator, legitimate, loyal, colleague, college, privilege)

límen, líminis, n., *threshold* (liminality, subliminal, eliminate, preliminary)

lūx, lūcis, f., *light* (lucid, elucidate, translucent, lucubration, illustrate, illuminate)

ménsa, -ae, f., *table; dining; dish, course;* **ménsa secúnda,** *dessert* (the constellation Mensa)

nox, nóctis, f., *night* (nocturnal, nocturne, equinox, noctiluca, noctuid; cp. **pernóctō,** Ch. 39)

sómnus, -ī, m., *sleep* (somnambulate, somnambulism, somnambulist, somniferous, somniloquist, somnolent, insomnia, Sominex)

quídam, quaédam, quíddam (pron.) or **quóddam** (adj.), indef. pron. and adj.; as pron., *a certain one or thing, someone, something;* as adj., *a certain, some* (gen. **cuiúsdam,** dat. **cuídam,** etc.)

pudícus, -a, -um, *modest, chaste* (impudent, pudency, pudendum; cp. **pudīcitia,** *modesty, chastity*)

supérbus, -a, -um, *arrogant, overbearing, haughty, proud* (superb; cp. **superāre**)

trístis, tríste, *sad, sorrowful; joyless, grim, severe* (cp. **trīstitia,** *sorrow*)

túrpis, túrpe, *ugly; shameful, base, disgraceful* (turpitude)

urbánus, -a, -um, *of the city, urban; urbane, elegant* (urbanity, urbanization, suburban, suburbanite; cp. **urbs**)

prae, prep. + abl., *in front of, before* (frequent as a prefix, e.g., **praepōnere,** *to put before, prefer;* sometimes intensifying, e.g., **praeclārus, -a, -um,** *especially famous, remarkable;* precede, prepare, preposition; cp. **praeter,** Ch. 40)

quam, adv. and conj. after comparatives, *than;* with superlatives, *as . . . as possible:* **quam fortissimus,** *as brave as possible* (cp. **quam,** *how,* Ch. 16, and do not confuse with the rel. pron. fem. acc. sg.)

tántum, adv., *only*

invītō (1), *to entertain, invite, summon* (invitation, vie)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Ille dux nescīvit sē imperium prōtinus susceptūrum esse.
2. "Quīdam," inquit, "imperium quondam petēbant et līberōs virōs opprimere cupiēbant."
3. Eōdem diē decem mīlia hostium ab duce fidēlissimō āversa ac pulsa sunt; multī mīlitēs vulnera recēperant et in agrīs iacēbant.

4. Morte tyrannī ferōcis nūntiātā, quisque sē ad ōrātōrem potentissimum magnā spē vertit.
5. Rīdēns, scrīptor illīus fābulae sapiēns aliquid iūcundius dehinc nārrāvit.
6. Hīs rēbus audītīs, adulēscentēs geminī propter pecūniae cupiditātem studium litterārum relinquent.
7. Rēgīna fortissima Carthāginis posteā ostendit fidem semper esse sibi cāriōrem dīvitiīs.
8. Negāvit sē umquam vīdisse servam fidēliōrem quam hanc.
9. Iūcundior modus vītae hominibus nunc quaerendus est.
10. Crēdimus illōs vīgintī līberōs virōs fēmināsque vītam quam iūcundissimam agere.
11. Imperātor centum mīlitēs fortissimōs prae sē herī mīsit.
12. Lūx in illā casā nōn fuit clārissima, quod familia paucās fenestrās patefēcerat.
13. Amīcōs trīstēs excēpit, ad mēnsam invītāvit, et eīs perfugium ac sōlācium hīc dedit.
14. What is sweeter than a very pleasant life?
15. Certain men, however, say that death is sweeter than life.
16. When these three very sure signs had been reported, we sought advice and comfort from the most powerful leader.
17. In that story the author says that all men seek as happy lives as possible.
18. This light is always brighter than the other.

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

1. Senectūs est loquācior. (Cicero.—**loquāx,** gen. **loquācis,** *garrulous.*)
2. Tua cōnsilia omnia nōbis clāriōra sunt quam lūx. (Cicero.)
3. Quaedam remedia graviōra sunt quam ipsa perīcula. (Seneca.)
4. Eō diē virōs fortissimōs atque amantissimōs reī pūblicae ad mē vocāvī. (Cicero.—**amāns reī pūblicae,** i.e., *patriotic.*)
5. Quī imperia libēns accēpit, partem acerbissimam servitūtis vītat. (Seneca.—**libēns,** gen. **libentis,** *willing;* here, as is often the case, the adj. has adverbial force.)
6. Iūcundissima dōna, ut āiunt, semper sunt ea quae auctor ipse cāra facit. (Ovid.)
7. Beātus sapiēnsque vir forum vītat et superba līmina potentiōrum cīvium. (Horace.)
8. Quid est turpius quam ab aliquō illūdī? (Cicero.—**illūdō, -ere,** *to deceive.*)
9. Quid enim est stultius quam incerta prō certīs habēre, falsa prō vērīs? (*Cicero.—**falsus, -a, -um.**)

10. Saepe mihi dīcis, cārissime amīce: "Scrībe aliquid magnum; dēsidiō-
    sissimus homō es." (Martial.—**dēsidiōsus, -a, -um,** *lazy.*)
11. Verba currunt; at manus notāriī est vēlōcior illīs; nōn lingua mea,
    sed manus eius, labōrem perfēcit. (Martial.—**notārius, -iī,** *stenogra-
    pher.*—**vēlōx,** gen. **vēlōcis,** *swift.*—**perficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum,** *to
    complete.*)
12. Multī putant rēs bellicās graviōrēs esse quam rēs urbānās; sed haec
    sententia mūtanda est, nam multae rēs urbānae sunt graviōrēs
    clāriōrēsque quam bellicae. (Cicero.—**bellicus, -a, -um,** adj. of
    bellum.)
13. Invītātus ad cēnam, manū sinistrā lintea neglegentiōrum sustulistī.
    Hoc salsum esse putās? Rēs sordidissima est! Itaque mihi linteum
    remitte. (Catullus.—**linteum, -ī,** *linen, napkin.*—**neglegēns,** gen. **neg-
    legentis,** *careless.*—**salsus, -a, -um,** *salty; witty.*—**sordidus, -a, -um,**
    dirty, mean.)

THE NATIONS OF GAUL

Gallia est omnis dīvīsa in partēs trēs, quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae,
aliam Aquītānī, tertiam quī ipsōrum linguā Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur.
Hī omnēs linguā, īnstitūtīs, lēgibus inter sē differunt. Gallōs ab Aquītānīs
Garumna flūmen, ā Belgīs Matrona et Sequana dīvidit. Hōrum omnium
fortissimī sunt Belgae.

(*Caesar, *Bellum Gallicum* 1.1.—The places and peoples mentioned: Gaul, the
Belgae, the Aquitani, the Celts or Gauls, and the rivers Garonne, Marne, and
Seine.—**dīvidō, -ere, -vīsī, -vīsum,** *to divide, separate.*—**incolō, -ere,** *to inhabit;*
Belgae, Aquītānī, and [eī] **quī** are all subjects of this verb.—**ipsōrum linguā** =
linguā suā.—**nostrā,** sc. **linguā.**—**īnstitūtum, -ī,** *custom, institution.*—**differō.**)

Julius Caesar
Museo Pio Clementino, Vatican Museums, Vatican State

THE GOOD LIFE

Haec sunt, amīce iūcundissime, quae vītam faciunt beātiōrem: rēs nōn facta labōre sed ā patre relicta, ager fēlīx, parvum forī et satis ōtiī, mēns aequa, vīrēs et corpus sānum, sapientia, amīcī vērī, sine arte mēnsa, nox nōn ebria sed solūta cūrīs, nōn trīstis torus et tamen pudīcus, somnus facilis. Dēsīderā tantum quod habēs, cupe nihil; nōlī timēre ultimum diem aut spērāre.

(Martial 10.47; prose adaptation.—**rēs**, here *property, wealth.*—**ā patre relicta,** i.e., inherited.—**forī,** gen. of the whole with **parvum.**—**sine arte,** i.e., simple, modest.—**ebrius, -a, -um,** *drunken.*—**solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtum,** *to loosen, free (from).*— **torus, -ī,** *bed.*—**nōlī** is used with the inf. for a negative command, *do not . . . .*)

Funeral banquet, Etruscan fresco
Tomb of the Leopards, early 5th century B.C.
Tarquinia, Italy

ETYMOLOGY

In Sp. the comparative degree of an adjective is regularly formed by putting **más** (*more*) before the adjective: **más caro, más alto.** This **más** comes from the **magis** mentioned in n. 1. Sp. and It. both retain some vestiges of the Lat. superlative ending **-issimus.** Forms with this ending, however, are not the normal superlative forms, but are used to convey the intensive idea of *very, exceedingly.*

Latin	Italian	Spanish	
cārissimus	carissimo	carisimo	*very dear*
clārissimus	chiarissimo	clarisimo	*very clear*
altissimus	altissimo	altisimo	*very high*

In the readings

1. loquacious, loquacity. 8. illusion, illusive, illusory. 11. notary, note. 13. lint.—From **salsus** through Fr. come "sauce," "saucer," "saucy," "sausage." "Gaul": divide, division.—institute.—differ, differential, differentiate. "The Good Life": inebriated.—solve, absolve, absolution, dissolve, resolve, solution, resolution, ablative absolute.

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

Salvēte! Here are some more familiar mottoes, phrases, famous quotations, and etymological tidbits ex **vocābulāriō huius capitis** (**vocābulārium** is medieval Lat. for *vocabulary,* a list of "what you call things," words that is, from **vocāre**): **auctor ignōtus** means *author unknown,* i.e., "anonymous"; **cēna Dominī** is the *Lord's Supper;* **dūra lēx sed lēx,** *a harsh law, but the law nevertheless;* **lēx nōn scrīpta,** *customary law* (as opposed to **lēx scrīpta**—what are the lit. meanings?—you can also figure out **lēx locī**); then there's Ovid's admonition to loners, **trīstis eris sī sōlus eris,** and the hope of one of Plautus' characters for **lēx eadem uxōrī et virō**; a legal decree of **ā mēnsā et torō,** *from table and bed* (**torus, -ī**), is a separation prohibiting husband and wife from cohabiting.

Knowing the noun **lūx** and the related verb **lūceō, lūcēre,** *to shine brightly,* can shed some light on these items: **lūx et vēritās** is the motto of Yale University, **lūx et lēx** is the motto of the University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill, pellucid explanations are perfectly clear (**per + lūc-**), translucent materials let the light shine through, and Lux soap will make you shine like light! **Lūcēte, discipulae discipulīque, et valēte!**

27

Special and Irregular Comparison of Adjectives

ADJECTIVES HAVING PECULIAR FORMS IN THE SUPERLATIVE

Two groups of adjectives, which are otherwise regular, have peculiar forms in the superlative:

I. Six adjectives ending in **-lis** form the superlative by adding **-limus, -lima, -limum** to the *base.*

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
fácilis, -e (*easy*)	facílior, -ius (*easier*)	facíl-limus, -a, -um (*easiest*)
difficilis, -e (*difficult*)	difficílior, -ius (*more difficult*)	difficíllimus, -a, -um (*most difficult*)
símilis, -e (*like*)	simílior, -ius (*more l.*)	simíllimus, -a, -um (*most l.*)

Dissimilis (*unlike, dissimilar*), **gracilis** (*slender, thin*), and **humilis** (*low, humble*) follow this same pattern; all other **-lis** adjectives have regular superlatives (e.g., **fidēlissimus, ūtilissimus,** etc.).

II. Any adjective which has a masculine in **-er**, regardless of the declension, forms the superlative by adding **-rimus** directly to this masculine **-er,** *not* to the base; note that the comparatives of **-er** adjectives are formed regularly, by adding **-ior, -ius** to the base (which, as you know, in some cases retains the **-e-** and sometimes drops it).

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
líber, -bera, -berum (*free*)	lībérior, -ius (*freer*)	lībér-rimus, -a, -um (*freest*)
púlcher, -chra, -chrum (*beautiful*)	púlchrior, -ius (*more beautiful*)	pulchérrimus, -a, -um (*most beautiful*)
ácer, ácris, ácre (*keen*)	ácrior, ácrius (*keener*)	ācérrimus, -a, -um (*keenest*)

ADJECTIVES OF IRREGULAR COMPARISON

More important from the consideration of frequency of appearance are a few adjectives which are so irregular in their comparison that the only solution to the difficulty is memorization. However, English derivatives from the irregular forms greatly aid the memorization (see the Etymology section below). A list of the most useful of these adjectives follows.[1]

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
bónus, -a, -um (*good*)	mélior, -ius (*better*)	óptimus, -a, -um (*best*)
mágnus, -a, -um (*great*)	máior, -ius (*greater*)	máximus, -a, -um (*greatest*)
málus, -a, -um (*bad*)	péior, -ius (*worse*)	péssimus, -a, -um (*worst*)
múltus, -a, -um (*much*)	——, plūs (*more*)	plúrimus, -a, -um (*most*)
párvus, -a, -um (*small*)	mínor, mínus (*smaller*)	mínimus, -a, -um (*smallest*)
(prae, prō)[2] (*in front of, before*)	prior, -ius (*former*)	prímus, -a, -um (*first*)
súperus, -a, -um (*that above*)	supérior, -ius (*higher*)	súmmus, -a, -um (*highest, furthest*) suprêmus, -a, -um (*highest, last*)

[1] Others less important for this book are:
exterus, -a, -um (*foreign*), exterior, -ius (*outer*), extrêmus, -a, -um (*outermost*)
ínferus, -a, -um (*below*), inferior, -ius (*lower*), ínfimus, -a, -um (*lowest*)
(prope, *near*), propior, -ius (*nearer*), proximus, -a, -um (*nearest*)

[2] There is no positive degree adj. corresponding to prior and prímus, since those words, by the very definition of "priority" and "primacy," imply comparison with one or more persons or things; the prepositions prae and prō, however, are related.

DECLENSION OF Plūs

None of the irregular forms offers any declensional difficulty except **plūs**. In the plural **plūs** functions as an adjective (e.g., **plūrēs amīcī**), but has mixed i-stem and consonant-stem forms (**-ium** in the genitive plural but **-a**, not **-ia**, in the neuter nominative and accusative); in the singular it functions not as an adjective at all, but as a neuter noun which is commonly followed by a genitive of the whole (e.g., **plūs pecūniae**, *more money*, lit. *more of money*—see Ch. 15).

| | Singular | | Plural | |
	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
Nom.	——	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
Gen.	——	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
Dat.	——	——	plūribus	plūribus
Acc.	——	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
Abl.	——	plūre	plūribus	plūribus

VOCABULARY

dēlectātiō, dēlectātiōnis, f., *delight, pleasure, enjoyment* (delectation, delectable, delicious, dilettante; cp. **dēlectō, dēlicia,** *delight*)

nepōs, nepōtis, m., *grandson, descendant* (nephew, nepotism, niece)

sōl, sōlis, m., *sun* (solar, solarium, solstice, parasol)

dīligēns, gen. **dīligéntis,** *diligent, careful* (diligence, diligently)

dissimilis, dissímile, *unlike, different* (dissimilar, dissimilarity, dissemble)

grácilis, grácile, *slender, thin* (gracile)

húmilis, húmile, *lowly, humble* (humility, humiliate, humiliation; cp. **humus,** Ch. 37)

máior, máius, comp. adj., *greater, older;* **maiōrēs, maiōrum,** m. pl., *ancestors* (i.e., *the older ones;* major, majority, etc.—see Etymology below).

prímus, -a, -um, *first, foremost, chief, principal* (primary, primate, prime, primeval, primer, premier, primitive, prim, primo-geniture, prima facie, primordial, primrose)

quot, indecl. adj., *how many, as many as* (quota, quotation, quote, quotient)

símilis, símile, + gen. or dat., *similar (to), like, resembling* (similarly, simile, assimilate, dissimilar, dissimilarity, simulate, dissimulate, verisimilitude, assemble, resemble, simultaneous; cp. same)

súperus, -a, -um, *above, upper;* **súperī, -ōrum,** m. pl., *the gods* (superior, etc.; cp. **superō** and see Etymology below)

útilis, útile, *useful, advantageous* (what Latin is to YOU!—utility, from **ūtilitās, -tātis;** utilitarian, utilization, utilize; cp. **ūtor,** Ch. 34)

All the irregular adjectival forms given above in this lesson.

pōnō, pōnere, pōsuī, pōsitum, *to put, place, set* (See Etymology at end of chapter.)

prōbō (1), *to approve, recommend; test* (probe, probate, probation, probative, probable, probably, probability, approbation, proof, prove, approve, approval, disprove, improve, reprove, reprobate; cp. **probitās**)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Quisque cupit quam pulcherrima atque ūtilissima dōna dare.
2. Quīdam turpēs habent plūrima sed etiam plūra petunt.
3. Ille ōrātor, ab tyrannō superbissimō expulsus, ducem iūcundiōrem et lēgēs aequiōrēs dehinc quaesīvit.
4. Summum imperium optimīs virīs semper petendum est.
5. Senex nepōtibus trīstibus casam patefēcit et eōs trāns līmen invītāvit.
6. Ostendit hostēs ultimum signum lūce clārissimā illā nocte dedisse.
7. Iste tyrannus pessimus negāvit sē virōs līberōs umquam oppressisse.
8. Fidēlissimus servus plūs cēnae ad mēnsam accipiēbat quam trēs peiōrēs.
9. Āiunt hunc auctōrem vītam humillimam hīc agere.
10. Cūr dī superī oculōs ā rēbus hūmānīs eō tempore āvertērunt?
11. Habēsne pecūniam et rēs tuās prae rē pūblicā?
12. Sōlem post paucās nūbēs gracillimās in caelō hodiē vidēre possumus.
13. Some believe that very large cities are worse than very small ones.
14. In return for the three rather small gifts, the young man gave even more and prettier ones to his very sad mother.
15. Those very large mountains were higher than these.

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

1. Trahit mē nova vīs: videō meliōra probōque, sed peiōra tantum faciō et nesciō cūr. (Ovid.)
2. Quaedam carmina sunt bona; plūra sunt mala. (Martial.)
3. Optimum est. Nihil melius, nihil pulchrius hōc vīdī. (Terence.)
4. Spērō tē et hunc nātālem et plūrimōs aliōs quam fēlīcissimōs āctūrum esse. (Pliny.—**nātālis [diēs]**, *birthday.*)
5. Quoniam cōnsilium et ratiō sunt in senibus, maiōrēs nostrī summum concilium appellāvērunt senātum. (Cicero.—**concilium, -iī**, *council.*)
6. Plūs operae studiīque in rēbus domesticīs nōbīs nunc pōnendum est etiam quam in rēbus mīlitāribus. (Cicero.—**opera, -ae**, *work, effort.*—**domesticus, -a, -um.**—**mīlitāris, -e.**)
7. Neque enim perīculum in rē pūblicā fuit gravius umquam neque ōtium maius. (Cicero.)
8. Sumus sapientiōrēs illīs, quod nōs nātūram esse optimam ducem

scīmus. (Cicero.—**optimam,** f. by attraction to the gender of **nātūram.**)

9. Nātūra minimum petit; nātūrae autem sē sapiēns accommodat. (*Seneca.—**accommodāre,** *to adapt.*)

10. Maximum remedium īrae mora est. (*Seneca.)

11. Quī animum vincit et īram continet, eum cum summīs virīs nōn comparō sed eum esse simillimum deō dīcō. (Cicero.—**comparāre,** *to compare.*)

12. Dionȳsius, tyrannus urbis pulcherrimae, erat vir summae in vīctū temperantiae et in omnibus rēbus dīligentissimus et ācerrimus. Īdem tamen erat ferōx ac iniūstus. Quā ex rē, sī vērum dīcimus, vidēbātur miserrimus. (Cicero.—Dionysius, ruler of Syracuse in the 4th cen. B.C.—**vīctus, -ūs,** *mode of life.*—**temperantia, -ae.**—**in-iūstus, -a, -um,** *unjust.*—**Quā ex rē** = **Ex illā rē.**)

13. Nisi superōs vertere possum, Acheronta movēbō. (Virgil.—**Acheronta,** Gk. acc., *Acheron,* a river in the underworld, here by metonymy *the land of the dead.*)

ALLEY CAT

Caelī, Lesbia nostra, Lesbia illa,
illa Lesbia, quam Catullus ūnam
plūs quam sē atque suōs amāvit omnēs,
nunc in quadriviīs et angiportīs
5   glūbit magnanimī Remī nepōtēs.

(*Catullus 58; meter: hendecasyllabic.—Caelius, a rival of Catullus for Lesbia's favors.—**quadrivium, -iī,** *crossroads.*—**angiportum, -ī,** *alley.*—**glūbō, -ere,** *to peel* (*back*), *strip* (*off*); used of stripping the bark off trees or the skin off an animal, here in an obscene sense.—**Remus,** brother of Romulus, legendary founders of Rome.)

THANKS A LOT, TULLY!

Dīsertissime Rōmulī nepōtum,
quot sunt quotque fuēre, Marce Tullī,
quotque post aliīs erunt in annīs,
grātiās tibi maximās Catullus
5   agit, pessimus omnium poēta,
tantō pessimus omnium poēta
quantō tū optimus omnium patrōnus.

(*Catullus 49; meter: hendecasyllabic. The poet sends thanks to the orator and statesman, Marcus Tullius Cicero; whether or not the tone is ironic is a matter

debated by scholars.—**dīsertus, -a, -um,** *eloquent, learned.*—**fuēre** = **fuērunt,** see
p. 77.—**post** = **posteā.**—**tantō . . . quantō,** *just as much . . . as.*—**tū,** sc. **es.)**

AN UNCLE'S LOVE FOR HIS NEPHEW AND ADOPTED SON

Adulēscēns est cārior mihi quam ego ipse! Atque hic nōn est fīlius meus
sed ex frātre meō. Studia frātris iam diū sunt dissimillima meīs. Ego vītam
urbānam ēgī et ōtium petīvī et, id quod quīdam fortūnātius putant, uxōrem
numquam habuī. Ille, autem, haec omnia fēcit: nōn in forō sed in agrīs vītam
ēgit, parvum pecūniae accēpit, uxōrem pudīcam dūxit, duōs fīliōs habuit.
Ex illō ego hunc maiōrem adoptāvī mihi, ēdūxī ā parvō puerō, amāvī prō
meō. In eō adulēscente est dēlectātiō mea; sōlum id est cārum mihi.

(Terence, *Adelphoe* 39–49.—**dūxit,** *he married.*—**adoptāre.**—**ēdūxī,** *I raised.*)

ETYMOLOGY

In many instances the irregular comparison of a Latin adjective can
easily be remembered by English derivatives:

bonus
    melior: ameliorate
    optimus: optimist, optimum, optimal
magnus
    maior: major, majority, mayor
    maximus: maximum
malus
    peior: pejorative
    pessimus: pessimist
multus
    plūs: plus, plural, plurality, nonplus
parvus
    minor: minor, minority, minus, minute, minuet, minister, minstrel
    minimus: minimum, minimize
(prō)
    prior: prior, priority
    prīmus: prime, primacy, primary, primeval, primitive
superus
    superior: superior, superiority
    summus: summit, sum, consummate
    suprēmus: supreme, supremacy

Lat. **plūs** is the parent of Fr. **plus** and It. **più,** words which are placed
before adjectives to form the comparative degree in those Romance lan-
guages. If the definite article is then added to these comparatives, it converts
them into superlatives.

Latin	French	Italian
longior	plus long	più lungo
longissimus	le plus long	il più lungo
cārior	plus cher	più caro
cārissimus	le plus cher	il più caro

From **pōnō** come innumerable derivatives: apposite, apposition, component, composite, compost, compound, deponent, deposit, deposition, depot, exponent, exposition, expound, imposition, impost, impostor, juxtaposition, opponent, opposite, positive, post, postpone, preposition, proposition, propound, repository, supposition, transposition.

However, note that "pose" and its compounds derive, not from **pōnō** as one would think, but from the late Latin **pausāre,** which stems from Gk. **pausis,** *a pause,* and **pauein,** *to stop.* In Fr. this **pausāre** became **poser,** which took the place of **pōnō** in compounds. Consequently, the forms given above under **pōnō** are not etymologically related to the following words despite their appearance: compose, depose, expose, impose, oppose, propose, repose, suppose, transpose.

In the readings
4. natal, prenatal, postnatal, Natalie. 5. council (vs. **cōnsilium,** *counsel*), conciliate, conciliatory. 6. opera, operetta.—domesticate, etc.; cp. **domus.**—military, cp. **mīles.** 9. accommodate, accommodation. 11. comparative, incomparable. 12. victual, victualer, vittles.—temperance, intemperance.—injustice. "An Uncle's Love": adopt, adoption.

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

Salvē! Quid agis hodiē? Spīrasne? Spērāsne? Rīdēsne? Valēsne? Sī tū valēs, ego **valeō!** And here are some more **rēs Latīnae** to give you a **mēns sāna:** First, an old Latin maxim which you should now be able to read, **sapiēns nihil affirmat quod nōn probat.** Likewise this quote from Horace (*Epistulae* 1.1.106), **sapiēns ūnō minor est Iove,** and the motto of the Jesuit order, **ad maiōrem glōriam Deī.** Now, **quid est tempestās? Pluitne? Estne frīgida? Nimbōsa?** Well, it really won't matter, if you remember this proverb: **sōl lūcet omnibus!** (Remember **lūcēre** from last chapter?) Birds of a feather flock together and, according to another old Latin proverb, **similis in similī gaudet.**

Here are some more from the irregular comparatives and superlatives you've just learned: **meliōrēs priōrēs,** freely, *the better have priority;* **maximā cum laude** and **summā cum laude** (what you should have on your next diploma, **sī es dīligēns in studiō Latīnae!**); **peior bellō est timor ipse bellī** (note the abl. of comparison); **ē plūribus ūnum,** motto of the United States, *one from several,* i.e., one union from many states; **prīmus inter parēs,** *first among equals;* **prīmā faciē,** *at first sight;* and, finally, **summum bonum,** *the highest good,* which can come from studying Latin, of course: **valē!**

28

Subjunctive Mood; Present Subjunctive; Jussive and Purpose Clauses

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

You will recall from Ch. 1 that "mood" (from Lat. **modus**) is the "manner" of expressing a verbal action or state of being. Thus far we have encountered verbs in two of the three Latin moods, the indicative and the imperative. As you know, an imperative (from **imperāre,** *to command*) emphatically commands someone to undertake an action that is not yet going on, while indicatives (from **indicāre,** *to point out*) "indicate" real actions, i.e., actions that have in fact occurred (or have definitely not occurred) in the past, that are occurring (or are definitely not occurring) in the present, or that fairly definitely will (or will not) occur in the future.

In contrast to the indicative, the mood of actuality and factuality, the subjunctive is in general (though not always) the mood of potential, tentative, hypothetical, ideal, or even unreal action. An example in English is, "If the other student were here, he would be taking notes"; in this conditional sentence, which imagines actions that are contrary to the actual facts, English employs the auxiliaries "were" and "would" to indicate that the action described is only ideal. Among the other auxiliaries used in English to describe potential or hypothetical actions are "may," "might," "should," "would," "may have," "would have," etc.

Latin employs the subjunctive much more frequently than English, in a wide variety of clause types, and it uses special subjunctive verb forms rather

than auxiliaries. There are two tasks involved in mastering the subjunctive: first, learning the new forms, which is a relatively simple matter; second, learning to recognize and translate the various subjunctive clause types, which is also quite easily done, if your approach is systematic.

SUBJUNCTIVE TENSES

There are only four tenses in the subjunctive mood. The present subjunctive is introduced in this chapter and has rules for formation that vary slightly for each of the four conjugations; rules for forming the imperfect (Ch. 29), perfect, and pluperfect (Ch. 30) are the same for all four conjugations, and even for irregular verbs.

SUBJUNCTIVE CLAUSES

In this and subsequent chapters you will be introduced to a series of subjunctive clause types: the jussive subjunctive and purpose clauses (Ch. 28), result clauses (29), indirect questions (30), **cum** clauses (31), proviso clauses (32), conditions (33, with three distinct subjunctive types), jussive noun clauses (36), relative clauses of characteristic (38), and fear clauses (40). You should catalog these clause types in your notebook or computer file and systematically learn three details for each: (1) its definition, (2) how to recognize it in a Latin sentence, and (3) how to translate it into English.

CONJUGATION OF THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

1. laúdem	móneam	ágam	aúdiam	cápiam
2. laúdēs	móneās	ágās	aúdiās	cápiās
3. laúdet	móneat	ágat	aúdiat	cápiat
1. laudḗmus	moneámus	agámus	audiámus	capiámus
2. laudḗtis	moneátis	agátis	audiátis	capiátis
3. laúdent	móneant	ágant	aúdiant	cápiant

Note that in the first conjugation the characteristic stem vowel changes from -ā- in the present indicative to -ē- in the present subjunctive. In the other conjugations -ā- is consistently the sign of the present subjunctive, but with variations in the handling of the actual stem vowel (shortened in the second, replaced in the third, altered to short -i- in the fourth/third -iō); the sentence "we fear a liar" will help you remember that the actual vowels preceding the personal endings are -ē-, -eā-, -ā-, and -iā- for the first, second, third, and fourth/third -iō conjugations, respectively.

Note that a subjunctive may be mistaken for an indicative, if you neglect to recognize a verb's conjugation (e.g., cp. **agat** with **amat**, and **amet** with **monet**), so remember your vocabulary.

The present passive subjunctive naturally follows the pattern of the active except that passive endings are used.

laúder, laudéris (and remember the alternate -re ending, Ch. 18), laudétur; laudémur, laudéminī, laudéntur
mónear, moneáris, moneátur; moneámur, moneáminī, moneántur
ágar, agáris, agátur; agámur, agáminī, agántur
aúdiar, audiáris, audiátur; audiámur, audiáminī, audiántur
cápiar, capiáris, capiátur; capiámur, capiáminī, capiántur

TRANSLATION

While *may* is sometimes used to translate the present subjunctive (e.g., in purpose clauses), the translation of all subjunctive tenses, in fact, varies with the type of clause, as you will see when each is introduced.

THE JUSSIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

As the term "subjunctive" (from **subiungere**, *to subjoin, subordinate*) suggests, the subjunctive was used chiefly in subordinate (or dependent) clauses. However, the subjunctive was also employed in certain types of main, or independent, clauses. The "jussive" subjunctive (from **iubēre**, *to order*) is among the most important of these independent uses, and the only one formally introduced in this book. As the term implies, the jussive expresses a command or exhortation, especially in the first or third person, singular or plural (the imperative is generally used for the second person); **nē** is employed for negative commands. The clause type is easily recognized, since the sentence's main verb (and often its only verb) is subjunctive; while *may* and *should* can sometimes be employed in translating the jussive subjunctive (particularly with the second person: **semper spērēs**, *you should always hope*), *let* is the English auxiliary most often used, followed by the subject noun or pronoun (in the objective case, i.e., *me, us, him, her, it, them*).

Cōgitem nunc dē hāc rē, et tum nōn errābō, *let me now think about this matter, and then I will not make a mistake.*

Discipulus discat aut discēdat, *let the student either learn or leave.*

Doceāmus magnā cum dēlectātiōne linguam Latīnam, *let us teach the Latin language with great delight.*

Nē id faciāmus, *let us not do this.*

Audeant illī virī et fēminae esse fortēs, *let those men and women dare to be brave.*

PURPOSE CLAUSES

A purpose clause is a subordinate clause indicating the purpose or objective of the action in the main clause; e.g., "we study Latin *so that we may learn more about ancient Rome*" or "we study Latin *to improve our English.*" As seen in this second example, English often employs an infinitive to express purpose, but that use of the infinitive is rare in Latin prose (though not unusual in verse). Instead Latin most commonly employed a subjunctive clause introduced by **ut** or, for a negative purpose, **nē**; the auxiliary *may* (as in the first English example above) is frequently used in translating the present tense in a purpose clause, but often we can translate with an infinitive (if the subject of the purpose clause is the same as that of the main clause). Study carefully the following Latin sentences and the several acceptable translations:

> Hoc dīcit **ut** eōs **iuvet.**
> *He says this to help them.*
> > *in order to help them.*
> > *that he may help them.*
> > *so that he may help them.*
> > *in order that he may help them.*

The first two translation options given above are more colloquial, the others more formal.

> Discēdit **nē** id **audiat.**
> *He leaves in order not to hear this.*
> > *so that he may not hear this.*
>
> Cum cūrā docet **ut** discipulī bene **discant.**
> *He teaches with care so (that) his students may learn well.*
>
> Hoc facit **nē capiātur.**
> *He does this in order not to be captured.*
>
> Librōs legimus **ut** multa **discāmus.**
> *We read books (in order) to learn many things.*
>
> Bonōs librōs nōbīs dent **nē** malōs **legāmus.**
> *Let them give us good books so that we may not read bad ones.*

You should have no difficulty recognizing a purpose clause: look for a subordinate clause, introduced by **ut** or **nē**, ending with a subjunctive verb, and answering the question "why?" or "for what purpose?"

VOCABULARY

> **árma, -órum,** n. pl., *arms, weapons* (armor, army, armament, armada, armature, armistice, armadillo, alarm, disarmament, gendarme)

cúrsus, -ūs, m., *running, race; course* (courser, cursor, cursory, cursive, concourse, discourse, recourse, precursor, excursion; cp. **currō**)

lúna, -ae, f., *moon* (lunar, lunacy, lunate, lunatic, lunation, interlunar)

occásiō, occāsiónis, f., *occasion, opportunity* (occasional; cp. **occidō,** Ch. 31)

párēns, paréntis, m./f., *parent* (parentage, parental, parenting; cp. **pariō, parere,** to give birth to)

stélla, -ae, f., *star; planet* (stellar, constellation, interstellar)

vésper, vésperis or **vésperī,** m., *evening; evening star* (vesper, vesperal, vespertine)

mórtuus, -a, -um, *dead* (mortuary; cp. **mors, mortālis, immortālis,** and, Ch. 34, **morior**)

prínceps, gen. **príncipis,** *chief, foremost;* m./f. noun, *leader, emperor* (prince, principal, principality; cp. **prīmus, prīncipium**)

ut, conj. + subj., *in order that, so that, that, in order to, so as to, to;* + indic., *as, when*

nē, adv. and conj. with subjunctives of command and purpose, *not; in order that . . . not, that . . . not, in order not to*

cédō, cédere, céssī, céssum, *to go, withdraw; yield to, grant, submit* (accede, access, accession, antecedent, ancestor, cede, concede, deceased, exceed, intercede, precede, proceed, recede, secede, succeed; cp. **discēdō**)

dédicō (1), *to dedicate* (dedication, dedicatory, rededication)

égeō, egére, éguī + abl. or gen., *to need, lack, want* (indigence, indigent; do not confuse with **ēgī,** from **agō**)

éxpleō, -plére, -plévī, -plétum, *to fill, fill up, complete* (expletive, expletory, deplete, replete; cp. **plēnus, pleō,** *to fill*)

praéstō, -stáre, -stitī, -stitum, *to excel; exhibit, show, offer, supply, furnish*

táceō, tacére, tácuī, tácitum, *to be silent, leave unmentioned* (tacit, taciturn, taciturnity, reticence, reticent)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Auctor sapiēns et dīligēns turpia vītet et bona probet.
2. Itaque prō patriā etiam maiōra meliōraque nunc faciāmus.
3. Nepōs tuus ā mēnsā discēdat nē ista verba acerba audiat.
4. Nē imperātor superbus crēdat sē esse fēlīciōrem quam virum humillimum.
5. Quisque petit quam fēlīcissimum et urbānissimum modum vītae.
6. Quīdam dēlectātiōnēs et beneficia aliīs praestant ut beneficia similia recipiant.
7. Multī medicī lūcem sōlis fuisse prīmum remedium putant.
8. Imperium ducī potentiōrī dabunt ut hostēs ācerrimōs āvertat.

9. Hīs verbīs trīstibus nūntiātīs, pars hostium duōs prīncipēs suōs relīquit.
10. Maiōrēs putābant deōs superōs habēre corpora hūmāna pulcherrima et fortissima.
11. Uxor pudīca eius haec decem ūtilissima tum probāvit.
12. Let him not think that those dissimilar laws are worse than the others (translate with and without **quam**).
13. They will send only twenty men to do this very easy thing in the forum.
14. They said: "Let us call the arrogant emperor a most illustrious man in order not to be expelled from the country."
15. Therefore, let them not order this very wise and very good woman to depart from the dinner.

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

1. Ratiō dūcat, nōn fortūna. (*Livy.)
2. Arma togae cēdant. (Cicero.—**toga, -ae,** the garment of peace and civil, in contrast to military, activity.)
3. Ex urbe nunc discēde nē metū et armīs opprimar. (Cicero.)
4. Nunc ūna rēs mihi prōtinus est facienda ut maximum ōtium et sōlācium habeam. (Terence.)
5. Rapiāmus, amīcī, occāsiōnem dē diē. (*Horace.)
6. Corpus enim somnō et multīs aliīs rēbus eget ut valeat; animus ipse sē alit. (Seneca.)
7. Quī beneficium dedit, taceat; nārret quī accēpit. (*Seneca.)
8. Dē mortuīs nihil nisi bonum dīcāmus. (Diogenes Laertius.)
9. Parēns ipse nec habeat vitia nec toleret. (Quintilian.)
10. In hāc rē ratiō habenda est ut monitiō acerbitāte careat. (Cicero.—**monitiō, -ōnis,** *admonition.*—**acerbitās, -tātis,** noun of **acerbus.**)
11. Fēminae ad lūdōs semper veniunt ut videant—et ut ipsae videantur. (Ovid.)
12. Arma virumque canō quī prīmus ā lītoribus Trōiae ad Italiam vēnit. (Virgil.—**canō, -ere,** *to sing about.*)

PLEASE REMOVE MY NAME FROM YOUR MAILING LIST!

Cūr nōn mitto meōs tibi, Pontiliāne, libellōs?
Nē mihi tū mittās, Pontiliāne, tuōs.

(*Martial 7.3; meter: elegiac couplet. Roman poets, just like American writers, would often exchange copies of their works with one another; but Pontilianus' poems are not Martial's cup of tea!—**mitto:** final -ō was often shortened in Latin verse.—**Pontiliānus, -ī.**—**Nē ... mittās,** not jussive, but purpose, following the implied statement, "I don't send mine to you. . . .")

TO HAVE FRIENDS ONE MUST BE FRIENDLY

Ut praestem Pyladēn, aliquis mihi praestet Orestēn.
Hoc nōn fit verbīs, Mārce; ut amēris, amā.

(*Martial 6.11.9–10; meter: elegiac couplet. Orestes and Pylades were a classic pair of very devoted friends; Martial cannot play the role of Pylades unless someone proves a real Orestes to him.—**Pyladēn** and **Orestēn** are Greek acc. sg. forms.—**fit**, *is accomplished.*)

*Pylades and Orestes Brought as Victims before Iphigenia
Benjamin West, 1766, Tate Gallery, London, Great Britain*

THE DAYS OF THE WEEK

Diēs dictī sunt ā deīs quōrum nōmina Rōmānī quibusdam stēllīs dēdicāvērunt. Primum enim diem ā Sōle appellāvērunt, quī prīnceps est omnium stēllārum ut īdem diēs est prae omnibus diēbus aliīs. Secundum diem ā Lūnā appellāvērunt, quae ex Sōle lūcem accēpit. Tertium ab stēllā Mārtis, quae vesper appellātur. Quārtum ab stēllā Mercuriī. Quīntum ab stēllā Iovis. Sextum ā Veneris stēllā, quam Lūciferum appellāvērunt, quae inter omnēs stēllās plūrimum lūcis habet. Septimum ab stēllā Sāturnī, quae dīcitur cursum suum trīgintā annīs explēre. Apud Hebraeōs autem diēs prīmus dīcitur ūnus diēs sabbatī, quī in linguā nostrā diēs dominicus est, quem pāgānī Sōlī dēdicāvērunt. Sabbatum autem septimus diēs ā dominicō est, quem pāgānī Sāturnō dēdicāvērunt.

(Isidore of Seville, *Orīginēs* 5.30, 7th cen.—**Mārs, Mārtis.—Mercurius, -ī.— Iuppiter, Iovis.—Venus, Veneris.—Lūciferus, -ī,** *Lucifer, light-bringer.*—**Sāturnus, -ī.—trīgintā,** *30.*—**Hebraeus, -ī,** *Hebrew.*—**sabbatum, -ī,** *the Sabbath;* **ūnus diēs sabbatī,** i.e., *the first day after the Sabbath.*—**dominicus, -a, -um,** *of the Lord, the Lord's.*—**pāgānus, -ī,** *rustic, peasant;* here, *pagan.*)

ETYMOLOGY

"Alarm" derives ultimately from It. **all'arme** (*to arms*), which stands for **ad illa arma.**

From **cessō** (1), an intensive form of **cēdō**: cease, cessation, incessant.

The -ā- which is consistently found in the present subjunctive of all conjugations except the first in Latin is similarly found in the present subjunctive of all conjugations except the first in both Italian and Spanish. And Spanish even has the characteristic -ē- of the Latin in the present subjunctive of the first conjugation.

In the readings   "Days of the Week": martial.—mercury, mercurial.—Jovian, by Jove! jovial.—Venusian, venereal, venery.—lucifer, luciferase, luciferin, luciferous.—Saturnian, Saturday, saturnine.—Dominic, Dominica, Dominican, dominical; cp. **dominus/domina.**—paganism, paganize.

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

Salvēte! Here are some nuggets from the new Vocab.: teachers and guardians can serve **in locō parentis; mortuī nōn mordent,** "dead men tell no tales" (lit., *the dead don't bite!*); **occāsiō fūrem facit,** *opportunity makes a thief;* those who know about Watergate will now recognize the etymology of the "expletives deleted" (four-letter words that "fill out" the sentences of vulgar and illiterate folk!); an **ēditiō prīnceps** is a *first edition;* **tacet,** a musical notation calling for a vocalist or instrumentalist to be silent; related to **cursus** is **curriculum,** *running, course, course of action,* hence a résumé provides your **curriculum vītae;** and the motto of New York University (**fīliō meō grātiās!**), a good one for Latin students, is **perstāre et praestāre,** *to persevere and to excel.*

Now let's focus on jussives: first off, I hope that all my students in Wyoming recognized **arma togae cēdant** as their state motto; another motto, with this new verb **cēdere** and an imperative rather than a jussive, is Virgil's **nē cēde malīs,** *yield not to evils;* Vegetius, an ancient military analyst, has advised us, **quī dēsīderat pācem, praeparet bellum;** and I'm certain all the *Star Wars* fans can decipher this: **sit vīs tēcum!**

Before bidding you farewell, friends, let me point out that the jussive subjunctive, common in the first and third person, is sometimes used in the second as well, in lieu of an imperative, and translated with *should* or *may;* an example is seen in this anonymous proverb, which makes the same point as the Pylades reading above: **ut amīcum habeās, sīs amīcus,** *in order to have a friend, you should be a friend.* By the way, I call first person plural jussives the "salad subjunctives" (remember VENI, VIDI, VEGI?) because they always contain "let us": GROAN!! On that punny note lettuce juss say goodbye: **amīcī amīcaeque meae, semper valeātis!**

29

Imperfect Subjunctive; Present and Imperfect Subjunctive of Sum and Possum; Result Clauses

THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

The imperfect subjunctive is perhaps the easiest of all the subjunctive tenses to recognize and form. For all verbs it is in effect simply the present active infinitive + the present system personal endings, active and passive, with the -ē- long (except, as usual, before final -m, -r, and -t, and both final and medial -nt/-nt-). Sample forms are given in the following paradigms; for complete conjugations, see the Appendix (p. 453–54).

1. laudáre-m	laudáre-r	ágerer	audírem	cáperem
2. laudárē-s	laudáré-ris	ageréris	audírēs	cáperēs
3. laudáre-t	laudáré-tur	agerétur	audíret	cáperet
1. laudārē-mus	laudārē-mur	agerémur	audírēmus	caperémus
2. laudārē-tis	laudārē-minī	ageréminī	audírētis	caperétis
3. laudáre-nt	laudāré-ntur	ageréntur	audírent	cáperent

PRESENT AND IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE OF Sum AND Possum

The present subjunctives of **sum** and **possum** are irregular (though they do follow a consistent pattern) and must be memorized. The imperfect subjunctives, however, follow the rule given above.

Present Subjunctive		Imperfect Subjunctive	
1. sim	póssim	éssem	póssem
2. sīs	póssīs	éssēs	póssēs
3. sit	póssit	ésset	pósset
1. símus	possímus	essémus	possémus
2. sítis	possítis	essétis	possétis
3. sint	póssint	éssent	póssent

Particular care should be taken to distinguish between the forms of the present and the imperfect subjunctive of **possum.**

USE AND TRANSLATION OF THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

The imperfect subjunctive is used in a variety of clause types, including purpose and result clauses, when the main verb is a past tense. As for all subjunctives, the translation depends upon the type of clause, but auxiliaries sometimes used with the imperfect include *were, would,* and, in purpose clauses, *might* (vs. *may* for the present tense). Study these sample sentences containing purpose clauses:

Hoc dīcit **ut** eōs **iuvet.**
He says this (in order) to help them.
  so that he may help them.

Hoc dīxit (dīcēbat) **ut** eōs **iuvāret.**
He said (kept saying) this (in order) to help them.
  so that he might help them.

Hoc facit **nē** urbs **capiātur.**
He does this so that the city may not be captured.

Hoc fēcit (faciēbat) **nē** urbs **caperētur.**
He did (was doing) this so that the city might not be captured.

Remember that in order to master the subjunctive (notice the purpose clause?!) you must 1) learn a definition for each clause type, 2) know how to recognize each, and 3) know the proper translation for the subjunctive verb in each type. Keep these three points in mind—*definition, recognition,*

translation—as you proceed to the following discussion of result clauses and to the subsequent chapters in this book.

RESULT CLAUSES

A result clause is a subordinate clause that shows the result of the action in the main clause; the purpose clause answers the question "*why* is (was) it being done?", while the result clause answers the question "what is (was) the *outcome?*" Examples in English are: "it is raining so hard *that the streets are flooding*" and "she studied Latin so diligently *that she knew it like a Roman.*" Notice that English introduces such clauses with "that" and uses the indicative mood, generally with *no auxiliary* (i.e., neither *may* nor *might*).

Latin result clauses begin with **ut** and contain (usually at the end) a subjunctive verb. The result clause can be easily recognized, and distinguished from a purpose clause, by the sense and context and also by the fact that the main clause usually contains an adverb (**ita, tam, sīc,** *so*) or adjective (**tantus,** *so much, so great*) indicating degree and signaling that a result clause is to follow. Moreover, if the clause describes a negative result, it will contain some negative word such as **nōn, nihil, nēmō, numquam** or **nūllus** (vs. a negative purpose clause, which is introduced by **nē**). Analyze carefully the following examples, and note that in the result clauses (vs. the purpose clauses) the subjunctive verb is regularly translated *as an indicative,* without an auxiliary (*may* or *might* are used only in those instances where a potential or ideal result, rather than an actual result, is being described):

> **Tanta fēcit ut urbem servāret,** *he did such great things that he saved the city.* (Result)
>
> Haec fēcit **ut** urbem servāret, *he did these things that he might save the city.* (Purpose)
>
> **Tam** strēnuē labōrat **ut** multa **perficiat,** *he works so energetically that he accomplishes many things.* (Result)
>
> Strēnuē labōrat **ut** multa **perficiat,** *he works energetically so that he may accomplish many things.* (Purpose)
>
> Hoc **tantā** benevolentiā dīxit **ut** eōs **nōn offenderet,** *he said this with such great kindness that he did not offend them.* (Result)
>
> Hoc magnā benevolentiā dīxit **nē** eōs **offenderet,** *he said this with great kindness in order that he might not offend them.* (Purpose)
>
> Saltus erat angustus, **ut** paucī Graecī multōs mīlitēs prohibēre **possent,** *the pass was narrow, so that a few Greeks were able to stop many soldiers.* (Result)

In this last example you will notice that there is no "signal word" such as **ita** or **tam** in the main clause, but it is clear from the context that the **ut** clause indicates the *result* of the pass's narrowness (the pass was clearly not designed by nature with the purpose of obstructing Persians, but it was so narrow that the Persians were in fact obstructed by it).

VOCABULARY

fátum, -ĭ, n., *fate; death* (fatal, fatalism, fatality, fateful, fairy; cp. **fắbula, fắma,** and **for,** Ch. 40)

ingénium, -ĭĭ, n., *nature, innate talent* (ingenuity, genius, genial, congenial; cp. **genus, gens, gignŏ,** *to create, give birth to*)

moénia, moénĭum, n. pl., *walls of a city* (munitions, ammunition; cp. **mūniŏ,** *to fortify*)

náta, -ae, f., *daughter* (prenatal, postnatal, Natalie; cp. **nắtūra, nắtālis,** *of birth, natal,* **nắscor,** Ch. 34)

ósculum, -ĭ, n., *kiss* (osculate, osculation, osculant, oscular, osculatory)

sídus, sídĕris, n., *constellation, star* (sidereal, consider, desire)

dígnus, -a, -um + abl., *worthy, worthy of* (dignify, dignity from **dignitắs,** Ch. 38, indignation from **indignắtiŏ,** deign, disdain, dainty)

dūrus, -a, -um, *hard, harsh, rough, stern, unfeeling, hardy, difficult* (dour, durable, duration, during, duress, endure, obdurate)

tántus, -a, -um, *so large, so great, of such a size* (tantamount)

dénique, adv., *at last, finally, lastly*

ita, adv. used with adjs., vbs., and advs., *so, thus*

quídem, postpositive adv., *indeed, certainly, at least, even;* **nĕ . . . quídem,** *not . . . even*

sĭc, adv. most commonly with verbs, *so, thus* (sic)

tam, adv. with adjs. and advs., *so, to such a degree;* **tam . . . quam,** *so . . . as;* **tamquam,** *as it were, as if, so to speak*

vérŏ, adv., *in truth, indeed, to be sure, however* (very, verily, etc.; cp. **vĕrus, vēritās**)

cóndŏ, -dere, -didĭ, -ditum, *to put together* or *into, store; found, establish* (= **con-** + **dŏ, dare;** condiment, abscond, recondite, sconce)

conténdŏ, -téndere, -téndĭ, -téntum, *to strive, struggle, contend; hasten* (contender, contentious; cp. **tendŏ,** *to stretch, extend*)

móllĭŏ, mollíre, mollívĭ, mollítum, *to soften; make calm* or *less hostile* (mollescent, mollify, mollusk, emollient; cp. **mollis,** *soft, mild*)

púgnŏ (1), *to fight* (pugnacious, impugn, pugilist, pugilism; cp. **oppugnŏ,** Ch. 39)

respóndeŏ, -spondére, -spóndĭ, -spónsum, *to answer* (respond, response, responsive, responsibility, correspond)

súrgŏ, súrgere, surréxĭ, surréctum, *to get up, arise* (surge, resurgent, resurrection, insurgent, insurrection, source, resource)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Prīnceps arma meliōra in manibus mīlitum posuit, ut hostēs terrērent.
2. Hostēs quidem negāvērunt sē arma dissimilia habēre.
3. Pars mīlitum lūcem diēī vītāvit nē hīc vidērentur.
4. Sōlem prīmam lūcem caelī superī, lūnam prīmam lūcem vesperī, et stēllās oculōs noctis appellābant.
5. Illī adulēscentēs sapientiae dēnique cēdant ut fēlīciōrēs hīs sint.
6. Sapientēs putant beneficia esse potentiōra quam verba acerba et turpia.
7. Quīdam magister verba tam dūra discipulīs dīxit ut discēderent.
8. Respondērunt auctōrem hōrum novem remediōrum esse medicam potentissimam.
9. Nihil vērō tam facile est ut sine labōre id facere possīmus.
10. Prō labōre studiōque patria nostra nōbīs plūrimās occāsiōnēs bonās praestat.
11. Parentēs plūrima ōscula dedērunt nātae gracilī, in quā maximam dēlectātiōnem semper inveniēbant.
12. The words of the philosopher were very difficult, so that those listening were unable to learn them.
13. The two women wished to understand these things so that they might not live base lives.
14. Those four wives were so pleasant that they received very many kindnesses.
15. He said that the writer's third poem was so beautiful that it delighted the minds of thousands of citizens.

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

1. Omnia vincit Amor; et nōs cēdāmus Amōrī. (Virgil.)
2. Urbem clārissimam condidī; mea moenia vīdī; explēvī cursum quem Fāta dederant. (Virgil.)
3. Ita dūrus erās ut neque amōre neque precibus mollīrī possēs. (Terence.—**prex, precis**, f., *prayer.*)
4. Nēmō quidem tam ferōx est ut nōn mollīrī possit, cultūrā datā. (Horace.—**cultūra, -ae.**)
5. Difficile est saturam nōn scrībere; nam quis est tam patiēns malae urbis ut sē teneat? (Juvenal.—**patiēns**, gen. **patientis**, *tolerant of.*)
6. Fuit quondam in hāc rē pūblicā tanta virtūs ut virī fortēs cīvem perniciōsum ācriōribus poenīs quam acerbissimum hostem reprimerent. (Cicero.—**perniciōsus, -a, -um**, *pernicious.*—**re-primō**, cp. **opprimō.**)
7. Ita praeclāra est recuperātiō lībertātis ut nē mors quidem in hāc rē sit fugienda. (Cicero.—**recuperātiō, -ōnis**, *recovery.*)

8. Nē ratiōnēs meōrum perīculōrum ūtilitātem reī pūblicae vincant. (Cicero.—**ūtilitās, -tātis,** *advantage;* cp. **ūtilis.**)

9. Eō tempore Athēniēnsēs tantam virtūtem praestitērunt ut decemplicem numerum hostium superārent, et hōs sīc perterruērunt ut in Asiam refugerent. (Nepos.—**Athēniēnsēs, -ium,** *Athenians.*—**decemplex, -icis,** *tenfold.*—**per-terreō.**)

10. Ōrātor exemplum dignum petat ab Dēmosthene illō, in quō tantum studium tantusque labor fuisse dīcuntur ut impedīmenta nātūrae dīligentiā industriāque superāret. (Cicero.—**exemplum, -ī,** *example.*—**Dēmosthenēs, -thenis,** a famous Greek orator.—**impedīmentum, -ī.**—**dīligentia, -ae.**—**industria, -ae.**)

Demosthenes
Vatican Museums, Vatican State

11. Praecepta tua sint brevia ut cito mentēs discipulōrum ea discant teneantque memoriā fidēlī. (Horace.—**praeceptum, -ī,** *precept.*)

12. Nihil tam difficile est ut nōn possit studiō invēstīgārī. (Terence.—**invēstīgāre,** *to track down, investigate.*)

13. Bellum autem ita suscipiātur ut nihil nisi pāx quaesīta esse videātur. (Cicero.)

14. Tanta est vīs probitātis ut eam etiam in hoste dīligāmus. (Cicero.)

HOW MANY KISSES ARE ENOUGH?

Quaeris, Lesbia, quot bāsia tua sint mihi satis? Tam multa bāsia quam magnus numerus Libyssae harēnae aut quam sīdera multa quae, ubi tacet nox, furtīvōs amōrēs hominum vident—tam bāsia multa (nēmō numerum scīre potest) sunt satis Catullō īnsānō!

(Catullus 7; prose adaptation.—**quot ... sint,** *how many ... are* (an indirect question; see Ch. 30)—**Libyssae,** *Libyan, African.*—**harēna, -ae,** *sand,* here = *the grains of sand.*—**furtīvus, -a, -um,** *stolen, secret.*—**īnsānus, -a, -um.**)

THE NERVOUSNESS OF EVEN A GREAT ORATOR

Ego dehinc ut respondērem surrēxī. Quā sollicitūdine animī surgēbam—dī immortālēs—et quō timōre! Semper quidem magnō cum metū incipiō dīcere. Quotiēnscumque dīcō, mihi videor in iūdicium venīre nōn sōlum ingeniī sed etiam virtūtis atque officiī. Tum vērō ita sum perturbātus ut omnia timērem. Dēnique mē collēgī et sīc pugnāvī, sīc omnī ratiōne contendī ut nēmō mē neglēxisse illam causam putāret.

(Cicero, *Prō Cluentiō* 51.—**sollicitūdō, -dinis**, f., *anxiety.* —**quotiēnscumque**, adv., *whenever.* —The genitives **ingeniī, virtūtis**, and **officiī** all modify **iūdicium.**—**perturbāre**, *to disturb, confuse.* —**colligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum,** *to gather, collect, control.*)

YOU'RE ALL JUST WONDERFUL!

Nē laudet dignōs, laudat Callistratus omnēs:
   cui malus est nēmō, quis bonus esse potest?

(*Martial 12.80; meter: elegiac couplet.—**dignōs,** i.e., *only the deserving.* —**Callistratus,** a Greek name, meant to suggest perhaps a former slave.—**quis ... potest,** supply **eī,** antecedent of **cui,** *to a man to whom.*)

ETYMOLOGY

The adverbial ending **-mente** or **-ment** which is so characteristic of Romance languages derives from Lat. **mente** (abl. of **mēns**) used originally as an abl. of manner but now reduced to an adverbial suffix. The following examples are based on Latin adjectives which have already appeared in the vocabularies.

Latin Words	It. Adverb	Sp. Adverb	Fr. Adverb
dūrā mente	duramente	duramente	durement
clārā mente	chiaramente	claramente	clairement
sōlā mente	solamente	solamente	seulement
certā mente	certamente	certamente	certainement
dulcī mente	dolcemente	dulcemente	doucement
brevī mente	brevemente	brevemente	brèvement
facilī mente	facilmente	fácilmente	facilement

Lat. **sīc** is the parent of It. **sì,** Sp. **sí,** and Fr. **si** meaning *yes.*

In the readings   3. precatory, precarious, pray, prayer. 5. patient. 10. exemplar, exemplary, exemplify. 12. vestige, vestigial. "Nervousness": solicitous, solicitude.—perturbation.—collection. "Kisses": arena.—furtive.—insanity.

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

Salvē! Long-time *Tonight Show* fans will know why I call result clauses "Johnny Carson clauses": during his monologue, Johnny began many an

anecdote with the likes of "I saw this fellow the other night who was *so funny* . . . ". Ed McMahon (or some bloke from the audience) then chimes in, "*How* funny *was* he, Johnny?" and Johnny replies, always with a result clause, "Why, he was *so* funny *that . . . !*"

Sunt multae dēlectātiōnēs in novō vocābulāriō nostrō: e.g., there's Virginia's state motto, **sīc semper tyrannīs,** *thus always to tyrants* (death, i.e.!); and **ingenium,** which really means *something inborn,* like a Roman man's **genius** (his inborn guardian spirit, counterpart to the woman's **iūnō,** magnified and deified in the goddess Juno); the connection of **moenia** and **mūnīre** reminds us that fortification walls were the ancients' best munitions, and there's the old proverb **praemonitus, praemūnītus,** *forewarned (is) forearmed;* **sīc** is an editor's annotation, meaning *thus (it was written),* and used to identify an error or peculiarity in a text being quoted.

And here's a brief "kissertation" on the nicest word in this new list: **ōsculum** was the native word for *kiss* (vs. **bāsium,** which the poet Catullus seems to have introduced into the language from the north); it is actually the diminutive of **ōs, ōris** (Ch. 14) and so means literally *little mouth* (which perhaps proves the Romans "puckered up" when they smooched!). Catullus, by the way, loved to invent words, and one was **bāsiātiō,** *kissification* or *smooch-making* ("smooch," by the way, is not Latinate, alas, but Germanic and related to "smack," as in "to smack one's lips," which one might do before enjoying either a kiss or a slice of toast with "Smucker's"!). **Rīdēte et valēte!**

Reconstruction of the Roman Forum, Soprintendenza alle Antichita, Rome, Italy

30

Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive; Indirect Questions; Sequence of Tenses

PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

Perfect system subjunctives, like perfect system indicatives, all follow the same basic rules of formation, regardless of the conjugation to which they belong. For the perfect subjunctive active, add -erī- + the personal endings to the perfect stem (shortening the -i- before -m, -t, and -nt); for the pluperfect active, add -issē- + the personal endings to the perfect stem (shortening the -e- before -m, etc.). For the passives, substitute the subjunctives **sim** and **essem** for the equivalent indicatives **sum** and **eram.**

The forms of **laudō** are shown below; those for the other model verbs (which follow the very same pattern) are provided in the Appendix.

PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE

Sg.   laudáv-erim, laudáverīs, laudáverit
Pl.   laudāverímus, laudāverítis, laudáverint

Note that these forms are identical to those of the future perfect indicative except for the first person singular and the long -ī- in certain of the subjunctive forms; the identical forms can be distinguished as indicative or subjunctive by sentence context.

PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE

Sg. laudāv-íssem, laudāvíssēs, laudāvísset
Pl. laudāvissḗmus, laudāvissḗtis, laudāvíssent

Note that these forms resemble the perfect active infinitive, **laudāvísse,** + the endings (with the -ē- long except before -m, etc.; cp. the imperfect subjunctive, which resembles the present active infinitive + endings).

PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE

Sg. laudā́tus, -a, -um sim, laudā́tus sīs, laudā́tus sit
Pl. laudā́tī, -ae, -a símus, laudā́tī sítis, laudā́tī sint

PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE

Sg. laudā́tus, -a, -um éssem, laudā́tus éssēs, laudā́tus ésset
Pl. laudā́tī, -ae, -a essḗmus, laudā́tī essḗtis, laudā́tī éssent

TRANSLATION AND USAGE

As with the present and imperfect subjunctives, the perfect and pluperfect are employed in a variety of clauses (in accordance with the sequence of tenses discussed below) and with a variety of translations. Just as *may* and *might/would* are *sometimes* used in translating the present and imperfect, respectively, so *may have* and *might have/would have* are *sometimes* employed with the perfect and pluperfect; likewise, they are often translated as simple indicatives: the best procedure is to learn the rules for translation of each clause type.

SYNOPSIS

You have now learned to conjugate a verb fully in all of its finite forms; following is a complete third person singular synopsis of **agō, agere, ḗgī, áctum** (cp. Ch. 21):

Indicative Mood

	Pres.	Fut.	Impf.	Perf.	Fut.Perf.	Plupf.
Act.	ágit	áget	agḗbat	ḗgit	ḗgerit	ḗgerat
Pass.	ágitur	agḗtur	agēbátur	áctus est	áctus érit	áctus érat

Subjunctive Mood

	Pres.	Fut.	Impf.	Perf.	Fut.Perf.	Plupf.
Act.	ágat	———	ágeret	ḗgerit	———	ḗgisset
Pass.	agátur	———	agerḗtur	áctus sit	———	áctus ésset

INDIRECT QUESTIONS

An indirect question is a subordinate clause which reports some question indirectly, i.e., not via a direct quotation (e.g., "they asked what Gaius was doing" vs. "they asked, 'What is Gaius doing?'"); as such, it is comparable in conception to an indirect statement, which reports indirectly, not a question, but some affirmative statement (see Ch. 25). The indirect question, however, uses a subjunctive verb (not an infinitive) and is easily distinguished from other subjunctive clause types since it is introduced by some interrogative word such as **quis/quid, quī/quae/quod** (i.e., the interrogative adjective), **quam, quandō, cūr, ubi, unde, uter, utrum . . . an** (*whether . . . or*), **-ne** (attached to the clause's first word, = *whether*), etc.; moreover, the verb in the main clause is ordinarily a verb of speech, mental activity, or sense perception (including many of the same verbs that introduce indirect statements: see the list in Ch. 25).

The subjunctive verb in an indirect question is usually translated as though it were an indicative in the same tense (i.e., *without* any auxiliary such as *may* or *might*). Compare the first three examples below, which are direct questions, with the next three, which contain indirect questions:

Quid Gāius facit?	*What is Gaius doing?*
Quid Gāius fēcit?	*What did Gaius do?*
Quid Gāius faciet?	*What will Gaius do?*
Rogant quid Gāius faciat.	*They ask what Gaius is doing.*
Rogant quid Gāius fēcerit.	*They ask what Gaius did.*
Rogant quid Gāius factūrus sit.	*They ask what Gaius will do* (lit., *is about to do*).

Factūrus sit in this last example is a form sometimes called the "future active periphrastic"; in the absence of an actual future subjunctive, this combination of a form of **sum** + the future active participle (cp. the passive periphrastic, consisting of **sum** + the future passive participle, in Ch. 24) was occasionally employed in order to indicate future time unambiguously in certain types of clauses (including the indirect question). In this last example, if the main verb were a past tense, then (in accordance with the rules for sequence of tenses) the sentence would be **rogāvērunt quid Gāius factūrus esset,** *they asked what Gaius would do (was about to do, was going to do).*

SEQUENCE OF TENSES

As in English, so also in Latin, there is a logical sequence of tenses as the speaker or writer proceeds from a main clause to a subordinate clause.

The rule in Latin is simple: a "primary" tense of the indicative must be followed by a primary tense of the subjunctive, and a "historical" (or "secondary") indicative tense must be followed by a historical subjunctive tense, as illustrated in the following chart.

It may be helpful to note at this point that the so-called primary tenses of the indicative, the present and future, both indicate *incomplete* actions (i.e., actions now going on, in the present, or only to be begun in the future), while the historical tenses, as the term implies, refer to past actions.

Group	Main Verb	Subordinate Subjunctive
Primary	Pres. or Fut.	{ Present (= action *at same time* or *after*) Perfect (= action *before*)
Historical	Past Tenses	{ Imperfect (= action *at same time* or *after*) Pluperfect (= action *before*)

After a primary main verb the *present* subjunctive indicates action occurring *at the same time* as that of the main verb or *after* that of the main verb. The *perfect* subjunctive indicates action which occurred *before* that of the main verb.

Similarly after a historical main verb the *imperfect* subjunctive indicates action occurring *at the same time* as that of the main verb or *after* that of the main verb. The *pluperfect* subjunctive indicates action which occurred *before* that of the main verb.[1]

These rules for the sequence of tenses operate in purpose clauses, result clauses, indirect questions, and similar constructions to be introduced in subsequent chapters; analyze carefully the sequencing in each of the following examples:

Id facit (faciet) ut mē iuvet, *he does (will do) it to help me.*
Id fēcit (faciēbat) ut mē iuvāret, *he did (kept doing) it to help me.*

Tam dūrus est ut eum vītem, *he is so harsh that I avoid him.*
Tam dūrus fuit (erat) ut eum vītārem, *he was so harsh that I avoided him.*

Rogant, rogābunt—*They ask, will ask*
    quid faciat, *what he is doing.*

---

[1] There are two common and quite logical exceptions to the rules for sequence of tenses: a historical present main verb (i.e., a present tense used for the vivid narration of past events) will often take a historical sequence subjunctive, and a perfect tense main verb, when focussing on the present consequences of the past action, may be followed by a primary sequence subjunctive (see P.R. 8 below). Note, too, that since purpose and result clauses logically describe actions that *follow* (actually or potentially) the actions of the main verb, they do not ordinarily contain perfect or pluperfect tense verbs, which indicate *prior* action (though the perfect subjunctive was sometimes used as a *historical* tense in a result clause).

quid fēcerit, *what he did.*

quid factūrus sit, *what he will do.*

Rogāvērunt, rogābant—*They asked, kept asking*

quid faceret, *what he was doing.*

quid fēcisset, *what he had done.*

quid factūrus esset, *what he would do.*

VOCABULARY

hónor, honóris, m., *honor; esteem; public office* (honorable, honorary, honorific, dishonor, honest)

céterī, -ae, -a, pl., *the remaining, the rest, the other, all the others;* cp. **alius,** *another, other* (etc. = et cetera)

quántus, -a, -um, *how large, how great, how much* (quantify, quantity, quantitative, quantum; cp. **tantus**); **tántus . . . quántus,** *just as much (many) . . . as*

rīdículus, -a, -um, *laughable, ridiculous* (ridicule, etc.; cp. **rīdeō, subrīdeō,** Ch. 35)

vívus, -a, -um, *alive, living* (vivid, vivify, convivial; cp. **vīvō, vīta**)

fúrtim, adv., *stealthily, secretly* (furtively, ferret; cp. **fūrtīvus, -a, -um,** *secret, furtive;* **fūr, fūris,** m./f., *thief*)

mox, adv., *soon*

prímō, adv., *at first, at the beginning* (cp. **prīmus, -a, -um**)

repénte, adv., *suddenly*

únde, adv., *whence, from what* or *which place, from which, from whom*

útrum . . . an, conj., *whether . . . or*

bíbō, bíbere, bíbī, *to drink* (bib, bibulous, imbibe, wine-bibber, beverage)

cognóscō, -nóscere, -nóvī, -nitum, *to become acquainted with, learn, recognize;* in perfect tenses, *know* (cognizance, cognizant, cognition, connoisseur, incognito, reconnaissance, reconnoiter; cp. **nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtum,** noble, notice, notify, notion, notorious, and **recognōscō,** Ch. 38)

comprehéndō, -héndere, -héndī, -hénsum, *to grasp, seize, arrest; comprehend, understand* (comprehensive, comprehensible, incomprehensible)

cōnsúmō, -súmere, -súmpsī, -súmptum, *to consume, use up* (consumer, consumption, assume, assumption, presume, presumable, presumption, presumptive, presumptuous, resume, resumption; cp. **sūmō,** *to take*)

dúbitō (1), *to doubt, hesitate* (dubious, dubitable, dubitative, doubtful, doubtless, indubitable, undoubtedly)

expónō, -pónere, -pósuī, -pósitum, *to set forth, explain, expose* (exponent, exposition, expository, expound)

mínuō, minúere, minúī, minútum, *to lessen, diminish* (cp. **minor, minus,**

minimus; diminish, diminuendo, diminution, diminutive, minuet, minute, minutiae, menu, mince)

rógó (1), *to ask* (interrogate, abrogate, arrogant, derogatory, prerogative, surrogate)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Rogávit ubi illae duae discipulae dignae haec didicissent.
2. Vidébit quanta fuerit vís illórum verbórum félícium.
3. Hás ínsidiás repente exposuit né rés pública opprimerétur.
4. Hí taceant et trés céterí expellantur né occásiónem similem habeant.
5. Ita dúrus erat ut beneficia uxóris comprehendere nón posset.
6. Céterí quidem nesciébant quam ácris esset méns nátae eórum.
7. Dénique prínceps cognóscet cúr potentior pars mílitum nós vítet.
8. Iam cognóví cúr clára facta véró nón sint facillima.
9. Quídam auctórés appellábant arma optimum remedium malórum.
10. Mortuís haec arma mox dédicémus né honóre egeant.
11. Fátó duce, Rómulus Remusque Rómam condidérunt; et, Remó necátó, moenia urbis novae cito surréxérunt.
12. Tell me in what lands liberty is found.
13. We did not know where the sword had finally been put.
14. He does not understand the first words of the little book which they wrote about the constellations.
15. They asked why you could not learn what the rest had done.
16. Let all men now seek better things than money or supreme power so that their souls may be happier.

SENTENTIAE ANTÍQUAE

1. Nunc vidétis quantum scelus contrá rem públicam et léyés nostrás vóbís prónúntiátum sit. (Cicero.)
2. Quam dulcis sit líbertás vóbís prótinus dícam. (Phaedrus.)
3. Rogábat dénique cúr umquam ex urbe cessissent. (Horace.)
4. Nunc sció quid sit amor. (*Virgil.)
5. Videámus uter híc in medió foró plús scríbere possit. (Horace.)
6. Multí dubitábant quid optimum esset. (*Cicero.)
7. Incipiam expónere unde nátúra omnés rés creet alatque. (Lucretius.)
8. Dulce est vidére quibus malís ipse careás. (Lucretius.)
9. Auctórem Tróiání bellí relégí, quí dícit quid sit pulchrum, quid turpe, quid útile, quid nón. (Horace.—**Tróiánus, -a, -um,** *Trojan.*)
10. Doctós rogábis quá ratióne bene agere cursum vítae possís, utrum virtútem doctrína paret an nátúra ingeniumque dent, quid minuat cúrás, quid té amícum tibi faciat. (Horace.—**doctrína, -ae,** *teaching.*)
11. Istí autem rogant tantum quid habeás, nón cúr et unde. (Seneca.)

12. Errat, quī fīnem vēsānī quaerit amōris: vērus amor nūllum nōvit habēre modum. (*Propertius.—**vēsānus, -a, -um,** *insane.*)

13. Sed tempus est iam mē discēdere ut cicūtam bibam, et vōs discēdere ut vītam agātis. Utrum autem sit melius, dī immortālēs sciunt; hominem quidem nēminem scīre crēdō. (Cicero.—Socrates' parting words to the jury which had condemned him to death.—**cicūta, -ae,** *hemlock.*—**nēmō homō,** *no human being.*)

The Death of Socrates, Charles Alphonse Dufresnoy, 17th century
Galleria Palatina, Palazzo Pitti, Florence, Italy

EVIDENCE AND CONFESSION

Sit dēnique scrīptum in fronte ūnīus cuiusque quid dē rē pūblicā sentiat; nam rem pūblicam labōribus cōnsiliīsque meīs ex igne atque ferrō ēreptam esse vidētis. Haec iam expōnam breviter ut scīre possītis quā ratiōne comprehēnsa sint. Semper prōvīdī quō modō in tantīs īnsidiīs salvī esse possēmus. Omnēs diēs cōnsūmpsī ut vidērem quid coniūrātī āctūrī essent. Dēnique litterās intercipere potuī quae ad Catilīnam ā Lentulō aliīsque coniūrātīs missae erant. Tum, coniūrātīs comprehēnsīs et senātū convocātō, contendī in senātum, ostendī litterās Lentulō, quaesīvī cognōsceretne signum. Dīxit sē cognōscere; sed prīmō dubitāvit et negāvit sē dē hīs rēbus respōnsūrum esse. Mox autem ostendit quanta esset vīs cōnscientiae; nam repente mollītus est

atque omnem rem nārrāvit. Tum cēterī coniūrātī sīc fūrtim inter sē aspiciē-
bant ut nōn ab aliīs indicārī sed indicāre sē ipsī vidērentur.

(Cicero, excerpts from the first and third Catilinarian orations—Cicero finally
succeeded in forcing Catiline to leave Rome, but his henchmen remained and
Cicero still lacked the tangible evidence he needed to convict them in court; in
this passage he shows how he finally obtained not only that evidence but even a
confession. See the readings in Chs. 11 and 14, "Cicero Urges Catiline's Depar-
ture" in Ch. 20, and the continuation, "Testimony Against the Conspirators,"
in Ch. 36.—**frōns, frontis,** f., *brow, face.*—**breviter,** adv. of **brevis.**—**prō-videō,** *to
fore-see, give attention to.*—**intercipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.**—**cōnscientia, -ae,**
conscience.—**inter sē aspiciō, -ere,** *to glance at each other.*—**indicāre,** *to accuse.*)

A COVERED DISH DINNER!

    Mēnsās, Ōle, bonās pōnis, sed pōnis opertās.
      Rīdiculum est: possum sīc ego habēre bonās.

(*Martial 10.54; meter: elegiac couplet.—Olus, another of Martial's
"friends."—**opertus, -a, -um,** *concealed, covered.*—**ego,** i.e., even a poor fellow
like me.)
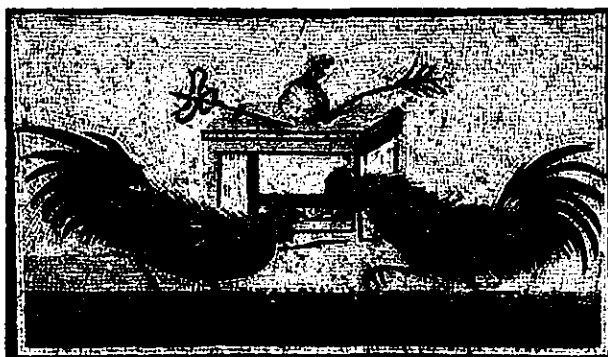
Cocks fighting in front of a mensa
Mosaic from Pompeii, detail
Museo Archeologico Nazionale, Naples, Italy

A LEGACY-HUNTER'S WISH

    Nīl mihi dās vīvus; dīcis post fāta datūrum:
      sī nōn es stultus, scīs, Maro, quid cupiam!

(*Martial 11.67; meter: elegiac couplet.—**nīl** = **nihil.**—**fāta,** poetic pl. for sg. =
mortem.—**datūrum** = **tē datūrum esse.**—Maro, another of Martial's fictitious
[?] addressees.)

NOTE ON A COPY OF CATULLUS' CARMINA

    Tantum magna suō dēbet Vērōna Catullō
    quantum parva suō Mantua Vergiliō.

(*Martial 14.195; meter: elegiac couplet. Verona and Mantua were the birth-places of Catullus and Virgil respectively; see the Introd.—Note the interlocked word order within each verse and the neatly parallel structure between the two verses.)

ETYMOLOGY

The "dubitative" (or "deliberative") subjunctive is another of the independent subjunctives. On the basis of **dubitō** you should have a good sense of the idea conveyed by this subjunctive; e.g., **quid faciat?** *what is he to do* (*I wonder*)?

Further derivatives from the basic **prehendō,** *seize,* are: apprehend, apprentice, apprise, imprison, prehensile, prison, prize, reprehend, reprisal, surprise.

In the readings   "Evidence": front, frontal, affront, confront, effrontery, frontier, frontispiece.—provide, providence, provision, improvident, improvise, improvisation.—interception.—conscientious, conscious, inconscionable.—aspect.

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

Salvēte, amīcī! This chapter's **vocābulārium novum** brings a veritable **cēna verbōrum** for your **mēnsa Latīna;** let's start with the main course: the **cursus honōrum,** a familiar phrase in Eng., was the traditional course of political office-holding in Rome; ordinarily one served first as **quaestor** (a treasury official), then as **praetor** (judge), and only later as **cōnsul.** The consulship was something like our presidency, but the term was one year, and there were two consuls, each with veto power over the other (Cicero, as you recall, was one of the consuls in 63 B.C., when he uncovered the Catilinarian conspiracy).

Now for the **mēnsa secunda,** Lat. for *dessert:* first, an old proverb that will serve you near as well as **carpe diem: occāsiōnem cognōsce!** And here's another that may save you from temptation to even the slightest of crimes: **nēmō repente fuit turpissimus,** *no one was ever suddenly most vicious* (Juvenal 2.83: the satirist meant that even the worst criminals attained that status through the gradual accumulation of guilty acts). An honorary degree is granted **honōris causā; honōrēs mūtant mōrēs** is an ancient truism; from **cēterī,** besides **et cētera/etc.,** is **cētera dēsunt,** *the rest is lacking,* an editorial notation for missing sections of a text; from **quantus** comes a large quantity of phrases, one of which should be sufficient here, **quantum satis,** *as much as suffices* (if you are not satisfied, see Chs. 32 and 35; and when day is done you can shout **mox nox, in rem,** *soon ('twill be) night, (let's get down) to business.* **Valēte!**

31

Cum Clauses; Ferō

Cum CLAUSES

You are already quite familiar with the use of **cum** as a preposition. **Cum** can also serve as a conjunction, meaning *when, since,* or *although* and introducing a subordinate clause.

Sometimes the verb in a **cum** clause is indicative, especially when describing the precise time of an action. In these so-called "**cum** temporal clauses," **cum** is translated *when* (or *while*); **tum** is occasionally found in the main clause, and **cum ... tum** together may be translated *not only ... but also:*

Cum eum vidēbis, eum cognōscēs, *when you (will) see him* [i.e., at that very moment], *you will recognize him.*

Cum vincimus, tum pācem spērās, *when (while) we are winning, you are (at the same time) hoping for peace.*

Cum ad illum locum vēnerant, tum amīcōs contulerant, *when they had come to that place, they had brought their friends* or *not only had they come to that place, but they had also brought their friends.*

Very often, however, the verb of the **cum** clause is in the subjunctive mood, especially when it describes either the general circumstances (rather than the exact time) when the main action occurred (often called a "**cum** circumstantial clause"), or explains the cause of the main action ("**cum** causal"), or describes a circumstance that might have obstructed the main action or is in some other way opposed to it ("**cum** adversative"):

Cum hoc fēcisset, ad tē fūgit.
When he had done this, he fled to you. (circumstantial)

Cum hoc scīret, potuit eōs iuvāre.
Since he knew this, he was able to help them. (causal)

Cum hoc scīret, tamen mīlitēs mīsit.
Although he knew this, nevertheless he sent the soldiers. (adversative)

Cum Gāium dīligerēmus, nōn poterāmus eum iuvāre.
Although we loved Gaius, we could not help him. (adversative)

Remember that when **cum** is followed immediately by a noun or pronoun in the ablative case, you should translate it *with*. When instead it introduces a subordinate clause, translate it *when, since, although*, etc. You should have little difficulty distinguishing among the four basic types of **cum** clauses: the temporal has its verb in the indicative, and the three subjunctive types can generally be recognized by analyzing the relationship between the actions in the main clause and the subordinate clause (note, too, that in the case of adversative clauses the adverb **tamen** often appears in the main clause). The verb in a **cum** clause, whatever its type, is regularly translated *as an indicative*, i.e., without an auxiliary such as *may* or *might*.

IRREGULAR Ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, to bear, carry

Ferō is one of a series of irregular verbs to be introduced in the closing chapters of this text (the others being **volō, nōlō, mālō, fīō,** and **eō**); they are all very commonly used and should be learned thoroughly.

The English verb "to bear" is cognate with Latin **ferō, ferre** and has generally the same basic and metaphorical meanings, *to carry* and *to endure.* In the present system **ferō** is simply a third conjugation verb, formed exactly like **agō** except that the stem vowel does not appear in a few places, including the infinitive **ferre.** The only irregular forms, all of them in the present tense (indicative, imperative, and infinitive), are highlighted below in bold; the imperfect subjunctive, while formed on the irregular infinitive **ferre,** nevertheless follows the usual pattern of present infinitive + endings. Remember that the singular imperative lacks the -**e**, just like **dīc, dūc,** and **fac** (Ch. 8).

Although **tulī** (originally **tetulī**) and **lātum** (originally *****tlātum**) derive ultimately from a different verb related to **tollō** (the Eng. hybrid "go, went, gone," e.g., is similarly composed from two different verbs through a common linguistic phenomenon known as "suppletion"), their conjugation follows the regular pattern and so should cause no difficulty.

Present Indicative

Active

1. férō
2. fers (cp. ágis)
3. fert (cp. ágit)

1. férimus
2. fértis (cp. ágitis)
3. férunt

Passive

féror
férris (ágeris)
fértur (ágitur)

férimur
feríminī
feruntur

Present Imperative

Active

2. fer (áge), férte (ágite)

Infinitives

Active

Pres. férre (ágere)
Perf. tulísse
Fut. lātûrus ésse

Passive

férrī (ágī)
lātus ésse
lātum írī

SYNOPSIS

The following third person singular synopsis, showing irregular forms in bold and taken together with the preceding summary, should provide a useful overview of the conjugation of **ferō**; for the complete conjugation, see the Appendix (p. 459–60)

Indicative Mood

	Pres.	Fut.	Impf.	Perf.	Fut.Perf.	Plupf.
Act.	**fert**	féret	ferébat	túlit	túlerit	túlerat
Pass.	**fértur**	ferétur	ferēbátur	lātus est	lātus érit	lātus érat

Subjunctive Mood

	Pres.	Fut.	Impf.	Perf.	Fut.Perf.	Plupf.
Act.	férat	—	**férret**	túlerit	—	tulísset
Pass.	ferátur	—	**ferrétur**	lātus sit	—	lātus ésset

VOCABULARY

as, ássis, m., *an as* (a small copper coin, roughly equivalent to a penny; ace)

auxílium, -ǐī, n., *aid, help* (auxiliary; cp. **augeō,** *to increase, augment*)

digitus, -ī, m., *finger, toe* (digit, digital, digitalis, digitalize, digitate, digitize, prestidigitation; see **Latīna Est Gaudium,** Ch. 20)

elephántus, -ī, m. and f., *elephant* (elephantiasis, elephantine)

exsílium, -iī, n., *exile, banishment* (exilic)

invídia, -ae, f., *envy, jealousy, hatred* (invidious, invidiousness, envious; cp. **invídeō** below)

rúmor, rūmóris, m., *rumor, gossip* (rumormonger)

vínum, -ī, n., *wine* (vine, vinegar, viniculture, viniferous, vintage, vinyl)

mediócris, mediócre, *ordinary, moderate, mediocre* (mediocrity; cp. **medius**)

cum, conj. + subj., *when, since, although;* conj. + indic., *when*

ápud, prep. + acc., *among, in the presence of, at the house of*

sémel, adv., *a single time, once, once and for all, simultaneously*

úsque, adv., *all the way, up (to), even (to), continuously, always*

dóleō, dolére, dóluī, dolitúrum, *to grieve, suffer, hurt, give pain* (doleful, dolor, dolorous, Dolores, condole, condolences, indolent, indolence; cp. **dolor,** Ch. 38)

dórmiō, dormíre, dormívī, dormítum, *to sleep* (dormitory, dormer, dormancy, dormant, dormouse)

férō, férre, túlī, látum, *to bear, carry, bring; suffer, endure, tolerate; say, report* (fertile, circumference, confer, defer, differ, infer, offer, prefer, proffer, refer, suffer, transfer; cp. bear)

ádferō, adférre, áttulī, allátum, *to bring to* (afferent)

cónferō, cōnférre, cóntulī, collátum, *to bring together, compare; confer, bestow;* **sē cōnférre,** *betake oneself, go* (conference, collation)

ófferō, offérre, óbtulī, oblátum, *to offer* (offertory, oblation)

réferō, reférre, réttulī, relátum, *to carry back, bring back; repeat, answer, report* (refer, reference, referent, referral, relate, relation, relative)

invídeō, -vidére, -vídī, -vísum, *to be envious;* + dat. (see Ch. 35), *to look at with envy, envy, be jealous of*

óccidō, -cídere, -cídī, -cásum, *to fall down; die; set* (occident, occidental, occasion, occasional; cp. **cadō, occāsiō**)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Iam vērō cognōvimus istās mentēs dūrās ferrum prō pāce offerre.
2. Nē nātae geminae discant verba tam acerba et tam dūra.
3. Cum hī decem virī ex moenibus semel discessissent, alia occāsiō pācis numquam oblāta est.
4. Tantum auxilium nōbīs referet ut nē ācerrimī quidem mīlitēs aut pugnāre aut hīc remanēre possint.
5. Rogābat cūr cēterae tantam fidem apud nōs praestārent et nōbīs tantam spem adferrent.
6. Cum patria nostra tanta beneficia offerat, tamen quīdam sē in īnsidiās fūrtim cōnferunt et contrā bonōs mox pugnābunt.
7. Dēnique audiāmus quantae sint hae īnsidiae ac quot coniūrātī contrā cīvitātem surgant.

8. Haec scelera repente exposuī nē alia et similia ferrētis.
9. Respondērunt plūrima arma ā mīlitibus ad lītus allāta esse et in nāvibus condita esse.
10. Cum parentēs essent vīvī, fēlīcēs erant; mortuī quoque sunt beātī.
11. Nesciō utrum trēs coniūrātī maneant an in exsilium contenderint.
12. Nōs cōnferāmus ad cēnam, meī amīcī, bibāmus multum vīnī, cōnsūmāmus noctem, atque omnēs cūrās nostrās minuāmus!
13. When the soldiers had been arrested, they soon offered us money.
14. Although life brings very difficult things, let us endure them all and dedicate ourselves to philosophy.
15. Since you know what help is being brought by our six friends, these evils can be endured with courage.
16. Although his eyes could not see the light of the sun, nevertheless that humble man used to do very many and very difficult things.

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

1. Potestne haec lūx esse tibi iūcunda, cum sciās hōs omnēs cōnsilia tua cognōvisse? (Cicero.)
2. Themistoclēs, cum Graeciam servitūte Persicā līberāvisset et propter invidiam in exsilium expulsus esset, ingrātae patriae iniūriam nōn tulit quam ferre dēbuit. (Cicero.—**Persicus, -a, -um.**—**ingrātus, -a, -um,** *ungrateful.*—**iniūria, -ae,** *injury.*)
3. Quae cum ita sint, Catilīna, cōnfer tē in exsilium. (Cicero.—**quae cum** = **et cum haec.**)
4. Ō nāvis, novī flūctūs bellī tē in mare referent! Ō quid agis? Unde erit ūllum perfugium? (Horace.—**nāvis,** *ship* [of state].—**flūctus, -ūs,** *wave, billow.*)
5. Cum rēs pūblica immortālis esse dēbeat, doleō eam salūtis egēre ac in vītā ūnīus mortālis cōnsistere. (Cicero.—**cōnsistō, -ere** + **in,** *to depend on.*)
6. Cum illum hominem esse servum nōvisset, eum comprehendere nōn dubitāvit. (Cicero.)
7. Ille comprehēnsus, cum prīmō impudenter respondēre coepisset, dēnique tamen nihil negāvit. (Cicero.—**impudenter,** adv.)
8. Milō dīcitur per stadium vēnisse cum bovem umerīs ferret. (Cicero.—**Milō, -lōnis,** m., a famous Greek athlete.—**stadium, -iī.**—**bōs, bovis,** m./f., *ox.*—**umerus, -ī,** *shoulder.*)
9. Quid vesper et somnus ferant, incertum est. (Livy.)
10. Ferte miserō tantum auxilium quantum potestis. (Terence.)
11. Hoc ūnum sciō: quod fāta ferunt, id ferēmus aequō animō. (Terence.)
12. Lēgum dēnique idcircō omnēs servī sumus, ut līberī esse possīmus. (*Cicero.—**idcircō,** adv., *for this reason.*)

GIVE ME A THOUSAND KISSES!

Vīvāmus, mea Lesbia, atque amēmus,
rūmōrēsque senum sevēriōrum
omnēs ūnius aestimēmus assis!
Sōlēs occidere et redīre possunt;
5   nōbīs cum semel occidit brevis lūx,
nox est perpetua ūna dormienda.
Dā mī bāsia mīlle, deinde centum;
dein mīlle altera, dein secunda centum;
deinde ūsque altera mīlle, deinde centum.
10 Dein, cum mīlia multa fēcerīmus—
conturbābimus illa, nē sciāmus,
aut nē quis malus invidēre possit,
cum tantum sciat esse bāsiōrum.

(*Catullus 5; an exhortation to love, and to ignore the grumbling of stern old men who envy the young and curse their passion.—**rūmōrēs**, with **omnēs**; adj. and noun were often widely separated in poetry, so it is especially important to take note of the endings.—**sevērus, -a, -um**.—**ūnius** . . . **assis**, gen. of value, *at one penny*.—**aestimāre**, *to value, estimate*.—**redīre**, *to return*.—**nōbīs**, dat. of reference [Ch. 38], here = nostra, with **brevis lūx**.—**mī** = **mihi**.—**dein** = **deinde**.—**conturbāre**, *to throw into confusion, mix up, jumble;* possibly an allusion to disturbing the counters on an abacus.—**nē sciāmus**, sc. **numerum**; if the number is unknown then, in a sense, it is limitless.—**quis**, here *someone*.—**invidēre**, with **malus**, means both *to envy* and *to cast an evil eye upon*, i.e., to hex.—**tantum**, with **bāsiōrum**, gen. of the whole, = *so many kisses*.)
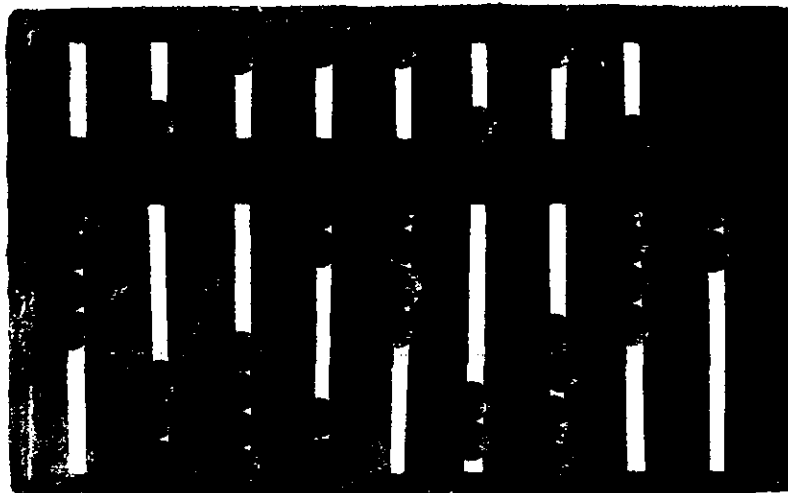
Small Roman abacus, Museo Nazionale Romano delle Terme, Rome, Italy

RINGO

Sēnōs Charīnus omnibus digitīs gerit
  nec nocte pōnit ānulōs
nec cum lavātur. Causa quae sit quaeritis?
  Dactyliothēcam nōn habet!

(*Martial 11.59; meter: iambic trimeter and dimeter.—Charinus, an ostenta-
tious chap who liked to show off his rings.—**sēnī, -ae, -a,** *six each, six apiece,*
here with **ānulōs,** *rings* [see **Latīna Est Gaudium,** Ch. 20]; what effect might the
poet be hoping to achieve by so widely separating noun and adj.?—**pōnit** =
dēpōnit, *put away.*—**lavāre,** *to bathe.*—**Causa ... quaeritis:** the usual order
would be **quaeritisne quae sit causa.**—**dactyliothēca, -ae,** *a ring-box, jewelry
chest.*)

Gold ring
Kunsthistorisches Museum, Vienna, Austria

FACĒTIAE (WITTICISMS)

Cum Cicerō apud Damasippum cēnāret et ille, mediocrī vīnō in mēnsā
positō, dīceret, "Bibe hoc Falernum; hoc est vīnum quadrāgintā annōrum,"
Cicerō respondit, "Bene aetātem fert!"

(Macrobius, *Sāturnālia* 2.3.—**Falernum, -ī,** *Falernian wine,* actually a very fa-
mous wine, not a "mediocre" one.—**quadrāgintā,** indecl., *40.*)

Augustus, cum quīdam rīdiculus eī libellum trepidē adferret, et modo
prōferret manum et modo retraheret, "Putās," inquit, "tē assem elephantō
dare?"

(Macrobius, *Sāturnālia* 2.4.—**trepidē,** adv., *in confusion.*—**modo ... modo,** *now
... now.*—**re-trahō.**—**elephantō:** one thinks of a child offering a peanut to a
circus elephant.)

ETYMOLOGY

In the readings
2. ingrate, ingratitude.—injurious. 4. fluctuate. 5. consist, consistent. 7. impudent, impudence. 8. bovine.—humerus, humeral. "Kisses": severe, severity, asseverate.—estimate, estimation, inestimable. "Ringo": annulus, annular eclipse, annulate, annulet (all spelled with *nn*, perhaps by analogy with **annus,** *year,* despite the classical **ānulus,** which—to get down to "fundamentals"—is actually the diminutive of **ānus,** *ring, circle, anus*). "**Facētiae**": trepidation.—retract, retraction.

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

Iterum salvēte, doctae doctīque! Having made it this far, you've certainly earned that appellation, and, as a further reward, here are more tidbits **ex vocābulāriō novō huius capitis,** all focussed on that villainous Catiline: to start with, there's that famous **cum** temporal clause from Cicero's indictment of Catiline: **cum tacent, clāmant,** *when they are silent, they are shouting,* i.e., "by their silence they condemn you." Poor Catiline, perhaps he had too much to drink, **ūsque ad nauseam,** and spilled the beans, ignoring the warning, **in vīnō vēritās;** if only he had observed Horace's **aurea mediocritās,** *the golden mean,* he might have received **auxilium ab altō,** *help from on high,* but the gods, it appears, were against him. And so he soon met his end, **semel et simul,** *once and for all:* **valē, miser Catilīna, et vōs omnēs, amīcī vēritātis honōrisque, valeātis!**

32

Formation and Comparison of Adverbs; Volō, Mālō, Nōlō; Proviso Clauses

FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

You are by now familiar with a wide range of Latin adverbs, words employed (as in English) to modify verbs, adjectives, or other adverbs. Many have their own peculiar forms and endings and must simply be memorized when first introduced in the vocabularies (often without benefit of English derivatives to aid in the memorization): among these are **cūr, etiam, ita, tam,** etc.

POSITIVE DEGREE

A great many adverbs, however, are formed directly from adjectives and are easily recognized. Many first/second declension adjectives form positive degree adverbs by adding **-ē** to the base:

lóng-ē	(*far;* longus, -a, -um)
líber-ē	(*freely;* līber, lībera, līberum)
púlchr-ē	(*beautifully;* pulcher, -chra, -chrum)

From adjectives of the third declension, adverbs are often formed by adding **-iter** to the base; if the base ends in **-nt-** only **-er** is added:

fórt-iter	(*bravely;* fortis, -e)
celér-iter	(*quickly,* celer, celeris, celere)
ácr-iter	(*keenly;* ācer, ācris, ācre)
félíc-iter	(*happily;* fēlīx, gen. fēlīcis)
sapiént-er	(*wisely;* sapiēns, gen. sapientis)

COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE DEGREE

Many Latin adverbs have comparative and superlative forms, just as they do in English, and their English translations correspond to those of comparative and superlative adjectives; e.g., positive degree "quickly"; comparative "more (rather, too) quickly"; superlative "most (very) quickly," etc.

The comparative degree of adverbs is with few exceptions the **-ius** form which you have already learned as the neuter of the comparative degree of the adjective.

The superlative degree of adverbs, being normally derived from the superlative degree of adjectives, regularly ends in **-ē** according to the rule given above for converting adjectives of the first and the second declensions into adverbs.

Quam WITH COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE ADVERBS

Quam is used with adverbs in essentially the same ways as with adjectives: **hic puer celerius cucurrit quam ille,** *this boy ran more quickly than that one;* **illa puella quam celerrimē cucurrit,** *that girl ran as quickly as possible.* The ablative of comparison is not ordinarily employed after comparative adverbs (except in poetry).

COMPARISON OF IRREGULAR ADVERBS

When the comparison of an adjective is irregular (see Ch. 27), the comparison of the adverb derived from it normally follows the basic irregularities of the adjective but, of course, has adverbial endings. Study carefully the following list of representative adverbs; those that do not follow the standard rules stated above for forming adverbs from adjectives are highlighted in bold (be prepared to point out how they do not conform). Note the alternate superlatives **prīmō,** which usually means *first (in time)* vs. **prīmum,** usually *first (in a series);* **quam prīmum,** however, has the idiomatic translation *as soon as possible.*

Positive	**Comparative**	**Superlative**
lóngē (*far*)	lóngius (*farther, too f.*)	longíssimē (*farthest, very f.*)
líberē (*freely*)	lībérius (*more f.*)	lībérrimē (*most, very f.*)
púlchrē (*beautifully*)	púlchrius (*more b.*)	pulchérrimē (*most b.*)
fórtiter (*bravely*)	fórtius (*more b.*)	fortíssimē (*most b.*)

celériter (*quickly*)	celérius (*more q.*)	celérrimē (*most q.*)
ácriter (*keenly*)	ácrius (*more k.*)	ācérrimē (*most k.*)
fēlíciter (*happily*)	fēlícius (*more h.*)	fēlícissimē (*most h.*)
sapiénter (*wisely*)	sapiéntius (*more w.*)	sapientíssimē (*most w.*)
fácile (*easily*)	facílius (*more e.*)	facíllimē (*most e.*)
béne (*well*)	mélius (*better*)	óptimē (*best*)
mále (*badly*)	peíus (*worse*)	péssimē (*worst*)
múltum (*much*)	plūs (*more*, quantity)	**plúrimum** (*most, very much*)
magnópere (*greatly*)	**mágis** (*more*, quality)	máximē (*most, especially*)
párum (*little, not very [much]*)	mínus (*less*)	mínimē (*least*)
(prō)	prius (*before, earlier*)	{ **prímō** (*first, at first*) **prímum** (*in the first place*) }
díū (*for a long time*)	diútius (*longer*)	**diūtíssimē** (*very long*)

IRREGULAR Volō, velle, voluī, to wish

Like **ferō**, introduced in the last chapter, **volō** is another extremely common third conjugation verb which, though regular for the most part, does have several irregular forms, including the present infinitive **velle**. Remember these points:

—**volō** has no passive forms at all, no future active infinitive or participle, and no imperatives;

—the perfect system is entirely regular;

—the only irregular forms are in the present indicative (which must be memorized) and the present subjunctive (which is comparable to **sim, sīs, sit**);

—the imperfect subjunctive resembles that of **ferō**; while formed from the irregular infinitive **velle**, it nevertheless follows the usual pattern of present infinitive + personal endings;

—**vol-** is the base in the present system indicatives, **vel-** in the subjunctives.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Subj.	Impf. Subj.	Infinitives
1. vólō	vélim	véllem	*Pres.* vélle
2. vīs	vélīs	véllēs	*Perf.* voluísse
3. vult	vélit	véllet	*Fut.*———
1. vólumus	velímus	vellēmus	**Participle**
2. vúltis	velítis	vellétis	*Pres.* vólēns
3. vólunt	vélint	véllent	

SYNOPSIS

The following third person singular synopsis, with irregular forms in bold, should provide a useful overview of the conjugation of **volō**; for the complete conjugation, see the Appendix (p. 458–59).

Indicative Mood

	Pres.	Fut.	Impf.	Perf.	Fut.Perf.	Plupf.
Act.	**vult**	vólet	volébat	vóluit	volúerit	volúerat

Subjunctive Mood

	Pres.	Fut.	Impf.	Perf.	Fut.Perf.	Plupf.
Act.	**vélit**	—	**véllet**	volúerit	—	voluísset

Nōlō AND Mālō

The compounds **nōlō, nōlle, nōluī** (**nē** + **volō**), *not to wish, to be unwilling,* and **mālō, mālle, māluī** (**magis** + **volō**), *to want (something) more or instead, prefer,* follow **volō** closely, but have long vowels in their stems (**nō-, mā-**) and some other striking peculiarities, especially in the present indicative.

PRESENT INDICATIVE OF Nōlō

Sg. nólō, nōn vīs, nōn vult   Pl. nólumus, nōn vúltis, nólunt

PRESENT INDICATIVE OF Mālō

Sg. málō, mávīs, mávult   Pl. málumus, māvúltis, málunt

The following synopses provide representative forms, again with irregular forms in bold, but you should see the Appendix (p. 458–59) for the full conjugation of these verbs.

Indicative Mood

	Pres.	Fut.	Impf.	Perf.	Fut.Perf.	Plupf.
Act.	**nōn vult**	nólet	nōlébat	nóluit	nōlúerit	nōlúerat

Subjunctive Mood

	Pres.	Fut.	Impf.	Perf.	Fut.Perf.	Plupf.
Act.	**nólit**	—	**nóllet**	nōlúerit	—	nōluísset

Indicative Mood

	Pres.	Fut.	Impf.	Perf.	Fut.Perf.	Plupf.
Act.	**mávult**	málet	mālébat	máluit	mālúerit	mālúerat

Subjunctive Mood

	Pres.	Fut.	Impf.	Perf.	Fut.Perf.	Plupf.
Act.	**málit**	—	**mállet**	mālúerit	—	māluísset

Nōlō AND NEGATIVE COMMANDS

While **volō** and **mālō** lack imperatives, **nōlō** has both singular and plural imperatives that were very commonly employed along with complementary infinitives to express negative commands:

Nōlī manēre, Catilīna, *do not remain, Catiline!*

Nōlīte discēdere, amīcī meī, *do not leave, my friends!*

PROVISO CLAUSES

The subjunctive is used in a subordinate clause introduced by **dummodo,** *provided that, so long as,* and certain other words that express a provisional circumstance or "proviso"; **nē** is used as the negative in such clauses.

Nōn timēbō, dummodo hīc remaneās, *I shall not be afraid, provided that you remain here.*

Erimus fēlīcēs, dummodo nē discēdās, *we shall be happy, so long as (provided that) you do not leave.*

Note that the verb in such clauses is simply translated as an indicative.

VOCABULARY

custódia, -ae, f., *protection, custody;* pl., *guards* (custodian, custodial)

exércitus, -ūs, m., *army* (exercise)

paupértās, paupertátis, f., *poverty, humble circumstances* (cp. **pauper** below)

díves, gen. **dívitis** or **dítis,** *rich,* (Dives)

pār, gen. **páris** + dat. (cp. Ch. 35), *equal, like* (par, pair, parity, peer, peerless, disparage, disparity, umpire, nonpareil)

paúper, gen. **paúperis,** *of small means, poor* (poverty, impoverished; cp. **paupertās**)

dúmmodo, conj. + subj., *provided that, so long as*

All adverbs given in the list above, p. 220–21.

mālō, málle, máluī, *to want (something) more, instead; prefer*

nōlō, nólle, nóluī, *to not . . . wish, be unwilling* (nolo contendere, nol. pros.)

páteō, patére, pátuī, *to be open, lie open; be accessible; be evident* (patent, pātent, patency)

praébeō, -bére, -buī, -bitum, *to offer, provide*

prōmíttō, -míttere, -mīsī, -missum, *to send forth; promise* (promissory)

vólō, vélle, vóluī, *to wish, want, be willing, will* (volition, voluntary, involuntary, volunteer, volitive, voluptuous, benevolent, malevolent, nolens volens)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Prīmō illī trēs rīdiculī nē mediocria quidem perīcula fortiter ferre poterant et ūllum auxilium offerre nōlēbant.
2. Maximē rogāvimus quantum auxilium septem fēminae adferrent et utrum dubitārent an nōs mox adiūtūrae essent.
3. Dēnique armīs collātīs, imperātor prōmīsit decem mīlia mīlitum celerrimē discessūra esse, dummodo satis cōpiārum reciperent.
4. Paria beneficia, igitur, in omnēs dignōs cōnferre māvultis.
5. Haec mala melius expōnant nē dīvitiās minuant aut honōrēs suōs āmittant.
6. At volumus cognōscere cūr sīc invīderit et cūr verba eius tam dūra fuerint.
7. Cum cēterī hās īnsidiās cognōverint, vult in exsilium fūrtim ac quam celerrimē sē cōnferre ut rūmōrēs et invidiam vītet.
8. Multīne discipulī tantum studium ūsque praestant ut hās sententiās facillimē ūnō annō legere possint?
9. Cum dīvitiās āmīsisset et ūnum assem nōn habēret, tamen omnēs cīvēs ingenium mōrēsque eius maximē laudābant.
10. Plūra meliōraque lēgibus aequīs quam ferrō certē faciēmus.
11. Oculī tuī sunt pulchriōrēs sīderibus caelī, mea puella; es gracilis et bella, ac ōscula sunt dulciōra vīnō: amēmus sub lūce lūnae!
12. Iste hostis, in Italiam cum multīs elephantīs veniēns, prīmō pugnāre nōluit et plūrimōs diēs in montibus cōnsūmpsit.
13. Sī nepōs tē ad cēnam invītābit, mēnsam explēbit et tibi tantum vīnī offeret quantum vīs; nōlī, autem, nimium bibere.
14. Do you wish to live longer and better?
15. He wishes to speak as wisely as possible so that they may yield to him very quickly.
16. When these plans had been learned, we asked why he had been unwilling to prepare the army with the greatest possible care.
17. That man, who used to be very humble, now so keenly wishes to have wealth that he is willing to lose his two best friends.

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

1. Occāsiō nōn facile praebētur sed facile ac repente āmittitur. (Publilius Syrus.)
2. Nōbīscum vīvere iam diūtius nōn potes; nōlī remanēre; id nōn ferēmus. (Cicero.)
3. Vīs rēctē vīvere? Quis nōn? (*Horace.—**rēctus, -a, -um,** *straight, right.*)
4. Plūs nōvistī quid faciendum sit. (Terence.)
5. Mihi vērē dīxit quid vellet. (Terence.)

6. Parēs cum paribus facillimē congregantur. (*Cicero.—**congregāre,** *to gather into a flock.*)

7. Tē magis quam oculōs meōs amō. (Terence.)

8. Hominēs libenter id crēdunt quod volunt. (Caesar.—**libēns, -entis,** *willing.*)

9. Multa ēveniunt hominibus quae volunt et quae nōlunt. (Plautus.— **ēvenīre,** *to happen.*)

10. Cōnsiliō melius contendere atque vincere possumus quam īrā. (Publilius Syrus.)

11. Optimus quisque facere māvult quam dīcere. (Sallust.—**māvult quam** = **magis vult quam.**)

12. Omnēs sapientēs fēlīciter, perfectē, fortūnātē vīvunt. (Cicero.—**perfectus, -a, -um,** *complete.*)

13. Maximē eum laudant quī pecūniā nōn movētur. (Cicero.)

14. Sī vīs scīre quam nihil malī in paupertāte sit, cōnfer pauperem et dīvitem: pauper saepius et fidēlius rīdet. (Seneca.)

15. Magistrī puerīs crūstula dant ut prīma elementa discere velint. (Horace.—**crūstulum, -ī,** *cookie.*—**elementum, -ī.**)

16. Sī vīs mē flēre, dolendum est prīmum ipsī tibi. (*Horace.—**flēre,** to weep.)

THE CHARACTER OF CIMON

Cimōn celeriter ad summōs honōrēs pervēnit. Habēbat enim satis ēloquentiae, summam līberālitātem, magnam scientiam lēgum et reī mīlitāris, quod cum patre ā puerō in exercitibus fuerat. Itaque hic populum urbānum in suā potestāte facillimē tenuit et apud exercitum valuit plūrimum auctōritāte.

Cum ille occidisset, Athēniēnsēs dē eō diū doluērunt; nōn sōlum in bellō, autem, sed etiam in pāce eum graviter dēsīderāvērunt. Fuit enim vir tantae līberālitātis ut, cum multōs hortōs habēret, numquam in hīs custōdiās pōneret; nam hortōs līberrimē patēre voluit nē populus ab hīs frūctibus prohibērētur. Saepe autem, cum aliquem minus bene vestītum vidēret, eī suum amiculum dedit. Multōs locuplētāvit; multōs pauperēs vīvōs iūvit atque mortuōs suō sūmptū extulit. Sīc minimē mīrum est sī, propter mōrēs Cimōnis, vīta eius fuit sēcūra et mors eius fuit omnibus tam acerba quam mors cuiusdam ex familiā.

(Nepos, *Cimōn;* adapted excerpts.—**per-venīre.**—**ēloquentia, -ae.**—**līberālitās, -tātis.**—**mīlitāris, -e.**—**ā puerō,** *from his boyhood.*—**potestās, -tātis,** *power.*— **auctōritās, -tātis,** *authority;* the abl. tells in what respect.—**Athēniēnsēs,** *Athenians.*—**hortus, -ī,** garden,—**vestītus, -a, -um,** *clothed.*—**amiculum, -ī,** *cloak.*—**locuplētāre,** *to enrich.*—**sūmptus, -ūs,** *expense.*—**extulit: ef-ferō,** *bury.*—**mīrus, -a, -um,** *surprising.*—**sē-cūrus, -a, -um: sē-** means *without.*)

A VACATION . . . FROM YOU!

Quid mihi reddat ager quaeris, Line, Nōmentānus?
  Hoc mihi reddit ager: tē, Line, nōn videō!

(*Martial 2.38; meter: elegiac couplet.—**reddō, -ere,** *to give back, return (in profit).*—**Linus, -ī,** another of Martial's addressees.—**Nōmentānus, -a, -um,** *in Nomentum,* a town of Latium known for its wine industry.)

PLEASE . . . DON'T!

Nīl recitās et vīs, Māmerce, poēta vidērī.
  Quidquid vīs estō, dummodo nīl recitēs!

(*Martial 2.88; meter: elegiac couplet.—**nīl** = **nihil.**—**Māmercus, -ī.**—**estō,** fut. imper. of **esse,** *"Be . . . !"*)

ETYMOLOGY

In the readings   3. rectitude, rectify, direct, erect, correct; cp. right. 6. congregate, segregate, gregarious, aggregate. 9. event (=out-come), eventual. 12. perfect (= made or done thoroughly). "Cimon": vest, vestment, invest, divest.—sumptuous, sumptuary.—miraculous, admire. "Vacation": render, rendering, rendition.

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

Salvēte! The modern Olympic games have as their motto three comparative adverbs, **citius, altius** (from **altus, -a, -um,** *high*), **fortius.** The new irregular verbs in this chapter, especially **volō** and **nōlō** are extremely common in Lat. and you'll find them, willy-nilly, all through English. You know very well, for example, the legal plea of **nōlō,** short for **nōlō contendere,** *I am unwilling to contest* (the accusation); there's also **nol. pros.** = **nōlle prōsequī,** *to be unwilling to pursue* (the matter), meaning to drop a lawsuit; **nōlēns, volēns,** *unwilling (or) willing,* i.e., whether or not one wishes, like "willy-nilly" (a contraction of "will ye, nill ye"); the abbreviation "d.v.," for **deō volente;** also **volō, nōn valeō,** *I am willing but not able;* **nōlī mē tangere,** a warning against tampering as well as Lat. for the jewel-weed flower or "touch-me-not"; **quantum vīs,** *as much as you wish* (which may be more than just **quantum satis,** Ch. 30!); **Deus vult,** the call to arms of the First Crusade; and **mālō morī quam foedārī,** freely "death before dishonor" (lit., *I wish to die rather than to be dishonored;* for the deponent verb **morior,** see Ch. 34). Years ago some pundit wrote (demonstrating the importance of macrons), **mālō malō malō mālō,** *I'd rather be in an apple tree than a bad man in adversity;* the first **mālō** is from **mālum, -ī,** *apple, fruit-tree,* which calls to mind Horace's characterization of a Roman **cēna,** from the hors d'oeuvres to the dessert, as **ab ovō**

(ovum, -ī, *egg*) **ūsque ad māla,** a phrase, very like the expression "from soup to nuts," that became proverbial for "from start to finish."

Et cētera ex vocābulāriō novō: cēterīs pāribus, *all else being equal;* **custōdia** is related to **custōs, custōdis,** *guard,* and **custōdīre,** *to guard,* hence Juvenal's satiric query, **sed quis custōdiet ipsōs custōdēs; exercitus** is connected with **exerceō, exercēre,** *to practice, exercise,* and the noun **exercitātiō,** which gives us the proverb, most salutary for Latin students: **exercitātiō est optimus magister.** And so, **valēte, discipulī/ae, et exercēte, exercēte, exercēte!**
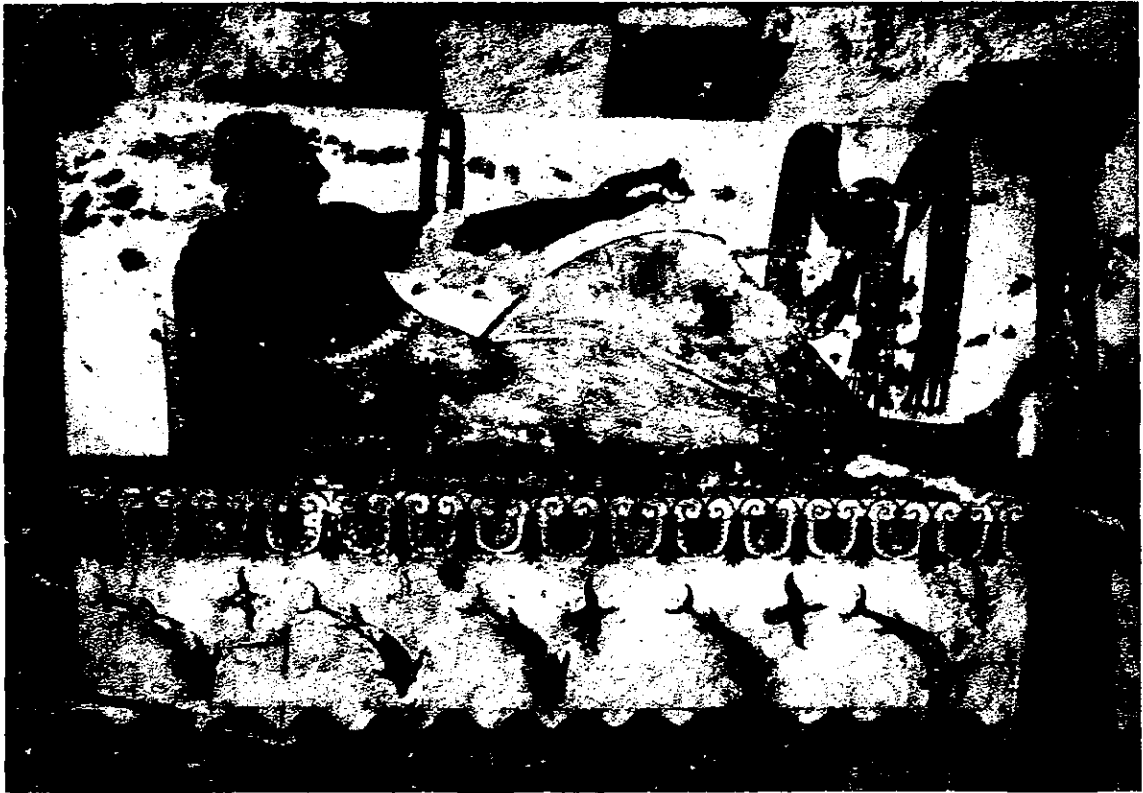
Banqueter with egg, Etruscan fresco
Tomb of the Lionesses, late 6th century B.C.
Tarquinia, Italy

33

Conditions

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

Conditions are among the most common sentence types, others being "declarative," "interrogative," and "exclamatory." You have encountered numerous conditional sentences in your Latin readings already, and so you are aware that the basic sentence of this type consists of two clauses: 1) the "condition" (or "protasis," Gk. for *proposition* or *premise*), a subordinate clause usually introduced by **sī,** *if,* or **nisi,** *if not* or *unless,* and stating a hypothetical action or circumstance, and 2) the "conclusion" (or "apodosis," Gk. for *outcome* or *result*), the main clause, which expresses the anticipated outcome if the premise turns out to be true.

There are six basic conditional types; three have their verbs in the indicative, three in the subjunctive, and the reason is simple. While all conditional sentences, by their very nature, describe actions in the past, present, or future that are to one extent or another hypothetical, the indicative was employed in those where the condition was more likely to be realized, the subjunctive in those where the premise was either less likely to be realized or where both the condition and the conclusion were absolutely contrary to the actual facts of a situation. Study carefully the following summary, learning the names of each of the six conditional types, how to recognize them, and the standard formulae for translation.

INDICATIVE CONDITIONS

1. **Simple fact present:** Sī id facit, prūdēns est. *If he is doing this [and it is quite possible that he is], he is wise.* Present indicative in both clauses; translate verbs as present indicatives.

2. **Simple fact past:** Sī id fēcit, prūdēns fuit. *If he did this [and quite possibly he did], he was wise.* Past tense (perfect or imperfect) indicative in both clauses; translate verbs as past indicatives.

3. **Simple fact future** (sometimes called "future more vivid"): Sī id faciet, prūdēns erit. *If he does (will do) this [and quite possibly he will], he will be wise.* Future indicative in both clauses; translate the verb in the protasis as a *present* tense (here Eng. "if" + the present has a future sense), the verb in the conclusion as a future. (Occasionally the future perfect is used, in either or both clauses, with virtually the same sense as the future: see S.A. 8 and "B.Y.O.B." line 3, p. 231.)

SUBJUNCTIVE CONDITIONS

The indicative conditions deal with potential facts; the subjunctive conditions are ideal rather than factual, describing circumstances that are either, in the case of the "future less vivid," somewhat less likely to be realized or less vividly imagined or, in the case of the two "contrary to fact" types, opposite to what actually is happening or has happened in the past.

1. **Contrary to fact present:** Sī id faceret, prūdēns esset. *If he were doing this [but in fact he is not], he would be wise [but he is not].* Imperfect subjunctive in both clauses; translate with auxiliaries *were (. . . ing)* and *would (be).*

2. **Contrary to fact past:** Sī id fēcisset, prūdēns fuisset. *If he had done this [but he did not], he would have been wise [but he was not].* Pluperfect subjunctive in both clauses; translate with auxiliaries *had* and *would have.*

3. **Future less vivid** (sometimes called "should-would"): Sī id faciat, prūdēns sit. *If he should do this [and he may, or he may not], he would be wise.* Present subjunctive in both clauses; translate with auxiliaries *should* and *would.*

There are occasional variants on these six basic types, i.e., use of the imperative in the apodosis, "mixed conditions" with different tenses or moods in the protasis and apodosis, different introductory words (e.g., **dum**), etc., but those are easily dealt with in context.

FURTHER EXAMPLES

Classify each of the following conditions.

1. Sī hoc dīcet, errābit; *if he says this, he will be wrong.*
2. Sī hoc dīcit, errat; *if he says this, he is wrong.*
3. Sī hoc dīxisset, errāvisset; *if he had said this, he would have been wrong.*
4. Sī hoc dīcat, erret; *if he should say this, he would be wrong.*

5. Sī hoc dīxit, errāvit; *if he said this, he was wrong.*
6. Sī hoc dīceret, errāret; *if he were saying this, he would be wrong.*
7. Sī veniat, hoc videat; *if he should come, he would see this.*
8. Sī vēnit, hoc vīdit; *if he came, he saw this.*
9. Sī venīret, hoc vidēret; *if he were coming, he would see this.*
10. Sī veniet, hoc vidēbit; *if he comes, he will see this.*
11. Sī vēnisset, hoc vīdisset; *if he had come, he would have seen this.*

VOCABULARY

initium, -iī, n., *beginning, commencement* (initial, initiate, initiation)

ops, ópis, f., *help, aid;* **ópēs, ópum,** pl., *power, resources, wealth* (opulent, opulence; cp. **cōpia,** from **con-** + **ops**)

philósophus, -ī, m., and **philósopha, -ae,** f., *philosopher* (philosophy, philosophical)

plēbs, plēbis, f., *the common people, populace, plebeians* (plebs, plebe, plebeian, plebiscite)

sāl, sális, m., *salt; wit* (salad, salami, salary, salina, saline, salify, salimeter, salinometer, sauce, sausage)

spéculum, -ī, n., *mirror* (speculate, speculation; cp. **spectō,** Ch. 34)

quis, quid, after **sī, nisi, nē, num,** indef. pron., *anyone, anything, someone, something* (cp. **quis? quid? quisque, quisquis**)

cándidus, -a, -um, *shining, bright, white; beautiful* (candescent, candid, candidate, candor, incandescent, candle, chandelier)

mérus, -a, -um, *pure, undiluted* (mere, merely)

suávis, suáve, *sweet* (suave, suaveness, suavity, suasion, dissuade, persuasion; cp. **persuādeō,** Ch. 35)

-ve, conj. suffixed to a word = **aut** before the word (cp. **-que**), *or*

heu, interj., *ah!, alas!* (a sound of grief or pain)

súbitō, adv., *suddenly* (sudden, suddenness)

recūsō (1), *to refuse* (recuse, recusant; cp. **causa**)

trádō, -dere, -didī, -ditum (trāns + dō), *to give over, surrender, hand down, transmit, teach* (tradition, traditional, traitor, treason)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Dummodo exercitus opem mox ferat, moenia urbis celeriter cōnservāre poterimus.
2. Cum cōnsilia hostium ab initiō cognōvissēs, prīmō tamen ūllum auxilium offerre aut etiam centum mīlitēs prōmittere nōluistī.
3. Sī dīvitiae et invidia nōs ab amōre et honōre ūsque prohibent, dīvitēsne vērē sumus?
4. Pauper quidem nōn erit pār cēterīs nisi scientiam ingeniumve habēbit; sī haec habeat, autem, multī magnopere invideant.
5. Nisi īnsidiae patērent, ferrum eius maximē timērēmus.

6. Sī quis rogābit quid nunc discās, refer tē artem nōn mediocrem sed ūtilissimam ac difficillimam discere.

7. Lēgēs ita scrībantur ut dīvitēs et plēbs—etiam pauper sine asse— sint parēs.

8. Sī custōdiae dūriōrēs fortiōrēsque ad casam tuam contendissent, heu, numquam tanta scelera suscēpissēs et hī omnēs nōn occidissent.

9. Illa fēmina sapientissima, cum id semel cognōvisset, ad eōs celerrimē sē contulit et omnēs opēs suās praebuit.

10. Dūrum exsilium tam ācrem mentem ūnō annō mollīre nōn poterit.

11. Propter omnēs rūmōrēs pessimōs (quī nōn erant vērī), nātae suāvēs eius magnopere dolēbant et dormīre nōn poterant.

12. If those philosophers should come soon, you would be happier.

13. If you had not answered very wisely, they would have hesitated to offer us peace.

14. If anyone does these three things well, he will live better.

15. If you were willing to read better books, you would most certainly learn more.

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

1. Sī vīs pācem, parā bellum. (Flavius Vegetius.—**parā,** *prepare for.*)

2. Arma sunt parvī pretiī, nisi vērō cōnsilium est in patriā. (Cicero.— **pretium, -iī,** *value.*)

3. Salūs omnium ūnā nocte certē āmissa esset, nisi illa sevēritās contrā istōs suscepta esset. (Cicero.—**sevēritās, -tātis.**)

4. Sī quid dē mē posse agī putābis, id agēs—sī tū ipse ab istō perīculō eris līber. (Cicero.)

5. Sī essem mihi cōnscius ūllīus culpae, aequō animō hoc malum fer- rem. (Phaedrus.—**cōnscius, -a, -um,** *conscious.*)

6. Dīcis tē vērē mālle fortūnam et mōrēs antīquae plēbis; sed sī quis ad illa subitō tē agat, illum modum vītae recūsēs. (Horace.)

7. Minus saepe errēs, sī sciās quid nesciās. (Publilius Syrus.)

8. Dīcēs "heu" sī tē in speculō vīderis. (Horace.)

9. Nīl habet īnfēlīx paupertās dūrius in sē quam quod rīdiculōs homi- nēs facit. (*Juvenal.—**nīl** = **nihil.**—**quod,** *the fact that.*)

B.Y.O.B., etc., etc.

Cēnābis bene, mī Fabulle, apud mē
paucīs (sī tibi dī favent) diēbus—
sī tēcum attuleris bonam atque magnam
cēnam, nōn sine candidā puellā
5   et vīnō et sale et omnibus cachinnīs;
haec sī, inquam, attuleris, venuste noster,
cēnābis bene; nam tuī Catullī

plēnus sacculus est arāneārum.
Sed contrā accipiēs merōs amōrēs,
10   seu quid suāvius ēlegantiusve est:
nam unguentum dabo, quod meae puellae
dōnārunt Venerēs Cupīdinēsque;
quod tū cum olfaciēs, deōs rogābis,
tōtum ut tē faciant, Fabulle, nāsum.

(*Catullus 13; meter: hendecasyllabic. The poet invites a friend to dinner, but there's a hitch and a BIG surprise.—**favēre** + dat., *to be favorable toward, favor.*—**cachinna, -ae,** *laugh, laughter.*—**venustus, -a, -um,** *charming.*—**sacculus, -ī,** *money-bag, wallet.*—**arānea, -ae,** *spiderweb.*—**contrā,** here adv., *on the other hand, in return.*—**seu,** conj., *or.*—**ēlegāns,** gen. **ēlegantis.**—**unguentum, -ī,** *salve, perfume.*—**dabo:** remember that -ō was often shortened in verse.—**dōnārunt** = **dōnāvērunt,** from **dōnāre,** *to give.*—**Venus, -neris,** f., and **Cupīdō, -dinis,** m.; Venus and Cupid, pl. here to represent all the fostering powers of Love.—**quod ... olfaciēs** = **cum tū id olfaciēs.**—**olfaciō, -ere,** *to smell.*—For formal discussion of the "jussive noun" clause **deōs rogābis ... ut ... faciant,** easily translated here, see Ch. 36.—**tōtum ... nāsum,** from **nāsus, -ī,** *nose,* objective complement with **tē;** the wide separation of adj. and noun suggests the cartoon-like enormity of the imagined schnoz!)

THE RICH GET RICHER

Semper pauper eris, sī pauper es, Aemiliāne:
dantur opēs nūllī nunc nisi dīvitibus.

(*Martial 5.81.; meter: elegiac couplet.—**Aemiliānus, -ī.**)

ARISTOTLE, TUTOR OF ALEXANDER THE GREAT

An Philippus, rēx Macedonum, voluisset Alexandrō, fīliō suō, prīma elementa litterārum trādī ab Aristotele, summō eius aetātis philosophō, aut hic suscēpisset illud maximum officium, nisi initia studiōrum pertinēre ad summam sapientissimē crēdidisset?

(Quintilian, *Īnstitūtiōnēs Ōrātōriae* 1.1.23.—**an,** interrog. conj., *or, can it be that.*—**Macedonēs, -donum,** m./f. pl., *Macedonians.*—**Aristotelēs, -telis.**—**pertinēre ad,** *to relate to, affect.*—**summa, -ae,** *highest part, whole.*)

YOUR LOSS, MY GAIN!

Cum Quīntus Fabius Maximus magnō cōnsiliō Tarentum fortissimē recēpisset et Salīnātor (quī in arce fuerat, urbe āmissā) dīxisset, "Meā operā, Quīnte Fabī, Tarentum recēpistī," Fabius, mē audiente, "Certē," inquit rīdēns, "nam nisi tū urbem āmīsissēs, numquam eam recēpissem."

(Cicero, *Dē Senectūte* 4.11.—During the second Punic War, Tarentum revolted from the Romans to Hannibal, though the Romans under Marcus Livius

Salinator continued to hold the citadel throughout this period. In 209 B.C. the city was recaptured by Quintus Fabius Maximus.—**Tarentum -ī,** a famous city in southern Italy (which the Romans called Magna Graecia).—**meā operā,** *thanks to me.*)

ETYMOLOGY

In the readings

2. price, precious, prize, praise, appraise, appreciate, depreciate. 3. severe, persevere, perseverance, asseverate. 5. conscious, unconscious, conscience.

"B.Y.O.B.": favorite, disfavor.—cachinnate, cachinnation.—sack, satchel.—araneid.—elegance, elegantly.—unguent, unguentary.—donate, donation, donor.—olfaction, olfactory, olfactometer, olfactronics.—nasal, nasalize, nasalization; "nose," "nostril," and "nozzle" are cognate. "Aristotle": pertain, pertinent, pertinacity, purtenance, appertain, appurtenance, impertinent, impertinence.—sum, summary, summation.

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

Salvēte! Here are some well known conditions: **sī nātūra negat, facit indignātiō versum,** *if nature denies* (i.e., if my talent is lacking), *indignation creates my verse* (so said the satirist Juvenal, who had plenty of both!); **sī fortūna iuvat; sī fēcistī, negā!** (a lawyer's advice); **sī Deus nōbīscum, quis contrā nōs** (the verbs are left out, but the meaning is clear); **sī post fāta venit glōria, nōn properō,** *if glory comes (only) after death, I'm in no hurry!* (Martial); **sī sīc omnēs,** freely, a wistful "if only everything were like this" (or does it really mean "all on the boat became ill"?!!).

Ex vocābulāriō novō quoque: well, to start "from the beginning," the phrase **ab initiō** is quite common in Eng.; those running for political office in Rome wore the **toga candida,** *white toga,* hence Eng. "candidate." The Romans called undiluted wine **merum** (which the bibulous merely imbibed!); **ope et cōnsiliō** is a good way to manage life. The expression "with a grain of salt" comes from Lat. **cum grānō salis; sāl Atticum** is dry *Athenian wit;* and "salary" is also from **sāl,** a package of which was part of a Roman soldier's pay (we "bring home the [salty] bacon," Romans brought home the salt!). Art is a **speculum vītae.** If you remember how to form adverbs from adjectives, then you can decipher the proverb **suāviter in modō, fortiter in rē,** a good mode for the Latin teacher; and if you read music, you may have seen **subitō,** a musical annotation meaning *quickly.*

Hope you enjoy these closing **miscellānea** (from **miscellāneus, -a, -um,** *varied, mixed*), and here's one reason why: **sī fīnis bonus est, tōtum bonum erit,** an old proverb, a "mixed condition," and familiar vocabulary, so I'll give you the free version, "All's well that ends well (including this chapter)!": **et vōs omnēs, quoque valeātis!**

34

Deponent Verbs; Ablative with Special Deponents

DEPONENT VERBS

Latin has a number of commonly used "deponent verbs," verbs that have passive endings but active meanings. There are very few new forms to be learned in this chapter (only the imperatives); the most crucial matter is simply to recall *which verbs are deponent*, so that you remember to translate them in the active voice, and that can be managed through careful vocabulary study. There are a few exceptions to the rule of passive forms/active meanings, and those will also need to be carefully noted.

PRINCIPAL PARTS AND CONJUGATION

As you will see from the following examples, deponents regularly have only three principal parts, the passive equivalents of the first three principal parts of regular verbs (1. first pers. sg. pres. indic., 2. pres. infin., 3. first pers. sg. perf. indic.).

Present Indic.	Present Infin.	Perfect Indic.
hórtor, *I urge*	hortắrī, *to urge*	hortắtus (-a, -um) sum, *I urged*
fáteor, *I confess*	fatḗrī, *to confess*	fássus (-a, -um) sum, *I confessed*
séquor, *I follow*	séquī, *to follow*	secútus (-a, -um) sum, *I followed*
mṓlior, *I work at*	mōlírī, *to work at*	mōlítus (-a, -um) sum, *I worked at*
pátior, *I suffer*	pátī, *to suffer*	pássus (-a, -um) sum, *I suffered*

SAMPLE FORMS OF Hortor AND Sequor

Again, deponents are conjugated according to precisely the same rules as regular verbs in the passive voice; the following representative forms are provided for review, and full conjugations for each of the five examples given above are included in the Appendix (p. 455–57).

Indicative

PRESENT

1. hórtor, *I urge*   séquor, *I follow*
2. hortáris (-re), *you urge*   séqueris (-re), *you follow*
3. hortátur, *he urges*   séquitur, *he follows*

1. hortámur, *we urge*   séquimur, *we follow*
2. hortáminī, *you urge*   sequíminī, *you follow*
3. hortántur, *they urge*   sequúntur, *they follow*

IMPERFECT

1. hortábar, *I was urging*   sequébar, *I was following*
2. hortābáris (-re), *you were urging*   sequēbáris (-re), *you were following,*
etc.   etc.

FUTURE

1. hortábor, *I shall urge*   séquar, *I shall follow*
2. hortáberis (-re), *you will urge*   sequéris (-re), *you will follow*
3. hortábitur, *he will urge*   sequétur, *he will follow*
etc.   etc.

PERFECT

hortátus, -a, -um sum, *I urged*   secútus, -a, -um sum, *I followed*
etc.   etc.

PLUPERFECT

hortátus, -a, -um éram, *I had urged*   secútus, -a, -um éram, *I had followed*
etc.   etc.

FUTURE PERFECT

hortátus, -a, -um érō,   secútus, -a, -um érō,
   I shall have urged   *I shall have followed*
etc.   etc.

Subjunctive

PRESENT

hórter, hortéris, hortétur   séquar, sequáris, sequátur
etc.   etc.

IMPERFECT

hortā́rer, hortārḗris, hortārḗtur   séquerer, sequerḗris, sequerḗtur
etc.   etc.

PERFECT

hortā́tus, -a, -um sim, sīs, etc.   secū́tus, -a, -um sim, sīs, etc.

PLUPERFECT

hortā́tus, -a, -um éssem, etc.   secū́tus, -a, -um éssem, etc.

SYNOPSIS

The following third person singular synopsis of **fateor, fatērī, fassus sum** should provide a useful overview of the conjugation of deponents; remember that all the English equivalents are active, i.e., *he confesses, he will confess,* etc.

Indicative Mood

Pres.	Fut.	Impf.	Perf.	Fut. Perf.	Plupf.
fatḗtur	fatḗbitur	fatēbā́tur	fássus est	fássus érit	fássus érat

Subjunctive Mood

fateā́tur	——	fatērḗtur	fássus sit	——	fássus ésset

PARTICIPLES AND INFINITIVES

The participles and infinitives of typical deponent verbs are here given in full not because of any actually new forms but because of certain discrepancies in the general rule of passive forms with active meanings.

Participles

Pres. hórtāns, *urging*   séquēns, *following*
Perf. hortā́tus, -a, -um,   secū́tus, -a, -um,
    having urged   *having followed*
Fut. hortātū́rus, -a, -um,   secūtū́rus, -a, -um,
    about to urge   *about to follow*
Ger. hortándus, -a, -um,   sequéndus, -a, -um,
    to be urged   *to be followed*

Infinitives

Pres. hortā́rī, *to urge*   séquī, *to follow*
Perf. hortā́tus, -a, -um ésse,   secū́tus, -a, -um ésse,
    to have urged   *to have followed*

Fut. hortātúrus, -a, -um ésse,   secūtúrus, -a, -um ésse,
    to be about to urge   *to be about to follow*

Exceptions: Deponents have the same four participles that regular verbs have, but only three infinitives, one for each tense. Three of the participles and one of the infinitives present exceptions to the basic rule that deponents are passive in form but active in meaning:

1. Present and future participles: active forms with active meanings.
2. Gerundive (future passive participle): passive form with passive meaning.
3. Future infinitive: active form with active meaning.

Imperatives

The present imperative of deponent verbs would naturally have the forms of the present "passive" imperative. These forms have not been given before because they are found only in deponent verbs, but they are easy to learn.

1. The second person singular has the same spelling as that of the *alternate* second person singular of the present *indicative,* e.g., **sequere!** (Note that this is also the same form as the non-existent present active *infinitive:* be especially careful not to mistake this characteristic deponent imperative form for an infinitive.)

2. The second person plural imperative has the same spelling as that of the second person plural of the present indicative, e.g., **sequiminī!**

Take careful note of the following examples:

2. hortáre, *urge!*   fatére, *confess!*   séquere   mōlíre   pátere
2. hortáminī, *urge!*   fatéminī, *confess!*   sequíminī   mōlíminī   patíminī

SEMI-DEPONENT VERBS

Semi-deponent ("half-deponent") is the name given to a few verbs which are normal in the present system but are deponent in the perfect system, as is clearly demonstrated by the principal parts. For example:

aúdeō, *I dare*   audére, *to dare*   aúsus sum, *I dared*
gaúdeō, *I rejoice*   gaudére, *to rejoice*   gāvísus sum, *I rejoiced*

ABLATIVE WITH SPECIAL DEPONENTS

The ablative of means is used idiomatically with a few deponent verbs, of which **ūtor** (and its compounds) is by far the most common (the others, **fruor**, *to enjoy,* **fungor**, *to perform,* **potior**, *to possess,* and **vēscor**, *to eat,* are

not employed in this book, but you will likely encounter them in your later reading). **Ūtor,** *to use, enjoy,* is in fact a reflexive verb and means literally *to benefit oneself* by means of something.[1]

Ūtitur stilō,
> *he is benefiting himself by means of a pencil* (literally).
> *he is using a pencil* (idiomatically).

Nōn audent ūtī nāvibus, *they do not dare to use the ships.*
Nōn ausī sunt ūtī nāvibus, *they did not dare to use the ships.*

FURTHER EXAMPLES OF DEPONENT FORMS IN SENTENCES

1. Eum patientem haec mala hortātī sunt,
   they encouraged him (as he was) suffering these evils.
2. Eum passūrum haec mala hortātī sunt,
   they encouraged him (as he was) about to suffer these evils.
3. Is, haec mala passus, hortandus est,
   this man, having suffered these evils, ought to be encouraged.
4. Is haec mala fortiter patiētur,
   he will suffer these evils bravely.
5. Eum sequere et haec mōlīre,
   follow him and work at these things.
6. Eum sequī et haec mōlīrī nōn ausus es,
   you did not dare to follow him and work at these things.
7. Eum sequeris/sequēris,
   you are following/will follow him.
8. Eum hortēmur et sequāmur,
   let us encourage and follow him.
9. Cicerō Graecīs litterīs ūtēbātur,
   Cicero used to enjoy Greek literature.

VOCABULARY

ánima, -ae, f., *soul, spirit* (anima, animism, animatism, animation, animated, inanimate, etc.; cp. **animal, animus**)

remíssiō, remissiónis, f., *letting go, release; relaxation* (remiss, remission; from **re + mittō**)

vōx, vócis, f., *voice, word* (vocal, vocalic, vocalize, vociferous, vowel; vox angelica, vox humana, vox populi; cp. **vocō**)

advérsus, -a, -um, *opposite, adverse* (adversary, adversative, adversely, adversity; cp. **vertō**)

tális, tále, *such, of such a sort* (cp. **quālis,** *of what sort, what kind of*)

vae, interj., often + dat., *alas, woe to*

---

[1] Cp. Fr. **se servir de,** "to use," orig. "to serve oneself with."

árbitror, arbitrárī, arbitrátus sum, *to judge, think* (arbiter, arbitress, arbitration, arbitrator, arbitrary, arbitrarily)

cónor, cōnárī, cōnấtus sum, *to try, attempt* (conation, conative)

créscō, créscere, crévī, crétum, *to increase* (crescent, crescendo, crescive, concrescence, concrete, decrease, excrescence, increment, accretion, accrue, crew, recruit)

ēgrédior, égredī, ēgréssus sum, *to go out* (aggression, congress, degrade, digress, egress, grade, gradient, gradual, graduate, ingredient, ingress, progress, regress, retrogress, transgress)

fáteor, fatérī, fássus sum, *to confess, admit* (confess, confession, profess, profession, professor; cp. **fābula, fāma, fātum,** also **for, fārī, fātus sum,** Ch. 40)

hórtor, hortárī, hortấtus sum, *to encourage, urge* (hortatory, exhort, exhortation)

lóquor, lóquī, locútus sum, *to say, speak, tell* (loquacious, circumlocution, colloquial, elocution, eloquent, obloquy, soliloquy, ventriloquist)

mólior, mōlírī, mōlítus sum, *to work at, build, undertake, plan* (demolish, demolition; cp. **mōlḗs,** *a large mass, massive structure*)

mórior, mórī, mórtuus sum, fut. act. part. **moritū́rus,** *to die* (moribund, mortuary; cp. **mors, mortālis, immortālis**)

náscor, náscī, nátus sum, *to be born; spring forth, arise* (agnate, cognate, innate, nascent, natal, nation, nature, naive; cp. **nāta, nātūra**)

pátior, pátī, pássus sum, *to suffer, endure; permit* (passion, passive, patient, compassion, compatible, incompatibility, impatient, impassioned, impassive, dispassionate)

profícíscor, -fícíscī, -féctus sum, *to set out, start* (profit and proficient from the related verb **prōficiō,** *to make headway, gain results*)

rústicor, rūsticárī, rūsticấtus sum, *to live in the country* (rusticate, rustic, rural, cp. **rūsticus,** *rural,* **rūs,** Ch. 37)

sédeō, sedére, sḗdī, séssum, *to sit* (sedan, sedate, sedentary, sediment, sessile, session, assess, assiduous, president, siege, subsidy)

séquor, séquī, secútus sum, *to follow* (consequent, consecutive, sequence, sequel, subsequent; see Etymology below)

spéctō (1), *to look at, see* (spectate, spectator, spectacle, speculate, aspect, circumspect, inspect, prospect, respect, suspect; cp. **speculum**)

útor, útī, úsus sum + abl., *to use; enjoy, experience* (abuse, disuse, peruse, usual, usurp, usury, utensil, utilize, utility, utilitarian; cp. **ūtilis**)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Nisi quis plēbī opem celeriter referet auxiliumve prōmissum praebēbit, mīlia virōrum morientur.

2. Cum urbs plēna custōdiārum esset, nōn ausī estis suscipere scelera tam gravia quam voluerātis.

3. Dīc nunc cūr velīs tē ad istam dīvitem et candidam cōnferre. Vērē ac līberē loquere; nōlī recūsāre!

4. Dīvitiīs trāditīs, heu, illī philosophī eādem nocte subitō profectī sunt in exsilium, unde numquam ēgredī potuērunt.

5. Nē patiāmur hanc antīquissimam scientiam āmittī.

6. Fateor mē vīnō merō apud mē ūsūrum esse.

7. Ab initiō nōn comprehendistī quantus exercitus nōs sequerētur et quot elephantōs istī mīlitēs sēcum dūcerent.

8. Prīmō respondit sē nōlle sequī ducem mediocris virtūtis sapienti-aeve, cum cīvitās in līmine bellī stāret.

9. Ex urbe subitō ēgressus, ferrō suō morī semel cōnātus est.

10. Cum Aristotelēs hortārētur hominēs ad virtūtem, tamen arbitrābā-tur virtūtem in hominibus nōn nāscī.

11. Māter paterque nunc rūsticantur ut ā labōribus remissiōne suāvī ūtantur.

12. Dā mihi, amābō tē, multum salis et vīnum aquamve, ut cēnā max-imē ūtar.

13. They did not permit me to speak with him at that time.

14. We kept thinking (**arbitror**) that he would use the office more wisely.

15. If any one should use this water even once, he would die.

16. If those four soldiers had followed us, we would not have dared to put the weapons on the ships.

17. This dinner will be good, provided that you use salt.

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

1. Cēdāmus Phoebō et, monitī, meliōra sequāmur. (*Virgil.—Phoebus Apollo was god of prophecy.)

2. Nam nēmō sine vitiīs nāscitur; optimus ille est quī minima habet. (Horace.)

3. Mundus est commūnis urbs deōrum atque hominum; hī enim sōlī, ratiōne ūtentēs, iūre ac lēge vīvunt. (Cicero.)

4. Tardē sed graviter vir sapiēns īrāscitur. (*Publilius Syrus.—**tardus, -a, -um,** *slow, late.*—**īrāscor, īrāscī, īrātus sum,** *to become angry.*)

5. Quae cum ita sint, Catilīna, ēgredere ex urbe; patent portae; profi-cīscere; nōbīscum versārī iam diūtius nōn potes; id nōn feram, nōn patiar. (Cicero.—**Quae cum = Cum haec.**—**versor, versārī, versātus sum,** *to stay.*)

6. Cūra pecūniam crēscentem sequitur et dīves male dormit. (Horace.)

7. Sī in Britanniam profectus essēs, nēmō in illā tantā īnsulā iūre perī-tior fuisset. (Cicero.—**Britannia, -ae,** Britain.—**perītus, -a, -um** + abl., *skilled in.*)

8. Nisi laus nova nāscitur etiam vetus laus in incertō iacet ac saepe āmittitur. (Publilius Syrus.)—**vetus,** gen. **veteris,** *old.*)

9. Spērō autem mē secūtum esse in libellīs meīs tālem temperantiam ut nēmō bonus dē illīs querī possit. (Martial.—**temperantia, -ae.— queror, querī, questus sum,** *to complain.*)

10. Hōrae quidem et diēs et annī discēdunt; nec praeteritum tempus umquam revertitur, nec quid sequātur potest scīrī. (Cicero.—**praeteritus, -a, -um,** *past.*—**revertor, revertī, reversus sum,** *to return.*)

11. Nōvistī mōrēs mulierum: dum mōliuntur, dum cōnantur, dum in speculum spectant, annus lābitur. (Terence.—**mulier, -eris,** *woman.*—**lābor, lābī, lāpsus sum,** *to slip, glide.*)

12. Amīcitia rēs plūrimās continet; nōn aquā, nōn igne in plūribus locīs ūtimur quam amīcitiā. (Cicero.)

13. Homō stultus! Postquam dīvitiās habēre coepit, mortuus est! (Cicero.—**postquam,** conj., *after.*)

14. Ō passī graviōra, dabit deus hīs quoque fīnem. (*Virgil.—**Ō passī,** voc. pl., *O you who have . . . .*—**hīs** = **hīs rēbus gravibus.**)

CLAUDIUS' EXCREMENTAL EXPIRATION

Et ille quidem animam ēbulliit, et ex eō dēsiit vīvere vidērī. Exspīrāvit autem dum comoedōs audit, ut sciās mē nōn sine causā illōs timēre. Ultima vōx eius haec inter hominēs audīta est, cum maiōrem sonitum ēmisisset illā parte quā facilius loquēbātur: "Vae mē, putō, concacāvī." Quod an fēcerit, nesciō—omnia certē concacāvit!

(*Seneca, *Apocolocyntōsis* 4; a satirical farce on the emperor Claudius' death and deification.—**ēbulliō, -īre, ēbulliī,** *to bubble out,* + **animam,** comic for *he died.*—**ex eō,** sc. **tempore.**—**dēsinō, -sinere, -siī, -situm,** *to cease.*—**exspīrāre,** *to breathe out, die.*—**comoedus, -ī,** *comic actor.*—**sonitus, -ūs,** *sound.*—**ē** + **mittere.**—**illā parte,** sc. ex, i.e., his bottom.—**concacāre,** *to defecate upon.*—**quod** = **id.**—**an,** *whether,* introducing an ind. quest.)

The emperor Claudius
Louvre, Paris, France

AND VICE IS NOT NICE!

Mentītur quī tē vitiōsum, Zōile, dīcit:
nōn vitiōsus homō es, Zōile, sed vitium!

(*Martial 11.92; meter: elegiac couplet.—**mentior, mentīrī, mentītus sum,** *to lie, deceive.*—**vitiōsus,** adj. from **vitium.**—**tē vitiōsum,** sc. **esse,** and remember that the verb **sum, esse** is often omitted in both prose and verse when it is readily understood from the context.—**Zōilus,** a Greek name.)

PRETTY IS AS PRETTY DOES

Bella es, nōvimus, et puella, vērum est,
et dīves—quis enim potest negāre?
Sed cum tē nimium, Fabulla, laudās,
nec dīves neque bella nec puella es!

(*Martial 1.64; meter: hendecasyllabic.)

ON LESBIA'S HUSBAND

Ille mī pār esse deō vidētur,
ille, sī fās est, superāre dīvōs,
quī, sedēns adversus, identidem tē
    spectat et audit
5 dulce rīdentem, miserō quod omnīs
ēripit sēnsūs mihi: nam simul tē,
Lesbia, aspexī, nihil est super mī,
    [Lesbia, vōcis,]
lingua sed torpet, tenuis sub artūs
10 flamma dēmānat, sonitū suōpte
tintinant aurēs, geminā teguntur
    lūmina nocte.
Ōtium, Catulle, tibi molestum est;
ōtiō exsultās nimiumque gestīs;
15 ōtium et rēgēs prius et beātās
    perdidit urbēs.

(*Catullus 51; meter: Sapphic stanza.—**mī**= **mihi.**—**fās est,** *it is right.*—**dīvōs** = **deōs.**—**identidem,** adv., *again and again.*—**dulce,** adv. of **dulcis.**—**miserō** ... **mihi,** dat. of separation; the prose order would be **quod omnīs** (= **omnēs**) **sēnsūs mihi miserō ēripit.**—**quod,** *a circumstance which;* the entire preceding clause is the antecedent.—**simul,** adv., *as soon as.*—**aspexī** = **spectāvī.**—**nihil,** with **vōcis,** gen. of the whole, *no voice;* **est super** = **superest,** *remains.*—**Lesbia, vōcis** is an editorial suggestion for a verse missing in the manuscripts.—**torpēre,** *to grow numb.*—**tenuis,** with **flamma,** from **tenuis, -e,** *thin, slender.*—**artus, -ūs,** *joint, limb* (of the body).—**flamma, -ae,** *flame.*—**dēmānāre,** *to flow through.*—**sonitus, -ūs,**

sound.—**suôpte**, intensive for **suô.**—**tintinãre**, *to ring.*—**tego̅, -ere,** *to cover.*—**lûmen, -minis,** *light; eye.*—**molestus, -a, -um,** *troublesome.*—**exsultãre,** *to celebrate, exult (in),* + **o̅tio̅.**—**gestîre,** *to act without restraint, be elated or triumphant.*—**perdo̅, -ere, perdidî, perditum,** *to destroy.*)

ETYMOLOGY

"Sympathy" derives from Gk. **syn** (*with*) + **pathos** (*suffering*). What Latin-rooted word is the exact equivalent of "sympathy"?

Further words associated with **sequor:** execute, executive, executor, obsequious, prosecute, persecute, pursue, ensue, sue, suit, suite, sect, second. Related to **sequor,** besides **secundus,** is **socius** (*a follower, ally*), whence: social, society, associate, dissociate.

In the readings   4. irate, irascible, irascibility. 5. **Versãrî** literally means *to turn (oneself) around:* versatile, converse, conversant, conversation. 8. veteran, inveterate. 9. intemperance.—querulous, quarrel. 10. preterit, preterition, praeteritio.—revert, reverse, reversible, reversion. "Claudius": ebullient.—expire, expiration, expiratory, expiry.—cp. **sonus, -î,** *sound:* sonic, sonar, resonate. "Lesbia": divine.—aspect.—tenuous, tenuity.—flammable, inflame, inflammatory, inflammation.—tintinnabulation.—luminary, lumination, illuminate.—molest, molestation.—exultant, exultation.—perdition.

LATÎNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ÛTILIS!

Salvête, meî discipulî discipulaeque! Quid agitis? (Spêro̅ vo̅s valêre.) Now that you've begun to read more real, unadapted Latin literature (like the above selections from Martial, Seneca, and Catullus), you might appreciate the following remark: "Looking back on school, I really liked Latin. In my case, a little bit stuck: I ended up with a feeling for literature."—Paul McCartney. So, how much Latin is enough?—**quantum placeat,** *as much as gives one pleasure* (close to **quantum vîs,** Ch. 32, and more, one hopes, than **quantum satis,** Ch. 30!).

Here are some Latin phrases that are by no means moribund: first, an unfortunate (and fortunately overstated!) old proverb, **quem dî dîligunt, adulêscêns moritur;** a reminder of one's mortality is a **memento̅ morî,** freely "remember that you must die" (the **-to̅** form is a relatively rare future imperative not formally introduced in this book but used not infrequently in ancient legal and religious texts); on sacrificing one's life for one's country, Horace wrote **dulce et deco̅rum** (from **deco̅rus, -a, -um,** *fitting, proper*) **est pro̅ patriã morî;** another bleak proverb (but essential here, as it offers two deponents!) is the astronomer Manilius' dictum, **nascentês morimur** (*even as we are) being born, we (begin to) die;* and then there is Seneca's version of "eat, drink, and be merry," complete with a passive periphrastic, **bibãmus, moriendum est,** and the words addressed to the emperor by gladiators enter-

ing the arena, **avē, Caesar: moritūrī tē salutāmus,** *hail, Caesar: we (who are) about to die salute you!* To any who have suffered, not death, but defeat, one might proclaim **vae, victīs,** *woe to the conquered,* a famous line from Livy's account of the Gallic sack of Rome in 390 B.C.

Well, enough morbidity. **Hīc sunt alia miscellānea ex vocābulāriō novō: vōx populī; vōx clamantis in dēsertō,** *the voice of one calling out in the wilderness* (from the gospel of Matthew); **crēscit amor nummī quantum ipsa pecūnia crēvit,** *love of the coin grows as much as one's wealth itself has grown* (Juvenal 14.139); **sedente animō,** *with a calm mind.* And here are some other deponents: Maryland's state motto is **crēscite et multiplicāminī** (can you figure that one out?); **loquitur** is a note in a dramatic text; and the legal phrase **rēs ipsa loquitur,** *the matter speaks for itself,* we have seen before, but now you understand the verb form. And how about this sequence: **seq.** is an abbreviation for **sequēns/sequentēs,** *the following,* once common in footnotes; a **nōn sequitur** is a remark that *does not follow* logically from a prior statement (a **sequitur,** of course, does!); **sequor nōn īnferior,** *I follow (but am) not inferior.* Will this exciting chapter have a sequel in the subsequent chapter? And, if not, what will be the consequences? Stay tuned . . . **et valēte!**

Gladiators in combat, detail of mosaic from Torrenova, 4th century A.D.
Galleria Borghese, Rome, Italy

35

Dative with Adjectives; Dative with Special Verbs; Dative with Compounds

The dative case is in general employed to indicate a person or thing that some act or circumstance applies to or refers to "indirectly," as opposed to the accusative, which indicates the more immediate recipient or object of an action. The indirect object, e.g., is the person/thing toward which a direct object is "referred" by the subject + verb: "I am giving the book [direct object] to you [indirect object]" = "I am giving the book, not just to anyone anywhere, but in your direction, i.e., to you." Even in the passive periphrastic construction, the dative of agent indicates the person for whom a certain action is obligatory. A number of other dative case usages are distinguished by grammarians, but most are simply variants on this basic notion of reference or direction.

DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

The dative with adjectives construction is one example which you have already encountered in your readings, though it has not yet been formally introduced. Simply stated, a noun in the dative case is employed with many Latin adjectives—particularly those indicating attitude, quality, or relation—to indicate the direction (literally or metaphorically) in which the ad-

jective applies; such adjectives are normally followed by "to," "toward," or "for" in English (e.g., "friendly to/toward," "hostile to/toward," "suitable to/ for," "useful to," "similar to," "equal to," etc.).

> Mors est similis **somnō,** *death is similar to sleep.*
> Sciēbam tē **mihi** fidēlem esse, *I knew that you were loyal to me.*
> Nōbīs est vir amīcus, *he is a man friendly toward us.*
> Quisque **sibi** cārus est, *each one is dear to himself.*
> Ille vidētur pār esse **deō,** *that man seems to be equal to a god.*

DATIVE WITH SPECIAL VERBS

Conceptually similar is the dative with special verbs construction. Many of these verbs (the most important of which are listed below) are actually intransitive and, like the adjectives that take the dative, indicate attitude or relationship, e.g., **nocēre,** *to be injurious to,* **parcō,** *to be lenient toward,* etc. Although these verbs are often translated into English as though they were transitive and the dative nouns they govern as though they were direct objects (e.g., **tibi parcit,** *he spares you;* lit., *he is lenient toward you*), the datives again indicate the person (or thing) toward whom the attitude or quality applies.

Although a common rule for the dative with special verbs lists those meaning *to favor, help, harm, please, displease, trust, distrust, believe, persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, envy, threaten, pardon,* and *spare,* the list is cumbersome and involves some important exceptions (including **iuvō,** *to help,* and **iubeō,** *to command, order,* which take accusative objects). The best procedure at this point in your study of the language is simply to understand the concept and then to learn some of the commonest Latin verbs that take this construction.

In memorizing the following list, note carefully that the more literal translation, given first for each verb, includes English *to* and thus reminds you of the required dative; note as well that each verb conveys some notion of *attitude toward* a person or thing, again suggesting a dative, as discussed above.

> **crēdō** + dat., *entrust to; trust, believe* (**crēdō tibi,** *I believe you*)
> **ignōscō** + dat., *grant pardon to; pardon, forgive* (**ignōscō virīs,** *I forgive the men*)
> **imperō** + dat., *give orders to; command* (**imperō mīlitibus,** *I command the soldiers*)
> **noceō** + dat., *do harm to; harm* (**noceō hostibus,** *I harm the enemy*)

nūbō + dat., *be married to; marry* (**nūbō illī virō,** *I am marrying that man*)
parcō + dat., *be lenient to; spare* (**parcō vōbīs,** *I spare you*)
pāreō + dat., *be obedient to; obey* (**pāreō ducī,** *I obey the leader*)
persuādeō + dat., *make sweet to; persuade* (**persuādeō mihi,** *I persuade myself*)
placeō + dat., *be pleasing to; please* (**placeō patrī,** *I please my father*)
serviō + dat., *be a slave to; serve* (**serviō patriae,** *I serve my country*)
studeō + dat., *direct one's zeal to; study* (**studeō litterīs,** *I study literature*)

Crēde amīcīs, *believe (trust) your friends.*

Ignōsce mihi, *pardon me (forgive me).*

Magistra discipulīs parcit, *the teacher spares (is lenient toward) her pupils.*

Hoc eīs nōn placet, *this does not please them.*

Nōn possum eī persuādēre, *I cannot persuade him.*

Variae rēs hominibus nocent, *various things harm men.*

Cicerō philosophiae studēbat, *Cicero used to study philosophy.*

Philosophiae servīre est lībertās, *to serve philosophy is liberty.*

Some of these verbs, it should be noted, can also take a direct object (e.g., **crēdō** takes a dative for a person believed, **mātrī crēdit,** *he believes his mother,* but an accusative for a thing, **id crēdit,** *he believes it*); and some, like **imperō** and **persuādeo,** take a noun clause as an object, as we shall see in the next chapter.

DATIVE WITH COMPOUND VERBS

A very similar dative usage occurs with certain verbs compounded with **ad, ante, con- (=cum), in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super,** and sometimes **circum** and **re-** (in the sense of *against*). The dative is especially common when the meaning of a compound verb is significantly different from its simple form, whether transitive or intransitive; conversely, if the meaning of the compound is not essentially different from that of the simple verb, then the dative is ordinarily not employed:

Sequor eum, *I follow him.*

Obsequor eī, *I obey him.*

Sum amīcus eius, *I am his friend.*

Adsum amīcō, *I support my friend* (lit., *I am next to my friend,* i.e., at his side).

Vēnit ad nōs, *he came to us.*

Advēnit ad nōs, *he came to us.*

Often the dative appears to function essentially as a kind of object of the prepositional prefix, though the preposition would take another case if separate from the verb; thus **adsum amīcō** above and the following examples:

Aliīs praestant, *they surpass the others* (lit., *they stand before the others*).
Praeerat exercituī, *he was in charge of the army* (lit., *he was in front of/ before the army*).

If the simple verb is transitive, then the compound may take an accusative as object of the root verb as well as a dative:

Praeposuī eum exercituī, *I put him in charge of the army* (lit., *I put him* [posuī eum] *in front of the army* [prae- + exercituī]).
Praeposuī pecūniam amīcitiae, *I preferred money to friendship* (lit., *I put money* [posuī pecūniam] *before friendship* [prae- + amīcitiae]).

Since there is such variability in the rules for dative with special verbs and with compounds, the best procedure is to *understand the concepts involved* and then, when encountering a dative in a sentence, to be aware of these possible functions; just as with the other cases, you should be maintaining a list of the dative uses you have learned (there have been five thus far) in your notebook or computer file, including definitions and representative examples.

VOCABULARY

aéstās, aestátis, f., *summer* (estival, estivate, estivation; cp. **aestus, -ūs**, *heat*, **aestuāre**, *to be hot, seethe, boil*)

iánua, -ae, f., *door* (janitor, Janus, January)

péctus, péctoris, n., *breast, heart* (pectoral, expectorate, parapet)

praémium, -iī, n. *reward, prize* (premium)

īrátus, -a, -um, *angry* (irate; cp. **īra, īráscor**, *to be angry*)

antepónō, -pónere, -pósuī, -pósitum, *to put before, prefer*

fóveō, fovére, fóvī, fótum, *to comfort, nurture, cherish* (foment)

ignóscō, -nóscere, -nóvī, -nótum + dat., *to grant pardon to, forgive*

ímperō (1) + dat., *to give orders to, command* (imperative, emperor; cp. **imperātor, imperium**)

míror, mīrárī, mīrátus sum, *to marvel at, admire, wonder* (admire, marvel, miracle, mirage, mirror; cp. **mīrābilis**, Ch. 38, **mīrāculum**, *a marvel*)

nóceō, nocére, nócuī, nócitum + dat., *to do harm to, harm, injure* (innocent, innocuous, noxious, nuisance, obnoxious; cp. **innocēns**, *blameless*)

núbō, núbere, núpsī, núptum, *to cover, veil;* + dat. (of a bride) *to be married to, marry* (nubile, connubial, nuptials; cp. **nūptiae**, *marriage*)

párcō, párcere, pepércī, parsúrum + dat., *to be lenient to, spare* (parsimonious, parsimony)

páreō, párére, párui + dat., *to be obedient to, obey* (apparent, appear)

persuádeō, -suādére, -suásī, -suásum + dat., *to succeed in urging, persuade, convince* (assuage, dissuade, suasion, suave; cp. **suāvis**)

pláceō, placére, plácuī, plácitum + dat., *to be pleasing to, please* (complacent, placable, implacable, placate, placid, plea, plead, pleasure, displease; cp. **placidus**, *kindly, agreeable, calm*)

sápiō, sápere, sapīvī, *to have good taste; have good sense, be wise* (sapient, sapid, insipid, sage, savor; cp. **sapiēns, sapientia**)

sérviō, servíre, servívī, servítum + dat., *to be a slave to, serve* (service, disservice, subserve, subservient, servile, servility, deserve, desert = reward, dessert; cp. **servus, servitūs;** distinguish from **serváre**)

stúdeō, studére, stúduī + dat., *to direct one's zeal to, be eager for, study* (student; cp. **studium, studiōsus**, *eager, diligent, scholarly*)

subrídeō, -rīdére, -rísī, -rísum, *to smile (down) upon* (cp. **rīdeō, rīdiculus**)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Minerva, fīlia Iovis, nāta est plēna scientiae et ingeniī.
2. Custōdiae sī cum duce nostrō līberē loquantur et huic tyrannum trādere cōnentur, sine perīculō ex moeniīs urbis prōtinus ēgredī possint.
3. Pārēre lēgibus aequīs melius est quam tyrannō servīre.
4. Cum optimē honōribus ūsus esset et sibi cīvitātem semper antepōneret, etiam plēbs eī crēdēbat et nōn invidēbat.
5. Diū passa, māter vestra fēlīciter, sedēns apud amīcōs, mortua est.
6. Philosophī cōnsilium spectāvērunt et recūsāvērunt tālem rem suscipere mōlīrīve.
7. Cum dīves sīs atque dīvitiae crēscant, tamen opibus tuīs parcere vīs et nēminī assem offerēs.
8. Ab illā īnsulā repente profectus, eādem nocte ad patriam nāve advēnit; tum, quaerēns remissiōnem animae, diū rūsticābātur.
9. Hic mīles, cum imperātōrī vestrō nōn placēret, heu, illa praemia prōmissa āmīsit.
10. Nisi mōrēs parēs scientiae sunt—id nōbīs fatendum est—scientia nōbīs magnopere nocēre potest.
11. Magistra tum rogāvit duōs parvōs puerōs quot digitōs habērent.
12. Māter candida nātae cārissimae subrīdet, quam maximē fovet, et eī plūrima ōscula suāvia dat.
13. Why does he now wish to hurt his two friends?
14. If he does not spare the plebeians, alas, we shall never trust him.
15. Since you are studying Roman literature, you are serving a very difficult but a very great master.
16. If they were truly willing to please us, they would not be using their wealth thus against the state.

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

1. Nēmō līber est quī corporī servit. (Seneca.)
2. Imperium habēre vīs magnum? Imperā tibi! (Publilius Syrus.)
3. Bonīs nocet quisquis pepercit malīs. (*Id.)
4. Cum tū omnia pecūniae postpōnās, mīrāris sī nēmō tibi amōrem praestat? (Horace.—**post-pōnō.**)
5. Frūstrā aut pecūniae aut imperiīs aut opibus aut glōriae student; potius studeant virtūtī et honōrī et scientiae et alicui artī. (Cicero.— **frūstrā,** adv., *in vain.*—**potius,** adv., *rather.*)
6. Virtūtī melius quam Fortūnae crēdāmus; virtūs nōn nōvit calamitātī cēdere. (Publilius Syrus.—**calamitās, -tātis.**)
7. Et Deus āit: "Faciāmus hominem ad imāginem nostram et praesit piscibus maris bēstiīsque terrae." (*Genesis.*—**imāgō, -ginis,** f.— **prae-sum.**—**piscis, piscis,** m., *fish.*—**bēstia, -ae,** *beast.*)
8. Omnēs arbitrātī sunt tē dēbēre mihi parcere. (Cicero.)
9. Quid facere vellet, ostendit, et illī servō spē lībertātis magnīsque praemiīs persuāsit. (Caesar.)
10. Sī cui librī Cicerōnis placent, ille sciat sē prōfēcisse. (Quintilian.— **prōficiō** = **prō** + **faciō,** *to progress, benefit.*)
11. In urbe nostrā mihi contigit docērī quantum īrātus Achillēs Graecīs nocuisset. (Horace.—**contingō, -ere, -tigī, -tāctum,** *to touch closely, fall to the lot of.*)
12. Alicui rogantī melius quam iubentī pārēmus. (Publilius Syrus.)
13. Vīvite fortiter fortiaque pectora rēbus adversīs oppōnite. (Horace.— **oppōnō** = **ob** + **pōnō,** *to set against.*)
14. Nōn ignāra malī, miserīs succurrere discō. (*Virgil.—**ignārus, -a, -um,** *ignorant;* **ignāra** is fem. because it agrees with Dido, exiled queen, who speaks these words to shipwrecked Aeneas.—**succurrō** = **sub** + **currō,** *to help.*)
15. Ignōsce saepe alterī, numquam tibi. (Publilius Syrus.)
16. Quandō tē, deum meum, quaerō, vītam beātam quaerō; quaeram tē ut vīvat anima mea. (St. Augustine.)

OVID ASKS THE GODS TO INSPIRE HIS WORK

In nova fert animus mūtātās dīcere fōrmās
corpora: dī, coeptīs—nam vōs mūtāstis et illās—
adspīrāte meīs prīmāque ab orīgine mundī
ad mea perpetuum dēdūcite tempora carmen!

(*Ovid, *Metamorphōsēs* 1.1–4; meter: dactylic hexameter. Ovid's *Metamorphō-sēs* was an epic that recounted hundreds of stories of miraculous transforma-tions, from the creation of the universe right down into his own times; the chal-

lenge in translating this brief excerpt, as with much of Latin verse, is to connect the adjectives with the nouns they modify, so watch the endings!—**nova,** with **corpora.**—**fert,** *compels (me).*—**coeptīs . . . meīs,** dat. with the compound **adspīrāte,** *my beginnings,* i.e., *the inception of my work.*—**mūtāstis** = **mūtāvistis;** such contractions, with v and the following vowel dropped, are common in certain perfect tense forms.—**et** = **etiam.**—**illās,** sc. **fōrmās.**—**adspīrāre,** *to breathe upon, inspire.*—**orīgō, -ginis,** f.—Note the interlocked word order of **mea . . . tempora** and **perpetuum . . . carmen.**—**dē + dūcō.**)

SORRY, NOBODY'S HOME!

Nāsīca ad poētam Ennium vēnit. Cum ad iānuam Ennium quaesīvisset et serva respondisset eum in casā nōn esse, sēnsit illam dominī iussū id dīxisse et Ennium vērō esse in casā. Post paucōs diēs, cum Ennius ad Nāsīcam vēnisset et eum ad iānuam quaereret, Nāsīca ipse exclāmāvit sē in casā nōn esse. Tum Ennius "Quid?" inquit, "Ego nōn cognōscō vōcem tuam?" Hīc Nāsīca merō cum sale respondit: "Vae, homō es impudēns! Ego, cum tē quaererem, servae tuae crēdidī tē nōn in casā esse; nōnne tū mihi ipsī nunc crēdis?"

(Cicero, *Dē Ōrātōre* 2.276.—Publius Cornelius Scipio Nasica was a celebrated jurist.—Quintus Ennius, a famous early Roman poet.—**iussū,** *at the command of.*—**exclāmāre,** *to shout out.*—**impudēns,** gen. **impudentis.**)

"I DO." "I DON'T!"

Nūbere vīs Prīscō. Nōn mīror, Paula; sapīstī.
Dūcere tē nōn vult Prīscus: et ille sapit!

(*Martial 9.10; meter: elegiac couplet.—Priscus was an eligible bachelor, and probably a rich one; Paula was apparently not his type!—**sapīstī** = **sapīvistī;** see on **mūtāstis** above.—**dūcere,** i.e., **in mātrimōnium.**—**et** here, as often, = **etiam.**)

MARONILLA HAS A COUGH

Petit Gemellus nūptiās Marōnillae
et cupit et īnstat et precātur et dōnat.
Adeōne pulchra est? Immō, foedius nīl est.
Quid ergō in illā petitur et placet? Tussit!

(*Martial 1.10; meter: choliambic. Gemellus is a legacy-hunter, and Maronilla a rich old hag whose estate he hopes to inherit.—**nūptiae, -ārum,** f. pl., *marriage.*—**īnstāre,** *to press, insist.*—**precor, precārī, precātus sum,** *to beg, entreat.*—**dōnat** = **dat.**—**adeō** = **tam.**—**immō,** adv., *on the contrary.*—**foedius** = **turpius.**—**nīl** = **nihil.**—**ergō** = **igitur.**—**tussīre,** *to cough.*)

SUMMER VACATION

Ludī magister, parce simplicī turbae:

. . .

aestāte puerī sī valent, satis discunt.

(*Martial 10.62.1, 12; meter: choliambic.—**simplex**, gen. **simplicis**, here *youthful.*)

ETYMOLOGY

In the readings

4. postponement. 5. frustrate, frustration. 6. calamitous. 7. imagine, imagery.—Pisces, piscatory, piscatology, piscary.—bestial, bestiality, bestialize, beast, beastly. 10. proficient, proficiency. 11. contingent, contingency, contiguous, contiguity, contact, contagion, contagious. 13. opponent, opposite, opposition. 14. succor. "Ovid": aspire, aspiration, aspiratory.—original, originate. "Sorry": exclamation, exclamatory.—impudence. "Maronilla": nuptials; cp. **nūbō.**—instant, instance, instantly.—imprecation.—donate, donation.—tussive, pertussis. "Summer": simple, simpleton, simplex, simplicity, simplistic.

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

Salvēte, discipulī discipulaeque! Or perhaps now that you have learned the meaning of **studēre** you should be termed **studentēs,** since it is clearly your zeal for learning that has brought you this far in your study of Latin! So, **studentēs,** here is your **praemium,** more delectables for your **cēna Latīna,** once more **ex novā grammaticā** (*grammar*) **atque vocābulāriō:** if you remember that verbs signifying "favor . . . etc." govern the dative, you can understand this first, fortuitously alliterative motto, **fortūna favet fortibus; favēte linguīs,** lit. *be favorable with your tongues,* was an expression used in Roman religious rituals meaning "to avoid any ill-omened words, keep silent"; **imperō** obviously gives us "imperative," but also the expression **dīvide** (from **dīvidere,** *to separate, divide*) **et imperā;** a **placet** is an affirmative vote, a **placitum** a judicial decision, and a "placebo" is an unmedicated preparation meant to humor a patient (what, literally, does the "medicine" promise to do?); secret meetings are held **iānuīs clausīs** (from **claudō, claudere, clausī, clausum,** *to close,* as in "recluse," "closet," etc.), but **iānuae mentis** are the ones studying Latin will help you to open (**aperiō, aperīre, aperuī, apertum** is *to open,* as in "aperture"). **Studēte Latīnae, aperīte mentēs, et semper valēte, studentēs!**

36

Jussive Noun Clauses; Fīō

JUSSIVE NOUN CLAUSES

The "jussive noun clause" may be regarded as a kind of indirect command. As in the case of indirect statements (Ch. 25) and indirect questions (Ch. 30), the actual command (or request, or entreaty, etc.) is not quoted verbatim, via an imperative or a jussive subjunctive (Ch. 28) in a main clause, but is reported indirectly in a subordinate clause, i.e., not "he ordered them, 'Do this!'" but "he ordered them to do this." In Latin such clauses are usually introduced by either **ut** or **nē** and employ a subjunctive verb (usually present or imperfect tense), whereas in English, and therefore in translation, we ordinarily employ a *present infinitive* with no introductory word and no auxiliary such as *may* or *might:*

1. Hoc facite, *do this* (imperative). Direct command.
2. Hoc faciant, *let them do this* (jussive subj.). Direct command.
3. Imperat vōbīs ut hoc faciātis, *he commands you to do this.*
4. Imperāvit eīs ut hoc facerent, *he commanded them to do this.*
5. Persuādet eīs ut hoc faciant, *he persuades them to do this.*
6. Petīvit ab eīs nē hoc facerent, *he begged (from) them not to do this.*
7. Monuit eōs nē hoc facerent, *he warned them not to do this.*
8. Hortātus est eōs ut hoc facerent, *he urged them to do this.*

These clauses are often confused with purpose clauses because in appearance they are identical, but a study of the examples given above reveals their essentially jussive nature. In contrast to purpose clauses, which function adverbially (answering the question "why?"), the jussive clauses under discussion function as noun objects of the main verbs which introduce them (answering the question "what . . . was ordered, requested, advised, etc.?"). The

following list includes some of the more common verbs that can introduce jussive noun clauses and also indicates the case (dative, accusative, etc.) employed for the person being ordered or requested to act:

hortor eum ut, *I urge him to . . .*
imperō eī ut, *I order him to . . .*
moneō eum ut, *I advise him to . . .*
ōrō eum ut, *I beg him to . . .*
persuādeō eī ut, *I persuade him to . . .* (or *I persuade him that . . .*)
petō ab eō ut, *I beg (from) him to . . .*
quaerō ab eō ut, *I request (from/of) him to . . .*
rogō eum ut, *I ask him to . . .*

Volō, nōlō, and **mālō** (Ch. 32) sometimes introduce such clauses (e.g., **mālō ut,** *I prefer that . . .*), although they also commonly are followed by infinitives; **iubeō** nearly always takes the infinitive construction.

IRREGULAR Fīō, fierī, factus sum, to occur, happen; be done, be made

The common irregular verb **fīō, fierī,** meaning *to occur, happen,* was used by the Romans in place of the passive of the present system of **faciō** and so, although active in form, also has the passive meanings *to be done, be made.*[1] Conversely, its own perfect system was supplied by the perfect passive system of **faciō.**

In effect, then, we have a composite verb with the principal parts **fīō, fierī, factus sum** and with the range of related meanings *occur, happen, become, be made, be done.* In translating, when you see the active present system forms of **fīō** remember the passive force options *be done, be made,* and when you see the passive perfect system forms **factus est, factus erat, factus sit,** etc., remember the options *has become, had occurred,* etc.

The only new forms to be learned are those listed below; note that: the stem vowel -ī- is long in all places except **fit, fierī,** and the imperfect subjunctive; otherwise, the forms of the present, future, and imperfect indicative and the present subjunctive follow the pattern of **audiō;** the imperfect subjunctive follows a predictable pattern, given the infinitive **fierī.**

---

[1] This is true of the basic verb **faciō** (e.g., **fit** was used instead of **facitur** for *it is done, is made*); the practice with compounds varied, e.g., **perficitur,** *is completed,* but **calefit** instead of **calefacitur** for *is heated.*

Indicative			Subjunctive	
Pres.	Impf.	Fut.	Pres.	Impf.
1. fĭō	fĭébam	fĭam	fĭam	fĭerem
2. fĭs	fĭébās	fĭēs	fĭās	fĭerēs
3. fit	fĭébat	fĭet	fĭat	fĭeret
1. fĭmus	fĭēbámus	fĭémus	fĭámus	fierémus
2. fĭtis	fĭēbátis	fĭétis	fĭátis	fierétis
3. fĭunt	fĭébant	fĭent	fĭant	fĭerent

Infinitive	Imperatives	
fĭerī	Sg. fĭ	Pl. fĭte

Study carefully the following examples:

Hoc facit (faciet), *he is doing* or *making this (will do* or *make).*
Hoc fit (fĭet), *this is done* or *made (will be done* or *made).*
Hoc faciat, *let him do* or *make this.*
Hoc fĭat, *let this be done* or *made.*
Dīcunt eum hoc facere, *they say that he is doing this.*
Dīcunt hoc fĭerī, *they say that this is being done.*
Perīculum fit gravius, *the danger is becoming graver.*
Mox factī sunt fēlīces, *they soon became happy.*

VOCABULARY

cupĭdō, cupĭdinis, f., *desire, passion* (cupidity, Cupid; cp. **cupiō, cupiditās, cupidus,** Ch. 39)

léctor, lēctóris, m., and léctrĭx, lēctrĭcis, f., *reader* (lector; cp. **legō,** lectern, lection, lectionary, lecture)

vínculum, -ī, n., *bond, chain, fetter* (vinculum; cp. **vinciō,** *to bind*)

cōtĭdĭē, adv., *daily, every day* (**quot** + **dĭēs**; cotidian)

fortásse, adv., *perhaps* (cp. **fortūna**)

accédō, -cédere, -céssī, -céssum, *to come (to), approach* (accede, access, accessible, accession, accessory; cp. **cēdō, discēdō**)

cárpō, cárpere, cárpsī, cárptum, *to harvest, pluck; seize* (carp at, excerpt, carpet, scarce; **carpe diem:** see **Latīna Est Gaudium,** Ch. 22)

cōgō, cógere, coégī, coáctum (**cum** + **agō**), *to drive* or *bring together, force, compel* (cogent, coaction, coactive, coagulate; cp. **cōgitō**)

contémnō, -témnere, -témpsī, -témptum, *to despise, scorn* (contemn, contempt, contemptible, contemptuous)

contúndō, -túndere, -tudī, -túsum, *to beat, crush, bruise, destroy* (contuse, contusion; obtuse, from **obtundō,** *to beat, make blunt*)

cúrō (1), *to care for, attend to; heal, cure; take care* (cure, curator, procure, proctor, accurate; cp. **cūra**)

dēcérnō, **-cérnere, -crévī, -crétum,** *to decide, settle, decree* (decretal, decretory)

éxigō, **-ígere, -égī, -áctum** (ex + agō), *to drive out, force out, exact; drive through, complete, perfect* (exactitude, exigent, exigency, exigible)

fíō, fíerī, fáctus sum, *to occur, happen; become; be made, be done* (fiat)

oblēctō (1), *to please, amuse, delight; pass time pleasantly* (cp. **dēlectō, dēlectātiō**)

órō (1), *to speak, plead; beg, beseech, entreat, pray* (orator, oration, oracle, orison, adore, inexorable, peroration; cp. **ōrātor, ōrātiō,** Ch. 38)

récreō (1), *to restore, revive; refresh, cheer* (recreate, recreation)

requírō, **-quírere, -quīsívī, -quīsítum,** *to seek, ask for; miss, need, require* (requirement, requisite, requisition, prerequisite, request)

serénō (1), *to make clear, brighten; cheer up, soothe* (serene, serenity, serenade)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Poterāsne etiam centum virīs persuādēre ut viam virtūtis sine praemiīs sequerentur?

2. Haec fēmina vult ex urbe ēgredī et ad illam īnsulam proficīscī ut sine morā illī agricolae nūbat et semper rūsticētur.

3. Petēbant ā nōbīs ut etiam in adversīs rēbus huic ducī pārērēmus et servīrēmus.

4. Haec ab fēminīs facta sunt nē tantam occāsiōnem āmitterent.

5. Rogāmus tē ut honōre et opibus sapientius ūtāris et hōs quīnque amīcōs semper foveās.

6. Nisi quis hoc suscipere audēbit, nōlent nōbīs crēdere et fīent īrātī.

7. Rogāvit nōs cūr neque dīvitibus neque pauperibus placēre cōnātī essēmus.

8. Arbitrābātur tālem vītam nōn ex dīvitiīs sed ex animō plēnō virtūtis nāscī.

9. Scientiam et ingenium magis quam magnās dīvitiās mīrēmur.

10. Senātus ducī imperāvit nē hostibus victīs nocēret sed eīs parceret et remissiōnem poenae daret.

11. Ille ōrātor vulgum īrātissimum vōce potentī serēnāvit atque, ut omnibus subrīsit, eōs oblectāvit.

12. Ut parva puella per iānuam currēbat, subitō occidit et genua male contudit.

13. Dummodo sīs aequus hīs virīs, fīent tibi fidēlēs.

14. That summer they urged that this be done better.

15. Provided that this is done, they will beg us to spare him.
16. That teacher wants to persuade her twenty pupils to study more good literature.
17. Since his hope is becoming very small, let him confess that he commanded (use **imperō**) those two men not to do it.

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

1. Dīxitque Deus: "Fīat lūx." Et facta est lūx. (*Genesis.)
2. Fatendum est nihil dē nihilō posse fierī. (Lucretius.—**nihilō**, abl. of **nihilum, -ī,** = **nihil.**)
3. Magnae rēs nōn fīunt sine perīculō. (Terence.)
4. Hīs rēbus cognitīs, ille suōs hortātus est nē timērent. (Caesar.)
5. Omnia fīent quae fierī aequum est. (Terence.)
6. "Pater, ōrō tē ut mihi ignōscās." "Fīat." (Terence.)
7. Dum loquimur, fūgerit invida aetās: carpe diem! (*Horace.—**invidus, -a, -um,** *envious.*)
8. Carpāmus dulcia; post enim mortem cinis et fābula fīēs. (Persius.—**cinis, -neris,** m., *ashes.*)
9. Ante senectūtem cūrāvī ut bene vīverem; in senectūte cūrō ut bene moriar. (Seneca.)
10. Solōn dīxit sē senem fierī cotīdiē aliquid addiscentem. (Cicero.—**Solōn, -lōnis.—ad-discō, -ere.**)
11. Caret pectus tuum inānī ambitiōne? Caret īrā et timōre mortis? Ignōscis amīcīs? Fīs lēnior et melior, accēdente senectūte? (Horace.—**inānis, -e,** *empty, vain.*—**ambitiō, -ōnis.**—**lēnis, -e,** *gentle, kind.*)
12. Hoc dūrum est; sed levius fit patientiā quidquid corrigere est nefās. (Horace.—**patientia, -ae.**—**corrigō, -ere.**—**est nefās,** *it is wrong, contrary to divine law.*)
13. Sapiāmus et cēdāmus! Leve fit onus quod bene fertur. (Ovid.—**onus, oneris,** n., *burden.*)
14. Ego vōs hortor ut amīcitiam omnibus rēbus hūmānīs antepōnātis—vae illīs quī nūllōs amīcōs habent! (Cicero.)
15. Petō ā vōbīs ut patiāminī mē dē studiīs hūmānitātis ac litterārum loquī. (Cicero.—**hūmānitās, -tātis,** *culture.*)

THE QUALITY OF MARTIAL'S BOOK

Sunt bona, sunt quaedam mediocria, sunt mala plūra
quae legis hīc; aliter nōn fit, Avīte, liber.

(*Martial 1.16; meter, elegiac couplet.—**aliter,** adv., *otherwise.*—**Avītus, -ī,** a friend of the poet.)

I DON'T COOK FOR COOKS!

Lēctor et audītor nostrōs probat, Aule, libellōs,
    sed quīdam exāctōs esse poēta negat.
Nōn nimium cūrō, nam cēnae fercula nostrae
    mālim convīvīs quam placuisse cocīs!

(*Martial 9.81; meter: elegiac couplet.—**quīdam,** with **poēta.**—sc. **eōs,** = **li-
bellōs,** as subject of the infin. in the indir. statement.—**ferculum, -ī,** *course [of a
meal].*—**mālim,** potential subj., *I would prefer that.*—The prose order would
be: **mālim fercula cēnae nostrae placuisse convīvīs quam cocīs.**—**quam,** i.e., **magis
quam.**—**convīva, -ae,** m., dinner-guest.—**cocus, -ī,** *cook.*)

I LOVE HER . . . I LOVE HER NOT

Ōdī et amō! Quārē id faciam fortasse requīris.
    Nescio, sed fierī sentiō et excrucior.

(*Catullus 85; meter: elegiac couplet.—**excruciāre,** *to crucify, torment.*)

OH, I'D LOVE TO READ YOU MY POEMS . . . NOT!

Ut recitem tibi nostra rogās epigrammata. Nōlō—
    nōn audīre, Celer, sed recitāre cupis!

(*Martial 1.63; meter: elegiac couplet.—**epigramma, -matis,** n.)

WHO IS TRULY FREE?

Quis igitur vērō līber est? Tantum vir sapiēns, quī sibi imperat, quem
neque fortūna adversa neque paupertās neque mors neque vincula terrent,
quī potest cupīdinibus fortiter respondēre honōrēsque contemnere, cuius
virtūs cōtīdiē crēscit, quī in sē ipsō tōtus est.

(Horace, *Sermōnēs* 2.7.83ff; prose adaptation.)

TESTIMONY AGAINST THE CONSPIRATORS

Senātum coēgī. Intrōdūxī Volturcium sine Gallīs. Fidem pūblicam eī
dedī. Hortātus sum ut ea quae scīret sine timōre nūntiāret. Tum ille, cum sē
ex magnō timōre recreāvisset, dīxit sē ab Lentulō habēre ad Catilīnam man-
dāta ut auxiliō servōrum ūterētur et ad urbem quam prīmum cum exercitū
accēderet. Intrōductī autem Gallī dīxērunt sibi litterās ad suam gentem ab
Lentulō datās esse et hunc imperāvisse ut equitātum in Italiam quam
prīmum mitterent. Dēnique, omnibus rēbus expositīs, senātus dēcrēvit ut
coniūrātī, quī hās īnsidiās mōlītī essent, in custōdiam trāderentur.

(Cicero; in this adaptation from his third oration against Catiline, Cicero in-
forms the Roman citizenry of the evidence against Catiline and the actions of
the senate. See the earlier readings on Catiline in Chs. 11, 14, 20, and 30.—

intrō-dūcō, -ere.—Volturcius was a conspirator in Catiline's band.—**Gallus, -ī,** *a Gaul;* Lentulus, the leading conspirator at Rome in Catiline's absence, had been seeking to stir into rebellion against the Roman state the Gallic Allobroges, who had a delegation at Rome.—**scīret:** a subordinate clause that would ordinarily have an indicative verb often has instead a subjunctive when the clause occurs either within an indirect statement or, as here, within another subjunctive clause; in this latter instance the verb is often termed a "subjunctive by attraction."—**mandātum, -ī,** *order.*—**quam prīmum,** see Ch. 32.—**equitātus, -ūs,** *cavalry.*)

ETYMOLOGY

In the readings   8. cinerary, incinerator, incinerate. 11. inane, inanity.—ambition; **ambitiō** literally meant *a going around* by a candidate to individual citizens in quest of political support.—lenient, leniency, lenity. 12. correct, incorrigible. 13. onerous. 15. humanity, the humanities; cp. **homō, hūmānus.** "I Love Her": excruciate; cp. crux, crucial, from **crux, crucis,** f., *cross.* "I'd Love to Read": epigrammatic. "Testimony":—mandate, mandatory, command, countermand, demand, remand.—equitation.

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

Salvēte, studentēs! Here are some **fīō** items: if you've found it easier to write a speech than a poem, you'll believe the old saying **nāscimur poētae, fīmus ōrātōrēs;** a fiat (*not* the car) is a magisterial command, *let it be done!* From Publilius Syrus (the source of many of this book's **sententiae**) comes **repente dīvēs nēmō factus est bonus** (like Juvenal's **nēmō repente fuit turpissimus,** Ch. 30); also the legal expression regarding "consenting adults," **volentī nōn fit iniūria,** *injury is not done to a willing person,* and **fīat ut petitur,** *let it be done as requested,* the phrase used for granting a legal petition.

Et cētera ex hōc vocābulāriō: an **accessit** (lit., *he/she approached, came close*) is a recognition for second place or honorable mention in a competition; **vinculum mātrimōniī** is *the bond of matrimony,* and **ā vinculō mātrimōniī** is legal Lat. for an annulment; **dē minimīs nōn cūrat lēx,** *the law does not concern itself with trivialities,* is another familiar legal maxim; there are numerous mottoes and familiar sayings from **ōrāre,** including **ōrāre et spērāre** and **ōrā et labōrā;** besides **carpe diem,** there is **carpent tua pōma nepōtēs,** *your descendants will harvest your fruits.* **Carpāmus omnēs diēs, lēctōrēs et lēctrīcēs!**

37

Conjugation of Eō; Constructions of Place and Time

IRREGULAR Eō, īre, iī, itum, to go

The irregular fourth conjugation verb **eō, īre, iī, itum,** *to go,* is fully conjugated below; the verb is as common in Latin as "go" is in English, and so the conjugation should be learned thoroughly.

INDICATIVE

Pres.	Impf.	Fut.	Perf.	Plupf.	Fut. Perf.
1. éō	íbam	íbō	iī	íeram	íerō
2. īs	íbās	íbis	ístī	íerās	íeris
3. it	íbat	íbit	íit	íerat	íerit
1. ímus	íbámus	íbimus	íimus	ierámus	iérimus
2. ítis	íbátis	íbitis	ístis	ierátis	iéritis
3. éunt	íbant	íbunt	iérunt	íerant	íerint

SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres.	Impf.	Perf.	Plupf.
1. éam	írem	íerim	íssem
2. éās	írēs	ierīs	íssēs
3. éat	íret	ierit	ísset

1. eámus	īrḗmus	ierīmus	īssḗmus
2. eátis	īrḗtis	ierītis	īssḗtis
3. éant	írent	íerint	íssent

IMPERATIVES

Sg. ī   Pl. íte

PARTICIPLES (in common use)

Pres. íēns (eúntis, eúntī, etc.)   **Fut.** itúrus, -a, -um

INFINITIVES   GERUND: eúndī

Pres. íre
Fut. itúrus ésse
Perf. ísse

OBSERVATIONS ON Eō

In the present system of **eō** there are two major difficulties:

(1) The normal stem, **ī-**, as derived from the present infinitive, becomes **e-** before **a, o,** and **u;** e.g., **eō, eunt, eam.** Give particular attention to the present indicative and the present subjunctive above. A similar change from **ī-** to **e-** is seen in all forms of the present participle, except the nominative singular, and in the gerund (a form whose use is explained in Ch. 39).

(2) The future of this fourth conjugation verb has the tense sign and endings of a first or second conjugation verb.

The perfect system is formed regularly except that **ii-** before s usually contracts to **ī-;** e.g., **īstī, īsse.** Forms with **-v-,** such as **īvī,** are rare and do not appear in this book.

Only the active forms are here presented; the rare impersonal passive (e.g., **ītur, ībātur**) and the future and perfect passive participles (**eundum, ítum**) do not appear in this book. Transitive compounds such as **adeō,** *to approach,* commonly have passive endings (e.g., **adeor, adībātur,** etc.), but those forms likewise are not employed in this book.

PLACE CONSTRUCTIONS

You have already learned how to use the proper prepositions and cases in the regular place constructions, but they are repeated here for review and for contrast with the special rules for the *names* of cities, towns, and small islands and for **domus, humus,** and **rūs.**

I. Regular constructions: prepositions + proper case.

(1) Place *where:* **in** or **sub** + ablative.

In illā urbe vīsus est, *he was seen in that city.*
Nihil sub sōle est novum, *there is nothing new under the sun.*

(2) Place *to which:* **in, ad,** or **sub** + accusative.

In illam urbem ībit, *he will go into that city.*
Sub hastam hostis occidit, *he fell under the enemy's spear.*

(3) Place *from which:* **ab, dē,** or **ex** + ablative.

Ex illā urbe iit, *he went out of that city.*

II. With the actual names of cities, towns, and small islands, as well as the three nouns **domus, humus,** and **rūs,** no prepositions were employed in Latin, though they usually must be supplied in English translation (cp., however, Eng. "he ran home" for "he ran *to his* home").

(1) For place *where* with these particular words a special case was used in Latin, the "locative." The locative is identical to the *genitive* for the singular of first and second declension nouns; elsewhere the locative is usually identical to the *ablative*.

Vīsus est Rōmae, Ephesī, Athēnīs, et Carthāgine.
He was seen at Rome, Ephesus, Athens, and Carthage.

(2) Place *to which:* accusative without a preposition.

Ībit Rōmam, Ephesum, Athēnās, et Carthāginem.
He will go to Rome, Ephesus, Athens, and Carthage.

(3) Place *from which:* ablative without a preposition.

Iit Rōmā, Ephesō, Athēnīs, et Carthāgine.
He went from Rome, Ephesus, Athens, and Carthage.

Domus, as seen in the vocabulary below, is a slightly irregular feminine noun, having some second declension endings and some fourth. In place constructions the commonest forms are as follows:

domī (locative), *at home*   Domī vīsus est, *he was seen at home.*
domum (acc.), *home* (= *to home*)   Domum ībit, *he will go home.*
domō (abl.), *from home*   Domō iit, *he went from home.*

The locative of **humus,** a feminine second declension noun, follows the rule: **humī,** *on the ground.* The locative of **rūs** is either **rūrī** or **rūre,** *in the country.*

TIME CONSTRUCTIONS

(1) You are already familiar with the ablative of time *when* or *within which* (Ch. 15); no preposition is used in Latin, but in English translation you must supply *in, within, at, on,* etc., depending on the particular noun:

> Eōdem diē iit, *he went on the same day.*
> Paucīs hōrīs domum ībit, *he will go home in a few hours.*

(2) Newly introduced here is the ==accusative of *duration of time,*== which indicates, not the time at or within which an action occurs, but ==*for how long a period of time*== the action occurs. No preposition is employed in Latin; in English translation, the preposition *for* is sometimes used, sometimes omitted. The construction also commonly occurs with **nātus** to indicate a person's age.

> Multōs annōs vīxit, *he lived (for) many years.*
> Paucās hōrās domī manēbit, *he will stay at home (for) a few hours.*
> Quīnque et vīgintī annōs nātus, imperātor factus est, *At the age of 25* (lit., *having been born for 25 years*), *he became commander.*

VOCABULARY

Athḗnae, -árum, f. pl., *Athens* (cp. athenaeum)

dómus, -ūs (-ī), f., *house, home;* **dómī,** *at home;* **dómum,** *(to) home;* **dómō,** *from home* (domain, domicile, domesticate, dome, major-domo; cp. **dominus, domina,** Ch. 40)

húmus, -ī, f., *ground, earth; soil* (humus, exhume, inhume, inhumation, posthumous; cp. humiliate, humility, from **humilis, -e,** *on the earth, down-to-earth, humble*)

íter, itíneris, n., *journey; route, road* (itinerant, itinerary; cp. eō below)

rūs, rūris, n., *the country, countryside* (rustic, rusticity; cp. **rūsticor, rūsticus, rural**)

Syrācúsae, -árum, f. pl., *Syracuse*

ábsēns, gen. **abséntis,** *absent, away* (absence, absentee, absenteeism, in absentia; from **absum, abesse**)

grátus, -a, -um, *pleasing, agreeable; grateful* (grace, gracious, grateful, gratitude, gratify, gratis, gratuitous, gratuity, ingrate, ingratiate, agree, congratulate; cp. **grātiās agō**)

idṓneus, -a, -um, *suitable, fit, appropriate*

immótus, -a, -um, *unmoved; unchanged; unrelenting* (immotile; cp. **moveō**)

fórīs, adv., *out of doors, outside* (foreclose, foreign, forest, forfeit)

éō, íre, íī, ítum, *to go* (ambition, circuit, concomitant, exit, initial, initiate, initiative, obituary, perish, preterit, sedition, transient, transit,

transition, transitive, transitory: many of these derive from the several compounds of eō, including the seven listed below)

ábeō, -íre, -íī, -itum, *to go away, depart, leave*

ádeō, -íre, -iī, -itum, *to go to, approach*

éxeō, -íre, -íī, -itum, *to go out, exit*

íneō, -íre, -íī, -itum, *to go in, enter*

óbeō, -íre, -íī, -itum, *to go up against, meet; die*

péreō, -íre, -íī, -itum, *to pass away, be destroyed, perish*

rédeō, -íre, -íī, -itum, *to go back, return*

interfíciō, -fícere, -fécī, -féctum, *to kill, murder*

licet, licére, licuit, impersonal,[1] *it is permitted, one may;* commonly with an infinitive as subject and a dative for the person permitted to act, e.g., **licet tibi abíre,** *you may leave,* lit., *it is permitted for you to leave* (license, licentious, illicit, leisure, viz. = **vidélicet,** sc. = **scílicet**)

peregrínor, peregrínárī, peregrínátus sum, *to travel abroad, wander* (peregrine, peregrinate, pilgrim, pilgrimage; from **per** + **ager**)

requiéscō, -quiéscere, -quiévī, -quiétum, *to rest* (requiescat, requiem)

sóleō, solére, sólitus sum, *to be accustomed* (insolent, obsolete)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Dehinc petet ā frātre meō et sorōre ut occāsiōnem carpant et in urbem quam celerrimē ineant.

2. Nisi domum hāc aestāte redīssēs, in longō itinere Athēnās fortasse peregrīnātī essēmus, et nōs ibi oblectāvissēmus.

3. Nē levēs quidem timōrēs ferre poterātis; rūrī, igitur, nōn in urbe semper vīvēbātis.

4. Haec locūtī, lēctōribus et lēctrīcibus persuādēbunt nē opēs cupīdinēsque praemiīs bonae vītae antepōnant.

5. Multōs annōs eōs cīvitātī servīre coēgit, sed animōs numquam contudit.

6. At nōs, ipsī multa mala passī, cōnātī sumus eīs īrātīs persuādēre ut servōs vinculīs līberārent et nē cui nocērent.

7. Sī quis vult aliōs iuvāre, cūret ut ad eōs adeat plēnus sapientiae.

8. Philosophī cōtīdiē requīrēbant utrum illī discipulī nātūrae pārērent.

9. Contemnāmus omnia perīcula, ea ex pectoribus exigāmus, et fateāmur haec difficillima Rōmae suscipienda esse.

10. Omnēs solent mīrārī ea pulcherrima quae Athēnīs vident.

11. Nisi māvīs morī, exī Syrācūsīs, sequere alium ducem, et accēde Athēnās.

---

[1] Impersonal verbs have only third person (and infinitive) forms because they have as their subject, not a person, but an infinitive phrase or a clause or an indefinite "it" or "one"; e.g., **licet abíre** lit. means *to leave is permitted,* though the idiomatic translation is *it is permissible to leave* or *one may leave.*

12. Fēmina candida ante speculum immōta stetit, sed sē spectāre recū-
sāvit et animōs recreāre nōn potuit.

13. Paucās hōras duodecim puerī puellaeque humī sedēbant, ut ma-
gistra, subrīdēns et eōs serēnāns, plūrimās fābulās nārrābat.

14. Sī sapiēs et tibi imperāre poteris, fiēs grātior iūstiorque, parcēs mi-
serīs ac amīcōs fovēbis.

15. They commanded that this be done in Rome for three days.

16. Unless he goes to Syracuse within five days, his father's fear will
become greater.

17. He thought that his brother would perhaps not go away from home
that summer.

18. Nobody may speak freely in that country, as we all know.

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

1. Mortālia facta perībunt. (*Horace.)

2. Noctēs atque diēs patet ātrī iānua Dītis. (*Virgil.—**āter, ātra, ātrum,**
dark, gloomy.—**Dīs, Dītis,** *Dis,* another name for Pluto, god of the
dead.)

3. Annī eunt mōre modōque fluentis aquae. Numquam hōra quae prae-
teriit potest redīre; ūtāmur aetāte. (Ovid.—**praeterīre,** *to go by, pass.*)

4. Heu, obiī! Quid ego ēgī! Fīlius nōn rediit ā cēnā hāc nocte. (Terence.)

5. Frāter meus ōrat nē abeās domō. (Terence.)

6. Dīcit patrem ab urbe abīsse sed frātrem esse domī. (Terence.)

7. Tertiā hōrā forīs ībam Sacrā Viā, ut meus mōs est. (Horace.—**Sacrā
Viā,** abl. of means or way by which; the Sacred Way was the main
street through the Roman Forum.)

*The Roman Forum with remains of the temple of Castor
and Pollux in the foreground and beyond it the Sacra Via
Rome, Italy*

8. Dēnique Dāmoclēs, cum sīc beātus esse nōn posset, ōrāvit Dionȳ-
sium tyrannum ut abīre ā cēnā licēret. (Cicero.)

9. Eō tempore, Syrācūsīs captīs, Mārcellus multa Rōmam mīsit; Syrā-
cūsīs autem multa atque pulcherrima relīquit. (Cicero.)

10. Diēs multōs in eā nāve fuī; ita adversā tempestāte ūsī sumus.
(Terence.)

11. Īram populī ferre nōn poterō, sī in exsilium ieris. (Cicero.)

12. Caesare interfectō, Brūtus Rōmā Athēnās fūgit. (Cicero.)

13. Ipse Rōmam redīrem, sī satis cōnsiliī dē hāc rē habērem. (Cicero.)

14. Nēmō est tam senex ut nōn putet sē ūnum annum posse vīvere.
(Cicero.)

15. Dum nōs fāta sinunt, oculōs satiēmus amōre; nox tibi longa venit,
nec reditūra diēs. (*Propertius.—**sinō, -ere,** *to allow.*—**reditūra,** sc.
est, fut. act. periphrastic for **redībit; diēs** is sometimes fem.)

THANKS . . . BUT NO THANKS!

Candidius nihil est tē, Caeciliāne. Notāvī:
    sī quandō ex nostrīs disticha pauca legō,
prōtinus aut Mārsī recitās aut scrīpta Catullī.
    Hoc mihi dās, tamquam dēteriōra legās,
5   ut collāta magis placeant mea? Crēdimus istud:
    mālo tamen recitēs, Caeciliāne, tua!

(*Martial 2.71; meter: elegiac couplet.—**notāre,** *to note, notice.*—with **nostrīs,**
sc. **libellīs.—disticha** (a Gk. acc. ending), *couplets, verses.*—Domitius Marsus,
like Catullus, was a popular Latin poet.—**scrīptum, -ī,** *writing, written works.*—
hoc . . . dās, i.e., as a favor.—**tamquam** here introduces an imagined comparison,
something like a condition, hence the verb is subj.—**dēteriōra,** sc. **scrīpta,** *worse
poetry.*—**collāta,** with **mea,** *compared, in comparison.*—**mālo [ut] recitēs;** the
conj. is often omitted in a jussive noun clause.)

TRIMALCHIO'S EPITAPH

"Īnscrīptiō quoque vidē dīligenter sī haec satis idōnea tibi vidētur: 'C.
Pompeius Trimalchiō Maecēnātiānus hīc requiēscit. Huic sēvirātus absentī
dēcrētus est. Cum posset in omnibus decuriīs Rōmae esse, tamen nōluit.
Pius, fortis, fidēlis, ex parvō crēvit; sestertium relīquit trecentiēs, nec um-
quam philosophum audīvit. Valē. Et tū.'" Haec ut dīxit Trimalchiō, flēre
coepit ūbertim. Flēbat et Fortūnāta; flēbat et Habinnas; tōta dēnique fa-
milia, tamquam in fūnus rogāta, lāmentātiōne triclīnium implēvit.

(*Petronius, *Satyricon* 71–72; the boorish, nouveau-riche host Trimalchio asks
his dinner-guests their opinion of his proposed epitaph.—**īnscrīptiō, -ōnis;** the
more usual order would be **quoque vidē dīligenter sī haec īnscrīptiō. . . .** —C. =
Gaius.—**Maecēnātiānus:** Trimalchio, an ex-slave, takes this name to associate

himself with the famous Maecenas, a powerful and wealthy associate of Augustus.—**Huic . . . absentī,** i.e., in absentia from Rome.—**sēvirātus, -ūs,** *the post of sēvir Augustālis,* a member of the six-man commission that supervised the cult of the emperor.—**decūria, -ae,** *club;* these were groups of ten men organized for both business and social purposes.—**pius, -a, -um,** *devoted, dedicated.*—**ex parvō,** i.e., from humble beginnings.—**sestertium . . . trecentiēs,** *30 million sesterces,* a VERY hefty sum!—**nec . . . audīvit,** i.e., he "never even went to college!"—**Et tū,** sc. **valē;** epitaphs typically represented such "conversations": the deceased wishes the passerby "*Farewell,*" and the passerby, reading the inscription, replies, "*And you (likewise farewell).*"—**Haec ut** = Ut **haec.**—**flēre,** *to weep.*—**ūbertim,** adv., *profusely.*—**et** = **etiam.**—Fortunata ("Lucky") and Habinnas were Trimalchio's wife and a guest.—**fūnus, -neris,** n., *funeral.*—**lamentātiō, -ōnis.**—**triclīnium, -iī,** *dining room.*—**impleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētum,** *to fill.*)

MĀRCUS QUĪNTŌ FRĀTRĪ S.

Licinius, servus Aesōpī nostrī, Rōmā Athēnās fūgit. Is Athēnīs apud Patrōnem prō līberō virō fuit. Deinde in Asiam abiit. Posteā Platō, quīdam quī Athēnīs solet esse multum et quī tum Athēnīs fuerat cum Licinius Athēnās vēnisset, litterīs Aesōpī dē Liciniō acceptīs, hunc Ephesī comprehendit et in custōdiam trādidit. Petō ā tē, frāter, ut Ephesō exiēns servum Rōmam tēcum redūcās. Aesōpus enim ita īrāscitur propter servī scelus ut nihil eī grātius possit esse quam recuperātiō fugitīvī. Valē.

(Cicero, *Epistulae ad Quīntum Frātrem* 1.2.14; Marcus Cicero wrote this letter to his brother Quintus, who was at the time governor of Asia.—**S.** = **salūtem dīcit,** *says greetings.*—**Licinius, -ī.**—**Aesōpus, -ī,** the leading tragic actor of Rome.—**Patrō, -trōnis.**—**prō,** *as a.*—**Plato,** an Epicurean from Sardis.—**multum,** adv.—**Ephesus, -ī,** a city in Asia Minor.—**re-dūcō.**—**īrāscor, īrāscī, īrātus sum,** *to be angry;* cp. **īra** and **īrātus.**—**recuperātiō, -ōnis,** *recovery.*—**fugitīvus, -ī.**)

ETYMOLOGY

Vidēlicet, *namely,* derives from **vidēre licet,** lit., *it is permitted to see,* i.e., *it is plain to see.* In medieval manuscripts this long word was often contracted to **vi-et,** and one abbreviation for **et** resembled a z; hence the abbreviation **viz.** From another compound of **licet** is the much more common abbreviation **sc.** for **scīlicet,** *namely, clearly* (from **scīre licet,** *you may understand*), which we use as an instruction to supply some word or idea that has been omitted from a text but is readily understood (see the example above in the notes on "Trimalchio").

In the readings
7. Another famous street in Rome was **Via Lāta.** On the analogy of **Sacra Via** how is **Via Lāta (lātus, -a, -um,** *broad)* to be translated? "Thanks": note, notation, notary.—script; from the fourth principal part of **scrībō.**—deteriorate, deterioration.—collate, collation. "Trimalchio": funereal.—lament, lamentable. "**Mārcus**": irascible.—"Recover" and "recuperate" are cognates, both derived from **recuperāre,** *to regain.*)

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

Salvēte! These familiar words and phrases from **eō** are certainly *going to* interest you (notice how colloquial Eng. employs "go" as an auxiliary verb to indicate futurity, and cp. Latin's use of **īrī** in those rare future passive infinitive forms): **exit** and **exeunt omnēs** are stage directions; to "perish" is to be "thoroughly gone" (from **per + eō**), i.e., to make one's final "exit" from life's stage, an exodus often marked by **obiit** on old tombstones or by the abbreviation **O.S.P.** for **obiit sine prōle** (*he/she died without offspring,* from **prōlēs, prōlis,** f., the source of "proletariate"); **pereant quī ante nōs nostra dīxērunt** is a proverbial curse on folks who had all our best ideas before we had them ourselves (!); **iter** (lit. *a going*) is related to **eō** and also to the adv. **obiter,** which gives us **obiter dictum,** something *said along the way* (or "in passing"), and likewise **obiter scrīptum**; Monty Python fans will recall the **Rōmānī, īte domum** routine from the "Life of Brian"; and finally **aut bibat aut abeat,** *let him either drink or go away,* is an old Roman toast and the motto of our local tavern!

Et cētera: grātus is related to **grātia,** *favor, kindness, gratitude, thanks,* as in **grātiās agere,** *to give thanks,* **Deī grātiā,** *by the grace of God,* and also Eng. "gratis," something done "for thanks" (**grātīs**), i.e., without a fee. **R.I.P.,** also found on tombstones (though not Trimalchio's!), stands for **requiēscat in pāce** (remember the jussive subj.?); **rūs in urbe,** a phrase from Martial, refers to a city park or garden or some other rustic setting or view that reminds one of the countryside. Well, enough for today: **nunc domum eāmus!**

38

Relative Clauses of Characteristic; Dative of Reference; Supines

RELATIVE CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC

The type of relative clause you have encountered thus far provides some factual description of its antecedent, an actual person or thing, and thus has an indicative verb (Ch. 17); e.g., **hic est discipulus quī Latīnam amat,** *this is the student who loves Latin.* The "relative clause of characteristic," by contrast, describes some general quality of an antecedent that is itself either general, indefinite, interrogative, or negative, and accordingly has its verb in the subjunctive; e.g., *hic est discipulus quī Latīnam amet, this is a student* (or *the sort of student*) *who would love Latin.*

The relative clause of characteristic is easily recognized, since its verb is subjunctive and its antecedent is often obviously general, negative, etc. (typical examples are **sunt quī,** *there are people who;* **quis est quī,** *who is there who;* **nēmō est quī,** *there is no one who);* the auxiliary *would* is sometimes used in translating the subjunctive verb, and sometimes a phrase like *the sort of* or *the kind of* is employed in the main clause to make it clear that the antecedent is indefinite:

> Quis est quī huic crēdat, *who is there who trusts this man* (*of such a sort that he would trust this man*)?
> Nēmō erat quī hoc scīret, *there was no one who knew this.*
> Sunt quī hoc faciant, *there are some who do this* (*of such a sort as to do this*).

Is nōn est quī hoc faciat, *he is not a person who does (would do) this.*
Hic est liber quem omnēs legant, *this is the kind of book which all read
(a book which all would read).*
Hic est liber quem omnēs legunt, *this is the book which all are reading*
(= a fact, hence the indicative).

Some relative clauses have the force of result (e.g., S.A. 4 below), purpose
(see "Give Me a Figgy Sprig!" below), causal, or adversative clauses (i.e.,
clauses otherwise generally introduced by **ut, cum,** etc.) and so also have
their verbs in the subjunctive.

DATIVE OF REFERENCE OR INTEREST

The dative case is often used to indicate a person (or a thing) to whom
some statement refers, or from whose perspective it is true, or to whom it is
of special interest. This "dative of reference or interest" (which should be
compared to the dative uses discussed in Ch. 35) can sometimes be trans-
lated with "to" or "for," but often some more elaborate phrase is required,
depending upon the context, as you will see from the following examples;
occasionally the function seems to be simply possessive (as in the second
example below), but the intended force is generally more emotional.

Sī quis metuēns vīvet, līber **mihi** nōn erit umquam.
If anyone lives in fear, he will not ever be free—as I see it (**mihi**) *or to
my way of thinking.*
Caret **tibi** pectus inānī ambitiōne?
Is your breast free from vain ambition—are you sure (**tibi**)?
Nūllīus culpae **mihi** cōnscius sum.
In my own heart (**mihi**), *I am conscious of no fault.*
Claudia est sapiēns **multīs,** *to many people Claudia is wise.*

Remember to add the dative of reference or interest to your list of other
dative case constructions (indirect object, dative of agent, dative with adjec-
tives, dative with special verbs and compounds).

SUPINES

The "supine" is a defective fourth declension verbal noun, formed on
the same stem as the perfect passive participle; only two forms were in com-
mon use, the accusative and ablative singular. The supines for our model

verbs are: acc. **laudátum,** abl. **laudátū; mónitum, mónitū; áctum, áctū; audítum, audítū; cáptum, cáptū.**

The ablative is used with the neuter of certain adjectives to indicate in what respect a particular quality is applicable: e.g., **mīrábile dictū,** *amazing to say* (lit., *amazing in respect to saying*); **facile factū,** *easy to do.* The accusative (which must be carefully distinguished from the perfect passive participle) is used with verbs of motion to indicate purpose: e.g., **ībant Rōmam rogātum pecūniam,** *they were going to Rome to ask for money;* **persuāsum amīcīs vēnērunt,** *they came to persuade their friends* (note that the supine can take a direct object, a dative, or any other construction the basic verb can govern).

VOCABULARY

árbor, árboris, f., *tree* (arbor, Arbor Day, arboraceous, arboreal, arboretum, arboriculture)

dignitās, dignitátis, f., *merit, prestige, dignity* (indignity; cp. **dignus,** deign, dignify, indignant, indignation)

dólor, dolóris, m., *pain, grief* (doleful, dolorous, condole, condolences, indolent, indolence; cp. **doleō**)

ódium, -iī, n., *hatred* (odium, odious, annoy, ennui, noisome; cp. **ōdī**)

ópus, óperis, n., *a work, task; deed, accomplishment* (opus, opera, operate, operative, inoperative, operand, operose, co-operate, uncooperative, inure, hors d'oeuvre, maneuver, manure)

ōrātiō, ōrātiónis, f., *speech* (oration; cp. **ōrō, ōrātor**)

pēs, pédis, m., *lower leg, foot* (pedal, pedate, pedestal, pedestrian, pedicel, pedigree, piedmont, pawn, peon, pioneer, biped, quadruped, impede, impediment, expedite, expedition, expeditious; cp. **impediō** below)

sátor, satóris, m., *sower, planter; begetter, father; founder* (cp. **serō,** *to plant, sow;* serial, series, assert, desert, exert, insert)

fírmus, -a, -um, *firm, strong; reliable* (firmament, affirm, affirmation, affirmative, confirm, confirmation, farm, farmer)

īnfírmus, -a, -um, *not strong, weak, feeble* (infirm, infirmary, infirmity)

mīrábilis, mīrábile, *amazing, wondrous, remarkable* (mirabilia, admirable, marvel; cp. **mīror,** miracle, mirador, mirage, mirror)

prístinus, -a, -um, *ancient; former, previous* (pristine)

sublímis, sublíme, *elevated, lofty; heroic, noble* (sublimate, sublime, sublimity; not subliminal)

étsī, conj. with ind. or subj. according to rules for **sī,** *even if* (et -sī), *although*

érgā, prep. + acc., *toward*

libénter, adv., *with pleasure, gladly* (cp. the impersonal verb **libet,** *it pleases, is pleasing;* cognate with love)

impédiō, -pedíre, -pedívī, -pedítum, *to impede, hinder, prevent* (impediment, impedimenta, impedance, impeach; see **Lātina Est Gaudium**)

métuō, metúere, métuī, *to fear, dread; be afraid for* + dat. (cp. **metus**, meticulous)

quéror, quérī, quéstus sum, *to complain, lament* (querulous; cp. quarrel, from **querēla, -ae,** *complaint*)

recognóscō, -nóscere, -nóvī, -nitum, *to recognize, recollect* (recognition, recognizance, reconnaisance, reconnoitre; cp. **nōscō, cognōscō**)

suspéndō, -péndere, -péndī, -pénsum, *to hang up, suspend; interrupt* (suspense, suspension; cp. **pendere,** *to hang,* pendant, pendulum, expend)

véndō, véndere, véndidī, vénditum, *to sell* (vend, vendor)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Rēgī persuāsī ut sorōrī frātrīque tuō grātiōra praemia libenter daret.
2. Deinde, ab eā īnsulā nāve profecta, vīsum amīcōs Athēnās iniit.
3. Eum hortātī sumus ut ad Caesarem sine timōre accēdere cōnārētur.
4. Solitī sunt eī crēdere quī philosophiae servīret, virtūtem sequerētur, et cupīdinēs superāret.
5. Sapiēns nōs ōrat nē virīs sententiārum adversārum noceāmus.
6. In illīs terrīs nōn licet litterīs bonīs vērīsque studēre, ut sub tyrannō saepe fit; dēbēs, igitur, exīre et peregrīnārī.
7. Cūrēmus nē cīvitātem eīs trādāmus quī sē patriae antepōnant.
8. Sunt īnfirmī quī levia opera mīrentur et semper sibi ignōscant.
9. Iste dux, diū absēns, tam stultīs cōnsiliīs cīvitātī ūtēbātur ut mīlia cīvium adversa patī cōgerentur atque multī bonī perīrent.
10. Haec locūtus, fassus est illōs, quī odium immōtum ergā cīvitātem multōs annōs habēbant, Rōmae interfectōs esse.
11. Initium operis nōs saepe impedit.
12. Sator sublīmis hominum atque animālium omnibus nōbīs animās dedit; cum corpora obeant, animae numquam morientur.
13. Cum rūs rediimus, tum domī invēnimus—mīrābile vīsū!—plūrimōs amīcōs.
14. Cicero, who was the greatest Roman orator, was a consul who would obey the senate.
15. I shall persuade him to become better and to return to Rome, I assure you.
16. We begged them not to trust a man whom a tyrant pleased.
17. Wherefore, let that man who hesitates to defend our country depart to another land.

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

1. Sē omnēs Caesarī ad pedēs prōiēcērunt. (Caesar.—**prō-iaciō**.)
2. Hīc in nostrō numerō sunt quī lēgēs contemnant ac dē exitiō huius urbis cōtīdiē cōgitent. (Cicero.)

3. Quis est cui haec rēs pūblica atque possessiō lībertātis nōn sint cārae et dulcēs? (Id.—**possessiō, -ōnis.**)
4. Quae domus tam stabilis est, quae cīvitās tam firma est quae nōn odiīs, invidiā, atque īnsidiīs possit contundī? (Id.—**stabilis, -e.**—**quae ... contundī**; here the characteristic clause has the force of result.)
5. Quārē, quid est quod tibi iam in hāc urbe placēre possit, in quā nēmō est quī tē nōn metuat? (Id.)
6. Quis enim aut eum dīligere potest quem metuat aut eum ā quō sē metuī putet? (Id.)
7. Tibi sōlī necēs multōrum cīvium impūnītae ac līberae fuērunt. (Id.— **nex, necis,** f., *murder.*—**impūnītus, -a, -um,** *unpunished.*)
8. Habētis autem eum cōnsulem quī exigere officium et pārēre vestrīs dēcrētīs nōn dubitet atque vōs dēfendere possit. (Id.—**dēcrētum, -ī,** *decree.*)
9. Ille mihi semper deus erit. (Virgil.)
10. Nūllus dolor est quem nōn longinquitās temporis minuat ac molliat. (*Cicero.—**longinquitās, -tātis,** *length.*)
11. Parāvisse dīvitiās fuit multīs hominibus nōn fīnis sed mūtātiō malōrum. (Epicurus quoted by Seneca.—**mūtātiō, -ōnis,** *change.*)
12. Nihil est opere et manū factum quod tempus nōn cōnsūmat. (Cicero.)
13. Vīribus corporis dēficientibus, vigor tamen animī dūrāvit illī ad vītae fīnem. (Pliny.—**dēficiō, -ere,** *to fail.*—**vigor, -gōris.**—**dūrāre,** *to last.*)
14. Nunc est bibendum; nunc pede līberō pulsanda tellus. (*Horace; from his ode celebrating the death of the Egyptian queen Cleopatra.—sc. **nōbīs** as dat. of agent with both pass. periphrastics.—**pulsāre,** *to strike, beat;* with **pulsanda,** sc. **est,** *should be struck,* i.e., *danced upon.*—**tellūs, -lūris,** f., = **terra.**)

NOTE ON A BOOK BY LUCAN

Sunt quīdam quī mē dīcant nōn esse poētam;
sed quī mē vēndit bibliopōla putat.

(*Martial 14.194; meter: elegiac couplet. In this note from a gift copy of Lucan's poetry, the author is himself imagined as speaking.—**bibliopōla, -ae,** m., *bookdealer,* antecedent of **quī.**)

TWO EXAMPLES OF ROMAN WIT

Oh, Give Me a Figgy Sprig!

Cum quīdam, querēns, dīxisset uxōrem suam dē fīcū suspendisse sē, amīcus illīus "Amābō tē," inquit, "dā mihi ex istā arbore surculōs quōs seram!"

(Cicero, *Dē Ōrātōre* 2.278.—**ficus, -ūs,** f., *fig tree;* nouns for trees are usually feminine.—**surculus, -ī,** *shoot, sprig.*—**quōs** = **ut eōs,** rel. clause of purpose.— **serō, -ere,** *to plant, sow.*)

The Most Pitiful Speech I've Ever Heard!

Cum quīdam ōrātor sē misericordiam ōrātiōne fortasse mōvisse putāret, rogāvit Catulum vidērēturne misericordiam mōvisse. "Ac magnam quidem, mihi," inquit, "putō enim nēminem esse tam dūrum cui ōrātiō tua nōn vīsa sit digna misericordiā!"

(Cicero, *Dē Ōrātōre* 2.278.—**misericordia, -ae,** *pity;* an important objective for the ancient orator, and one for which he was trained, was to arouse the audience's emotions.—**Catulus, -ī.**—**vidērēturne:** the **-ne,** *whether,* signals an ind. quest.—**magnam,** sc. **misericordiam mōvistī!**—**cui** = **ut eī,** rel. clause of result.)

TWO LETTERS TO CICERO

Gn. Magnus Prōcōnsul Salūtem Dīcit Cicerōnī Imperātōrī

Sī valēs, bene est. Tuās litterās libenter lēgī; recognōvī enim tuam prīstinam virtūtem etiam in salūte commūnī. Cōnsulēs ad eum exercitum vēnērunt quem in Āpūliā habuī. Magnopere tē hortor ut occāsiōnem carpās et tē ad nōs cōnferās, ut commūnī cōnsiliō reī publicae miserae opem atque auxilium ferāmus. Moneō ut Rōmā exeās, viā Appiā iter faciās, et quam celerrimē Brundisium veniās.

Caesar Imperātor Salūtem Dīcit Cicerōnī Imperātōrī

Cum Brundisium celerius adeam atque sim in itinere, exercitū iam praemissō, dēbeō tamen ad tē scrībere et grātiās idōneās tibi agere, etsī hoc fēcī saepe et saepius factūrus videor; ita dignus es. Imprīmīs, quoniam crēdō mē celeriter ad urbem ventūrum esse, ā tē petō ut tē ibi videam ut tuō cōnsiliō, dignitāte, ope ūtī possim. Festīnātiōnī meae brevitātīque litterārum ignōscēs; cētera ex Furniō cognōscēs.

(Cicero, *Epistulae ad Atticum* 8.11 and 9.6; in these letters, two of hundreds that survive from Cicero's correspondence, both Gnaeus Pompeius Magnus, "Pompey the Great," and Julius Caesar bid for the statesman's support in the civil war that followed Caesar's crossing of the Rubicon in 49 B.C.—**prōcōnsul, -sulis,** *proconsul, governor* (of a province).—**salūte commūnī,** here *the public welfare.*—Apulia was a district in south Italy.—**viā Appiā,** abl. of route, a common construction; the Via Appia, built in the 4th century B.C., was the highway leading south from Rome and, ultimately, to Brundisium, the port of departure for Greece.—**prae-mittō, -ere.**—**imprīmīs,** adv., *especially.*—**festīnātiō, -ōnis,** *haste, rush.*—**brevitās, -tātis.**—**Furnius,** the name of an associate.)

ASK ME IF I CARE

Nīl nimium studeō, Caesar, tibi velle placēre,
   nec scīre utrum sīs albus an āter homō!

(*Catullus 93; meter: elegiac couplet.—**nīl** = **nōn.**—**albus, -a, -um,** *white.*—**āter, ātra, ātrum,** *black.*)

ETYMOLOGY

The use of **opus** in the titles of musical works is well known; e.g., Beethoven's "Symphony No. 5 in C Minor, Opus 67." "Opera," on the other hand, comes to us through Italian from **opera, -ae**, *effort, pains, work,* which clearly has the same root as **opus**. Finally, we have the term **magnum opus,** which is most commonly used in the literary field.

A few Romance derivatives follow:

Latin	Italian	Spanish	French
dolor	dolore	dolor	douleur
odium	odio	odio	odieux (odiōsus)
pēs, pedis	piede	pie	pied

In the readings   1. project, projection. 4. stable (adj.), stability, stabilize. 7. internecine; cp. **necāre.**—impunity, punitive. 13. deficient, deficiency, defect, defective, defection. 14. pulse, pulsate, pulsar. "Note": bibliopole, bibliopolist; cp. bibliography, bibliophile (all Gk. in origin). "Hang Her": ficus.—surculose. "Pity": misericord; cp. **miser.** "Two Letters": festinate, festination.—brevity; cp. **brevis.** "Ask Me": alb, alba, Alba Longa, Alban, albedo, albescent, albinism, albino, albugeneous, album, albumen, albumin.—atrabilious.

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

Salvēte! Have you noticed that we like to **ad lib.** in this section of each chapter? **Ad libitum,** *at one's pleasure,* is connected with **libenter,** which is how Latin should be both taught and learned: *gladly!* So, **libenter carpite diem et hās rēs novās:** first, note that **impediō** is from **in + pēs;** when you're "impeded," you've got something *on your feet* (like "fetters," from the same base as "foot"), so perhaps you should consult a podiatrist (**pod-** is the Gk. cognate of Lat. **ped-**) and ask him to "expedite" your treatment (**expedīre** is essentially "to de-fetter," the opposite of **impedīre;** cp. "implicate" and "explicate" from **implicāre/explicāre**); otherwise, just give up your pedestrian ways and start pedaling. **Odium** means *rivalry* as well as *hatred;* guess who the rivals are in **odium medicum, odium scholasticum,** and **odium theologicum?** And speaking of odious types, the emperor Tiberius (A.D. 14–37) is said to have remarked of his subjects, **ōderint dum metuant,** *let them hate* (*me*), *so long as they fear me!* The abbreviation **op. cit.** is from **opere citātō,** *in the work cited;* and **opera omnia** are an author's *complete works.* An old legal prescript provides that **vendēns eandem rem duōbus est falsārius** (*fraudulent*); such a swindle would be **īnfrā dignitātem,** *beneath one's dignity,* so remember the familiar admonition **caveat ēmptor,** *let the buyer beware!* **Iterum tempus fūgit: valeātis, amīcī et amīcae!**

39

Gerund and Gerundive

THE GERUNDIVE

You are already familiar with the gerundive, or future passive participle, a verbal adjective formed with the endings **-ndus, -nda, -ndum** (Ch. 23). Besides functioning occasionally as a simple adjective (**liber legendus,** *a book to be read*), the gerundive is commonly employed in the passive periphrastic conjugation (Ch. 24: **hic liber legendus est,** *this book should be read*); some further uses are examined in this chapter.

THE GERUND

The "gerund" is a verbal *noun* formed like the gerundive, except that it has only four forms, the neuter singular of the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative. These forms are identical to the corresponding cases of the gerundive, but are *active* in meaning and correspond to the English gerund in "-ing" (**legendī,** *of reading,* as in **magnum amōrem legendī habet,** *he has a great love of reading*).

DECLENSION OF THE GERUND

Following are the complete gerund declensions for some representative Latin verbs:

Gen. laudándī dūcéndī sequéndī audiéndī
        (*of praising, leading, following, hearing*)

Dat.	laudándō	dūcéndō	sequéndō	audiéndō
	(to/for praising, etc.)			
Acc.	laudándum	dūcéndum	sequéndum	audiéndum
	(praising, etc.)			
Abl.	laudándō	dūcéndō	sequéndō	audiéndō
	(by praising, etc.)			

Since the gerund is a verbal noun, it can be modified as a verb and used as a noun in the various cases. Having no nominative case, however, the gerund was not used as a subject, a function performed instead by the infinitive, another of Latin's verbal nouns (i.e., Latin could say **erráre est humánum,** *to err is human,* but not *erring is human*); likewise the accusative was ordinarily employed as an object of **ad** and certain other prepositions, not as a direct object (a function again performed by the infinitive, e.g., **iussit eōs veníre,** *he ordered them to come:* see Appendix, p. 445). The following sentences illustrate typical uses of the gerund in its four cases:

studium vīvendī cum amīcīs, *fondness of (for) living with friends.*
Operam dat vīvendō bene, *he gives attention to living well.*
Athēnās iit ad vīvendum bene, *he went to Athens to live well.*
Fēlīciōrēs fīmus vīvendō bene, *we become happier by living well.*

DIFFERENCES BETWEEN GERUND AND GERUNDIVE

Remember these distinctions between gerund and gerundive: 1) the gerund*ive* is a verbal adject*ive* (**liber legendus,** *a book to be read*), the gerund a verbal noun (**amor legendī,** *love of reading*); 2) as an adjective, the gerundive has a full set of masculine, feminine, and neuter endings, both singular and plural, for all cases, whereas the gerund has only neuter singular forms and only in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative, i.e., a total of only four forms altogether; 3) the gerundive is passive in meaning, the gerund active.

GERUND AND GERUNDIVE PHRASES

As a verbal noun, the gerund may take the case construction required by its verb:

studium legendī librōs, *fondness of reading books.*
Discimus legendō librōs, *we learn by reading books.*

In actual practice, however, when the gerund would be followed by a noun in the accusative as a direct object, the Romans preferred to put this noun in the case in which the gerund would otherwise appear and to use the gerundive in agreement with the noun. The translation is the same no matter which construction is used, since English idiom requires the gerund construction rather than the unidiomatic gerundive. In the examples which fol-

low, those marked A are what we should expect on the basis of English idiom; those marked B are the regular gerundive phrases which the Romans actually preferred:

A. studium legendī librōs (acceptable)
B. studium librōrum legendōrum (preferred)
fondness of reading books (not *fondness of books to be read,* which is unidiomatic)

A. Operam dat legendō librōs.
B. Operam dat librīs legendīs.
He gives attention to reading books.

A. Discimus legendō librōs.
B. Discimus librīs legendīs.
We learn by reading books.

A. Hoc locūtus est dē legendō librōs.
B. Hoc locūtus est dē librīs legendīs.
He said this about reading books.

Quite common was the use of **ad** + an accusative gerundive (or gerund) phrase and postpositive **causā** + a genitive phrase to indicate *purpose:*

A. Vēnit ad legendum librōs.
B. Vēnit ad librōs legendōs.
He came to read books.

A. Ōtium petit legendī librōs causā.
B. Ōtium petit librōrum legendōrum causā.
He seeks leisure for the sake of reading books.

Remember that purpose can be expressed in Latin, not only with gerundive/ gerund phrases, but also with **ut/nē** + the subjunctive and, after a main verb of motion, the accusative supine: **venit ut hōs librōs legat** and **venit hōs librōs lēctum** both mean *he is coming to read these books.*

VOCABULARY

aedificium, -iī, n., *building, structure* (edification, edifice, edify, aedile)
iniūria, -ae, f., *injustice, injury, wrong* (injurious; cp. **iūdex, iūdicium, iūs, iūstus,** Ch. 40)
múlier, mulíeris, f., *woman* (muliebrity)
trânsitus, -ûs, m., *passing over, transit; transition* (cp. **trânseō** below)
véntus, -ī, m., *wind* (vent, ventilate, ventilation, ventilator)
cúpidus, -a, -um, *desirous, eager, fond;* + gen., *desirous of, eager for* (cp. **cupiō, cupiditās, cupīdō**)

līberális, līberále, *of, relating to a free person; worthy of a free man, decent, liberal; generous* (liberal arts, liberality; cp. **līber, līberō**)

necésse, indecl. adj. used as nom. or acc., *necessary, inevitable* (necessitate, necessitous, unnecessary; cp. **cēdō**)

vétus, gen. **véteris,** *old* (veteran, inveterate, veterinary, veterinarian)

quási, adv. or conj., *as if, as it were* (quasi; = **quam + sī**)

ámbulō (1), *to walk* (amble, ambulance, ambulate, ambulatory, perambulate, preamble, somnambulist)

expérior, -perfrī, -pértus sum, *to try, test; experience* (experiment, expert, inexpert, inexperience; cp. **perículum**)

lībō (1), *to pour a libation of, on; pour ritually; sip; touch gently* (libation)

opórtet, oportére, opórtuit, impers., *it is proper, right, necessary*

oppúgnō (1), *to fight against, attack, assault, assail* (oppugn; cp. **pugnō**)

órnō (1), *to equip, furnish, adorn* (adornment, ornate, ornament, ornamental, ornamentation, suborn, subornation)

pernóctō (1), *to spend* or *occupy the night* (nocturnal, nocturne; cp. **nox**)

tránseō, -íre, -íī, -itum, *to go across, cross; pass over, ignore* (transit, transition, transitive, intransitive, transitory, trance)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Caesar eōs cōtīdiē ōrābat nē fāta adversa metuerent.
2. Etsī hoc fīat, illī mīlitēs urbem oppugnātum fortasse accēdant et multī cīvēs obeant.
3. Sī licēbit, septem diēbus domum ībimus ad nostrōs amīcōs videndōs.
4. Amīcus līberālissimus noster, quōcum pernoctābāmus, dīs vīnum ante cēnam lībāvit, et deinde mēnsam ōrnāvit.
5. Cōnsul, vir maximae dignitātis, ōtium cōnsūmpsit in operibus sublīmibus scrībendīs.
6. Sunt autem quī dolōrum vītandōrum causā, ut āiunt, semper levia opera faciant, labōrem contemnant, et dē officiīs querantur.
7. In rē pūblicā gerendā istī nōn dubitant praemia grāta sibi requīrere, officia suspendere, atque honōrem suum vēndere.
8. Lēctrīx doctissima mox surget ad tria carmina recitanda, quae omnēs audītōrēs oblectābunt atque animōs serēnābunt.
9. Nēmō est cui iniūria placeat, ut nōs omnēs recognōscimus.
10. Nisi vincula patī ac sub pedibus tyrannōrum humī contundī volumus, lībertātī semper studeāmus et eam numquam impediāmus.
11. Pauca opera mihi sedendō fīunt, multa agendō et experiendō.
12. Illa mulier mīrābilis frūctūs amōris libenter carpsit et virō grātissimō nūpsit.

13. They are going to Rome to talk about conquering the Greeks.
14. By remaining at Rome he persuaded them to become braver.
15. Who is there who has hope of doing great works without pain?
16. We urged the consul to serve the state and preserve our dignity by attacking these injustices.

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

1. Coniūrātiōnem nāscentem nōn crēdendō corrōborāvērunt. (*Cicero.—**coniūrātiō, -ōnis,** *conspiracy.*—**corrōborāre,** *to strengthen.*)
2. Malī dēsinant īnsidiās reī pūblicae cōnsulīque parāre et ignēs ad īnflammandam urbem. (Cicero.—**dēsinō, -ere,** *to cease.*—**īnflammāre,** *to set on fire.*)
3. Multī autem propter glōriae cupiditātem sunt cupidī bellōrum gerendōrum. (Cicero.)
4. Veterem iniūriam ferendō invītāmus novam. (Publilius Syrus.)
5. Cūrēmus nē poena maior sit quam culpa; prohibenda autem maximē est īra in pūniendō. (Cicero.—**pūnīre,** *to punish.*)
6. Syrācūsīs captīs, Mārcellus aedificiīs omnibus sīc pepercit—mīrābile dictū—quasi ad ea dēfendenda, nōn oppugnanda vēnisset. (Cicero.)
7. Rēgulus laudandus est in cōnservandō iūre iūrandō. (*Cicero.—Regulus, prisoner of the Carthaginians, swore to them that he would return to Carthage after a mission to Rome.—**iūs iūrandum, iūris iūrandī,** n., *oath.*)
8. In ōrātiōne meā dīcam dē mōribus fīrmīs Sēstiī et dē studiō cōnservandae salūtis commūnis. (Cicero.—**Sēstius, -iī.**)
9. Trānsitus ad senectūtem nōs āvocat ā rēbus gerendīs et corpus facit īnfīrmius. (Cicero.)
10. Cum recreandae vōcis īnfīrmae causā necesse esset mihi ambulāre, hās litterās dictāvī forīs ambulāns. (Cicero.—**dictāre,** *to dictate.*)
11. Semper metuendō sapiēns vītat malum. (Publilius Syrus.)
12. Haec virtūs ex prōvidendō est appellāta prūdentia. (Cicero.—**prōvidēre.**—**prūdentia = prō-videntia.**)
13. Fāma vīrēs acquīrit eundō. (Virgil.—**acquīrō,** from **ad-quaerō,** *to acquire.*)
14. Hae vicissitūdinēs fortūnae, etsī nōbīs iūcundae in experiendō nōn fuērunt, in legendō tamen erunt iūcundae. Recordātiō enim praeteritī dolōris dēlectātiōnem nōbīs habet. (Cicero.—**vicissitūdō, -dinis.**—**recordātiō, -ōnis,** *recollection.*—**praeteritus, -a, -um,** *past.*)

PROMISES, PROMISES!

Nūllī sē dīcit mulier mea nūbere mālle
  quam mihi, nōn sī sē Iuppiter ipse petat.
Dīcit: sed mulier cupidō quod dīcit amantī,
  in ventō et rapidā scrībere oportet aquā.

(*Catullus 70; meter: elegiac couplet.—**Nūllī** and **mihi** are both dat. with **nūbere,** and **quam** = **magis quam;** the prose order would be **mulier mea dīcit sē nūllī quam mihi nūbere mālle.—amantī,** *lover.*—Note the separation of adj. from noun in **cupidō . . . amantī** and **rapidā . . . aquā,** a common feature of Latin verse used here to emphasize the nouns that are delayed; the prose order: **sed quod mulier amantī cupidō dīcit.—rapidus, -a, -um.**)

PAETE, NŌN DOLET

Casta suō gladium cum trāderet Arria Paetō,
  quem dē vīsceribus strīnxerat ipsa suīs,
"Sī qua fidēs, vulnus quod fēcī nōn dolet," inquit,
  "sed quod tū faciēs, hoc mihi, Paete, dolet."

(*Martial 1.13; meter: elegiac couplet.—Caecina Paetus was compelled to commit suicide in 42 A.D., because of the role he had played in a conspiracy against the emperor Claudius; his courageous and devoted wife Arria, choosing to die with him, stabbed herself before passing the sword to her husband and assuring him that the pain of the wound itself would be slight. See below, L.I. 39.—The prose order of the first verse would be: **Cum Arria casta Paetō suō gladium trāderet.—castus, -a, -um,** *loyal, chaste.*—**gladius, -ī,** *sword.*—**vīscera, -cerum,** n. pl., *vital organs, abdomen.*—**stringō, -ere, strīnxī, strictum,** *to draw tight, tie; pull, draw out.*—**sī qua** [=quae, indef.] **fidēs,** i.e., *if you have any faith in me, if you will trust me.*)

HANNIBAL AND THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SECOND PUNIC WAR

Hannibal, fīlius Hamilcaris, Carthāgine nātus est. In adulēscentiā prīstinum odium patris ergā Rōmānōs sīc firmē cōnservāvit ut numquam id dēpōneret. Cum patre exiit Carthāgine et in Hispāniam longō itinere prōfectus est; et post multōs annōs, Hamilcare interfectō, exercitus eī imperium trādidit. Sīc Hannibal, quīnque et vīgintī annōs nātus, imperātor factus est. Tribus annīs nōn requiēvit, sed omnēs gentēs Hispāniae superāvit et trēs exercitūs maximōs parāvit. Ex hīs ūnum in Āfricam mīsit, alterum cum frātre in Hispāniā relīquit, tertium in Italiam sēcum dūxit.

Ad Alpēs adiit, quās nēmō umquam ante eum cum exercitū trānsierat. Populōs cōnantēs prohibēre eum trānsitū necāvit; loca patefēcit; et cum multīs elephantīs mīlitibusque in Italiam iniit. In hōc itinere tam gravī morbō oculōrum adfectus est ut posteā numquam dextrō oculō bene ūtī

posset. Multōs ducēs, tamen, exercitūsque Rōmānōs vīcit, et propter illum imperātōrem mīlia mīlitum Rōmānōrum periērunt.

(Nepos, *Hannibal,* excerpts; see L.A. 8.—Hannibal, general who led the Carthaginians against the Romans in the Second Punic War, 218–02 B.C.—**Hamilcar, -caris.**—**dē + pōnō.**—**Hispānia, -ae,** *Spain.*—**Āfrica, -ae.**—**Alpēs, Alpium,** f. pl., *the Alps.*—**adficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum,** *to affect, afflict, weaken.*)

*The Oath of Hannibal, Johann Heinrich Schoenfeld, 17th century
Germanisches Nationalmuseum, Nuremberg, German*

ETYMOLOGY

The terms "gerund" and "gerundive" derive ultimately from the stem **gerund-** (= **gerend-**) of **gerō.** The gerund indicates "doing" (action); the gerundive indicates what is "to be done."

In late Latin the ablative of the gerund was used with increasing frequency as the equivalent of a present participle. From this usage derive the Italian and the Spanish present participles, which end in **-ndo** and are invariable.

Latin Gerund	It. Participle	Sp. Participle
dandō	dando	dando
faciendō	facendo	haciendo
dīcendō	dicendo	diciendo
pōnendō	ponendo	poniendo
scrībendō	scrivendo	escribiendo

In the readings   1. conjuration; cp. **coniūrātī.**—corroborate, corroborate; cp. **rōbur, rō-boris,** n., *hard wood, oak.* 2. inflammation, inflammatory. 5. punitive, impunity; cp. **poena.** 10. dictator. 14. In **re-cord-ātiō** you see the stem of **cor, cordis,** *heart.* This shows that formerly the heart was regarded not only as the seat of the emotions but also as the mind and the seat of the memory, a belief reflected in our own phrase "learn by heart." Cp. record, accord, concord, discord, cordial, cordate, courage. Eng. "heart" is cognate with Lat. **cord-.** "Promises": rapid, rapids, rapidity; cp. **rapiō.** "Paete": chaste, chasten, chastity, chastise.—gladiator, gladiatorial, gladiola, gladiolus.—viscera, visceral, eviscerate.—stringency, stringendo, stringent, astringent, strict, constrict, restrict. "Hannibal": deponent, depose, deposit, deposition.—affect, affection.

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

Salvēte, discipulī discipulaeque; haec sunt discenda: Cato's definition of an orator, as quoted by the 1st cen. A.D. educator Quintilian (*Īnstitūtiōnēs Ōrātōriae* 12.1.1), is quite well known, and you can easily translate it now that you've studied gerunds (and with the explanation that **perītus, -a, -um** + gen. = *experienced in*): **ōrātor est vir bonus dīcendī perītus.** Here are some more familiar items with gerunds and gerundives: New Mexico's state motto, **crēscit eundō** (review Ch. 37, if you have trouble with that one!); **docendō discimus; spectēmur agendō,** *let us be judged by what we do* (lit., *by our doing*); **modus vīvendī** and **modus operandī** ("m.o." to you detective show buffs!); **onus probandī,** *the burden of proof* (lit., *of proving*); then, of course, there are these many "things to be done": **agenda, addenda, corrigenda, referendum.**

Et duo cētera ex vocābulāriō novō: **iniūria nōn excūsat iniūriam,** (*one*) *injury does not excuse* (*another*) *injury,* is an old legal tenet, and **expertō crēdite** is still good advice. **Habēte fēlīcem modum vīvendī, studentēs, et valēte!**

40

-Ne, Num, and Nōnne in Direct Questions; Fear Clauses; Genitive and Ablative of Description

-Ne, Num, AND Nōnne IN DIRECT QUESTIONS

As we have already seen, a Roman could ask a direct question in a variety of ways, by beginning a sentence with an interrogative pronoun (**quis, quid**) or such other interrogatives as **ubi** or **cūr**, or by suffixing **-ne** to the first word of the sentence (often the verb, or some other word on which the question hinged). But "leading questions" can also be asked in Latin: if the speaker expected "yes" as an answer, the question was introduced with **nōnne** (a construction already encountered, though not formally discussed); if a negative reply was anticipated, **num** was the introductory word.

Quis venit? *Who is coming?*
Cūr venit? *Why is he coming?*
Venitne? *Is he coming?*
Nōnne venit? *He is coming, isn't he?* or *Isn't he coming?*
Num venit? *He isn't coming, is he?*
Scrīpsistīne illās litterās? *Did you write that letter?*

Nōnne illās litterās scrīpsistī? *You wrote that letter, didn't you?* or *Didn't you write that letter?*

Num illās litterās scrīpsistī? *You didn't write that letter, did you?*

FEAR CLAUSES

Verbs denoting fear or apprehension often take subjunctive noun clauses introduced by **nē** (*that*) or **ut** (*that . . . not;* occasionally **nē nōn** was employed instead of **ut**); the conjunctions are just the opposite of what might be expected, because in origin the clauses they introduced were essentially independent jussive clauses (i.e., **timeō nē abeās,** *I fear that you may go away,* = **Timeō. Nē abeās!,** *I'm afraid—Don't go away!*). Auxiliaries commonly employed in translating include *will* or *may* (in primary sequence) and *would* or *might* (in secondary sequence), as indicated in the following examples:

Timeō nē id crēdant, *I fear that they will (may) believe this.*
Vereor ut id crēdant, *I am afraid that they will (may) not believe this.*
Timuērunt nē amīcōs amitterent, *they feared that they might (would) lose their friends.*
Metuistī ut mulierēs ex casā exīssent, *you were afraid that the women had not left the house.*

GENITIVE AND ABLATIVE OF DESCRIPTION

A noun in either the ablative or genitive case plus a modifying adjective may be employed to modify another noun; both the ablative of description and the genitive of description (already encountered in the readings) might describe a noun by indicating its character, quality, or size, although the ablative usage was especially common in describing physical traits. Like adjectives, these descriptive phrases usually follow the nouns they modify.

fēmina **magnae sapientiae,** *a woman of great intellect*
pāx in hominibus **bonae voluntātis,** *peace among men of good will*
cōnsilium **eius modī,** *a plan of this kind*
Dīligō hominem **antīquā virtūte,** *I esteem a man of old-fashioned morality.*
mīles **firmā manū,** *the soldier with the strong hand*
Es **mōribus bonīs,** *you are a person of good character.*

VOCABULARY

aes, aéris, n., *bronze* (era; cp. **aerárium, -ī,** *treasury;* **aereus, -a, -um,** *made of bronze*)

dóminus, -ī, m., *master (of a household), lord,* and **dómina, -ae,** f., *mistress, lady* (dominate, dominant, domineer, dominion, domain, domino, domine, don, dungeon, belladonna, madonna, dame, damsel, danger; cp. **domus**)

lácrima, -ae, f., *tear* (lacrimal, lacrimation)

méta, -ae, f., *turning point, goal; limit, boundary*

monuméntum, -ī, n., *monument* (monumental, monumentalize; cp. **moneō**)

nāsus, -ī, m., *nose* (nasal, nasalize, nasogastric; cp. nostril, nozzle)

sáxum, -ī, n., *rock, stone* (saxatile, saxifrage, saxicolous; cp. **secō,** *to cut,* saw, saxon)

vúltus, -ūs, m., *countenance, face*

iústus, -a, -um, *just, right* (justice, injustice, unjust, justify, justification, adjust, adjustment, readjust; cp. **iūs, iūdex, iniūria**)

tot, indecl. adj., *so many* (cp. **quot; totidem,** indecl. adj., *the same number;* **totiēns,** adv., *that number of times, so often*)

praéter, prep. + acc., *besides, except; beyond, past* (preterit, preterition, pretermit, preternatural; cp. **prae**)

nónne, interrog. adv. which introduces questions expecting the answer "yes."

num, interrog. adv.: (1) introduces direct questions which expect the answer "no"; (2) introduces indirect questions and means *whether.*

omnínō, adv., *wholly, entirely, altogether* (cp. **omnis**)

postrémum, adv., *after all, finally; for the last time* (cp. **post**)

quīn, adv., *indeed, in fact*

éxplicō (1), *unfold; explain; spread out, deploy* (explicate, inexplicable; implicate, implication, from **implicō,** *to enfold, interweave*)

fatīgō (1), *to weary, tire out* (fatigue, indefatigable)

for, fārī, fātus sum, *to speak (prophetically), talk, foretell* (affable, ineffable, infant, infantry, preface; cp. **fābula, fāma, fātum**)

opínor, opīnárī, opīnátus sum, *to suppose* (opine, opinion)

repériō, reperíre, répperī, repértum, *to find, discover, learn; get* (repertoire, repertory; cp. **parēns** and **pariō,** *to give birth to*)

véreor, verérī, véritus sum, *to show reverence for, respect; be afraid of, fear* (revere, reverend, reverent, reverential, irreverent)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Nōnne Rōmulus, sator huius urbis, fuit vir mīrābilis virtūtis et fideī pristinae?

2. At postrēmum vereor, heu, ut ā virīs parvae sapientiae hoc studium vetus intellegī possit.
3. Nōn oportet nōs trānsīre haec līberālia hūmānaque studia, nam praemia eōrum certē sunt maxima.
4. Dignitās illīus ōrātiōnis fuit omnīnō idōnea occāsiōnī.
5. Equī eius, cum fatīgātī essent et ventus esset eīs adversus, ad mētam tamen quam celerrimē currēbant.
6. Vir corpore īnfīrmō id nōn facere poterat.
7. Etsī trēs fīliī sunt cupidī magnōrum operum faciendōrum, eīs nōn licet domō abīre.
8. Domina firma acerbē querēbātur plūrimōs servōs fuisse absentēs—vae illīs miserīs!
9. Mīrābile rogātū, num istam mulierem amās, mī amīce?
10. Nōnne timent nē et Rōmae et rūrī magnī tumultūs sint?
11. Num ōpīnāris tot hominēs iūstōs omnīnō errāre?
12. Recognōvistīne, ut illa aedificia vīsum ambulābās, mulierem sub arbore humī requiēscentem?
13. I am afraid, in my heart, that few things can be accomplished now even by trying.
14. You do not hesitate to say this, do you?
15. They supposed that, after all, he was a man of very little faith.
16. You do recognize how great the danger is, do you not?

SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE

1. Quattuor causās reperiō cūr senectūs misera videātur. Videāmus quam iūsta quaeque eārum sit. (Cicero.)
2. Verērī videntur ut habeam satis praesidī. (*Cicero.—**praesidium, -iī,** *guard*).
3. Necesse est enim sit alterum dē duōbus: aut mors sēnsūs omnīnō aufert aut animus in alium locum morte abit. Sī mors somnō similis est sēnsūsque exstinguuntur, dī bonī, quid lucrī est morī! (Cicero.—**necesse est** may be followed by the subjunctive.—**aufert = ab-fert.**—**exstinguō, -ere.—lucrum, -ī,** *gain, profit.*)
4. Aetās semper trānsitum et aliquid novī adfert. (Terence.)
5. Nōnne ūnum exemplum luxuriae aut cupiditātis multum malī facit? (Seneca.—**luxuria, -ae.**)
6. Mīror tot mīlia virōrum tam puerīliter identidem cupere currentēs equōs vidēre. (Pliny.—**puerīliter,** adv., based on **puer,** *childishly.*—**identidem,** adv., *again and again.*—**currentēs,** i.e., in the races.)
7. Nōnne vidēs etiam guttās, in saxa cadendō, pertundere illa saxa? (Lucretius.—**gutta, -ae,** *drop [of water].*—**pertundō, -ere,** *to bore a hole through, erode.*)

8. Metuō nē id cōnsilī cēperīmus quod nōn facile explicāre possīmus. (*Cicero.—**cōnsilī**, gen. of the whole with **id**.)

9. Antōnius, ūnus ex inimīcīs et vir minimae clēmentiae, iussit Cicerōnem interficī et caput eius inter duās manūs in Rōstrīs pōnī. (Livy.— **inimīcus, -ī,** from **in + amīcus,** *personal enemy.*—**Rōstra, -ōrum,** *the Rostra,* the speaker's stand in the Roman Forum.)

10. Omnēs quī habent aliquid nōn sōlum sapientiae sed etiam sānitātis volunt hanc rem pūblicam salvam esse. (*Cicero.—**sānitās, -tātis.**)

11. Salvē, nec minimō puella nāsō nec bellō pede nec nigrīs ocellīs nec longīs digitīs nec ōre siccō! (*Catullus.—**niger, nigra, nigrum,** *black, dark.*—**ocellus,** diminutive of **oculus.**—**siccus, -a, -um,** *dry.*)

12. Homō sum; nihil hūmānī aliēnum ā mē putō. (Terence.—**aliēnus, -a, -um + ab** = *foreign to.*)

13. Amīcus animum amīcī ita cum suō miscet quasi facit ūnum ex duōbus. (Cicero.)

14. Sex diēbus fēcit Dominus caelum et terram et mare et omnia quae in eīs sunt, et requiēvit diē septimō. (Exodus.)

15. Mīsit lēgātum Valerium Procillum, summā virtūte et hūmānitāte adulēscentem. (Caesar.—**lēgātus, -ī,** *ambassador.*—Valerius Procillus.—**hūmānitās, -tātis.**)

16. Num negāre audēs? Quid tacēs? Convincam, sī negās; videō enim esse hīc in senātū quōsdam quī tēcum ūnā fuērunt. Ō dī immortālēs! (*Cicero.—**quid,** here = *why?*—**con + vincō,** *to prove wrong, convict;* sc. **tē.**—**ūnā,** adv., *together, in concert.*)

17. Nunc timeō nē nihil tibi praeter lacrimās queam reddere. (*Cicero— **queam = possim.**—**reddō, -dere,** *to give back, return.*)

JUPITER PROPHESIES TO VENUS THE FUTURE GLORY OF ROME

Ollī subrīdēns hominum sator atque deōrum
255 vultū, quō caelum tempestātēsque serēnat,
oscula lībāvit nātae, dehinc tālia fātur:
"Parce metū, Cytherēa; manent immōta tuōrum
fāta tibī. Cernēs urbem et prōmissa Lavīnī
moenia sublīmemque ferēs ad sīdera caelī
260 magnanimum Aenēan; neque mē sententia vertit.
. . .
263 Bellum ingēns geret Ītaliā populōsque ferōcīs
contundet mōrēsque virīs et moenia pōnet.
. . .
Rōmulus excipiet gentem et Māvortia condet
moenia Rōmānōsque suō dē nōmine dīcet.
Hīs ego nec mētās rērum nec tempora pōnō:
imperium sine fīne dedī. Quīn aspera Iūnō,
280 quae mare nunc terrāsque metū caelumque fatīgat,

cōnsilia in melius referet, mēcumque fovēbit
Rōmānōs, rērum dominōs gentemque togātam."

(*Virgil, *Aeneid* 1.254ff; meter: dactylic hexameter.—**Ollī** = **illī**, here Venus, who has come to her father Jupiter to ask whether his intentions have changed toward her son, the Trojan prince Aeneas, or if he is still destined to found a new Trojan nation in Italy.—**vultū**, abl. of means with **subrīdēns.**— **ōscula lībāvit**, i.e., he kissed her in ritual fashion.—**nātae**, ind. obj.—**dēhinc**, scanned here as a monosyllable.—**metū**, an alternate form of the dat. **metuī.**—**Cytherēa, -ae**, *the Cytherean*, i.e., Venus, so-called for the Aegean island of Cythera, which was sacred to her.—**immōta**, pred. adj., after **manent.**—**tuōrum**, i.e., Aeneas and his Trojan followers.—**Lavīnium, -iī**, *Lavinium*, the town Aeneas was destined to found in Latium, near the future city of Rome.—**sublīmem**, in the predicate with **Aenēan** (a Gk. acc. form), *you will carry Aeneas on high.*—**neque . . . vertit**, i.e., *I have not changed my mind;* but what is the literal translation?—**geret . . . pōnet:** Aeneas is subject of all three verbs.—**Italiā**, sc. **in**; prepositions usual in prose were commonly omitted in verse.—**ferōcīs** = **ferōcēs**, acc. pl.—Through a device known as zeugma, **pōnet** has different senses with its two objects, *institute* with **mōrēs** and *build* with **moenia.**—**Māvortius, -a, -um**, *of Mars,* so-called because of the legend that Mars was father of Romulus, Rome's first king.—**rērum**, *of their affairs,* i.e., *for their empire.*—**tempora**, *time limits.*—**cōnsilia . . . referet**, i.e., *will change her attitude for the better;* Juno had sided with the Greeks in the Trojan war and had continued to resist Aeneas' mission.—**togātus, -a, -um**, *togaed, toga-clad.*)

Virgil between two Muses
Mosaic, early 3rd century A.D.
Musée National du Bardo
Tunis, Tunisia

THE VALUE OF LITERATURE

Sī ex hīs studiīs dēlectātiō sōla peterētur, tamen, ut opīnor, hanc animī remissiōnem hūmānissimam ac līberālissimam iūdicārētis. Nam cēterae neque temporum sunt neque aetātum omnium neque locōrum; at haec studia adulēscentiam alunt, senectūtem oblectant, rēs secundās ōrnant, adversīs perfugium ac sōlācium praebent, dēlectant domī, nōn impediunt forīs, pernoctant nōbīscum, peregrīnantur, rūsticantur.

(*Cicero, *Prō Archiā* 7.16.—**hanc,** sc. **esse.**—**iūdicāre,** *to judge, consider.*—**cēterae,** sc. **remissiōnēs.**—take **omnium** with all three descriptive genitives, **temporum, aetātum,** and **locōrum.**)

A MONUMENT MORE LASTING THAN BRONZE

Exēgī monumentum aere perennius.

. . .

Nōn omnis moriar, multaque pars meī
vītābit Libitīnam.

(*Horace, *Odes* 3.30.1, 6–7; meter: first Asclepiadean. See L.I. 28.—**perennis, -e,** *lasting [throughout the years].*—**multa,** here = **magna.**—**Libitīna, -ae,** *goddess of funerals; death.*)

ETYMOLOGY

<table>
<tr><td valign="top">

In the readings
</td><td>

2. presidium, preside, president, presidency. 3. extinguish, extinct.—lucre, lucrative. 6. puerile, puerility. 7. "gtt.," medical abbreviation for "drops." 9. inimical, enemy. 11. denigrate, desiccate. 12. **Aliēnus** literally means *belonging to another* (**alius**): alien, alienate, alienation, inalienable. 15. legate, legation, delegate.—humanity, humanities, humanitarian; cp. **hūmānus, homō.** 16. convince, convict, conviction. "Jupiter": Connected with **for, fārī, fātus sum** is the noun **fātum;** what Jupiter has prophecied is one's "fate." "Value of Literature": adjudicate. "A Monument": "perennials" are outdoor plants that survive *through the years,* i.e., from one year to the next; and Latin, dear friends, is a perennial language!
</td></tr>
</table>

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŪTILIS!

Salvēte postrēmum, discipulī et discipulae! Here are some **rēs novae ex hōc capite ultimō: dominus illūminātiō mea,** *the Lord is my light,* is the motto of Oxford University; **lacrima Christī** is a well known Lat. phrase for *the tear of Christ* (and also the name of a sweet Italian wine). An oft quoted line from Virgil's *Aeneid* comes as the hero Aeneas, shipwrecked in North Africa, gazes upon a Carthaginian mural that depicts the suffering of both his own people and the Greeks in the Trojan war: **hīc etiam . . . sunt lacrimae rērum et mentem mortālia tangunt.** The Latin works better than a literal En-

glish translation (which you can now easily provide for yourself), but a free rendering would be: *even here there are tears for the ways of the world, and man's mortality touches the heart.*

Not to be so lacrimose (or "lachrymose," an alternate spelling), let's move to some more upbeat items: remember how to make masculine agent nouns from verbs?—e.g., from **reperiō** is **repertor,** *discover.* Well, the feminine agentive suffix is **-trīx, -trīcis** (cp. Eng. "aviator" and "aviatrix," and **lēctor/lēctrīx,** which we've seen before), hence this proverb: **paupertās omnium artium repertrīx,** something like our "necessity is the mother of invention" (but what is the literal meaning?). **Vultus est index animī,** *the face is an indication of the soul,* it has often been said. And speaking of faces, to "stick your nose up in the air" and to "look down your nose" on someone are not wholly modern idioms for viewing others critically or with disdain; the Neronian satirist Persius says of his predecessor Horace, in a brilliant and not wholly complimentary metaphor, that he *hung the people from his well-blown nose* (**excussō populum suspendere nāsō**). **Nāsō,** by the way, was the "nickname" or **cognōmen** of the Augustan poet Ovid: the Romans often gave their children names that focussed on physical or mental traits and they were frequently passed on from generation to generation (our friend Marcus Tullius, **mīrābile dictū,** was stuck with the name **Cicerō,** *garbanzo bean,* because of a peculiar growth on an ancestor's nose!).

May your love of Latin be **aere perennius: rīdēte, gaudēte, carpite omnēs diēs vestrōs, atque postrēmum, lēctōrēs et lēctrīcēs dulcēs, valēte!**

Locī Antīquī

Although these passages chosen from ancient authors have been adapted to meet the linguistic experience of first-year students, they have been edited as little as possible; the language and the thoughts are those of the ancient writers. In the case of poetry, one or more verses have been omitted from each excerpt but the verses actually presented here have not been altered. In the case of a prose passage, some words or sentences may have been omitted or the wording has been somewhat simplified at one point or another.

Students should find the perusal of these varied **Locī Antīquī** interesting per se and should also find satisfaction and a sense of accomplishment in being able to translate passages of such maturity at their stage of Latin study. Words appearing here that have not been introduced in the 40 chapter vocabularies are glossed at their first one or two occurrences, and especially important words are listed in the "Vocabulary" following the glosses to each passage; most are also included in the Latin-English Vocabulary at the end of the book for easy reference.

1. DISILLUSIONMENT

Miser Catulle, dēsinās[1] ineptīre,[2]
et quod vidēs perīsse perditum[3] dūcās.
Fulsēre[4] quondam candidī tibī sōlēs,
cum ventitābās[5] quō[6] puella dūcēbat,
5   amāta nōbīs quantum amābitur nūlla.

1

METER: choliambic.
[1] **dēsinō, -ere, -siī, -situm,** cease (**dēsinās** = *juss. subj.* for **dēsine**)
[2] **ineptiō (4),** play the fool

[3] **perdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum,** destroy, lose
[4] **fulgeō, -ēre, fulsī,** shine (**fulsēre** = **fulsērunt**)
[5] **ventitō (1),** *frequentative form of* **veniō,** come often
[6] **quō,** *adv.,* whither, where

Fulsēre vērē candidī tibī sōlēs.
Nunc iam illa nōn vult; tū quoque, impotēns,[7] nōlī;
nec quae fugit sectāre[8] nec miser vīve,
sed obstinātā[9] mente perfer,[10] obdūrā.[11]

10   Valē, puella, iam Catullus obdūrat,
nec tē requīret nec rogābit invītam[12];
at tū dolēbis, cum rogāberis nūlla.
Scelesta, vae tē! Quae tibī manet vīta![13]
Quis nunc tē adībit? Cui vidēberis bella?

15   Quem nunc amābis? Cuius esse dīcēris?
At tū, Catulle, dēstinātus obdūrā. (**Catullus** 8)

2. HOW DEMOSTHENES OVERCAME HIS HANDICAPS

Ōrātor imitētur[1] illum cui summa vīs dīcendī concēditur,[2] Dē-
mosthenem, in quō tantum studium fuisse dīcitur ut impedīmenta[3] nātūrae
dīligentiā[4] industriāque[5] superāret. Nam cum ita balbus[6] esset ut illīus ipsīus
artis[7] cui studēret prīmam litteram nōn posset dīcere, perfēcit[8] meditandō[9]

5   ut nēmō plānius[10] loquerētur. Deinde, cum spīritus eius esset angustior,[11]
spīritū continendō multum perfēcit in dīcendō; et coniectīs[12] in ōs calculīs,[13]
summā vōce versūs multōs ūnō spīritū prōnūntiāre cōnsuēscēbat[14]; neque id
faciēbat stāns ūnō in locō sed ambulāns. (**Cicero**, *Dē Ōrātōre* 1.61.260–61)

3. THE TYRANT CAN TRUST NO ONE

Multōs annōs tyrannus Syrācūsānōrum[1] fuit Dionȳsius. Pulcherrimam
urbem servitūte oppressam tenuit. At ā bonīs auctōribus cognōvimus eum
fuisse hominem summae temperantiae[2] in vīctū[3] et in rēbus gerendīs ācrem
et industrium,[4] eundem tamen malum et iniūstum.[5] Quārē, omnibus virīs

5   bene vēritātem quaerentibus hunc vidērī miserrimum necesse est, nam

[7] **im-potēns**, *gen.* **-entis**, powerless, weak, hopelessly in love
[8] **sectāre**, *imper. of* sector (1), follow eagerly, pursue; *word order:* sectāre (eam) quae fugit
[9] **obstinātus, -a, -um**, firm
[10] **per-ferō**, endure
[11] **obdūrō** (1), *vb. of adj.* **dūrus**
[12] **invītus, -a, -um**, unwilling
[13] *see notes on excerpt in Ch. 19.*
VOCABULARY: **perdō, quō, invītus.**

2
[1] **imitor, -ārī, -ātus sum**
[2] **con-cēdō**
[3] **impedīmentum, -ī**
[4] **dīligentia, -ae**
[5] **industria, -ae**
[6] **balbus, -a, -um**, stuttering

[7] **illīus . . . artis**, *i.e., rhetoric*
[8] **per-ficiō**, do thoroughly, bring about, accomplish
[9] **meditor** (1), practice
[10] **plānius**, *comp. of adv.* **plānē**
[11] **angustus, -a, -um**, narrow, short
[12] **con-iciō (iaciō)**
[13] **calculus, -ī**, pebble
[14] **cōnsuēscō, -ere, -suēvī, -suētum**, become accustomed
VOCABULARY: **concēdō, perficiō, angustus, coniciō, cōnsuēscō.**

3
[1] **Syrācūsānī, -ōrum**, Syracusans
[2] **temperantia, -ae**
[3] **vīctus, -ūs**, mode of life
[4] **industrius, -a, -um**
[5] **in-iūstus, -a, -um**

nēminī crēdere audēbat. Itaque propter iniūstam cupiditātem dominātūs[6] quasi in carcerem[7] ipse sē inclūserat.[8] Quīn etiam,[9] nē tōnsōrī[10] collum[11] committeret, fīliās suās artem tōnsōriam docuit.[12] Ita hae virginēs tondēbant[13] barbam[14] et capillum[15] patris. Et tamen ab hīs ipsīs, cum iam essent
10   adultae,[16] ferrum remōvit, eīsque imperāvit ut carbōnibus[17] barbam et capillum sibi adūrerent.[18] (**Cicero,** *Tusculānae Disputātiōnēs* 5.20.57–58)

4. THE SWORD OF DAMOCLES

Hic tyrannus ipse dēmōnstrāvit quam beātus esset. Nam cum quīdam ex eius assentātōribus,[1] Dāmoclēs,[2] commemorāret[3] cōpiās eius, maiestātem[4] dominātūs, rērum abundantiam,[5] negāretque quemquam[6] umquam beātiōrem fuisse, Dionȳsius "Vīsne igitur," inquit, "Ō Dāmocle, ipse hanc vītam
5   dēgustāre[7] et fortūnam meam experīrī?" Cum ille sē cupere dīxisset, hominem in aureō[8] lectō[9] collocārī[10] iussit mēnsāsque ōrnāvit argentō[11] aurōque.[12] Tum puerōs bellōs iussit cēnam exquīsītissimam[13] īnferre. Fortūnātus sibi Dāmoclēs vidēbātur. Eōdem autem tempore Dionȳsius gladium suprā[14] caput eius saetā equīnā[15] dēmittī[16] iussit. Dāmoclēs, cum gladium vīdisset, ti
10   mēns ōrāvit tyrannum ut eī abīre licēret, quod iam "beātus" nōllet esse. Satisne Dionȳsius vidētur dēmōnstrāvisse nihil esse eī beātum cui semper aliquī[17] metus impendeat?[18] (**Cicero,** *Tusculānae Disputātiōnēs* 5.20.61–62)

5. DERIVATION OF "PHILOSOPHUS" AND SUBJECTS OF PHILOSOPHY

Eī quī studia in contemplātiōne[1] rērum pōnēbant "sapientēs" appellābantur, et id nōmen ūsque ad Pȳthagorae[2] aetātem mānāvit.[3] Hunc aiunt doctē et cōpiōsē[4] quaedam cum Leonte[5] disputāvisse[6]; et Leōn, cum illīus

[6] **dominātus, -ūs,** absolute rule or power
[7] **carcer, -eris,** *m.,* prison
[8] **inclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsum,** shut in
[9] **quīn etiam,** moreover
[10] **tōnsor, -ōris,** *m.,* barber
[11] **collum, -ī,** neck
[12] **doceō** *may take two objects.*
[13] **tondeō, -ēre, totondī, tōnsum,** shear, clip
[14] **barba, -ae,** beard
[15] **capillus, -ī,** hair
[16] **adultus, -a, -um**
[17] **carbō, -ōnis,** *m.,* glowing coal
[18] **adūrō, -ere, -ussī, -ustum,** singe
VOCABULARY: **temperantia, iniūstus, inclūdō.**

4

[1] **assentātor, -ōris,** *m.,* flatterer, "yes-man"
[2] **Dāmoclēs, -is,** *m.*
[3] **commemorō** (1), mention, recount
[4] **maiestās, -tātis,** *f.,* greatness
[5] **abundantia, -ae**
[6] **quisquam, quidquam,** anyone, anything

[7] **dēgustō** (1), taste, try
[8] **aureus, -a, -um,** golden
[9] **lectus, -ī,** couch
[10] **col-locō,** place
[11] **argentum, -ī,** silver
[12] **aurum, -ī,** gold
[13] **exquīsītus, -a, -um; ex-quaesītus**
[14] **suprā,** *adv. and prep. + acc.,* above
[15] **saetā equīnā,** by a horsehair
[16] **dēmittō,** let down
[17] **aliquī, -qua, -quod,** *adj. of* **aliquis**
[18] **impendeō, -ēre,** hang over, threaten
VOCABULARY: **quisquam, collocō, aurum, suprā.**

5

[1] **contemplātiō, -ōnis,** *f.*
[2] **Pȳthagorās, -ae,** *m.*
[3] **mānō** (1), flow, extend
[4] **cōpiōsē,** *adv.,* fully
[5] **Leōn, -ontis,** *m.,* ruler of Phlius
[6] **disputō** (1), discuss

ingenium et ēloquentiam[7] admīrātus esset,[8] quaesīvit ex eō quā arte maximē
5 ūterētur. At ille dīxit sē artem nūllam scīre sed esse philosophum. Tum Leōn,
admīrātus novum nōmen, quaesīvit quī essent philosophī. Pȳthagorās re-
spondit multōs hominēs glōriae aut pecūniae servīre sed paucōs quōsdam
esse quī cētera prō nihilō[9] habērent sed nātūram rērum cognōscere cuperent;
hōs sē appellāre "studiōsōs[10] sapientiae," id est enim "philosophōs."[11] Sīc
10 Pȳthagorās huius nōminis inventor[12] fuit.

Ab antīquā philosophiā ūsque ad Sōcratem[13] philosophī numerōs et
sīdera tractābant[14] et unde omnia orīrentur[15] et quō[16] discēderent. Sōcratēs
autem prīmus philosophiam dēvocāvit ē caelō et in urbibus hominibusque
collocāvit et coēgit eam dē vītā et mōribus rēbusque bonīs et malīs quaerere.
(**Cicero,** *Tusculānae Disputātiōnēs* 5.3.8–9; 5.4.10)

6. CICERO ON THE VALUE AND THE NATURE OF FRIENDSHIP

Ego vōs hortor ut amīcitiam omnibus rēbus hūmānīs antepōnātis. Sen-
tiō equidem,[1] exceptā[2] sapientiā, nihil melius hominī ā deīs immortālibus
datum esse. Dīvitiās aliī antepōnunt; aliī, salūtem; aliī, potestātem[3]; aliī,
honōrēs; multī, etiam voluptātēs. Illa autem incerta sunt, posita nōn tam
5 in cōnsiliīs nostrīs quam in fortūnae vicissitūdinibus.[4] Quī autem in virtūte
summum bonum pōnunt, bene illī quidem faciunt; sed ex ipsā virtūte amī-
citia nāscitur nec sine virtūte amīcitia esse potest.

Dēnique cēterae rēs, quae petuntur, opportūnae[5] sunt rēbus singulīs[6]:
dīvitiae, ut eīs ūtāris; honōrēs, ut laudēris; salūs, ut dolōre careās et rēbus
10 corporis ūtāris. Amīcitia rēs plūrimās continet; nūllō locō exclūditur[7]; num-
quam intempestīva,[8] numquam molesta[9] est. Itaque nōn aquā, nōn igne in
locīs plūribus ūtimur quam amīcitiā; nam amīcitia secundās rēs clāriōrēs
facit et adversās rēs leviōrēs.

Quis est quī velit in omnium rērum abundantiā ita[10] vīvere ut neque dīligat
15 quemquam[11] neque ipse ab ūllō dīligātur? Haec enim est tyrannōrum vīta,
in quā nūlla fidēs, nūlla cāritās,[12] nūlla benevolentia[13] potest esse; omnia
semper metuuntur, nūllus locus est amīcitiae. Quis enim aut eum dīligat[14]
quem metuat aut eum ā quō sē metuī putet? Multī autem sī cecidērunt, ut

---

[7] ēloquentia, -ae
[8] admīror (1), wonder at, admire
[9] nihilum, -ī, = nihil
[10] studiōsus, -a, -um, fond of
[11] philosophus: *Greek* philos, fond of, + sophia, wisdom
[12] inventor, -ōris, *m., cp.* inveniō
[13] Sōcratēs, -is
[14] tractō (1), handle, investigate, treat
[15] orior, -īrī, ortus sum, arise, proceed, originate
[16] quō, *adv.,* where
VOCABULARY: admīror, orior, quō.
6
[1] equidem, *adv.,* indeed

[2] excipiō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, except
[3] potestās, -tātis, *f.,* power
[4] vicissitūdō, -inis, *f.*
[5] opportūnus, -a, -um, suitable
[6] singulus, -a, -um, single, separate
[7] exclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsum
[8] intempestīvus, -a, -um, unseasonable
[9] molestus, -a, -um, troublesome
[10] abundantia, -ae
[11] quemquam, *L.A.* 4, n. 6
[12] cāritās, -tātis, *f.,* affection
[13] bene-volentia, -ae, goodwill
[14] dīligat, *deliberative subj.,* would esteem

saepe fit, tum intellegunt quam inopēs[15] amīcōrum fuerint. Quid vērō stul-
20 tius quam cētera parāre quae parantur pecūniā sed amīcōs nōn parāre, opti-
mam et pulcherrimam quasi supellectilem[16] vītae?

Quisque ipse sē dīligit nōn ut aliam mercēdem[17] ā sē ipse petat sed quod
per sē quisque sibi cārus est. Nisi idem in amīcitiam trānsferētur,[18] vērus
amīcus numquam reperiētur. Amīcus enim est is quī est tamquam alter īdem.
25 Ipse sē dīligit et alterum quaerit cuius animum ita cum suō misceat ut faciat
ūnum ex duōbus. Quid enim dulcius quam habēre quīcum[19] audeās sīc loquī
ut tēcum? (**Cicero,** *Dē Amīcitiā,* excerpts from Chs. 5, 6, 15, 21)

7. CICERO ON WAR

Quaedam officia sunt servanda etiam adversus[1] eōs ā quibus iniūriam
accēpimus. Atque in rē pūblicā maximē cōnservanda sunt iūra bellī. Nam
sunt duo genera dēcertandī[2]: ūnum per disputātiōnem,[3] alterum per vim.
Illud est proprium[4] hominis, hoc bēluārum[5]; sed bellum vī gerendum est sī
5   disputātiōne ūtī nōn licet. Quārē suscipienda quidem bella sunt ut sine in-
iūriā in pāce vīvāmus; post autem victōriam eī cōnservandī sunt quī nōn
crūdēlēs,[6] nōn dūrī in bellō fuērunt, ut maiōrēs nostrī Sabīnōs[7] in cīvitātem
etiam accēpērunt. At Carthāginem omnīnō sustulērunt; etiam Corinthum
sustulērunt—quod nōn approbō[8]; sed crēdō eōs hoc fēcisse nē locus ipse ad
10 bellum faciendum hortārī posset. Meā quidem sententiā,[9] pāx quae nihil
īnsidiārum habeat semper quaerenda est. Ac aequitās[10] bellī fētiālī[11] iūre po-
pulī Rōmānī perscrīpta est.[12] Quārē potest intellegī nūllum bellum esse iūs-
tum nisi quod aut rēbus repetītīs[13] gerātur aut ante dēnūntiātum sit.[14]

Nūllum bellum dēbet suscipī ā cīvitāte optimā nisi aut prō fidē aut prō
15 salūte. Illa bella sunt iniūsta quae sine causā sunt suscepta. Nam extrā[15]
ulcīscendī[16] aut prōpulsandōrum[17] hostium causam nūllum bellum cum ae-
quitāte gerī potest. Noster autem populus sociīs[18] dēfendendīs terrārum[19]

---

[15] **inops, -opis,** bereft of
[16] **supellex, -lectilis,** *f.,* furniture
[17] **mercēs, -ēdis,** *f.,* pay, reward
[18] **trāns-ferō,** transfer, direct
[19] **habēre quīcum** = **habēre eum cum quō**
VOCABULARY: **equidem, potestās, trānsferō.**

7

[1] **adversus,** *prep.* + *acc.,* toward
[2] **dēcertō** (1), fight (to a decision)
[3] **disputātiō, -ōnis,** *f.,* discussion
[4] **proprius, -a, -um,** characteristic of
[5] **bēlua, -ae,** wild beast
[6] **crūdēlis, -e,** cruel
[7] **Sabīnī, -ōrum**

[8] **approbō** (1), approve
[9] **sententiā:** *abl. here expressing accordance*
[10] **aequitās, -tātis,** *f.,* fairness, justice
[11] **fētiālis, -e,** fetial, *referring to a college of priests who were concerned with treaties and the ritual of declaring war*
[12] **per-scrībō,** write out, place on record
[13] **re-petō,** seek again
[14] **dēnūntiō** (1), declare officially
[15] **extrā,** *prep.* + *acc.,* beyond
[16] **ulcīscor, -ī, ultus sum,** avenge, punish
[17] **prōpulsō** (1), repel
[18] **socius, -iī,** ally
[19] **terrārum:** *depends on* **potītus est**

omnium potītus est.[20] (**Cicero**, *Dē Officiīs* 1.11.34–36 and *Dē Rē Pūblicā* 3.23.34–35)

8. HANNIBAL; THE SECOND PUNIC WAR

Hannibal,[1] fīlius Hamilcaris,[2] Carthāgine nātus est. Odium patris ergā Rōmānōs sīc cōnservāvit ut numquam id dēpōneret.[3] Nam post bellum Pūnicum,[4] cum ex patriā in exsilium expulsus esset, nōn relīquit studium bellī Rōmānīs īnferendī.[5] Quārē, cum in Syriam[6] vēnisset, Antiochō[7] rēgī haec
5 locūtus est ut hunc quoque ad bellum cum Rōmānīs indūcere[8] posset:

"Mē novem annōs nātō, pater meus Hamilcar, in Hispāniam[9] imperātor proficīscēns Carthāgine, sacrificium[10] dīs fēcit. Eōdem tempore quaesīvit ā mē vellemne sēcum proficīscī. Cum id libenter audīvissem et ab eō petere coepissem nē dubitāret mē dūcere, tum ille 'Faciam,' inquit, 'sī mihi fidem
10 quam quaerō dederis.' Tum mē ad āram[11] dūxit et mē iūrāre[12] iussit mē numquam in amīcitiā cum Rōmānīs futūrum esse. Id iūs iūrandum[13] patrī datum ūsque ad hanc aetātem ita cōnservāvī ut nēmō sit quī plūs odiī ergā Rōmānōs habeat."

Hāc igitur aetāte Hannibal cum patre in Hispāniam profectus est. Post
15 multōs annōs, Hamilcare et Hasdrubale[14] interfectīs, exercitus eī imperium trādidit. Sīc Hannibal, quīnque et vīgintī annōs nātus, imperātor factus est. Tribus annīs omnēs gentēs Hispāniae superāvit et trēs exercitūs maximōs parāvit. Ex hīs ūnum in Āfricam[15] mīsit, alterum cum frātre in Hispāniā relīquit, tertium in Italiam sēcum dūxit.

20 Ad Alpēs[16] vēnit, quās nēmō umquam ante eum cum exercitū trānsierat. Alpicōs[17] cōnantēs prohibēre eum trānsitū occīdit[18]; loca patefēcit; itinera mūnīvit[19]; effēcit[20] ut[21] elephantus īre posset quā[22] anteā[23] ūnus homō vix[24] poterat rēpere.[25] Sīc in Italiam pervēnit et, Scīpiōne[26] superātō, Etrūriam[27]

---

[20] **potior, -īrī, potītus sum,** + *gen.* (*or abl.*), get possession of
VOCABULARY: **dēcertō, proprius, crūdēlis, potior.**

8

[1] **Hannibal, -alis,** *m.*, *illustrious general who led the Carthaginian forces against the Romans in the Second Punic* (= *Carthaginian*) *War, 218–202* B.C.
[2] **Hamilcar, -aris,** *m.*
[3] **dē-pōnō**
[4] **Pūnicus, -a, -um**
[5] **bellum īn-ferō,** make war on
[6] **Syria, -ae**
[7] **Antiochus, -ī**
[8] **in-dūcō**
[9] **Hispānia, -ae,** Spain
[10] **sacrificium, -iī**
[11] **āra, -ae,** altar

[12] **iūrō** (1), swear
[13] **iūs iūrandum, iūris iūrandī,** *n.*, oath
[14] **Hasdrubal, -alis,** *m.*, *next in command after Hamilcar*
[15] **Āfrica, -ae**
[16] **Alpēs, -ium,** *f. pl.*, the Alps
[17] **Alpicī, -ōrum,** men of the Alps
[18] **occīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum,** cut down
[19] **mūniō** (4), fortify, build
[20] **efficiō,** bring it about, cause
[21] **ut . . . posset:** *noun cl. of result, obj. of* **effēcit**
[22] **quā,** *adv.,* where
[23] **anteā,** *adv.,* before, formerly
[24] **vix,** *adv.,* scarcely
[25] **rēpō, -ere, rēpsī, rēptum,** crawl
[26] **Scīpiō, -ōnis,** *m., father of the Scipio mentioned below*
[27] **Etrūria, -ae,** *district north of Rome, Tuscany*

petīvit. Hōc in itinere tam gravī morbō[28] oculōrum adfectus est[29] ut posteā
25 numquam dextrō oculō bene ūterētur.

Multōs ducēs exercitūsque Rōmānōs superāvit; longum est omnia proe-
lia[30] ēnumerāre.[31] Post Cannēnsem[32] autem pugnam nēmō eī in aciē[33] in
Italiā restitit.[34] Cum autem P. Scīpiō tandem[35] in Āfricam invāsisset,[36] Han-
nibal, ad patriam dēfendendam revocātus, Zamae[37] victus est. Sīc post tot
30 annōs Rōmānī sē perīculō Pūnicō līberāvērunt. (**Nepos,** *Hannibal,* excerpts)

9. AUTOBIOGRAPHICAL NOTES BY HORACE

Nūlla fors[1] mihi tē, Maecēnās,[2] obtulit: optimus Vergilius et post hunc
Varius[3] dīxērunt quid essem. Ut ad tē vēnī, singultim[4] pauca locūtus (nam
pudor[5] prohibēbat plūra profārī[6]), ego nōn dīxī mē clārō patre nātum esse
sed narrāvī quod eram. Respondēs,[7] ut tuus mōs est, pauca. Abeō et post
5 nōnum mēnsem[8] mē revocās iubēsque esse in amīcōrum numerō. Hoc mag-
num esse dūcō, quod[9] placuī tibi, quī bonōs ā turpibus sēcernis[10] nōn patre
clārō sed vītā et pectore pūrō.[11]

Atquī[12] sī mea nātūra est mendōsa[13] vitiīs mediocribus ac paucīs sed
aliōquī[14] rēcta,[15] sī neque avāritiam neque sordēs[16] quisquam[17] mihi obiciet,[18]
10 sī pūrus sum et īnsōns[19] (ut mē laudem!) et vīvō cārus amīcīs, causa fuit
pater meus. Hic enim, cum pauper in parvō agrō esset, tamen nōluit mē
puerum in lūdum Flāviī[20] mittere sed ausus est mē Rōmam ferre ad artēs
discendās quās senātōrēs[21] suōs filiōs docent. Ipse mihi paedagōgus[22] incor-
ruptissimus[23] erat. Mē līberum servāvit nōn sōlum ab omnī factō sed etiam
15 ab turpī opprobriō.[24] Quārē laus illī ā mē dēbētur et grātia[25] magna.

---

[28] **morbus, -ī,** disease
[29] **adficiō,** afflict
[30] **proelium, -ī,** battle
[31] **ēnumerō** (1)
[32] **Cannēnsis pugna,** battle at Cannae, *where in 216* B.C. *Hannibal cut the Roman army to shreds*
[33] **aciēs, -ēī,** battle line
[34] **resistō, -ere, -stitī,** + *dat.,* resist
[35] **tandem,** *adv.,* at last, finally
[36] **invādō, -ere, -vāsī, -vāsum,** go into, invade
[37] **Zama, -ae,** *city south of Carthage in North Africa*
VOCABULARY: **occīdō, efficiō, quā, anteā, vix, proelium, tandem.**

9

[1] **fors, fortis,** *f.,* chance, accident
[2] **Maecēnās, -ātis,** *m., Augustus' unofficial prime minister and Horace's patron*
[3] **Varius, -ī,** *an epic poet*
[4] **singultim,** *adv.,* stammeringly
[5] **pudor, -ōris,** *m.,* bashfulness, modesty
[6] **profor** (1), speak out

[7] **respondēs, abeō, revocās, iubēs:** *in vivid narration the pres. tense was often used by the Romans with the force of the perf. This is called the "historical pres."*
[8] **mēnsis, -is,** *m.,* month
[9] **quod,** the fact that
[10] **sēcernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētum,** separate
[11] **pūrus, -a, -um**
[12] **atquī,** *conj.,* and yet
[13] **mendōsus, -a, -um,** faulty
[14] **aliōquī,** *adv.,* otherwise
[15] **rēctus, -a, -um,** straight, right
[16] **sordēs, -ium,** *f. pl.,* filth
[17] **quisquam,** anyone
[18] **ob-iciō,** cast in one's teeth
[19] **īnsōns,** *gen.* **-ontis,** guiltless
[20] **Flāvius, -ī,** *teacher in Horace's small home town of Venusia*
[21] **senātor, -ōris,** *m.*
[22] **paedagōgus, -ī,** *slave who attended a boy at school*
[23] **in-corruptus, -a, -um,** uncorrupted
[24] **opprobrium, -ī,** reproach
[25] **grātia, -ae,** gratitude

Sīc Rōmae nūtrītus sum[26] atque doctus sum quantum[27] īrātus Achillēs Graecīs nocuisset. Deinde bonae Athēnae mihi plūs artis adiēcērunt,[28] scīlicet[29] ut vellem rēctum ā curvō[30] distinguere[31] atque inter silvās[32] Acadēmī[33] quaerere vēritātem. Sed dūra tempora mē illō locō grātō ēmōvērunt et ae-

20 stus[34] cīvīlis[35] bellī mē tulit in arma Brūtī.[36] Tum post bellum Philippēnse[37] dīmissus sum[38] et audāx[39] paupertās mē humilem et pauperem coēgit versūs facere. (**Horace,** *Saturae* 1.6 and *Epistulae* 2.2; excerpts in prose form)

10. HORACE LONGS FOR THE SIMPLE, PEACEFUL COUNTRY LIFE ON HIS SABINE FARM

Ō rūs, quandō tē aspiciam?[1] Quandō mihi licēbit nunc librīs veterum auctōrum, nunc somnō et ōtiō ūtī sine cūrīs sollicitae[2] vītae? Ō noctēs cēnaeque deōrum! Sermō[3] oritur[4] nōn dē vīllīs[5] et domibus aliēnīs[6]; sed id quaerimus quod magis ad nōs pertinet[7] et nescīre malum est: utrum dīvitiīs

5 an virtūte hominēs fīant beātī; quid nōs ad amīcitiam trahat, ūsus[8] an rēctum[9]; et quae sit nātūra bonī[10] et quid sit summum bonum.

Inter haec Cervius[11] fābulam narrat. Mūs[12] rūsticus,[13] impulsus[14] ab urbānō mūre, domō rūsticā ad urbem abiit ut, dūrā vītā relictā, in rēbus iūcundīs cum illō vīveret beātus. Mox, autem, multa perīcula urbāna expertus,

10 rūsticus "Haec vīta," inquit, "nōn est mihi necessāria."[15] Valē; mihi silva cavusque[16] tūtus[17] ab īnsidiīs placēbit." (**Horace,** *Saturae* 2.6, excerpts in prose form)

---

[26] **nūtriō** (4), nourish, bring up
[27] **quantum,** *acc. as adv.*
[28] **ad-iciō,** add
[29] **scīlicet (scīre-licet),** *adv.*, naturally, of course, clearly, namely
[30] **curvus, -a, -um,** curved, wrong
[31] **distinguō, -ere, -stīnxī, -stīnctum,** distinguish
[32] **silva, -ae,** wood, forest
[33] **Acadēmus, -ī;** *Plato used to teach in the grove of Academus.*
[34] **aestus, -ūs,** tide
[35] **cīvīlis, -e;** *after the assassination of Julius Caesar on the Ides of March, 44 B.C., civil war ensued between the Caesarians, led by Antony and Octavian, and the "Republicans," led by Brutus and Cassius.*
[36] **Brūtus, -ī**
[37] **Philippēnsis, -e,** at Philippi, *where in 42 B.C. Brutus was defeated*
[38] **dī-mittō,** discharge
[39] **audāx, -ācis,** daring, bold
VOCABULARY: **sēcernō, quisquam, grātia, silva, audāx.**

10
[1] **aspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum,** look at, see
[2] **sollicitus, -a, -um,** troubled, anxious
[3] **sermō, -ōnis,** *m.*. conversation
[4] **orior,** *L.A. 5 n. 15*
[5] **vīlla, -ae**
[6] **aliēnus, -a, -um,** belonging to another
[7] **per-tineō,** pertain
[8] **ūsus, -ūs,** advantage
[9] **rēctum, -ī,** the right
[10] **bonum, -ī,** the good
[11] **Cervius, -ī,** *a rustic friend*
[12] **mūs, mūris,** *m/f.*, mouse
[13] **rūsticus, -a, -um,** rustic, country
[14] **im-pellō,** urge, persuade
[15] **necessārius, -a, -um**
[16] **cavus, -ī,** hole
[17] **tūtus, -a, -um,** safe
VOCABULARY: **aspiciō, orior, tūtus.**

11. WHY NO LETTERS?

C.[1] Plīnius Fabiō[2] Suō S.[3]

Mihi nūllās epistulās[4] mittis. "Nihil est," inquis, "quod scrībam." At hoc ipsum scrībe: nihil esse quod scrībās; vel[5] illa verba sōla ā quibus maiōrēs nostrī incipere solēbant: "Sī valēs, bene est; ego valeō." Hoc mihi sufficit[6]; est enim maximum. Mē lūdere[7] putās? Sēriō[8] petō. Fac ut sciam quid agās.
5   Valē. (Pliny, *Epistulae* 1.11)

12. WHAT PLINY THINKS OF THE RACES

C. Plīnius Calvisiō[1] Suō S.

Hoc omne tempus inter tabellās[2] ac libellōs iūcundissimā quiēte[3] cōnsūmpsī. "Quemadmodum,[4]" inquis, "in urbe potuisti?" Circēnsēs[5] erant quō genere spectāculī[6] nē levissimē quidem teneor. Nihil novum, nihil varium,[7] nihil quod semel spectāvisse nōn sufficiat. Quārē mīror tot mīlia virōrum
5   tam puerīliter[8] identidem[9] cupere currentēs equōs vidēre. Valē. (Pliny, *Epistulae* 9.6)

13. PLINY ENDOWS A SCHOOL

Nūper cum Cōmī[1] fuī, vēnit ad mē salūtandum[2] fīlius amīcī cuiusdam. Huic ego "Studēs?" inquam. Respondit: "Etiam." "Ubi?" "Mediolānī.[3]" "Cūr nōn hīc?" Et pater eius, quī ipse puerum ad mē addūxerat, respondit: "Quod nūllōs magistrōs hīc habēmus." Huic aliīsque patribus quī audiēbant
5   ego: "Quārē nūllōs?" inquam. "Nam ubi iūcundius līberī[4] vestrī discere possunt quam hīc in urbe vestrā et sub oculīs patrum? Atque ego, quī nōndum[5] līberōs habeō, prō rē pūblicā nostrā quasi prō parente tertiam partem eius pecūniae dabō quam cōnferre vōbīs placēbit. Nihil enim melius praestāre līberīs vestrīs, nihil grātius patriae potestis." (Pliny, *Epistulae* 4.13)

11
[1] **C.** = **Gāius**
[2] **Fabius, -iī**
[3] **S.** = **salūtem (dīcit)**
[4] **epistula, -ae**, letter
[5] **vel**, or, *an optional alternative;* **aut** *means or without any option*
[6] **sufficiō**, suffice, be sufficient
[7] **lūdō, -ere, lūsī, lūsum**, play, jest
[8] **sēriō,** *adv.*, seriously
VOCABULARY: **vel, sufficiō.**

12
[1] **Calvisius, -ī**
[2] **tabella, -ae**, writing pad
[3] **quiēs, -ētis,** *f.,* quiet

[4] **quem-ad-modum,** *adv.*, how
[5] **Circēnsēs (lūdī)**, games, *races in the Circus Maximus*
[6] **spectāculum, -ī**
[7] **varius, -a, -um,** different
[8] **puerīliter,** *adv., based on* **puer**
[9] **identidem,** *adv.,* repeatedly
VOCABULARY: **quiēs, quemadmodum, varius.**

13
[1] **Cōmum, -ī**, Como, *Pliny's birthplace in N. Italy*
[2] **salūtō** (1), greet
[3] **Mediolānum, -ī**, Milan
[4] **līberī, -ōrum,** children
[5] **nōndum,** *adv.,* not yet
VOCABULARY: **līberī, nōndum.**

14. LARGE GIFTS—YES, BUT ONLY BAIT

"Mūnera[1] magna tamen mīsit." Sed mīsit in hāmō[2];
et piscātōrem[3] piscis[4] amāre potest? (**Martial** 6.63.5–6)

15. THE LORD'S PRAYER

Et cum ōrātis nōn eritis sīcut[1] hypocritae,[2] quī amant in synagōgīs[3] et in
angulīs[4] plateārum[5] stantēs ōrāre ut videantur ab hominibus: āmēn[6] dīcō
vōbīs, recēpērunt mercēdem[7] suam. Tū autem cum ōrābis, intrā[8] in cubicu-
lum[9] tuum et, clausō[10] ōstiō[11] tuō, ōrā Patrem tuum in abscondītō[12]; et Pater
5   tuus quī videt in abscondītō reddet[13] tibi. . . . Sīc ergō[14] vōs ōrābitis: Pater
noster quī es in caelīs, sānctificētur[15] nōmen tuum; adveniat rēgnum[16] tuum;
fīat voluntās[17] tua sīcut in caelō et[18] in terrā. Pānem[19] nostrum supersubstan-
tiālem[20] dā nōbīs hodiē, et dīmitte[21] nōbīs dēbita[22] nostra, sīcut et nōs dīmit-
timus dēbitōribus[23] nostrīs; et nē indūcās nōs in temptātiōnem[24]: sed līberā
10   nōs ā malō. (*Vulgate, Matthew* 6.5–6, 9–13)

16. CAEDMON'S ANGLO-SAXON VERSES
AND THE DIFFICULTIES OF TRANSLATION

Cum Caedmon[1] corpus somnō dedisset, angelus[2] Dominī eī dormientī
"Caedmon," inquit, "cantā[3] mihi prīncipium creātūrārum.[4]" Et statim[5] coe-
pit cantāre in laudem Deī creātōris[6] versūs quōs numquam audīverat, quō-
rum hic est sēnsus: "Nunc laudāre dēbēmus auctōrem rēgni[7] caelestis,[8] po-

---

14

METER: elegiac couplet.
[1] **mūnus, mūneris,** *n.,* gift
[2] **hāmus, -ī,** hook
[3] **piscātor, -ōris,** *m.,* fisherman
[4] **piscis, -is,** *m.,* fish
VOCABULARY: **mūnus.**

15

[1] **sīcut,** *adv. and conj.,* just as
[2] **hypocrita, -ae,** *m.,* hypocrite
[3] **synagōga, -ae,** synagogue
[4] **angulus, -ī,** corner
[5] **platea, -ae,** street
[6] **āmēn,** *adv.,* truly, verily
[7] **mercēs, -ēdis,** *f.,* wages, reward
[8] **intrō (1),** enter
[9] **cubiculum, -ī,** bedroom, room
[10] **claudō, -ere, clausī, clausum,** close
[11] **ōstium, -iī,** door
[12] **in abscondītō,** in (a) secret (place)
[13] **red-dō, -dere, -didī, -ditum,** give back, answer, re-
       quite
[14] **ergō,** *adv.,* therefore

[15] **sānctificō (1),** treat as holy
[16] **rēgnum, -ī,** kingdom
[17] **voluntās, -tātis,** *f.,* will, wish
[18] **et,** also
[19] **pānis, -is,** *m.,* bread
[20] **supersubstantiālis, -e,** necessary to the support of
       life
[21] **dī-mittō,** send away, dismiss
[22] **dēbitum, -ī,** that which is owing, debt (*figura-
       tively*) = sin
[23] **dēbitor, -ōris,** *m.,* one who owes something, one who
       has not yet fulfilled his duty
[24] **temptātiō, -ōnis,** *f.*
VOCABULARY: **sīcut, claudō, reddō, ergō, rēgnum,
       voluntās.**

16

[1] **Caedmon,** *Anglo-Saxon poet of the 7th cen.*
[2] **angelus, -ī,** angel
[3] **cantō (1),** sing
[4] **creātūra, -ae,** creature
[5] **statim,** *adv.,* immediately
[6] **creātor, -ōris,** *m.*
[7] **rēgnum, -ī,** kingdom
[8] **caelestis, -e,** *adj. of* **caelum**

5   testātem[9] creatōris et cōnsilium illīus, facta Patris glōriae, quī, omnipotēns[10] custōs[11] hūmānī generis, fīliīs hominum caelum et terram creāvit." Hic est sēnsus, nōn autem ōrdō[12] ipse verbōrum quae dormiēns ille cantāvit; neque enim possunt carmina, quamvīs[13] optimē composita,[14] ex aliā in aliam linguam ad verbum[15] sine dētrīmentō[16] suī decōris[17] ac dignitātis trānsferrī.[18] (**Bede,** *Historia Ecclēsiastica Gentis Anglōrum* 4.24; 8th cen.)

17. WHO WILL PUT THE BELL ON THE CAT'S NECK?

Mūrēs[1] iniērunt cōnsilium quō modō sē ā cattō[2] dēfendere possent et quaedam sapientior quam cēterae āit: "Ligētur[3] campāna[4] in collō[5] cattī. Sīc poterimus eum eiusque īnsidiās vītāre." Placuit omnibus hoc cōnsilium, sed alia mūs "Quis igitur." inquit, "est inter nōs tam audāx[6] ut campānam in
5   collō cattī ligāre audeat?" Respondit ūna mūs: "Certē nōn ego." Respondit alia: "Certē nōn ego audeō prō tōtō mundō cattō ipsī appropinquāre.'" Et idem cēterae dīxērunt.

Sīc saepe hominēs, cum quendam āmovendum esse arbitrantur et contrā eum insurgere[8] volunt, inter sē dīcunt: "Quis appōnet sē contrā eum? Quis
10 accūsābit[9] eum?" Tum omnēs, sibi timentēs, dīcunt: "Nōn ego certē! Nec ego!" Sīc illum vīvere patiuntur. (**Odo de Cerinton,** *Narrātiōnēs,* 12th cen.)

18. THE DEVIL AND A THIRTEENTH-CENTURY SCHOOLBOY

In illā ecclēsiā[1] erat scholāris[2] parvus. Cum hic diē quādam[3] versūs compōnere ex eā māteriā[4] ā magistrō datā nōn posset et trīstis sedēret, diabolus[5] in fōrmā hominis vēnit. Cum dīxisset: "Quid est, puer? Cūr sīc trīstis sedēs?" respondit puer: "Magistrum meum timeō quod versūs compōnere nōn pos-
5   sum dē themate[6] quod ab eō recēpī." Et ille: "Vīsne mihi servīre sī ego versūs tibi compōnam?" Puer, nōn intellegēns quod[7] ille esset diabolus, respondit: "Etiam, domine, parātus sum facere quidquid iusseris—dummodo versūs

---

[9] **potestās, -tātis,** *f.,* power
[10] **omni-potēns**
[11] **custōs, -tōdis,** *m.,* guardian
[12] **ōrdō, -inis,** *m.,* order
[13] **quamvīs,** *adv. and conj.,* although
[14] **com-pōnō,** put together, compose
[15] **ad verbum,** to a word, literally
[16] **dētrīmentum, -ī,** loss
[17] **decor, -ōris,** *m.,* beauty
[18] **trāns-ferō**
VOCABULARY: **statim, rēgnum, potestās, custōs, ōrdō, compōnō.**

17

[1] **mūs, mūris,** *m./f.,* mouse
[2] **cattus, -ī** (*late Lat. for* **fēles, -is**), cat
[3] **ligō (1),** bind
[4] **campāna, -ae** (*late Lat. for* **tintinnābulum**), bell

[5] **collum, -ī,** neck
[6] **audāx, -ācis,** daring, bold
[7] **appropinquō (1),** + *dat.,* approach
[8] **īnsurgō, -ere, -surrēxī, -surrēctum,** rise up
[9] **accūsō (1)**
VOCABULARY: **audāx, appropinquō.**

18

[1] **ecclēsia, -ae,** church
[2] **scholāris, -is,** *m.,* scholar
[3] **diē quādam: diēs** *is sometimes f., especially when referring to a specific day.*
[4] **māteria, -ae,** material
[5] **diabolus, -ī,** devil
[6] **thema, -atis,** *n.,* theme, subject
[7] **quod,** that, *introducing an ind. state., common in Medieval Lat.*

habeam et verbera[8] vītem." Tum, versibus statim[9] dictātīs,[10] diabolus abiit.
Cum puer autem hōs versūs magistrō suō dedisset, hic, excellentiam[11] ver-
10   suum mīrātus, timuit, dūcēns scientiam in illīs dīvīnam,[12] nōn hūmānam. Et
ait: "Dīc mihi, quis tibi hōs versūs dictāvit?" Prīmum puer respondit: "Ego,
magister!" Magistrō autem nōn crēdente et verbum interrogātiōnis[13] saepius
repetente, puer omnia tandem[14] cōnfessus est.[15] Tum magister "Fīlī," inquit,
"ille versificātor[16] fuit diabolus. Cārissime, semper illum sēductōrem[17] et eius
15   opera cavē.[18]" Et puer diabolum eiusque opera relīquit. (**Caesar of Heister-
bach,** *Mīrācula* 2.14; 13th cen.)

---

[8] **verbera, -um,** *n.,* blows, a beating
[9] **statim,** *adv.,* immediately
[10] **dictō (1),** dictate
[11] **excellentia, -ae**
[12] **dīvīnus, -a, -um; dīvīnam** *is pred. acc.*
[13] **interrogātiō, -ōnis,** *f.*

[14] **tandem,** *adv.,* at last
[15] **cōnfiteor, -ērī, -fessus sum**
[16] **versificātor, -ōris,** *m.,* versifier
[17] **sēductor, -ōris,** *m.,* seducer
[18] **caveō, -ēre, cāvī, cautum,** beware, avoid
VOCABULARY: **statim, tandem, cōnfiteor, caveō.**

Locī Immūtātī

The *Locī Immūtātī* are offered for those who may finish all the *Locī Antīquī* and wish to try their wits on some unaltered classical Latin.

These passages are straight Latin, unchanged except for omissions, which have been regularly indicated by three dots. Naturally this genuinely literary material had to be rather heavily annotated, but more in the matter of vocabulary than in other respects. As in the case of the *Locī Antīquī*, words appearing here that have not been introduced in the regular chapter vocabularies are glossed at their first one or two occurrences, and most are also included in the Latin-English Vocabulary at the end of the book for easy reference. New grammatical principles have been treated as they occur, either by a brief statement in the notes or by reference to the Appendix.

1. A DEDICATION

> Cui dōnō[1] lepidum[2] novum libellum
> āridō[3] modo[4] pūmice[5] expolītum[6]?
> Cornēlī,[7] tibi, namque[8] tū solēbās
> meās esse aliquid putāre nūgās,[9]
> 5   iam tum cum ausus es ūnus Ītalōrum[10]

1

METER: Phalaecean, or hendecasyllabic.
[1] **dōnō** (1), (=dō), present, dedicate
[2] **lepidus, -a, -um,** pleasant, neat
[3] **āridus, -a, -um,** dry, arid
[4] **modo,** *adv.,* just now
[5] **pūmex, -icis,** *m..* pumice stone. *The ends of a volume were smoothed with pumice.*

[6] **expoliō** (4), smooth, polish
[7] *Cornelius Nepos, biographer and historian;* see Introd.
[8] *strong form of* **nam** = for (indeed, surely)
[9] **nūgae, -ārum,** trifles, nonsense
[10] **Ītalī, -ōrum,** the Italians; *initial* **i-** *long here for meter. This work, now lost, was apparently less annalistic than most histories by Romans.*

omne aevum[11] tribus explicāre[12] chartīs,[13]
doctīs—Iuppiter!—et labōriōsīs.[14]
Quārē habē tibi quidquid hoc libellī[15]
quālecumque,[15] quod, Ō patrōna[16] virgō,
10 plūs ūnō maneat[17] perenne[18] saeclō.[19]

(Catullus 1)

2. HOW MANY KISSES[1]

Quaeris quot mihi bāsiātiōnēs[2]
tuae, Lesbia, sint satis superque.[3]
Quam magnus numerus Libyssae[4] harēnae[5]
laserpīciferīs[6] iacet Cyrēnīs,[7]

. . .

5 aut quam sīdera multa, cum tacet nox,
fūrtīvōs[8] hominum vident amōrēs,
tam tē[9] bāsia multa bāsiāre[10]
vēsānō[11] satis et super Catullō est.

(Catullus 7.1–4, 7–10)

3. DEATH OF A PET SPARROW

Lūgēte,[1] Ō Venerēs[2] Cupīdinēsque[3]
et quantum est hominum[4] venustiōrum[5]!
Passer[6] mortuus est meae puellae,
passer, dēliciae[7] meae puellae,

[11] **aevum, -ī,** time
[12] **explicō** (1), unfold, explain
[13] **charta, -ae,** leaf of (papyrus) paper; *here* = volume
[14] **labōriōsus, -a, -um,** laborious
[15] **libellī,** *gen. of whole; lit.* whatever kind of book this is of whatsoever sort; *i.e.,* this book such as it is. **quāliscumque, quālecumque,** of whatever sort *or* kind
[16] **patrōna, -ae,** protectress; protectress maiden (**virgō**) = Muse
[17] let *or* may it remain
[18] **perennis, -e,** lasting, perennial
[19] **saeclum,** *syncopated form of* **saeculum, -ī,** age, century

2
METER: Phalaecean.
[1] *This poem is obviously a companion piece to Catullus 5 (see ch. 31).*
[2] **bāsiātiō, -ōnis,** *f.,* kiss
[3] and to spare, and more
[4] **Libyssus, -a, -um,** Libyan
[5] **harēna, -ae,** sand (*cp.* arena)

[6] **laserpīcifer, -a, -um,** bearing laserpicium, *a medicinal plant*
[7] **Cyrēnae, -ārum,** Cyrene, *city of North Africa; short* y *here for meter.*
[8] **fūrtīvus, -a, -um,** stealthy, furtive (**fūr,** thief)
[9] *subject of* **bāsiāre**
[10] **bāsiō** (1), to kiss kisses = to give kisses; **bāsiāre** *is subject of* **est satis.**
[11] **vēsānus, -a, -um,** mad, insane

3
METER: Phalaecean.
[1] **lūgeō, -ēre, lūxī, lūctum,** mourn, grieve
[2] **Venus, -eris,** *f.,* Venus; *here pl. as* **Cupīdinēs** *is.*
[3] **Cupīdō, -inis,** *m.,* Cupid, *often in the pl. as is Greek Eros and as we see in art.*
[4] *gen. of whole with* **quantum:** how much of people there is = all the people there are
[5] **venustus, -a, -um,** charming, graceful; **venustiōrum** = more charming (*than ordinary men*)
[6] **passer, -eris,** *m.,* sparrow (*a bird which, incidentally, was sacred to Venus*)
[7] **dēliciae, -ārum,** delight, darling, pet

5   quem plūs illa oculīs suīs amābat.
       Nam mellītus[8] erat, suamque nōrat[9]
       ipsam[10] tam bene quam puella mātrem;
       nec sēsē[11] ā gremiō[12] illius movēbat,
       sed circumsiliēns[13] modo hūc[14] modo illūc[15]

10   ad sōlam dominam ūsque pīpiābat.[16]
       Quī[17] nunc it per iter tenebricōsum[18]
       illūc unde negant redīre quemquam.[19]
       At vōbīs male sit, malae tenebrae[20]
       Orcī,[21] quae omnia bella dēvorātis;[22]

15   tam bellum mihi[23] passerem abstulistis.[24]
       Ō factum male! Iō[25] miselle[26] passer!
       Tuā nunc operā[27] meae puellae
       flendō[28] turgidulī[29] rubent[30] ocellī.[31]

            (Catullus 3)

4. FRĀTER AVĒ, ATQUE VALĒ[1]

    Multās per gentēs et multa per aequora[2] vectus[3]
       adveniō hās miserās, frāter, ad īnferiās,[4]
    ut tē postrēmō[5] dōnārem[6] mūnere[7] mortis
       et mūtam[8] nēquīquam[9] adloquerer[10] cinerem,[11]

[8] **mellītus, -a, -um,** sweet as honey
[9] *contracted form* = **nōverat** (*from* **nōscō**)
[10] **suam . . . ipsam,** its very own (mistress)
[11] **sēsē** = **sē** (*acc.*)
[12] **gremium, -iī,** lap
[13] **circumsiliō** (4), jump around
[14] **hūc,** *adv.,* hither, to this place
[15] **illūc,** *adv.,* thither, to that place
[16] **pīpiō** (1), chirp
[17] **quī** = **et hic,** *conjunctive use of the rel. at the beginning of a sent.*
[18] **tenebricōsus, -a, -um,** dark, gloomy
[19] *L.A. 4 n. 6.*
[20] **tenebrae, -ārum,** darkness
[21] **Orcus, -ī,** Orcus, the underworld
[22] **dēvorō** (1), devour, consume
[23] *dative of separation*
[24] **auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātum,** take away
[25] **iō,** *exclamation of pain,* oh!, *or of joy,* hurrah!
[26] **misellus, -a, -um,** *diminutive of* **miser,** wretched, poor, unhappy; *a colloquial word*
[27] **tuā operā,** thanks to you: **opera, -ae,** work, pains, effort
[28] **fleō, -ēre, flēvī, flētum,** weep
[29] **turgidulus, -a, -um,** (somewhat) swollen
[30] **rubeō, -ēre,** be red

[31] **ocellus, -ī,** *diminutive of* **oculus**

4

METER: elegiac couplet.
[1] *Catullus journeyed to Bithynia on the staff of Memmius, the governor, apparently for two prime reasons. He undoubtedly wanted to get away from Rome in order to regain his equilibrium and fortitude after his final break with the notorious Lesbia. The present poem shows that he also deeply desired to carry out the final funeral rites for his dearly beloved brother, who had died in a foreign land far from his loved ones.*
[2] **aequor, -oris,** *n.,* flat surface, the sea
[3] **vehō, -ere, vexī, vectum,** carry
[4] **īnferiae, -ārum,** offerings in honor of the dead
[5] **postrēmus, -a, -um,** last
[6] **dōnō** (1), present you with; *cp. the idiom in L.I. 1 line 1.*
[7] **mūnus, -eris,** *n.,* service, gift
[8] **mūtus, -a, -um,** mute, silent
[9] **nēquīquam,** *adv.,* in vain
[10] **ad-loquor,** address
[11] **cinis, -eris,** *m. but occasionally f. as here,* ashes (*cp. incinerator*)

5 quandoquidem[12] fortūna mihī[13] tētē[14] abstulit[15] ipsum,
heu miser indignē[16] frāter adempte[17] mihī.
Nunc tamen intereā[18] haec,[19] prīscō[20] quae mōre parentum
trādita sunt trīstī mūnere ad īnferiās,
accipe frāternō[21] multum[22] mānantia[23] flētū,[24]
10 atque in perpetuum,[25] frāter, avē[26] atque valē.

(Catullus 101)

5. VITRIOLIC DENUNCIATION[1] OF THE LEADER
OF A CONSPIRACY AGAINST THE ROMAN STATE

Quō ūsque[2] tandem abūtēre,[3] Catilīna, patientiā nostrā? Quam diū etiam furor[4] iste tuus nōs ēlūdet[5]? Quem ad fīnem sēsē[6] effrēnāta[7] iactābit[8] audācia[9]? Nihilne[10] tē nocturnum[11] praesidium[12] Palātī,[13] nihil urbis vigiliae,[14] nihil timor populī, nihil concursus[15] bonōrum omnium, nihil hic mūnītissi-
5 mus[16] habendī senātūs locus, nihil hōrum ōra[17] vultūsque mōvērunt? Patēre tua cōnsilia nōn sentīs? Cōnstrictam[18] iam omnium hōrum scientiā tenērī coniūrātiōnem[19] tuam nōn vidēs? Quid proxima,[20] quid superiōre[21] nocte ēgerīs, ubi fuerīs, quōs convocāverīs,[22] quid cōnsilī cēperīs, quem nostrum[23] ignōrāre[24] arbitrāris?

---

[12] **quandoquidem**, *conj.*, since
[13] *dat. of separation. Final* -ī *is long here because of meter.*
[14] = **tē**
[15] *L.I. 3 n. 24*
[16] **indignē**, *adv.*, undeservedly
[17] **adimō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēmptum**, take away; **adēmpte**, *voc. agreeing with* **frāter**
[18] **intereā**, *adv.*, meanwhile
[19] *n. acc. pl., obj. of* **accipe**
[20] **prīscus, -a, -um**, ancient
[21] **frāternus, -a, -um**, fraternal, of a brother, a brother's
[22] **multum**, *adv. with* **mānantia**
[23] **mānō** (1), flow, drip with; **mānantia** *modifies* **haec** *in line 7.*
[24] **flētus, -ūs**, weeping, tears
[25] **in perpetuum**, forever
[26] **avē** = **salvē**

5

[1] *For the general situation of this speech see the introductory note to the reading passage in Ch. 30. Since Cicero as yet lacked evidence that would stand in court, this speech is a magnificent example of bluff; but it worked to the extent of forcing Catiline (though not the other leaders of the conspiracy) to leave Rome for his army encamped at Fie-*

sole near Florence.
[2] **ūsque**, *adv.*, how far
[3] = **abūtēris; ab-ūtor** + abl., abuse
[4] **furor, -ōris**, *m.*, madness
[5] **ēlūdō, -ere, -lūsī, -lūsum**, mock, elude
[6] **quem ad fīnem** = **ad quem fīnem; sēsē** = **sē**
[7] **effrēnātus, -a, -um**, unbridled; *cp.* **frēnum**, bridle, *and the frenum of the upper lip*
[8] **iactō** (1), *frequentative form of* **iaciō**, toss about, vaunt
[9] **audācia, -ae**, boldness, audacity
[10] **nihil** = *strong* **nōn**; not at all
[11] **nocturnus, -a, -um**, *adj. of* **nox**
[12] **praesidium, -ī**, guard
[13] **Palātium, -ī**, the Palatine hill. *From the sumptuous dwellings on the Palatine comes our word "palace."*
[14] **vigilia, -ae**, watch; *pl.*, watchmen, sentinels
[15] **concursus, -ūs**, gathering
[16] **mūnītus, -a, -um**, fortified
[17] *here* = expression
[18] **cōnstringō, -ere, -strīnxī, -strictum**, bind, curb
[19] **coniūrātiō, -ōnis**, *f.*, conspiracy (a swearing together)
[20] **proximus, -a, -um**, nearest, last (*sc.* **nocte**)
[21] **superiōre** (*sc.* **nocte**) = the night before
[22] **con-vocō**
[23] *gen. of* **nōs** (*Ch. 11*)
[24] **ignōrō** (1), be ignorant, not know

10   Ō tempora[25]! Ō mōrēs! Senātus haec intellegit, cōnsul videt; hic tamen
vīvit. Vīvit? Immō[26] vērō[27] etiam in senātum venit, fit pūblicī cōnsilī parti-
ceps,[28] notat[29] et dēsignat[30] oculīs ad caedem[31] ūnum quemque nostrum.
Nōs, autem, fortēs virī, satis facere reī pūblicae vidēmur sī istīus furōrem ac
tēla[32] vītāmus. Ad mortem tē, Catilīna, dūcī iussū[33] cōnsulis iam prīdem[34]
15   oportēbat, in tē cōnferrī pestem[35] quam tū in nōs māchināris[36] . . .

Habēmus senātūs cōnsultum[37] in tē, Catilīna, vehemēns[38] et grave. Nōn
deest[39] reī pūblicae cōnsilium, neque auctōritās[40] huius ōrdinis[41]; nōs, nōs,
dīcō apertē,[42] cōnsulēs dēsumus . . . At nōs vīcēsimum[43] iam diem patimur
hebēscere[44] aciem[45] hōrum auctōritātis. Habēmus enim eius modī[46] senātūs
20   cōnsultum, . . . quō ex[47] senātūs cōnsultō cōnfestim[48] tē interfectum esse,
Catilīna, convēnit.[49] Vīvis, et vīvis nōn ad dēpōnendam,[50] sed ad cōnfīrman-
dam[51] audāciam. Cupiō, patrēs cōnscrīptī,[52] mē esse clēmentem[53]; cupiō in
tantīs reī pūblicae perīculīs mē nōn dissolūtum[54] vidērī, sed iam mē ipse
inertiae[55] nēquitiaeque[56] condemnō.[57]

25   Castra[58] sunt in Italiā contrā populum Rōmānum in Etrūriae[59] fauci-
bus[60] collocāta[61]; crēscit in diēs singulōs[62] hostium numerus; eōrum autem
castrōrum imperātōrem ducemque hostium intrā[63] moenia atque adeō[64] in
senātū vidēmus, intestīnam[65] aliquam cotīdiē perniciem[66] reī pūblicae mōli-
entem[67] . . .

30   Quae[68] cum ita sint, Catilīna, perge[69] quō[70] coepistī. Ēgredere[71] ali-

---

[25] *The acc. was used in exclamatory expressions.*
[26] immō, *adv.*, on the contrary; nay more
[27] vērō, *adv.*, in fact
[28] particeps, -cipis, *m.*, participant
[29] notō (1), mark out, note
[30] dēsignō (1), mark out, designate, choose
[31] caedēs, -is, *f.*, slaughter
[32] tēlum, -ī, weapon
[33] iussū, *chiefly in abl.*, by *or* at the command of
[34] iam prīdem, *adv.*, long ago
[35] pestis, -is, *f.*, plague, destruction
[36] māchinor (1), contrive (*cp. "machine"*); in nōs, in + *acc. sometimes means* against (contrā)
[37] cōnsultum, -ī, decree
[38] vehemēns, *gen.* -entis, emphatic, vehement
[39] dē + sum, be wanting, fail + *dat.*
[40] auctōritās, -tātis, *f.*, authority
[41] ōrdō, -dinis, *m.*, class, order
[42] *adv.*, openly
[43] vīcēsimus, -a, -um, twentieth
[44] hebēscō, -ere, grow dull
[45] aciēs, -ēī, sharp edge
[46] eius modī, of this sort; *modifies* cōnsultum
[47] *here* = in accordance with; *with* quō . . . cōnsultō
[48] cōnfestim, *adv.*, at once
[49] convenit, -īre, -vēnit, *impers.*, it is fitting
[50] dē + pōnō, put aside

[51] cōnfīrmō (1), strengthen
[52] patrēs cōnscrīptī, senators
[53] clēmēns, *gen.* -entis, merciful, gentle
[54] dissolūtus, -a, -um, lax
[55] inertia, -ae, inactivity; *example of gen. of thing charged:* "I condemn myself *on a charge of inactivity,* find myself guilty of inactivity."
[56] nēquitia, -ae, worthlessness; *gen. of charge*
[57] condemnō (1), find guilty, condemn
[58] castra, -ōrum, a camp (*n. pl. form but sg. meaning*)
[59] Etrūria, -ae, Etruria
[60] faucēs, -ium, *f. pl.*, jaws, narrow pass
[61] collocō (1), to position
[62] in diēs singulōs, from day to day
[63] intrā, *prep.* + *acc.*, within
[64] adeō, *adv.*, so even
[65] intestīnus, -a, -um, internal
[66] perniciēs, -ēī, slaughter, destruction
[67] mōlientem *modifies* ducem *and has* perniciem *as its obj.*
[68] = et haec, *conjunctive use of the rel. pron.*
[69] pergō, -ere, -rēxī, -rēctum, proceed, continue
[70] quō, *adv.*, where. *A few lines before these words Cicero said:* cōnfīrmāstī (you asserted) tē ipsum iam esse exitūrum (*from* ex-eō).
[71] ēgredior, -ī, -gressus sum, go out, depart. *What is the form of* ēgredere?

quandō[72] ex urbe; patent portae; proficīscere. Nimium diū tē imperātōrem tua illa Mānliāna[73] castra dēsīderant. Ēdūc tēcum etiam omnēs tuōs; sī minus,[74] quam plūrimōs; pūrgā[75] urbem. Magnō mē metū līberāveris dum modo inter mē atque tē mūrus[76] intersit.[77] Nōbīscum versārī[78] iam diūtius

35 nōn potes; nōn feram, nōn patiar, nōn sinam[79] . . .

Quamquam[80] nōn nūllī[81] sunt in hōc ōrdine quī aut ea quae imminent[82] nōn videant, aut ea quae vident dissimulent[83]; quī[84] spem Catilīnae mollibus[85] sententiīs aluērunt coniūrātiōnemque nāscentem nōn crēdendō corrōborāvērunt[86]; quōrum[87] auctōritātem secūtī,[88] multī nōn sōlum improbī,[89]

40 vērum[90] etiam imperītī,[91] sī in hunc animadvertissem,[92] crūdēliter[93] et rēgiē[94] factum esse[95] dīcerent. Nunc intellegō, sī iste, quō intendit,[96] in Mānliāna castra pervēnerit,[97] nēminem tam stultum fore[98] quī nōn videat coniūrātiōnem esse factam, nēminem tam improbum quī nōn fateātur.

Hōc autem ūnō interfectō, intellegō hanc reī pūblicae pestem paulīsper[99]

45 reprimī,[100] nōn in perpetuum[101] comprimī[102] posse. Quod sī[103] sē ēiēcerit,[104] sēcumque suōs[105] ēdūxerit, et eōdem[106] cēterōs undique[107] collēctōs[108] naufragōs[109] adgregārit,[110] exstinguētur[111] atque dēlēbitur nōn modo haec tam adulta[112] reī pūblicae pestis, vērum etiam stirps[113] ac sēmen[114] malōrum omnium . . . Quod sī[103] ex tantō latrōciniō[115] iste ūnus tollētur, vidēbimur fortasse ad[116] breve quoddam tempus cūrā et metū esse relevātī;[117] perīculum

50 autem residēbit[118] . . .

[72] **quandō,** *adv.,* at some time, at last
[73] *Manlius was in charge of Catiline's army at Fiesole.*
[74] **minus** = **nōn omnēs**
[75] **pūrgō** (1), cleanse
[76] **mūrus, -ī,** wall
[77] **inter-sum**
[78] **versor** (1), dwell, remain
[79] **sinō, -ere, sīvī, situm,** allow
[80] **quamquam,** *conj.,* and yet
[81] **nōn nūllī,** not none = some, several
[82] **immineō, -ēre,** overhang, threaten
[83] **dissimulō** (1), conceal
[84] **quī** = et hī
[85] **mollis, -e,** soft, weak
[86] **corrōborō** (1), strengthen; *cp. corroborate*
[87] **quōrum** = et eōrum
[88] **secūtī,** *participle going with* **multī**
[89] **improbus, -a, -um,** wicked, depraved
[90] **vērum etiam** = sed etiam
[91] **imperītus, -a, -um,** inexperienced
[92] **animadvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum,** notice; *with* **in** + *acc.* = inflict punishment on. *This is a mixed condition of what general category?*
[93] **crūdēliter,** *adv. of* **crūdēlis**
[94] **rēgiē,** *adv.,* in the fashion of a king, tyrannically
[95] *Sc.* **id** *as subject.*
[96] **intendō, -ere, -tendī, -tēnsum,** intend; *parenthetical cl.*

[97] **per-veniō ad** *or* **in** + *acc.,* arrive at, reach; **pervēnerit** = *perf. subj. for a fut. perf. indic. in a more vivid condition. For the subj. in a subordinate cl. in ind. state., see App.*
[98] **fore** = **futūrus, -a, -um, esse**
[99] **paulīsper,** *adv.,* for a little while
[100] **re-primō,** press back, check
[101] = **semper**
[102] **comprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum,** suppress
[103] **quod sī,** but if
[104] *fut. perf. ind. What kind of condition?*
[105] **suōs (virōs)**
[106] **eōdem,** *adv.,* to the same place
[107] **undique,** *adv.,* from all sides
[108] **colligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum,** gather together
[109] **naufragus, -ī,** (shipwrecked) ruined man
[110] **adgregō** (1), gather; **adgregārit** = **adgregāverit**
[111] **exstinguō, -ere, -stīnxī, -stīnctum,** extinguish
[112] **adultus, -a, -um,** mature
[113] **stirps, stirpis,** *f.,* stem, stock
[114] **sēmen, -inis,** *n.,* seed
[115] **latrōcinium, -iī,** brigandage; band of brigands
[116] **here** = for
[117] **relevō** (1), relieve
[118] **re-sideō** (= **sedeō**), **-ēre, -sēdī, -sessum,** (sit down), remain

Quārē sēcēdant[119] improbī; sēcernant[120] sē ā bonīs; ūnum in locum con-
gregentur[121]; mūrō dēnique (id quod saepe iam dīxī) sēcernantur ā nōbīs;
dēsinant[122] īnsidiārī[123] domī suae[124] cōnsulī, circumstāre[125] tribūnal[126] prae-
55   tōris urbānī,[127] obsidēre[128] cum gladiīs cūriam,[129] malleolōs[130] et facēs[131] ad
īnflammandam[132] urbem comparāre[133]; sit dēnique īnscrīptum[134] in fronte[135]
ūnīus cuiusque quid dē rē pūblicā sentiat. Polliceor[136] hoc vōbīs, patrēs
cōnscrīptī,[52] tantam in nōbīs cōnsulibus fore[98] dīligentiam,[137] tantam in vōbīs
auctōritātem,[40] tantam in equitibus[138] Rōmānīs virtūtem, tantam in omnibus
60   bonīs cōnsēnsiōnem,[139] ut Catilīnae profectiōne[140] omnia patefacta, illūs-
trāta,[141] oppressa, vindicāta[142] esse videātis.

Hīsce[143] ōminibus,[144] Catilīna, cum summā reī pūblicae salūte,[145] cum
tuā peste ac perniciē,[146] cumque eōrum exitiō quī sē tēcum omnī scelere
parricīdiōque[147] iūnxērunt, proficīscere ad impium[148] bellum ac nefārium.[149]
65   Tū, Iuppiter, quī eīsdem[150] quibus haec urbs auspiciīs ā Rōmulō[151] es cōn-
stitūtus,[152] quem Statōrem[153] huius urbis atque imperiī vērē nōminā-
mus,[154] hunc et huius sociōs ā tuīs cēterīsque templīs,[155] ā tēctīs[156] urbis ac
moenibus, ā vītā fortūnīsque cīvium arcēbis[157], et hominēs bonōrum inimī-
cōs,[158] hostēs patriae, latrōnēs[159] Italiae, scelerum foedere[160] inter sē ac ne-

---

[119] sē-cēdō (sē = apart, away). *Why subj.?*
[120] sēcernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētum, separate
[121] congregō (1), gather together
[122] dēsinō, -ere, -sīvī, -situm, cease
[123] īnsidior (1), plot against + *dat.*
[124] domī suae, *loc. Catiline had tried to have Cicero as- sassinated.*
[125] circum-stō, -āre, -stetī, stand around, surround
[126] tribūnal, -ālis, *n.*
[127] praetor urbānus, *judicial magistrate who had charge of civil cases between Roman citizens*
[128] obsideō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessum, besiege, beset
[129] cūria, -ae, senate house
[130] malleolus, -ī, firebrand
[131] fax, facis, *f.,* torch
[132] īnflammō (1), set on fire
[133] = parāre
[134] in-scrībō
[135] frōns, frontis, *f.,* forehead
[136] polliceor, -ērī, -licitus sum, promise
[137] dīligentia, -ae
[138] eques, equitis, *m.,* horseman, knight. *Here the equi- tēs are the wealthy business class in Rome.*
[139] cōnsēnsiō, -ōnis, *f.,* agreement, harmony
[140] profectiō, -ōnis, *f.,* departure; *cp.* profiscīscor
[141] illūstrō (1), bring to light
[142] vindicō (1), avenge, punish

[143] hīs-ce = hīs + *intensive enclitic* -ce; *abl. case with* ōminibus
[144] ōmen, ōminis, *n.,* omen: with these omens *or* with these words which I have uttered as omens, *abl. of attendant circumstance without* cum.
[145] cum . . . salūte (peste, exitiō) *abl. of attendant cir- cumstance with* cum, *here indicating the result:* to the safety of state, to your own destruction. . . .
[146] perniciēs, -ēī, disaster, calamity
[147] parricīdium, -iī, murder
[148] impius, -a, -um, wicked, disloyal
[149] nefārius, -a, -um, infamous, nefarious
[150] eīsdem auspiciīs quibus haec urbs (cōnstitūta est); auspicia, -ōrum, auspices
[151] Rōmulus, -ī, *the founder of Rome*
[152] cōnstituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtum, establish
[153] Stator, -ōris, *m.,* the Stayer (of flight), the Sup- porter, Jupitor Stator
[154] nōminō (1), name, call (*cp.* nōmen)
[155] templum, -ī, temple
[156] tēctum, -ī, roof, house
[157] arceō, -ēre, -uī, ward off
[158] inimīcus, -ī, personal enemy; inimīcōs, hostēs, *etc. are in apposition with* hominēs.
[159] latrō, -ōnis, *m.,* robber, bandit
[160] foedus, -eris, *n.,* treaty, bond

70 fāriā societāte[161] coniūnctōs,[162] aeternīs[163] suppliciīs[164] vīvōs mortuōsque
mactābis.[165]

(**Cicero**, *In Catilīnam Ōrātiō I*, excerpts)

6. THE ARREST AND TRIAL OF THE CONSPIRATORS[1]

Rem pūblicam, Quirītēs,[2] vītamque[3] omnium vestrum, bona,[4] fortūnās,
coniugēs[5] līberōsque[6] vestrōs, atque hoc domicilium[7] clārissimī imperī, for-
tūnātissimam pulcherrimamque urbem, hodiernō[8] diē deōrum immortālium
summō ergā vōs amōre, labōribus, cōnsiliīs, perīculīs meīs, ē flammā[9] atque

5 ferrō ac paene[10] ex faucibus[11] fātī ēreptam et vōbīs cōnservātam ac restitū-
tam[12] vidētis[13] . . . Quae[14] quoniam in senātū illūstrāta, patefacta, comperta[15]
sunt per mē, vōbīs iam expōnam breviter, Quirītēs, ut[16] et[17] quanta[18] et quā
ratiōne investīgāta[19] et comprehēnsa sint, vōs, quī ignōrātis et exspectātis,
scīre possītis.

10 Prīncipiō, ut[20] Catilīna paucīs ante diēbus[21] ērūpit[22] ex urbe, cum sceleris
suī sociōs, huiusce[23] nefāriī bellī ācerrimōs ducēs, Rōmae relīquisset, semper
vigilāvī[24] et prōvīdī,[25] Quirītēs, quem ad modum[26] in tantīs et tam ab-
sconditīs[27] īnsidiīs salvī esse possēmus. Nam tum cum ex urbe Catilīnam
ēiciēbam (nōn enim iam vereor huius verbī invidiam, cum illa[28] magis[29] sit

[161] **societās, -tātis,** *f.,* fellowship, alliance (*cp.* **socius**)
[162] **con** (together) + **iungō: coniūnctōs** *modifies* la-
trōnēs, *etc.*
[163] **aeternus, -a, -um,** eternal
[164] **supplicium, -iī,** punishment
[165] **mactō** (1), punish, pursue. *The basic structure of the
sent. is this:* **Tū (quī . . . es cōnstitūtus, quem
. . . nōmināmus) hunc et sociōs ā templīs . . .
fortūnīsque cīvium arcebis; et hominēs (inimīcōs
. . . coniūnctōs) suppliciīs vīvōs mortuōsque
mactābis.**

6

[1] *Cicero here tells how, shortly after his first speech
against Catiline, he secured the written evidence
necessary for the trial and conviction of the con-
spirators.*
[2] fellow-citizens, *an old word of uncertain origin*
[3] *The Romans regularly used the sg. even when referring
to a number of people; we use the pl., "lives."*
[4] *n. pl.,* good things = goods
[5] **coniūnx, -iugis,** *f.,* wife (*cp.* **coniungō**)
[6] **līberī, -ōrum,** children
[7] **domicilium, -iī,** home (*cp.* **domus**)
[8] **hodiernus diēs,** this day, today (*cp.* **hodiē**)

[9] **flamma, -ae,** flame
[10] **paene,** *adv.,* almost
[11] **faucēs, -ium,** *f. pl.,* jaws; a narrow passage
[12] **restituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtum,** restore
[13] *The outline of the sent. is this:* **Rem pūblicam (. . .
urbem) amōre deōrum(. . . perīculīs meīs) ē
flammā (. . . faucibus fātī) ēreptam (. . . restitū-
tam) vidētis.**
[14] *conjunctive use of the rel.; n. nom. pl.*
[15] **comperiō, -īre, -perī, -pertum,** find out
[16] introduces **possītis**
[17] **et . . . et**
[18] *nom. n. pl., subject of* **comprehēnsa sint**
[19] **investīgō** (1), track out, investigate
[20] **ut** + *ind., here* = ever since
[21] before by a few days (*abl. of degree of difference, see
S.S.*) = a few days ago; *actually some three
weeks before*
[22] **ērumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum,** burst forth
[23] **huius** + **ce,** an intensifying suffix
[24] **vigilō** (1), watch, be vigilant
[25] **prō-videō,** foresee, make provision
[26] **quem ad modum,** how
[27] **absconditus, -a, -um,** hidden
[28] **illa (invidia)**
[29] *compar. of* **magnopere**

15   timenda, quod[30] vīvus exierit)—sed tum cum[31] illum exterminārī[32] volēbam,
      aut[33] reliquam[34] coniūrātōrum manum simul[35] exitūram[36] aut eōs quī restitis-
      sent[37] īnfīrmōs sine illō ac dēbilēs[38] fore[39] putābam. Atque ego, ut vīdī, quōs
      maximō furōre et scelere esse īnflammātōs sciēbam, eōs nōbīscum esse et
      Rōmae remānsisse, in eō[40] omnēs diēs noctēsque cōnsūmpsī ut quid agerent,
20   quid mōlīrentur, sentīrem ac vidērem . . . Itaque, ut comperī lēgātōs[41] Al-
      lobrogum[42] bellī Trānsalpīnī[43] et tumultūs[44] Gallicī[45] excitandī[46] causā, ā
      P. Lentulō[47] esse sollicitātōs,[48] eōsque in Galliam[49] ad suōs cīvēs eōdemque
      itinere cum litterīs mandātīsque[50] ad Catilīnam esse missōs, comitemque[51]
      eīs adiūnctum esse[52] T. Volturcium,[53] atque huic esse ad Catilīnam datās
25   litterās, facultātem[54] mihi oblātam putāvī ut—quod[55] erat difficillimum
      quodque ego semper optābam[56] ab dīs immortālibus—tōta rēs nōn sōlum ā
      mē sed etiam ā senātū et ā vōbis manifestō[57] dēprehenderētur.[58]

      Itaque hesternō[59] diē L. Flaccum et C. Pomptīnum praetōrēs,[60] fortissi-
      mōs atque amantissimōs[61] reī pūblicae[62] virōs, ad mē vocāvī, rem exposuī,
30   quid fierī[63] placēret ostendī. Illī autem, quī omnia dē rē pūblicā praeclāra[64]
      atque ēgregia[65] sentīrent,[66] sine recūsātiōne[67] ac sine ūllā morā negōtium[68]
      suscēpērunt et, cum advesperāsceret,[69] occultē[70] ad pontem[71] Mulvium per-

---

[30] This cl. is a noun cl. in apposition with **illa (invidia)**.
The perf. subj. (**exierit**) is used in informal ind.
state. indicating what people may say: he went out
alive (**vīvus**).

[31] **tum cum**, mere repetition of **tum cum** above as Cicero
starts the sent. over again.

[32] **exterminō** (1), banish (ex + **terminus**, boundary)

[33] **aut . . . exitūram (esse) aut . . . fore putābam**

[34] **reliquus, -a, -um**, remaining, the rest of

[35] **simul**, adv., at the same time

[36] **ex-eō; exitūram (esse)**

[37] **restō, -āre, -stitī**, stay behind, remain

[38] **dēbilis, -e**, helpless, weak

[39] = **futūrōs esse**

[40] **in eō ut sentīrem et vidērem quid . . . mōlīrentur**: in
this that I might see . . . ; the ut-cl. of purpose is
in apposition with **eō**.

[41] **lēgātus, -ī**, ambassador

[42] **Allobrogēs, -um**, m. pl., the Allobroges, a Gallic tribe
whose ambassadors had come to Rome to make
complaints about certain Roman magistrates.

[43] **Trānsalpīnus, -a, -um**, Transalpine

[44] **tumultus, -ūs**, m., uprising

[45] **Gallicus, -a, -um**, Gallic

[46] **excitō** (1), excite, arouse

[47] Publius Lentulus after having been consul in 71 B.C.
was removed from the Senate on grounds of moral
turpitude. He was now one of the leading conspira-
tors and at the same time he was holding the office
of praetor.

[48] **sollicitō** (1), stir up

[49] **Gallia, -ae**, Gaul

[50] **mandātum, -ī**, order, instruction

[51] **comes, -itis**, m., companion

[52] **ad-iungō**

[53] **Titus Volturcius**, an errand-boy for Lentulus

[54] **facultās, -tātis**, f., opportunity

[55] **quod**, a thing which. The antecedent of **quod** is the
general idea in the **ut-cl.**

[56] **optō** (1), desire

[57] **manifestō**, adv., clearly

[58] **dēprehendō** (cp. **comprehendō**), detect, comprehend

[59] **hesternō diē**, yesterday

[60] Though praetors were judicial magistrates, they did
possess the imperium by which they could com-
mand troops.

[61] most loving of the state = very patriotic

[62] obj. gen.; see App.

[63] **fierī**, subject of **placēret** (it was pleasing) used imper-
sonally

[64] **praeclārus, -a, -um**, noble

[65] **ēgregius, -a, -um**, excellent, distinguished

[66] subj. in a characteristic cl.

[67] **recūsātiō, -ōnis**, f., refusal

[68] **negōtium, -ī**, business, matter

[69] **advesperāscit, -ere, -perāvit**, impers. inceptive, it is ap-
proaching evening (cp. vespers)

[70] **occultē**, adv., secretly

[71] **pōns, pontis**, m., bridge; the Mulvian bridge across
the Tiber near Rome

vēnērunt atque ibi in proximīs vīllīs[72] ita bipertītō[73] fuērunt ut Tiberis[74] inter eōs et pōns interesset.[75] Eōdem[76] autem et ipsī sine cuiusquam suspīciōne[77]

35 multōs fortēs virōs ēdūxerant, et ego ex praefectūrā[78] Reātīnā[79] complūrēs[80] dēlēctōs[81] adulēscentēs, quōrum operā[82] ūtor assiduē[83] in rē pūblicā, praesidiō[84] cum gladiīs mīseram. Interim,[85] tertiā ferē[86] vigiliā[87] exāctā, cum iam pontem Mulvium magnō comitātū[88] lēgātī Allobrogum ingredī[89] inciperent ūnāque[90] Volturcius, fit in eōs impetus[91]; ēdūcuntur[92] et ab illīs gladiī et ā

40 nostrīs.[93] Rēs praetōribus erat nōta sōlīs, ignōrābātur ā cēterīs. Tum interventū[94] Pomptīnī atque Flaccī pugnā[95] sēdātur.[96] Litterae, quaecumque[97] erant in eō comitātū, integrīs[98] signīs praetōribus trāduntur; ipsī, comprehēnsī, ad mē, cum iam dīlūcēsceret,[99] dēdūcuntur. Atque hōrum omnium scelerum improbissimum[100] māchinātōrem,[101] Cimbrum Gabīnium,[102]

45 statim[103] ad mē nihildum[104] suspicantem,[105] vocāvī. Deinde item[106] arcessītus est[107] L. Statilius, et post eum C. Cethēgus. Tardissimē[108] autem Lentulus vēnit . . .

Senātum frequentem[109] celeriter, ut vīdistis, coēgī. Atque intereā[110] statim admonitū[111] Allobrogum C. Sulpicium praetōrem, fortem virum, mīsī

50 quī ex aedibus[112] Cethēgī, sī quid tēlōrum[113] esset, efferret[114]; ex quibus[115] ille maximum sīcārum[116] numerum et gladiōrum extulit.[117]

Intrōdūxī[118] Volturcium sine Gallīs; fidem pūblicam[119] iussū[120] senātūs

---

[72] **vīlla, -ae,** country house
[73] **bipertītō,** *adv.,* in two divisions
[74] **Tiberis, -is,** *m.,* the Tiber
[75] **inter-sum,** be between
[76] **eōdem,** *adv.,* to the same place
[77] **suspīciō, -ōnis,** *f.,* suspicion
[78] **praefectūra, -ae,** prefecture, *a city of the Roman allies governed by a Roman prefect*
[79] **Reātīnus, -a, -um,** of Reate, *a Sabine town about forty miles from Rome.*
[80] **complūrēs, -a,** *pl. adj.,* very many
[81] **dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum,** choose, select
[82] **opera, -ae,** help; *why abl.?*
[83] **assiduē,** *adv.,* constantly
[84] **praesidiō,** as a guard, *dat. of purpose (S.S.)*
[85] **interim,** *adv.,* meanwhile
[86] **ferē,** *adv.,* about, almost; *usually follows the word it modifies*
[87] **vigilia, -ae,** watch. *The night was divided into four watches.*
[88] **comitātus, -ūs,** company, retinue. *The abl. of accompaniment may be used without* **cum** *in military expressions.*
[89] **ingredior, -gredī, -gressus sum,** enter on
[90] and together with (them)
[91] **impetus, -ūs,** attack
[92] **ēdūcuntur . . . gladiī,** swords were drawn
[93] **nostrīs (virīs)**
[94] **interventus, -ūs,** intervention

[95] **pugna, -ae,** fight
[96] **sēdō (1),** settle, stop (*not to be confused with* **sedeō,** sit)
[97] **quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque,** whoever, whatever
[98] **integer, -gra, -grum,** untouched, whole
[99] **dīlūcēscit, -ere, -lūxit,** it grows light, dawn comes
[100] **improbus, -a, -um,** wicked
[101] **māchinātor, -ōris,** *m.,* contriver, plotter
[102] **Cimber Gabīnius**
[103] **statim,** *adv.,* immediately
[104] **nihil-dum,** nothing yet
[105] **suspicor (1),** suspect
[106] **item,** *adv.,* likewise
[107] **arcessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum,** summon
[108] **tardē,** *adv.,* slowly
[109] **frequēns,** *gen.* **-entis,** crowded, full
[110] **intereā,** *adv.,* meanwhile
[111] **admonitus, -ūs,** warning, suggestion
[112] **aedēs, -ium,** *f. pl.,* house
[113] **tēlum, -ī,** weapon; **tēlōrum** *is gen. of whole with* **quid:** anything of weapons = any weapons
[114] *rel. cl. of purp.:* **quī = ut is**
[115] *Antecedent* is **aedibus.**
[116] **sīca, -ae,** dagger
[117] **efferō: ex-ferō**
[118] **intrō-dūcō** = *Eng.* introduce
[119] promise of protection in the name of the state
[120] **iussus, -ūs,** command

dedī; hortātus sum ut ea quae scīret sine timōre indicāret.[121] Tum ille dīxit, cum vix[122] sē ex magnō timōre recreāsset,[123] ā P. Lentulō sē habēre ad Catilī-
55   nam mandāta et litterās ut servōrum praesidiō ūterētur,[124] ut ad urbem quam prīmum[125] cum exercitū accēderet; id[126] autem eō cōnsiliō ut,[127] cum urbem ex[128] omnibus partibus, quem ad modum[129] discrīptum distribūtumque erat,[130] incendissent[131] caedemque[132] īnfīnītam[133] cīvium fēcissent, praestō[134] esset ille[135] quī et fugientēs exciperet[136] et sē cum hīs urbānīs ducibus con-
60   iungeret.[137]

Intrōductī autem Gallī iūs iūrandum[138] sibi et litterās ab Lentulō, Ceth-ēgō, Statiliō ad suam gentem datās esse dīxērunt atque ita sibi ab hīs et ā L. Cassiō esse praescrīptum[139] ut equitātum[140] in Italiam quam prīmum mit-terent[141] . . .

65   Ac nē longum sit,[142] Quirītēs, tabellās[143] prōferrī[144] iussimus quae ā quō-que dīcēbantur datae.[145] Prīmum ostendimus Cethēgō signum; cognōvit. Nōs līnum[146] incīdimus[147]; lēgimus. Erat scrīptum ipsīus[148] manū Allobrogum senātuī et populō sēsē[149] quae eōrum lēgātīs cōnfīrmāsset[150] factūrum esse; ōrāre ut item illī facerent quae sibi eōrum lēgātī recēpissent. Tum Cethēgus
70   (quī paulō[151] ante aliquid tamen dē gladiīs ac sīcīs, quae apud ipsum erant

---

[121] indīcō (1), indicate, make known

[122] vix, *adv.*, hardly

[123] *The perf. endings in* -āvi-, -ēvi-, -ōvi- *often contract to* -ā-, -ē-, -ō-, *respectively. So here* recreāvisset *has contracted to* recreāsset. *Perfs. in* -īvi- *may lose the* v *but the two resultant vowels rarely contract to* ī *except before* ss *and* st: audīverat, audierat; audīvisse, audīsse; quaesīssent

[124] *jussive noun cl. with* mandāta et litterās

[125] quam prīmum, as soon as possible

[126] (that he should do) this (id) with this plan (in mind) that . . .

[127] *The rest of the sentence can be outlined thus:* ut (cum . . . partibus |quem ad modum . . . distribūtum erat| incendissent et . . . fēcissent) praestō esset ille (quī et . . . exciperet et . . . coniungeret)

[128] *here* in

[129] quem ad modum, as

[130] *impers. pass. vbs.:* as had been marked out and assigned

[131] incendō, -ere, -cendī, -cēnsum, set fire to

[132] caedēs, -is, *f.*, slaughter

[133] īnfīnītus, -a, -um, unlimited

[134] praestō, *adv.*, on hand, ready

[135] ille = Catiline

[136] ex-cipiō, pick up, capture

[137] con + iungō. *Why are* exciperet *and* coniungeret *in the subj.?*

[138] iūs, iūrandum, iūris iūrandī, *n.*, oath

[139] prae-scrībō, order, direct; esse praescrīptum, *impers. pass.* (it had been commanded to themselves, sibi) *but translate as personal:* they had been directed.

[140] equitātus, -ūs, cavalry

[141] *jussive noun cl. depending on* esse praescrīptum

[142] to be brief

[143] tabella, -ae, tablet: *very shallow trays, not unlike the modern slate, filled with wax on which writing was done with a sharp-pointed stilus. Two of these closed face to face, tied together with a string, and sealed with wax and the impression of a signet ring, were the equivalent of a modern letter in an envelope.*

[144] prō-ferō

[145] datae (esse); datae *is nom. f. pl. to agree with* quae (tabellae), *the subject of* dīcēbantur.

[146] līnum, -ī, string

[147] incīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum, cut

[148] (Cethēgī) ipsīus: *emphatic because letters were often written by an amanuensis, a slave to whom the letter was dictated.*

[149] sēsē = sē (*i.e.,* Cethegus), *subject of* factūrum esse *and also of* ōrāre

[150] cōnfīrmō (1), assert, declare; *subj. in ind. state.* (*see S.S.*)

[151] a little before (before by a little), *abl. of degree of difference* (*see S.S.*)

dēprehēnsa,[152] respondisset dīxissetque[153] sē semper bonōrum ferrāmentōrum[154] studiōsum[155] fuisse) recitātīs litterīs dēbilitātus[156] atque abiectus[157] cōnscientiā,[158] repente conticuit.[159]

Intrōductus est Statilius; cognōvit et signum et manum suam. Recitātae
75 sunt tabellae in eandem ferē sententiam; cōnfessus est.

Tum ostendī tabellās Lentulō, et quaesīvī cognōsceretne signum. Adnuit[160] ... Leguntur eādem ratiōne ad senātum Allobrogum populumque litterae. Sī quid dē hīs rēbus dīcere vellet,[161] fēcī potestātem.[162] Atque ille prīmō quidem negāvit. Post[163] autem aliquantō,[164] tōtō iam indiciō[165]
80 expositō atque ēditō,[166] surrēxit; quaesīvit ā Gallīs quid sibi esset cum eīs, quam ob rem[167] domum suam vēnissent, itemque ā Volturciō. Quī cum illī breviter cōnstanterque[168] respondissent per quem ad eum quotiēnsque[169] vēnissent, quaesīssentque[170] ab eō nihilne sēcum[171] esset dē fātīs Sibyllīnīs[172] locūtus, tum ille subitō, scelere dēmēns,[173] quanta cōnscientiae vīs esset os-
85 tendit. Nam cum id posset īnfitiārī,[174] repente praeter opīniōnem[175] omnium cōnfessus est ...

Gabīnius deinde intrōductus, cum prīmō impudenter[176] respondēre coepisset, ad extrēmum[177] nihil ex eīs[178] quae Gallī īnsimulābant[179] negāvit.

Ac mihi[180] quidem, Quirītēs, cum[181] illa[182] certissima vīsa sunt argūmenta
90 atque indicia sceleris, tabellae, signa, manūs, dēnique ūnīus cuiusque cōnfessiō,[183] tum multō[184] certiōra illa, color,[185] oculī, vultūs, taciturnitās.[186] Sīc

---

[152] **dēprehendō, -ere, -hendī, -hēnsum,** seize
[153] **respondisset dīxissetque,** *subj. in rel. cl. of characteristic, which have the force of a concessive cl.* (= *although*)
[154] **ferrāmentum, -ī,** weapon
[155] **studiōsus, -a, -um,** fond of (*i.e., he was a collector.*)
[156] **dēbilitō** (1), weaken
[157] **abiectus, -a, -um,** downcast
[158] **cōnscientia, -ae,** knowledge, conscience
[159] **conticēscō, -ere, -ticuī,** become silent
[160] **adnuō, -ere, -nuī,** nod assent
[161] **vellet,** *subj. because it is a subordinate cl. in an implied ind. state. for Cicero's original words:* **sī quid ... dīcere vīs**
[162] **potestās, -tātis,** *f.,* power, opportunity
[163] = **posteā**
[164] **aliquantō,** *abl. of degree of difference* (by somewhat) *equivalent to an adv.:* somewhat, a little
[165] **indicium, -ī,** evidence, information
[166] **ē-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditum,** give forth, publish
[167] **quam ob rem** = **quārē**
[168] **constanter,** *adv.,* consistently, steadily
[169] **quotiēns,** *adv.,* how often
[170] *contracted form. n. 122 above*
[171] **sēcum:** *an ind. reflexive referring to the subject of*

quaesīssent; *translate* to them.
[172] **fāta Sibyllīna,** *a collection of ancient prophecies for which the Romans had very high respect. By these Lentulus had sought to prove to the Allobroges that he was destined to hold the regnum and imperium at Rome.*
[173] **dē-mēns,** *gen.* **-mentis,** out of one's mind
[174] **īnfitior** (1), deny
[175] **opīniō, -ōnis,** *f.,* expectation
[176] **impudenter,** *adv.,* impudently
[177] **ad extrēmum,** at the last, finally
[178] **eīs** = *n. pl.,* those things
[179] **īnsimulō** (1), charge
[180] *depends on* **vīsa sunt**
[181] **cum ... tum,** not only ... but also (*cp.* **nōn sōlum ... sed etiam**)
[182] **illa argūmenta atque indicia** (*i.e.,* **tabellae ... cōnfessiō**) **certissima vīsa sunt**
[183] **cōnfessiō, -ōnis,** *f.* = *Eng.*
[184] *lit.* more certain by much. *What kind of abl. is* **multō?** (*see S.S.*)
[185] **color ... taciturnitās,** *in apposition with* **illa,** *which is nom. n. pl.* **color, -ōris,** *m.,* = *Eng.*
[186] **taciturnitās, -tātis,** *f.,* silence (*cp.* taciturn)

enim obstupuerant,[187] sīc terram intuēbantur,[188] sīc fūrtim nōn numquam inter sēsē aspiciēbant ut nōn iam ab aliīs indicārī[189] sed indicāre sē ipsī vidē-rentur.

95   Indiciīs expositīs atque ēditīs, Quirītēs, senātum cōnsuluī[190] dē summā rē pūblicā[191] quid fierī placēret. Dictae sunt ā prīncipibus ācerrimae ac for-tissimae sententiae, quās senātus sine ūllā varietāte[192] est secūtus . . .

    Quibus prō tantīs rēbus, Quirītēs, nūllum ego ā vōbīs praemium virtūtis, nūllum īnsigne[193] honōris, nūllum monumentum laudis postulō[194] praeter-

100 quam[195] huius diēī memoriam sempiternam[196] . . .

    Vōs, Quirītēs, quoniam iam est nox, venerātī[197] Iovem illum custōdem huius urbis ac vestrum, in vestra tēcta[198] discēdite; et ea, quamquam[199] iam est perīculum dēpulsum,[200] tamen aequē ac[201] priōre nocte custōdiīs vigiliīsque dēfendite. Id nē vōbīs diūtius faciendum sit atque ut in perpetuā

105 pāce esse possītis prōvidēbō. (**Cicero**, *In Catilīnam Ōrātiō III*, excerpts)

DĒ VĪTĀ ET MORTE (7–9)

7. SOCRATES' "EITHER-OR" BELIEF[1]

    Quae est igitur eius ōrātiō quā[2] facit eum Platō ūsum apud iūdicēs iam morte multātum[3]?

    "Magna mē," inquit "spēs tenet iūdicēs, bene mihi ēvenīre[4] quod mittar[5] ad mortem. Necesse[6] est enim sit[7] alterum dē duōbus, ut aut[8] sēnsūs omnīnō

5 omnēs mors auferat aut in alium quendam locum ex hīs locīs morte mi-grētur.[9] Quam ob rem,[10] sīve[11] sēnsus exstinguitur morsque eī somnō similis est quī nōn numquam etiam sine vīsīs[12] somniōrum[13] plācātissimam[14] quiē-

---

[187] **obstupēscō, -ere, -stupuī**, become stupefied, be thunderstruck
[188] **intueor, -ērī, -tuitus sum**, look at
[189] **indicō** (1), accuse (*cp.* **indicium**, *n. 165 above*)
[190] **cōnsulō, -ere, -suluī, -sultum**, consult, ask advice of
[191] highest interest of the state
[192] **varietās, -tātis,** *f.*, variation
[193] **īnsigne, -is,** *n.*, sign, symbol
[194] **postulō** (1), request, demand
[195] except
[196] **sempiternus, -a, -um,** eternal
[197] **veneror** (1), worship
[198] **tēctum, -ī,** roof; house
[199] **quamquam,** *conj.*, although
[200] **dēpellō,** drive off, avert
[201] equally as = just as

7

[1] *As part of his demonstration that death is not an evil, Cicero cites Socrates' views as given in Plato's*

"Apology." Socrates' defense of his life before the jury that finally condemned him to death.

[2] **quā . . . ūsum,** which Plato represents him as using; **quā,** *abl. with the participle* **ūsum**
[3] **multō,** (1), punish, sentence
[4] **ē-veniō,** turn out; *impers. inf. in ind. state.*
[5] *subordinate cl. in ind. state.*
[6] **necesse,** *indecl. adj.,* (it is) necessary
[7] *Supply* **ut** *before* **sit:** that there be one of two possi-bilities, *with the* **ut . . . migrētur** *cl. in apposition with* **duōbus**
[8] **aut . . . aut**
[9] **migrō** (1), depart, migrate; **migrātur** *as impers. pass.,* one departs
[10] = **quārē**
[11] = **sī**
[12] **vīsum, -ī,** vision
[13] **somnium, -iī,** dream
[14] **plācātus, -a, -um,** peaceful

tem adfert, dī bonī, quid lucrī est ēmorī[15]! Aut quam multī diēs reperīrī possunt quī tālī noctī antepōnantur? Cui sī similis futūra est[16] perpetuitās[17]
10 omnis cōnsequentis[18] temporis, quis[19] mē beātior?

"Sin[20] vēra[21] sunt quae dīcuntur, migrātiōnem[22] esse mortem in eās ōrās[23] quās quī[24] ē vītā excessērunt[25] incolunt,[26] id multō[27] iam beātius est . . . Haec peregrīnātiō[28] mediocris vōbīs vidērī potest? Ut vērō colloquī[29] cum Orpheō, Mūsaeō,[30] Homērō, Hēsiodō[31] liceat, quantī[32] tandem aestimātis[33]? . . . Nec
15 enim cuiquam[34] bonō malī[35] quicquam ēvenīre potest nec vīvō nec mortuō.[36] . . .

"Sed tempus est iam hinc[37] abīre mē, ut moriar, vōs, ut vītam agātis. Utrum autem sit melius, dī immortālēs sciunt; hominem quidem scīre arbitror nēminem."[38] (**Cicero,** *Tusculānae Disputātiōnēs* 1.40.97–1.41.99, excerpts)

8. A MORE POSITIVE VIEW ABOUT IMMORTALITY[1]

Artior[2] quam solēbāt[3] somnus (mē) complexus est[4] . . . (et) Āfricānus sē ostendit eā fōrmā[5] quae mihi ex imāgine[6] eius quam ex ipsō erat nōtior.[7] Quem ubi agnōvī,[8] equidem cohorruī[9], . . . quaesīvī tamen vīveretne ipse et Paulus[10] pater et aliī quōs nōs exstīnctōs[11] arbitrārēmur.
5 "Immō vērō," inquit, "hī vīvunt quī ē corporum vinclīs tamquam ē car-

---

[15] ē-morior, die (off)
[16] futūra est, is going to be
[17] perpetuitās, -tātis, *f.*, perpetuity
[18] cōn-sequor
[19] quis (est)
[20] sīn, *conj.*, but if
[21] (ea) sunt vēra
[22] migrātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, the noun of migrō, *n.* 9 *above*
[23] ōra, -ae, shore, region
[24] (eī) quī
[25] ex-cēdō = discēdō
[26] incolō, -ere, -uī, inhabit
[27] *abl. of degree of difference* (S.S.)
[28] peregrīnātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, travel abroad
[29] col-loquor, talk with, converse (*cp.* colloquial)
[30] *Orpheus and Musaeus were famous poets and musicians before the time of Homer*
[31] *Hesiod, a Greek epic poet chronologically next after Homer.*
[32] quantī (pretiī), of how much (value), *gen. of indef. value.* quantī . . . aestimātis, how valuable, pray, do you estimate this is?
[33] aestimō (1), estimate, value
[34] quisquam, quidquam (quicquam), anyone, anything; cuiquam *modified by* bonō: to any good man
[35] malī (*gen.*) *depends on* quicquam: anything of evil =

any evil
[36] vīvō *and* mortuō *modify* cuiquam bonō.
[37] hinc, *adv.*, from this place
[38] hominem . . . nēminem, no man

8

[1] *In these excerpts Scipio Africanus Minor (the Younger, hero of the Third Punic War in 146 B.C.) tells how the deceased Scipio Africanus Maior (the Elder, hero of the Second Punic War who defeated Hannibal in 202 B.C.) appeared to him in a dream and discoursed on the nature of life here and hereafter.*
[2] artus, -a, -um, deep (sleep); narrow
[3] solēbat (esse)
[4] complector, -ī, -plexus sum, embrace
[5] *abl. of description*
[6] imāgō, -inis, *f.*, image; *here* = portrait mask of an ancestor. *The* imāginēs *of a Roman patrician's ancestors were displayed in the atrium of the house.*
[7] nōtus, -a, -um, known, familiar
[8] agnōscō (*cp.* cognōscō), recognize
[9] cohorrēscō, -ere, -horruī, shudder
[10] L. Aemilius Paulus, *father of Africanus Minor*
[11] exstīnctōs (esse): exstinguō

cere[12] ēvolāvērunt[13]; vestra vērō quae dīcitur vīta mors est. Quīn[14] tū aspicis ad tē venientem Paulum patrem?"

Quem ut vīdī, equidem vim[15] lacrimārum prōfūdī. Ille autem mē complexus[4] atque ōsculāns[16] flēre[17] prohibēbat. Atque ego ut prīmum[18] flētū[19]
10 repressō[20] loquī posse coepī, "Quaesō,[21]" inquam, "pater sānctissime[22] atque optime, quoniam haec est vīta, ut Āfricānum audiō dīcere, quid moror[23] in terrīs? Quīn[24] hūc[25] ad vōs venīre properō[26]?

"Nōn est ita,[27]" inquit ille. "Nisi enim deus is,[28] cuius hoc templum[29] est omne quod cōnspicis,[30] istīs tē corporis custōdiīs līberāverit, hūc tibi aditus[31]
15 patēre nōn potest. Hominēs enim sunt hāc lēge[32] generātī,[33] quī tuērentur[34] illum globum[35] quem in hōc templō medium vidēs, quae terra dīcitur, iīsque[36] animus datus est ex illīs sempiternīs ignibus quae sīdera et stēllās vocātis . . . Quārē et tibi, Pūblī,[37] et piīs omnibus retinendus[38] est animus in custōdiā corporis, nec iniussū[39] eius ā quō ille[40] est vōbīs datus ex hominum vītā mi-
20 grandum est, nē mūnus[41] hūmānum adsignātum[42] ā deō dēfūgisse[43] videāminī . . . Iūstitiam[44] cole[45] et pietātem,[46] quae cum sit magna[47] in parentibus et propinquīs,[48] tum[49] in patriā maxima est. Ea vīta via est in caelum et in hunc coetum[50] eōrum quī iam vīxērunt et corpore laxātī[51] illum incolunt locum . . . quem vōs, ut ā Graīs accēpistis, orbem lacteum,[52] nuncupātis.[53]"

. . .

---

[12] carcer, -eris, *n.*, prison
[13] ē-volō (1), fly away; *not to be confused with* volō, velle
[14] quīn aspicis: why, don't you see?
[15] vim = cōpiam
[16] ōsculor (1), kiss
[17] fleō, -ēre, flēvī, flētum, weep
[18] ut prīmum, as soon as
[19] flētus, -ūs, *noun of* fleō, *n. 17 above*
[20] re-primō (premō)
[21] quaesō, -ere, *commonly exclamatory:* I beg you!, pray tell!, please
[22] sānctus, -a, -um, holy
[23] moror (1), delay, wait
[24] why not?
[25] hūc, *adv.*, to this place, here
[26] properō (1), hasten
[27] = that is not the way
[28] *order* = is deus
[29] templum, -ī, sacred area, temple
[30] cuius . . . cōnspicis: whose this temple is *or* to whom belongs this temple—everything which you behold. *Apparently, as he says* hoc templum, *he makes a sweeping gesture with his arm to indicate the universe and then adds* omne quod cōnspicis *to make this even clearer.* cōnspiciō = aspiciō
[31] aditus, -ūs, approach, entrance
[32] *abl. of accordance:* in accordance with this law, on this condition

[33] generō (1), create
[34] tueor, -ērī, tūtus sum, watch, protect. *Why subj.?*
[35] globus, -ī, sphere, globe
[36] *i.e.,* hominibus
[37] Pūblius, praenomen (*first name*) of Africanus Minor
[38] re-tineō, retain, preserve
[39] iniussū, *abl. as adv.,* without the command (of); *cp.* iussū
[40] ille (animus)
[41] mūnus, -eris, *n.,* duty, service
[42] adsignō (1), assign
[43] dē-fugiō, flee from, avoid
[44] iūstitia, -ae, justice (*cp.* iūstus)
[45] colō, -ere, -uī, cultum, cultivate, cherish
[46] pietās, -tātis, *f.,* loyalty, devotion
[47] important
[48] propinquus, -ī, relative
[49] *here* = surely
[50] coetus, -ūs, gathering, company
[51] laxō (1), set free
[52] orbis (-is) lacteus (-ī), *m.,* the Milky Way (orb), *which Cicero here says is a term received from the Greeks* (ut ā Graīs, *i.e.* Graecīs, accēpistis), *who called it* galaxias kyklos (= lacteus orbis); *cp. our word* galaxy.
[53] nuncupō (1) = appellō

25   Et ille, "Tū vērō . . . sīc habētō[54] nōn esse tē mortālem, sed corpus hoc[55]; nec enim tuīs[56] es quem fōrma ista dēclārat,[57] sed mēns cuiusque is est quisque, nōn ea figūra[58] quae digitō dēmōnstrārī potest. Deum tē igitur scītō[59] esse; sīquidem[60] deus est quī viget,[61] quī sentit, quī meminit,[62] quī prōvidet, quī tam regit et moderātur[63] et movet id corpus cui praepositus

30 est[64] quam[65] hunc mundum ille prīnceps deus."[66] (**Cicero,** excerpts from *Somnium Scīpiōnis* 2ff. = *Dē Rē Pūblicā* 6.10 ff.)

9. ON CONTEMPT OF DEATH[1]

Sed quid[2] ducēs et prīncipēs nōminem[3] cum legiōnēs[4] scrībat Catō[5] saepe alacrēs[6] in eum locum profectās[7] unde reditūrās sē nōn arbitrārentur? Parī animō Lacedaemoniī[8] in Thermopylīs[9] occidērunt, in quōs[10] Simōnidēs:

    Dīc, hospes,[11] Spartae[12] nōs tē[13] hīc vīdisse iacentīs,[14]

5   dum sānctīs patriae lēgibus obsequimur.[15]

Virōs commemorō.[16] Quālis[17] tandem Lacaena? Quae, cum fīlium in proelium mīsisset et interfectum[18] audīsset, "Idcircō,[19]" inquit, "genueram[20] ut esset quī[21] prō patriā mortem nōn dubitāret occumbere.[22]"

    . . . Admoneor[23] ut aliquid etiam dē humātiōne[24] et sepultūrā[25] dīcen-

10 dum[26] exīstimem[27] . . . Sōcratēs, rogātus ā Critōne[28] quem ad modum sepe-
līrī[29] vellet, "Multam vērō," inquit, "operam,[30] amīcī, frūstrā[31] cōnsūmpsī.

---

[54] **habētō,** *fut. imper.,* you shall consider; consider

[55] *sc.* **esse mortāle**

[56] **tuīs,** to your (friends), *dat. depending on* **dēclārat**

[57] **dēclārō** (1) = *Eng.*

[58] = **fōrma**

[59] **scītō,** *another fut. imper.,* you shall know; know

[60] **sīquidem,** *conj.,* since

[61] **vigeō -ēre, -uī** be strong, be active

[62] **meminī, meminisse,** *defective, found only in perf. system,* remember

[63] **moderor** (1), control

[64] **prae-pōnō,** put in charge of

[65] as

[66] *From the preceding cl. sc.* **regit,** *etc. as vbs.*

9

[1] *If death is such a great evil, how can the following attitudes be explained?*

[2] **quid,** *as adv.,* why? (= **cūr?**)

[3] **nōminō** (1), name, mention (*cp.* **nōmen**)

[4] **legiō, -ōnis,** *f.,* legion

[5] **Catō, -ōnis,** *m.,* Cato, *the famous censor, who wrote a now-lost history of Rome called the Origines.*

[6] **alacer, -cris, -cre,** eager, happy. *We should use an adv. instead of a predicate adj.:* eagerly

[7] **profectās** (esse); **reditūrās** (esse)

[8] **Lacedaemoniī, -ōrum,** *m.,* Spartans

[9] **Thermopylae, -ārum;** *480* B.C.

[10] **on** whom Simonides (wrote); *Simonides a sixth-century Greek poet famous especially for his poems and epigrams in the elegiac couplet.*

[11] **hospes, -itis,** *m.,* stranger

[12] **Sparta, -ae,** *f.,* **Spartae,** *dat. depending on* **dīc**

[13] **tē vīdisse nōs**

[14] = **iacentēs**

[15] **ob-sequor** + *dat.,* obey

[16] **commemorō** (1), call to mind mention (*cp.* **memoria**)

[17] **What** kind of person, then, was the Spartan woman? **quālis, -e,** what kind of

[18] **(eum) interfectum (esse)**

[19] **idcircō,** *adv.,* for that reason

[20] **gignō, -ere, genuī, genitum,** beget (*cp.* generate), bear

[21] **(the kind of person) who**

[22] **occumbō, -ere, -cubuī, -cubitum,** meet

[23] **ad-moneō** = **moneō,** remind

[24] **humātiō, -ōnis,** *f.* burial (*cp.* **humus,** earth)

[25] **sepultūra, -ae,** funeral (*cp.* sepulchre)

[26] **dīcendum (esse)**

[27] **exīstimō** (1), think

[28] **Critō, -ōnis,** *m.,* Crito, *a friend of Socrates*

[29] **sepeliō, -īre, -īvī, -pultum,** bury

[30] **opera, -ae,** effort, pains

[31] **frūstrā,** *adv.,* in vain (*cp.* frustrate)

Critōnī enim nostrō nōn persuāsī mē hinc āvolātūrum,[32] neque meī[33] quicquam relictūrum[34] . . . Sed, mihi crēde, (Critō), nēmō mē vestrum,[35] cum hinc excesserō,[36] cōnsequētur.[37] . . .

15   Dūrior Diogenēs[38] Cynicus prōicī[39] sē iussit inhumātum.[40] Tum amīcī, "Volucribusne[41] et ferīs[42]?" "Minimē[43] vērō," inquit; "sed bacillum[44] propter[45] mē, quō abigam,[46] pōnitōte.[47]" "Quī[48] poteris?" illī; "nōn enim sentiēs." "Quid igitur mihi ferārum laniātus[49] oberit[50] nihil sentientī[51]?" (**Cicero,** *Tusculānae Disputātiōnēs* 1.42.101–43.104, excerpts)

10. LITERATURE: ITS VALUE AND DELIGHT[1]

Quaerēs ā nōbīs, Grattī, cūr tantō opere[2] hōc homine dēlectēmur.[3] Quia[4] suppeditat[5] nōbīs ubi[6] et animus ex hōc forēnsī[7] strepitū[8] reficiātur[9] et aurēs convīciō[10] dēfessae[11] conquiēscant[12] . . . Quārē quis tandem mē reprehendat,[13] aut quis mihi iūrē[14] suscēnseat,[15] sī,[16] quantum[17] cēterīs ad suās rēs

5   obeundās[18] quantum ad fēstōs[19] diēs lūdōrum celebrandōs,[20] quantum ad

[32] ā-volō (1); avolātūrum (esse), *inf. in ind. state. with* persuāsī

[33] meī, *gen. of* ego, *depending on* quicquam.

[34] relictūrum (esse)

[35] *gen. of* vōs

[36] ex-cēdō, *cp.* discēdō

[37] cōnsequor, -ī, -secūtus sum, overtake, catch

[38] *Diogenes, the Cynic philosopher, famed for his asceticism and independence*

[39] prō-iciō (iaciō), throw out

[40] inhumātus, -a, -um, unburied

[41] volucris, -is, *f.*, bird

[42] fera, -ae, wild beast; *dat. with* prōicī *understood*

[43] minimē, *adv.*, no, not at all

[44] bacillum, -ī, staff (*cp.* bacillus, *a New Latin form*)

[45] *here* = near

[46] abigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum, drive away; *sc.* volucrēs et ferās. *Why subj.?*

[47] *fut. imperative* = you shall put

[48] quī, *adv.*, how?

[49] laniātus, -ūs, lacerating

[50] obsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, be against, hurt. *Why does* oberit *have the dat.* mihi?

[51] sentientī *modifies* mihi *and has* nihil *as its obj.*

10

[1] *In the course of a speech defending the citizenship of the poet Archias against the charges of a certain Grattius, Cicero pronounced one of the world's finest encomiums on the inestimable value and delight of literature.*

[2] tantō opere, so greatly (*cp.* magnopere)

[3] homine, *the poet Archias.*

[4] quia, *conj.*, because

[5] suppeditō (1), supply

[6] the means by which

[7] forēnsis, -e, of the forum. *By Cicero's time the Forum was primarily the political and legal center of Rome.*

[8] strepitus, -ūs, din

[9] re-ficiō, refresh, revive

[10] convīcium, -iī, wrangling

[11] dēfessus, -a, -um, exhausted

[12] conquiēscō, -ere, -quiēvī, -quiētum, find rest

[13] reprehendō, -ere, -hendī, -hēnsum, censure; reprehendat, *deliberative, or dubitative, subj. The deliberative subj. is used in questions implying doubt, indignation, or impossibility.* Quis mē reprehendat: who is to blame me (I wonder)?

[14] iūre = cum iūre, *abl. of manner that has virtually become an adv.:* rightly

[15] suscēnseō, -ēre, -uī, be incensed, + *dat.*

[16] sī *introduces* sūmpserō. *The only real difficulty with this complex cl. is the involvement of the* quantum *cls. Although these cls. should be read and understood in the order in which they stand, the following outline may prove a welcome guide.* Quis mē reprehendat . . . sī ego tantum temporum ad haec studia sūmpserō quantum temporum cēterīs ad suās rēs (fēstōs diēs, voluptātēs, *etc.*) concēditur, quantum temporum aliī tribuunt convīviīs (alveolō pilae)?

[17] quantum (temporum)

[18] ob-eō, attend to

[19] fēstus, -a, -um, festive

[20] celebrō (1), celebrate

aliās voluptātēs et ad ipsam requiem[21] animī et corporis concēditur[22] tem-
porum, quantum aliī tribuunt[23] tempestīvīs[24] convīviīs,[25] quantum dēnique
alveolō,[26] quantum pilae,[27] tantum[28] mihi egomet[29] ad haec studia reco-
lenda[30] sūmpserō[31]? Atque hoc ideō[32] mihi concēdendum est magis quod ex

10 hīs studiīs haec quoque crēscit ōrātiō et facultās,[33] quae, quantacumque[34] est
in mē, numquam amīcōrum perīculīs dēfuit[35] . . .

Plēnī omnēs sunt librī, plēnae sapientium vōcēs, plēna exemplōrum[36]
vetustās[37]; quae iacērent in tenebrīs[38] omnia, nisi litterārum lūmen[39] ac-
cēderet. Quam multās nōbīs imāginēs[40]—nōn sōlum ad intuendum,[41]

15 vērum[42] etiam ad imitandum[43]—fortissimōrum virōrum expressās[44]
scrīptōrēs et Graecī et Latīnī reliquērunt! Quās ego mihi semper in adminīs-
trandā[45] rē pūblicā prōpōnēns[46] animum et mentem meam ipsā cōgitātiōne[47]
hominum excellentium[48] cōnfōrmābam.[49]

Quaeret quispiam,[50] "Quid? illī ipsī summī virī quōrum virtūtēs litterīs
20 prōditae sunt,[51] istāne doctrīnā[52] quam tū effers[53] laudibus ērudītī fuērunt[54]?"
Difficile est hoc dē omnibus cōnfīrmāre,[55] sed tamen est certum quid respon-
deam . . . : saepius ad laudem atque virtūtem nātūram sine doctrīnā quam
sine nātūrā valuisse[56] doctrīnam. Atque īdem[57] ego contendō,[58] cum ad nātū-
ram eximiam[59] et illūstrem[60] accesserit[61] ratiō quaedam cōnfōrmātiōque[62]
25 doctrīnae, tum illud nesciō quid[63] praeclārum ac singulāre[64] solēre exsis-
tere[65] . . .

---

[21] requiēs, -ētis, *acc.* requiētem *or* requiem, rest
[22] concēdō, grant, concede
[23] tribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, allot
[24] tempestīvus, -a, -um, timely; here = early, *beginning in the afternoon so as to be conveniently prolonged.*
[25] convīvium, -ī, banquet
[26] alveolus, -ī, gaming board
[27] pila, -ae, ball (*cp.* pill)
[28] tantum (temporum) . . . quantum, as much . . . as
[29] ego-met, *an emphatic form of* ego
[30] re-colō, -ere, -uī, -cultum, renew
[31] sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum, take
[32] ideō, *adv.,* for this reason, therefore
[33] facultās, -tātis, *f.,* skill. *Combine with* ōrātiō *and translate:* this oratorical skill.
[34] quantuscumque, -acumque, -umcumque, however great
[35] dē-sum, be lacking
[36] exemplum, -ī, example; exemplōrum *also goes with* plēnī *and* plēnae.
[37] vetustās, -tātis, *f.,* antiquity
[38] tenebrae, -ārum, darkness
[39] lūmen, -inis, *n.,* light
[40] imāgō, -ginis, *f.,* portrait, picture
[41] intueor, gaze on, contemplate
[42] vērum, *conj.,* but
[43] imitor (1), imitate

[44] ex-primō (premō), describe, portray
[45] administrō (1), manage
[46] prō-pōnō, put forward, set before; prōpōnēns *has* quās *as direct obj. and* mihi *as indirect obj.*
[47] cōgitātiō, -ōnis, *f.,* thought; *cp.* cōgitō
[48] excellēns, *gen.* -entis, superior, remarkable
[49] cōnfōrmō (1), mold
[50] quispiam, quaepiam, quidpiam, someone
[51] prōdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, transmit, reveal
[52] doctrīna, -ae, instruction
[53] efferō, -ferre, extulī, ēlātum, lift up, extol
[54] ērudiō (4), educate, train
[55] cōnfīrmō (1), assert
[56] valuisse ad laudem, to be powerful toward praise = to have led to praise; *inf. in ind. state.*
[57] īdem ego, I the same person = I also
[58] maintain
[59] eximius, -a, -um, extraordinary
[60] illūstris, -e, noble, brilliant
[61] accēdō *here* = be added
[62] cōnfōrmātiō, -ōnis, *f.,* molding, shaping
[63] nesciō quis, nesciō quid, *indef. pron., lit.* I know not who/what = some (uncertain) person *or* thing; *the* nesciō *remains unchanged in this phrase.*
[64] singulāris, -e, unique, extraordinary
[65] exsistō, -ere, -stitī, arise, appear, exist

Quod sī nōn hic tantus frūctus ostenderētur, et sī ex hīs studiīs dēlectātiō
sōla peterētur, tamen, ut opīnor, hanc animī remissiōnem hūmānissimam ac
līberālissimam iūdicārētis. Nam cēterae[66] neque temporum[67] sunt neque
30 aetātum omnium neque locōrum; at haec studia adulēscentiam alunt, senec-
tūtem oblectant, rēs secundās ōrnant, adversīs perfugium ac sōlācium
praebent, dēlectant domī, nōn impediunt forīs, pernoctant nōbīscum, per-
egrīnantur, rūsticantur. (**Cicero,** *Prō Archiā* 6.12–7.16, excerpts).

ANECDOTES FROM CICERO (11–15)

11. DEATH OF A PUPPY (EXAMPLE OF AN OMEN)

L. Paulus[1] cōnsul iterum, cum eī[2] bellum[3] ut cum rēge Perse[4] gereret[5]
obtigisset,[6] ut eā ipsā diē domum ad vesperum rediit, fīliolam[7] suam Ter-
tiam,[8] quae tum erat admodum[9] parva, ōsculāns[10] animadvertit[11] trīsticu-
lam.[12] "Quid est,[13]" inquit, "mea Tertia? Quid[14] trīstis es?" "Mī pater," in-
5 quit, "Persa[15] periit." Tum ille artius[16] puellam complexus,[17] "Accipiō," in-
quit, "mea fīlia, ōmen.[18]" Erat autem mortuus catellus[19] eō nōmine. (**Cicero,**
Dē Dīvīnātiōne 1.46.103)

12. TOO CONSCIENTIOUS (AN EXAMPLE OF IRONY)

Est huic fīnitimum[1] dissimulātiōnī[2] cum honestō[3] verbō vitiōsa[4] rēs ap-
pellātur: ut cum Āfricānus cēnsor[5] tribū[6] movēbat eum centuriōnem[7] quī in

---

[66] **cēterae (remissiōnēs** or **dēlectātiōnēs)**

[67] *gen. of possession used in predicate = predicate gen.;
sc.* **omnium** *with each gen.:* the other delights do
not belong to all times . . .

11

[1] *L. Aemilius Paulus Macedonicus was the father of
Scipio Africanus Minor. As consul in 168 B.C. he
brought the war with Macedonia to a successful
conclusion by the defeat of the Macedonian King,
Perseus. This explains why, before setting out
against Perseus, he interpreted the chance words*
Persa periit *as a favorable omen. The Romans be-
lieved seriously in the importance of omens.*

[2] *dat. with* **obtigisset**

[3] *obj. of* **gereret**

[4] **Perseus, -eī; Perse** *abl.*

[5] **ut . . . gereret,** *noun cl. subject of* **obtigisset**

[6] **obtingō, -ere, -tigī,** touch, fall to one's lot

[7] **fīli (a)** *with the diminutive ending* **-ola,** little daughter

[8] **Tertia,** *a name meaning* third. *The Romans often used
ordinal numerals as names, though commonly with-
out strict regard to the number of children they
had; e.g.* **Secundus, Quīntus, Sextus, Decimus.**

[9] **admodum,** *adv.,* very

[10] **ōsculor (1),** kiss

[11] **anim-ad-vertō,** turn the mind to, notice, observe

[12] **trīsticulus, -a, -um,** rather sad, *diminutive of* **tristis**

[13] What is it? What is the matter?

[14] **quid = cūr**

[15] **Persa,** *the name of her pet*

[16] **artius,** *adv.,* closely

[17] **complector, -ī, -plexus sum,** embrace

[18] **ōmen, -inis,** *n.,* omen, sign; *i.e., the omen of his vic-
tory over Perseus*

[19] **catellus, -ī,** puppy

12

[1] **fīnitimus, -a, -um,** neighboring; akin to: **est fīniti-
num,** it is akin to

[2] **dissimulātiō, -ōnis,** *f.,* irony

[3] **honestus, -a, -um,** honorable, fine

[4] **vitiōsus, -a, -um,** faulty, bad

[5] **cēnsor, -ōris,** *m.,* censor, *Roman magistrate among
whose duties was the assigning of citizens to their
proper rank according to their property and service
and the removal of names from the census rolls
when citizens proved unworthy of citizenship.*

[6] **tribus, -ūs,** *f.,* tribe, *a political division of the Roman
people*

[7] **centuriō, -ōnis,** *m.,* centurion

Paulī pugnā[8] nōn adfuerat,[9] cum ille sē custōdiae causā dīceret in castrīs[10] remānsisse quaereretque cūr ab eō notārētur[11]: "Nōn amō," inquit, "nimium
5   dīligentēs." (Cicero, *Dē Ōrātōre* 2.67.272)

13. QUAM MULTA NŌN DĒSĪDERŌ!

Sōcratēs, in pompā[1] cum magna vīs[2] aurī[3] argentīque[4] ferrētur, "Quam multa nōn dēsīderō!" inquit.

Xenocratēs,[5] cum lēgātī ab Alexandrō[6] quīnquāgintā[7] eī talenta[8] attulis-sent (quae erat pecūnia temporibus illīs, Athēnīs praesertim,[9] maxima), ab-
5   dūxit lēgātōs ad cēnam in Acadēmīam[10]; iīs apposuit[11] tantum quod satis esset, nūllō apparātū.[12] Cum postrīdiē[13] rogārent eum cui numerārī[14] iubēret, "Quid? Vōs hesternā,[15]" inquit, "cēnulā[16] nōn intellēxistis mē pecūniā nōn egēre?" Quōs cum trīstiōrēs vīdisset, trīgintā[17] minās[18] accēpit nē aspernārī[19] rēgis līberālitātem[20] vidērētur.
10   At vērō Diogenēs[21] līberius,[22] ut[23] Cynicus, Alexandrō rogantī ut dīceret sī quid opus[24] esset: "Nunc quidem paululum,[25]" inquit, "ā sōle.[26]" Offēce-rat[27] vidēlicet[28] aprīcantī.[29] (Cicero, *Tusculānae Disputātiōnēs* 5.32.91–92)

14. WHAT MAKES A GOOD APPETITE

Dārēus[1] in fugā[2] cum aquam turbidam[3] et cadāveribus[4] inquinātam[5] bi-bisset, negāvit umquam sē bibisse iūcundius. Numquam vidēlicet sitiēns[6]

[8] **pugna, -ae,** battle
[9] **ad-sum,** be present
[10] **castra, -ōrum,** camp
[11] **notō** (1), mark, *here with the* **nota cēnsōria** *placed op-posite a citizen's name to indicate his removal from the citizen list in disgrace.*

13

[1] **pompa, -ae,** parade
[2] **vīs** here = quantity (*cp.* **cōpia**)
[3] **aurum, -ī,** gold
[4] **argentum, -ī,** silver
[5] **Xenocratēs, -is,** *pupil of Plato and later head of the Academy*
[6] **Alexander, -drī**
[7] *indecl. adj.,* fifty
[8] **talentum, -ī,** a talent, a large sum of money
[9] **praesertim,** *adv.,* especially
[10] **Acadēmīa, -ae,** the Academy, *a gymnasium in a grove just outside of Athens. Here Plato established his school, which might be called the first European university.*
[11] **ap-pōnō,** place near, serve
[12] **apparātus, -ūs,** equipment, splendor
[13] **postrīdiē,** *adv.,* on the next day
[14] **numerō** (1), count, pay out; *sc.* **pecūniam** *as subject of* **numerārī**

[15] **hesternus, -a, -um,** of yesterday
[16] **cēnula, -ae,** diminutive of **cēna**
[17] *indecl. adj.,* thirty
[18] **mina, -ae,** a Greek coin
[19] **aspernor** (1), spurn, despise
[20] **līberālitās, -tātis,** *f.,* generosity
[21] *L.I. 9 n. 38*
[22] **līberius,** *adv.,* freely, boldly
[23] as a Cynic, being a Cynic
[24] **opus** (*indecl.*) est, is necessary: if he needed anything
[25] **paululum,** *adv.,* a little
[26] *i.e.,* you are blocking my sunlight
[27] **officiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum** + *dat.,* be in the way, ob-struct
[28] **vidē-licet,** *adv.* (you may see), clearly, evidently
[29] **aprīcor** (1), sun oneself

14

[1] *Darius III, defeated by Alexander the Great in 331 B.C. The spelling* **Dārīus** *reflects later Greek pro-nunciation.*
[2] **fuga, -ae,** flight
[3] **turbidus, -a, -um,** turbid, roiled
[4] **cadāver, -eris,** *n.,* corpse (*cp.* cadaverous)
[5] **inquinātus, -a, -um,** polluted
[6] **sitiō** (4), be thirsty

biberat. Nec ēsuriēns[7] Ptolemaeus[8] ēderat,[9] cui cum peragrantī[10] Aegyptum,[11] comitibus[12] nōn cōnsecūtīs[13] cibārius[14] in casā pānis datus esset, nihil
5   vīsum est illō pāne iūcundius. Sōcratem ferunt,[15] cum ūsque ad vesperum contentius[16] ambulāret quaesītumque esset[17] ex eō quārē id faceret, respondisse sē, quō[18] melius cēnāret, obsōnāre[19] ambulandō famem.[20]

Quid? Vīctum[21] Lacedaemoniōrum in philitiīs[22] nōnne vidēmus? Ubi[23] cum tyrannus cēnāvisset Dionȳsius, negāvit sē iūre[24] illō nigrō quod cēnae[25]
10   caput erat dēlectātum.[26] Tum is quī illa coxerat,[27] "Minimē mīrum[28]; condīmenta[29] enim dēfuērunt.[30]" "Quae tandem?" inquit ille. "Labor in vēnātū,[31] sūdor,[32] cursus ad Eurōtam,[33] famēs, sitis.[34] Hīs enim rēbus Lacedaemoniōrum epulae[35] condiuntur.[36]"

Cōnfer sūdantēs,[37] ructantēs,[38] refertōs[39] epulīs tamquam opīmōs
15   bovēs.[40] Tum intellegēs quī voluptātem maximē sequantur, eōs minimē cōnsequī[41]; iūcunditātemque[42] vīctūs[43] esse in dēsīderiō,[44] nōn in satietāte.[45] (Cicero, *Tusculānae Disputātiōnēs* 5.34.97–98 and 100, excerpts)

15. THEMISTOCLES; FAME AND EXPEDIENCY

Themistoclēs fertur[1] Serīphiō[2] cuidam in iūrgiō[3] respondisse, cum ille dīxisset nōn eum suā sed patriae glōriā splendōrem[4] assecūtum[5]: "Nec her-

---

[7] **ēsuriō** (4), be hungry
[8] *Which Egyptian king of this name is unknown.*
[9] **edō, -ere, ēdī, ēsum**, eat (cp. edible)
[10] **per-agrō** (1), wander through
[11] **Aegyptus, -ī, f.** Egypt
[12] **comes, -itis, m.,** companion
[13] **cōn-sequor**
[14] **cibārius ... pānis**, ordinary (coarse) bread; **pānis, -is, m.**
[15] **ferō** *here* = report, say
[16] **contentē**, strenuously, *adv. from* **contendō**, struggle
[17] it had been asked of him, he had been asked
[18] **quō**, *regularly used instead of* **ut** *to introduce a purp. containing a compar.*
[19] **obsōnō** (1), buy provisions, *here* = provide (an appetite)
[20] **famēs, -is, f.,** hunger
[21] **vīctus, -ūs**, living, mode of living, food
[22] **philitia, -ōrum,** public meals (*for Spartan citizens of military age*)
[23] **ubi** = *among the Lacedaemonians*
[24] **iūs, iūris, n.,** soup
[25] *dat. of purp.* (*S. S.*)
[26] **dēlectātum (esse)**
[27] **coquō, -ere, coxī, coctum,** cook (cp. concoct)
[28] **mīrus, -a, -um,** wonderful, surprising
[29] **condīmentum, -ī,** seasoning, condiment

[30] **dē-sum,** be lacking
[31] **vēnātus, -ūs,** hunting
[32] **sūdor, -ōris, m.,** sweat
[33] at the Eurotas (**Eurōtās, -ae, m.,** river on which Sparta was located)
[34] **sitis, -is, f.,** thirst
[35] **epulae, -ārum,** banquet
[36] **condiō** (4), season, spice
[37] **sūdō** (1), sweat
[38] **ructō** (1), belch
[39] **refertus, -a, -um,** stuffed, crammed, + *abl.*
[40] **opīmus, -a, -um,** fertile, fat; **bōs, bovis, m.,** ox
[41] **cōn-sequor,** follow up, gain
[42] **iōcunditās, -tātis, f.,** pleasure, charm
[43] *n. 21 above; here* = food
[44] **dēsīderium, -ī,** desire
[45] **satietās, -tātis, f.,** abundance, satisfy

15

(*For more about Themistocles and Aristides see selections 19 and 20 below.*)
[1] is said, is reported
[2] **Serīphius, -iī,** inhabitant of Seriphos, a small island in the Aegean Sea.
[3] **iūrgium, -iī,** quarrel
[4] **splendor, -ōris, m.,** distinction, honor
[5] **as-sequor = ad-sequor,** gain, attain

cule,[6]" inquit, "sī ego Serīphius essem, nec tū, sī Athēniēnsis[7] essēs, clārus umquam fuissēs." (**Cicero,** *Dē Senectūte,* 3.8)

5   Themistoclēs, post victōriam eius bellī quod cum Persīs[8] fuit, dīxit in cōntiōne[9] sē habēre cōnsilium reī pūblicae salūtāre,[10] sed id scīrī nōn opus esse.[11] Postulāvit[12] ut aliquem populus daret quīcum[13] commūnicāret.[14] Datus est Aristīdēs. Huic[15] ille (dixit) classem[16] Lacedaemoniōrum, quae subducta esset[17] ad Gythēum,[18] clam[19] incendī[20] posse, quō factō frangī[21] Lacedaemoniōrum opēs necesse esset.[22] Quod Aristīdēs cum audīsset, in cōntiō-
10 nem magnā exspectātiōne[23] vēnit dīxitque perūtile[24] esse cōnsilium quod Themistoclēs adferret, sed minimē honestum. Itaque Athēniēnsēs, quod honestum nōn esset, id nē ūtile quidem putāvērunt, tōtamque eam rem, quam nē audierant quidem, auctōre Aristīde[25] repudiāvērunt.[26] (**Cicero,** *Dē Officiīs* 3.11.48–49)

16. GET THE TUSCULAN COUNTRY HOUSE READY[1]

Tullius[2] S.D.[3] Terentiae[4] Suae

In Tusculānum[5] nōs ventūrōs[6] putāmus aut Nōnīs[7] aut postrīdiē.[8] Ibi ut[9] sint omnia parāta. Plūrēs[10] enim fortasse[11] nōbīscum erunt et, ut arbitror, diūtius ibi commorābimur.[12] Lābrum[13] sī in balneō[14] nōn est, ut[15] sit; item[16]
5 cētera quae sunt ad vīctum et ad valētūdinem[17] necessāria.[18] Valē. Kal. Oct.[19] dē Venusīnō.[20] (**Cicero,** *Epistulae ad Familiārēs* 14.20)

[6] **hercule,** *a mild oath,* by Hercules

[7] **Athēniēnsis, -e,** Athenian

[8] **Persae, -ārum,** *m.,* the Persians

[9] **cōntiō, -ōnis,** *f.,* assembly

[10] **salūtāris, -e,** salutary, advantageous; *modifies* **cōnsilium**

[11] **opus est,** it is necessary

[12] **postulō** (1), demand, request

[13] **quīcum, quī** = *old abl. form* + **cum,** with whom

[14] **commūnicō** (1), communicate, share

[15] **huic** = *the last mentioned, Aristides*

[16] **classis, -is,** *f.,* fleet

[17] **sub-dūcō,** beach; *subj. because subordinate cl. in ind. state. (see S.S.). Because of their shallow draft and small size, ancient ships were more often beached than anchored.*

[18] **Gythēum, -ī,** *the port of Sparta*

[19] **clam,** *adv.,* secretly

[20] **incendō, -ere, -cendī, -cēnsum,** set on fire, burn

[21] **frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctum,** break, crush

[22] **necesse** (*indecl. adj.*) **est,** it is necessary

[23] **exspectātiō, -ōnis,** *f.,* expectation, *abl. of attendant circumstance*

[24] **per-ūtilis, -e,** very useful, advantageous

[25] **auctōre Aristīde,** *abl. abs.*

[26] **repudiō** (1), reject

16

[1] *A homely little letter which serves as an antidote to Cicero's usually lofty concerns.*

[2] **(Mārcus) Tullius (Cicerō)**

[3] **salūtem dīcit**

[4] **Terentia, -ae,** wife of Cicero

[5] **Tusculānum, -ī,** Tusculan estate (**praedium**) *southeast of Rome in Latium*

[6] **ventūrōs (esse)**

[7] **Nōnae, -ārum,** the Nones *were the seventh day in March, May, July, October; the fifth day in other months.*

[8] **postrīdiē,** *adv.,* the day after

[9] **(curā) ut,** take care that

[10] **plūrēs,** several people

[11] **fortasse,** *adv.,* perhaps

[12] **com-moror** (1), remain

[13] **lābrum, -ī,** a wash basin or a bath

[14] **balneum, -ī,** bathroom

[15] **(curā) ut**

[16] **item,** *adv.,* likewise

[17] **valētūdō, -inis,** *f.,* health

[18] **necessārius, -a, -um** = *Eng.*

[19] **Kalendīs Octōbribus,** on the Kalends of October = October 1st

[20] *Sent from his estate at Venusia, in Apulia. The year is said to be 47* B.C.

17. LIVY ON THE DEATH OF CICERO[1]

M. Cicerō sub adventum[2] triumvirōrum[3] cesserat urbe . . . Prīmō in Tus-
culānum[4] fūgit; inde trānsversīs[5] itineribus in Formiānum,[6] ut ab Caiētā[7]
nāvem cōnscēnsūrus,[8] proficīscitur. Unde aliquotiēns[9] in altum[10] pro-
vectum,[11] cum modo ventī adversī rettulissent, modo ipse iactātiōnem[12] nā-
5 vis . . . patī nōn posset, taedium[13] tandem eum et fugae[14] et vītae cēpit,
regressusque[15] ad superiōrem vīllam . . . "Moriar," inquit, "in patriā saepe
servātā." Satis cōnstat[16] servōs fortiter fidēliterque parātōs fuisse ad dīmican-
dum,[17] ipsum dēpōnī lectīcam[18] et quiētōs[19] patī quod sors[20] inīqua[21] cōgeret
iussisse. Prōminentī[22] ex lectīcā praebentīque immōtam cervīcem[23] caput
10 praecīsum est.[24]

Manūs quoque, scrīpsisse in Antōnium aliquid exprobrantēs,[25] praecīdē-
runt. Ita relātum caput ad Antōnium, iussūque eius inter duās manūs in
Rōstrīs positum,[26] ubi ille cōnsul, ubi saepe cōnsulāris,[27] ubi eō ipsō annō
adversus[28] Antōnium . . . (quanta nūlla umquam hūmāna vōx[29]!) cum ad-
15 mīrātiōne[30] ēloquentiae[31] audītus fuerat. Vix attollentēs[32] prae lacrimīs
oculōs, hominēs intuērī[33] trucīdāta[34] membra[35] eius poterant. Vīxit trēs et
sexāgintā[36] annōs . . . Vir magnus, ācer, memorābilis[37] fuit, et in cuius laudēs
persequendās[38] Cicerōne laudātōre opus[39] fuerit.[40] (Livy 120.50)

17
[1] *In 43 B.C.*
[2] adventus, -ūs, arrival
[3] triumvirī, -ōrum, commission of three men, *the sec-
ond triumvirate composed of Antony, Octavian,
and Lepidus*
[4] his Tusculan villa
[5] trānsversus, -a, -um, transverse, crosswise
[6] Formiānum, -ī, estate near Formiae, *which was
nearly 100 miles south of Rome on the Appian Way
near the sea*
[7] Caiēta, -ae, *a sea-coast town not far from Formiae*
[8] as he was going to board ship (cōnscendō, -ere,
-scendī, -scēnsum, ascend)
[9] aliquotiēns, *adv.,* several times
[10] altum, -ī, the deep, the sea
[11] prō-vehō, -ere, -vexī, -vectum, carry forward;
provectum (having sailed out) *goes with* eum *below*
[12] iactātiō, -ōnis, *f.,* tossing
[13] taedium, -iī, weariness, disgust
[14] fuga, -ae, flight; fugae *depends on* taedium
[15] regredior, -ī, -gressus sum, go back
[16] cōnstat, it is agreed
[17] dīmicō (1), fight (to the finish)
[18] lectīca, -ae, litter
[19] (eōs) quiētōs, them quiet, *subject of* patī; *but we say:*
them quietly. (quiētus, -a, -um)
[20] sors, sortis, *f.,* lot
[21] inīquus, -a, -um, unfavorable, unjust (in-aequus)

[22] prōmineō, -ēre, -uī, jut out, step forth: (eī) prōmi-
nentī, for him stepping forth = as he stepped
forth, *dat. of ref. or interest*
[23] cervīx, -vīcis, *f.,* neck
[24] praecīdō, -ere, -cīdī, cīsum (prae-caedō, cut), cut
off—*by the soldiers whom Antony had sent to exe-
cute Cicero in reprisal for Cicero's "Philippics" de-
nouncing Antony. Such were the horrors of the pro-
scriptions.*
[25] exprobrō (1), reproach, charge: (militēs), expro-
brantēs (manūs) scrīpsisse aliquid, manūs praecī-
dērunt
[26] positum, *sc.* est
[27] cōnsulāris, -is, *m.,* ex-consul
[28] adversus, *prep.* + *acc.,* against
[29] quanta . . . vōx (fuerat), how great no voice had
been = greater than any voice had been
[30] admīrātiō, -ōnis, *f.* = Eng.
[31] ēloquentia, -ae, *f.;* ēloquentiae, *obj. gen.* (S.S.)
[32] attollō, -ere, raise, lift
[33] intueor, -ērī, -tuitus sum, look at
[34] trucīdō (1), cut to pieces, butcher
[35] membrum, -ī, member (of the body), limb
[36] *indecl. adj.,* sixty
[37] memorābilis, -e, remarkable, memorable
[38] per-sequor, follow up, set forth
[39] opus est + *abl.* = there is need of (Cicero)
[40] fuerit, *perf. subj., potential subj.,* there would be
need of

18. MILTIADES AND THE BATTLE OF MARATHON[1]

Eīsdem temporibus Persārum rēx Dārēus, ex Asiā in Eurōpam[2] exercitū trāiectō,[3] Scythīs[4] bellum īnferre[5] dēcrēvit. Pontem fēcit in Histrō[6] flūmine, quā[7] cōpiās trādūceret.[8] Eius pontis, dum ipse abesset,[9] custōdēs[10] relīquit prīncipēs quōs sēcum ex Iōniā et Aeolide[11] dūxerat; quibus singulārum[12] ur-
5   bium perpetua dederat imperia. Sīc enim facillimē putāvit sē[13] Graecā lin-guā loquentēs[14] quī Asiam incolerent[15] sub suā retentūrum[16] potestāte, sī amīcīs suīs oppida[17] tuenda[18] trādidisset.[19] In hōc[20] fuit tum numerō Milti-adēs.[21] Hic, cum crēbrī[22] adferrent nūntiī[23] male rem gerere Dārēum pre-mīque ā Scythīs, hortātus est pontis custōdēs nē ā Fortūnā[24] datam occāsiō-
10   nem līberandae Graeciae dīmitterent.[25]

Nam sī cum eīs cōpiīs, quās sēcum trānsportārat,[26] interīsset Dārēus, nōn sōlum Eurōpam fore[27] tūtam,[28] sed etiam eōs quī Asiam incolerent Graecī genere[29] līberōs ā Persārum futūrōs dominātiōne[30] et perīculō. Id fa-cile efficī[31] posse[32]; ponte enim rescissō[33] rēgem vel[34] hostium ferrō vel ino-
15   piā[35] paucīs diēbus interitūrum. Ad hoc cōnsilium cum plērīque[36] ac-

18

[1] *490 B.C., the first major battle of the Persian wars and one of the most illustrious victories in the appar-ently unending conflict between democracies and autocracies (despotisms): the relatively few Athen-ians, practically alone, against the hordes of the Persian autocracy.*

[2] **Eurōpa, -ae,** Europe

[3] **trāiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus,** transfer

[4] **Scythae, -ārum,** *m.,* the Scythians, *a nomadic people of southeastern Europe;* **Scythīs,** *dat. with com-pound vbs.*

[5] **bellum īn-ferō (-ferre, -tulī, -lātus),** make war upon, + *dat.*

[6] **Hister, -trī,** the Danube

[7] **quā,** *rel. adv. instead of rel. pron., where, by which, referring to* **pontem**

[8] **trā** (= **trāns)-dūcō.** *Why the subj. in the rel. cl.?*

[9] **ab-sum,** be away, be absent; **abesset,** *subj. of implied ind. state., the thought in his mind being:*"while I shall be away"

[10] as guards

[11] Ionia and Aeolis, *Greek sections of Asia Minor*

[12] **singulī, -ae, -a** (*pl.*), separate, one each

[13] **sē,** *acc., subject of* **retentūrum (esse)**

[14] the Greek-speaking peoples, *obj. of* **retentūrum**

[15] **incolō, -ere, -uī,** inhabit

[16] **retentūrum (esse);** re-tineō

[17] **oppidum, -ī,** town; *occasionally* city

[18] **tuenda,** (the towns) to be protected = the protection of the towns (**tueor, -ērī, tūtus sum,** look at, protect)

[19] *fut. more vivid condition in ind. state.:* **eōs retinēbō sī amīcīs oppida trādiderō.**

[20] **hōc** *modifies* **numerō.** *Note carefully that a character-istic of Nepos' style is the fondness for separating modifiers from the words which they modify. Be sure to match up such separated words accurately according to the rules of agreement.*

[21] **Miltiadēs, -is,** *m.,* Miltiades, *Athenian general, hero of Marathon, who many years before the Battle of Marathon had been sent by the Athenians to rule over the Thracian Chersonesus, a peninsula west of the Hellespont.*

[22] **crēber, -bra, -brum,** numerous

[23] **nūntius, -iī,** messenger

[24] **Fortūna** *is here regarded as a person (deity). Why is* **ā** *used?*

[25] **dī-mittō,** let go, lose

[26] **trānsportō** (1), transport, take across; **trāns-portārat** = **trānsportāverat**

[27] *ind. state. depending on the idea of saying in* **hortātus est** *of the preceding sent.; direct form:* **sī Dārēus interierit, Eurōpa erit tūta. inter-eō,** perish

[28] **tūtus, -a, -um**

[29] *abl. of specification (S.S.),* Greek in race *or* by race

[30] **dominātiō, -ōnis,** *f.* = *Eng.*

[31] **ef-ficiō,** accomplish

[32] *still ind. state.*

[33] **rescindō, -ere, rescidī, rescissum,** cut down

[34] **vel . . . vel,** either . . . or

[35] **inopia, -ae,** need, privation

[36] **plērīque, -ōrumque,** most people, very many (**plē-rusque, -aque, -umque,** the greater part, very many)

cēderent, Histiaeus[37] Mīlēsius . . . [dīxit] adeō[38] sē abhorrēre[39] ā cēterōrum cōnsiliō ut nihil putet ipsīs ūtilius quam cōnfirmārī[40] rēgnum[41] Persārum. Huius cum sententiam plūrimī essent secūtī, Miltiadēs . . . Chersonēsum relīquit ac rūrsus[42] Athēnās dēmigrāvit.[43] Cuius[44] ratiō etsī nōn valuit, tamen

20 magnopere est laudanda cum amīcior omnium libertātī quam suae fuerit dominātiōnī.

Dārēus autem, cum ex Eurōpā in Asiam redīsset, hortantibus amīcīs ut Graeciam redigeret[45] in suam potestātem, classem quīngentārum[46] nāvium comparāvit[47] eīque[48] Dātim praefēcit[49] et Artaphernem,[50] eīsque ducenta[51]

25 (mīlia) peditum,[52] decem equitum[53] mīlia dedit—causam interserēns[54] sē hostem esse Athēniēnsibus quod eōrum auxiliō Iōnēs[55] Sardīs[56] expugnāssent[57] suaque[58] praesidia interfēcissent. Illī praefectī[59] rēgiī,[60] classe ad Euboeam[61] appulsā[62] celeriter Eretriam[63] cēpērunt, omnēsque eius gentis cīvēs abreptōs[64] in Asiam ad rēgem mīsērunt. Inde[65] ad Atticam[66] accessērunt ac

30 suās cōpiās in campum[67] Marathōna[68] dēdūxērunt. Is abest ab oppidō circiter[69] mīlia passuum[70] decem.

Hōc tumultū[71] Athēniēnsēs tam propinquō[72] tamque magnō permōtī[73] auxilium nūsquam[74] nisi ā Lacedaemoniīs petīvērunt Phīdippumque,[75] cursōrem eius generis quī hēmerodromoe[76] vocantur, Lacedaemonem[77] mīsē-

---

[37] **Histiaeus, -ī,** *tyrant of Miletus in Asia Minor*

[38] **adeō,** *adv.,* so, to such a degree

[39] **ab-horreō, -ēre, -uī,** shrink from, be averse to

[40] **cōnfirmō** (1), strengthen

[41] *subject of* **cōnfirmārī**

[42] **rūrsus,** *adv.,* again

[43] **dēmigrō** (1), depart (*cp.* migrate)

[44] *conjunctive use of rel.*

[45] **redigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum,** reduce

[46] **quīngentī, -ae, -a,** 500

[47] **comparāvit** *here* = *strong form of* **parāvit**

[48] **eī (= classī),** *dat. with compounds*

[49] **prae-ficiō,** + *dat.,* put in charge *or* command of

[50] **Dātis, -tidis,** *acc.* **Dātim,** Datis, *a general;* **Artaphernēs, -is,** Artaphernes, *nephew of Darius*

[51] **ducentī, -ae, -a,** 200

[52] **pedes, -itis,** *m.,* foot-soldier

[53] **eques, -itis,** *m.,* horseman

[54] **interserō, -ere,** allege

[55] **Iōnēs, -um,** *m.,* the Ionians, *a Greek people inhabiting the central western coast of Asia Minor;* **-es,** *Greek ending*

[56] **Sardēs, -ium,** *acc.* **Sardīs,** Sardis, *capital of the Persian province of Lydia in western Asia Minor*

[57] **expugnō** (1), take by storm

[58] **sua,** *refers to Sardis*

[59] **praefectus, -ī,** commander, deputy

[60] **rēgius, -a, -um,** royal

[61] **Euboea, -ae,** Euboea, *a large island off the eastern shore of central Greece*

[62] **appellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum,** drive, bring to land

[63] **Eretria, -ae,** Eretria, *a city of the western central coast of Euboea*

[64] **ab-ripiō = ēripiō; abreptōs . . . mīsērunt,** they carried away and sent to

[65] **inde,** *adv.,* from that place

[66] **Attica, -ae,** Attica, *district in central Greece of which the capital was Athens (somewhat unusually called an* **oppidum** *in the next sentence)*

[67] **campus, -ī,** field, plain

[68] **Marathōn, -ōnis,** *acc.* **-ōna,** *f.,* Marathon

[69] **circiter,** *adv.,* about

[70] **passus, -ūs,** pace (ca. 5'); **mīlia passuum,** thousands of paces = miles

[71] **tumultus, -ūs,** disturbance, uprising

[72] **propinquus, -a, -um,** near, neighboring

[73] **per-moveō,** move thoroughly, trouble

[74] **nūsquam,** *adv.,* nowhere

[75] **Phīdippus, -ī,** Phidippus, *an Athenian courier* (**cursor, -ōris,** *m.,* runner)

[76] **hēmerodromus, -ī (-dromoe,** *Gk. nom. pl.),* day runner (*Gk. word), professional runner. Herodotus says that Phidippus (or Phidippides) covered the 140 miles between Athens and Sparta in two days.* **Quī** *agrees with* **hēmerodromoe** *rather than* **generis** *since a rel. pron. agrees with a pred. noun rather than with the antecedent.*

[77] **Lacedaemōn, -onis,** *f.,* Lacedaemonia, Sparta

35　runt ut nūntiāret quam celerrimō opus esse[78] auxiliō. Domī autem creant[79] decem praetōrēs,[80] quī exercituī praeessent,[81] in eīs Miltiadem; inter quōs magna fuit contentiō[82] utrum moenibus sē dēfenderent an obviam[83] īrent hostibus aciēque[84] dēcernerent. Ūnus[85] Miltiadēs maximē nītēbātur[86] ut prīmō tempore castra fierent[87] . . .

40　　　Hōc tempore nūlla cīvitās Athēniēnsibus auxiliō[88] fuit praeter Plataeēnsēs[89]; ea mīlle mīsit mīlitum.[90] Itaque hōrum adventū[91] decem mīlia armātōrum[92] complēta sunt,[93] quae manus mīrābilī[94] flagrābat[95] pugnandī cupiditāte; quō[96] factum est[97] ut plūs quam collēgae[98] Miltiadēs valēret.[99]

　　　Eius ergō auctōritāte impulsī[100] Athēniēnsēs cōpiās ex urbe ēdūxērunt

45　locōque[101] idōneō castra fēcērunt. Dein[102] posterō[103] diē sub montis rādīcibus[104] aciē regiōne[105] īnstrūctā[106] nōn apertissimā[107]—namque[108] arborēs multīs locīs erant rārae[109]—proelium commīsērunt[110] hōc cōnsiliō ut et montium altitūdine[111] tegerentur[112] et arborum tractū[113] equitātus[114] hostium impedīrētur, nē multitūdine[115] clauderentur.[116] Dātis, etsī nōn aequum locum[117]

50　vidēbat suīs, tamen frētus[118] numerō cōpiārum suārum cōnflīgere[119] cupiēbat, eōque[120] magis quod, priusquam[121] Lacedaemoniī subsidiō[122] venīrent, dīmicāre ūtile arbitrābātur.

---

[78] **opus est** + *abl. (of means)*, there is need of, *an impers. construction in which* **opus** *remains indecl.;* **opus esse**, *inf. in ind. state. with* **auxiliō** *in abl.*

[79] **creant**, *historical pres.*

[80] **praetor, -ōris,** *m., called* **stratēgoi,** generals, *by the Athenians*

[81] **prae-sum** + *dat.,* be in charge of; *why subj.?*

[82] **contentiō, -ōnis,** *f.,* controversy

[83] **obviam** *(adv.)* **īre** + *dat.,* go to meet

[84] **aciēs, -ēī,** line of battle

[85] alone, *i.e., of the ten generals*

[86] **nītor, -ī, nīxus sum,** strive labor

[87] that a camp should be made = to take the field

[88] *dat. of purp. (S.S.)*

[89] **Plataeēnsēs, -ium,** *m. pl.,* the men of Plataea, *a city in Boeotia just over the border from Attica*

[90] **mīlle** here = *a noun with gen. of whole* **mīlitum.** *This is regular with* **mīlia** *but uncommon with* **mīlle.**

[91] **adventus, -ūs,** approach

[92] **armātī, -ōrum,** armed men

[93] **compleō, -ēre, -plēvī, -plētum,** fill out, complete

[94] **mīrābilis, -e,** wonderful, extraordinary; *modifies* **cupiditāte**

[95] **flagrō (1),** burn, be excited

[96] because of which = and because of this

[97] it happened that

[98] **collēga, -ae,** *m.,* colleague

[99] **plūs . . . valēret,** he had power more than = he had

more power or influence than, he prevailed over. **valēret,** *why subj.?*

[100] **impellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum,** impel

[101] **locō,** *place where, no prep. necessary with* **locō**

[102] **dein** = **deinde**

[103] **posterus, -a, -um,** next following

[104] **rādīx, -īcis,** *f.,* root, base

[105] **regiō, -ōnis,** *f.,* region

[106] **īnstruō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctum,** draw up (battle line)

[107] *interlocked word order:* **aciē īnstrūctā** *(in)* **regiōne nōn apertissimā; apertus, -a, -um,** open

[108] **namque,** *conj., more emphatic form of* **nam**

[109] **rārus, -a, -um,** scattered: there were scattered trees

[110] **proelium committere,** join battle

[111] **altitūdō, -inis,** *f.,* height

[112] **tegō, -ere, tēxī, tēctum,** cover, protect

[113] **tractus, -ūs,** dragging

[114] **equitātus, -ūs,** cavalry

[115] **multitūdō, -inis,** *f.,* large number

[116] **claudō,** *here* enclose, surround

[117] **locum (esse) nōn aequum suīs**

[118] **frētus, -a, -um,** + *abl.,* relying on

[119] **cōnflīgō, -ere, -flīxī, -flīctum,** fight *(cp.* conflict)

[120] **eō,** *adv.,* on that account

[121] **priusquam** *and* **antequam,** before, + *indic. denote an actual fact;* + *subj. denote anticipation as here:* before they could come

[122] *dat.*

Itaque in aciem peditum centum (mīlia), equitum decem mīlia prōdūxit proeliumque commīsit. In quō[123] tantō[124] plūs[125] virtūte valuērunt Athēni-
55 ēnsēs ut decemplicem[126] numerum hostium prōfligārint,[127] adeōque eōs per-terruērunt ut Persae nōn castra sed nāvēs petierint. Quā pugnā nihil adhūc[128] exsistit[129] nōbilius[130]; nūlla enim umquam tam exigua[131] manus tantās opēs prōstrāvit.[132] (**Nepos,** *Miltiadēs* 3–5, excerpts)

19. THEMISTOCLES AND THE BATTLE OF SALAMIS[1]

Themistoclēs[2] ad (bellum Corcyraeum[3]) gerendum praetor ā populō fac-
tus, nōn sōlum praesentī[4] bellō sed etiam reliquō[5] tempore ferōciōrem red-
didit cīvitātem. Nam cum pecūnia pūblica, quae ex metallīs[6] redībat, largīti-
ōne[7] magistrātuum[8] quotannīs[9] interīret,[10] ille persuāsit populō ut eā
5 pecūniā classis centum nāvium aedificārētur.[11] Quā[12] celeriter effectā, prīmum Corcyraeōs frēgit,[13] deinde maritimōs praedōnēs[14] cōnsectandō[15] mare tūtum reddidit. In quō[16] . . . perītissimōs[17] bellī nāvālis[18] fēcit Athēni-
ēnsēs. Id quantae salūtī[19] fuerit ūniversae[20] Graeciae, bellō cognitum est Per-
sicō.[21] Nam cum Xerxēs[22] et marī et terrā[23] bellum ūniversae īnferret Eurō-
10 pae, cum tantīs cōpiīs eam invāsit[24] quantās neque ante nec posteā habuit quisquam. Huius enim classis mīlle et ducentārum nāvium longārum[25] fuit,

---

[123] **in quō (proeliō)**

[124] *abl. of degree of difference (S.S.)*

[125] they were strong by so much more (strength) in re-spect to courage = they were so much more pow-erful in the matter of courage

[126] **decemplex,** *gen.* **-plicis,** tenfold

[127] **prōflīgō** (1), overthrow; **prōflīgārint** = **-gāverint.** *Why subj.?*

[128] **ad-hūc,** *adv.,* thus far, hitherto

[129] **exsistō, -ere, -stitī,** arise, exist, be

[130] **nōbilis, -e,** famous

[131] **exiguus, -a, -um,** small, scanty. "Never did so many owe so much to so few."

[132] **prōsternō, -ere, -strāvī, -strātum,** overthrow, throw down

19

[1] *480 B.C. The Battle of Salamis was the naval counter-part of Marathon, except that this time Athens had the help of Sparta.*

[2] **Themistoclēs, -is,** *or* **-ī,** Themistocles, *a talented Athenian politician.*

[3] **Corcyraeus, -a, -um,** Corcyraen; *Corcyra, a large is-land off the northwest coast of Greece. Actually Nepos is in error about Themistocles' command in the Corcyraean affair but he is correct about the tremendous importance of Themistocles' big-navy policy.*

[4] **praesēns,** *gen.* **-entis,** present

[5] **reliquus, -a, -um,** remaining, rest of

[6] **metallum, -ī,** a mine, *silver mines at Laurium in Attica south of Athens*

[7] **largītiō, -ōnis,** *f.,* generosity, liberality

[8] **magistrātus, -ūs,** civil office; civil officer, magistrate

[9] **quotannīs,** *adv.,* annually

[10] **inter-eō,** be lost, perish (*cp.* **pereō**): **interīret,** *subj. in-troduced by* **cum;** the subject is **pecūnia.**

[11] **aedificō** (1), build (*cp.* edifice)

[12] **quā (classe)**

[13] **frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctum,** break, overcome

[14] **maritimus (-a -um** = *Eng.; cp.* **mare) praedō (-ōnis,** *m.,* robber) = pirate; *obj. of* **cōnsectandō**

[15] **cōnsector** (1), pursue, hound (*cp.* **cōnsequor**)

[16] **in** (doing) which

[17] **perītus, -a, -um,** + *gen.,* skilled in; *obj. complement*

[18] **nāvālis, -e;** *cp.* **nāvis**

[19] **quantae salūtī,** *dat. of purp. with a dat. of ref.,* Graeciae (*S.S.*)

[20] **ūniversus, -a, -um,** entire, whole, as a whole

[21] **Persicus, -a, -um,** Persian; *the Second Persian War*

[22] **Xerxēs, -is** *or* **-ī,** *m.,* Xerxes, *son of Darius and king of the Persians,* 485–465 B.C.

[23] **marī et terrā (or terrā marīque)** *abl. of place where, without a prep., regular in this formula*

[24] **invādō, -ere, -vāsī, -vāsum,** move against, invade

[25] **nāvium longārum,** of 1,200 men-of-war; his fleet was of 1,200 ships = his fleet consisted of . . .

quam duo mīlia onerāriārum[26] sequēbantur. Terrestris[27] autem exercitus sep-
tingenta[28] (mīlia) peditum, equitum quadringenta[29] mīlia fuērunt.[30]

     Cuius dē adventū[31] cum fāma in Graeciam esset perlāta[32] et maximē
15 Athēniēnsēs petī dīcerentur propter pugnam Marathōniam, mīsērunt
Delphōs[33] cōnsultum[34] quidnam[35] facerent[36] dē rēbus suīs. Dēlīberantibus[37]
Pȳthia[38] respondit ut moenibus līgneīs[39] sē mūnīrent.[40] Id respōnsum[41] quō[42]
valēret cum intellegeret nēmō, Themistoclēs persuāsit cōnsilium esse[43] Apol-
linis ut in nāvēs sē suaque[44] cōnferrent: eum[45] enim ā deō significārī[46] mūrum
20 ligneum. Tālī cōnsiliō probātō, addunt[47] ad superiōrēs (nāvēs) totidem[48]
nāvēs trirēmēs,[49] suaque omnia quae moverī poterant partim[50] Salamīna,[51]
partim Troezēna[52] dēportant.[53] Arcem[54] sacerdōtibus paucīsque maiōribus
nātū[55] ad sacra[56] prōcūranda[57] trādunt; reliquum[5] oppidum relinquunt.

     Huius[58] cōnsilium plērīsque cīvitātibus[59] displicēbat[60] et in terrā dīmi-
25 cārī[61] magis placēbat. Itaque missī sunt dēlēctī[62] cum Leōnidā,[63] Lacedae-
moniōrum rēge, quī Thermopylās[64] occupārent[65] longiusque barbarōs[66] prō-

---

[26] **onerāria, -ae (nāvis)**, transport

[27] **terrestris exercitus**, land army

[28] **septingentī, -ae, -a**, seven hundred

[29] **quadringentī, -ae, -a**, four hundred

[30] *Though the subject,* **exercitus,** *is sg.,* **fuērunt** *is pl. according to the idea of plurality which precedes it.*

[31] **adventus, -ūs**, approach, arrival

[32] **per-ferō**

[33] *acc. of place to which. At Delphi was the famous oracle of Apollo.*

[34] *acc. supine of* **cōnsulō** *to express purp.* = to consult

[35] **quisnam, quidnam**, who *or* what in the world

[36] *both ind. quest. and deliberative subj.*

[37] **dēlīberō (1)**, deliberate; (eīs) **dēlīberantibus,** *dat.*

[38] **Pȳthia, -ae**, the Pythian priestess, *who gave the response of Apollo*

[39] **ligneus, -a, -um**, wooden

[40] **mūniō (4)**, fortify, defend

[41] **respōnsum, -ī,** *the noun of* **respondeō,** *subject of* **valēret**

[42] **quō** *(adv.)* **valēret,** *lit.* in what direction this was strong or valid = in what way this applied *or* what this meant

[43] **esse.** *The inf. shows that this is ind. state. with* **persuādeō** *and not the more common jussive noun cl. introduced by* **ut:** he persuaded (them) that it was the advice of Apollo that they should betake . . .

[44] **sua,** their things = their possessions

[45] **cum mūrum ligneum,** that wooden wall (= the ships)

[46] **significō (1)**, signify, mean; **significārī,** *ind. state, depending on a vb. of saying understood*

[47] **ad-dō, -dere, -didī, -ditum**, add

[48] **totidem,** *indecl. adj.,* just as many

[49] **trirēmis, -e**, having three banks of oars

[50] **partim,** *adv.,* partly

[51] **Salamīs, -īnis,** *acc.* **Salamīna,** *f.,* Salamis, *island on west coast of Attica; acc. of place to which (islands as well as cities and towns)*

[52] **Troezēn, -ēnis,** *acc.* **Troezēna,** *f.,* Troezen, *southeastern part of Argolis, across the Saronic Gulf from Athens.*

[53] **dēportō (1)**, carry off

[54] *the acropolis of the city of Athens.*

[55] **maiōrēs nātū,** those greater in respect to birth = old men, elders

[56] **sacer, -cra, -crum**, sacred; **sacra,** *n. pl.* sacred vessels, *or* rites

[57] **prōcūrō (1)**, take care of

[58] *i.e.,* Themistocles'

[59] **plērīsque cīvitātibus,** *i.e.,* the allies of the Athenians; *dat. with* **displicēbat**

[60] **dis-placeō**

[61] **dīmicārī,** *impers. pass., lit.* that it be fought, *but translate* that the war be fought. *The inf.* **dīmicārī** is subject of **placēbat.**

[62] **dēlēctus, -a, -um**, chosen, picked; chosen men

[63] **Leōnidās, -ae,** *m.,* Leonidas

[64] **Thermopylae, -ārum**, Thermopylae, *a mountain pass near the southern border of Thessaly*

[65] **occupō (1)**, seize

[66] **barbarus, -a, -um**, foreign, uncivilized, barbarian *(commonly applied by a kind of ethnocentrism to those not of the Greek and Roman civilization)*

gredī nōn paterentur. Iī vim hostium nōn sustinuērunt,[67] eōque locō omnēs interiērunt.[10]

At classis commūnis Graeciae trecentārum[68] nāvium, in quā ducentae[68] erant Athēniēnsium,[69] prīmum apud Artemīsium[70] inter Euboeam continentemque[71] terram cum classiāriīs[72] rēgiīs[73] cōnflīxit.[74] Angustiās[75] enim Themistoclēs quaerēbat, nē multitūdine[76] circumīrētur.[77] Hinc etsī parī proeliō[78] discesserant, tamen eōdem locō nōn sunt ausī manēre, quod erat perīculum nē,[79] sī pars nāvium adversāriōrum[80] Euboeam superāsset,[81] ancipitī[82] premerentur perīculō. Quō[83] factum est ut[84] ab Artemīsiō discēderent et exadversum[85] Athēnās apud Salamīna classem suam cōnstituerent.[86]

At Xerxēs, Thermopylīs expugnātīs, prōtinus accessit astū,[87] idque, nūllīs dēfendentibus, interfectīs sacerdōtibus quōs in arce invēnerat, incendiō[88] dēlēvit. Cuius flammā perterritī[89] classiāriī cum manēre nōn audērent et plūrimī hortārentur ut domōs[90] suās discēderent moenibusque sē dēfenderent, Themistoclēs ūnus restitit[91] et ūniversōs parēs esse posse[92] aiēbat,[93] dispersōs[94] testābātur[95] peritūrōs; idque Eurybiadī,[96] rēgī Lacedaemoniōrum, quī tum summae[97] imperiī praeerat,[98] fore[99] adfīrmābat.[100]

Quem cum minus quam vellet movēret, noctū[101] dē servīs suīs[102] quem habuit[103] fidēlissimum ad rēgem mīsit ut eī nūntiāret suīs verbīs[104] adversā-

---

[67] **sustineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum**, sustain; *the subject is* **iī** (= eī).

[68] *See App. under Numerals (cardinals 200 and 300);* **ducentae (nāvēs)**

[69] *predicate gen. of possession:* were of the Athenians = belonged to the Athenians

[70] **apud Artemīsium**, near Artemisium, *promontory at northern tip of Euboea*

[71] **continēns terra, continentis terrae**, the mainland

[72] **classiārius, -iī**, a marine (*lit.* a soldier of the fleet)

[73] **rēgius, -a, -um**, royal

[74] **cōnflīgō, -ere, -flīxī, -flīctum**, to fight

[75] **angustiae, -ārum**, narrow place

[76] **multitūdō, -inis**, *f.*, large number, multitude

[77] **circum-eō**, surround

[78] **parī proeliō**, the battle was a draw

[79] **nē** = lest, *similar to the construction after verbs of fearing*

[80] **adversārius, -a, -um**, hostile; **adversārius, -iī**, opponent, enemy

[81] *a simple fut. condition in a* **nē-** cl. *The original thought was* **sī pars superāverit, . . . premēmur;** *the fut. perf. indic.* **superāverit** *becomes plupf. subj.* **superāsset.**

[82] **anceps**, *gen.* **ancipitis**, two-headed, double

[83] **quō** = **quārē**

[84] *result cl., subject of* **factum est:** = the result was that

[85] **exadversum**, *prep.* + *acc.*, opposite

[86] **cōnstituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtum**, draw up, establish

[87] **astū**, *n. indecl.*, the city (= Athens), *obj. of* **accessit**

[88] **incendium, -iī**, burning, fire. *The marks of this fire can still be seen on some of the marble pieces later built into the wall of the Acropolis.*

[89] **per-terreō**

[90] *place to which without a prep. as in the sg.* **domum**

[91] **resistō, -ere, -stitī**, make a stand, resist

[92] **universōs . . . posse**, all together (united) they could be equal (*to the Persians*)

[93] *impf. of* **ait**

[94] **di-spergō, -ere, -spersī, -spersum**, scatter

[95] **testor (1)**, testify, declare

[96] **Eurybiadēs, -is**, *m.*, Eurybiades; **Eurybiadī** *depends on* **adfīrmābat.**

[97] **summa, -ae**, highest place

[98] **summae imperiī** (*gen. of whole*) **praeerat**, he was in charge of the highest part of the command = he was commander-in-chief

[99] *Subject of* **fore** (= **futūrum esse**) *is* **id.**

[100] **adfīrmō (1)**, assert, declare

[101] **noctū**, *adv.*, at night

[102] **(illum) dē servīs suīs**, that one of his slaves

[103] **considered**

[104] in his (Themistocles') own words, *i.e.*, in his own name

riōs eius[105] in fugā[106] esse; quī[107] sī discessissent,[108] maiōre cum labōre ... (eum) bellum cōnfectūrum, cum singulōs[109] cōnsectārī cōgerētur; quōs sī statim aggrederētur,[110] brevī (tempore) ūniversōs oppressūrum ... Hāc rē audītā barbarus, nihil dolī[111] subesse[112] crēdēns, postrīdiē aliēnissimō[113] sibi
50 locō, contrā[114] opportūnissimō[115] hostibus, adeō angusto marī[116] cōnflīxit ut eius multitūdō nāvium explicārī nōn potuerit[117] ... Victus ergō est magis etiam cōnsiliō Themistoclī quam armīs Graeciae ... Sīc ūnīus virī prūdentiā[118] Graecia līberāta est Eurōpaeque succubuit[119] Asia.

Haec (est) altera victōria quae cum Marathōniō possit comparārī tropaeō.[120] Nam parī modō apud Salamīna parvō numerō nāvium maxima post
55 hominum memoriam classis est dēvicta.[121] (**Nepos,** *Themistoclēs* 2–4, excerpts)

20. ARISTIDES THE JUST

Aristīdēs,[1] Lȳsimachī[2] fīlius, Athēniēnsis, aequālis[3] ferē fuit Themistoclī[4] atque cum eō dē prīncipātū[5] contendit ... In hīs autem cognitum est quantō[6] antistāret[7] ēloquentia innocentiae.[8] Quamquam enim adeō excellēbat[9] Aristīdēs abstinentiā[10] ut ūnus post hominum memoriam ... cog-
5 nōmine[11] "Iūstus" sit appellātus, tamen ā Themistocle collabefactus[12] testulā[13] illā[14] exsiliō[15] decem annōrum[16] multātus est.[17]

---

[105] **adversāriōs** (= **hostēs**) **eius** (= **rēgis**)

[106] **fuga, -ae,** flight

[107] **quī** = **et eī**

[108] **sī discessissent . . . (eum) bellum cōnfectūrum (esse),** *another simple fut. condition in ind. state.:* **sī discesserint** (*fut. perf.*), **tū bellum cōnficiēs . . . ; cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum,** finish, accomplish.

[109] one at a time

[110] **aggredior, -gredī, -gressus sum,** attack

[111] **dolus, -ī,** deceit, trick. *What kind of gen.* is **dolī**?

[112] **sub-sum,** be under, be concealed

[113] **aliēnus, -a, -um,** foreign, unfavorable

[114] **contrā,** *adv.,* on the contrary

[115] **opportūnus, -a, -um,** advantageous, *referring to* **locō**

[116] *abl. of place where without a prep.*

[117] *The perf. subj. is not uncommon in result cl. in historical sequence.*

[118] **prūdentia, -ae,** foresight, discretion

[119] **succumbō, -ere, -cubuī,** submit, succumb

[120] **Marathōniō tropaeō,** trophy *or* victory at Marathon

[121] **dē-vincō,** conquer completely

20

[1] **Aristīdēs, -is,** *m.,* Aristides, *Athenian statesman and general*

[2] **Lȳsimachus, -ī,** Lysimachus

[3] **aequālis, -is,** *m.,* an equal in age, a contemporary

[4] **Themistoclī,** *here gen. of possession*

[5] **prīncipātus, -ūs,** first place, leadership

[6] *abl. of degree of difference (S.S.) depending on the idea of comparison in* **antistāret:** how much

[7] **anti-stō, -āre, -stetī,** stand before = excel

[8] **innocentia, -ae,** harmlessness; integrity. *Why dat.?*

[9] **excellō, -ere, -uī, -celsum,** excel; **excellēbat:** *note that* **quamquam** (although) *is used with the indic.*

[10] **abstinentia, -ae,** self-restraint, *especially in matters involving public funds,* uprightness; **abstinentiā,** *abl. of specification (S.S.).*

[11] **cognōmen, -minis,** *n., here* = epithet, apellative. *Of the three regular Roman names* (**praenōmen, nōmen, cognōmen**) *the* **cognōmen** *(cp.* **cognōscō***) seems to have originated as a kind of nickname.*

[12] **collabefīō, -fierī, -factus sum,** be overthrown, be ruined

[13] **testula, -ae,** little potsherd; ostracism; **testulā** *abl. of accordance or perhaps means. Look up the interesting history of ostracism, a political safety valve against tyranny.*

[14] **illā,** *in the unusual position of following its noun* = that famous

[15] **exsiliō,** *abl. of penalty* (= *a form of abl. of means*)

[16] **decem annōrum,** *gen. of description*

[17] **multō (1),** punish

Quī quidem cum intellegeret reprimī[18] concitātam[19] multitūdinem nōn posse, cēdēnsque animadvertisset quendam scrībentem ut patriā pellerētur,[20] quaesīsse ab eō[21] dīcitur quārē id faceret aut quid Aristīdēs commīsisset cūr[22]
10   tantā poenā dignus dūcerētur. Cui ille respondit sē ignōrāre[23] Aristīdēn, sed sibi nōn placēre[24] quod tam cupidē labōrāsset ut praeter cēterōs "Iūstus" appellārētur. Hic decem annōrum lēgitimam[25] poenam nōn pertulit. Nam postquam[26] Xerxēs in Graeciam dēscendit,[27] sextō ferē annō quam[28] erat expulsus, populī scītō[29] in patriam restitūtus est.[30]
15   Interfuit[31] autem pugnae nāvālī apud Salamīna quae facta est priusquam[32] poenā līberārētur. Īdem[33] praetor fuit Athēniēnsium apud Plataeās[34] in proeliō quō fūsus[35] (est) barbarōrum exercitus Mardoniusque[36] interfectus est . . . Huius aequitāte[37] factum est,[38] cum in commūnī classe esset Graeciae simul cum Pausaniā[39] (quō duce[40] Mardonius erat fugātus[41]), ut summa imperiī[42] maritimī ab Lacedaemoniīs trānsferrētur ad Athēniēnsēs; namque ante id tempus et marī et terrā ducēs erant Lacedaemoniī. Tum autem et intemperantiā[43] Pausaniae et iūstitiā factum est Aristīdis ut omnēs ferē cīvitātēs Graeciae ad Athēniēnsium societātem[44] sē applicārent[45] et adversus barbarōs hōs ducēs dēligerent[46] sibi.
25   Quōs[47] quō[48] facilius repellerent,[49] sī forte[50] bellum renovāre[51] cōnārentur, ad classēs aedificandās exercitūsque comparandōs[52] quantum pecūniae quaeque[53] cīvitās daret, Aristīdēs dēlēctus est quī cōnstitueret,[54] eiusque

[18] **re-primō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum,** press back, check
[19] **concitō** (1), arouse, excite
[20] *jussive noun cl.,* writing that he should be driven out
[21] **eō,** *i.e., the* **quendam** *above*
[22] (what he had committed) that
[23] **ignōrō** (1), not know, be unacquainted with
[24] **sibi nōn placēre** (*impers.*), it was not pleasing to him = he was displeased (because . . .)
[25] **lēgitimus, -a, -um,** fixed by law, legal
[26] **postquam,** *conj. + perf. ind.,* after
[27] **dēscendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsum,** descend, march on
[28] **quam = postquam; post** *sometimes omitted after an ordinal number in the abl. of time construction*
[29] **scītum, -ī,** decree (*cp. plebiscite*)
[30] **restituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtum,** restore
[31] **inter-sum** + *dat.,* be present at, take part in
[32] **priusquam** + *subj.*
[33] the same man = he also
[34] **Plataeae, -ārum,** Plataea
[35] **fundō, -ere, fūdī, fūsum,** pour out, rout
[36] **Mardonius, -ī,** Mardonius, *Persian general under Xerxes in command of the "barbarians"*
[37] **aequitās, -tātis,** *f.,* equity, fairness; **aequitāte,** *abl. of cause* (*S.S.*)
[38] **factum est . . . ut summa imperiī trānsferrētur,** it happened that the chief command was transferred;

ut . . . trānsferrētur, *noun cl. of result used as subject of* **factum est**
[39] **Pausaniās, -ae,** *m.,* Pausanias, *a Spartan, victor over the Persians at Plataea in 479 B.C. but a person whose selfish ambition was too great to permit his continuing long as commander-in-chief of the united Greek forces*
[40] *abl. abs.*
[41] **fugō** (1), put to flight, rout; *not to be confused with* **fugiō**
[42] *L.I. 19 n. 97–98*
[43] **intemperantia, -ae,** intemperance, arrogance
[44] **societās, -tātis,** *f.,* confederacy, alliance
[45] **applicō** (1), attach
[46] **dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum = legō**
[47] = **barbarōs**
[48] *L.I. 14 n. 18*
[49] **re-pellō**
[50] **forte,** *adv.,* by chance
[51] *If* **novus** *is new; what must the vb.* **re-novō** (1) mean?
[52] *Both gerundive phrases belong in the* **quantum** *cl.*
[53] **quaeque cīvitās: quaeque,** *f. adj. form of* **quisque**
[54] **cōnstituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtum,** establish, decide; **quī cōnstitueret,** *rel. cl. of purp., which has as its obj. the* **quantum . . . daret** *cl.*

arbitriō[55] quadringēna[56] et sexāgēna talenta quotannīs Dēlum[57] sunt conlāta; id enim commūne aerārium[58] esse voluērunt. Quae omnis pecūnia posterō[59]

30 tempore Athēnās trānslāta est. Hic quā[60] fuerit[61] abstinentiā, nūllum est certius indicium[62] quam quod,[63] cum tantīs rēbus praefuisset,[64] in tantā paupertāte dēcessit,[65] ut quī[66] efferrētur vix relīquerit. Quō[67] factum est ut fīliae eius pūblicē[68] alerentur et dē commūnī aerāriō dōtibus[69] datīs collocārentur.[70] (**Nepos,** *Aristīdēs,* excerpts)

21. TIMOLEON[1]

Diōne[2] Syrācūsīs interfectō, Dionȳsius[3] rūrsus Syrācūsārum potītus est.[4] Cuius adversāriī opem ā Corinthiīs[5] petiērunt ducemque, quō in bellō ūterentur, postulārunt. Hūc Tīmoleōn[6] missus incrēdibilī[7] fēlīcitāte[8] Dionȳsium tōtā Siciliā dēpulit.[9] Cum (eum) interficere posset, nōluit, tūtōque[10] ut Co-

5 rinthum[11] pervenīret effēcit,[12] quod utrōrumque[13] Dionȳsiōrum opibus Corinthiī saepe adiūtī fuerant . . . eamque praeclāram victōriam dūcēbat in quā plūs esset clēmentiae quam crūdēlitātis[14] . . .

Quibus rēbus cōnfectīs,[15] cum propter diūturnitātem[16] bellī nōn sōlum regiōnēs[17] sed etiam urbēs dēsertās[18] vidēret, conquīsīvit[19] . . . colōnōs.[20]

10 Cīvibus veteribus sua[21] restituit, novīs[22] bellō vacuēfactās[23] possessiōnēs[24]

---

[55] **arbitrium, -ī,** judgment, decision; **arbitriō,** *what kind of abl.?*

[56] **quadringēna et sexāgēna** (*distributive numerals*) **talenta quotannīs,** 460 talents each year

[57] **Dēlos, -ī,** *f.,* Delos, *small island in the center of the Cyclades in the Aegean*

[58] **aerārium, -iī,** treasury

[59] **posterus, -a, -um,** coming after (post), later

[60] **quā abstinentiā,** *abl. of description,* of what integrity he was = how great was his integrity

[61] *perf. subj., ind. quest. depending on* **indicium**

[62] **indicium, -iī,** indication, proof

[63] the fact that

[64] **prae-sum** + *dat.,* be in charge of

[65] **dē-cēdō,** depart, die

[66] **quī** = *old form of abl.: with* **efferrētur** = by which he might be buried = enough to bury him

[67] **quō,** *adv.,* wherefore

[68] **pūblicē,** *adv.,* at public expense

[69] **dōs, dōtis,** *f.,* dowry

[70] **collocō** (1), place, settle in marriage

21

[1] *Timoleon, who came from a noble family at Corinth, was a great champion of liberty against tyranny. By 334* B.C. *he was in Sicily fighting the Carthaginians, expelling tyrants, and establishing democracies.*

[2] **Diōn, Diōnis,** *m.,* Dion, *relative and friend of the tyrant Dionysius the Elder. With the aid of Plato he*

tried—but in vain—to give a noble pattern to the life of Dionysius the Younger, who followed his father in tyranny. After finally exiling Dionysius the Younger from Syracuse, he himself ruled tyrannically and was assassinated in 353 B.C.

[3] **Dionȳsius, -iī,** Dionysius the Younger

[4] **potior** + *gen. or abl.*

[5] **Corinthiī, -ōrum,** Corinthians

[6] **Tīmoleōn, -ontis,** *m.,* Timoleon

[7] **incrēdibilis, -e,** incredible

[8] **fēlīcitās, -tātis,** *f.,* happiness, good fortune

[9] **dē-pellō**

[10] **tūtō,** *adv.,* safely

[11] **Corinthus, -ī,** *f.,* Corinth, *on the Isthmus of Corinth*

[12] *L.A. 8 n. 20–21*

[13] **uterque, utraque, utrumque,** each; *here* = both

[14] **crūdēlitās, -tātis,** *f.,* cruelty

[15] *These words refer not only to the expulsion of Dionysius, but also to a great victory over the Carthaginians in Sicily as recounted in the omitted passages.*

[16] **diūturnitās, -tātis,** *f.,* long duration

[17] **regiō, -ōnis,** *f.,* region; *here* = country districts

[18] **dēsertus, -a, -um,** deserted

[19] **con-quīrō, -ere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītum (quaerō),** seek out, gather together

[20] **colōnus, -ī,** settler, colonist

[21] **sua,** *n. pl.*

[22] **novīs (colōnīs)**

[23] **vacuē-faciō,** make empty

[24] **possessiō, -ōnis,** *f.,* possession, property

dīvīsit[25]; urbium moenia disiecta[26] fānaque[27] dētēcta[28] refēcit[29]; cīvitātibus
lēgēs lībertātemque reddidit . . . Cum tantīs esset opibus[30] ut etiam invītīs[31]
imperāre posset, tantum[32] autem amōrem haberet omnium Siculōrum[33] ut
nūllō recūsante rēgnum obtinēre[34] licēret, māluit sē dīligī quam metuī.
15 Itaque, cum prīmum[35] potuit, imperium dēposuit ac prīvātus[36] Syrācūsīs . . .
vīxit. Neque vērō id imperītē[37] fēcit, nam quod cēterī rēgēs imperiō potuē-
runt, hic benevolentiā[38] tenuit . . .
    Hic cum aetāte iam prōvectus esset,[39] sine ūllō morbō lūmina[40] ocu-
lōrum āmīsit. Quam calamitātem[41] ita moderātē[42] tulit ut . . . (nēmō) eum
20 querentem audierit[43] . . . Nihil umquam neque īnsolēns[44] neque glōriōsum[45]
ex ōre eius exiit. Quī quidem, cum suās laudēs audīret praedicārī,[46] num-
quam aliud dīxit quam[47] sē in eā rē maximē dīs agere grātiās . . . quod, cum
Siciliam recreāre cōnstituissent, tum sē potissimum[48] ducem esse voluissent.
Nihil enim rērum hūmānārum sine deōrum nūmine[49] gerī putābat . . .
25   Proelia maxima nātālī[50] suō diē fēcit omnia; quō factum est ut[51] eius
diem nātālem fēstum[52] habēret ūniversa Sicilia . . .
    Cum quīdam Dēmaenetus[53] in cōntiōne[54] populī dē rēbus gestīs[55] eius
dētrahere[56] coepisset ac nōnnūlla inveherētur[57] in Timoleonta, dīxit nunc dē-
mum[58] sē vōtī esse damnātum[59]; namque hoc ā dīs immortālibus semper
30 precātum[60] ut tālem lībertātem restitueret Syrācūsānīs in quā cuivīs[61] licēret
dē quō vellet impūne[62] dīcere.[63]

---

[25] **dīvidō, -ere, dīvīsī, dīvīsum,** divide, distribute
[26] **dis-iciō,** throw apart, scatter
[27] **fānum, -ī,** shrine, temple (*cp. profāne, fanatic, fan = devotee*)
[28] **dē-tegō, -ere, -tēxī, -tēctum,** unroof, uncover (*cp. detect*)
[29] **re-ficiō**
[30] **tantīs . . . opibus:** *abl. of description*
[31] **(Siculīs) etiam invītīs,** (the Sicilians) even against their will
[32] **tantum . . . licēret: cum,** although, *introduces this cl. as well as the preceding one.*
[33] **Siculī, -ōrum,** the Sicilians
[34] **obtineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum,** occupy, hold
[35] **cum prīmum,** as soon as
[36] **prīvātus, -ī,** private citizen; as a private citizen, he . . .
[37] **imperītē,** *adv.,* unskillfully, ignorantly
[38] **benevolentia, -ae,** good-will, kindness
[39] **prō-vehō, -ere, -vexī, -vectum,** carry forward
[40] **lūmen, -minis,** *n.,* light; sight
[41] **calamitās, -tātis,** *f.,* misfortune
[42] **moderātē,** *adv.,* with moderation
[43] *perf. subj. in historical sequence*
[44] **īnsolēns,** *gen.* **-entis,** arrogant, insolent
[45] **glōriōsus, -a, -um,** *here* = boastful

[46] **praedicō** (1), declare, relate
[47] **aliud quam,** other than
[48] **potissimum,** *adv.,* especially, above all
[49] **nūmen, -minis,** *n.,* divine power, command
[50] **nātālis diēs, nātālis diēī,** *m.,* birthday
[51] **quō . . . ut,** *L.I. 20 n. 38, 67*
[52] **fēstus, -a, -um,** festive
[53] **Dēmaenetus, -ī,** Demaenetus, *an enemy of Timoleon*
[54] **cōntiō, -ōnis,** *f.,* assembly
[55] **rēs gestae, rērum gestārum** (*lit.* things done), exploits, deeds
[56] **dē-trahō,** detract, disparage
[57] **nōnnūlla** *is n. acc. pl.* — **invehor, -ī, -vectus sum** (*deponent form of* **in-vehō**), + **in** + *acc.,* make an attack on, inveigh against: **nōnnūlla inveherētur in,** he made some attacks on
[58] **dēmum,** *adv.,* at last
[59] **damnō** (1) + *gen.,* condemn on the charge of; **vōtī damnārī,** to be condemned to pay a vow = to have a vow *or* prayer granted
[60] **precor** (1), beseech
[61] *dat. of* **quī-vīs, quae-vīs, quid-vīs (quod-vīs),** *indef.,* anyone at all, anything at all
[62] **impūne,** *adv.,* with impunity
[63] **dīcere,** *subject of* **licēret**

Hic cum diem suprēmum obīsset, pūblicē[64] ā Syrācūsānīs in gymnasiō,[65] quod Tīmoleontēum[66] appellātur, tōtā celebrante[67] Siciliā, sepultus est.[68] (**Nepos,** *Tīmoleōn* 2–5, excerpts)

22. HORACE'S "CARPE DIEM"

Tū nē quaesierīs[1]—scīre nefās[2]—quem mihi, quem[3] tibi
fīnem dī dederint, Leuconoē,[4] nec Babylōniōs
temptārīs[5] numerōs.[6] Ut melius,[7] quidquid erit, patī.

. . .

Spem longam[8] resecēs.[9] Dum loquimur, fūgerit invida[10]
5   aetās. Carpe diem, quam minimum[11] crēdula[12] posterō.[13]
(**Horace,** *Odes* 1.11, excerpts)

23. INTEGER VĪTAE

Integer[1] vītae scelerisque pūrus[2]
nōn eget Maurīs[3] iaculīs[4] neque arcū[5]
nec venēnātīs[6] gravidā[7] sagittīs,[8]
Fusce,[9] pharetrā.[10]

. . .

[64] **pūblicē,** *adv. of* **pūblicus**
[65] **gymnasium, -iī,** gymnasium, *which in Gk. had a much broader meaning than it does in Eng.*
[66] **Tīmoleontēum,** the Timoleonteum (gymnasium)
[67] **celebrō** (1), celebrate
[68] **sepeliō, -īre, -pelīvī, -pultum,** bury

22

METER: Greater Asclepiad.
[1] **nē quaesierīs** (= **quaesīverīs**): **nē** + *perf. subj.* = *a colloquial prohibition* (*negative command*), do not seek
[2] **nefās,** *n., indecl.,* wrong, sin; **nefās (est),** it is wrong
[3] **quem . . . quem,** *modifies* **fīnem**
[4] **Leuconoē, -ēs,** *f.,* Leuconoë, *a Gk. name*
[5] **temptō** (1), try; **temptārīs = temptāverīs,** *another neg. command*
[6] **numerōs,** *calculations employed by astrologers in casting horoscopes; "Babylonian" because astrology was associated with the East. With the decay of belief in the old-time religion in Rome during the first cen.* B.C., *astrology and superstitions prospered. Apparently Leuconoë had visited a fortune teller.*
[7] **ut melius (est),** how (much) better it is
[8] *i.e., projected too far into the future*

[9] **resecō, -āre, -secuī, -sectum,** cut off, prune back; **resecēs,** *poetic use of the pres. subj.* (*jussive*) *for the pres. imper.*
[10] **invidus, -a, -um,** envious
[11] **minimum,** *adv.* = **minimē**
[12] **crēdulus, -a, -um,** believing in, trusting + *dat.;* **crēdula,** *nom. f. sg. agreeing with the subject of* **carpe,** *i.e.* **Leuconoē**
[13] **posterō (diēī),** *dat.*

23

METER: Sapphic stanza.
[1] **integer, -gra, -grum,** untouched, blameless; (**vir**) **integer vītae** (*poetic gen. of specification*), the person blameless in his life
[2] **pūrus, -a, -um,** pure, free from; **sceleris,** *poetic gen. of separation or specification*
[3] **Maurus, -a, -um,** Moorish (= Mauritanian)
[4] **iaculum, -ī,** missile, javelin (*cp.* **iaciō**)
[5] **arcus, -ūs,** bow
[6] **venēnātus, -a, -um,** poisonous, dipped in poison
[7] **gravidus, -a, -um,** laden (with); *cp.* **gravis**
[8] **sagitta, -ae,** arrow
[9] **Fuscus, -ī,** Fuscus, *a literary man and a close, sometimes waggish, friend of Horace*
[10] **pharetra, -ae,** quiver

5   Namque mē silvā lupus[11] in Sabīnā[12]
     dum meam cantō[13] Lalagēn[14] et ultrā
     terminum[15] cūrīs vagor[16] expedītīs[17]
          fūgit[18] inermem.[19]

     . . .

     Pōne mē pigrīs[20] ubi nūlla campīs
10   arbor aestīvā[21] recreātur aurā,[22]
     quod[23] latus mundī nebulae[24] malusque[25]
          Iuppiter urget[26];
     pōne sub currū[27] nimium propinquī
     sōlis in terrā domibus negāta:
15   dulce[28] rīdentem Lalagēn amābō
          dulce loquentem.

                    (**Horace,** *Odes* 1.22.1–4, 9–12, 17–24)

24. AUREA MEDIOCRITĀS—THE GOLDEN MEAN

     Rēctius[1] vīvēs, Licinī,[2] neque altum[3]
     semper urgendō[4] neque, dum procellās[5]
     cautus[6] horrēscis,[7] nimium premendō
          lītus[8] inīquum.[9]

---

[11] **lupus, -ī,** wolf

[12] **Sabīnus, -a, -um,** Sabine; *cp. L.A. 10*

[13] **cantō** (1), sing about; **dum** + *historical pres. to denote continued action in past time:* while I was singing about

[14] **Lalagē, -ēs,** *acc.* **Lalagēn** (*Gk. noun*), *f.,* Lalage, *name of a girl—a most mellifluous name!*

[15] **terminus, -ī,** boundary (*cp. terminus, term, terminate*)

[16] **vagor** (1), wander, ramble (*cp. vagary, vagabond*)

[17] **expediō** (4), disentangle, set free; **cūrīs expedītīs,** *abl. abs.*

[18] *Note the interlocked word order of this stanza, which is so characteristic of Lat. poetry:* **mē** (*obj. of* **fūgit**) *at the beginning modified by* **inermem** *at the end;* **silvā in Sabīnā,** *place where phrase interrupted by* **lupus** *subject of* **fūgit**; *all this separated from the main vb. by a double* **dum** *cl.*

[19] **inermis, -e,** unarmed; *cp.* **integer vītae . . . nōn eget iaculīs.**

[20] **piger, -gra, -grum,** lazy, sluggish, torpid (*because frozen*), *modifying* **campīs** (**campus, -ī,** field) *in a place-where phrase without a prep. (the omission of a prep. is common in poetry). The order of the thought is:* **pōne mē** (**in**) **pigrīs campīs ubi . . .**

[21] **aestīvus, -a, -um,** summer (*cp.* **aestās**)

[22] **aura, -ae,** breeze

[23] = (or put me) **in eō latere mundī quod . . . ; latus, -eris,** *n.,* side, region

[24] **nebula, -ae,** mist, fog

[25] **malus** = inclement, *because Jupiter is here god of the weather*

[26] **urgeō, -ēre, ursī,** urge, press, oppress

[27] **currus, -ūs,** chariot

[28] **dulce,** *poetic for* **dulciter.** *These exquisitely mellifluous last lines somewhat onomatopoetically suggest the dulcet timbre of Lalage's voice and laugh.*

24

METER: Sapphic stanza.

[1] **rēctius,** *adv.,* rightly, well, suitably

[2] **Licinī,** *voc. of* **Licinius,** *a person who seems to have been wanting in the virtue of moderation*

[3] the deep (sea)

[4] *i.e.,* heading out to the deep

[5] **procella, -ae,** storm, gale

[6] **cautus, -a, -um,** cautious, circumspect; *with* **dum . . . horrēscis,** while you in your caution . . .

[7] **horrēscō, -ere, horruī,** begin to shudder at, begin to dread

[8] **altum** *and* **lītus** = *extremes*

[9] **inīquus, -a, -um,** unequal; *here* = treacherous

5   Auream[10] quisquis mediocritātem[11]
       dīligit, tūtus[12] caret obsolētī[13]
       sordibus[14] tēctī, caret invidendā[15]
           sōbrius[16] aulā.[17]
       Saepius ventīs agitātur[18] ingēns
10   pīnus[19] et celsae[20] graviōre cāsū[21]
       dēcidunt[22] turrēs[23] feriuntque[24] summōs
           fulgura[25] montēs.
       Spērat[26] īnfestīs,[27] metuit secundīs[28]
       alteram[29] sortem[30] bene praeparātum[31]
15   pectus.[32] Īnfōrmēs[33] hiemēs[34] redūcit
           Iuppiter[35]; īdem[36]
       summovet.[37] Nōn, sī male[38] nunc, et ōlim[39]
       sīc erit: quondam[40] citharā[41] tacentem
       suscitat[42] Mūsam,[43] neque semper arcum
20   tendit[44] Apollō.[45]
       Rēbus angustīs[46] animōsus[47] atque

[10] **aureus, -a, -um,** golden
[11] **mediocritās, -tātis,** *f.,* moderation, the mean between extremes. *Note that Horace does not say that "mediocrity" is golden! The idea of* (**aurea**) **mediocritās** *was common in Gk. ethical thought, and Aristotle made it a cardinal virtue in his "Ethics."*
[12] **tūtus caret,** secure (*in his philosophy of the "golden mean"*) he is free from . . .
[13] **obsolētus, -a, -um,** worn out, dilapidated
[14] **sordēs, -ium,** *f. pl.,* dirt, filth; **sordibus,** *what kind of abl.?*
[15] **invidendā,** sure to be envied
[16] **sōbrius, -a, -um,** sober-minded, moderate, in his sobriety
[17] **aula, -ae,** palace
[18] **agitō (1),** agitate, toss
[19] **pīnus, -ī,** *f.,* pine
[20] **celsus, -a, -um,** high, lofty
[21] **cāsus, -ūs,** fall, destruction
[22] **dēcidō, -ere, -cidī,** fall down (*cp.* **cadō**)
[23] **turris, -is,** *f.,* tower
[24] **feriō (4),** strike
[25] **fulgur, -uris,** *n.,* lightning, thunderbolt
[26] anticipates, expects
[27] **īnfestus, -a, -um,** unsafe, dangerous, adverse; **īnfestīs (rēbus)** *dat., lit.:* for his adverse circumstances (= in adversity) he anticipates the other (= the opposite) fortune (**sortem**)
[28] **secundīs (rēbus)** *balances* **īnfestīs:** for his favorable

circumstances (= in prosperity) he apprehends the opposite fortune.
[29] **alter,** the other of two; *here* = the opposite
[30] **sors, sortis,** *f.,* lot, fortune; **sortem,** *obj. of* **spērat** *and* **metuit**
[31] **prae-parō (1),** make ready in advance, prepare: well prepared (*by the philosophy of life which Horace is here enunciating*)
[32] *subject of* **spērat** *and* **metuit**
[33] **īnfōrmis, -e,** shapeless, hideous, horrid
[34] **hiems, hiemis,** *f.,* stormy weather, winter
[35] Jupiter *as god of sky and weather*
[36] **īdem,** the same god = he also
[37] **sum-moveō,** remove, drive away, *sc.* **hiemēs**
[38] **male (est),** it is bad, things are bad
[39] **et ōlim,** also in the future
[40] *here* = sometimes
[41] **cithara, -ae,** lyre
[42] **suscitō (1),** arouse; **suscitat,** *subject is* **Apollō**
[43] **Mūsa, -ae,** a Muse
[44] **tendō, -ere, tetendī, tēnsum,** stretch
[45] **Apollō, -inis,** *m.,* Apollo, *god of the sun, prophecy, poetry, and music; also god of archery, pestilence, and medicine. Apollo has two aspects: happy and constructive* (**Mūsam**); *unhappy and destructive* (**arcum**).
[46] **rēbus angustīs,** *abl. abs.,* when things are narrow (= difficult), *i.e.,* in adversity
[47] **anim-ōsus, -a, -um (-ōsus,** *suffix* = full of), spirited

fortis appārē[48]; sapienter[49] īdem[50]
contrahēs[51] ventō nimium secundō
    turgida[52] vēla.[53]

(Horace, *Odes* 2.10)

25. LĀBUNTUR ANNĪ

Ēheu![1] fugācēs,[2] Postume, Postume,
lābuntur[3] annī; nec pietās[4] moram
    rūgīs[5] et īnstantī[6] senectae[7]
        adferet indomitaeque[8] mortī.

. . .

5 Frūstrā[9] cruentō[10] Mārte[11] carēbimus
fractīsque[12] raucī[13] flūctibus[14] Hadriae[15];
    frūstrā[9] per autumnōs[16] nocentem
        corporibus[17] metuēmus Austrum.[18]
Vīsendus[19] āter[20] flūmine languidō[21]
10 Cōcȳtos[22] errāns et Danaī genus[23]
    īnfāme[24] damnātusque[25] longī
        Sīsyphus[26] Aeolidēs[27] labōris.[28]

---

[48] **appāreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum,** show one's self; **appārē,** *analyze the form carefully.*
[49] *here* = if you are wise
[50] *see n. 36 above*
[51] **con-trahō,** draw in, shorten
[52] **turgidus, -a, -um,** swollen
[53] **vēlum, -ī,** sail

25

METER: Alcaic stanza.
[1] **ēheu,** *cp.* **heu.** *This sigh is emphasized by the repetition of Postumus' name.*
[2] **fugāx,** *gen.* **-ācis,** fleeting
[3] **lābor, -ī, lāpsus sum,** slip, glide
[4] **pietās, -tātis,** *f.,* loyalty, devotion, piety
[5] **rūga, -ae,** wrinkle (*cp. corrugated*)
[6] **īnstāns,** *gen.* **-antis,** pressing, urgent
[7] **senecta, -ae** = **senectūs**
[8] **indomitus, -a, -um,** untamable, invincible
[9] **frūstrā,** *adv.,* in vain. *What is the significance of its emphatic position?*
[10] **cruentus, -a, -um,** bloody
[11] **Mārs, Mārtis,** *m.,* Mars, *god of war;* **Mārte,** *what abl.?*
[12] **frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctum,** break
[13] **raucus, -a, -um,** hoarse, noisy

[14] **flūctus, -ūs,** wave; **frāctīs flūctibus,** broken waves = breakers
[15] **Hadria, -ae,** *m.,* Adriatic Sea
[16] **autumnus, -ī,** autumn, *unhealthy part of the year because of the Sirocco*
[17] *depends on* **nocentem**
[18] **auster, -trī,** the south wind, *the Sirocco blowing from the Sahara*
[19] **vīsō, -ere, vīsī, vīsum,** visit; **vīsendus (est)**
[20] **āter, ātra, ātrum,** dark, *modifying* **Cōcȳtos**
[21] **languidus, -a, -um,** sluggish, weak
[22] **Cōcȳtos, -ī,** *m.,* Cocytus, the river of wailing, *one of the rivers surrounding Hades;* **Cōcȳtos,** *Gk. nom.*
[23] **Danaī genus,** *the offspring of* **Danaüs,** *whose 49 daughters murdered their husbands and in Hades were punished by having to pour water eternally into a sieve*
[24] **īnfāmis, -e,** infamous
[25] **damnō (1)** condemn
[26] **Sīsyphus, -ī,** Sisyphus, *who was condemned eternally to roll up a hill a stone which rolled down again— an exquisite nightmare*
[27] **Aeolidēs, -ae,** *m.,* son of Aeolus
[28] *After vbs. of accusing, condemning, and acquitting the gen. can be used to express the charge or the penalty involved.*

Linquenda[29] tellūs[30] et domus et placēns
uxor, neque hārum, quās colis, arborum
15   tē praeter invīsās[31] cupressōs[32]
       ūlla[33] brevem dominum[34] sequētur.

               (Horace, *Odes* 2.14.1–4, 13–24)

26. A SENSE OF BALANCE IN LIFE

Vīvitur[1] parvō bene cui[2] paternum[3]
splendet[4] in mēnsā tenuī[5] salīnum,
nec levēs[6] somnōs timor aut cupīdō
    sordidus[7] aufert.[8]
5   Quid[9] brevī fortēs[10] iaculāmur[11] aevō
multa? Quid[12] terrās aliō calentēs
sōle mūtāmus? Patriae quis exsul[13]
    sē quoque fūgit?[14]
Scandit[15] aerātās[16] vitiōsa nāvēs
10   cūra nec turmās[17] equitum relinquit,
ōcior[18] cervīs[19] et agente nimbōs[20]
    ōcior Eurō.[21]

---

[29] **linquenda (est)**, *balancing* **vīsendus** in contrast; **linquō** = **relinquō**

[30] **tellūs, -ūris,** *f.,* earth, land

[31] **invīsus, -a, -um,** hated, hateful

[32] **cupressus, -ī,** *f.,* cypress (tree); **invīsās** *because they were used at funerals and were planted near tombs*

[33] **neque ūlla hārum arborum,** nor any = and none . . .

[34] **brevem dominum,** *in apposition with* **tē; brevem,** *implying that life is brief*

26

METER: Sapphic stanza.

[1] **vīvitur parvō bene (ab eō) cui,** it is lived on little well by him for whom: **vīvitur,** *impers. pass.* = he lives well on little (*i.e., not in abject poverty and not in the lap of luxury*).

[2] **cui,** *dat. of ref. but most easily translated by* whose

[3] **paternum salīnum (salīnum, -ī),** paternal salt-cellar; *the long list of words derived from* **sāl** *provides some idea of the importance of salt and the salt-cellar.*

[4] **splendeō, -ēre,** shine

[5] **tenuis, -e,** plain, simple

[6] **levis, -e,** *here* = gentle

[7] **sordidus, -a, -um,** sordid (*cp.* **sordēs** *L.I. 24 n. 14*); **cupīdō** *is m. in Horace.*

[8] **auferō (ab-ferō)**

[9] = **cūr**

[10] **fortēs (virī) brevī aevō (aevum, -ī,** time, life)

[11] **iaculor (1),** aim at

[12] **Quid . . . mūtāmus,** *lit.* why do we exchange lands warmed by another sun? *The expression is poetic and in part illogical but the sense is clear:* why do we exchange our lands for those warmed by another sun? "The pasture is always greener . . ."

[13] **exsul, exsulis,** *m.,* exile; *with* **patriae quis,** who an exile of (from) his native land

[14] **fūgit,** *perf.,* has ever fled

[15] **scandō, -ere, scandī, scānsum,** climb up

[16] **aerātus, -a, -um,** fitted with bronze, *probably referring to the bronze beaks of the men-of-war* (**longae nāvēs**), *which were faster than the ordinary ships— though even these cannot outstrip anxiety.*

[17] **turma, -ae,** a troop of cavalry (**equitum,** *L.I. 18 n. 53*). *A person cannot ride fast enough to escape care.*

[18] **ōcior, -ius,** *adj. in compar. degree,* swifter, *agreeing with* **cūra**

[19] **cervus, -ī,** stag

[20] **nimbus, -ī,** rain cloud

[21] **Eurus, -ī,** wind (from the southeast)

Laetus[22] in praesēns[23] animus quod ultrā est
ōderit[24] cūrāre et amāra[25] lentō[26]

15 temperet[27] rīsū[28]: nihil est ab omnī
parte[29] beātum.

(Horace, *Odes* 2.16.13–28)

27. DIĒS FĒSTUS

Hic diēs[1] vērē mihi fēstus ātrās
eximet[2] cūrās: ego nec tumultum
nec morī per vim metuam tenente
Caesare[3] terrās.

5 Ī, pete unguentum,[4] puer,[5] et corōnās,[6]
et cadum[7] Mārsī[8] memorem[9] duellī,
Spartacum[10] sī quā[11] potuit vagantem
fallere[12] testa.[13]

(Horace, *Odes* 3.14.13–20)

28. A MONUMENT MORE LASTING THAN BRONZE

Exēgī monumentum aere perennius[1]
rēgālīque[2] sitū[3] pȳramidum[4] altius,[5]
quod nōn imber[6] edāx,[7] nōn Aquilō[8] impotēns[9]
possit dīruere[10] aut innumerābilis[11]

[22] **laetus, -a, -um,** happy, joyful
[23] **praesēns,** *gen.* **-entis,** present; **in praesēns (tempus)** for the present (*cp.* **the carpe diem** *philosophy*)
[24] **ōderit,** *perf. subj., jussive,* let (the **laetus animus**) refuse to (hate to) be anxious about (**cūrāre**)
[25] **amārus, -a, -um,** bitter, disagreeable; **amāra,** *n. pl.*
[26] **lentus, -a, -um,** pliant, tenacious, slow, lingering; *here* = tolerant, quiet
[27] **temperō (1),** control, temper
[28] **rīsus, -ūs,** laughter (*cp.* **rīdeō**)
[29] **ab omnī parte,** from every part = in every respect, completely

27

METER: Sapphic stanza.
[1] **Hic diēs,** *referring to Augustus' return from the campaign of 27–25 B.C. in Spain*
[2] **eximō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēmptum,** take away
[3] **Caesar** = Augustus. *When C. Octavius was adopted by his great-uncle, C. Iulius Caesar, his name became C. Iulius Caesar Octavianus, to which the senate added the title of Augustus in 27 B.C.*
[4] **unguentum, -ī,** ointment, perfume
[5] **puer** = slave; *cp. Fr.* **garçon**
[6] **corōna, -ae,** crown, wreath
[7] **cadus, -ī,** wine jar

[8] **Mārsus, -a, -um,** Marsian; **duellum** = *old form of* **bellum: Mārsī duellī,** *of the Marsian, or Social, War of 91–88 B.C., by which the* **sociī** *(allies) of Rome in Italy gained full citizenship; i.e., a 65-year-old wine*
[9] **memor,** *gen.* **-oris,** mindful
[10] **Spartacus, -ī,** Spartacus, *the gladiator who led the slaves in revolt against Rome, 73–71 B.C.*
[11] **quā,** *adv.,* anywhere *or* in any way
[12] **fallō, -ere, fefellī, falsum,** deceive, escape the notice of
[13] **testa, -ae,** jug

28

METER: Lesser Asclepiad.
[1] **perennis, -e,** lasting (throughout the year)
[2] **rēgālis, -e,** royal
[3] **situs, -ūs,** site, situation; *here* = structure
[4] **pȳramis, -idis,** *f.,* pyramid
[5] **altus, -a, -um,** high; **altius** *agrees with* **monumentum.**
[6] **imber, -bris,** *m.,* storm
[7] **edāx,** *gen.* **edacis,** greedy, destructive
[8] **aquilō, -ōnis,** *m.,* north wind
[9] **impotēns,** *gen.* **-ntis,** powerless (*to injure my monument*)
[10] **dīruō, -ere, -ruī, -rutum,** raze, destroy
[11] **in-numerābilis, -e** = *Eng.*

5   annōrum seriēs[12] et fuga temporum.
Nōn omnis moriar, multaque pars meī
vītābit Libitīnam[13] . . .
             (Horace, *Odes* 3.30.1–7)

29. THE OTHER PERSON'S FAULTS AND OUR OWN

Pērās[1] imposuit[2] Iuppiter nōbīs duās:
propriīs[3] replētam[4] vitiīs post tergum[5] dedit,[6]
aliēnīs[7] ante pectus[8] suspendit[9] gravem.
Hāc rē vidēre nostra mala nōn possumus;
5   aliī simul[10] dēlinquunt,[11] cēnsōrēs[12] sumus.
            (Phaedrus, *Fābulae* 4.10)

30. SOUR GRAPES

Famē[1] coācta vulpēs[2] altā in vīneā[3]
ūvam[4] appetēbat,[5] summīs saliēns[6] vīribus.
Quam[7] tangere ut nōn potuit, discēdēns ait:
"Nōndum mātūra[8] est; nōlō acerbam sūmere.[9]"
5   Quī facere[10] quae nōn possunt verbīs ēlevant,[11]
adscrībere[12] hoc dēbēbunt exemplum sibī.
            (Phaedrus, *Fābulae* 4.3)

31. THE FOX AND THE TRAGIC MASK

Persōnam[1] tragicam[2] forte[3] vulpēs vīderat.
"Ō quanta speciēs,[4]" inquit, "cerebrum[5] nōn habet!"

[12] seriēs, -ēī, succession
[13] Libitīna, -ae, Libitina, *goddess of funerals;* death

29
METER: Iambic trimeter.
   Phaedrus: freedman of Augustus, who made extensive use of Aesop's fables.
[1] pēra, -ae, wallet
[2] im-pōnō, + *dat.,* put on
[3] proprius, -a, -um, one's own, *here* = our own
[4] repleō, -ēre, -plēvī, -plētum, fill; (pēram) replētam
[5] tergum, -ī, back
[6] dedit, *here* = put
[7] aliēnus, -a, -um, belonging to another; aliēnīs (vitiīs), *abl. with* gravem
[8] *sc.* nostrum
[9] (alteram pēram) gravem . . . suspendit
[10] simul = simul ac, as soon as
[11] dēlinquō, -ere, -līquī, -lictum, fail, commit a crime
[12] cēnsor, -ōris, *m.,* censor; censurer, severe judge

30
METER: Iambic trimeter.

[1] famēs, -is, *abl.* -e, appetite, hunger
[2] vulpēs, -is, *f.,* fox
[3] vīnea, -ae, vineyard
[4] ūva, -ae, bunch of grapes
[5] ap-petō (= ad-petō), reach toward, desire (*cp. appetite*); appetēbat, *note the force of the impf.*
[6] saliō, -īre, -uī, saltum, jump
[7] quam = ūvam
[8] mātūrus, -a, -um, ripe
[9] sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum, take
[10] *compl. inf. with* possunt
[11] ēlevō (1), disparage, weaken
[12] ad-scrībō, assign

31

METER: Iambic trimeter.
[1] persōna, -ae, mask *worn by actors*
[2] tragicus, -a, -um, tragic
[3] forte, *adv.,* by chance
[4] speciēs, -ēī, appearance, form
[5] cerebrum, -ī, brain

Hoc illīs dictum est quibus honōrem et glōriam
Fortūna tribuit,[6] sēnsum commūnem abstulit.
(**Phaedrus**, *Fābulae* 1.7)

32. THE STAG AT THE SPRING

Ad fontem[1] cervus, cum bibisset, restitit,[2]
et in liquōre[3] vīdit effigiem[4] suam.
Ibi dum rāmōsa[5] mīrāns[6] laudat cornua,
crūrumque[7] nimiam[8] tenuitātem[9] vituperat,[10]
5   vēnantum[11] subitō vōcibus conterritus,[12]
per campum fugere coepit, et cursū levī
canēs[13] ēlūsit.[14] Silva tum excēpit ferum,[15]
in quā retentīs[16] impedītus cornibus,
lacerārī[17] coepit morsibus[18] saevīs[19] canum.
10   Tunc moriēns vōcem hanc ēdidisse[20] dīcitur:
"Ō mē īnfēlīcem[21]! quī nunc dēmum[22] intellegō
ūtilia mihi quam[23] fuerint quae[24] dēspexeram,[25]
et quae laudāram,[26] quantum lūctūs[27] habuerint."
(**Phaedrus**, *Fābulae* 1.12)

33. THE FOX GETS THE RAVEN'S CHEESE

Quī sē laudārī gaudet verbīs subdolīs,[1]
ferē dat poenās turpī paenitentiā.[2]
Cum dē fenestrā corvus[3] raptum cāseum[4]
comēsse[5] vellet, celsā residēns[6] arbore,

---

[6] tribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, allot, assign, give

32

METER: Iambic trimeter.
[1] fōns, fontis, *m.*, spring
[2] restō, -āre, restitī, remain (standing)
[3] liquor, -ōris, *m.*, liquid
[4] effigiēs, -ēī, image, likeness
[5] rāmōsus, -a, -um, branching
[6] miror (1), marvel at, wonder
[7] crūs, crūris, *n.*, leg
[8] nimius, -a, -um, excessive
[9] tenuitās, -tātis, *f.*, thinness
[10] vituperō (1), blame, find fault with
[11] vēnor (1), hunt; vēnantum, *gen. pl. of pres. part.*
[12] con-territus
[13] canis, -is, *m./f.*, dog
[14] ēlūdō, -ere, -lūsī, -lūsum, evade
[15] ferus, -ī, wild animal
[16] re-tentus, -a, -um, held back, held fast

[17] lacerō (1), tear to pieces (*cp.* lacerate)
[18] morsus, -ūs, bite
[19] saevus, -a, -um, fierce, savage
[20] ēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, give out, utter
[21] mē īnfēlīcem, *acc. of exclamation.*
[22] dēmum, *adv.*, at last
[23] ūtilia ... quam = quam ūtilia
[24] (ea, those things) quae
[25] dēspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum, look down on, despise
[26] = laudāveram
[27] lūctus, -ūs, grief, sorrow

33

METER: Iambic trimeter.
[1] subdolus, -a, -um, deceitful
[2] paenitentia, -ae, repentance
[3] corvus, -ī, raven
[4] cāseus, -ī, cheese
[5] comedō, comedere *or* comēsse, -edī, -ēsum, eat up
[6] resideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum, sit, be sitting

5   hunc vīdit vulpēs; deinde sīc coepit loquī:

"Ō quī tuārum, corve, pennārum[7] est nitor[8]!

Quantum decōris[9] corpore et vultū geris![10]

Sī vōcem habērēs, nūlla prior[11] āles[12] foret."[13]

At ille stultus, dum vult vōcem ostendere,

10   ēmīsit[14] ōre cāseum, quem celeriter

dolōsa[15] vulpēs avidīs[16] rapuit dentibus.[17]

           (Phaedrus, *Fābulae* 1.13.1–10)

34. THE ASS AND THE OLD SHEPHERD

In prīncipātū[1] commūtandō[2] cīvium

nīl praeter dominī nōmen mūtant pauperēs.

Id esse vērum parva haec fābella[3] indicat.

Asellum[4] in prātō[5] timidus[6] pāscēbat[7] senex.

5   Is, hostium clamōre[8] subitō[9] territus,

suādēbat[10] asinō fugere nē possent capī.

At ille lentus:[11] "Quaesō,[12] num bīnās[13] mihī

clītellās[14] impositūrum[15] victōrem[16] putās?"

Senex negāvit. "Ergō quid rēfert meā[17]

10   cui serviam clītellās dum portem[18] meās?"

           (Phaedrus, *Fābulae* 1.15)

35. THE TWO MULES AND THE ROBBERS

Mūlī[1] gravātī[2] sarcinīs[3] ībant duō.

Ūnus ferēbat fiscōs[4] cum pecūniā;

---

[7] **penna, -ae,** feather
[8] **nitor, -ōris,** *m.,* brightness, beauty; **quī est nitor,** what (= how great) is the beauty
[9] **decor, decōris,** *m.,* grace, beauty
[10] you bear, *i.e.,* have in your body and face; **(in) corpore,** *preps. often omitted in poetry*
[11] **prior,** *predicate adj. after* **foret,** better, finer
[12] **āles, ālitis,** *f.,* bird
[13] **foret** = **esset**
[14] **ē-mittō**
[15] **dolōsus, -a, -um,** crafty, cunning
[16] **avidus, -a, -um,** greedy, eager
[17] **dēns, dentis,** *m.,* tooth

34

METER: Iambic trimeter.
[1] **prīncipātus, -ūs,** rule, dominion
[2] **com-mūtō** (1), change
[3] **fābella, -ae,** fable
[4] **asellus, -ī,** a little ass, *diminutive of* **asinus, -ī,** an ass (*verse 6*)
[5] **prātum, -ī,** meadow

[6] **timidus, -a, -um,** timid
[7] **pāscō, -ere, pāvī, pāstum,** pasture
[8] **clāmor, -ōris,** *m.,* shouting
[9] **subitus, -a, -um,** sudden
[10] **suādeō, -ēre, suāsī, suāsum,** urge
[11] **lentus, -a, -um,** slow, motionless, apathetic
[12] **quaesō, -ere,** beg, beseech, = **quaerō**
[13] **bīnās clītellās,** two pairs of panniers (*i.e., instead of the present single pair*); **bīnī, -ae, -a,** *distributive numeral used with a regularly pl. noun*
[14] **clītellae, -ārum,** a pair of panniers, baskets
[15] **im-pōnō** = **in** + **pōnō**
[16] **victor, -ōris** = *Eng.*
[17] what difference does it make to me, *highly idiomatic*
[18] **portō** (1), bear, carry

35

METER: Iambic trimeter.
[1] **mūlus, -ī,** mule
[2] **gravō** (1), load, burden
[3] **sarcina, -ae,** bundle, pack
[4] **fiscus, -ī,** basket

alter tumentēs[5] multō saccōs[6] hordeō.[7]
Ille onere[8] dīves, celsā cervīce[9] ēminēns[10]
5 clārumque collō[11] iactāns[12] tintinnābulum[13];
comes[14] quiētō[15] sequitur et placidō[16] gradū.[17]
Subitō latrōnēs[18] ex īnsidiīs advolant,[19]
interque caedem ferrō mūlum lancinant[20];
dīripiunt[21] nummōs,[22] neglegunt vīle[23] hordeum.
10 Spoliātus[24] igitur cāsūs[25] cum flēret suōs,
"Equidem," inquit alter, "mē contemptum gaudeō.
Nam nihil āmīsī, nec sum laesus[26] vulnere."
Hōc argūmentō tūta est hominum tenuitās[27];
magnae perīclō[28] sunt opēs obnoxiae.[29]
(**Phaedrus**, *Fābulae* 2.7)

36. DELIGHTS OF THE COUNTRY

C.[1] PLĪNIUS CALPURNIŌ MACRŌ[2] SUŌ S.[1]

Bene est[3] mihi quia[4] tibi est bene. Habēs uxōrem tēcum, habēs fīlium; frueris[5] marī, fontibus, viridibus,[6] agrō, vīllā amoenissimā.[7] Neque enim dubitō esse amoenissimam,[8] in quā sē composuerat[9] homō[10] fēlīcior antequam[11] "fēlīcissimus" fieret. Ego in Tuscīs[12] et vēnor[13] et studeō, quae[14] inter-

---

[5] tumeō, -ēre, swell, be swollen
[6] saccus, -ī, sack
[7] hordeum, -ī, barley
[8] onus, -eris, *n.*, burden, load
[9] cervīx, -vīcis, *f.*, neck
[10] ēmineō, -ēre, -minuī, stand out, be conspicuous
[11] collum, -ī, neck
[12] iactō (1), toss
[13] tintinnābulum, -ī, bell, *a delightfully onomatopoetic word*
[14] comes, comitis, *m./f.*, companion
[15] quiētus, -a, -um, quiet
[16] placidus, -a, -um, placid, gentle
[17] gradus, -ūs, step
[18] latrō, -ōnis, *m.*, bandit, robber
[19] advolō (1), fly, hasten
[20] lancinō (1), mangle
[21] dīripiō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptum, plunder
[22] nummus, -ī, currency, money
[23] vīlis, -e, cheap
[24] spoliō (1), rob
[25] cāsus, -ūs, accident
[26] laedō, -ere, laesī, laesum, injure
[27] tenuitās, -tātis, *f.*, poverty
[28] perīclum, -ī, *early Lat. form, used instead of* periculum *in classical Lat. poetry whenever it was metrically convenient*

[29] obnoxius, -a, -um, subject to, exposed to

36
[1] *L.A. 11 n. 1 and 3*
[2] **Calpurnius Macer**
[3] *it is*
[4] quia, *conj.*, because
[5] fruor, -ī, frūctus sum + *abl.*, enjoy (*cp.* frūctus, -ūs)
[6] viridis, -e, green; viridia, *gen.* viridium, *n. pl. as a noun*, green things, greenery
[7] amoenus, -a, -um, pleasant
[8] amoenissimam, *agreeing with* vīllam *understood as subject of* esse
[9] sē compōnere, to compose oneself, to rest
[10] the man, *apparently referring to a former owner who had been happier* (fēlīcior) *on this estate as an ordinary person* (homō) *before he could realize his ambition of becoming* "most happy" (fēlīcissimus), *i.e., before he could achieve some very high position which did not give him supreme happiness after all.*
[11] antequam + *subj.*
[12] *lit.* in the Tuscans = on my Tuscan estate
[13] vēnor (1), hunt
[14] quae, *n. pl. referring to* vēnor *and* studeō *as antecedents*

5   dum[15] alternīs,[16] interdum simul[17] faciō; nec tamen adhūc[18] possum prōnūntiāre utrum sit difficilius capere aliquid an scrībere. Valē. (**Pliny,** *Epistulae* 5.18)

37. C. PLĪNIUS CANĪNIŌ[1] SUŌ S.

Studēs an[2] piscāris[3] an vēnāris an simul omnia? Possunt enim omnia simul fierī ad Lārium[4] nostrum. Nam lacus[5] piscem,[6] ferās[7] silvae quibus lacus cingitur,[8] studia altissimus iste sēcessus[9] adfatim[10] suggerunt.[11] Sed sīve[12] omnia simul sīve aliquid facis, nōn possum dīcere "invideō"; angor[13]

5   tamen . . . Numquamne hōs artissimōs laqueōs[14] . . . abrumpam?[15] Numquam, putō. Nam veteribus negōtiīs[16] nova accrēscunt,[17] nec tamen priōra peraguntur[18]; tot nexibus,[19] tot quasi catēnīs[20] maius in diēs[21] occupātiōnum[22] agmen[23] extenditur.[24] Valē. (**Pliny,** *Epistulae* 2.8, excerpts)

38. HAPPY MARRIED LIFE

C. PLĪNIUS GEMINŌ SUŌ S.

Grave vulnus Macrinus noster accēpit: āmīsit[1] uxōrem singulāris[2] exemplī . . . Vīxit cum hāc trīgintā novem annīs[3] sine iūrgiō,[4] sine offēnsā.[5] Quam illa reverentiam[6] marītō[7] suō praestitit, cum ipsa summam merērētur![8] Quot quantāsque virtūtēs ex dīversīs[9] aetātibus sūmptās collēgit et miscuit!

5   Habet quidem Macrinus grande[10] sōlācium, quod tantum bonum tam diū tenuit; sed hinc[11] magis exacerbātur[12] quod āmīsit. Nam fruendīs volup-

---

[15] **interdum,** *adv.,* sometimes, at times

[16] **alternīs,** *adv.,* alternately, by turns

[17] **simul,** *adv.,* at the same time, simultaneously. *In another letter (1.6), Pliny tells how he combined hunting and studying in one operation.*

[18] **adhūc,** *adv.,* thus far, till now

37

[1] *Pliny and Caninius were fellow townsmen from Comum (Como) at the south end of beautiful Lake Larius (Como) in northern Italy.*

[2] **an** *in questions,* or

[3] **piscor** (1), to fish

[4] **Lārius, -iī,** Lake Larius (now Lake Como)

[5] **lacus, -ūs,** lake

[6] **piscis, -is,** *m.,* fish

[7] **fera** (*sc.* **bēstia), -ae,** wild animal

[8] **cingō, -ere, cīnxī, cīnctum,** surround, gird

[9] **sēcessus, -ūs,** retreat, summer place

[10] **adfatim,** *adv.,* sufficiently, abundantly

[11] **sug-gerō, -ere, -gessī, -gestum,** furnish, afford, supply

[12] **sīve . . . sīve,** (**sī-ve),** if . . . or if, whether . . . or

[13] **angō, -ere,** torment

[14] **artus, -a, -um,** close, narrow; **laqueus, -ī,** noose, cord

[15] **ab-rumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum,** break off, sever. *Pliny is tied up in Rome.*

[16] **negōtium, -iī,** business; duty

[17] **accrēscō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētum,** increase; **nova (negōtia) accrēscunt (veteribus negōtiīs)** new duties increase by . . . *or* are added to . . .

[18] **per-agō,** complete

[19] **nexus, -ūs,** coils, obligations

[20] **catēna, -ae,** chain

[21] **in diēs,** from day to day

[22] **occupātiō, -ōnis,** *f.,* occupation, employment

[23] **agmen, -minis,** *n.,* line of march, column

[24] **ex-tendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum,** extend, increase

38

[1] he lost (*not* sent away)

[2] **singulāris, -e,** extraordinary

[3] *The abl. is sometimes used instead of the acc. to express the idea of extent of time.*

[4] **iūrgium, -iī,** quarrel

[5] **offēnsa, -ae,** hatred, affront

[6] **reverentia, -ae,** respect

[7] **marītus, -ī,** husband

[8] **mereor, -ērī, meritus sum,** deserve

[9] **dīversus, -a, -um,** diverse, different

[10] **grandis, -e,** great

[11] **hinc** *here* = from this cause

[12] **exacerbō** (1), exasperate; embitter

tātibus crēscit carendī dolor. Erō ergō suspēnsus[13] prō homine amīcissimō dum[14] admittere[15] āvocāmenta[16] et cicātrīcem[17] patī possit, quam nihil aequē ac[18] necessitās[19] ipsa et diēs[20] longa et satietās[21] dolōris indūcit.[22] Valē. (**Pliny,** *Epistulae* 8.5, excerpts)

39. FAITHFUL IN SICKNESS AND IN DEATH

C. PLĪNIUS NEPŌTĪ SUŌ S.

(. . . Fannia[1]) neptis[2] Arriae[3] illīus[4] quae marītō[5] et sōlācium mortis et exemplum fuit. Multa referēbat[6] aviae[7] suae nōn minōra hōc,[8] sed obscūriōra,[9] quae tibi exīstimō tam mīrābilia legentī[10] fore[11] quam mihi audientī fuērunt.

5 Aegrōtābat[12] Caecīna Paetus, marītus eius, aegrōtābat et fīlius, uterque mortiferē,[13] ut vidēbātur. Fīlius dēcessit[14] eximiā[15] pulchritūdine,[16] parī verēcundiā,[17] et parentibus nōn minus ob[18] alia cārus quam quod fīlius erat. Huic illa ita fūnus[19] parāvit . . . ut ignōrāret marītus. Quīn immō,[20] quotiēns[21] cubiculum[22] eius intrāret,[23] vīvere fīlium atque etiam commodiōrem[24]

10 esse simulābat[25]; ac persaepe[26] interrogantī[27] quid ageret puer respondēbat, "Bene quiēvit,[28] libenter cibum[29] sūmpsit." Deinde, cum diū cohibitae[30] lacri

---

[13] **suspēnsus, -a, -um,** in suspense, anxious
[14] **dum,** *conj.,* until, *used with the subj. to imply intention or expectancy*
[15] **ad-mittō,** admit, receive
[16] **āvocāmentum, -ī,** diversion
[17] **cicātrīx, -trīcis,** *f.,* scar, *which implies healing*
[18] **aequē ac,** equally as, quite so well as
[19] **necessitās (-tātis,** *f.***) ipsa,** necessity itself, sheer necessity
[20] *here* = time
[21] **satietās, -tātis,** *f.,* satiety
[22] **in-dūcō,** bring on, induce

39

[1] **Fannia (est)**
[2] **neptis, -is,** *f.,* granddaughter
[3] **Arria, -ae,** Arria (Maior), *brave wife of Caecina Paetus. When, because of his part in a conspiracy against the emperor Claudius, he had to commit suicide in 42* A.D., *Arria committed suicide with him, actually setting him an example as indicated at the end of the letter.* (*Cp.* **"Paete, Nōn Dolet,"** *ch. 39*).
[4] **ille,** the famous, *when immediately following its noun*
[5] **marītō,** *dat.*
[6] **referēbat,** *subject* = *Fannia, who related these episodes during a conversation with Pliny on the preceding day.*
[7] **avia, -ae,** grandmother; **aviae,** *gen. case*
[8] **hōc,** *abl. of comparison, referring to the rel. cl. of the preceding sent.*

[9] **obscūrus, -a, -um,** obscure, unknown
[10] **legentī,** to be construed with **tibi**
[11] **fore** = **futūra esse,** *fut. inf. in ind. state. depending on* **exīstimō** (1), think
[12] **aegrōtō** (1), be sick
[13] **mortiferē,** *adv.* (**mors-ferō**), fatally
[14] **dē-cēdō,** go away, die (*cp.* deceased)
[15] **eximius, -a, -um,** extraordinary
[16] **pulchritūdō, -dinis,** *f.,* beauty; **eximiā pulchritūdine,** *abl.* describing **fīlius** *but more easily translated if we supply a word like* **puer: fīlius dēcessit—(puer) eximiā pulchritūdine,** *etc.*
[17] **verecūndia, -ae,** modesty
[18] **ob,** *prep.* + *acc.,* on account of; toward
[19] **fūnus, -eris,** *n.,* funeral
[20] **quīn immō,** why, on the contrary
[21] **quotiēns,** *adv.,* as often as
[22] **cubiculum, -ī,** bedroom
[23] **intrō** (1), enter; **intrāret:** *in Silver Lat. the impf. subj. of customary action is often found in place of the indic.*
[24] **commodus, -a, -um,** suitable, satisfactory; *here* = better
[25] **simulō** (1) pretend
[26] **per-saepe,** *adv.,* very often
[27] **interrogō** (1), ask, inquire (*cp.* **rogō**); (**marītō**) interrogantī
[28] **quiēscō, -ere, -ēvī, -ētus,** rest, be quiet
[29] **cibus, -ī,** food
[30] **cohibeō, -ere, -uī, -itum,** hold together, hold back, restrain

mae vincerent prōrumperentque,[31] ēgrediēbātur; tunc sē dolōrī dabat. Satiāta, siccīs[32] oculīs, compositō vultū redībat, tamquam orbitātem[33] forīs relīquisset.[34] Praeclārum quidem illud[35] eiusdem: ferrum stringere,[36]

15 perfodere[37] pectus, extrahere[38] pugiōnem,[39] porrigere[40] marītō, addere[41] vōcem immortālem ac paene[42] dīvīnam,[43] "Paete, nōn dolet." . . . Valē. (**Pliny,** *Epistulae* 3.16, excerpts)

40. A SWEET, BRAVE GIRL

C. PLĪNIUS MARCELLĪNŌ SUŌ S.

Trīstissimus haec tibi scrībō, Fundānī nostrī fīliā minōre dēfūnctā,[1] quā puellā[2] nihil umquam fēstīvius,[3] amābilius,[4] nec longiōre vītā . . . dignius vīdī. Nōndum annōs trēdecim implēverat,[5] et iam illī[6] anīlis[7] prūdentia, mātrōnālis[8] gravitās[9] erat, et tamen suāvitās[10] puellāris[11] . . . Ut[12] illa patris cer-

5 vīcibus[13] inhaerēbat[14]! Ut nōs, amīcōs paternōs,[15] et amanter[16] et modestē[17] complectēbātur![18] Ut nūtrīcēs,[19] ut paedagōgōs,[20] ut praeceptōrēs[21] prō suō quemque officiō dīligēbat! Quam studiōsē,[22] quam intelligenter[23] lēctitābat[24]! . . .

Quā illa temperantiā,[25] quā patientiā, quā etiam cōnstantiā[26] novissi-

10 mam valētūdinem[27] tulit! Medicīs obsequēbātur;[28] sorōrem, patrem adhortābātur[29]; ipsamque sē dēstitūtam[30] corporis vīribus vigōre[31] animī susti-

---

[31] **prōrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum,** burst forth

[32] **siccus, -a, -um,** dry; **siccīs oculīs** *abl. abs.*

[33] **orbitās, -tātis,** *f.,* bereavement, loss

[34] *What kind of condition in the* **tamquam** *cl.?*

[35] that deed; *sc.* **fuit**

[36] **stringō, -ere, -strīnxī, strictus,** draw; **stringere,** *inf. in apposition with* **illud**

[37] **perfodiō, -ere, -fōdī, -fossum,** pierce (*lit.* dig through)

[38] **ex-trahō**

[39] **pugiō, -ōnis,** *m.,* dagger

[40] **porrigō, -ere, -rēxī, -rēctum,** hold out, extend

[41] **ad-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditum,** add

[42] **paene,** *adv.,* almost

[43] **dīvīnus, -a, -um** = *Eng.*

40

[1] **dēfungor, -ī, -fūnctus sum,** finish *or* complete life, die. *The family tomb was discovered near Rome in 1880 and in it a cinerary urn with the inscription:* **Dīs mānibus Minicae Mārcellae, Fundānī fīliae. Vīxit annīs XII, mēnsibus XI, diēbus VII:** To the divine shades of Minicia Marcella . . . (*The abbreviations in the inscription have been expanded.*)

[2] **puellā,** *abl. of comparison*

[3] **fēstīvus, -a, -um,** pleasant, agreeable

[4] **amābilis, -e,** lovable, lovely

[5] **impleō, -ēre, -plēvī, -plētum,** fill up, complete

[6] *dat. of possession* (*S.S.*)

[7] **anīlis, -e,** of an old woman

[8] **mātrōnālis, -e,** of a matron, matronly

[9] **gravitās, -tātis,** *f.,* seriousness, dignity

[10] **suāvitās, -tātis,** *f.,* sweetness

[11] **puellāris, -e,** girlish

[12] how

[13] **cervīx, -īcis,** *f., usually pl.* (**cervīcēs**) *as here,* neck

[14] **inhaereō, -ēre, -haesī, -haesum,** cling

[15] **paternus, -a, -um,** paternal, of a father

[16] **amanter,** *adv. of* **amāns**

[17] **modestē,** *adv.,* modestly

[18] **complector, -ī, -plexus sum,** hold in the arms, embrace

[19] **nūtrīx, -īcis,** *f.,* nurse

[20] **paedagōgus, -ī,** tutor (*slave who escorted children*)

[21] **praeceptor, -ōris,** *m.,* teacher (*in a school, not a private tutor*)

[22] **studiōsē,** *adv. of* **studiōsus,** full of **studium**

[23] **intellegenter,** *adv. of* **intelligēns**

[24] **lēctitō** (1), read (eagerly)

[25] **temperantia, -ae,** self-control

[26] **cōnstantia, -ae,** firmness

[27] **valētūdō, -dinis,** *f., here* = bad health, illness

[28] **ob + sequor,** obey

[29] **adhortor** = **hortor**

[30] **dēstituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtum,** desert, abandon

[31] **vigor, -ōris,** *m.,* vigor; **vigōre,** *abl. of means with* **sustinēbat**

nēbat.[32] Dūrāvit[33] hic[34] illī ūsque ad extrēmum,[35] nec aut spatiō[36] valētūdinis aut metū mortis īnfrāctus est[37] . . . Ō trīste plānē[38] acerbumque fūnus[39] . . . Iam dēstināta erat[40] ēgregiō[41] iuvenī,[42] iam ēlēctus[43] nūptiārum[44] diēs, iam

15 nōs vocātī. Quod gaudium quō maerōre[45] mūtātum est!

Nōn possum exprimere[46] verbīs quantum animō vulnus accēperim cum audīvī Fundānum ipsum praecipientem,[47] quod[48] in vestēs,[49] margarīta,[50] gemmās[51] fuerat ērogātūrus,[52] hoc in tūs[53] et unguenta et odōrēs[54] impende-rētur[55] . . . Sī quās ad eum dē dolōre tam iūstō litterās mittēs, mementō[56]

20 adhibēre[57] sōlācium . . . molle[58] et hūmānum. (**Pliny**, *Epistulae* 5.16, excerpts)

41. PLINY'S CONCERN ABOUT A SICK FREEDMAN

C. PLĪNIUS VALERIŌ PAULĪNŌ SUŌ S.

Videō quam molliter[1] tuōs[2] habeās[3]; quō simplicius[4] tibi cōnfitēbor quā indulgentiā[5] meōs tractem.[6] Quod sī essem nātūrā asperior et dūrior, frangeret mē tamen īnfīrmitās[7] lībertī[8] meī Zōsimī,[9] cui tantō maior hūmānitās[10] exhibenda[11] est, quantō nunc illā magis eget. Homō probus,[12] officiōsus,[13]

5 litterātus[14]; et ars quidem eius et quasi īnscrīptiō[15]—cōmoedus . . . Ūtitur et

---

[32] (puella) sustinēbat sē ipsam
[33] dūrō (1), endure
[34] hic (vigor animī)
[35] extrēmum, -ī = fīnis
[36] spatium, -iī, space, duration
[37] īnfringō, -ere, -frēgī, -frāctum, break
[38] plānē, *adv.*, clearly
[39] *here* = mors
[40] dēstinō (1), bind, engage
[41] ēgregius, -a, -um, excellent, distinguished
[42] iuvenis, -is, *m.*, young man
[43] ē-ligō = legō
[44] nūptiae, -ārum, wedding
[45] maeror, -ōris, *m.*, grief
[46] ex-primō (= premō), express
[47] praecipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, direct
[48] *The antecedent is* hoc *in the following line.*
[49] vestis, -is, *f.*, garment, clothes
[50] margarītum, -ī, pearl
[51] gemma, -ae, jewel
[52] ērogō (1), *pay out, spend;* fuerat ērogātūrus *(act. periphrastic),* he had been about to spend, had intended to spend *(on clothes, jewels, etc., for the wedding)*
[53] tūs, tūris, *n.*, incense
[54] odor, -ōris, *m.*, perfume
[55] impendō, -ere, -pendī, -pēnsum, expend; impenderētur, *subj. in a jussive noun cl.*
[56] meminī, meminisse, *defective vb.,* remember; mementō, *fut. imper.,* remember

[57] adhibeō, -ere, -hibuī, -hibitum, use, furnish
[58] mollis, -e, soft, gentle

41
[1] molliter, *adv. of* mollis
[2] tuōs (servōs et lībertōs); *so* meōs *below*
[3] treat
[4] simpliciter, *adv.,* frankly, candidly; quō simplicius by which *(degree of difference)* more frankly = the more frankly
[5] indulgentia, -ae, kindness
[6] tractō (1), handle, treat
[7] īnfīrmitās, -tātis, *f.,* illness, weakness
[8] lībertus, -ī, freedman *(a slave who had somehow secured his freedom) in contrast to a* līber vir *(one who was born free). A freedman commonly remained closely attached to his former master.*
[9] Zōsimus, -ī, Zosimus, apparently a Greek
[10] hūmānitās, -tātis, *f.,* kindness
[11] ex-hibeō, show, exhibit
[12] probus, -a, -um, honorable, fine
[13] officiōsus, -a, -um, obliging, courteous
[14] litterātus, -a, -um, well-educated; *Greek slaves especially were often well educated.*
[15] īnscrīptiō, -ōnis, *f., here* = label, *a placard hung around a slave's neck in the slave market to indicate his special abilities.* —cōmoedus, -ī, comic actor, *often a slave trained to read at dinners scenes from famous comedies. Although this was Zosimus' specialty, we find him in the next two sents. surprisingly versatile and talented.*

cithara perītē.[16] Īdem tam commodē[17] ōrātiōnēs et historiās[18] et carmina legit ut hoc sōlum didicisse videātur.

Haec tibi sēdulō[19] exposuī quō magis scīrēs quam multa ūnus mihi et quam iūcunda ministeria[20] praestāret. Accēdit longa iam cāritās[21] hominis, quam ipsa perīcula auxērunt[22] . . . Ante aliquot[23] annōs,[24] dum intentē instanterque[25] prōnūntiat, sanguinem[26] reiēcit[27]; atque ob hoc in Aegyptum[28] missus ā mē, post longam peregrīnātiōnem[29] cōnfīrmātus[30] rediit nūper. Deinde . . . veteris īnfīrmitātis[31] tussiculā[32] admonitus,[33] rūrsus sanguinem reddidit.[34]

Quā ex causā dēstināvī[35] eum mittere in praedia[36] tua quae Forō Iūliī[37] possidēs.[38] Audīvī enim tē referentem esse ibi āera[39] salūbrem[40] et lac[41] eius modī cūrātiōnibus[42] accommodātissimum.[43] Rogō ergō scrībās[44] tuīs[45] ut illī vīlla, ut domus[46] pateat . . . Valē. (**Pliny,** *Epistulae* 5.19, excerpts)

ON BEHALF OF A PENITENT FREEDMAN (42–43)

42. C. PLĪNIUS SABĪNIĀNŌ SUŌ S.

Lībertus tuus, cui suscēnsēre[1] tē dīxerās, vēnit ad mē . . . Flēvit multum, multum rogāvit, multum etiam tacuit; in summā,[2] fēcit mihi fidem paenitentiae.[3] Vērē crēdō ēmendātum[4] quia dēlīquisse[5] sē sentit. Īrāsceris, sciō; et īrāsceris meritō,[6] id quoque sciō; sed tunc praecipua[7] mānsuētūdinis[8] laus cum īrae causa iūstissima est. Amāstī[9] hominem et, spērō, amābis; interim[10]

[16] **perītē,** *adv.,* skillfully

[17] **commodē,** *adv.,* fitly, satisfactorily

[18] **historia, -ae** = *Eng.*

[19] **sēdulō,** *adv.,* carefully

[20] **ministerium, -iī,** service

[21] **cāritās, -tātis,** *f.,* dearness, affection (*cp.* **cārus**)

[22] **augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctum,** increase

[23] **aliquot,** *indecl. adj.,* several, some

[24] **ante . . . annōs,** several years ago

[25] earnestly and emphatically

[26] **sanguis, -inis,** *m.,* blood

[27] **re-iciō,** reject, spit out

[28] **Aegyptus, -ī,** *f.,* Egypt

[29] **peregrīnātiō, -ōnis,** *f.,* travel *or* sojourn abroad

[30] **cōnfīrmō** (1), strengthen

[31] **īnfīrmitās, -tātis,** *f.,* weakness, sickness

[32] **tussicula, -ae,** slight cough

[33] **ad-monitus** = **monitus**

[34] **reddidit** = **reiēcit**

[35] **dēstinō** (1), intend, resolve

[36] **praedium, -iī,** country seat

[37] **Forum Iūliī, Forī Iūliī,** Forum of Julius, *modern* Fréjus, *a coastal town of southern France;* **Forō,** *place where*

[38] **possideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum,** possess, own

[39] **āēr, āeris,** *m.,* air; **āera** = *Gk. acc. sg.*

[40] **salūbris, -e,** healthful; *still so regarded*

[41] **lac, lactis,** *n.,* milk; *i.e., for the milk cure*

[42] **cūrātiō, -ōnis,** *f.,* cure

[43] **accommodātus, -a, -um,** suited

[44] **(ut) scrībās: ut** *is sometimes omitted in such cls.*

[45] **tuīs,** your servants

[46] **ut vīlla (pateat), ut domus pateat:** *i.e., he is to have access to the great house itself as well as to the estate.*

42

[1] **suscēnseō, -ēre, -cēnsuī, -cēnsum,** + *dat.,* be angry with

[2] **summa, -ae,** sum

[3] **paenitentia, -ae,** repentance

[4] **ēmendō** (1), correct; (**eum**) **ēmendātum** (**esse**)

[5] **dēlinquō, -ere, -līquī, -lictum,** fail (in duty), commit a crime

[6] **meritō,** *adv.,* rightly (with merit)

[7] **praecipuus, -a, -um,** special; *sc.* **est**

[8] **mānsuētūdō, -inis,** *f.,* gentleness, mildness

[9] *contracted form* = **amāvistī**

[10] **interim,** *adv.,* meanwhile (*cp.* **intereā**)

sufficit[11] ut exōrārī[12] tē sinās[13] . . . Nē torserīs[14] illum, nē torserīs etiam tē; torquēris[15] enim, cum tam lēnis[16] īrāsceris. Vereor nē videar nōn rogāre sed cōgere, sī precibus[17] eius meās iūnxerō. Iungam tamen tantō plēnius[18] et effūsius,[19] quantō[20] ipsum[21] ācrius sevēriusque[22] corripuī[23] . . . Valē. (Pliny, *Epistulae* 9.21, excerpts)

43. C. PLĪNIUS SABĪNIĀNŌ SUŌ S.

Bene fēcistī[1] quod lībertum[2] aliquandō[3] tibi cārum redūcentibus[4] epistulīs[5] meīs in domum,[6] in animum recēpistī. Iuvābit hoc tē, mē certē iuvat; prīmum,[7] quod tē tam tractābilem[8] videō ut in īrā regī possīs; deinde, quod tantum mihi tribuis[9] ut vel[10] auctōritātī meae pāreās vel precibus indulgeās.[11]

5   Igitur laudō et grātiās agō . . . Valē. (Pliny, *Epistulae* 9.24, excerpts)

44. SELECTION OF A TEACHER

C. PLĪNIUS MAURICŌ SUŌ S.

Quid ā tē mihi iūcundius potuit iniungī[1] quam ut praeceptōrem frātris tuī līberīs quaererem? Nam beneficiō[2] tuō in scholam[3] redeō et illam dulcissimam aetātem quasi resūmō.[4] Sedeō inter iuvenēs, ut solēbam, atque etiam experior quantum apud illōs auctōritātis[5] ex studiīs habeam. Nam prox-

5   imē[6] frequentī[7] audītōriō[8] inter sē cōram[9] multīs ōrdinis[10] nostrī clārē[11]

---

[11] **sufficit,** *subject* = **ut-***cl.*
[12] **ex-ōrō,** *stronger form of* **ōrō**
[13] **sinō, -ere, sīvī, situm,** allow, permit
[14] **torqueō, -ēre, torsī, tortum,** twist, torture; **nē torserīs,** *L.I. 22 n. 1*
[15] **torquēris,** you are tormented = you torment yourself (*reflexive use of the pass.*)
[16] **lēnis, -e,** gentle, kind; *agreeing with subject of* **īrāsceris:** you, such a gentle person
[17] **prex, precis,** *f.,* prayer
[18] **plēnē,** *adv. of* **plēnus**
[19] **effūsē,** *adv.,* profusely, unrestrainedly
[20] **tantō . . . quantō,** the more . . . the more, *abl. of degree of difference (S.S.)*
[21] (**lībertum**) **ipsum**
[22] **sevērē,** *adv.,* seriously, severely
[23] **cor-ripiō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptum,** seize, accuse, blame

43

[1] you did well because = thank you for
[2] **lībertum,** *in thought, the obj. of both* **redūcentibus** *and* **recēpistī**
[3] **aliquandō,** *adv.,* once

[4] **re-dūcō**
[5] **epistulīs,** *here pl. of a single letter (the preceding one) on the analogy of* **litterae, -ārum**
[6] *Both prepositional phrases, connected by* **et** *understood, depend on* **recēpistī**
[7] **prīmum,** *adv.,* first
[8] **tractābilis, -ē,** tractable, compliant
[9] **tribuō, -ere, -buī, -būtum,** attribute, ascribe
[10] **vel . . . vel,** either . . . or
[11] **indulgeō, -ēre, -dulsī, -dultum,** yield to, gratify

44

[1] **in-iungō,** enjoin, impose
[2] **beneficiō tuō,** thanks to you
[3] **schola, -ae,** school
[4] **re-sūmō, -ere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptum,** resume
[5] *gen.* with **quantum**
[6] **proximē,** *adv.,* very recently
[7] **frequēns,** *gen.* **-entis,** crowded
[8] **audītōrium, -iī,** lecture room, school; **audītōriō,** *place where without a prep.*
[9] **cōram,** *prep.* + *abl.,* in the presence of
[10] *i.e., the senatorial order*
[11] **clārē** (*adv. of* **clārus**), *here* = loudly

loquēbantur: intrāvī, conticuērunt[12]; quod[13] nōn referrem, nisi ad illōrum magis laudem quam ad meam pertinēret[14] ... Cum omnēs quī profiten-tur[15] audierō, quid dē quōque sentiam scrībam efficiamque,[16] quantum ta-men epistulā cōnsequī[17] poterō, ut ipse omnēs audīsse videāris. Dēbeō enim
10 tibi, dēbeō memoriae frātris tuī hanc fidem, hoc studium, praesertim[18] su-per[19] tantā rē. Nam quid magis interest vestrā[20] quam ut līberī ... dignī illō patre, tē patruō[21] reperiantur? ... Valē. (**Pliny,** *Epistulae* 2.8 excerpts)

45. THE OLD BOY DYED HIS HAIR

Mentīris[1] iuvenem tīnctīs,[2] Laetīne,[3] capillīs,[4]
  tam subitō corvus quī modo cycnus[5] erās.
Nōn omnēs fallis[6]; scit tē Prōserpina[7] cānum[8]:
  persōnam capitī dētrahet[9] illa[10] tuō.
(**Martial** 3.43)

46. WHAT'S IN A NAME?

Cinnam,[1] Cinname,[2] tē iubēs vocārī.
Nōn est hic, rogo, Cinna, barbarismus[3]?
Tū sī Fūrius[4] ante dictus essēs,
Fūr[5] istā ratiōne dīcerēris.
(**Martial** 6.17)

---

[12] **conticēscō, -ere, -ticuī,** become silent
[13] **quod,** *having as antecedent the whole preceding idea*
[14] **pertineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum,** pertain to
[15] **profiteor, -ērī, -fessus sum,** teach, *a late meaning of the word*
[16] **efficiō ... ut,** *L.A. 8 n. 20–21*
[17] **cōn-sequor,** accomplish
[18] **praesertim,** *adv.,* especially
[19] **super,** *prep.* + *abl.,* about
[20] **interest vestrā,** interests you (*highly idiomatic*)
[21] **patruus, -ī,** (paternal) uncle; **tē patruō** *is in the same construction as* **illō patre.**

45

METER: Elegiac couplet.
[1] **mentior, -īrī, -ītus sum,** lie, declare falsely, *here* = imitate
[2] **tingō, -ere, tīnxī, tīnctus,** wet, dye
[3] **Laetīnus, -ī,** Laetinus
[4] **capillī, -ōrum,** hair
[5] **cycnus, -ī,** swan

[6] **nōn ōmnēs (fallis)** *seems to imply that the hair dyes were good enough to deceive at least some people.*
[7] **Prōserpina, -ae,** Proserpina, *goddess of the underworld, and so of death*
[8] **cānus, -a, -um,** gray; **tē (esse) cānum**
[9] **dē-trahō**
[10] **illa** = Proserpina

46

METER: Hendecasyllabic.
[1] **Cinna, -ae,** *m.,* Cinna, *a famous Roman name*
[2] **Cinnamus, -ī,** Cinnamus, *a slave name meaning "cinnamon." The Romans often gave such names to slaves. Cinnamus, now a freedman, wanted to change his name to a Roman one for obvious reasons.*
[3] **barbarismus, -ī,** a barbarism, an impropriety of speech
[4] **Fūrius, -ī,** Furius, *an old Roman name*
[5] **Fūr,** *from* **fūr, fūris,** *m.,* thief; *cp.* **fūrtīvus**

47. FAKE TEARS

Āmissum[1] nōn flet cum sōla est Gellia[2] patrem;
  sī quis adest, iussae[3] prōsiliunt[4] lacrimae.
Nōn lūget[5] quisquis laudārī, Gellia, quaerit;
  ille dolet vērē quī sine teste[6] dolet.
  (Martial 1.33)

48. EVEN THOUGH YOU DO INVITE ME—I'LL COME!

Quod convīvāris[1] sine mē tam saepe, Luperce,[2]
  invēnī noceam quā ratiōne tibi.
Īrāscor: licet[3] ūsque vocēs mittāsque[4] rogēsque—
  "Quid faciēs?" inquis. Quid faciam? Veniam!
  (Martial 6.51)

49. PRO-CRAS-TINATION

Crās tē victūrum,[1] crās dīcis, Postume,[2] semper.
  Dīc mihi, crās istud,[3] Postume, quando venit?
Quam longē est crās istud? ubi est? aut unde petendum[4]?
  Numquid[5] apud Parthōs Armeniōsque[6] latet[7]?
5 Iam crās istud habet Priamī[8] vel Nestoris[9] annōs.
  Crās istud quantī[10] dīc mihi possit emī[11]?
Crās vīvēs? Hodiē iam vīvere, Postume, sērum[12] est.
  Ille sapit quisquis, Postume, vīxit herī.
  (Martial 5.58)

47

METER: Elegiac couplet.
[1] **āmissum patrem**
[2] **Gellia, -ae,** Gellia
[3] at her bidding; *how literally?*
[4] **prōsiliō** (4), leap forth
[5] **lūgeō, -ēre, lūxī, lūctum,** mourn
[6] **testis, -is,** *m.,* witness

48

METER: Elegiac couplet.
[1] **convīvor** (1), to feast
[2] **Lupercus, -ī,** Lupercus
[3] **licet ūsque (ut) vocēs** (it is even permitted that you call), you may even invite me, *or* even though you invite me
[4] *i.e., send a slave as a special messenger*

49

METER: Elegiac couplet.
[1] **victūrum,** *sc.* esse
[2] *No doubt Martial intended to have us think of Horace's Postumus in L.I. 25 above.*
[3] **crās istud,** that "tomorrow" of yours, *subj. of* **venit**
[4] **petendum (est)**
[5] **numquid latet,** it does not lie hidden, does it?
[6] among the Parthians and Armenians, *i.e., at land's end in the East*
[7] **lateō, -ēre, -uī,** lie hidden
[8] **Priamus, -ī,** Priam, *aged king of Troy*
[9] **Nestōr, -oris,** Nestor, *Greek leader famed for his years and wisdom*
[10] **quantī,** *gen. of indef. value:* at what price, for how much can that tomorrow be bought
[11] **emō, -ere, ēmī, ēmptum,** buy
[12] **sērus, -a, -um,** late; **sērum,** *pred. adj. in n.* to agree with **hodiē vīvere,** *which is subject of* **est**

50. ISSA

Issa[1] est passere[2] nēquior[3] Catullī:
Issa est pūrior ōsculō columbae;[4]
Issa est blandior[5] omnibus puellīs;
Issa est cārior Indicīs[6] lapillīs[7];

5   Issa est dēliciae[8] catella[9] Pūblī.[10]

Hanc tū, sī queritur,[11] loquī putābis.
Sentit trīstitiamque[12] gaudiumque.

. . .

Hanc nē lūx rapiat suprēma[13] tōtam,
pictā[14] Pūblius exprimit[15] tabellā

10   in quā tam similem vidēbis Issam[16]
ut sit tam similis sibī nec[17] ipsa.
Issam dēnique pōne cum tabellā:
aut utramque putābis esse vēram
aut utramque putābis esse pictam.

(Martial 1.109)

50

METER: Hendecasyllabic.
[1] **Issa,** *colloquial and affectionate form for* **Ipsa** *and here used as the name of a pet dog*
[2] **passer Catullī,** *see L.I. 3*
[3] **nēquam,** *indecl. adj.; compar.* **nēquior, -ius,** worthless, good for nothing, mischievous
[4] **columba, -ae,** dove
[5] **blandus, -a, -um,** flattering, caressing, coaxing
[6] **Indicus, -a, -um,** of India
[7] **lapillus, -ī,** precious stone, gem
[8] *see L.I. 3*
[9] **catella, -ae,** little dog
[10] **Pūblī** = **Pūbliī,** *gen. sg. of* **Pūblius**
[11] *here* = whimper
[12] **trīstitia, -ae,** sadness
[13] **lūx (diēs) suprēma** = mors
[14] **pingō, -ere, pīnxī, pictum,** paint; **pictā tabellā,** by a painted tablet = in a painting
[15] **exprimō, -ere, -pressī, pressum,** express, portray
[16] **tam similem ... Issam:** an Issa (*of the painting*) so similar (*to the real Issa*)
[17] **nec** *here* = not even

Optional Self-Tutorial Exercises

These optional exercises have been included in the hope of enriching the potential of this book for its various types of users.

1. **Repetītiō est māter memoriae.** In language study the value of repetition is indisputable. To the already large amount of repetition achieved in the regular chapters these exercises add even more of this practice. The phrases and sentences have deliberately been made simple so that the immediate points in forms and syntax may stand out strikingly. The words are purposely limited to those of the formal lesson vocabularies, which obviously should be memorized before turning to these tutorial exercises. As a result of their very nature and purpose, such sentences can make no claim to inspiration. Some hints of the worthwhile reading matter for which one studies Latin are to be found in the *Sententiae Antīquae* and the reading passages from the ancient authors, which are the heart of this book; but if one wants additional repetitious drill by which to establish linguistic reflexes, one can find it here in these self-tutorial exercises. As has been suggested elsewhere, be sure always to read aloud every Latin word and sentence—carefully, for such a practice enables one to learn through the ear as well as the eye and can provide many of the benefits of a language laboratory.

2. To students enrolled in a regular Latin course these exercises with their keys can prove valuable for review and self-testing and can be helpful in preparation for examinations.

3. Also to the private individual who wishes to learn or review Latin independently, these exercises are certain to be valuable, since they can be used as self-tests which can be corrected via the key. Likewise, completing

these practice exercises with benefit of key will provide greater confidence in tackling the regular exercises of the book.

4. All students can test themselves in simple Latin composition by translating the English sentences of the key back into Latin and checking this work via the corresponding Latin sentences of the exercises.

5. In the translations ordinarily only one of the various meanings of a word given in the vocabulary will be used in any specific instance. If at times the translations are somewhat formal, the reason is that they can in this way follow the Latin more closely; and certainly these particular sentences are intended to provide practice in understanding Latin rather than practice in literary expression. Polished literary expression in translation is most desirable and should be practiced in connection with the other exercises in this book.

6. The answer keys have been placed by themselves after the exercises to facilitate self-testing and so that the exercises may be used for practice in class when the instructor wishes. It hardly need be added that the surest way to test oneself is to write out the answers before turning to the key.

7. Finally, let it be emphasized once again that for maximum value you must say aloud all the Latin words, phrases, and sentences, and that you must have studied the text of each lesson carefully through the vocabulary before turning to these exercises.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 1

1. Give the English pronouns equivalent to each of the following Latin personal endings: (1) -t, (2) -mus, (3) -ō, (4) -nt, (5) -s, (6) -tis.
2. Name the following forms and translate each: (1) monēre, (2) vidēre, (3) valēre, (4) dēbēre.
3. Name the following forms and translate each: (1) vocāre, (2) servāre, (3) dare, (4) cōgitāre, (5) laudāre, (6) amāre, (7) errāre.
4. Name the following forms and translate each: (1) vocā, (2) servā, (3) dā, (4) cōgitā, (5) laudā, (6) amā, (7) monē, (8) vidē, (9) valē.
5. Name the following forms and translate each: (1) vocāte, (2) servāte, (3) date, (4) cōgitāte, (5) laudāte, (6) amāte, (7) monēte, (8) vidēte, (9) valēte.
6. Translate the following words: (1) vocat, (2) cōgitāmus, (3) amant, (4) dēbēs, (5) videt, (6) vident, (7) dēbēmus, (8) valēs, (9) errātis, (10) vidēmus, (11) amat, (12) vidētis, (13) errās, (14) dant, (15) servāmus, (16) dat, (17) amant, (18) vidēs.

7. Monent mē sī errō. 8. Monet mē sī errant. 9. Monēte mē sī errat. 10. Dēbēs monēre mē. 11. Dēbētis servāre mē. 12. Nōn dēbent laudāre mē. 13. "Quid dat?" "Saepe nihil dat." 14. Mē saepe vocant et (*and*) monent. 15. Nihil videō. Quid vidēs? 16. Mē laudā sī nōn errō, amābō tē.

17. Sī valētis, valēmus. 18. Sī valet, valeō. 19. Sī mē amat, dēbet mē lau-
dāre. 20. Cōnservāte mē. 21. Nōn dēbeō errāre. 22. Quid dēbēmus lau-
dāre? 23. Videt; cōgitat; monet.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 2

1. Give the Latin for the definite article "the" and the indefinite article "a."
2. Name the Latin case for each of the following constructions or ideas:
   (1) direct object of a verb; (2) possession; (3) subject of a verb;
   (4) means; (5) direct address; (6) indirect object of a verb.
3. Name the case, number, and syntactical usage indicated by each of the
   following endings of the first declension: (1) -ās; (2) -a; (3) -am; (4) -ae
   (pl.).
4. Name the case(s) and number indicated by the following endings, and
   wherever possible name the English preposition(s) which can be associ-
   ated with them: (1) -ārum; (2) -ā; (3) -ae; (4) -īs.
5. Translate the following nouns and state the syntactical usage of each as
   indicated by its ending: (1) puellam; (2) puella; (3) puellās; (4) puellae
   (plural form); (5) patriās; (6) patriam; (7) patria; (8) patriae (pl.); (9) pe-
   cūniam; (10) pecūnia; (11) poenās; (12) poenam.
6. Translate the following nouns in accordance with their case endings:
   (1) puellae (sg.); (2) puellārum; (3) Ō patria; (4) patriae (sg.); (5) pecū-
   niā; (6) pecūniae (sg.); (7) poenīs; (8) poenā; (9) poenārum.
7. Given the following nominative singular forms, write the Latin forms
   requested in each instance: (1) **multa pecūnia** in the genitive and the ac-
   cusative singular; (2) **magna fāma** in dat. and abl. sg.; (3) **vīta mea** in gen.
   sg. and nom. pl.; (4) **fortūna tua** in acc. sg. and pl.; (5) **magna patria** in
   gen. sg. and pl.; (6) **fortūna mea** in abl. sg. and pl.; (7) **magna poena** in
   dat. sg. and pl.; (8) **multa philosophia** in dat. and abl. pl.
8. Translate each of the following phrases into Latin according to the case
   either named or indicated by the English preposition in each instance:
   (1) by much money; (2) of many girls; (3) to/for my country; (4) great
   life (as direct object of a verb); (5) by your penalties; (6) many countries
   (subject of a verb); (7) to/for many girls; (8) of my life; (9) O fortune;
   (10) girl's; (11) girls'; (12) girls (direct address); (13) the girls (direct ob-
   ject of a verb); (14) the girls (subject of a verb).

9. Valē, patria mea. 10. Fortūna puellae est magna. 11. Puella fortūnam
patriae tuae laudat. 12. Ō puella, patriam tuam servā. 13. Multae puellae
pecūniam amant. 14. Puellae nihil datis. 15. Pecūniam puellae videt.
16. Pecūniam puellārum nōn vidēs. 17. Monēre puellās dēbēmus.
18. Laudāre puellam dēbent. 19. Vīta multīs puellīs fortūnam dat.
20. Vītam meam pecūniā tuā cōnservās. 21. Fāma est nihil sine fortūnā.

22. Vītam sine pecūniā nōn amātis. 23. Sine fāmā et fortūnā patria nōn valet. 24. Īram puellārum laudāre nōn dēbēs. 25. Vītam sine poenīs amā-mus. 26. Sine philosophiā nōn valēmus. 27. Quid est vīta sine philo-sophiā?

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 3

1. Name the case, number, and syntactical usage indicated by each of the following endings of masculines of the 2nd declension: (1) -um; (2) -ī (pl.); (3) -us; (4) -ōs; (5) -e.
2. Name the case(s) and number of the following endings, and name the English preposition which can be associated with each: (1) -ō; (2) -ōrum; (3) -ī (sg.); (4) -īs.
3. Translate the following nouns and state the syntactical usage of each as indicated by its ending: (1) fīliōs; (2) fīliī (pl.); (3) fīlium; (4) populum; (5) popule; (6) populus; (7) vir; (8) virōs; (9) virī (pl.); (10) virum; (11) amīce; (12) amīcī (pl.); (13) amīcōs; (14) amīcum.
4. Translate the following in accordance with their case endings: (1) fīli-ōrum meōrum; (2) fīliō meō; (3) populī Rōmānī (sg.); (4) populō Rō-mānō; (5) virīs; (6) virī (sg.); (7) virōrum; (8) amīcōrum paucōrum; (9) amīcīs paucīs; (10) amīcō meō; (11) amīcī meī (sg.); (12) multīs puerīs.
5. Given the following nom. sg. forms, write the Latin forms requested in each instance: (1) **populus Rōmānus** in gen. and abl. sg.; (2) **magnus vir** in acc. and abl. pl.; (3) **puer meus** in dat. and abl. pl.; (4) **magnus numerus** in dat. and abl. sg.; (5) **magnus vir** in voc. sg. and pl.; (6) **fīlius meus** in gen. sg. and pl.
6. Translate the following phrases into Latin according to the case named or indicated by the English preposition in each instance: (1) of many boys; (2) to/for the Roman people; (3) my sons (object of verb); (4) O my sons; (5) a great number (obj. of verb); (6) by the great number; (7) O great man; (8) to/for many boys; (9) the great man (subj. of verb); (10) of the Roman people.

7. Valē, mī amīce. 8. Populus Rōmānus sapientiam fīliī tuī laudat. 9. Ō vir magne, populum Rōmānum servā. 10. Numerus populī Rōmānī est mag-nus. 11. Multī puerī puellās amant. 12. Fīliō meō nihil datis. 13. Virōs in agrō videō. 14. Amīcum fīliī meī vidēs. 15. Amīcum fīliōrum tuōrum nōn videt. 16. Dēbēmus fīliōs meōs monēre. 17. Dēbent fīlium tuum laudāre. 18. Vīta paucīs virīs fāmam dat. 19. Mē in numerō amīcōrum tuōrum habēs. 20. Virī magnī paucōs amīcōs saepe habent. 21. Amīcus meus sem-per cōgitat. 22. Fīlius magnī virī nōn semper est magnus vir. 23. Sapi-entiam magnōrum virōrum nōn semper vidēmus. 24. Philosophiam, sapi-entiam magnōrum virōrum, laudāre dēbētis.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 4

1. A 2nd-declension neuter has the same forms as the regular 2nd-declension masculine except in three instances. Name these three instances and give their neuter endings.
2. Name the case(s), number, and syntactical usage indicated by each of the following endings of the 2nd-declension neuter nouns: (1) -a; (2) -um.
3. Name the case(s) and number of the following 2nd-declension neuter endings and name the English preposition(s) which can be associated with each: (1) -ō; (2) -ōrum; (3) -ī; (4) -īs.
4. Translate the following neuter nouns and state the syntactical usage of each as indicated by its ending: (1) bella; (2) bellum; (3) officium; (4) officia; (5) perīcula.
5. Translate the following phrases in accordance with their case endings: (1) bellōrum malōrum; (2) bellō malō; (3) bellī malī; (4) bellīs malīs; (5) officiī magnī; (6) officiīs magnīs; (7) perīculō parvō.
6. Given the following nom. sg. forms, write the Latin forms requested in each instance: (1) **bellum parvum** in nom. and acc. pl.; (2) **ōtium bonum** in acc. sg. and pl.; (3) **perīculum magnum** in gen. sg. and pl.; (4) **officium vērum** in acc. and abl. sg.
7. Translate the following phrases into Latin in accordance with the case named or indicated by the English preposition in each instance: (1) O evil war; (2) to/for great duty; (3) by the great danger; (4) good leisure (object of verb); (5) by many wars; (6) of good leisure; (7) by the dangers of many wars; (8) small wars (subject of verb); (9) small wars (obj. of verb); (10) O foolish wars; (11) the small war (subj.)

8. Ōtium est bonum. 9. Multa bella ōtium nōn cōnservant. 10. Perīculum est magnum. 11. In magnō perīculō sumus. 12. Et ōtium perīcula saepe habet. 13. Vīta nōn est sine multīs perīculīs. 14. Bonī virī ōtium amant. 15. Stultus vir perīcula bellī laudat. 16. Ōtium bellō saepe nōn cōnservāmus. 17. Populus Rōmānus ōtium bonum nōn semper habet. 18. Patriam et ōtium bellīs parvīs saepe servant. 19. Multae puellae sunt bellae. 20. Vērī amīcī sunt paucī. 21. Amīcus meus est vir magnī officiī. 22. Officia magistrī sunt multa et magna. 23. Vir parvī ōtiī es. 24. Virī magnae cūrae estis. 25. Sine morā cūram officiō dare dēbēmus. 26. Sine oculīs vīta est nihil.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 5

1. Identify the *personal* endings of the future and imperfect tenses of the first two conjugations.
2. Are these the same as the endings of the present tense? If not, point out the differences.

3. Identify the future and imperfect tense signs in the first two conjugations.

4. How, in effect, can the following verb endings be translated: (1) -bāmus; (2) -bit; (3) -bitis; (4) -bō; (5) -bunt; (6) -bat?

5. When an adjective of the 1st and 2nd declensions has the masculine ending in -*er,* how can you tell whether the *e* survives in the other forms or is lost?

6. How do English words like *liberty, pulchritude,* and *nostrum* help with the declension of Latin adjectives?

7. Translate the following forms: (1) manēbant; (2) manēbit; (3) manēbimus; (4) dabam; (5) dabitis; (6) dabit; (7) vidēbis; (8) vidēbimus; (9) vocābant; (10) vocābis; (11) habēbis; (12) habēbant.

8. Translate into Latin: (1) we shall give; (2) you (sg.) were remaining; (3) they will see; (4) we shall call; (5) he was calling; (6) you (pl.) will see; (7) I shall see; (8) they were saving; (9) we shall have; (10) we were having; (11) he will have; (12) he has.

9. Magister noster mē laudat et tē crās laudābit. 10. Līberī virī perīcula nostra superābant. 11. Fīliī nostrī puellās pulchrās amant. 12. Amīcus noster in numerō stultōrum nōn remanēbit. 13. Culpās multās habēbāmus et semper habēbimus. 14. Perīcula magna animōs nostrōs nōn superant. 15. Pulchra patria nostra est lībera. 16. Līberī virī estis; patriam pulchram habēbitis. 17. Magistrī līberī officiō cūram dabant. 18. Malōs igitur in patriā nostrā superābimus. 19. Sī īram tuam superābis, tē superābis. 20. Propter nostrōs animōs multī sunt līberī. 21. Tē, Ō patria lībera, semper amābāmus et semper amābimus. 22. Sapientiam pecūniā nōn cōnservābitis. 23. Habetne animus tuus satis sapientiae?

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 6

1. What connection can be traced between the spelling of *complementary* in the term *complementary infinitive* and the syntactical principle?

2. In the verb **sum** and its compounds what do the following personal endings mean: (1) -mus; (2) -nt; (3) -s; (4) -t; (5) -ō; (6) -m; (7) -tis?

3. If the verb **possum** is composed of **pot + sum,** where among the various forms is the t changed to s and where does it remain unchanged?

4. Translate the following random forms: (1) erat; (2) poterat; (3) erit; (4) poterit; (5) sumus; (6) possumus; (7) poterāmus; (8) poterimus; (9) poteram; (10) eram; (11) erō; (12) poterō; (13) erunt; (14) poterunt; (15) poterant; (16) esse; (17) posse.

5. Translate into Latin: (1) we are; (2) we were; (3) we shall be; (4) we shall be able; (5) he is able; (6) he will be able; (7) he was able; (8) to be able; (9) they were able; (10) they are able; (11) they will be able; (12) they are; (13) to be; (14) I was able.

6. Patria vestra erat lībera. 7. Poteram esse tyrannus. 8. Amīcus vester erit tyrannus. 9. Ubi tyrannus est, ibi virī nōn possunt esse līberī. 10. In patriā nostrā herī nōn poterat remanēre. 11. Tyrannī multa vitia semper habēbunt. 12. Tyrannōs superāre nōn poterāmus. 13. Tyrannum nostrum superāre dēbēmus. 14. Tyrannus bonōs superāre poterat; sed ibi remanēre nōn poterit. 15. Poteritis perīcula tyrannī vidēre. 16. Vitia tyrannōrum tolerāre nōn possumus. 17. Īnsidiās tyrannī nōn tolerābās. 18. Ōtium in patriā vestrā nōn potest esse perpetuum. 19. Dēbēs virōs līberōs dē tyrannīs monēre. 20. Magister vester librōs pulchrōs semper amābat. 21. Librī bonī vērīque poterant patriam cōnservāre. 22. Librīs bonīs patriam vestram cōnservāre poteritis. 23. Tyrannī sapientiam bonōrum librōrum superāre nōn poterunt. 24. Malī librōs bonōs nōn possunt tolerāre.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 7

1. In the 3rd declension do the case endings of feminine nouns differ from those of masculine nouns as they do in the 1st and 2nd declensions already learned?

2. Do neuter nouns of the 3rd declension have any case endings which are identical with those of neuter nouns of the 2nd declension? If so, name them.

3. Name the gender(s) and case(s) indicated by each of the following endings in the 3rd declension: (1) -ēs; (2) -a; (3) -em.

4. Name the case(s) and number of the following 3rd-declensional endings: (1) -ibus; (2) -ī; (3) -e; (4) -em; (5) -um; (6) -is; (7) -ēs.

5. To indicate the gender of the following nouns give the proper nominative singular form of **magnus, -a, -um** with each: (1) tempus; (2) virtūs; (3) labor; (4) cīvitās; (5) mōs; (6) pāx; (7) rēx; (8) corpus; (9) vēritās; (10) amor.

6. Translate the following phrases in accordance with their case endings wherever possible; where they are nominative or accusative so state: (1) labōre multō; (2) labōrī multō; (3) labōris multī; (4) labōrēs multī; (5) pācis perpetuae; (6) pāce perpetuā; (7) pācī perpetuae; (8) cīvitātum parvārum; (9) cīvitātem parvam; (10) cīvitātēs parvās; (11) cīvitātēs parvae; (12) cīvitāte parvā; (13) tempora mala; (14) tempus malum; (15) temporī malō; (16) temporum malōrum; (17) temporis malī; (18) mōrī tuō; (19) mōre tuō; (20) mōris tuī; (21) mōrēs tuī; (22) mōrēs tuōs; (23) mōrum tuōrum.

7. Translate the following phrases into Latin in accordance with the case named or indicated by the English preposition: (1) to/for great virtue; (2) great virtue (subject); (3) great virtues (object of verb); (4) of great virtues; (5) with great courage; (6) our time (obj. of verb); (7) our times (subj.); (8) our times (obj.); (9) to/for our times; (10) to/for our time; (11) of our time; (12) of our times; (13) my love (obj.); (14) my loves

(obj.); (15) to/for my love; (16) by my love; (17) of my love; (18) of my loves.

8. Meum tempus ōtiō est parvum. 9. Virtūs tua est magna. 10. Pecūnia est nihil sine mōribus bonīs. 11. Virtūtēs hominum multōrum sunt magnae. 12. Mōrēs hominis bonī erunt bonī. 13. Hominī litterās dabunt. 14. Hominēs multōs in cīvitāte magnā vidēre poterāmus. 15. Magnum amōrem pecūniae in multīs hominibus vidēbāmus. 16. Paucī hominēs virtūtī cūram dant. 17. Cīvitās nostra pācem hominibus multīs dabit. 18. Pāx nōn potest esse perpetua. 19. Sine bonā pāce cīvitātēs temporum nostrōrum nōn valēbunt. 20. Post multa bella tempora sunt mala. 21. In multīs cīvitātibus terrīsque pāx nōn poterat valēre. 22. Sine magnō labōre homō nihil habēbit. 23. Virgō pulchra amīcōs mōrum bonōrum amat. 24. Hominēs magnae virtūtis tyrannōs superāre audēbant. 25. Amor patriae in cīvitāte nostrā valēbat.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 8

1. (1) In the 3d conjugation what tense is indicated by the stem vowel e? (2) Can you think of some mnemonic device to help you remember this important point?
2. (1) In the 3d conjugation what tense is indicated by the vowels **i, ō, u**? (2) What mnemonic device may help here?
3. State the person, number, and tense indicated by the following 3d conjugation endings: (1) -imus; (2) -ēs; (3) -unt; (4) -et; (5) -itis; (6) -ēmus; (7) -ō; (8) -ent; (9) -it; (10) -ētis; (11) -is; (12) -am; (13) -ēbant.
4. What form of the verb does each of the following endings indicate: (1) -e; (2) -ere; (3) -ite?
5. Given the verbs **mittō, mittere,** *send;* **agō, agere,** *do;* **scrībō, scrībere,** *write,* translate each of the following forms according to its ending: (1) mittēbant; (2) mittit; (3) mittunt; (4) mittam; (5) mitte; (6) mittimus; (7) mittēbātis; (8) mittis; (9) mittite; (10) mittitis; (11) mittet; (12) mittēmus; (13) agit; (14) agent; (15) agunt; (16) agētis; (17) agēbāmus; (18) agam; (19) agēmus; (20) agis; (21) agitis; (22) scrībet; (23) scrībunt; (24) scrībam; (25) scrībēbam; (26) scrībitis; (27) scrībēmus; (28) scrībit; (29) scrībis; (30) scrībent; (31) scrībe.
6. Given **pōnō, pōnere,** *put,* translate the following phrases into Latin: (1) they were putting; (2) we shall put; (3) put (imperative sg.); (4) he puts; (5) they will put; (6) I shall put; (7) you (sg.) were putting; (8) you (pl.) will put; (9) put (imper. pl.); (10) we put; (11) you (pl.) are putting; (12) he will put.

7. Quid agunt? Quid agētis? 8. Hominem ad mē dūcēbant. 9. Dūc hominem ad mē, et hominī grātiās agam. 10. Dum tyrannus cōpiās dūcit, possumus nihil agere. 11. Litterās ad virginem scrībit. 12. Librum magnum

scrībēbās. 13. Librōs bonōs scrībēs. 14. Librōs dē pāce scrībēmus. 15. Cōpiamne librōrum bonōrum habētis? 16. Magister multōs puerōs docet. 17. Puerī magistrō grātiās nōn agunt. 18. Paucī cīvitātī nostrae grātiās agēbant. 19. Tyrannus magnās cōpiās ex cīvitāte nostrā dūcet. 20. Magna cōpia pecūniae hominēs ad sapientiam nōn dūcit. 21. Librīne bonī multōs ad ratiōnem dūcent? 22. Dūcimusne saepe hominēs ad ratiōnem? 23. Ratiō hominēs ad bonam vītam dūcere potest. 24. Agitisne bonam vītam? 25. Amīcō bonō grātiās semper agite.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 9

1. Explain the term *demonstrative* pronoun and adjective.
2. Translate each of the following according to case(s) and number, indicating also the gender(s) in each instance:

(1) illī	(10) illīs	(19) huius	(28) ūnā
(2) illa	(11) illō	(20) hunc	(29) tōtī
(3) illīus	(12) illārum	(21) hōs	(30) tōtīus
(4) ille	(13) hōc	(22) huic	(31) tōta
(5) illā	(14) hoc	(23) hōrum	(32) tōtum
(6) illud	(15) haec	(24) hās	(33) nūllīus
(7) illōrum	(16) hae	(25) hīs	(34) nūllī
(8) illae	(17) hāc	(26) ūnīus	(35) nūlla
(9) illōs	(18) hanc	(27) ūnī	(36) nūllōs

3. How can the presence of a noun be helpful in determining the form of a modifying demonstrative?
4. Translate the following phrases into Latin in the declensional forms indicated:

(1) this girl (nom.)	(16) to/for that boy alone
(2) these girls (nom.)	(17) to/for that girl alone
(3) these times (acc. pl.)	(18) of that girl alone
(4) to/for this time	(19) of tyrants alone
(5) to/for this boy	(20) the whole state (acc.)
(6) of this time	(21) of the whole country
(7) of that time	(22) to/for the whole country
(8) by this book	(23) of no reason
(9) by that book	(24) no reason (acc.)
(10) that girl (nom.)	(25) no girls (nom.)
(11) those times (nom.)	(26) to/for no book
(12) those times (acc.)	(27) no books (acc.)
(13) that time (nom.)	(28) to/for one state
(14) to/for this state alone	(29) to/for one girl
(15) of this state alone	(30) of one time

(31) of one war   (33) by another book

(32) to/for the other book

5. Hī tōtam cīvitātem dūcent (dūcunt, dūcēbant). 6. Ille haec in illā terrā vidēbit (videt, vidēbat). 7. In illō librō illa dē hōc homine scrībet (scrībam, scrībēbam). 8. Ūnus vir istās cōpiās in hanc terram dūcit (dūcet). 9. Magister haec alterī puerō dat. 10. Hunc librum dē aliō bellō scrībimus (scrībēmus). 11. Tōta patria huic sōlī grātiās agit (aget, agēbat). 12. Tōtam cūram illī cōnsiliō nunc dant. 13. Amīcus huius hanc cīvitātem illō cōnsiliō cōnservābit. 14. Alter amīcus tōtam vītam in aliā terrā aget. 15. Hic vir sōlus mē dē vitiīs huius tyrannī monēre poterat. 16. Nūllās cōpiās in alterā terrā habēbātis. 17. Illī sōlī nūlla perīcula in hōc cōnsiliō vident. 18. Nōn sōlum mōrēs sed etiam īnsidiās illīus laudāre audēs. 19. Propter īnsidiās enim ūnīus hominis haec cīvitās nōn valēbat.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 10

1. Name the conjugation indicated by each of the following endings:
   (1) -ere; (2) -ēre; (3) -īre; (4) -āre.

2. State the person, number, and tense indicated by the following endings from the 4th conjugation and the **-iō** 3d: (1) -iunt; (2) -iēs; (3) -īs; (4) -iēbāmus; (5) -īmus; (6) -ī; (7) -iētis; (8) -īte; (9) -ītis; (10) -iō; (11) -it; (12) -e; (13) -iēbās.

3. State three points at which **-iō** verbs of the 3d conjugation differ from verbs of the 4th conjugation.

4. Translate the following in accordance with their specific forms:

(1) veniet	(6) audiētis	(11) venīre	(16) faciunt
(2) venit	(7) audītis	(12) facit	(17) facis
(3) veniunt	(8) venīte	(13) faciet	(18) faciam
(4) venient	(9) veniēs	(14) faciēmus	(19) faciēs
(5) audīs	(10) venī	(15) facimus	(20) facere

5. Given **sentiō, sentīre,** *feel,* and **iaciō, iacere,** *throw,* translate the following phrases into Latin:

(1) I shall feel	(8) feel (imper. sg.)	(15) throw (imper. sg.)
(2) we shall feel	(9) he will feel	(16) you (pl.) are throwing
(3) he feels	(10) we feel	(17) we shall throw
(4) you (pl.) feel	(11) he is throwing	(18) throw (imper. pl.)
(5) they will feel	(12) he will throw	(19) to throw
(6) they do feel	(13) I shall throw	(20) you (sg.) are throwing
(7) to feel	(14) we are throwing	

6. Ex hāc terrā fugiēbāmus. 7. Cum fīliā tuā fuge. 8. In illum locum fugient. 9. Tempus fugit; hōrae fugiunt; senectūs venit. 10. Venīte cum

amīcīs vestrīs. 11. In patriam vestram veniēbant. 12. Ō vir magne, in cīvitātem nostram venī. 13. Fīliam tuam in illā cīvitāte veniēs. 14. Parvam pecūniam in viīs invenīre possunt. 15. Tyrannus viam in hanc cīvitātem invenit. 16. Illōs cum amīcīs ibi capiētis. 17. Ad tē cum magnīs cōpiīs venīmus. 18. Invenietne multam fāmam glōriamque ibi? 19. Iste bellum semper faciēbat. 20. Istī hominēs pācem nōn facient. 21. Multī hominēs illa faciunt sed haec nōn faciunt. 22. Officium nostrum facimus et faciēmus. 23. Magnam cōpiam librōrum faciam. 24. Puerī cum illō virō bonō vīvēbant. 25. In librīs virōrum antīquōrum multam philosophiam et sapientiam inveniētis.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 11

1. Name the nominative singular and plural of the following:
   (1) 3d personal pronoun; (2) 1st per. pron.; (3) 2nd per. pron.
2. Translate the following pronouns in accordance with case(s) and number; where a form is nom. or acc. so specify.
   (1) vōbīs; (2) nōbīs; (3) nōs; (4) vōs; (5) tuī; (6) meī; (7) mihi; (8) tibi; (9) tē; (10) mē.
3. Translate the following third-person pronouns in accordance with their gender(s), number(s), and case(s): (1) eōs; (2) eās; (3) eōrum; (4) eārum; (5) eius; (6) eā; (7) ea; (8) eō; (9) eī; (10) eīs; (11) eae; (12) id.
4. Give the Latin for the following:

(1) his	(10) to her	(19) it (neut. acc.)
(2) her (possess.)	(11) by/w./fr. her	(20) you (emphatic nom. pl.)
(3) their (masc.)	(12) by/w.fr. him	(21) you (emphatic nom. sg.)
(4) their (fem.)	(13) to/for you (pl.)	(22) you (acc. pl.)
(5) them (fem.)	(14) to/for you (sg.)	(23) us
(6) them (masc.)	(15) they (masc.)	(24) we
(7) them (neut.)	(16) they (neut.)	(25) to/for us
(8) its	(17) they (fem.)	(26) I (emphatic form)
(9) to him	(18) to/for it	(27) to/for me

5. Hī tibi id dabunt. 6. Ego vōbīs id dabam. 7. Vōs eīs id dōnum dabitis. 8. Eī idem dabō. 9. Nōs eī ea dabimus. 10. Ille mihi id dabit. 11. Vōbīs librōs eius dabimus. 12. Nōbīs librōs eōrum dabis. 13. Pecūniam eōrum tibi dabimus. 14. Pecūniam eius mihi dabunt. 15. Eōs librōs ad eam mittēmus. 16. Librum eius ad tē mittam. 17. Ille autem pecūniam eōrum ad nōs mittēbat. 18. Eās cum eā mittimus. 19. Eum cum eīs mittō. 20. Eōs cum amīcīs eius mittēmus. 21. Tū mē cum amīcō eōrum mittēs. 22. Vōs mēcum ad amīcum eius mittēbant. 23. Nōs tēcum in terram eōrum mittit. 24. Eās nōbīscum ad amīcōs eōrum mittent. 25. Eum vōbīscum ad amīcōs eōrum mittam. 26. Tē cum eō ad mē mittent.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 12

1. Name the principal parts of a Latin verb in their regular sequence.
2. Give the principal parts of **mittō,** labeling and translating each one.
3. What is the major difference between the perfect and imperfect tenses?
4. You must be able to tell from what verb any specific verb form comes. Practice on the following list by naming the first principal part of each of the verbs in the list.

(1) mīsērunt	(6) āctum	(11) remānserant	(16) dīxērunt
(2) laudāveram	(7) est	(12) scrīpsimus	(17) erat
(3) vincēbāmus	(8) dedimus	(13) fuit	(18) vīxī
(4) dictum	(9) futūrum	(14) fēcit	(19) faciēbās
(5) fēcistī	(10) ēgimus	(15) fugere	(20) vīsum

5. Translate the following endings of the perfect system according to person, number, and tense in each instance, using these conventions: -ī = I (perfect) ... ; **-eram** = I had ... ; **-erō** = I shall have ... ; (1) -istis; (2) -it; (3) -ērunt; (4) -istī; (5) -imus; (6) -erat; (7) -erimus; (8) -erāmus; (9) -erās; (10) -erint; (11) -erant; (12) -erit; (13) -erātis.

6. Translate the following in accordance with the person, number, and tense of each:

(1) vidēbant	(10) vīxistī	(19) fugit	(28) remānsimus
(2) vīderant	(11) vīxērunt	(20) fūgit	(29) remānserāmus
(3) vīdistī	(12) vincet	(21) fugiunt	(30) vēnit
(4) fēcit	(13) vīcit	(22) fūgērunt	(31) venit
(5) faciēbat	(14) vīcimus	(23) servāvit	(32) veniēbātis
(6) fēcerāmus	(15) vincimus	(24) servāvērunt	(33) vēnistis
(7) fēcimus	(16) dedistī	(25) servāvistis	(34) vēnērunt
(8) faciēmus	(17) dederātis	(26) servāverat	(35) veniunt
(9) fēcērunt	(18) dedimus	(27) servāverit	(36) vēnerant

7. Illī fūgerant (fugient; fugiunt; fugiēbant; fūgērunt). 8. Hī remānsērunt (remanent; remanēbunt; remanēbant; remānserant). 9. Rēx Asiam vīcerat (vincit; vīcit; vincet). 10. Rēgēs Asiam vīcērunt (vincent; vincunt; vīcerant). 11. Rēgēs Asiam habuērunt (habent; habēbunt; habuerant). 12. Caesar in eandem terram vēnerat (vēnit; venit; veniet). 13. Caesar eadem dīxit (dīcit; dīxerat; dīcet). 14. Vōs nōbīs pācem dedistis (dabitis; dabātis; dederātis). 15. Tū litterās ad eam mīsistī (mittēs; mittis; mīserās). 16. Eōs in eādem viā vīdimus (vidēmus; vīderāmus). 17. Diū vīxerat (vīxit; vīvet). 18. Id bene fēcerās (faciēs; fēcistī; facis). 19. Cīvitātem eōrum (eius) servāvī (servābō; servābam; servāveram). 20. Eum in eōdem locō invēnērunt (invēnerant; invenient). 21. Deus hominibus lībertātem dederat (dedit; dat; dabit). 22. Mihi grātiās ēgērunt (agent; agēbant; ēgerant; agunt). 23. Vōs fuistis (erātis; estis; eritis; fuerātis) virī līberī.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 13

1. State the essential nature of reflexive pronouns, showing how, as a logical consequence, they differ from other pronouns.
2. Explain why the declension of reflexive pronouns begins with the genitive rather than with the nominative.
3. In what reflexive pronouns is the spelling the same as that of the corresponding simple pronoun?
4. Translate the following reflexive forms in accordance with their case(s) and number(s): (1) mihi; (2) tē; (3) nōbīs; (4) sibi; (5) vōs; (6) sē; (7) vōbīs.
5. Explain why the singular of **suus** can mean *their own* as well as *his own*, and the plural can mean *his own* as well as *their own*.
6. Explain why **eōrum** always means *their* and **eius** always means *his (her, its)* regardless of whether the nouns on which they depend are singular or plural.
7. Although **sē** and **ipse** can both be translated into English by *himself*, explain the basic difference between the Latin words.

8. Caesar eōs servāvit. 9. Caesar eum servābat. 10. Caesar sē servāvit. 11. Rōmānī sē servāvērunt. 12. Rōmānī eōs servāvērunt. 13. Rōmānī eum servāvērunt. 14. Caesar amīcum suum servāvit. 15. Caesar amīcōs suōs servāvit. 16. Caesar amīcum eius servāvit. 17. Caesar amīcōs eius servāvit. 18. Caesar amīcum eōrum servāvit. 19. Caesar amīcōs eōrum servāvit. 20. Rōmānī amīcum suum servāvērunt. 21. Rōmānī amīcōs suōs servāvērunt. 22. Rōmānī amīcum eōrum servāvērunt. 23. Rōmānī amīcōs eōrum servāvērunt. 24. Rōmānī amīcum eius servāvērunt. 25. Rōmānī amīcōs eius servāvērunt. 26. Caesar ipse eum servāvit. 27. Caesar ipse sē servāvit. 28. Caesarem ipsum servāvērunt. 29. Amīcum Caesaris ipsīus servābant. 30. Amīcum Rōmānōrum ipsōrum servāvērunt. 31. Amīcus Caesaris ipsīus sē servāvit. 32. Amīcī Caesaris ipsīus sē servāvērunt. 33. Amīcus Caesaris ipsīus eum servāvit. 34. Ipsī amīcī Caesaris eum servāvērunt. 35. Nōs nōn servāvērunt. 36. Nōs servāvimus. 37. Rōmānōs ipsōs servāvimus. 38. Rōmānī ipsī tē nōn servāvērunt. 39. Tū tē servāvistī. 40. Tū Rōmānōs ipsōs servāvistī. 41. Mihi nihil dabat. 42. Mihi nihil dedī. 43. Sibi nihil dedit. 44. Sibi nihil dedērunt. 45. Eīs nihil dedērunt. 46. Eī nihil dedērunt. 47. Mē vīcī. 48. Mē vīcērunt. 49. Īram eōrum vīcērunt. 50. Īram suam vīcērunt. 51. Īram suam vīcit. 52. Fīliōs suōs vīcit. 53. Fīliōs suōs vīcērunt.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 14

1. In what specific case ending of all i-stem nouns does the characteristic i appear?
2. What are the other i-stem peculiarities of neuters in -e, -al, and -ar?

3. Translate each of the following according to its case(s) and number; when a form is nom. or acc. label it as such.

(1) arte	(9) corporum	(17) rēgum	(25) virōs
(2) artium	(10) partis	(18) rēgī	(26) virī
(3) artēs	(11) partibus	(19) nōmina	(27) vīrēs
(4) marī	(12) partium	(20) animālia	(28) virīs
(5) maribus	(13) urbe	(21) animālī	(29) vīs
(6) mare	(14) urbī	(22) animālis	(30) vim
(7) maria	(15) urbium	(23) animālium	(31) vīribus
(8) corpora	(16) urbēs	(24) vīrium	(32) vī

4. Of the forms in #3 above, list those which are i- stem forms.
5. Translate the following phrases into Latin:

(1) by/w./fr. great force	(8) many seas (nom.)
(2) great man (acc.)	(9) by/w./fr. a great sea
(3) of great strength	(10) a great sea (acc.)
(4) to/for great force	(11) great force (acc.)
(5) of many citizens	(12) of many men (vir)
(6) by/w./fr. a good citizen	(13) by/w./fr. great strength
(7) to/for many citizens	(14) great strength (acc.)

6. What kind of idea is expressed by each of the following ablatives?
(1) cum rēge; (2) oculīs meīs; (3) cum cūrā; (4) labōre meō.

7. Translate each of the following verb forms and name the verb from which each comes: (1) cucurrērunt; (2) currēbāmus; (3) cucurristī; (4) trāxerāmus; (5) trahet; (6) trahunt; (7) gerēbat; (8) gerit; (9) gerunt; (10) gerēmus; (11) tenent; (12) tenēbunt; (13) tenuērunt; (14) tenuimus.

8. Multa bella cum Rōmānīs gessit. 9. Cīvitātem magnā cum sapientiā gerēbant. 10. Ipse cīvitātem vī cōpiārum tenuit. 11. Illa animālia multōs hominēs in mare trāxērunt. 12. Hoc magnā cum arte dīxistī. 13. Cum cūrā trāns urbem cucurrimus. 14. Magnā cum parte cīvium ad nōs veniēbat. 15. Iūra cīvium vī vincet. 16. Eum ad mortem trāns terram eius trāxistis. 17. Nōs cum cīvibus multārum urbium iungēmus. 18. Rēgī ipsī hās litterās cum virtūte scrīpsit. 19. Vīs illōrum marium erat magna. 20. Artem Graecōrum oculīs meīs vīdī. 21. Sententiās multās pulchrāsque ex virīs antīquīs trāximus.

22. Name the type of ablative found in each of the following sentences above: 8, 9, 10, 12, 13, 14, 15, 17, 18, 20.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 15

1. State the difference between cardinal and ordinal numerals.
2. What cardinals are declined?
3. What ordinals are declined?

4. State the form or possible forms of each of the following: (1) duŏbus; (2) mīlle; (3) tria; (4) duo; (5) quīnque; (6) mīlia; (7) decem; (8) duābus; (9) centum; (10) trium; (11) vīgintī; (12) octō.
5. Why is the genitive of the whole so called?
6. What construction did the Romans use after cardinal numerals?
7. Translate each of the following phrases.

(1) ūnus cīvis	(9) centum ex cīvibus
(2) decem cīvēs	(10) mīlle cīvēs
(3) pars cīvium	(11) tria mīlia cīvium
(4) trēs cīvēs	(12) quid novī
(5) trēs ex sex cīvibus	(13) multum laudis
(6) quīnque ex cīvibus	(14) satis pecūniae
(7) quīnque cīvēs	(15) nihil aquae
(8) centum cīvēs	

8. When the Romans put a word of time in the ablative case without a preposition, what kind of ideas did they express?
9. Study the ablatives in the following sentences. Then translate the sentences and name the type of ablative found in each one.

(1) Cum amīcīs veniēbat.	(4) Paucīs hōrīs librum scrīpsit.
(2) Ūnā hōrā veniet.	(5) Illō tempore librum scrīpsit.
(3) Eōdem tempore vēnit.	(6) Cum cūrā librum scrībēbat.

10. Illō tempore sōlō illa tria perīcula timuit; sed mortem semper timēbat. 11. Istī duo rēgēs pecūniam inter mīlia cīvium iaciēbant. 12. Iste ūnus tyrannus sē semper laudābat. 13. Cīvēs illārum quīnque urbium lībertātem exspectābant. 14. Urbem duābus hōrīs sapientiā suā cōnservāvērunt. 15. In urbem cum tribus ex amīcīs meīs veniēbam. 16. Bella magna cum virtūte gerēbātis. 17. Itaque centum Rōmānī mīlle Graecōs vīcērunt. 18. Patrēs fīliōs suōs saepe timēbant—et nunc multum timōris habent. 19. Vīdistīne duōs patrēs nostrōs eō tempore? 20. Ubi satis lībertātis invēnistis? 21. Tribus hōrīs vēnērunt, et idem nōbīs dīcēbat. 22. Parvum argūmentī intellegēbam. 23. Nūllam partem vītārum nostrārum mūtāvimus. 24. Cīvitās nostra lībertātem et iūra cīvium cōnservābat. 25. Rōmānī mōrēs temporum antīquōrum laudābant. 26. Duo patrēs quattuor ex fīliīs mīsērunt. 27. Decem virī satis sapientiae et multum virtūtis habuērunt. 28. Quid novī, mī amīce?

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 16

1. If one has carefully learned the declension of **cīvis** and **mare** one can easily decline the 3d-declension adjective **fortis, forte** with the exception of one form. What is that form?

2. (1) Adjectives of the 3d declension may be classified as adjectives of 3 endings, 2 endings, or 1 ending. Which type is by far the most common? (2) In what one case do adjectives of 1 and 3 endings differ from those of 2 endings?
3. Cite and label three endings in which adjectives of the 3d declension show themselves to be i-stems.
4. Of the endings of the 3d-declension adjectives none is likely to cause recognition difficulty except perhaps the ablative singular. What is the normal ending of the ablative singular in all genders?
5. Can 3d-declension adjectives be used with nouns of the 1st or the 2nd declension?
6. Translate the following phrases in accordance with their case(s) and number. When they are nom. or acc., so indicate.

(1) dulcī puellae	(8) omnia nōmina	(15) beātō hominī
(2) dulcī puellā	(9) omnia maria	(16) omnī marī
(3) dulcī mātre	(10) omnī parte	(17) omnī bonae artī
(4) dulcī mātrī	(11) omnium partium	(18) omnī bonā arte
(5) beātae mātrī	(12) omnium rēgum	(19) omnis bonae artis
(6) beātā mātre	(13) omnium bellōrum	(20) vī celerī
(7) omnia bella	(14) beātō homine	

7. Aetās longa saepe est difficilis. 8. Aetās difficilis potest esse beāta. 9. Quam brevis erat dulcis vīta eius! 10. Memoria dulcis aetātis mīlia hominum adiuvat. 11. Librum brevem centum hōrīs scrīpsistī. 12. In omnī marī haec duo animālia potentia inveniēbāmus. 13. In omnī terrā multa mīlia virōrum fortium vidēbitis. 14. Celer rūmor (celeris fāma) per omnem terram cucurrit. 15. Illud bellum breve erat difficile. 16. Omnia perīcula sex hōrīs superāvimus. 17. Tyrannus potēns patriam eōrum vī celerī vincet. 18. Brevī tempore omnia iūra cīvium mūtābit. 19. Difficilem artem lībertātis dulcis nōn intellēxērunt, nam parvum sapientiae habuērunt. 20. Hominēs officia difficilia in omnibus terrīs timent.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 17

1. Define the terms "antecedent" and "relative pronoun."
2. (1) What determines the *case* of the Latin relative pronoun? (2) What determines the *gender* and the *number* of the relative pronoun?
3. State in what ways a relative agrees with its antecedent.
4. Name (1) the English relative pronoun which refers to persons and (2) the one which refers to anything else. (3) Since in Latin the one relative pronoun serves both purposes, what two English meanings does it have?
5. Translate the following in accordance with their case(s) and number(s).

When a form is nom. or acc., so indicate if the translation does not make the point clear.

(1) cui	(4) cuius	(7) quā	(10) quās
(2) quōs	(5) quibus	(8) quī	(11) quōrum
(3) quae	(6) quod	(9) quem	(12) quam

6. Cīvem laudāvērunt quem mīserātis. 7. Decem cīvēs laudāvērunt quōs mīserātis. 8. Cīvem laudāvērunt quī patriam servāverat. 9. Centum cīvēs laudāvērunt quī patriam servāverant. 10. Cīvem laudāvērunt cuius fīlius patriam servāverat. 11. Cīvēs laudāvērunt quōrum septem fīliī patriam servāverant. 12. Cīvem laudāvērunt cui patriam commīserant. 13. Multōs ex cīvibus laudāvērunt quibus patriam commīserant. 14. Cīvem laudāvērunt quōcum vēnerant. 15. Cīvēs laudāvērunt quibuscum vēnerant. 16. Cum cīve vēnit cui vītam suam commīserat. 17. Tyrannī iūra cīvium dēlent quōs capiunt. 18. Tyrannus urbem dēlēvit ex quā mīlia cīvium fūgerant. 19. Tyrannus urbem dēlēvit in quam illī novem cīvēs fūgerant. 20. Tyrannus urbēs dēlēvit ex quibus cīvēs fūgerant. 21. Tyrannus urbēs dēlēvit in quās cīvēs fūgerant. 22. Perīculum superāvit quod timuimus. 23. Perīcula superāvit quae timuimus. 24. Puellīs quās laudābat librōs dedit. 25. Vir cuius fīliam amās in urbem veniēbat. 26. Virō cuius fīliam amās vītam suam commīsit. 27. Mātrem adiuvābat, quae multum virtūtis habuit. 28. Mātribus quae multōs fīliōs habuērunt rēx pecūniam dabat.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 18

1. Define the term "passive voice" by explaining the etymology of "passive."
2. What is the difference between the ablative of means and the ablative of agent in both meaning and construction?
3. (1) What one letter occurs in 5 of the 6 passive personal endings and can thus be regarded as the peculiar sign of the passive?
   (2) Does this characteristically passive letter occur in any of the corresponding active personal endings?
4. Give the English pronoun by which each of the following passive endings can be translated: (1) -mur; (2) -tur; (3) -r; (4) -ntur; (5) -ris; (6) -minī.
5. (1) Name the tense signs of the imperfect and the future in the passive voice of the 1st and 2nd conjugations.
   (2) Are these the same as the tense signs in the active voice?
6. If **-bar** can be translated "I was being ..." and **-bor,** "I shall be ... ," translate each of the following: (1) -bimur; (2) -bāminī; (3) -bātur; (4) -beris; (5) -buntur; (6) -bāmur; (7) -bitur; (8) -bāris; (9) -biminī; (10) -bantur.
7. Mē terrent; ab eīs terreor; vī eōrum terreor. 8. Tyrannus hanc urbem dē-

lēbat. 9. Haec urbs ā tyrannō dēlēbātur; īnsidiīs dēlēbitur. 10. Ab amīcīs movēbātur; cōnsiliīs eōrum movēbātur. 11. Vīribus hominum nōn dēlēmur, sed possumus īnsidiīs dēlērī. 12. Nōn bellō dēlēbiminī, sed amōre ōtiī et cōnsiliīs hominum malōrum. 13. Tū ipse nōn mūtāris, sed nōmen tuum mūtātur. 14. Mīlia hominum amōre pecūniae tenentur. 15. Aliī ab tyrannīs tenēbantur. 16. Paucī amōre vēritātis amīcitiaeque tenēbuntur. 17. Puer ab amīcīs cōnservābitur. 18. Librī huius generis puerīs ā magistrō dabantur. 19. Lībertās populō ab rēge tertiō brevī tempore dabitur. 20. Patria nostra ā cīvibus fortibus etiam nunc servārī potest. 21. Fortūnā aliōrum monērī dēbēmus. 22. Cōnsiliīs istīus tyrannī quī trāns mare vīvit terrēmur; sed lībertātem amāmus et bellum magnā cum virtūte gerēmus. 23. Ab amīcīs potentibus adiuvābimur. 24. Omnēs virōs nostrōs laudāmus, quī virtūte et vēritāte moventur, nōn amōre suī.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 19

1. Name the two basic verbal elements (1) of which the perfect passive indicative of all verbs is composed, and (2) of which the pluperfect passive indicative is composed.
2. In translation how does (1) **vir missus est** differ from **vir mittitur**, and (2) **vir missus erat**, from **vir mittēbātur?**
3. What is the use of the interrogative pronoun?
4. In what forms does the interrogative pronoun differ conspicuously in spelling from the relative?
5. By what two syntactical criteria can the interrogative pronoun be distinguished from the relative even when both have the same spelling?
6. Translate the following in accordance with their forms:

(1) movētur	(6) dēlēbantur	(11) tenēbāmur
(2) mōtus est	(7) dēlētī sunt	(12) mūtātus erat
(3) mōtum erat	(8) tenēmur	(13) mūtātus est
(4) movēbātur	(9) tentī sumus	(14) mūtātur
(5) dēlētī erant	(10) tentī erāmus	(15) mūtābātur

7. Translate the following forms of the interrogative pronoun: (1) cuius?; (2) quem?; (3) quī?; (4) quid?; (5) quōrum?; (6) cui?; (7) quās?; (8) quis?; (9) quae?

8. Ā quō liber parātus est (parātus erat, parābātur)? 9. Magister ā quō liber parātus est labōre superātur. 10. Cui liber datus est (dabātur, datus erat)? 11. Quī puer servātus est? 12. Puerum quī servātus est ego ipse vīdī. 13. Cuius duo fīliī servātī sunt? 14. Senem cuius fīliī servātī sunt numquam vīdī. 15. Quis missus est? 16. Ā cīve quī missus erat pāx et lībertās laudātae sunt. 17. Quī missī sunt? 18. Ā decem cīvibus quī missī erant amīcitia laudāta est. 19. Quōs in urbe vīdistī? 20. Ubi sunt trēs novī amīcī quōs in

urbe vīdistī? 21. Quae ā tē ibi inventa sunt? 22. Ubi sunt tria corpora quae ā tē ibi inventa sunt? 23. Ā quibus hoc dictum est? 24. Quibus hoc dictum est? 25. Octō hominēs miserī quibus haec dicta sunt ex urbe fūgērunt. 26. Quōrum fīliī ab eō laudātī sunt? 27. Patrēs quōrum fīliī laudātī sunt eī grātiās agent. 28. Quid vōs terret? 29. Quod perīculum vōs terret? 30. At perīculum quod vōs terret ā cīvibus fortibus victum est.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 20

1. Indicate the force of the following masculine and feminine endings of the 4th declension: (1) -um; (2) -uum; (3) -ū; (4) -us; (5) -ūs; (6) -uī.
2. Translate the following nouns in accordance with their case forms:

(1) manuī	(6) frūctibus	(11) senātūs (sg.)
(2) manus	(7) frūctum	(12) senātuī
(3) manuum	(8) frūctūs	(13) senātus
(4) manū	(9) frūctuum	(14) senātū
(5) manūs	(10) frūctū	

3. (1) What gender predominates in the 4th declension?
   (2) Name the noun which is the most common exception to this rule.
4. (1) Explain the difference of idea between the ablative of place from which and the ablative of separation.
   (2) Which of the two is regular with verbs of freeing, lacking, and depriving?
   (3) Which of the two is regular with verbs of motion?
5. State any differences of construction between them.

6. Quis ad nōs eō tempore vēnit? 7. Senex magnae fāmae ex patriā suā ad senātum nostrum fūgit. 8. Quid novī ab eō dictum est? 9. Hoc ab illō virō dictum est: "Lībertāte carēmus." 10. Nōs servitūte et gravī metū līberāte. 11. Cōpiae nostrae bellum longum contrā ācrēs manūs tyrannī gessērunt. 12. Illae manūs ācrēs quās tyrannus contrā nōs illā ex terrā mīsit ā nōbīs victae sunt. 13. Post haec cīvēs quī tyrannum timuērunt ex patriā suā in cīvitātem nostram ductī sunt. 14. Eōs sceleribus istīus tyrannī līberāvimus. 15. Nunc omnī metū carent. 16. Fīliī eōrum bonōs librōs in lūdīs nostrīs cum studiō legunt. 17. Itaque mīlle versūs manibus suīs scrīpsērunt. 18. Hī centum versūs nōbīs grātiās magnās agunt. 19. In hīs versibus senātus populusque Rōmānus laudantur. 20. Nam illī miserī nunc frūctūs pācis et multum lībertātis sine metū habent. 21. Quoniam aliōs adiūvimus, etiam nōs ipsī frūctum magnum habēmus. 22. Virī bonī cōpiā hōrum frūctuum numquam carēbunt. 23. Aetāte nostrā multī hominēs vītam in metū et servitūte agunt. 24. Dēbēmus illōs miserōs metū līberāre. 25. Nam quis potest beātus esse sī aliī hominēs frūctibus pācis lībertātisque carent?

26. What idea is expressed by each of the following ablatives, respectively? tempore (6), patriā (7), eō (8), virō (9), metū (10), nōbīs (12), patriā (13), sceleribus (14), metū (15), studiō (16), manibus (17), cōpiā (22), aetāte (23), metū (24).

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 21

1. Give the passive personal endings of the present and future tenses.
2. Repeat *aloud* the present and future passive of the model verbs **agō, audiō,** and **capiō.**
3. How can the present passive infinitive be distinguished from the active in the 1st, 2nd, and 4th conjugations? Illustrate by changing the following active infinitives into passive ones: (1) sentīre; (2) movēre; (3) servāre; (4) scīre; (5) tenēre. Translate each.
4. What is exceptional about the form of the present passive infinitive of the 3d conjugation? Illustrate by changing the following active infinitives into passive ones: (1) mittere; (2) iacere; (3) tangere; (4) trahere. Translate each.
5. Translate each of the following in accordance with its form:

(1) mittar	(7) rapitur	(13) raperis	(19) tangēminī
(2) mitteris	(8) rapiētur	(14) rapiēris	(20) sciēris
(3) mittēris	(9) rapī	(15) tanguntur	(21) scīris
(4) mittī	(10) rapimur	(16) tangentur	(22) sciētur
(5) mittuntur	(11) rapientur	(17) tangī	(23) scītur
(6) mittor	(12) rapiuntur	(18) tangeris	(24) scīrī

6. Quis mittitur (mittētur, mittēbātur, missus est)?   7. Ā quō hae litterae mittentur (missae sunt, mittuntur)?   8. Cuius manū illae litterae scrīptae sunt (scrībentur)?   9. Quid dictum est (dīcēbātur, dīcētur, dīcitur)?   10. "Quis rapiētur?" "Tū rapiēris."   11. "Quī rapientur?" "Vōs rapiēminī."   12. Diū neglegēris/neglegēminī (neglēctus es/neglēctī estis).   13. Post multās hōrās līberātī sumus (līberābimur).   14. Cīvitātis causā eum rapī iussērunt.   15. Lībertātis causā cīvitās nostra ab alterō virō gerī dēbet.   16. Animus eius pecūniā tangī nōn poterat.   17. Amor patriae in omnī animō sentiēbātur (sentiētur, sentītur, sēnsus est).   18. Amōre patriae cum aliīs cīvibus iungimur (iungēbāmur, iungēmur).   19. Amīcitia nōn semper intellegitur, sed sentītur.   20. Sapientia et vēritās in illīs duōbus hominibus nōn invenientur (inveniuntur, inventae sunt).   21. Sapientia etiam multā pecūniā nōn parātur (parābitur, parāta est).   22. Vēritās saepe nōn scītur (sciētur, scīta est), quod studium eius est difficile.   23. Nōn sine magnō labōre vēritās inveniētur (inventa est, potest invenīrī).   24. Aliī studiō pecūniae atque laudis trahuntur; nōs dēbēmus amōre vēritātis sapientiaeque trahī.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 22

1. As **u** is characteristic of the 4th declension, what vowel is characteristic of the 5th declension?
2. List the case endings of the 5th declension which are enough like the corresponding endings of the 3rd declension that they can be immediately recognized without difficulty.
3. (1) What is the gender of most nouns of the 5th declension?
   (2) Name the chief exception.
4. Translate each of the following in accordance with its case(s) and number(s). Where a form is nom. or acc., so state.

(1) speī	(6) fidē	(11) diēbus	(16) reī
(2) spērum	(7) fidem	(12) rem	(17) ignium
(3) spem	(8) fideī	(13) rērum	(18) ignem
(4) spēbus	(9) diērum	(14) rē	(19) ignibus
(5) spēs	(10) diēs	(15) rēbus	(20) ignēs

5. Name the type of adverbial idea in each of the following, and then translate the sentence.

(1) In urbe remānsit.	(4) Cum eīs vēnit.	(7) Illud igne factum est.
(2) Ūnā hōrā veniet.	(5) Ex urbe vēnit.	(8) Id ab eīs factum est.
(3) Eō tempore vēnit.	(6) Igne carent.	(9) Id cum fidē factum est.

6. Concerning each of the following adverbial ideas, state whether in Latin the ablative alone expresses the idea, or whether the Romans used a preposition with the ablative, or whether a preposition was sometimes used and sometimes not. Base your answers on the rules learned thus far.

(1) personal agent	(5) means
(2) accompaniment	(6) manner
(3) separation	(7) place from which
(4) place where	(8) time when or within when

7. Eō tempore lībertātem illōrum decem cīvium cum fidē cōnservāvit.
8. Rem pūblicam magnā cum cūrā gessit. 9. Rēs pūblica magnā cūrā ab eō gesta est. 10. Multae rēs bonae in mediā urbe vīsae sunt. 11. Eō diē multās rēs cum spē parāvērunt. 12. Ignem ex manibus puerī ēripuimus. 13. Quīnque diēbus Cicerō rem pūblicam ē perīculō ēripiet. 14. Duās rēs pūblicās metū līberāvistī. 15. Terra hominēs frūctibus bonīs alit. 16. Incertās spēs eōrum virtūte suā aluit. 17. Hāc aetāte spēs nostrae ā hīs tribus tyrannīs tolluntur. 18. Septem ex amīcīs nostrīs ex illā rē pūblicā magnō cum metū vēnērunt. 19. Tōta gēns in fīnēs huius reī pūblicae magnā cum manū amīcōrum ūnō diē vēnit. 20. Nōn omnēs virī līberī audent sē cum hāc rē pūblicā iungere. 21. Sī illī fidē carent, nūlla spēs est amīcitiae et pācis.

22. Bona fidēs et amor huius reī pūblicae possunt nōs cōnservāre. 23. Tō-tam vītam huic reī pūblicae dedistī.

24. What idea is expressed by each of the following ablatives? (The numbers refer to the sentences.) (7) tempore, fidē; (8) cūrā; (9) cūrā; (10) urbe; (11) diē, spē; (13) diēbus, perīculō; (14) metū; (15) frūctibus; (16) vir-tūte; (17) aetāte, tyrannīs; (18) rē pūblicā, metū; (19) manū, diē; (21) fidē.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 23

1. State what Latin participle is indicated by each of the following endings and give the English suffix or phrase which can be used as an approximate equivalent in each instance: (1) -tus; (2) -ns; (3) -sūrus; (4) -ntem; (5) -tūrus; (6) -ndus; (7) -sus; (8) -ntēs; (9) -sī; (10) -tīs. Such forms should be practiced aloud until you have an immediate linguistic reflex to each one. These reflexes can be tested in the following exercise.

2. Translate the following participles in accordance with their tense and voice.

(1) futūrus	(7) versus	(13) faciendus	(19) datī
(2) pressūrus	(8) versūrus	(14) rapientēs	(20) datūrōs
(3) premēns	(9) dictus	(15) raptūrōs	(21) dantem
(4) pressus	(10) dīcēns	(16) cupīta	(22) mōtus
(5) premendus	(11) dictūrus	(17) cupientēs	(23) moventem
(6) vertēns	(12) factus	(18) dandum	(24) mōtūrī

3. Translate the following participles or participial phrases into Latin in their nom. sg. masc. form.

(1) (having been) seen	(10) (having been) conquered
(2) seeing	(11) about to conquer
(3) about to see	(12) conquering
(4) to be written	(13) about to join
(5) about to write	(14) joining
(6) (having been) written	(15) (having been) dragged
(7) sending	(16) dragging
(8) (having been) sent	(17) about to throw
(9) about to send	(18) (having been) thrown

4. Captus nihil dīxit. 5. Servitūte līberātus, vītam iūcundam aget. 6. Dōna dantibus grātiās ēgit. 7. Aliquem dōna petentem nōn amō. 8. Hominī multam pecūniam cupientī pauca dōna sōla dabat. 9. Ad lūdum tuum fīlium meum docendum mīsī. 10. Iste, aliam gentem victūrus, magistrōs librōsque dēlēre cupiēbat. 11. Hīs īnsidiīs territī, vītam miseram vīvēmus. 12. Diū oppressī, sē contrā opprimentem tyrannum vertere coepērunt.

13. Illī quattuor virī miserī, ā tyrannō vīsī, trāns fīnem cucurrērunt.   14. Ōrā-tor, tyrannum timēns, iūcunda semper dīcēbat.   15. Aliquem nōs timentem timēmus.   16. Hī vincentēs omnia iūra cīvium victōrum tollent.   17. Ille mi-ser fugitūrus cōnsilium trium amīcōrum petēbat.   18. Senex, ab duōbus ex amīcīs monitus, ad nōs fūgit.   19. Ipse, ā sene secundō adiūtus, pecūniā ca-rentibus multās rēs dabat.   20. Quis, hīs perīculīs līberātus, deīs grātiās nōn dabit?   21. Iūnctī vōbīscum, rem pūblicam cōnservābimus.   22. Fidem ha-bentibus nihil est incertum.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 24

1. (1) What are the two essential parts of a regular ablative absolute in Latin?
   (2) Can the noun or pronoun of an ablative absolute also appear as the subject or the object of the verb?
2. (1) Explain the term "absolute."
   (2) Guided by the examples in Chapter 24, p. 156, tell what punctuation usually indicates an ablative absolute, and show how this harmonizes with the term "absolute."
3. Should the ablative absolute always be translated literally? Explain.
4. Name five subordinating conjunctions in English which may be used to translate the ablative absolute depending on the requirements of the context.
5. State whether the Romans would have regarded any or all of the follow-ing sentences as incorrect, and explain why. (Examples in Chapter 24 will help you.)
   (1) Urbe captā, Caesar eam dēlēvit.
   (2) Caesar, urbem captus, eam dēlēvit.
   (3) Caesar urbem captam dēlēvit.
   (4) Urbe captā, Caesar multās gentēs dēlēvit.
6. (1) What idea is expressed by the -ndus participle (gerundive) + sum?
   (2) Explain the agreement of the -ndus, -nda, -ndum participle.
   (3) What Latin verb + the infinitive expresses a similar idea?
7. (1) Explain the syntax of mihi in the following sentence: Cīvitās mihi cōnservanda est.
   (2) Fill out the blank in the following sentence with the Latin for "by me" and explain the construction: Cīvitās—cōnservāta est.

8. Hīs duōbus virīs imperium tenentibus, rēs pūblica valēbit.   9. Hāc fāmā narrātā, dux urbem sine morā relīquit.   10. Omnī cupidītāte pecūniae glōri-aeque ex animō expulsā, ille dux sē vīcit.   11. Omnis cupiditās rērum ma-lārum nōbīs vincenda est sī bonam vītam agere cupimus.   12. Cīvibus pa-triam amantibus, possumus habēre magnās spēs.   13. Omnēs cīvēs istum tyrannum timēbant, quī expellendus erat.   14. Tyrannō superātō, cīvēs

lībertātem et iūra recēpērunt.   15. At tyrannō expulsō, alius tyrannus imperium saepe accipit.   16. Quis imperium accipiēns adiuvāre cīvitātem sōlam, nōn sē, cupit?   17. Multīs gentibus victīs, tōtum mundum tenēre cupīvistī. 18. Servitūs omnis generis per tōtum mundum opprimenda est.   19. Sī rēs pūblica nostra valet, nihil tibi timendum est.   20. Patria nostra cuique adiuvanda est quī nostrum modum vītae amat.   21. Omnia igitur iūra cīvibus magnā cūrā cōnservanda sunt.   22. Officiīs ā cīvibus relictīs, rēs pūblica in magnō perīculō erit.   23. Hīs rēbus gravibus dictīs, ōrātor ā nōbīs laudātus est.   24. Vēritās et virtūs omnibus virīs semper quaerendae sunt.   25. Vēritāte et virtūte quaesītīs, rēs pūblica cōnservāta est.

26. From the above sentences list:
   A. 10 instances of the ablative absolute.
   B. 7 instances of the **-ndus sum** construction (passive periphrastic).
   C. 5 instances of the dative of agent.
   D. 2 instances of the ablative of agent.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 25

1. Review the present active and passive infinitives of all four conjugations.
2. If **-tūrus (-sūrus)** marks the future active participle, what form logically is -tūrus (-sūrus) esse?
3. If **-tus (-sus)** marks the perfect passive participle, what form logically is -tus (-sus) esse?
4. With what do the participial elements of the above infinitives (the **-tūrus, -tūra, -tūrum** and the **-tus, -a, -um**) agree?
5. To what English verb phrase is the Latin ending **-isse** equivalent? Repeat this sufficiently so that when you see **-isse** your linguistic reflex automatically and instantly gives you the proper tense and voice of the infinitive.
6. Now try your reflexes by translating the following forms in accordance with their tense and voice.

(1) mōvisse	(11) sustulisse	(21) quaesītum esse
(2) mōtus esse	(12) trāxisse	(22) expulsum esse
(3) mōtūrus esse	(13) tetigisse	(23) relictōs esse
(4) movērī	(14) amāvisse	(24) data esse
(5) dīcī	(15) vīcisse	(25) datūra esse
(6) scīrī	(16) vīxisse	(26) versūrum esse
(7) servārī	(17) trāctōs esse	(27) pressūrōs esse
(8) rapī	(18) vīsam esse	(28) raptūrōs esse
(9) mittī	(19) raptum esse	(29) iussūrum esse
(10) crēdidisse	(20) missōs esse	(30) tāctūrōs esse

7. Explain the difference between a direct and an indirect statement.
8. Indicate what verbs in the following list may introduce an indirect statement and give their meanings.

(1) mittō	(7) videō	(13) audiō	(19) ostendō
(2) nūntiō	(8) nesciō	(14) sentiō	(20) spērō
(3) rīdeō	(9) parō	(15) agō	(21) iungō
(4) intellegō	(10) crēdō	(16) scrībō	(22) putō
(5) accipiō	(11) terreō	(17) audeō	(23) amō
(6) cupiō	(12) neglegō	(18) gerō	(24) negō

9. In what four main categories can we list most verbs which introduce indirect statements?

10. In English the indirect statement most often appears as a "that" clause, though an infinitive with subject accusative is sometimes used ("I believe that he is brave"; "I believe him to be brave"). What is the form of the indirect statement in classical Latin?

11. In what case did the Romans put the subject of an infinitive?

12. In Latin indirect statement does the tense of the infinitive depend on the tense of the verb of saying? In other words, must a present infinitive be used only with a present main verb, a perfect only with a perfect main verb, etc.?

13. What time relative to that of the main verb does each of the following infinitive tenses indicate: (1) perfect; (2) future; (3) present?

14. Sciō tē hoc fēcisse (factūrum esse, facere). 15. Scīvī tē hoc fēcisse (factūrum esse, facere). 16. Crēdidimus eōs ventūrōs esse (vēnisse, venīre). 17. Crēdimus eōs ventūrōs esse (vēnisse, venīre). 18. Crās audiet (A) eōs venīre (i.e., crās); (B) eōs vēnisse (e.g., herī); (C) eōs ventūrōs esse (e.g., paucīs diēbus). 19. Hodiē audit (A) eōs venīre (hodiē); (B) eōs vēnisse (herī); (C) eōs ventūrōs esse (mox, *soon*). 20. Herī audīvit (A) eōs venīre (herī); (B) eōs vēnisse (e.g., prīdiē, *the day before yesterday*); (C) eōs ventūrōs (paucīs diēbus). 21. Spērant vōs eum vīsūrōs esse. 22. Sciō hoc ā tē factum esse. 23. Nescīvī illa ab eō facta esse. 24. Negāvērunt urbem ab hostibus capī (captam esse). 25. Scītis illōs esse (futūrōs esse, fuisse) semper fidēlēs. 26. Scīvistis illōs esse (futūros esse, fuisse) semper fidēlēs. 27. Putābant tyrannum sibi expellendum esse. 28. Crēdimus pācem omnibus ducibus quaerendam esse. 29. Dīcit pācem ab decem ducibus quaerī (quaesītam esse). 30. Dīxit duōs ducēs pācem quaesītūrōs esse (quaerere, quaesīvisse). 31. Hostēs spērant sē omnēs rēs pūblicās victūros esse. 32. Bene sciō mē multa nescīre; nēmō enim potest omnia scīre.

33. All infinitives except one in the above sentences are infinitives in indirect statement. Name that one exception.

34. Explain the syntax of the following words by stating in each instance (A) the form and (B) the reason for the form: (14) tē; fēcisse; (16) eōs; (17) ventūrōs esse; (21) eum; (22) hoc; (23) eō; (24) hostibus; (25) fidēlēs; (27) sibi; (28) pācem; ducibus; (29) ducibus; (30) pācem; (31) rēs pūblicās.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 26

1. (1) In the comparison of adjectives, to what English ending does the Latin **-ior** correspond?
   (2) What mnemonic aid can be found in their superficial similarity?
2. (1) To what English adjectival ending does **-issimus** correspond?
   (2) Can any mnemonic device be found here?
3. (1) To what part of an adjective are **-ior** and **-issimus** normally added?
   (2) Illustrate by adding these endings to the following adjectives: **turpis**; **vēlōx**, gen. **vēlōcis**, *swift;* **prūdēns**, gen. **prūdentis**, *prudent.*
4. If **acerbus** means *harsh* give (1) three possible forces of the comparative **acerbior** and (2) two possible forces of the superlative **acerbissimus.**
5. Give the meaning of **quam** (1) with the comparative degree (e.g., hic erat acerbior quam ille) and (2) with the superlative (e.g., hic erat quam acerbissimus).
6. What case follows **quam**, *than?*
7. (1) Do most adjectives of the third declension have consonant stems or **i**-stems?
   (2) Do comparatives have consonant stems or **i**-stems?

8. Nūntiāvērunt ducem quam fortissimum vēnisse. 9. Lūce clārissimā ab quattuor virīs vīsā, cōpiae fortissimae contrā hostēs missae sunt. 10. Istō homine turpissimō expulsō, senātus cīvibus fidēliōribus dōna dedit. 11. Beātiōrēs cīvēs prō cīvibus miseriōribus haec dulcia faciēbant. 12. Hic auctor est clārior quam ille. 13. Quīdam dīxērunt hunc auctōrem esse clāriōrem quam illum. 14. Librōs sapientiōrum auctōrum legite, sī vītam sapientissimam agere cupitis. 15. Sex auctōrēs quōrum librōs lēgī sunt acerbiōrēs. 16. Quibusdam librīs sapientissimīs lēctīs, illa vitia turpiōra vītāvimus. 17. Hic vir, quī turpia vitia sua superāvit, fortior est quam dux fortissimus. 18. Quis est vir fēlīcissimus? Is quī vītam sapientissimam agit fēlīcior est quam tyrannus potentissimus. 19. Remedium vitiōrum vestrōrum vidētur difficilius. 20. Ille dux putāvit patriam esse sibi cāriōrem quam vītam. 21. Manus adulēscentium quam fidēlissimōrum senātuī quaerenda est.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 27

1. (1) What is peculiar about the comparison of adjectives in which the masculine of the positive degree ends in **-er**?
   (2) Does this hold for adjectives of any declension or only for those of the 1st and 2nd declension?
2. (1) What is peculiar about the comparison of **facilis**?
   (2) Do all adjectives in **-lis** follow this rule? Be specific.
3. Some of the most common adjectives are the most irregular in their comparison. To illustrate how helpful English can be in learning these

irregular forms, write each of the following Latin words on a separate line:

parvus, malus, bonus, (prō), magnus, superus, multus;

and then, choosing from the following list, write opposite each of them the English words which suggest the comparative and the superlative respectively:

pessimist, prime, minus, ameliorate, summit, maximum, supreme, optimist, plus, superior, pejorative, prior, major, minimum.

4. Translate the following:

(1) bellum minus	(13) fidēs minima	(25) plūrēs labōrēs
(2) bellum pessimum	(14) mare minus	(26) ducēs optimī
(3) bellum maius	(15) in marī minōre	(27) ducēs maiōrēs
(4) bella priōra	(16) maria maiōra	(28) ducēs meliōrēs
(5) liber simillimus	(17) frūctūs optimī	(29) dōna minima
(6) liber difficilior	(18) frūctus peior	(30) dōna plūra
(7) puer minimus	(19) hominēs ācerrimī	(31) dōna prīma
(8) puer melior	(20) hominēs ācriōrēs	(32) plūs laudis
(9) puella pulcherrima	(21) hominēs plūrēs	(33) plūrēs laudēs
(10) puella pulchrior	(22) labor difficillimus	(34) cīvēs pessimī
(11) puellae plūrimae	(23) labor suprēmus	(35) cīvēs meliōrēs
(12) fidēs maior	(24) plūs labōris	(36) cīvēs līberrimī

5. Facillima saepe nōn sunt optima. 6. Difficilia saepe sunt maxima. 7. Meliōra studia sunt difficiliōra. 8. Pessimī auctōrēs librōs plūrimōs scrībunt. 9. Hī librī peiōrēs sunt quam librī auctōrum meliōrum. 10. Puer minor maius dōnum accēpit. 11. Illa rēs pūblica minima maximās spēs habuit. 12. Plūrēs virī crēdunt hoc bellum esse peius quam prīmum bellum. 13. Dux melior cum cōpiīs maiōribus veniet. 14. Ācrēs ducēs ācriōrēs cōpiās ācerrimōrum hostium saepe laudābant. 15. Tyrannō pessimō expulsō, cīvēs ducem meliōrem et sapientiōrem quaesivērunt. 16. Meliōrī ducī maius imperium et plūs pecūniae dedērunt. 17. Cīvēs urbium minōrum nōn sunt meliōrēs quam eī urbium maximārum. 18. Nōs nōn meliōrēs sumus quam plūrimī virī priōrum aetātum. 19. Maiōrēs nostrī Apollinem (Apollō, acc.) deum sōlis appellābant.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 28

1. What does the subjunctive usually indicate in Latin—a fact or something other than a fact?

2. Is the subjunctive more or less common in Latin than it is in English?

3. What vowel is the sign of the present subjunctive (1) in the first conjugation and (2) in the other conjugations?

4. When the verb of the *main clause* is in the subjunctive, what is the force of this subjunctive?

5. What idea is expressed by the subjunctive in a *subordinate clause* introduced by **ut** or **nē**?

6. In this chapter when **nē** is used with a *main verb* in the subjunctive, what kind of subjunctive is it?

7. Did the Roman prose-writers of the classical period use the infinitive to express purpose as we do in English?

8. Whenever in the following list a form is subjunctive, so label it, indicating also its person and number. The indicative forms are to be translated in accordance with their person, number, and tense.

(1) mittet	(11) audiēmur	(21) līberēminī
(2) mittat	(12) audiāmur	(22) līberābiminī
(3) mittit	(13) audīmur	(23) dēlentur
(4) det	(14) ēripiās	(24) dēleantur
(5) dat	(15) ēripis	(25) vincēris
(6) crēdant	(16) ēripiēs	(26) vinceris
(7) crēdunt	(17) sciuntur	(27) vincāris
(8) crēdent	(18) scientur	(28) dīcimus
(9) movent	(19) sciantur	(29) dīcēmus
(10) moveant	(20) līberāminī	(30) dīcāmus

9. Ille dux veniat. Eum exspectāmus. 10. Cīvēs turpēs ex rē pūblicā discēdant ut in pāce vīvāmus. 11. Sī illī duo amīcōs cupiunt, vēra beneficia faciant. 12. Beneficia aliīs praestat ut amētur. 13. Haec verba fēlīcia vōbīs dīcō nē discēdātis. 14. Patriae causā haec difficillima faciāmus. 15. Illīs miserīs plūs pecūniae date nē armīs contrā hostēs careant. 16. Putat eōs id factūrōs esse ut īram meam vītent. 17. Arma parēmus nē lībertās nostra tollātur. 18. Armīsne sōlīs lībertās nostra ē perīculō ēripiētur? 19. Nē sapientēs librōs difficiliōrēs scrībant. 20. Satis sapientiae enim ā librīs difficiliōribus nōn accipiēmus. 21. Meliōra et maiōra faciat nē vītam miserrimam agat. 22. Haec illī auctōrī clārissimō nārrā ut in librō eius scrībantur. 23. Vēritātem semper quaerāmus, sine quā maximī animī nōn possunt esse fēlīcēs.

24. Explain the syntax of the following words (i.e., copy the words each on a new line, state the form, and give the reason for that form): (9) veniat; (10) discēdant, vīvāmus; (11) faciant; (12) praestat, amētur; (13) discēdātis; (14) faciāmus; (15) date, armīs, careant; (16) eōs, factūrōs esse, vītent; (17) parēmus, tollātur; (18) armīs, ēripiētur; (19) scrībant; (20) accipiēmus; (21) faciat, agat; (22) nārrā, scrībantur; (23) quaerāmus.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 29

1. What is the easy rule for the recognition and the formation of the imperfect subjunctive active and passive?

2. Does this rule apply to such irregular verbs as **sum** and **possum?**

3. The indicatives in the following list are to be translated according to their forms. The subjunctives are to be so labeled, with indication also of their tense, person, and number.

(1) vocāret	(11) dīcat	(21) possīmus
(2) invenīrent	(12) dīcet	(22) essent
(3) vidērēmus	(13) dīcit	(23) accipiās
(4) dīcerem	(14) sint	(24) accipiēs
(5) ēriperēs	(15) posset	(25) acciperēs
(6) servet	(16) possit	(26) expellēminī
(7) servārētis	(17) discēderent	(27) expellerēminī
(8) videat	(18) discēdent	(28) expellāminī
(9) inveniēs	(19) discēdant	(29) movērentur
(10) inveniās	(20) dēmus	(30) moventur

4. How can the idea of result be expressed in Latin?

5. How can result clauses be distinguished from purpose clauses?

6. When and where is the imperfect subjunctive used?

7. Optimōs librōs tantā cum cūrā lēgērunt ut multum sapientiae discerent. 8. Bonōs librōs cum cūrā legēbāmus ut sapientiam discerēmus. 9. Optimī librī discipulīs legendī sunt ut vēritātem et mōrēs bonōs discant. 10. Sapientissimī auctōrēs plūrēs librōs scrībant ut omnēs gentēs adiuvāre possint. 11. Animī plūrimōrum hominum tam stultī sunt ut discere nōn cupiant. 12. At multae mentēs ita ācrēs sunt ut bene discere possint. 13. Quīdam magistrī discipulōs tantā cum arte docēbant ut ipsī discipulī quidem discere cuperent. 14. Imperium istīus tyrannī tantum erat ut senātus eum expellere nōn posset. 15. Omnēs cīvēs sē patriae dent nē hostēs lībertātem tollant. 16. Caesar tam ācer dux erat ut hostēs mīlitēs Rōmānōs nōn vincerent. 17. Dūcimusne aliās gentēs tantā cum sapientiā et virtūte ut lībertās cōnservētur? 18. Tanta beneficia faciēbātis ut omnēs vōs amārent. 19. Tam dūrus erat ut nēmō eum amāret. 20. Mīlia cīvium ex eā terrā fugiēbant nē ā tyrannō opprimerentur. 21. Lībertātem sīc amāvērunt ut numquam ab hostibus vincerentur.

22. Explain the syntax of the following words: (7) discerent; (8) discerēmus; (9) discant; (10) scrībant, possint; (11) cupiant; (12) possint; (13) cuperent; (14) posset; (15) dent, tollant; (16) vincerent; (17) cōnservētur; (18) amārent; (19) amāret; (20) opprimerentur; (21) vincerentur.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 30

1. As the form of the imperfect subjunctive active is the present active infinitive plus personal endings, how can the pluperfect subjunctive active be easily recognized?

2. As the pluperfect indicative passive is the perfect passive particle + **eram** (i.e., the imperfect indicative of **sum**), what parallel rule holds for the pluperfect subjunctive passive?

3. If **positus est** is the perfect indicative passive, what most naturally is **positus sit**?

4. What forms of the active indicative do the forms of the perfect subjunctive active resemble in most instances?

5. State the tense, voice, person, and number of each of the following subjunctives:

(1) ponerētur	(5) posuerint	(9) darent	(13) dedissēs
(2) posuissem	(6) ponerēmus	(10) datī essēmus	(14) darētur
(3) positī sint	(7) posuissētis	(11) det	(15) dederīmus
(4) ponāmur	(8) positus esset	(12) datus sīs	(16) dedissent

6. (1) Name the primary tenses of the indicative.
   (2) Name the primary tenses of the subjunctive.
   (3) Name the historical tenses of the indicative.
   (4) Name the historical tenses of the subjunctive.

7. (1) What time does the present subjunctive indicate relative to that of a primary main verb?
   (2) What time does the imperfect subjunctive indicate relative to that of a historical main verb?
   (3) What time does the perfect subjunctive indicate relative to that of a primary main verb?
   (4) What time does the pluperfect subjunctive indicate relative to that of a secondary main verb?

8. Ubi dux est (fuit)?   9. Rogant ubi dux sit (fuerit).   10. Rogābant ubi dux esset (fuisset).   11. Rogābunt ubi dux sit (fuerit).   12. Nesciō ubi pecūnia posita sit.   13. Scīsne ubi pecūnia ponātur?   14. Scīvērunt ubi pecūnia ponerētur.   15. Nescīvit ubi pecūnia posita esset.   16. Vōbīs dīcēmus cūr mīles hoc fēcerit (faciat).   17. Mihi dīxērunt cūr mīles hoc fēcisset (faceret).   18. Dīc mihi quis vēnerit (veniat).   19. Ōrātor rogāvit cūr cēterī cīvēs haec cōnsilia nōn cognōvissent.   20. Ducī nūntiāvimus cēterōs mīlitēs in illam terram fugere (fūgisse).   21. Ducī nūntiāvimus in quam terram cēterī mīlitēs fugerent (fūgissent).   22. Audīvimus cīvēs tam fidēlēs esse ut rem pūblicam cōnservārent.   23. Audīvimus quid cīvēs fēcissent ut rem pūblicam cōnservārent.   24. Quaerēbant quōrum in rē pūblicā pāx invenīrī posset.   25. Cognōvimus pācem in patriā eōrum nōn inventam esse.   26. Illī stultī semper rogant quid sit melius quam imperium aut pecūnia.   27. Nōs quidem putāmus pecūniam ipsam nōn esse malam; sed crēdimus vēritātem et lībertātem et amīcitiam esse meliōrēs et maiōrēs.   28. Haec cupimus ut vītam pulchriōrem agāmus; nam pecūnia sōla et imperium possunt hominēs dūrōs facere,

ut fēlicēs nōn sint. 29. Dēnique omnia expōnat ut iam comprehendātis quanta scelera contrā rem pūblicam commissa sint.

30. Explain the syntax of the following: (15) posita esset; (16) fēcerit; (17) fēcisset; (18) vēnerit; (20) fugere; (21) fugerent; (22) esse, cōnservārent; (23) fēcissent, cōnservārent; (24) posset; (25) inventam esse; (26) sit; (27) esse; (28) agāmus, sint; (29) expōnat, comprehendātis, commissa sint.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 31

1. Name the three possible meanings of **cum** + the subjunctive.
2. When **tamen** follows a **cum**-clause, what does **cum** regularly mean?
3. (1) To what conjugation does **ferō** belong?
   (2) State the irregularity which the following forms of **ferō** have in common: ferre, fers, fert, fertis, ferris, fertur.
4. In the following list label the subjunctives and translate the rest according to their forms.

(1) ferat	(6) ferunt	(11) fertis	(16) tulisse
(2) fert	(7) ferent	(12) ferēris	(17) lātūrus esse
(3) ferret	(8) ferant	(13) ferris	(18) ferendus
(4) feret	(9) fertur	(14) fer	(19) lātus esse
(5) ferre	(10) ferte	(15) ferrī	(20) tulisset

5. Cum hoc dīxissēmus, illī vīgintī respondērunt sē pācem aequam oblātūrōs esse. 6. Cum sē in aliam terram contulisset, tamen amīcōs novōs invēnit. 7. Cum amīcitiam nōbīs offerant, eīs auxilium offerēmus. 8. Cum perīculum magnum esset, omnēs cōpiās et arma brevī tempore contulērunt. 9. Quid tū fers? Quid ille fert? Dīc mihi cūr haec dōna offerantur. 10. Cum exposuisset quid peteret, negāvistī tantum auxilium posse offerrī. 11. Cum dōna iūcunda tulissent, potuī tamen īnsidiās eōrum cognōscere. 12. Cum cōnsilia tua nunc comprehendāmus, īnsidiās tuās nōn ferēmus. 13. Tanta mala nōn ferenda sunt. Cōnfer tē in exsilium. 14. Dēnique hī centum cīvēs reī pūblicae auxilium ferant. 15. Putābam eōs vīnum nāvibus lātūrōs esse. 16. Cum mīlitēs nostrī hostēs vīcissent, tamen eīs multa beneficia obtulērunt. 17. Cum cognōvisset quanta beneficia cēterī trēs offerrent, ipse aequa beneficia obtulit. 18. Cīvibus miserīs gentium parvārum satis auxiliī dēbēmus offerre. 19. Cum cōnsul haec verba dīxisset, senātus respondit pecūniam ad hanc rem collātam esse.

20. Explain the syntax of the following words: (5) dīxissēmus, oblātūrōs esse; (6) contulisset; (7) offerant; (8) esset; (9) offerantur; (10) exposuisset, peteret; (11) tulissent; (12) comprehendāmus; (13) cōnfer; (14) ferant; (15) nāvibus, lātūrōs esse; (16) vīcissent; (17) offerrent; (19) dīxisset.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 32

1. What is the regular positive ending (1) of adverbs made from adjectives of the first and the second declensions and (2) of adverbs made from adjectives of the third declension?
2. In English what adverbial ending is equivalent to the Latin adverbial -ē or -iter?
3. Do all Latin adverbs of the positive degree end in -ē or -iter?
4. (1) What is the ending of the comparative degree of an adverb in Latin? (2) With what form of the adjective is this identical? (3) In English how is the comparative degree of the adverb usually formed?
5. How does the base of the superlative degree of a Latin adverb compare with that of the corresponding adjective?
6. Translate each of the following adverbs in two ways: (1) līberius; (2) līberrimē.
7. Translate each of the following adverbs in accordance with its form.

(1) iūcundē	(6) breviter	(11) minimē	(16) minus
(2) iūcundius	(7) celerrimē	(12) magis	(17) facile
(3) iūcundissimē	(8) peius	(13) diūtius	(18) maximē
(4) melius	(9) fidēlius	(14) male	(19) gravissimē
(5) fidēlissimē	(10) facilius	(15) miserius	(20) celerius

8. (1) What is the stem of **volō** in the indicative? (2) What is the stem of **volō** in the present and the imperfect subjunctive?
9. To what other irregular verb is **volō** similar in the present subjunctive?
10. Label the subjunctives in the following list and translate the other forms.

(1) volēs	(7) māllēmus	(13) voluisse	(19) voluistī
(2) velīs	(8) voluissēs	(14) volunt	(20) vellet
(3) vīs	(9) volam	(15) voluimus	(21) nōlunt
(4) vellēs	(10) volēbant	(16) velle	(22) nōllet
(5) māvult	(11) volet	(17) voluerat	(23) mālit
(6) velīmus	(12) vultis	(18) voluērunt	(24) nōlet

11. Quīdam mālunt crēdere omnēs esse parēs. 12. Quīdam negant mentēs quidem omnium hominum esse parēs. 13. Hī dīvitiās celerrimē invēnērunt; illī diūtissimē erunt pauperēs. 14. Hic plūrimōs honōrēs quam facillimē accipere vult. 15. Nōlīte hanc scientiam āmittere. 16. Cīvēs ipsī rem pūblicam melius gessērunt quam ille dux. 17. Ibi terra est aequior et plūs patet. 18. Nōs ā scientiā prohibēre nōlent virī līberī; sed tyrannī maximē sīc volunt. 19. Tyrannus cīvēs suōs ita male opprimēbat ut semper līberī esse vellent. 20. Plūrima dōna līberrimē offeret ut exercitus istum tyrannum adiuvāre velit. 21. Cum auxilium offerre minimē vellent, nōluimus eīs beneficia

multa praestāre. 22. Cum hostēs contrā nōs celeriter veniant, volumus nostrōs ad arma quam celerrimē vocāre. 23. Cum lībertātem lēgēsque cōn-servāre vērē vellent, tamen scelera tyrannī diūtissimē ferenda erant. 24. Māvult haec sapientius facere nē hanc quidem occasiōnem āmittat. 25. Nōlī discēdere, mī amīce.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 33

1. (1) What form of the verb is found in both clauses of a future less vivid condition?
(2) Explain why this construction is called "less vivid" as compared with the simple future (or "future more vivid")
2. (1) Name the specific type of condition (A) that has the imperfect sub-junctive in both clauses and (B) that has the pluperfect subjunctive in both clauses.
(2) In each of these conditions which part of the sentence is essentially the same in both Latin and English?
3. What is the regular negative of the conditional clause in Latin?
4. What type of Latin condition is translated by "should . . . would" and hence can be called a "should-would condition"?
5. What is the meaning of **quis, quid** after **sī, nisi, nē,** and **num?**

6. Sī ratiō dūcit, fēlīx es.   7. Sī ratiō dūcet, fēlīx eris.   8. Sī ratiō dūcat, fēlīx sīs.   9. Sī ratiō dūceret, fēlīx essēs.   10. Sī ratiō dūxisset, fēlīx fuissēs.   11. Sī pecūniam amās, sapientiā carēs.   12. Sī pecūniam amābis, sapientiā carēbis.   13. Sī pecūniam amēs, sapientiā careās.   14. Sī pecūniam amārēs, sapientiā carērēs.   15. Sī pecūniam amāvissēs, sapientiā caruissēs.   16. Sī vēritātem quaerimus, scientiam invenīmus.   17. Sī vēritātem quaerēmus, scientiam in-veniēmus.   18. Sī vēritātem quaerāmus, scientiam inveniāmus.   19. Sī vēri-tātem quaererēmus, scientiam invenīrēmus.   20. Sī vēritātem quaesīvis-sēmus, scientiam invēnissēmus.   21. Nisi īram vītābitis, duōs amīcōs āmittētis.   22. Nisi īram vītāvissētis, quīnque amīcōs āmīsissētis.   23. Nisi īram vītētis, multōs amīcōs āmittātis.   24. Nisi īram vītārētis, multōs amīcōs āmitterētis.   25. Nisi īram vītātis, multōs amīcōs āmittitis.   26. Nisi īram vītāvistis, multōs amīcōs āmīsistis.   27. Sī quis bonōs mōrēs habet, eum lau-dāmus.   28. Sī quis bonōs mōrēs habuisset, eum laudāvissēmus.   29. Sī quis bonōs mōrēs habeat, eum laudēmus.   30. Sī quis bonōs mōrēs habuit, eum laudāvimus (laudābāmus).   31. Sī quis bonōs mōrēs habēret, eum laudārē-mus.   32. Sī quis bonōs mōrēs habēbit, eum laudābimus.   33. Sī istī vincent, discēdēmus.   34. Sī istī vincant, discēdāmus.   35. Sī istī vīcissent, discessis-sēmus.   36. Sī librōs bene lēgissēs, melius scrīpsissēs.   37. Sī librōs bene legēs, melius scrībēs.   38. Sī librōs bene legās, melius scrībās.

39. Name in sequence the types of conditions found in sentences 6–10 and 21–26.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 34

1. State the chief peculiarity of deponent verbs.
2. Write a synopsis of the following verbs in the 6 tenses of the indicative and the 4 tenses of the subjunctive as indicated:
   (1) **cōnor** in the 1st person plural.
   (2) **loquor** in the 3d person singular.
3. (1) Write, label, and translate all the participles of **patior**.
   (2) Write, label, and translate all the infinitives of **patior**.
4. Using the proper form of **illud cōnsilium** fill in the following blanks to complete the idea suggested by the English sentence in each instance.
   (1) He will not follow that plan: nōn sequētur _____.
   (2) He will not use that plan: nōn utētur _____.
   (3) He will not permit that plan: nōn patiētur _____.
5. Explain the proper form of **illud cōnsilium** in #4 (2) above.
6. Name the *active forms* found in deponent verbs.
7. Give the imperative forms of (1) **cōnor** and (2) **loquor,** and translate each one.
8. Translate the following participles: (1) locūtus; (2) mortuus; (3) cōnātus; (4) passus; (5) secūtus; (6) ēgressus; (7) profectus.
9. In the following list label any subjunctive forms and translate the rest:

(1) ūtētur	(6) ūsus esset	(11) patī	(16) patitur
(2) ūtātur	(7) ūsūrum esse	(12) passī sunt	(17) patiēmur
(3) ūtitur	(8) patiēris	(13) passum esse	(18) arbitrētur
(4) ūterētur	(9) pateris	(14) patientēs	(19) arbitrārētur
(5) ūsus	(10) patere	(15) patiātur	(20) patiendum est

10. Arbitrātur haec mala patienda esse. 11. Cōnābimur haec mala patī. 12. Nisi morī vīs, patere haec mala. 13. Maxima mala passus, homō miser mortuus est. 14. Tyrannus arbitrātus est eōs duōs haec mala diū passūrōs esse. 15. Cum tria bella passī essent, istum tyrannum in exsilium expellere ausī sunt. 16. Sī hunc ducem novum sequēminī, lībertāte et ōtiō ūtēminī. 17. Hīs verbīs dictīs, eum sequī ausī sumus. 18. Haec verba locūtī, profectī sumus nē in eō locō miserō morerēmur. 19. Cum vōs cōnsiliō malō ūsōs esse arbitrārētur, tamen vōbīscum līberē locūtus est. 20. Sī quis vīnō eius generis ūtī audeat, celeriter moriātur. 21. Eōdem diē fīlius eius nātus est et mortuus est. 22. Omnibus opibus nostrīs ūtāmur ut patria nostra servētur. 23. Cum in aliam terram proficīscī cōnārētur, ā mīlitibus captus est. 24. Arbitrābar eum ex urbe cum decem amīcīs ēgressūrum esse. 25. Eā nocte profectus, Caesar ad quandam īnsulam clārissimam vēnit. 26. Sī meliōribus librīs ūsī essent, plūra didicissent. 27. Sī multōs amīcōs habēre vīs, nōlī esse superbus.

28. Name the type of condition found above in each of the following sentences: 12, 16, 20, 26.

29. Explain the syntax of the following: (14) passūrōs esse; (17) verbīs; (18) locūtī, morerēmur; (19) cōnsiliō, arbitrārētur; (21) diē; (22) ūtāmur; (25) nocte; (26) librīs.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 35

1. A certain number of verbs, which in English apparently take a direct object, in Latin take a dative. In lieu of a good rule to cover such verbs, what procedures can prove helpful?
2. Some other verbs also, when compounded with certain prepositions, may take a dative.
   (1) What is the concept that underlies this?
   (2) Do all compound verbs take the dative?
3. Copy each of the following verbs on a new line; after it write that one of the three forms **eī, eum, eō** which is in the case required by the verb; and then translate the whole expression, using the pronoun to mean "him" generally and "it" where necessary.

(1) cognōscunt	(7) patiuntur	(13) superant	(19) persuādent
(2) ignōscunt	(8) invenient	(14) crēdunt	(20) ūtuntur
(3) serviunt	(9) nocent	(15) carent	(21) pellunt
(4) servant	(10) iuvant	(16) student	(22) parcunt
(5) parāvī	(11) placent	(17) hortantur	(23) imperant
(6) pāruī	(12) iaciunt	(18) sequuntur	(24) iubent

4. Ducem servāvit. 5. Ducī servīvit. 6. Servī aliīs hominibus serviunt. 7. Virī fortēs aliōs servant. 8. Ille servus fīliō meō servīvit et eum servāvit. 9. Sī quis sibi sōlī serviet, rem publicam numquam servābit. 10. Sī quis hunc labōrem suscēpisset, mīlle virōs servāvisset. 11. Deī mihi ignōscent; vōs, ō cīvēs, tōtī exercituī ignōscite. 12. Sī Deum nōbīs ignōscere volumus, nōs dēbēmus aliīs hominibus ignōscere. 13. Mihi nunc nōn crēdunt, neque umquam duōbus fīliīs meīs crēdere volent. 14. Illī amīcī sunt mihi cārissimī. 15. Cum bonā fidē carērēs, tibi crēdere nōn poterant. 16. Huic ducī pāreāmus ut nōbīs parcat et urbem servet. 17. Nisi Caesar cīvibus placēbit, vītae eius nōn parcent. 18. Litterīs Latīnīs studeō, quae mihi placent etiam sī amīcīs meīs persuadēre nōn possum. 19. Vēritātī et sapientiae semper studeāmus et pāreāmus. 20. Optimīs rēbus semper studēte sī vērē esse fēlīcēs vultis. 21. Hīs rēbus studentēs, et librīs et vītā ūtāmur. 22. Vir bonus nēminī nocēre vult: omnibus parcit, omnēs iuvat. 23. Praemia mea sunt simillima tuīs.

24. Explain the syntax of the following: (5) ducī; (8) eum; (9) sibi; (11) exercituī; (12) hominibus; (13) fīliīs; (14) mihi; (15) fidē; (16) ducī, pāreāmus, servet; (17) cīvibus, vītae; (18) litterīs, amīcīs; (21) rēbus, librīs, ūtāmur; (22) omnibus; (23) tuīs.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 36

1. We have already learned how the Romans expressed indirect statements (Chapter 25) and indirect questions (Chapter 30). Now after a verb having the connotation of command, how did the Romans express an indirect command?
2. List some common Latin verbs which can take an indirect command.
3. In the following list label the subjunctives and translate the other forms.

(1) fīet	(6) fīunt	(10) fierent	(14) fierem
(2) fit	(7) fīēbant	(11) fīmus	(15) fīant
(3) fīat	(8) fīēs	(12) fīent	(16) faciendus
(4) fieret	(9) factus esse	(13) fīs	(17) fīāmus
(5) fierī			

4. Dīxit eōs litterīs Latīnīs studēre. 5. Dīxit cūr litterīs Latīnīs studērent. 6. Dīxit ut litterīs Latīnīs studērent. 7. Ab eīs quaesīvimus cūr philosophiae Graecae studērent. 8. Quaerisne ut nātūram omnium rērum cognōscāmus? 9. Tē moneō ut hīs sapientibus parcās. 10. Mīlitēs monuit nē eīs pācem petentibus nocērent. 11. Nōbīs imperābit nē hostibus crēdāmus. 12. Tibi imperāvit ut ducī pārērēs. 13. Tē rogō cūr hoc fēcerīs. 14. Tē rogō ut hoc faciās. 15. Ā tē petō ut pāx fīat. 16. Ā mē petēbant nē bellum facerem. 17. Eum ōrāvī nē rēgī turpī pārēret. 18. Vōs ōrāmus ut discipulī ācerrimī fīātis. 19. Nōlī esse similis istī tyrannō dūrō. 20. Caesar cūrāvit ut imperium suum maximum in cīvitāte fieret. 21. Ōrātor nōs hortātus est ut līberae patriae nostrae cum studiō servīrēmus. 22. Nōbīs persuāsit ut aequīs lēgibus semper ūterēmur. 23. Cōnāmur ducī persuādēre nē artibus et lēgibus patriae noceat. 24. Tyrannus imperat ut pecūnia fīat; et pecūnia fit. At ille stultus nōn sentit hanc pecūniam sine bonā fidē futūram esse nihil. 25. Plūrēs quidem discipulōs hortēmur ut linguae Latīnae studeant.

26. Explain the syntax of the following: (4) studēre; (5) studērent; (6) studērent; (7) studērent; (8) cognōscāmus; (9) parcās; (10) eīs, pācem; (11) hostibus; (13) fēcerīs; (14) faciās; (16) facerem; (18) fīātis; (22) lēgibus; (23) lēgibus; (24) futūram esse; (25) hortēmur.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 37

1. (1) Name the tenses and moods in which the stem of **īre** is changed to e before **a, o,** and **u.**
   (2) Otherwise, what is the stem of **eō** in the indicative, subjunctive, imperative, and infinitives?
2. State the nominative singular and the nominative plural of the present participle of **eō.**

3. Write a synopsis of **eō** in the 2nd singular and the 3d plural indicative and subjunctive active.

4. In the following list label the subjunctives and translate the other forms.

(1) iimus	(7) itūrus esse	(13) iī	(19) euntēs
(2) īmus	(8) euntem	(14) ībat	(20) ībō
(3) īrēmus	(9) iērunt	(15) ierant	(21) iit
(4) ībimus	(10) eunt	(16) ierim	(22) ībāmus
(5) īssēmus	(11) eant	(17) īret	(23) īsset
(6) eāmus	(12) ībunt	(18) īsse	(24) eat

5. State how the Romans regularly expressed the following place concepts and translate the English example into Latin:

(1) place from which: from (out of) that land.

(2) place where: in that land; on that island.

(3) place to which: into (to) that land.

6. State the general rules for these place constructions when the name of a city is involved.

7. Define the locative case, and state the nature of the locative forms.

8. State how the Romans expressed each of the following time concepts and translate the English example:

(1) time when: on the same day.

(2) time how long: for many days.

(3) time within which: in one day.

9. What is peculiar about the principal parts of **licet?** Explain. Translate into Latin "You may go."

10. Translate each of the following words or phrases in accordance with the principles of this chapter.

(1) ūnum diem	(7) paucīs diēbus	(13) domum
(2) ūnō diē	(8) eādem nocte	(14) Athēnīs
(3) illō diē	(9) multōs diēs	(15) domī
(4) Rōmā	(10) in nāvem	(16) Athēnās
(5) Rōmae	(11) in nāve	(17) domō
(6) Rōmam	(12) ex nāve	(18) paucās hōrās

11. Paucīs hōrīs Rōmam ībimus.   12. Nōs ad urbem īmus; illī domum eunt. 13. Ut saepe fassī sumus, tibi nōn licet Rōmā Athēnās īre.   14. Cūr domō tam celeriter abīstī?   15. Rōmam veniunt ut cum frātre meō Athēnās eant. 16. Nōlīte abīre Rōmā.   17. Frātre tuō Rōmae interfectō, hortābāmur tē ut Athēnās redīrēs.   18. Sī in fīnēs hostium hōc tempore eat, paucīs hōrīs pereat.   19. Negāvit sē velle in istā terrā multōs diēs remanēre.   20. Dīxistī tē domum Athēnīs ūnā hōrā reditūrum esse.   21. Ā tē petō ut ex nāve ad īnsulam brevī tempore redeās.   22. Eīs diēbus solitī sumus Athēnīs esse.   23. Sī amīcīs eius Rōmae nocuissent, Rōmam brevissimō tempore redīsset.

24. Cum frāter meus domī remanēret, ego tamen in novās terrās domō abiī.
25. Rōmānī, sī quid malī loquī volēbant, saepe dīcēbant: "Abī in malam rem." 26. Eīs persuādet ut Latīnae studeant.

27. Explain the syntax of the following words: (11) hōrīs, Rōmam; (12) domum; (13) Rōmā, Athēnās, īre; (14) domō; (15) Rōmam; (17) frātre; (18) tempore, eat, hōrīs; (19) velle, diēs; (20) domum, Athēnīs, hōrā, reditūrum esse; (21) tempore, redeās; (22) diēbus, Athēnīs; (23) amīcīs, Rōmae, redīsset; (24) domī, terrās, domō; (26) studeant.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 38

1. What does a relative clause with the indicative tell about the antecedent?
2. What does a relative clause with the subjunctive tell about its antecedent, and what is the nature of the antecedent?
3. What is the basic difference between the dative of indirect object and the dative of reference?
4. How are supines formed and what are their functions?

5. Amīcus meus quī cōnsulem dēfendit ipse erat vir clārissimus. 6. At nēmō erat quī istum hominem turpem dēfenderet. 7. Quid est quod virī plūs metuant quam tyrannum? 8. Quis est quī inter lībertātem et imperium tyrannī dubitet? 9. Rōmae antīquae erant quī pecūniam plūs quam rem pūblicam amārent. 10. Abeat ā patriā iste homō malus quī odium omnium cīvium bonōrum passus est. 11. Catilīna (= Catiline), quī tantās īnsidiās contrā rem pūblicam fēcerat, ex urbe ā Cicerōne expulsus est. 12. Istī ducī in exsilium abeuntī quae vīta potest esse iūcunda? 13. Quis est quī tantum dolōrem ferre possit? 14. Nisi quis iūcundus bonusque erit, vītam vērē fēlīcem mihi nōn vīvet. 15. Cōnsulī nōn crēdent quī opera turpia faciat. 16. Nōlī crēdere eī quī sit acerbus amīcīs. 17. Cicerō erat cōnsul quī rem pūblicam salūtī suae antepōneret. 18. Scīvērunt quārē cōnsulem tam fortem sequī vellēmus. 19. Nihil sciō quod mihi facilius esse possit. 20. Ducem quaerō quem omnēs laudent. 21. Rōmam ībant rogātum lībertātem. 22. Rōmānī, quī decem rēs pūblicās Graecās exercitibus suīs cēperant, ipsī—mīrābile dictū—Graecīs artibus captī sunt! 23. Virīs antīquīs nihil erat quod melius esset quam virtūs et sapientia. 24. Nihil metuendum est quod animō nocēre nōn possit.

25. Analyze the relative clauses in the following pair of sentences, showing how they differ in their force: 5 and 6.
26. Explain the syntax of the following words: (7) metuant; (8) dubitet; (9) Rōmae, amārent; (10) abeat, passus est; (11) fēcerat; (12) ducī, potest; (13) possit; (14) erit, mihi; (15) cōnsulī; (16) amīcīs; (17) salūtī, antepōneret; (18) vellēmus; (19) mihi, possit; (21) rogātum; (22) cēperant, dictū; (23) virīs; (24) animō, possit.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 39

1. (1) Define the term *gerund.*
   (2) What is the ending of the gerund in English?
   (3) How is the gerund declined in Latin?
   (4) As a noun, what is the syntax of the gerund in Latin?
   (5) What serves in place of the nominative of the gerund in Latin?
2. (1) What part of speech is the Latin gerundive?
   (2) What mnemonic device may help you to remember this?
   (3) As an adjective, what is the syntax of the gerundive?
   (4) How is the gerundive declined?
   (5) How can the gerundive be distinguished from the gerund in Latin usage (though not in English translation)?
3. (1) How is the Latin gerund to be translated?
   (2) How is the gerundive in agreement with its noun to be translated?
   (3) For example, translate:
       (A) Discimus legendō cum cūrā (gerund).
       (B) Discimus librīs legendīs cum cūrā (gerundive).

4. Experiendō discimus. 5. Ad discendum vēnērunt. 6. Sē discendō dedit.
7. Discendī causā ad lūdum tuum vēnērunt. 8. Puer cupidus discendī ad lūdum iit. 9. Metus moriendī eum terrēbat. 10. Spēs vīvendī post mortem multōs hortātur. 11. Cōgitandō eōs superāvit. 12. Sē dedit—

(1) glōriae quaerendae.	(9) iniūriīs oppugnandīs.
(2) bellō gerendō.	(10) librīs scrībendīs.
(3) pecūniae faciendae.	(11) librīs legendīs.
(4) imperiō accipiendō.	(12) philosophiae discendae.
(5) cīvitātibus delendīs.	(13) litterīs Latīnīs discendīs.
(6) huic ducī sequendō.	(14) vēritātī intellegendae.
(7) patriae servandae.	(15) sapientiae quaerendae.
(8) pācī petendae.	(16) hominibus adiuvandīs.

13. Rōmam vēnit—

(1) ad hoc opus suscipiendum.	(5) huius operis suscipiendī causā.
(2) ad lūdōs Rōmānōs videndōs.	(6) philosophiae discendae causā.
(3) ad aedificia vetera videnda.	(7) novōrum librōrum legendōrum causā.
(4) ad pācem petendam.	(8) lūdōs vīsum.

14. Librum scrīpsit—

(1) dē dolōre ferendō.	(5) dē bellō gerendō.
(2) dē metū superandō.	(6) dē lībertāte dēfendendā.
(3) dē bonā vītā vīvendā.	(7) dē hostibus vincendīs.
(4) dē rē pūblicā gerendā.	(8) dē dōnīs dandīs.

15. Sapientiōrēs fīmus—

(1) Latīnīs litterīs legendīs.

(2) philosophiā discendā.

(3) vītā experiendā.

(4) metū vincendō.

(5) vēritāte sequendā.

16. Nōs ipsōs adiuvāmus—

(1) bonīs librīs semper legendīs.

(2) virīs miserīs metū liberandīs.

(3) auxiliō offerendō.

(4) aliīs adiuvandīs.

17. Multum tempus cōnsūmpsit—

(1) in cōgitandō (loquendō, currendō).

(2) in hīs operibus faciendīs.

(3) in viā inveniendā.

(4) in exercitū parandō.

(5) in cōpiīs parandīs.

18. Tempus huic librō sōlī scrībendō habuit.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 40

1. Explain the essential differences involved in introducing questions with **-ne, nōnne,** and **num.**

2. What word is used to introduce a positive fear clause? a negative fear clause? Can you explain why this is the opposite of what one might expect?

3. In order for a noun to function as either a descriptive genitive or a descriptive ablative, what condition must be met?

4. Magnopere vereor ut imperātor nōbīs satis auxiliī mittat. 5. Fuit fēmina maximā virtūte et fidē atque simillima mātrī. 6. Nōlī timēre nē omnēs virī et fēminae magnōrum animōrum Rōmā discēdant. 7. Id quidem est facile dictū sed difficile factū! 8. Parentibus placitum domum vēnērunt. 9. Nōnne vīs audīre aliquid bonī? 10. Vīsne habēre multum sapientiae? Studē Latīnae! 11. Imperāvit tribus mīlitibus ut pācem petītum Rōmam adīrent. 12. Num dubitās hoc dīcere, mī amīce? 13. Tū mē hortāris ut sim animō magnō et spem salūtis habeam, sed timeō nē sim īnfīrmior. 14. Ego dīvitiās sapientiae antepōnō. Nōn enim arbitror hominēs vītam fēlīcem sine cōpiā pecūniae reperīre posse. 15. Plūrimī autem virī dīvitēs multum metūs sentiunt. 16. Pauperēs saepe sunt fēlīciōrēs et minus metūs habent. 17. Pecūnia ipsa nōn est mala: sed rēs mentis animīque plūs opis ad fēliciter vīvendum offerunt. 18. Novem ex ducibus nōs hortātī sunt ut plūs auxiliī praestārēmus. 19. Quīnque ex custōdiīs interfectīs, pater meus cum duōbus ex fīliīs et cum magnō numerō amīcōrum in illam terram līberam fūgit. 20. Numquam satis ōtiī habēbit; at aliquid ōtiī melius est quam nihil. 21. Nostrīs temporibus omnēs plūs metūs et minus speī habēmus. 22. Magna fidēs et virtūs omnibus virīs reperiendae sunt.

Key to Exercises

KEY FOR CHAPTER 1

1. (1) he, she, it; (2) we; (3) I; (4) they; (5) you (sg.); (6) you (pl.)
2. The forms are present active infinitives of the 2nd conjugation. (1) to advise/warn; (2) to see; (3) to be strong; (4) to owe.
3. The forms are present active infinitives of the 1st conjugation. (1) to call; (2) to save; (3) to give; (4) to think; (5) to praise; (6) to love; (7) to err.
4. The forms are present active imperatives 2nd person singular of the 1st or the 2nd conjugations. (1) call; (2) save; (3) give; (4) think; (5) praise; (6) love; (7) advise/warn; (8) see; (9) be strong/good-bye.
5. The forms are present active imperatives 2nd person plural of the 1st or the 2nd conjugations. (1) call; (2) save; (3) give; (4) think; (5) praise; (6) love; (7) advise/warn; (8) see; (9) be strong/good-bye.
6. (1) he/she/it calls, is calling, does call; (2) we think; (3) they love; (4) you (sg.) owe/ought; (5) he sees; (6) they see; (7) we owe/ought; (8) you (sg.) are strong; (9) you (pl.) err/are mistaken; (10) we see; (11) he/she/it loves; (12) you (pl.) see; (13) you (sg.) err; (14) they give; (15) we save; (16) he gives; (17) they love; (18) you (sg.) see.

7. They warn me if I err. 8. He warns me if they err. 9. Warn me if he errs. 10. You (sg.) ought to warn me. 11. You (pl.) ought to save me. 12. They ought not to praise me. 13. "What does he give?" "He often gives nothing." 14. They often call me and advise me. 15. I see nothing. What do you see? 16. Praise me, please, if I do not make a mistake. 17. If you (pl.) are well, we are well. 18. If he is well, I am well. 19. If he (she) loves me, he (she) ought to praise me. 20. Save me. 21. I ought not to err. 22. What ought we to praise? 23. He sees; he ponders; he advises.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 2

1. In classical Latin there was no regular definite or indefinite article. The words *the* and *a* have to be added in the English translation according to the sense of

a Latin passage. Thus **puella** may mean *the girl* or *a girl*, and **puellae** may mean *the girls* or *girls* according to the Latin context. Often in an isolated sentence *the* and *a* can be used interchangeably, or perhaps no article at all need be used.

2. (1) acc. case; (2) gen. case; (3) nom. case; (4) abl.; (5) voc.; (6) dat.

3. (1) acc. pl. as direct object of a verb; (2) nom. sg. as subject of a verb or voc. sg. for direct address; (3) acc. sg. as direct object; (4) nom. pl. subject, or voc. for direct address.

4. (1) gen. pl., of; (2) abl. sg., by/with/from, etc.; (3) gen. sg., of; dat. sg., to/for; nom. pl.; voc. pl.; (4) dat. pl., to/for; abl. pl., by/with/from, etc.

5. (1) girl, direct obj. of verb; (2) girl, subject or vocative; (3) girls, object; (4) girls, subj. or voc.; (5) countries, obj.; (6) country, obj.; (7) country, subj. or voc.; (8) countries, subj. or voc.; (9) money, obj.; (10) money, subj. or voc.; (11) penalties, obj.; (12) penalty, obj.

6. (1) of the girl, girl's, or to/for the girl; (2) of the girls, girls'; (3) O fatherland; (4) of or to/for the fatherland; (5) by/with, etc., money; (6) of or to/for money; (7) to/for or by/with, etc., penalties; (8) by/with etc., a penalty; (9) of penalties.

7. (1) multae pecūniae, multam pecūniam; (2) magnae fāmae, magnā fāmā; (3) vītae meae, vītae meae; (4) fortūnam tuam, fortūnās tuās; (5) magnae patriae, magnārum patriārum; (6) fortūnā meā, fortūnīs meīs; (7) magnae poenae, magnīs poenīs; (8) multīs philosophiīs, multīs philosophiīs.

8. (1) multā pecūniā; (2) multārum puellārum; (3) meae patriae; (4) magnam vītam; (5) tuīs poenīs; (6) multae patriae; (7) multīs puellīs; (8) meae vītae; (9) Ō fortūna; (10) puellae; (11) puellārum; (12) puellae; (13) puellās; (14) puellae.

9. Farewell (goodbye), my native land. 10. The fortune of the girl (the girl's fortune) is great. 11. The girl is praising the fortune of your (sg.) country. 12. O girl, save your country. 13. Many girls love money. 14. You (pl.) are giving nothing to the girl, *or* you give nothing to a girl. 15. He sees the money of the girl, *or* the girl's money. 16. You (sg.) do not see the girls' money. 17. We ought to warn the girls. 18. They ought to praise the girl. 19. Life gives (good) fortune to many girls. 20. You (sg.) are saving my life by *or* with your money. 21. Fame is nothing without fortune. 22. You (pl.) do not like life without money. 23. A country is not strong without fame and fortune. 24. You (sg.) ought not to praise the anger of the girls. 25. We like a life without punishments. 26. We are not strong without philosophy. 27. What is life without philosophy?

KEY FOR CHAPTER 3

1. (1) acc. sg., obj.; (2) nom. pl. as subj., voc. pl. for direct address; (3) nom. sg., subj.; (4) acc. pl. obj.; (5) voc. sg., direct address.

2. (1) dat. sg., to/for; abl. sg., by/with, etc.; (2) gen. pl., of; (3) gen. sg., of; (4) dat. pl., to/for; abl. pl., by/with, etc.

3. (1) sons, obj.; (2) sons, subj. or direct address; (3) son, obj.; (4) people, obj.; (5) people, direct address; (6) people, subj.; (7) man, subj. or direct address; (8) men, obj.; (9) men, subj. or direct address; (10) man, obj.; (11) friend, direct address; (12) friends, subj. or direct address; (13) friends, obj.; (14) friend, obj.

4. (1) of my sons; (2) to/for my son, by/with, etc., my son; (3) of the Roman people; (4) to/for the Roman people, by/with, etc., the Roman people; (5) to/for the men,

by/with, etc., the men; (6) of the man; (7) of the men; (8) of a few friends; (9) to/ for or by/with, etc., a few friends; (10) to/for or by/with, etc., my friend; (11) of my friend; (12) to/for or by/with, etc., many boys.

5. (1) populī Rōmānī, populō Rōmānō; (2) magnōs virōs, magnīs virīs; (3) puerīs meīs, puerīs meīs; (4) magnō numerō, magnō numerō; (5) magne vir, magnī virī; (6) fīliī meī, fīliōrum meōrum.

6. (1) multōrum puerōrum; (2) populō Rōmānō; (3) fīliōs meōs; (4) Ō fīliī meī; (5) magnum numerum; (6) magnō numerō; (7) Ō vir magne; (8) multīs puerīs; (9) vir magnus; (10) populī Rōmānī.

7. Good-bye, my friend. 8. The Roman people praise your (sg.) son's wisdom. 9. O great man, save the Roman people. 10. The number of the Roman people is great. 11. Many boys love girls. 12. You (pl.) are giving nothing to my son. 13. I see men in the field. 14. You (sg.) see the friend of my son. 15. He does not see your (sg.) sons' friend. 16. We ought to warn my sons. 17. They ought to praise your (sg.) son. 18. Life gives fame to few men. 19. You (sg.) consider me in the number (circle) of your friends. 20. Great men often have few friends. 21. My friend is always thinking. 22. The son of a great man is not always a great man. 23. We do not always see (understand) the wisdom of great men. 24. You (pl.) ought to praise philosophy, the wisdom of great men.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 4

1. Nom. sg. in **-um**; nom. and acc. pl. in **-a**. Actually the vocative should also be added here; but henceforth, since aside from the singular of 2nd-declension masculines in **-us** the vocatives follow the rule of having the same form as the nominative, little specific mention is made of the vocative.
2. (1) nom. pl. as subject; acc. pl. as obj.; (2) nom. sg. as subj.; acc. sg. as obj.
3. (1) dat. sg., to/for; abl. sg., by/with, etc.; (2) gen. pl., of; (3) gen. sg., of; (4) dat. pl., to/for; abl. pl., by/with, etc.
4. (1) wars, subj. or obj.; (2) war, subj. or obj.; (3) duty, subj. or obj.; (4) duties, subj. or obj.; (5) dangers, subj. or obj. Of course any of these forms could also be vocative.
5. (1) of evil wars; (2) to/for evil war, by/with, etc., evil war; (3) of evil war; (4) to/ for evil wars, by/with, etc., evil wars; (5) of great duty or service; (6) to/for great duties, by/with, etc., great duties; (7) to/for small danger, by/with, etc., small danger.
6. (1) bella parva, bella parva; (2) ōtium bonum, ōtia bona; (3) perīculī magnī, perīculōrum magnōrum; (4) officium vērum, officiō vērō.
7. (1) Ō bellum malum; (2) officiō magnō; (3) perīculō magnō; (4) ōtium bonum; (5) multīs bellīs; (6) ōtiī bonī; (7) perīculīs multōrum bellōrum; (8) bella parva; (9) bella parva; (10) Ō bella stulta; (11) bellum parvum.

8. Peace (leisure) is good. 9. Many wars do not preserve peace. 10. The danger is great. 11. We are in great danger. 12. And leisure often has dangers. 13. Life is not without many dangers. 14. Good men love peace. 15. The foolish man praises the dangers of war. 16. Often we do not preserve the peace by war. 17. The Roman people do not always have good peace. 18. They often save the fatherland and

peace by small wars. 19. Many girls are pretty. 20. True friends are few. 21. My friend is a man of great service. 22. The duties of a teacher are many and great. 23. You (sg.) are a man of little leisure. 24. You (pl.) are men of great care. 25. We ought to give attention to duty without delay. 26. Life is nothing without eyes.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 5

1. future: -ō, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt; imperfect: -m, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt.
2. They are the same in the future, but the imperfect has -m instead of -ō in the first pers. sg.
3. future: -bi- (-b- in 1st pers. sg.; -bu- in 3d pers. pl.); imperfect: -bā- (with the -a-shortened before -m, -t, and -nt).
4. (1) we were; (2) he will; (3) you (pl.) will; (4) I shall; (5) they will; (6) he was.
5. By learning the vocabulary form of the adjective: **līber, lībera, līberum, pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum**; and often by learning English derivatives.
6. They show whether the e of a masculine in -er survives throughout the rest of the paradigm; liberty, **līber, lībera, līberum**; pulchritude, **pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum**.
7. (1) they were remaining, remained; (2) he will remain; (3) we shall remain; (4) I was giving, I gave; (5) you (pl.) will give; (6) he will give; (7) you (sg.) will see; (8) we shall see; (9) they were calling, called; (10) you (sg.) will call; (11) you (sg.) will have; (12) they were having, had.
8. (1) dabimus; (2) manēbās; (3) vidēbunt; (4) vocābimus; (5) vocābat; (6) vidēbitis; (7) vidēbō;   (8) servābant;   (9) habēbimus;   (10) habēbāmus;   (11) habēbit; (12) habet.

9. Our teacher praises me and he will praise you tomorrow (sg.). 10. Free men were overcoming our dangers. 11. Our sons love pretty girls. 12. Our friend will not stay in the company (number) of fools. 13. We used to have many faults and always shall have. 14. Great dangers do not overcome our courage. 15. Our beautiful country is free. 16. You (pl.) are free men; you will have a beautiful country. 17. Free teachers were giving attention to duty. 18. Therefore, we shall overcome evil men in our country. 19. If you (sg.) overcome (lit., will overcome) your anger, you will overcome yourself. 20. Because of our courage many men are free. 21. Free fatherland, we always used to love you and we always shall love (you). 22. You (pl.) will not preserve wisdom by means of money. 23. Does your (sg.) soul possess enough wisdom?

KEY FOR CHAPTER 6

1. See Ch. 6, p. 38, s.v. "Complementary Infinitive."
2. (1) we; (2) they; (3) you (sg.); (4) he, she, it; (5) I; (6) I; (7) you (pl.).
3. See p. 38.
4. (1) he, she, it was; (2) he, etc., was able; (3) he will be; (4) he will be able; (5) we are; (6) we are able; (7) we were able; (8) we shall be able; (9) I was able; (10) I was; (11) I shall be; (12) I shall be able; (13) they will be; (14) they will be able; (15) they were able; (16) to be; (17) to be able.
5. (1) sumus; (2) erāmus; (3) erimus; (4) poterimus; (5) potest; (6) poterit; (7) poterat;   (8) posse;   (9) poterant;   (10) possunt;   (11) poterunt;   (12) sunt;   (13) esse; (14) poteram.

6. Your (pl.) country was free. 7. I was able to be a tyrant. 8. Your friend will be a tyrant. 9. Where (there) is a tyrant, there men cannot be free. 10. He could not remain in our country yesterday. 11. Tyrants will always have many faults. 12. We were not able to overcome the tyrants. 13. We ought to overcome our tyrant. 14. The tyrant was able to overcome (the) good men; but he will not be able to remain there. 15. You (pl.) will be able to see the dangers of a tyrant. 16. We cannot tolerate the faults of tyrants. 17. You (sg.) were not tolerating (did not tolerate) the treachery of the tyrant. 18. The peace in your (pl.) country cannot be perpetual. 19. You (sg.) ought to warn free men about tyrants. 20. Your (pl.) teacher always used to like (liked) fine books. 21. Good and true books were able to save the country. 22. You (pl.) will be able to save your country with good books. 23. Tyrants will not be able to overcome the wisdom of good books. 24. Bad men cannot tolerate good books.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 7

1. No.
2. Yes: nom. and acc. pl.
3. (1) nom. and acc. pl. of masc. and fem.; (2) nom. and acc. pl. neut.; (3) acc. sg. masc. and fem.
4. (1) dat. and abl. pl.; (2) dat. sg.; (3) abl. sg.; (4) acc. sg. masc. and fem.; (5) gen. pl.; (6) gen. sg.; (7) nom. and acc. pl. masc. and fem.
5. (1) magnum tempus; (2) magna virtūs; (3) magnus labor; (4) magna cīvitās; (5) magnus mōs; (6) magna pāx; (7) magnus rēx; (8) magnum corpus; (9) magna vēritās; (10) magnus amor.
6. (1) by/with much labor; (2) to/for much labor; (3) of much labor; (4) many labors (nom.); (5) of perpetual peace; (6) by/with perpetual peace; (7) to/for perpetual peace; (8) of small states; (9) a small state (acc.); (10) small states (acc.); (11) small states (nom.); (12) by a small state; (13) bad times (nom. or acc. pl.); (14) bad time (nom. or acc. sg.); (15) to/for a bad time; (16) of bad times; (17) of a bad time; (18) to/for your habit; (19) by your habit; (20) of your habit; (21) your character (nom.); (22) your character (acc.); (23) of your character.
7. (1) magnae virtūtī; (2) magna virtūs; (3) magnās virtūtēs; (4) magnārum virtūtum; (5) magnā virtūte; (6) tempus nostrum; (7) tempora nostra; (8) tempora nostra; (9) temporibus nostrīs; (10) temporī nostrō; (11) temporis nostrī; (12) temporum nostrōrum; (13) amōrem meum; (14) amōrēs meōs; (15) amōrī meō; (16) amōre meō; (17) amōris meī; (18) amōrum meōrum.

8. My time for leisure is small. 9. Your (sg.) courage is great. 10. Money is nothing without good character. 11. The virtues of many human beings are great. 12. The character of a good man will be good. 13. They will give a letter to the man. 14. We were able to see many men in the great state. 15. We used to see (saw, were seeing) a great love of money in many men. 16. Few men give attention to excellence. 17. Our state will give peace to many men. 18. Peace cannot be perpetual. 19. Without good peace the states of our times will not be strong. 20. Times are bad after many wars. 21. In many states and lands peace could not be strong. 22. Without great labor the man will have nothing. 23. The beautiful

maiden loves friends of good character. 24. Men of great courage were daring to overcome tyrants. 25. Love of country was strong in our state.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 8

1. (1) Future. (2) See Ch. 8. Perhaps a better device is found in the fact that our word "future" ends in -e: futur/e. The -a- in **dūcam** is the only exception among six forms.
2. (1) Present. (2) See Ch. 8.
3. (1) 1st pers. pl. pres.; (2) 2nd sg. fut.; (3) 3d pl. pres.; (4) 3d sg. fut.; (5) 2nd pl. pres.; (6) 1st pl. fut.; (7) 1st sg. pres.; (8) 3d pl. fut.; (9) 3d sg. pres.; (10) 2nd pl. fut.; (11) 2nd sg. pres.; (12) 1st sg. fut.; (13) 3d pl. impf.
4. (1) imper. sg.; (2) pres. inf.; (3) imper. pl.
5. (1) they were sending; (2) he is sending; (3) they are sending; (4) I shall send; (5) send (sg.); (6) we are sending; (7) you (pl.) were sending; (8) you (sg.) are sending; (9) send (pl.); (10) you (pl.) send; (11) he will send; (12) we shall send; (13) he does; (14) they will do; (15) they are doing; (16) you (pl.) will do; (17) we were doing; (18) I shall do; (19) we shall do; (20) you (sg.) are doing; (21) you (pl.) are doing; (22) he will write; (23) they are writing; (24) I shall write; (25) I was writing; (26) you (pl.) are writing; (27) we shall write; (28) he is writing; (29) you (sg.) are writing; (30) they will write; (31) write!
6. (1) pōnēbant; (2) pōnēmus; (3) pōne; (4) pōnit; (5) pōnent; (6) pōnam; (7) pōnēbās; (8) pōnētis; (9) pōnite; (10) pōnimus; (11) pōnitis; (12) pōnet.

7. What are they doing? What will you (pl.) do? 8. They were leading the man to me. 9. Lead (sg.) the man to me, and I shall thank the man. 10. While the tyrant leads the troops, we can do nothing. 11. He is writing a letter to the maiden. 12. You (sg.) were writing a great book. 13. You (sg.) will write good books. 14. We shall write books about peace. 15. Do you (pl.) have an abundance of good books? 16. The teacher teaches many boys. 17. The boys do not thank the teacher. 18. Few men were thanking our state. 19. The tyrant will lead great forces out of our state. 20. A great abundance of money does not lead men to wisdom. 21. Will good books lead many men to reason? 22. Do we often lead men to reason? 23. Reason can lead men to a good life. 24. Are you (pl.) leading a good life? 25. Always thank (pl.) a good friend.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 9

1. See p. 55.
2. (1) to/for that (m., f., n.); those (nom. m.)
    (2) that (nom. f.); those (nom./acc. n.)
    (3) of that (m., f., n.)
    (4) that (nom. m.)
    (5) by that (f.)
    (6) that (nom./acc. n.)
    (7) of those (m., n.)
    (8) those (nom. f.)
    (9) those (acc. m.)
    (10) to/for by/w./fr. those (m., f., n.)
    (11) by that (m., n.)
    (12) of those (f.)
    (13) by this (m., n.)
    (14) this (nom./acc. n.)
    (15) this (nom. f.); these (nom./acc. n.)
    (16) these (nom. f.)
    (17) by this (f.)

(18) this (acc. f.)

(19) of this (m., f., n.)

(20) this (acc. m.)

(21) these (acc. m.)

(22) to this (m., f., n.)

(23) of these (m., n.)

(24) these (acc. f.)

(25) to/for these; by these (m., f., n.)

(26) of one (m., f., n.)

(27) to/for one (m., f., n.)

(28) by one (f.)

(29) to/for the whole (m., f., n.); whole (nom. pl. m.)

(30) of the whole (m., f., n.)

(31) the whole (nom. f.); whole (nom./acc. pl. n.)

(32) the whole (acc. m.; nom./acc. n.)

(33) of no (sg. m., f., n.)

(34) to/for no (sg. m., f., n.); no (nom. pl. m.)

(35) no (nom. sg. f.; nom./acc. pl. n.)

(36) no (acc. pl. m.)

3. See text and examples on p. 56.

4.
(1) haec puella	(12) illa tempora	(23) nūllīus ratiōnis
(2) hae puellae	(13) illud tempus	(24) nūllam ratiōnem
(3) haec tempora	(14) huic cīvitātī sōlī	(25) nūllae puellae
(4) huic temporī	(15) huius cīvitātis sōlīus	(26) nūllī librō
(5) huic puerō	(16) illī puerō sōlī	(27) nūllōs librōs
(6) huius temporis	(17) illī puellae sōlī	(28) ūnī cīvitātī
(7) illīus temporis	(18) illīus puellae sōlīus	(29) ūnī puellae
(8) hōc librō	(19) tyrannōrum sōlōrum	(30) ūnīus temporis
(9) illō librō	(20) tōtam cīvitātem	(31) ūnīus bellī
(10) illa puella	(21) tōtīus patriae	(32) alterī librō
(11) illa tempora	(22) tōtī patriae	(33) aliō librō

5. These men will lead (lead, were leading) the whole state. 6. That man will see (sees, was seeing/saw) these things in that land. 7. In that book he will write (I shall write, I was writing) those things about this man. 8. One man is leading (will lead) those forces into this land. 9. The teacher gives these things to the other boy. 10. We are writing (shall write) this book about another war. 11. The whole country thanks (will thank, was thanking) this man alone. 12. They are now giving their entire attention to that plan. 13. This man's friend will save this state by that plan. 14. The other friend will lead (his) entire life in another land. 15. This man alone was able to warn me about the faults of this tyrant. 16. You (pl.) had no forces in the other land. 17. Those men alone see no dangers in this plan. 18. You (sg.) dare to praise not only the character but also the treachery of that man. 19. In fact, on account of the treachery of one man this state was not strong.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 10

1. (1) 3d; (2) 2nd; (3) 4th; (4) 1st.

2. (1) 3d pl. pres.; (2) 2nd sg. fut.; (3) 2nd sg. pres.; (4) 1st pl. impf.; (5) 1st pl. pres.; (6) imper. sg.; (7) 2nd pl. fut.; (8) imper. pl.; (9) 2nd pl. pres.; (10) 1st sg. pres.; (11) 3d sg. pres.; (12) imper. sg. (13) 2nd sg. impf. Note: nos. 3, 5, 6, 8, 9 are 4th only; 12 is 3d only. The chief difference is the -ī- of the 4th and the -i- of the 3d. See p. 64.

3. (1) pres. inf.; (2) imper. sg.; (3) short stem vowels in 2nd sg. and 1st and 2nd pl. of pres. ind. and in the imper. pl.

4. (1) he will come
    (2) he is coming
    (3) they are coming
    (4) they will come
    (5) you (sg.) hear
    (6) you (pl.) will hear
    (7) you (pl.) hear
    (8) come (pl.)
    (9) you (sg.) will come
    (10) come (sg.)
    (11) to come
    (12) he makes/does
    (13) he will make/do
    (14) we shall make
    (15) we are making
    (16) they make
    (17) you (sg.) make
    (18) I shall make
    (19) you (sg.) will make
    (20) to make

5. (1) sentiam
    (2) sentiēmus
    (3) sentit
    (4) sentītis
    (5) sentient
    (6) sentiunt
    (7) sentīre
    (8) sentī
    (9) sentiet
    (10) sentīmus
    (11) iacit
    (12) iaciet
    (13) iaciam
    (14) iacimus
    (15) iace
    (16) iacitis
    (17) iaciēmus
    (18) iacite
    (19) iacere
    (20) iacis

6. We were fleeing from this land. 7. Flee (sg.) with your daughter. 8. They will flee into that place. 9. Time flees; the hours flee; old age is coming. 10. Come (pl.) with your friends. 11. They were coming into your country. 12. O great man, come into our state. 13. You (sg.) will find your daughter in that state. 14. They can find little money in the streets. 15. The tyrant is finding a way into this state. 16. You (pl.) will capture those men there with (their) friends. 17. We are coming to you with great forces. 18. Will he find much fame and glory there? 19. That man was always making war. 20. Those men (of yours *or* such men) will not make peace. 21. Many men do those things but do not do these things. 22. We are doing and will do our duty. 23. I shall make a great supply of books. 24. The boys were living with that good man. 25. In the books of ancient men you (pl.) will find much philosophy and wisdom.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 11

1. (1) **is, ea, id** and **eī, eae, ea**; (2) **ego** and **nōs**; (3) **tū** and **vōs**.
2. (1) to/for you (pl.); by/w./fr. you; (2) to/for us; by/w/fr. us; (3) we (nom.); us (acc.); (4) you (nom. pl.); you (acc. pl.); (5) of you (sg.); (6) of me; (7) to/for me; (8) to/for you (sg.); (9) you (acc. sg.); by/w/fr. you; (10) me (acc.); by/w/fr. me.
3. (1) them (masc.); (2) them (fem.); (3) their (masc., neut.); (4) their (fem.); (5) his, her, its; (6) by/w./fr. her; (7) she (nom.); they (nom. and acc. pl. neut.); (8) by/w/ fr. him, it; (9) to/for him, her, it; they (masc. nom.); (10) to/for them (masc., fem., neut.); by/w./fr. them; (11) they (nom. fem.); (12) it (nom. or acc. sg.). N.B. in the sg. any one of the three Latin genders of **is, ea, id** may be translated by *it* when the antecedent of the pronoun is a word which in English is neuter. For instance, suppose that in a preceding sentence the word **pāx** appears. Then we read: **Sine eā nūlla cīvitās valet.** The Latin feminine **eā** becomes English *it* because in English *peace* is regarded as neuter.
4. (1) eius
   (2) eius
   (3) eōrum
   (4) eārum
   (5) eās
   (6) eōs
   (7) ea
   (8) eius
   (9) eī
   (10) eī
   (11) eā
   (12) eō

(13) vōbīs	(17) eae	(21) tū	(25) nōbīs
(14) tibi	(18) eī	(22) vōs	(26) ego
(15) eī	(19) id	(23) nōs	(27) mihi
(16) ea	(20) vōs	(24) nōs	

5. These men will give it to you (sg.).   6. *I* was giving it to you (pl.).   7. *You* (pl.) will give this gift to them.   8. I shall give the same thing to him (her, it).   9. *We* shall give them (= those things) to him (her).   10. That man will give it to me. 11. We shall give you (pl.) his books.   12. You (sg.) will give us their (masc.) books. 13. We shall give their money to you (sg.).   14. They will give his (her) money to me.   15. We shall send these/those books to her.   16. I shall send his (her) book to you (sg.).   17. That man, however, was sending their money to us.   18. We are sending them (fem.) with her.   19. I am sending him with them.   20. We shall send them with his (her) friends.   21. *You* (sg.) will send me with their friend.   22. They were sending you (pl.) with me to his friend.   23. He is sending us with you (sg.) into their land.   24. They will send them (fem.) with us to their friends.   25. I shall send him with you (pl.) to their friends.   26. They will send you (sg.) with him to me.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 12

1. (1) pres. act. ind.; (2) pres. act. inf.; (3) perf. act. ind.; (4) perf. pass. partic.
2. (1) **mittō**, pres. act. ind., *I send*
   (2) **mittere**, pres. act. inf., *to send*
   (3) **mīsī**, perf. act. ind., *I sent*
   (4) **missum**, perf. pass. partic., *having been sent, sent*
3. The perfect is like a "snapshot" of a past, completed action; the imperfect looks at continuing or progressive past action, like a video.
4.

(1) mittō	(6) agō	(11) remaneō	(16) dīcō
(2) laudō	(7) sum	(12) scrībō	(17) sum
(3) vincō	(8) dō	(13) sum	(18) vīvō
(4) dīcō	(9) sum	(14) faciō	(19) faciō
(5) faciō	(10) agō	(15) fugiō	(20) videō

5. (1) you (pl. perf.) . . . ; (2) he (perf.) . . . ; (3) they (perf.) . . . ; (4) you (sg. perf.) . . . ; (5) we (perf.) . . . ; (6) he had . . . ; (7) we shall have . . . ; (8) we had . . . ; (9) you (sg.) had . . . ; (10) they will have . . . ; (11) they had . . . ; (12) he will have . . . ; (13) you (pl.) had. . . .

6.

(1) they saw, were seeing	(12) he will conquer
(2) they had seen	(13) he conquered
(3) you (sg.) saw	(14) we conquered
(4) he did	(15) we conquer
(5) he was doing	(16) you (sg.) gave
(6) we had done	(17) you (pl.) had given
(7) we did	(18) we gave
(8) we shall do	(19) he flees
(9) they did	(20) he fled
(10) you (sg.) lived	(21) they flee
(11) they lived	(22) they fled

(23) he saved
(24) they saved
(25) you (pl.) saved
(26) he had saved
(27) he will have saved
(28) we remained
(29) we had remained

(30) he came
(31) he comes
(32) you (pl.) were coming
(33) you (pl.) came
(34) they came
(35) they come
(36) they had come

7. Those men had fled (will flee; are fleeing; were fleeing; fled).   8. These men remained (remain; will remain; were remaining; had remained).   9. The king had conquered (is conquering; conquered; will conquer) Asia.   10. The kings conquered (will conquer; are conquering; had conquered) Asia.   11. Kings possessed (possess; will possess; had possessed) Asia.   12. Caesar had come (came; is coming; will come) into the same land.   13. Caesar said (says; had said; will say) the same things. 14. *You* (pl.) gave (will give; were giving; had given) us peace.   15. *You* (sg.) sent (will send; are sending; had sent) a letter to her.   16. We saw (see; had seen) them in the same street.   17. He had lived (lived; will live) a long time.   18. You (sg.) had done (will do; did; are doing) it well.   19. I saved (shall save; was saving; had saved) their (his) state.   20. They found (had found; will find) him in the same place. 21. God had given (gave; gives; will give) liberty to men.   22. They thanked (will thank; were thanking; had thanked; thank) me.   23. *You* (pl.) were (were; are; will be; had been) free men.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 13

1. See p. 82, s.v. "Reflexive Pronouns."
2. See p. 82, s.v. "Declension of Reflexive Pronouns."
3. In pronouns of the first and the second persons.
4. (1) to/for myself.
   (2) yourself (sg. acc.); by/w./fr. yourself.
   (3) to/for ourselves; by/w./fr. ourselves.
   (4) to/for himself (herself, itself); to/for themselves.
   (5) yourselves (acc.).
   (6) himself (acc.); by/w./fr. himself; themselves (acc.); by/w./fr. themselves.
   (7) to/for yourselves; by/w./fr. yourselves.
5. Since suus, -a, -um is an adjective, it must agree in number with the noun which it modifies. Since suus is a reflexive, it means *his own* or *their own* according to whether the subject of the verb is singular or plural. See, for example, sentences 15 and 20 below.
6. Eōrum and eius are fixed genitives of possession; and therefore, they do not, like suus, agree with the nouns on which they depend. See, for example, sentences 16–19 below.
7. See p. 85, s.v. "The Intensive Pronoun." Sē, being reflexive, is used in the predicate and refers to the subject. Ipse can be used to emphasize a noun or pronoun in any part of a sentence. See, for example, sentences 27, 28, and 31 below.

8. Caesar saved them.   9. Caesar was saving him (= another person).   10. Caesar saved himself.   11. The Romans saved themselves.   12. The Romans saved them (=

others).   13. The Romans saved him.   14. Caesar saved his own friend.   15. Caesar saved his own friends.   16. Caesar saved his (= another's) friend.   17. Caesar saved his (= another's) friends.   18. Caesar saved their friend.   19. Caesar saved their friends.   20. The Romans saved their (own) friend.   21. The Romans saved their (own) friends.   22. The Romans saved their (= others') friend.   23. The Romans saved their (= others') friends.   24. The Romans saved his friend.   25. The Romans saved his friends.   26. Caesar himself saved him.   27. Caesar himself saved himself.   28. They saved Caesar himself.   29. They were saving the friend of Caesar himself.   30. They saved the friend of the Romans themselves.   31. The friend of Caesar himself saved himself.   32. The friends of Caesar himself saved themselves.   33. The friend of Caesar himself saved him.   34. Caesar's friends themselves saved him.   35. They did not save us.   36. We saved ourselves.   37. We saved the Romans themselves.   38. The Romans themselves did not save you.   39. *You* (sg.) saved yourself.   40. *You* (sg.) saved the Romans themselves.   41. He was giving nothing to me.   42. I gave nothing to myself.   43. He gave nothing to himself.   44. They gave nothing to themselves.   45. They gave nothing to them (= others).   46. They gave nothing to him.   47. I conquered myself.   48. They conquered me.   49. They conquered their (= others') anger.   50. They conquered their own anger.   51. He conquered his own anger.   52. He conquered his own sons.   53. They conquered their own sons.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 14

1. In the gen. pl.
2. -ī in abl. sg.; -ia in nom. and acc. pl.
3.
(1) by/w./fr. art	(17) of the kings
(2) of the arts	(18) to/for the king
(3) arts (nom. or acc.)	(19) names (nom. or acc.)
(4) to/for the sea; by/w./fr. the sea	(20) animals (nom. or acc.)
(5) to/for the seas; by/w./fr. the seas	(21) to/for an animal; by/w./fr. an animal
(6) the sea (nom. or acc.)	(22) of an animal
(7) the seas (nom. or acc.)	(23) of animals
(8) bodies (nom. or acc.)	(24) of strength
(9) of bodies	(25) men (acc.)
(10) of a part	(26) of the man; men (nom.)
(11) to/for parts; by/w./fr. parts	(27) strength (nom. or acc. pl.)
(12) of parts	(28) to/for men; by/w./fr. men
(13) by/w./fr./the city	(29) force (nom.); of force
(14) to/for the city	(30) force (acc.)
(15) of cities	(31) to/for strength; by/w./fr. strength
(16) cities (nom. or acc.)	(32) to/for force; by/w./fr. force

4. (2); (4) as abl.; (7); (12); (15); (20); (21) as abl; (23); (24); (30); (32) as abl.
5.
(1) vī magnā	(6) cīve bonō	(11) vim magnam
(2) virum magnum	(7) cīvibus multīs	(12) virōrum multōrum
(3) vīrium magnārum	(8) maria multa	(13) vīribus magnīs
(4) vī magnae	(9) marī magnō	(14) vīrēs magnās
(5) cīvium multōrum	(10) mare magnum	

6. (1) accompaniment; (2) means; (3) manner; (4) means

7. (1) they ran (currō); (2) we were running (currō); (3) you (sg.) ran (currō); (4) we had dragged (trahō); (5) he will drag (trahō); (6) they are dragging (trahō); (7) he was managing (gerō); (8) he manages (gerō); (9) they manage (gerō); (10) we shall manage (gerō); (11) they hold (teneō); (12) they will hold (teneō); (13) they held (teneō); (14) we held (teneō).

8. He waged many wars with the Romans. 9. They were managing the state with great wisdom. 10. He himself held the state by the power of troops. 11. Those animals dragged many men into the sea. 12. You (sg.) said this with great skill. 13. We ran with care (carefully) across the city. 14. He was coming to us with a large part of the citizens. 15. He will conquer the rights of the citizens by force. 16. You (pl.) dragged him to death across his land. 17. We shall join ourselves with the citizens of many cities. 18. He wrote this letter to the king himself with courage (courageously). 19. The violence of those seas was great. 20. I have seen the art of the Greeks with my own eyes. 21. We have drawn many beautiful thoughts from the ancients.

22. 8, accompaniment; 9, manner; 10, means; 12, manner; 13, manner; 14, accompaniment; 15, means; 17, accompaniment; 18, manner; 20, means.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 15

1. See p. 97.
2. See p. 97–98.
3. See p. 98.
4. (1) dat./abl. pl. m. and n.; (2) indecl. adj. agreeing with noun in any case; (3) nom./acc. pl. n.; (4) nom. pl. m. and n., acc. pl. n.; (5) any form in pl.; (6) nom./acc. pl. n.; (7) any form in pl.; (8) dat./abl. pl. f.; (9) any form in pl.; (10) gen. pl. any gender; (11) any form in pl.; (12) any form in pl.
5. The word which indicates the whole number or amount out of which a part is taken is normally put in the genitive case. See p. 99 s.v. "Genitive of the Whole."
6. Ex or dē + abl.
7. (1) one citizen   (6) 5 of the citizens   (11) 3000 citizens
   (2) ten citizens   (7) 5 citizens   (12) what (is) new?
   (3) part of the citizens (8) 100 citizens   (13) much praise
   (4) three citizens   (9) 100 of the citizens   (14) enough money
   (5) 3 of the 6 citizens (10) 1000 citizens   (15) no water

8. Time when, at which, within which.
9. (1) He used to come (was coming, kept coming) with his friends. Ablative of accompaniment.
   (2) He will come in one hour. Abl. of time within which.
   (3) He came at the same time. Abl. of time when.
   (4) He wrote the book in a few hours. Time within which.
   (5) At that time he wrote a book. Time when.
   (6) He was writing the book with care. Manner.

10. At that time alone he feared those three dangers; but he always used to fear (was afraid of) death. 11. Those two kings used to throw money among the thousands of citizens. 12. That one tyrant (of yours) always used to praise himself. 13. The citizens of those five cities kept expecting liberty. 14. They saved the city in two hours by their own wisdom. 15. I used to come into the city with three of my friends. 16. You (pl.) used to wage great wars with courage (= courageously). 17. Therefore a hundred Romans conquered a thousand Greeks. 18. Fathers often used to fear their own sons—and now they have much (of) fear. 19. Did you (sg.) see our two fathers at that time? 20. Where did you (pl.) find enough freedom? 21. They came in three hours, and he kept saying the same thing to us. 22. I understood little of the argument. 23. We have changed no part of our lives. 24. Our state used to preserve the liberty and rights of the citizens. 25. The Romans used to praise the customs of ancient times. 26. The two fathers sent four of their sons. 27. The ten men had enough wisdom and much virtue. 28. What's new, my friend?

KEY FOR CHAPTER 16

1. Abl. sg. masc. and fem.: **fortī** as compared with **cīve.**
2. (1) The adjective of 2 endings.
   (2) Nom. sg. masc. and fem.: fortis, fortis; ācer, ācris; potēns, potēns.
3. -ī, abl. sg. of all genders; -ium, gen. pl. of all genders; -ia, nom. and acc. neut. pl.; but see p. 105 n. 2.
4. -ī; but see p. 105 n. 2.
5. Yes.
6.
(1) to/for a sweet girl	(11) of all parts
(2) by/w./fr. a sweet girl	(12) of all kings
(3) by/w./fr. a sweet mother	(13) of all wars
(4) to/for a sweet mother	(14) by/w./fr. a happy man
(5) to/for a happy mother	(15) to/for a happy man
(6) by/w./fr. a happy mother	(16) to/for or by/w./fr. every sea
(7) all wars, nom. or acc. pl.	(17) to/for every good art
(8) all names, nom. or acc. pl.	(18) by/w./fr. every good art
(9) all seas, nom. or acc. pl.	(19) of every good art
(10) by/w./fr. every part	(20) to/for, by/w./fr. swift force

7. A long life is often difficult. 8. A difficult life can be happy. 9. How brief was his sweet life! 10. The memory of a sweet period of life helps thousands of men. 11. You (sg.) wrote a short book in a hundred hours. 12. In every sea we kept finding these two powerful animals. 13. In every land you (pl.) will see many thousands of brave men. 14. Swift rumor ran through every land. 15. That short war was difficult. 16. We overcame all dangers in six hours. 17. The powerful tyrant will conquer their country with swift violence. 18. In a short time he will change all the rights of the citizens. 19. They did not understand the difficult art of sweet liberty, for they had little wisdom. 20. Men fear difficult duties in all lands.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 17

1. See Ch. 17, p. 110–11, s.v. "Usage and Agreement."
2. (1) Its use in its own clause. (2) The antecedent.

3. In gender and number.

4. (1) who. (2) which. (3) who, which.

5. (1) to/for whom or which, masc. sg.

    (2) whom or which, masc. pl.

    (3) who/which, nom. sg. fem.
       who/which, nom. pl. fem.
       which, nom. or acc. pl. neut.

    (4) of whom/which, whose, sg.

    (5) to/for or by/w./fr. whom/which, pl.

    (6) which, nom. or acc. neut. sg.

    (7) by/w./fr. whom/which, fem. sg.

    (8) who/which, masc. sg. and pl.

    (9) whom/which, masc. sg.

    (10) whom/which, fem. pl.

    (11) of whom/which, whose, masc. pl.

    (12) whom/which, fem. sg.

6. They praised the citizen whom you (pl.) had sent. 7. They praised the ten citizens whom you (pl.) had sent. 8. They praised the citizen who had saved the country. 9. They praised the hundred citizens who had saved the country. 10. They praised the citizen whose son had saved the country. 11. They praised the citizens whose seven sons had saved the country. 12. They praised the citizen to whom they had entrusted the country. 13. They praised many of the citizens to whom they had entrusted the country. 14. They praised the citizen with whom they had come. 15. They praised the citizens with whom they had come. 16. He came with the citizen to whom he had entrusted his own life. 17. Tyrants destroy the rights of the citizens whom they capture. 18. The tyrant destroyed the city from which thousands of citizens had fled. 19. The tyrant destroyed the city into which those nine citizens had fled. 20. The tyrant destroyed the cities from which the citizens had fled. 21. The tyrant destroyed the cities into which the citizens had fled. 22. He overcame the danger which we feared. 23. He overcame the dangers which we feared. 24. He gave books to the girls whom he was praising. 25. The man whose daughter you (sg.) love kept coming into the city. 26. He entrusted his own life to the man whose daughter you (sg.) love. 27. He used to help the mother, who had much courage. 28. The king used to give money to the mothers who had many sons.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 18

1. See p. 118 s.v. "The Passive Voice."

2. See p. 118 s.v. "Ablative of Personal Agent." Note that "agent" is a person; "means" is something other than a person.

3. (1) The letter **r**.
    (2) No.

4. (1) we; (2) he; (3) I; (4) they; (5) you (sg.); (6) you (pl.).

5. (1) -bā-, imperf.; -bi- (-bō-, -be-, -bu-), fut.
    (2) Yes, with the minor exception of -be- in the 2nd pers. sg.

6. (1) we shall be . . . ; (2) you (pl.) were being . . . ; (3) he was being . . . ; (4) you

(sg.) will be . . . ; (5) they will be . . . ; (6) we were being . . . ; (7) he will be . . . ; (8) you (sg.) were being . . . ; (9) you (pl.) will be . . . ; (10) they were being. . . .

7. They terrify me; I am terrified by them; I am terrified by their violence. 8. The tyrant was destroying this city. 9. This city was being destroyed by the tyrant; it will be destroyed by a plot. 10. He used to be aroused (moved) by his friends; he used to be aroused by their plans. 11. We are not being destroyed by the strength of men, but we can be destroyed by a plot. 12. You (pl.) will be destroyed not by war but by love of leisure and by the plans of evil men. 13. You yourself (sg.) are not being changed, but your name is being changed. 14. Thousands of men are possessed by the love of money. 15. Others used to be held by tyrants. 16. A few will be possessed by love of truth and friendship. 17. The boy will be saved by his friends. 18. Books of this sort used to be given to the boys by the teacher. 19. Liberty will be given to the people by the third king in a short time. 20. Our country can even now be saved by brave citizens. 21. We ought to be warned by the fortune of other men (others). 22. We are terrified by the plans of that tyrant who lives across the sea; but we love liberty, and we shall wage war with great courage. 23. We shall be helped by powerful friends. 24. We praise all our men, who are moved by courage and truth, not by love of themselves.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 19

1. (1) The perfect passive participle plus the present of **sum.**
   (2) The perfect passive participle plus the imperfect of **sum.**
2. (1) **Vir missus est** = *a man was (has been) sent;* **vir mittitur** = *a man is (is being) sent.*
   (2) **Vir missus erat** = *a man had been sent;* **vir mittēbātur** = *a man was being (used to be) sent.*
3. An interrogative pronoun introduces a question.
4. **quis** (nom. sg. m. and f.); **quid** (nom. and acc. sg. n.).
5. See p. 124.
6. (1) he is (is being) moved   (9) we were held
   (2) he was (has been) moved   (10) we had been held
   (3) it had been moved   (11) we were being held
   (4) he was being moved   (12) he had been changed
   (5) they had been destroyed   (13) he was (has been) changed
   (6) they were being destroyed   (14) he is (is being) changed
   (7) they were destroyed   (15) he was being changed
   (8) we are held

7. (1) whose (sg.)?   (6) to whom (sg.)?
   (2) whom (sg.)?   (7) whom (fem. pl.)?
   (3) who (pl.)?   (8) who (sg.)?
   (4) what (nom. and acc. sg.)?   (9) who (fem. pl.)?;
   (5) whose (pl.)?   what (neut. nom. and acc. pl.)?

8. By whom was the book prepared (had been prepared; was being prepared)?
9. The teacher by whom the book was prepared is overcome with work. 10. To

whom was the book given (was being given, had been given)? 11. What boy was saved? 12. I myself saw the boy who was saved. 13. Whose (sg.) two sons were saved? 14. I never saw the old man whose sons were saved. 15. Who (sg.) was sent? 16. Peace and liberty were praised by the citizen who had been sent. 17. Who (pl.) were sent? 18. Friendship was praised by the ten citizens who had been sent. 19. Whom (pl.) did you (sg.) see in the city? 20. Where are the three new friends whom you (sg.) saw in the city? 21. What things were found by you (sg.) there? 22. Where are the three bodies which were found there by you (sg.)? 23. By whom was this (thing) said? 24. To whom was this said? 25. The eight wretched men to whom these things were said fled from the city. 26. Whose sons were praised by him? 27. The fathers whose sons were praised will thank him. 28. What terrifies you? 29. What danger terrifies you? 30. But the danger which terrifies you has been conquered by brave citizens.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 20

1. (1) object, acc. sg.; (2) of, pl.; (3) by/w./fr., sg.; (4) subject, sg.; (5) of (sg.); subject or object (pl.); (6) to/for, sg.

2. (1) to/for a hand (band)   (8) of fruit; fruits (subj./obj.)
   (2) a hand (subj.)   (9) of fruits
   (3) of hands   (10) by/w./fr. fruit
   (4) by/w./fr. a hand   (11) of the senate
   (5) of a hand; hands (subj./obj.)   (12) to/for the senate
   (6) to/for or by/w./fr. fruits   (13) the senate (subj.)
   (7) fruit (obj.)   (14) by/w./fr. the senate

3. (1) Masculine; (2) **manus.**

4. (1) The ablative of place from which = motion apart; the ablative of separation = distance apart.
   (2) The ablative of separation.
   (3) The ablative of place from which.

5. Place from which regularly has a preposition (**ab, dē,** ex); for separation, see p. 130.

6. Who came to us at that time?   7. An old man of great fame fled from his country to our senate.   8. What new was said by him?   9. This (thing) was said by that man: "We lack liberty."   10. Free us from slavery and heavy fear.   11. Our forces waged long war against the tyrant's fierce bands.   12. Those fierce bands which the tyrant sent against us from that land were conquered by us.   13. After this (*lit.* these things) the citizens who feared the tyrant were led from their own country into our state.   14. We freed them from the crimes of that tyrant.   15. Now they lack (are free from) every fear (anxiety).   16. Their sons eagerly (with zeal) read good books in our schools.   17. And so they have written a thousand verses with their own hands.   18. These one hundred verses give great thanks to us.   19. In these verses the senate and the Roman people are praised.   20. For those unfortunate men now have the fruits of peace and much liberty without fear.   21. Since we have helped others, even we ourselves have great enjoyment.   22. Good men will never lack an

abundance of these fruits. 23. In our age many human beings pass their life in fear and slavery. 24. We ought to free those unfortunate men from fear. 25. For who can be happy if other human beings lack the enjoyments of peace and liberty?

26. (6) time when; (7) place from which; (8) agent; (9) agent; (10) separation; (12) agent; (13) place from which; (14) separation; (15) separation; (16) manner; (17) means; (22) separation; (23) time when; (24) separation.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 21

1. See p. 116–17.
2. Check with paradigms on p. 135–36 and repeat them until you can say them without hesitation.
3. In the passive infinitive the final -e of the active infinitive has been changed to -ī: (1) sentīrī, *to be felt;* (2) movērī, *to be moved;* (3) servārī, *to be saved;* (4) scīrī, *to be known;* (5) tenērī, *to be held.*
4. The whole active ending -ere is changed to -ī: (1) mittī, *to be sent;* (2) iacī, *to be thrown;* (3) tangī, *to be touched;* trahī, *to be drawn.*

5.
(1) I shall be sent	(13) you (sg.) are seized
(2) you (sg.) are sent	(14) you (sg.) will be seized
(3) you (sg.) will be sent	(15) they are touched
(4) to be sent	(16) they will be touched
(5) they are sent	(17) to be touched
(6) I am sent	(18) you (sg.) are touched
(7) he is seized	(19) you (pl.) will be touched
(8) he will be seized	(20) you (sg.) will be known
(9) to be seized	(21) you (sg.) are known
(10) we are seized	(22) he will be known
(11) they will be seized	(23) he is known
(12) they are seized	(24) to be known

6. Who is being sent (will be sent, used to be sent, was sent)? 7. By whom will this letter be sent (was sent, is sent)? 8. By whose hand was that letter written (will be written)? 9. What was said (was being said, will be said, is said)? 10. "Who (sg.) will be seized?" "You (sg.) will be seized." 11. "Who (pl.) will be seized?" "You (pl.) will be seized." 12. For a long time you (sg./pl.) will be neglected (were neglected). 13. After many hours we were freed (shall be freed). 14. For the sake of the state they ordered him to be seized. 15. For the sake of liberty our state ought to be managed by the other man. 16. His soul could not be touched by money. 17. In every soul the love of country used to be felt (will be felt, is felt, was felt). 18. We are joined (used to be joined, will be joined) to (*lit.,* with) other citizens by love of country. 19. Friendship is not always understood, but it is felt. 20. Wisdom and truth will not be found (are not found, were not found) in those two men. 21. Wisdom is not obtained (will not be obtained, was not obtained) by even a great deal of (= much) money. 22. Truth often is not known (will not be known, was not known), because the study of it is difficult. 23. Not without great labor will truth be found (was found, can be found). 24. Others are drawn by eagerness for (*lit.,* of) money and fame; we ought to be drawn by love of truth and wisdom.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 22

1. ē.

2. **-em, -ē; -ēs, -ēbus, -ēs, -ēbus** (also **-eī**, dat., and **-ērum**, gen.)

3. (1) Feminine. (2) **Diēs.**

4.   (1) of hope; to/for hope

    (2) of hopes

    (3) hope (acc.)

    (4) to/for or by/w./fr. hopes

    (5) hope (nom.); hopes (nom., acc.)

    (6) by/w./fr. faith

    (7) faith (acc.)

    (8) of or to/for faith

    (9) of days

    (10) day (nom.); days (nom., acc.)

    (11) to/for or by/w./fr. days

    (12) thing (acc.)

    (13) of things

    (14) by/w./fr. a thing

    (15) to/for or by/w./fr. things

    (16) of or to/for a thing

    (17) of fires

    (18) fire (acc.)

    (19) to/for or by/w./fr. fires

    (20) fires (nom., acc.)

5. (1) place where; he remained in the city.

    (2) time within which; he will come in one hour.

    (3) time when; he came at that time.

    (4) accompaniment; he came with them.

    (5) place from which; he came from the city.

    (6) separation; they lack fire.

    (7) means; that was done by fire.

    (8) agent; it was done by them.

    (9) manner; it was done faithfully (with faith).

6. (1) **ab** + abl.

    (2) **cum** + abl.

    (3) abl. alone after verbs of freeing, lacking, and depriving; with other verbs **ab, dē, ex** is often used.

    (4) **in** + abl.

    (5) abl. alone

    (6) **cum** + abl.; **cum** may be omitted when the noun is modified by an adj.

    (7) **ab, dē, ex** + abl.

    (8) abl. alone.

7. At that time he faithfully preserved the liberty of those ten citizens.   8. He managed the state with great care (= very carefully).   9. The state was managed by him with great care.   10. Many good things were seen in the middle of the city.   11. On that day they prepared many things hopefully.   12. We snatched the fire from the hands of the boy.   13. In five days Cicero will rescue the republic from danger.   14. You (sg.) freed the two republics from fear.   15. The earth nourishes human beings with good fruits.   16. He nourished their uncertain hopes by his own courage.   17. In this age our hopes are being destroyed by these three tyrants.   18. Seven of our friends came from that state with great fear.   19. The whole clan came into the territory of this state with a large band of friends in one day.   20. Not all free men dare to join themselves with this republic.   21. If those men lack faith, there is no hope of friendship and peace.   22. Good faith and the love of this republic can save us.   23. You (sg.) have given (your) whole life to this state.

24. (7) time when; manner; (8) manner; (9) manner; (10) place where; (11) time when; manner; (13) time within which; separation; (14) separation; (15) means; (16) means; (17) time when; agent; (18) place from which; manner; (19) accompaniment; time within which; (21) separation.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 23

1. (1) perf. pass. = having been . . . or Eng. perf. partic.
   (2) pres. act. = -ing
   (3) fut. act. = about to . . .
   (4) pres. act. = -ing
   (5) fut. act. = about to . . .
   (6) fut. pass. = (about) to be . . .
   (7) perf. pass. = having been . . .
   (8) pres. act. = -ing.
   (9) perf. pass. = having been (e.g., nom. pl.)
   (10) perf. pass. = having been (dat. or abl. pl.)

2. (1) about to be   (13) (about) to be done
   (2) about to press   (14) seizing
   (3) pressing   (15) about to seize
   (4) (having been) pressed   (16) (having been) desired
   (5) (about) to be pressed   (17) desiring
   (6) turning   (18) (about) to be given
   (7) (having been) turned   (19) (having been) given
   (8) about to turn   (20) about to give
   (9) (having been) said   (21) giving
   (10) saying   (22) (having been) moved
   (11) about to say   (23) moving
   (12) (having been) done   (24) about to move

3. (1) vīsus   (6) scrīptus   (11) victūrus   (15) tractus
   (2) vidēns   (7) mittēns   (12) vincēns   (16) trahēns
   (3) vīsūrus   (8) missus   (13) iūnctūrus   (17) iactūrus
   (4) scrībendus   (9) missūrus   (14) iungēns   (18) iactus
   (5) scrīptūrus   (10) victus

4. When captured (*lit.*, having been captured) he said nothing.   5. Freed from slavery he will lead a pleasant life.   6. He thanked those giving the gifts.   7. I do not like someone seeking gifts.   8. To a man desiring much money he used to give only a few gifts.   9. I sent my son to your school to be taught.   10. That man, when about to conquer another people, kept wishing to destroy (their) teachers and books.   11. Terrified by this plot we shall live a wretched life.   12. Long oppressed, they began to turn themselves against the oppressing tyrant.   13. Those four unfortunate men, when seen by the tyrant, ran across the border.   14. The orator, because he feared the tyrant, always used to say pleasing things.   15. We fear someone fearing us. (= who fears us).   16. These men, if they conquer, will take away all the rights of the conquered citizens.   17. That wretched man on the point of fleeing kept seek-

ing the advice of his three friends. 18. The old man, warned by two of his friends, fled to us. 19. Having himself been helped by the second old man, he kept giving many things to those lacking money. 20. Who, when freed from these dangers, will not thank the gods? 21. Joined with you (pl.), we shall save the republic. 22. To those having faith nothing is uncertain.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 24

1. (1) A noun (pronoun) + participle in abl.
   (2) No. (See p. 155.)
2. (1) See p. 155.
   (2) As a rule commas separate an abl. abs. from the rest of the sentence. This makes it appear somewhat apart from the rest of the sentence.
3. No. Since this "absolute" construction is not too commonly favored in English, the literal translation if regularly adhered to would make rather clumsy English.
4. When, since, after, although, if. (See p. 156.)
5. (1) Incorrect because the noun (**urbe**) of the abl. abs. is used (through its pronoun **eam**) as the object.
   (2) Incorrect because **captus** means *having been* captured, not *having* captured.
   (3) Correct because **urbem captam** (*the captured city*) stands as the natural object of **dēlēvit**.
   (4) Correct because **urbe captā** is a normal abl. abs., the noun of which is not used elsewhere as subject or object.
6. (1) Obligation or necessity.
   (2) It is really a predicate adjective; and so it naturally agrees with the subject of **sum**.
   (3) **Dēbeō** + inf., though **dēbeō** more often expresses the idea of moral obligation.
7. (1) **Mihi** is dat. of agent.
   (2) **Ā mē**; abl. of agent.

8. If (since, etc.) these two men hold the power, the republic will be strong. 9. When (since, etc.) this rumor had been reported, the leader left the city without delay. 10. When every desire for (*lit.,* of) money and glory had been banished from his soul, that leader conquered himself. 11. Every desire for evil things ought to be conquered by us (= we ought to conquer . . .) if we wish to lead a good life. 12. If (since, etc.) the citizens love (their) country, we can have great hopes. 13. All citizens kept fearing that tyrant (of yours), who had to be banished. 14. When the tyrant had been overcome, the citizens regained their liberty and rights. 15. But after a tyrant has been expelled, another tyrant often gets the power. 16. Who in taking the power desires to help the state alone, not himself? 17. When many peoples had been conquered, you (sg.) desired to possess the whole world. 18. Slavery of every sort must be checked throughout the whole world. 19. If our republic is strong, nothing is to be feared by you (sg.). 20. Our country ought to be helped by each one who likes our mode of life. 21. All rights, therefore, ought to be preserved by the citizens with great care. 22. When duties have been deserted by the citizens, the state will be in great danger. 23. When these important things had

been said, the orator was praised by us. 24. Truth and virtue ought always to be sought by all men. 25. When (since) truth and virtue had been sought, the republic was saved.

26. A. (8) virīs tenentibus; (9) fāmā narrātā; (10) cupiditāte expulsā; (12) cīvibus amantibus; (14) tyrannō superātō; (15) tyrannō expulsō; (17) gentibus victīs; (22) officiīs relictīs; (23) rēbus dictīs; (25) vēritāte . . . quaesītīs.
B. (11) vincenda est; (13) expellendus erat; (18) opprimenda est; (19) timendum est; (20) adiuvanda est; (21) cōnservanda sunt; (24) quaerendae sunt.
C. (11) nōbīs; (19) tibi; (20) cuique; (21) cīvibus; (24) virīs.
D. (22) ā cīvibus; (23) ā nōbīs.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 25

1. See p. 117, 136, 162.
2. Future active infinitive.
3. Perfect passive infinitive.
4. They agree with the subject of the infinitive. See p. 163, n. 4.
5. Since it is the ending of the perfect active infinitive, **-isse** in effect means "to have. . . ."
6. (1) to have moved
    (2) to have been moved
    (3) to be about to move
    (4) to be moved
    (5) to be said
    (6) to be known
    (7) to be saved
    (8) to be seized
    (9) to be sent
    (10) to have believed
    (11) to have destroyed
    (12) to have drawn
    (13) to have touched
    (14) to have loved
    (15) to have conquered

    (16) to have lived
    (17) to have been drawn
    (18) to have been seen
    (19) to have been seized
    (20) to have been sent
    (21) to have been sought
    (22) to have been expelled
    (23) to have been left
    (24) to have been given
    (25) to be about to give
    (26) to be about to turn
    (27) to be about to press
    (28) to be about to seize
    (29) to be about to order
    (30) to be about to touch

7. See p. 164.
8. (2) nūntiō, I announce
    (4) intellegō, I understand
    (7) videō, I see
    (8) nesciō, I do not know
    (10) crēdō, I believe
    (13) audiō, I hear

    (14) sentiō, I feel, think
    (16) scrībō, I write
    (19) ostendō, I show
    (20) spērō, I hope
    (22) putō, I think
    (24) negō, I say that . . . not, deny

9. Saying, knowing, thinking, perceiving. See p. 167.
10. The infinitive with subject accusative; not a "that" clause.
11. The accusative.
12. No.
13. (1) The perfect infinitive = time *before* that of the main verb.

(2) The future infinitive = time *after* that of the main verb.

(3) The present infinitive = the *same time* as that of the main verb. See p. 165.

14. I know that you did (will do, are doing) this (thing).   15. I knew that you had done (would do, were doing) this.   16. We believed that they would come (had come, were coming).   17. We believe that they will come (came, are coming).   18. Tomorrow he will hear (A) that they are coming (i.e., tomorrow); (B) that they came (e.g., yesterday) *or* that they have come; (C) that they will come (e.g., in a few days).   19. Today he hears (A) that they are coming (today); (B) that they came (yesterday); (C) that they will come (soon).   20. Yesterday he heard (A) that they were coming (yesterday); (B) that they had come (e.g., the day before yesterday); (C) that they would come (in a few days).   21. They hope that you (pl.) will see him.   22. I know that this was done by you.   23. I did not know that those things had been done by him.   24. They said that the city was not being captured by the enemy (had not been captured).   25. You (pl.) know that those men are (will be, were/have been) always faithful.   26. You (pl.) knew that those men were (would be, had been) always faithful.   27. They kept thinking that the tyrant ought to be driven out by them (by themselves).   28. We believe that peace ought to be sought by all leaders.   29. He says that peace is being sought (was sought) by the ten leaders.   30. He said that the two leaders would seek (were seeking, had sought) peace.   31. The enemy hope that they will conquer all states.   32. I well know that I do not know many things, for no one can know all things.

33. **Scīre** (sentence 32) is a complementary infinitive depending on **potest.**

34.

Word	Form	Reason
(14) tē	acc.	subj. of inf. (fēcisse)
(14) fēcisse	perf. act. inf.	indir. statement
(16) eōs	acc.	subj. of inf. (ventūrōs esse)
(17) ventūrōs esse	fut. act. inf.	indir. state
(21) eum	acc.	obj. of inf. (vīsūrōs esse)
(22) hoc	acc.	subj. of inf. (factum esse)
(23) eō	abl.	agent
(24) hostibus	abl.	agent
(25) fidēlēs	acc.	pred. adj. agreeing with illōs
(27) sibi	dat.	agent w. pass. periphrastic
(28) pācem	acc.	subj. of inf. (quaerendam esse)
(28) ducibus	dat.	agent w. pass. periphr.
(29) ducibus	abl.	agent
(30) pācem	acc.	obj. of inf. (quaesitūrōs esse)
(31) rēs pūblicās	acc.	obj. of inf.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 26

1. (1) Latin -ior corresponds to English -er.
   (2) They have a slight similarity in sound and they both have a final -r as a sign of the comparative.
2. (1) Latin -issimus corresponds to English -est.
   (2) The s's which they have in common suggest s as a sign of the superlative.

3. (1) They are added to the *base* of the adjective. (See p. 171–72.)

(2) turpior, turpissimus; vēlōcior, vēlōcissimus; prūdentior, prūdentissimus

4. (1) **Acerbior** = harsher, rather harsh, too harsh.

(2) **Acerbissimus** = harshest, very harsh.

5. (1) **Quam** with the comparative = *than* (this man was harsher than that one).

(2) **Quam** with the superlative = *as . . . as possible, -st possible* (this man was as harsh as possible, the harshest possible).

6. There is no fixed case after **quam,** which is an adverb or conjunction of comparison. The second word of a comparison, which comes after **quam,** is put in the same case as that of the first of the two words compared. (See p. 173.)

7. (1) Most have i-stems.

(2) Comparatives have consonant stems. (Note, incidentally, that *comparative* and *consonant* both begin with the same sound.)

8. They announced that the bravest possible leader had come. 9. After a very clear light had been seen by the four men, the bravest troops were sent against the enemy. 10. When that very base man had been banished, the senate gave gifts to the more faithful citizens. 11. The more fortunate citizens used to do these pleasant things on behalf of the more unfortunate citizens. 12. This author is more famous than that one. 13. Certain men said that this author was more famous than that one. 14. Read the books of wiser authors if you wish to lead the wisest (a very wise) life. 15. The six authors whose books I have read are too (rather) harsh. 16. After certain very wise books had been read, we avoided those baser faults. 17. This man, who has overcome his base faults, is braver than the very brave leader. 18. Who is the happiest man? He who leads the wisest life is happier than the most powerful tyrant. 19. The cure of your vices seems rather (too) difficult. 20. That leader thought that his country was dearer to him than life. 21. A band of the most faithful young men possible ought to be sought by the senate.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 27

1. (1) and (2)—see p. 179 item II.

2. (1) and (2)—see p. 179 item I.

3.

Positive	*Comparative*	*Superlative*
parvus	minus (minor, minus)	minimum (minimus)
malus	pejorative (peior)	pessimist (pessimus)
bonus	ameliorate (melior)	optimist (optimus)
(prō)	prior (prior)	prime (prīmus)
magnus	major (maior)	maximum (maximus)
superus	superior (superior)	supreme (suprēmus)
multus	plus (plūs)	summit (summus)

4. (1) a smaller war
(2) the worst (very bad) war
(3) a greater war
(4) former wars
(5) a very similar book
(6) a more difficult book

(7) the smallest boy
(8) the better boy
(9) a very (most) beautiful girl
(10) a more beautiful girl
(11) very many girls
(12) greater faith

(13) very small faith

(14) a smaller sea

(15) in a smaller sea

(16) larger seas

(17) the best fruits

(18) worse fruit

(19) the fiercest (very fierce) men

(20) fiercer men

(21) more men

(22) most (very) difficult labor

(23) the last (supreme) labor

(24) more labor

(25) more labors

(26) the best leaders

(27) greater leaders

(28) better leaders

(29) the smallest gifts

(30) more gifts

(31) the first gifts

(32) more praise

(33) more praises

(34) the worst citizens

(35) better citizens

(36) very free citizens

5. The easiest things often are not the best.   6. The difficult things are often the greatest.   7. The better pursuits are more (rather) difficult.   8. The worst authors write very many books.   9. These books are worse than the books of better authors. 10. The smaller boy received a larger gift.   11. That very small republic had the greatest hopes.   12. More men believe that this war is worse than the first war. 13. A better leader will come with greater forces.   14. Fierce leaders often used to praise the fiercer forces of the fiercest enemy.   15. When the very evil tyrant had been banished, the citizens sought a better and a wiser leader.   16. They gave the better leader greater power and more money.   17. Citizens of the smaller cities are not better than those of the largest cities.   18. We are not better than very many men of former ages.   19. Our ancestors used to call Apollo the god of the sun.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 28

1. Something other than a fact; e.g., the command and purpose clauses learned in this chapter. See p. 186.

2. See p. 186.

3. (1) ē; (2) ā (except that in the 3rd and 4th conjugations the forms **dūcam** and **audiam** are identical in the future indicative and the present subjunctive).

4. Command, called "jussive."

5. Purpose.

6. Jussive.

7. No. (See p. 189.)

8.   (1) he will send

(2) subj., 3rd sg.

(3) he is sending

(4) subj., 3rd sg.

(5) he gives

(6) subj., 3rd pl.

(7) they believe

(8) they will believe

(9) they move

(10) subj., 3rd pl.

(11) we shall be heard

(12) subj., 1st pl. pass.

(13) we are heard

(14) subj., 2nd sg.

(15) you (sg.) are seizing

(16) you (sg.) will seize

(17) they are known

(18) they will be known

(19) subj., 3rd pl. pass.

(20) you (pl.) are freed

(21) subj., 2d. pl. pass.

(22) you (pl.) will be freed

(23) they are destroyed
(24) subj., 3rd pl. pass.
(25) you (sg.) will be conquered
(26) you (sg.) are conquered

(27) subj., 2nd sg.
(28) we say
(29) we shall say
(30) subj., 1st pl.

9. Let that leader come. We are awaiting him.   10. Let the base citizens depart from (our) republic so that we may live in peace.   11. If those two men desire friends, let them do real kindnesses.   12. He shows kindnesses to others in order to be loved (so that he may be loved).   13. I say these happy words to you so that you may not depart.   14. Let us do these very difficult things for the sake of our country. 15. Give more money to those unfortunate people so that they may not lack arms against the enemy.   16. He thinks that they will do it to avoid my anger.   17. Let us prepare arms so that our liberty may not be taken away.   18. Will our freedom be rescued from danger by arms alone?   19. Let philosophers not write too difficult books.   20. For (= the truth is) we shall not receive enough wisdom from too difficult books.   21. Let him do better and greater things so that he may not lead a most wretched life.   22. Tell these things to that very famous author so that they may be written in his book.   23. Let us always seek the truth, without which the greatest souls cannot be happy.

24.	*Word*	*Form*	*Reason*
(9) veniat	pres. subj.	command (jussive)
(10) discēdant	pres. subj.	command
vīvāmus	pres. subj.	purpose
(11) faciant	pres. subj.	command
(12) praestat	pres. ind.	statement of fact
amētur	pres. subj.	purpose
(13) discēdātis	pres. subj.	purpose
(14) faciāmus	pres. subj.	command
(15) date	imper.	command in 2nd per.
armīs	abl.	separation
careant	pres. subj.	purpose
(16) eōs	acc.	subj. of inf.
factūrōs esse	fut. act. inf.	indirect statement
vītent	pres. subj.	purpose
(17) parēmus	pres. subj.	command
tollātur	pres. subj.	purpose
(18) armīs	abl.	means
ēripiētur	fut. ind.	fact
(19) scrībant	pres. subj.	command
(20) accipiēmus	fut. ind.	fact
(21) faciat	pres. subj.	command
agat	pres. subj.	purpose
(22) nārrā	imper.	command in 2nd per.
scrībantur	pres. subj.	purpose
(23) quaerāmus	pres. subj.	command

KEY FOR CHAPTER 29

1. Present active infinitive + personal endings. See p. 194.
2. Yes.
3. (1) impf. subj., 3 sg.
   (2) impf. subj., 3 pl.
   (3) impf. subj., 1 pl.
   (4) impf. subj., 1 sg.
   (5) impf. subj., 2 sg.
   (6) pres. subj., 3 sg.
   (7) impf. subj., 2 pl.
   (8) pres. subj., 3 sg.
   (9) you (sg.) will find
   (10) pres. subj., 2 sg.
   (11) pres. subj., 3 sg.
   (12) he will say
   (13) he says
   (14) pres. subj., 3 pl.
   (15) impf. subj., 3 sg.

   (16) pres. subj., 3 sg.
   (17) impf. subj., 3 pl.
   (18) they will depart
   (19) pres. subj., 3 pl.
   (20) pres. subj., 1 pl.
   (21) pres. subj., 1 pl.
   (22) impf. subj., 3 pl.
   (23) pres. subj., 2 sg.
   (24) you will receive
   (25) impf. subj., 2 sg.
   (26) you (pl.) will be banished
   (27) impf. subj., 2 pl.
   (28) pres. subj., 2 pl.
   (29) impf. subj., 3 pl.
   (30) they are moved

4. Ut or **ut nōn** + subjunctive.
5. See p. 196.
6. See p. 196.

7. They read the best books with such great care that they learned much wisdom. 8. We used to read good books with care so that we might learn wisdom. 9. The best books ought to be read by students in order that they may learn the truth and good character. 10. Let the wisest authors write more books so that they may be able to help all peoples. 11. The souls of very many men are so foolish that they do not wish to learn. 12. But many minds are so keen that they can learn well. 13. Some teachers used to teach their pupils so skillfully (with such great skill) that even the pupils themselves wanted to learn. 14. The power of that tyrant was so great that the senate could not drive him out. 15. Let all citizens dedicate (give) themselves to the country so that the enemy may not take away their liberty. 16. Caesar was such a keen leader that the enemy did not conquer the Roman soldiers. 17. Are we leading other peoples with such great wisdom and courage that liberty is being preserved? 18. You (pl.) used to do such great kindnesses that all loved you. 19. He was so harsh that no one loved him. 20. Thousands of citizens kept fleeing from that land in order not to be oppressed by the tyrant. 21. They so loved liberty that they were never conquered by the enemy.

22.

Word	Form	Reason
(7) discerent	impf. subj.	result
(8) discerēmus	impf. subj.	purpose
(9) discant	pres. subj.	purpose
(10) scrībant	pres. subj.	command
possint	pres. subj.	purpose
(11) cupiant	pres. subj.	result

(12) possint	pres. subj.	result
(13) cuperent	impf. subj.	result
(14) posset	impf. subj.	result
(15) dent	pres. subj.	command
tollant	pres. subj.	purpose
(16) vincerent	impf. subj.	result
(17) cōnservētur	pres. subj.	result
(18) amārent	impf. subj.	result
(19) amāret	impf. subj.	result
(20) opprimerentur	impf. subj.	purpose
(21) vincerentur	impf. subj.	result

KEY FOR CHAPTER 30

1. It is the perfect active infinitive (-isse) + personal endings; e.g., **pōnere-m** and **posuisse-m**.
2. It is the perfect passive participle + **essem** (the imperfect subjunctive of **sum**); e.g., **positus eram** and **positus essem**.
3. **Positus sit** is perfect subjunctive passive.
4. The future perfect indicative.
5. (1) impf. pass., 3 sg.   (9) impf. act., 3 pl.
   (2) plupf. act., 1 sg.   (10) plupf. pass., 1 pl.
   (3) perf. pass., 3 pl.   (11) pres. act., 3 sg.
   (4) pres. pass., 1 pl.   (12) perf. pass., 2 sg.
   (5) perf. act., 3 pl.   (13) plupf. act., 2 sg.
   (6) impf. act., 1 pl.   (14) impf. pass., 3 sg.
   (7) plupf. act., 2 pl.   (15) perf. act., 1 pl.
   (8) plupf. pass., 3 sg.   (16) plupf. act., 3 pl.

6. (1) Present and future. See p. 205.
   (2) Present and perfect.
   (3) The past tenses.
   (4) Imperfect and pluperfect.

7. (1) The same time or time after (contemporaneous or subsequent). See p. 205.
   (2) The same time or time after.
   (3) Time before (prior).
   (4) Time before (prior).

8. Where is (was) the leader?   9. They ask where the leader is (was).   10. They kept asking where the leader was (had been).   11. They will ask where the leader is (was).   12. I do not know where the money was put.   13. Do you (sg.) know where the money is being put?   14. They knew where the money was being put.   15. He did not know where the money had been put.   16. We shall tell you (pl.) why the soldier did (does) this.   17. They told me why the soldier had done (was doing) this.   18. Tell me who came (is coming).   19. The orator asked why the other citizens had not learned these plans.   20. We announced to the leader that the other soldiers were fleeing (had fled) into that land.   21. We announced to the leader into what

land the other soldiers were fleeing (had fled). 22. We heard that the citizens were so faithful that they preserved the state. 23. We heard what the citizens had done to preserve the state. 24. They kept inquiring in whose state peace could be found. 25. We learned that peace had not been found in their country. 26. Those foolish men always ask what is better than power or money. 27. We certainly think that money itself is not bad; but we believe that truth and liberty and friendship are better and greater. 28. These things we desire so that we may live a finer life; for money alone and power can make men harsh, so that they are not happy. 29. Finally, let him explain all things so that you (pl.) may now understand what great crimes have been committed against the republic.

30.	*Word*	*Form*	*Reason*
	(15) posita esset	plupf. subj.	ind. quest.
	(16) fēcerit	perf. subj.	ind. quest.
	(17) fēcisset	plupf. subj.	ind. quest.
	(18) vēnerit	perf. subj.	ind. quest.
	(20) fugere	pres. inf.	ind. state.
	(21) fugerent	impf. subj.	ind. quest.
	(22) esse	pres. inf.	ind. state.
	cōnservārent	impf. subj.	result
	(23) fēcissent	plupf. subj.	ind. quest
	cōnservārent	impf. subj.	purpose
	(24) posset	impf. subj.	ind. quest.
	(25) inventam esse	perf. inf.	ind. state.
	(26) sit	pres. subj.	ind. quest.
	(27) esse	pres. inf.	ind. state.
	(28) agāmus	pres. subj.	purpose
	sint	pres. subj.	result
	(29) expōnat	pres. subj.	jussive
	comprehendātis	pres. subj.	purpose
	commissa sint	pres. subj.	ind. quest.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 31

1. When (circumstantial, which is to be distinguished from **cum** temporal), since, although.
2. Although.
3. (1) The 3rd conjugation.
   (2) They lack the connecting vowel **e/i**, which is seen in the corresponding forms of **dūcō.** (See p. 212.)
4. (1) pres. subj. act., 3 sg.   (8) pres. subj. act., 3 pl.
    (2) he bears   (9) he is borne
    (3) impf. subj. act., 3 sg.   (10) bear (2 pl.)
    (4) he will bear   (11) you (pl.) bear
    (5) to bear   (12) you (sg.) will be borne
    (6) they bear   (13) you (sg.) are borne
    (7) they will bear   (14) bear (2 sg.)

(15) to be borne

(16) to have borne

(17) to be about to bear

(18) to be borne (gerundive)

(19) to have been borne

(20) plupf. subj. act., 3 sg.

5. When we had said this, those twenty men replied that they would offer a just peace. 6. Although he had gone into another country, nevertheless he found new friends. 7. Since they offer us friendship, we shall offer them aid. 8. Since the danger was great, they brought all their troops and arms together in a short time. 9. What do *you* (sg.) bring? What does he bring? Tell me why these gifts are offered. 10. When he had explained what he was seeking, you (sg.) said that such great aid could not be offered. 11. Although they had brought pleasing gifts, I was able nevertheless to recognize their treachery. 12. Since we now understand your plans, we will not endure your treachery. 13. Such great evils are not to be endured. Go (betake yourself) into exile. 14. Finally, let these hundred citizens bear aid to the republic. 15. I kept thinking that they would bring the wine in ships (*lit.*, by ships). 16. Although our soldiers had conquered the enemy, nevertheless they offered them many kindnesses. 17. When he had learned what great benefits the other three men were offering, he himself offered equal benefits. 18. We ought to offer sufficient aid to the unfortunate citizens of small nations. 19. When the consul had spoken these words, the senate replied that money had been brought together for this purpose.

20.

Word	Form	Reason
(5) dīxissēmus	plupf. subj.	**cum** circumstantial
oblātūrōs esse	fut. inf.	ind. state.
(6) contulisset	plupf. subj.	**cum** *although*
(7) offerant	pres. subj.	**cum** *since*
(8) esset	impf. subj.	**cum** *since*
(9) offerantur	pres. subj.	ind. quest.
(10) exposuisset	plupf. subj.	**cum** circumstantial
peteret	impf. subj.	ind. quest.
(11) tulissent	plupf. subj.	**cum** *although*
(12) comprehendāmus	pres. subj.	**cum** *since*
(13) cōnfer	imper. 2 sg.	command
(14) ferant	pres. subj.	jussive (command)
(15) nāvibus	abl. pl.	means
lātūrōs esse	fut. inf.	ind. state.
(16) vīcissent	plupf. subj.	**cum** *although*
(17) offerrent	impf. subj.	ind. quest.
(19) dīxisset	plupf. subj.	**cum** circumstantial

KEY FOR CHAPTER 32

1. (1) -ē; (2) -iter (e.g., lībere, celeriter).

2. The ending -*ly* (e.g., freely, quickly).

3. No. For example, see the list on p. 221.

4. (1) -ius (e.g., līberius, celerius).

   (2) It is identical with the nom. and acc. neut. sg.

(3) It is usually formed by using *more (too, rather)* with the positive degree of the adverb (e.g., more/too freely, more quickly).

5. The base is the same in both instances.

6. (1) **līberius** = more/too/rather freely.

   (2) **līberrimē** = most/very freely.

7.   (1) pleasantly

    (2) more/too pleasantly

    (3) most/very pleasantly

    (4) better

    (5) very faithfully

    (6) briefly

    (7) very quickly

    (8) worse

    (9) more faithfully

   (10) more easily

   (11) very little, least of all

   (12) more, rather

   (13) longer

   (14) badly

   (15) more wretchedly

   (16) less

   (17) easily

   (18) especially, most of all

   (19) very seriously

   (20) more swiftly

8. (1) **vol-**; (2) **vel-**. See p. 221.

9. It is similar to **sum.** See p. 221.

10.   (1) you (sg.) will wish

    (2) pres. subj., 2 sg.

    (3) you (sg.) wish

    (4) impf. subj., 2 sg.

    (5) he prefers

    (6) pres. subj., 1 pl.

    (7) impf. subj., 1 pl.

    (8) plupf. subj., 2 sg.

    (9) I shall wish

   (10) they kept wishing

   (11) he will wish

   (12) you (pl.) wish

   (13) to have wished

   (14) they wish

   (15) we wished

   (16) to wish

   (17) he had wished

   (18) they wished

   (19) you (sg.) wished

   (20) impf. subj., 3 sg.

   (21) they do not wish

   (22) impf. subj., 3 sg.

   (23) pres. subj., 3 sg.

   (24) he will not wish

11. Certain men prefer to believe that all men are equal. 12. Certain men say that all men's minds at least are not equal. 13. These men obtained wealth very quickly; those will be poor for a very long time. 14. This man wishes to get very many honors as easily as possible. 15. Do not lose this knowledge. 16. The citizens themselves managed the state better than the leader. 17. There the land is more level and is more open. 18. Free men will not wish to keep us from knowledge; but tyrants especially so wish. 19. The tyrant used to oppress his citizens so badly that they always wished to be free. 20. He will offer very many gifts very freely so that the army may be willing to help that tyrant. 21. Since they had very little wish to offer aid, we were unwilling to show them many favors. 22. Since the enemy are coming swiftly against us, we want to call our men to arms as quickly as possible. 23. Although they truly wanted to preserve their liberty and laws, nevertheless the crimes of the tyrant had to be endured very long. 24. He prefers to do these things more wisely so that he may not lose this occasion at least. 25. Do not leave, my friend.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 33

1. (1) The present subjunctive. (2) See p. 229.
2. (1) (A) Present contrary to fact; (B) past contrary to fact.
   (2) The conditional clause. See p. 229.
3. Nisi.
4. The future less vivid condition.
5. See vocabulary p. 230.

6. If reason leads, you (sg.) are happy. 7. If reason leads, you will be happy. 8. If reason should lead, you would be happy. 9. If reason were leading, you would be happy. 10. If reason had led, you would have been happy. 11. If you (sg.) love money, you lack wisdom. 12. If you love money, you will lack wisdom. 13. If you should love money, you would lack wisdom. 14. If you were in love with money, you would lack wisdom. 15. If you had loved money, you would have lacked wisdom. 16. If we seek the truth, we find knowledge. 17. If we seek the truth, we shall find knowledge. 18. If we should seek the truth, we would find knowledge. 19. If we were seeking the truth, we would find knowledge. 20. If we had sought the truth, we would have found knowledge. 21. If you do not avoid anger, you will lose your two friends. 22. If you had not avoided anger, you would have lost your five friends. 23. If you should not avoid anger (if you should fail to avoid anger), you would lose many friends. 24. If you were not avoiding anger, you would be losing many friends. 25. If you do not avoid anger, you are losing many friends. 26. If you did not avoid anger, you lost many friends. 27. If anyone has a good character, we praise him. 28. If anyone had had a good character, we would have praised him. 29. If anyone should have a good character, we would praise him. 30. If anyone had a good character, we praised (used to praise) him. 31. If anyone were in possession of a good character, we would praise him. 32. If anyone has a good character, we shall praise him. 33. If those men win, we shall depart. 34. If those men should win, we would depart. 35. If those men had won, we would have departed. 36. If you had read books well, you would have written better. 37. If you read books well, you will write better. 38. If you should read books well, you would write better.

39.	(6) simple present	(21) simple fut.
	(7) simple fut.	(22) past contr. to fact
	(8) fut. less vivid	(23) fut. less vivid
	(9) pres. contr. to fact	(24) pres. contr. to fact
	(10) past contr. to fact	(25) simple present
		(26) simple past

KEY FOR CHAPTER 34

1. See p. 234.
2.

	Indicative	
Pres.	cōnāmur	loquitur
Impf.	cōnābāmur	loquēbātur
Fut.	cōnābimur	loquētur

Perf.	cōnātī sumus	locūtus est
Plupf.	cōnātī erāmus	locūtus erat
Fut. Perf.	cōnātī erimus	locūtus erit
	Subjunctive	
Pres.	cōnēmur	loquātur
Impf.	cōnārēmur	loquerētur
Perf.	cōnātī sīmus	locūtus sit
Plupf.	cōnātī essēmus	locūtus esset

3. (1) Participles

Pres.	patiēns, *suffering*
Perf.	passus, *having suffered*
Fut.	passūrus, *about to suffer*
Ger.	patiendus, *to be endured*

(2) Infinitives

Pres.	patī, *to suffer*
Perf.	passus esse, *to have suffered*
Fut.	passūrus esse, *to be about to suffer*

4. (1) illud cōnsilium; (2) illō cōnsiliō; (3) illud cōnsilium
5. Ablative (of means) with special deponent verbs. See p. 237–38.
6. Pres. partic.; fut. partic.; fut. inf.; e.g., **patiēns, passūrus, passūrus esse** in 3 above.

7. (1) cōnor
      2 sg. cōnāre, *try*
      2 pl. cōnāminī, *try*

   (2) loquor
      loquere, *speak*
      loquiminī, *speak*

8. (1) locūtus, *having said*
   (2) mortuus, *having died*
   (3) cōnātus, *having tried*
   (4) passus, *having suffered*

   (5) secūtus, *having followed*
   (6) ēgresssus, *having gone out*
   (7) profectus, *having set out*

9. (1) he will use
    (2) pres. subj., 3 sg.
    (3) he uses
    (4) impf. subj., 3 sg.
    (5) having used
    (6) plupf. subj., 3 sg.
    (7) to be about to use
    (8) you (sg.) will endure
    (9) you (sg.) are enduring
    (10) endure (imper.)

    (11) to endure
    (12) they endured
    (13) to have endured
    (14) enduring
    (15) pres. subj., 3 sg.
    (16) he endures
    (17) we shall endure
    (18) pres. subj., 3 sg.
    (19) impf. subj., 3 sg.
    (20) it must be endured

10. He thinks that these evils ought to be endured.   11. We shall try to endure these evils.   12. If you do not wish to die, endure these evils.   13. Having endured the greatest evils, the poor man died.   14. The tyrant thought that those two men would endure these evils a long time.   15. When they had endured three wars, they dared to force that tyrant into exile.   16. If you follow this new leader, you will enjoy liberty and leisure.   17. When these words had been said, we dared to follow him.

18. Having spoken these words, we set out so that we might not die in that miserable place.   19. Although he thought that you had used a bad plan, nevertheless he spoke with you freely.   20. If anyone should dare to use wine of that sort, he would quickly die.   21. His son was born and died on the same day.   22. Let us use all our resources so that our country may be saved.   23. When he tried to set out into another land, he was captured by soldiers.   24. I kept thinking that he would go out of the city with his ten friends.   25. Having set out that night, Caesar came to a certain very famous island.   26. If they had used better books, they would have learned more.   27. If you wish to have many friends, do not be arrogant.

28. (12) simple pres.; (16) simple fut.; (20) fut. less vivid; (26) past contrary to fact.
29.

Word	Form	Reason
(14) passūrōs esse	fut. inf.	ind. state.
(17) verbīs	abl.	abl. abs.
(18) locūtī	nom. pl. of perf. partic.	agrees w. subject of verb
morerēmur	impf. subj.	purpose
(19) cōnsiliō	abl.	special deponents
arbitrārētur	impf. subj.	**cum** *although*
(21) diē	abl.	time when
(22) ūtāmur	pres. subj.	jussive
(25) nocte	abl.	time when
(26) librīs	abl.	spec. deponents

KEY FOR CHAPTER 35

1. See p. 246.
2. See p. 247–48.
3.   (1) eum; they recognize him.
     (2) eī; they forgive him.
     (3) eī; they serve him.
     (4) eum; they save him.
     (5) eum; I prepared him.
     (6) eī; I obeyed him.
     (7) eum; they endure him.
     (8) eum; they will find him.
     (9) eī; they injure him.
     (10) eum; they help him.
     (11) eī; they please him.
     (12) eum; they throw him.
     (13) eum; they overcome him.
     (14) eī; they trust him.
     (15) eō; they lack it.
     (16) eī; they study it.
     (17) eum; they urge him.
     (18) eum; they follow him.
     (19) eī; they persuade him.
     (20) eō; they use it (him).
     (21) eum; they strike him.
     (22) eī; they spare him.
     (23) eī; they command him.
     (24) eum; they order him.

4. He saved the leader.   5. He served the leader.   6. Slaves serve other men.   7. Brave men save others.   8. That slave served my son and saved him.   9. If anyone serves himself alone, he will never save the republic.   10. If someone had undertaken this work, he would have saved a thousand men.   11. The gods will pardon me; you, O citizens, pardon the whole army.   12. If we want God to forgive us, we ought to forgive other men.   13. They do not trust me now, and they will never be willing to trust my two sons.   14. Those friends are very dear to me.   15. Since you lacked good faith, they could not trust you.   16. Let us obey this leader so that he

you ask that we learn (= ask us to learn) the nature of all things?   9. I warn you to spare these wise men.   10. He warned the soldiers not to injure those seeking peace.   11. He will command us not to trust the enemy.   12. He commanded you to obey the leader.   13. I ask you why you did this.   14. I ask you to do this.   15. I beg of you that peace be made.   16. They kept begging me not to make war.   17. I begged him not to obey the disgraceful king.   18. We beg you to become very keen pupils.   19. Do not be like that harsh tyrant.   20. Caesar took care that his power be made greatest in the state.   21. The speaker urged us to serve our free country eagerly.   22. He persuaded us that we should always use just laws.   23. We are trying to persuade the leader not to harm the arts and laws of the country.   24. A tyrant commands that money be made; and money is made. But that fool does not perceive that this money will be nothing without good faith.   25. Let us urge more students certainly to study the Latin language.

26.	*Word*	*Form*	*Reason*
	(4) studēre	pres. inf.	ind. state.
	(5) studērent	impf. subj.	ind. quest.
	(6) studērent	impf. subj.	jussive noun
	(7) studērent	impf. subj.	ind. quest.
	(8) cognōscāmus	pres. subj.	jussive noun
	(9) parcās	pres. subj.	jussive noun
	(10) eīs	dat.	spec. vbs.
	pācem	acc.	obj. **petentibus**
	(11) hostibus	dat.	spec. vbs.
	(13) fēcerīs	perf. subj.	ind. quest.
	(14) faciās	pres. subj.	jussive noun
	(16) facerem	impf. subj.	jussive noun
	(18) fīātis	pres. subj.	jussive noun
	(22) lēgibus	abl.	spec. dep. vbs.
	(23) lēgibus	dat.	spec. vbs.
	(24) futūram esse	fut. inf.	ind. state.
	(25) hortēmur	pres. subj.	jussive

KEY FOR CHAPTER 37

1. (1) Present indicative and present subjunctive.
   (2) It is **ī-**.
2. Nom. sg. = **iēns**; nom. pl. = **euntēs**.
3. In writing the synopsis of a verb one should follow the sequence of tenses in the indicative and the subjunctive as given above in #2 of the Key of Chapter 34. If this is done there is no need to label the tenses.
   Eō 2nd sg.: Indicative—**īs, ībās, ībis, īstī, ierās, ieris.**
   Subjunctive—**eās, īrēs, ierīs, īssēs.**
   Eō 3d pl.: Indicative—**eunt, ībant, ībunt, iērunt, ierant, ierint.**
   Subjunctive—**eant, īrent, ierint, īssent.**
4. (1) we went   (3) impf. subj., 1 pl.
   (2) we are going   (4) we shall go

(5) plupf. subj., 1 pl.

(6) pres. subj., 1 pl.

(7) to be about to go

(8) going (acc. sg.)

(9) they went

(10) they are going

(11) pres. subj., 3 pl.

(12) they will go

(13) I went

(14) he was going

(15) they had gone

(16) perf. subj., 1 sg.

(17) impf. subj., 3 sg.

(18) to have gone

(19) going (nom./acc. pl.)

(20) I shall go

(21) he went

(22) we were going

(23) plupf. subj., 3 sg.

(24) pres. subj., 3 sg.

5. (1) **ab, dē,** ex + abl.; ab (ex) eā terrā.

   (2) **in** + abl.: in eā terrā; in eā īnsulā.

   (3) **in** or **ad** + acc.: in (ad) eam terram.

6. (1) Place from which = abl. without a preposition.

   (2) Place where = locative without a preposition.

   (3) Place to which = accusative without a preposition.

7. The locative is the case which expresses the idea of "place where" when **domus** or the name of a city is used. See p. 262.

8. (1) Time when = abl. without a prep.: eōdem diē.

   (2) Time how long = acc. usually without a prep.: multōs diēs.

   (3) Time within which = abl. without a prep.: ūnō diē.

9. Since an impersonal verb lacks the 1st and the 2nd persons sg. and pl., the 1st and the 3rd principal parts are given in the 3rd pers. sg. See p. 264, Vocabulary, s.v. **licet** and n. 1. **Licet tibi īre.**

10. (1) (for) one day

    (2) in one day

    (3) on that day

    (4) from Rome

    (5) at Rome

    (6) to Rome

    (7) in a few days

    (8) on the same night

    (9) (for) many days

    (10) into the ship

    (11) in the ship

    (12) out of the ship

    (13) home (= to home)

    (14) at/from Athens

    (15) at home

    (16) to Athens

    (17) from home

    (18) (for) a few hours

11. In a few hours we shall go to Rome. 12. We are going to the city; they are going home. 13. As we have often admitted, you may not (are not permitted to) go from Rome to Athens (*lit.*, to go is not permitted to you). 14. Why did you leave home (go away from home) so quickly? 15. They are coming to Rome in order to go to Athens with my brother. 16. Do not go away from Rome. 17. When your brother had been killed at Rome, we kept urging you to return to Athens. 18. If he should go into the territory of the enemy at this time, he would perish in a few hours. 19. He said that he did not want to stay in that country of yours many days. 20. You said that you would return home from Athens in one hour. 21. I beg of you to return from the ship to the island in a short time. 22. In those days we were accustomed to be at Athens. 23. If they had injured his friends at Rome, he would have returned to Rome in a very short time. 24. Although my brother stayed at home, I nevertheless went away from home into new lands. 25. The Romans, if they wanted to say something bad, often used to say: "Go to the devil." 26. He is persuading them to study Latin.

27. (11) **hōrīs** = abl.: time within which; **Rōmam** = acc.: place to which; (12) **domum** = acc.: place to which; (13) **Rōmā** = abl.: place from; **Athēnās** = acc.: place to; **īre** = pres. inf.: subject of **licet;** (14) **domō** = abl.: place from; (15) **Rōmam** = acc.: place to; (18) **frātre** = abl.: abl. abs.; (18) **tempore** = abl.: time when; **eat** = pres. subj.: fut. less vivid; **hōrīs** = abl.: time within; (19) **velle** = pres. inf.: ind. state.; **diēs** = acc.: time how long; (20) **domum** = acc.: place to; **Athēnīs** = abl.: place from; **hōrā** = abl.: time within; **reditūrum esse** = fut. inf.: ind. state.; (21) **tempore** = abl. time within; **redeās** = pres. subj.: jussive noun clause; (22) **diēbus** = abl.: time when; **Athēnīs** = locative: place where; (23) **amīcīs** = dat.: spec. verbs; **Rōmae** = locative: place where; **redīsset** = plupf. subj.: past contr. to fact condit.; (24) **domī** = locative: place where; **terrās** = acc.: place to; **domō** = abl.: place from; (26) **studeant** = pres. subj.: jussive noun clause.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 38

1. A relative clause with the indicative tells a *fact* about the antecedent.
2. A relative clause with the subjunctive tells a *characteristic* of the antecedent, indicates it to be a person or thing of such a sort. See p. 269.
3. See p. 270.
4. See p. 270-71.

5. My friend who defended the consul was himself a very famous man.   6. But there was no one who would defend that base fellow.   7. What is there which men fear more than a tyrant?   8. Who is there who would hesitate between liberty and the command of a tyrant?   9. At ancient Rome there were those who loved money more than the state.   10. Let that evil man depart from his country—he who has endured the hatred of all good citizens.   11. Catiline, who had made such a great plot against the state, was driven from the city by Cicero.   12. What life can be pleasant for that leader as he goes off into exile?   13. Who is there who would be able to bear such pain?   14. If a person is not agreeable and good, he will not live a truly happy life, it seems to me.   15. They will not trust a consul who would do base deeds.   16. Do not trust a man who is harsh to his friends.   17. Cicero was a consul who would place the state before his own safety.   18. They knew why we wanted to follow such a brave consul.   19. I know nothing which could be easier for me.   20. I am seeking a leader whom all men would praise.   21. They were going to Rome to ask for freedom.   22. The Romans, who had captured ten Greek republics with their own armies, were themselves—amazing to say—taken captive by the Greek arts!   23. For the ancient men there was nothing which was better than courage and wisdom.   24. Nothing is to be feared which cannot injure the soul.

25. The **quī . . . dēfendit** states a fact about the **amīcus;** it does not describe his character. The subjunctive clause in #6 tells what kind of person the imagined **nēmō** might be.
26. Syntax: (7) **metuat** = pres. subj.: characteristic; (8) **dubitet** = pres. subj.: characteristic; (9) **Rōmae** = loc.: place where; **amārent** = impf. subj.: characteristic; (10) **abeat** = pres. subj.: jussive; **passus est** = perf. indic. rel. cl. of fact; (11) **fēcerat** = plupf. ind.: rel. cl. of fact; (12) **ducī** = dat.: reference; **potest** = pres. ind.: main verb in a direct question; (13) **possit** = pres. subj.: characteristic; (14) **erit** = fut. indic.: simple fut. condit.; **mihi** = dat.: ref.; (15) **cōnsulī** = dat.: spec. vbs.;

(16) **amīcīs** = dat.: dat. w. adjs.; (17) **salūtī** = dat.: compound vb.; **antepōneret** = impf. subj.: characteristic; (18) **vellēmus** = impf. subj.: ind. quest.; (19) **mihi** = dat.: ref.; **possit** = pres. subj.: characteristic; (21) **rogātum** = acc. supine: purpose; (22) **cēperant** = plupf. ind.: rel. cl. of fact; **dictū** = abl. supine: respect; (23) **virīs** = dat.: ref.; (24) **animō** = dat.: spec. vbs.; **possit** = pres. subj.: characteristic.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 39

1. (1) See p. 276 s.v. "The Gerund."
   (2) See p. 276.
   (3) See p. 276–77.
   (4) In its four cases it is used as a noun is used. See p. 277.
   (5) The infinitive; see p. 277.
2. (1) See p. 276 s.v. "The Gerundive."
   (2) The gerund*ive* is an adject*ive.*
   (3) As an adjective it modifies a noun or pronoun and agrees with that noun or pronoun in gender, number, and case.
   (4) The gerundive (e.g., **laudandus, -a, -um**) is declined as **magnus, -a, -um** is. See p. 276.
   (5) Since the gerund has only the endings **-ī, -ō, -um, -ō,** any feminine or any plural ending on an **-nd-** base is bound to indicate a gerundive; and also, if an **-nd-** form agrees with a noun as an adjectival modifier, it must be a gerundive.
3. (1) The Latin gerund is normally translated by the English gerund in *-ing* with any attending noun constructions or adverbial modifiers.
   (2) The gerundive is to be translated by the English as if it were a gerund with an object and any adverbial modifiers. In other words, both the gerund and the gerundive are to be translated in the same way. See p. 277–78.
   (3) (A) We learn by reading with care.
      (B) We learn by reading books with care.

4. We learn by experiencing. 5. They came to learn (for learning). 6. He gave (devoted) himself to learning. 7. They came to your school to learn (for the sake of learning). 8. The boy went to the school desirous of learning (eager to learn). 9. The fear of dying kept terrifying him. 10. The hope of living after death encourages many people. 11. By thinking (= by using his head) he overcame them.

12. He devoted (gave) himself—(1) to seeking glory. (2) to waging war. (3) to making money. (4) to getting power. (5) to destroying states. (6) to following this leader. (7) to saving his country. (8) to seeking peace. (9) to attacking wrongs. (10) to writing books. (11) to reading books. (12) to learning philosophy. (13) to learning Latin literature. (14) to understanding the truth. (15) to seeking wisdom. (16) to helping human beings.

13. He came to Rome—(1) to undertake this work. (2) to see the Roman games. (3) to see the old buildings. (4) to seek peace. (5) for the sake of undertaking this work (to undertake . . .). (6) for the sake of learning philosophy (to learn . . .). (7) for the sake of reading new books (to read . . .). (8) to see the games.

14. He wrote a book—(1) about enduring pain. (2) about overcoming fear. (3) about

living a good life. (4) about managing the state. (5) about waging war. (6) about defending liberty. (7) about conquering the enemy. (8) about giving gifts.

15. We become wiser—(1) by reading Latin literature. (2) by learning philosophy. (3) by experiencing life. (4) by conquering fear. (5) by following truth.

16. We help our very selves—(1) by always reading good books. (2) by freeing unfortunate men from fear. (3) by offering aid. (4) by helping others.

17. He consumed much time—(1) in thinking (speaking, running). (2) in doing these tasks. (3) in finding the way. (4) in preparing an army. (5) in preparing supplies (troops).

18. He had time for writing this book only.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 40

1. See p. 284–85.
2. Positive fear clauses are introduced by **nē**; negative clauses by **ut.**
3. The noun must itself be modified by an adjective.

4. I greatly fear that the general may not send us enough help. 5. She was a woman of the greatest courage and loyalty and in fact very like her mother. 6. Do not fear that all the men and women of great courage will depart from Rome. 7. This is, indeed, easy to say but difficult to do! 8. They came home to please their parents. 9. You do wish to hear something good, don't you? 10. Do you wish to have much wisdom? Study Latin! 11. He ordered the three soldiers to go to Rome to seek peace. 12. You do not hesitate to say this, do you, my friend? 13. You urge me to be of great courage and to have hope of safety, but I fear that I may be too weak. 14. For my part I place wealth ahead of wisdom. For I do not think that human beings can find a happy life without a great deal of money. 15. However, very many rich men experience much fear. 16. Poor men are often happier and have less fear. 17. Money itself is not bad; but the things of the mind and the soul offer more help for living happily. 18. Nine of the leaders urged us to supply more aid. 19. When five of the guards had been killed, my father fled into that free land with two of his sons and with a large number of friends. 20. Never will he have enough leisure; yet some leisure is better than nothing. 21. In our times we all have too much of fear and too little of hope. 22. Great faith and courage must be found by all men.

Appendix

SOME ETYMOLOGICAL AIDS

TWO RULES OF PHONETIC CHANGE

"Phonetic" derives from Greek **phōnē,** *sound, voice, speech* (cp. phonograph, phonology, symphony, telephone). Consequently, phonetic change means a change which occurs in original speech sounds for one reason or another. Of the many instances of this in Latin, the following two rules of phonetic change are probably the most important ones for the beginner.

A. *Vowel weakening* usually occurs in the medial syllables of compounds according to the following outline.

    1. ă > ĭ before a single consonant and before **ng.**
       ă > ĕ before two consonants.

cǎpiō, cǎptum: ac-cǐpiō, ac-cěptum
fǎciō, fǎctum: per-fǐciō, per-fěctum
fǎcilis: dif-fǐcilis
cǎdō, cāsum: oc-cǐdō, oc-cāsum (Note that long ā does not change.)
tǎngō, tǎctum: con-tǐngō, con-tǎctum

2. ě > ǐ before a single consonant.
   těneō: con-tǐneō (*but* contentum)
   prěmō: com-prǐmō (*but* compressum)

3. ae > ī.
   quaerō, quaesītum: re-quīrō, re-quīsītum
   laedō, laesum: col-līdō, col-līsum
   caedō, caesum: in-cǐdō, in-cīsum; oc-cǐdō, oc-cīsum
   aestimō: ex-īstimō

4. au > ū.
   claudō: in-clūdō, ex-clūdō
   causor: ex-cūsō

B. *Assimilation* of the final consonant of a prefix to the initial consonant of the base word commonly occurs.

ad-capiō > ac-cipiō   in-mortālis > im-mortālis
dis-facilis > dif-ficilis   in-ruō > ir-ruō

PREFIXES

Listed here are important prefixes helpful in the analysis of both Latin words and English derivatives. The Latin prefixes have passed over into English unchanged except where indicated. Incidentally, most Latin prefixes were also used by the Romans as prepositions; but the few labeled "inseparable" appear only as prefixes.

ā-, ab-, *away, from.*
   ā-vocō, *call away* (avocation)
   ā-vertō, *turn away* (avert)
   ā-mittō, *send away, let go, lose*
   ab-sum, *be away* (absent)
   ab-eō, *go away*
   ab-dūcō, *lead away* (abduct)
ad- (by assimilation ac-, af-, ag-, al-, an-, ap-, ar-, as-, at-), *to, towards, in addition.*
   ad-vocō, *call to, call* (advocate)
   ad-dūcō, *lead to* (adduce)
   ad-mittō, *send to, admit*
   ac-cēdō, *go to, approach* (accede)
   ac-cipiō (ad-capiō), *get, accept*
   ap-pōnō, *put to* (apposition)
   as-sentiō, *feel towards, agree to, assent*
ante-, *before.*
   ante-pōnō, *put before, prefer*
   ante-cēdō, *go before, precede, excel* (antecedent)

circum-, *around.*

> **circum-dūcō,** *lead around*
> **circum-veniō,** *come around, surround* (circumvent)
> **circum-stō,** *stand around* (circumstance)

com- (com = cum; also appears as **con-, cor-, col-, co-),** *with, together;* intensive force: *completely, very, greatly, deeply, forcibly.*

> **con-vocō,** *call together* (convoke)
> **con-dūcō,** *lead together* (conduct)
> **com-pōnō,** *put together, compose* (component)
> **com-mittō,** *send together, bring together, entrust* (commit)
> **cōn-sentiō,** *feel together, agree* (consent)
> **cō-gō (co-agō),** *drive together, force* (cogent)
> **com-pleō,** *fill completely, fill up* (complete)
> **cōn-servō,** *save completely, preserve* (conserve)
> **con-cēdō,** *go completely, go away, yield, grant* (concede)
> **con-tendō,** *stretch greatly, strive, hurry* (contend)
> **col-laudō,** *praise greatly* or *highly*
> **cor-rōborō,** *strengthen greatly* (corroborate)

contrā-, *against, opposite.* (Not common as a prefix in Latin but fairly common in English, especially in the form *counter-*.)

> **contrā-dicō,** *speak against* or *opposite, oppose, rely* (contradict)
> **contrā-veniō** (late Latin), *come against, oppose* (contravene)

dē-, *down, away, aside, out, off;* intensive force: *utterly, completely.*

> **dē-dūcō,** *lead down* or *away, drawn down* (deduce, deduct)
> **dē-pōnō,** *put aside, lay aside, entrust* (deponent, deposit)
> **dē-mittō,** *send down, throw down, let fall* (demit)
> **dē-veniō,** *come from, arrive at, reach*
> **dē-vocō,** *call away* or *off*
> **dē-cēdō,** *go away* (decease)
> **dē-mēns,** *out of one's mind, demented*
> **dē-certō,** *fight it out, fight to the finish*

dis- (dif-, dī-; inseparable), *apart, away, not.*

> **dis-pōnō,** *put apart in different places, arrange* (disposition)
> **dis-cēdō,** *go away, depart*
> **dī-mittō,** *send away in different directions, let go* (dismiss)
> **dif-ferō, dī-lātus,** *bear apart, scatter, put off, differ* (different, dilate)
> **dis-similis,** *not similar, unlike, dissimilar*
> **dif-ficilis,** *not easy, difficult*

ē-, ex- (ef-), *from out, forth;* intensive force: *exceedingly, up.*

> **ē-dūcō,** *lead out* (educe)
> **ex-cēdō,** *go out, from, away; go beyond* (exceed)
> **ē-mittō,** *send out, forth* (emit)
> **ē-vocō,** *call out, forth* (evoke)
> **ex-pōnō,** *put out, set forth, explain* (exponent, exposition)
> **ē-veniō,** *come out, forth; turn out, happen* (event)

ef-ficiō, (ex-faciō), *produce, accomplish, perform* (efficient, effect)
ex-pleō, *fill up, complete*
ex-asperō, *roughen exceedingly, irritate* (exasperate)

in- (im-, il-, ir-; sometimes *en-* or *em-* in Eng.), *in, into, on, upon, against.* (Also see **in-** below.)
    in-vocō, *call in, call upon* (invoke)
    in-dūcō, *lead in* or *into, introduce, impel* (induce)
    im-mittō, *send into, send against, let loose against*
    im-pōnō, *put in, lay upon* (impose)
    in-veniō, *come upon, find* (invent)
    in-clūdō, *shut in, shut* (include, enclose)
    in-vādō, *go into, move against* (invade)
    ir-ruō, *rush into* or *upon*
    il-līdō (in-laedō), *strike* or *dash against*
    in-genium (in + gen-, from **gignō,** *beget, give birth to*), *inborn nature, natural capacity, talent, character* (engine, ingenious)

in- (im-, il-, ir-; inseparable prefix; cognate with Eng. *un-*), *not, un-.*
    in-certus, *not certain, uncertain*
    in-iūstus, *not just, unjust* (*cp.* injustice)
    in-finītus, *not limited, unlimited* (infinite)
    in-firmus, *not firm, weak* (infirm)
    im-mortālis, *not mortal, deathless* (immortal)
    il-litterātus, *unlearned, ignorant* (illiterate)
    ir-revocābilis, *not-call-back-able, unalterable* (irrevocable)

inter-, *between, among.*
    inter-veniō, *come between; interrupt* (intervene)
    inter-cēdō, *go between* (intercede)
    inter-mittō, *place between, leave off* (intermittent)
    inter-pōnō, *put between, bring forward* (interpose)
    inter-rēgnum, *period between two reigns* (interregnum)

intrō-, *within, in.* (Also used as adv.)
    intrō-dūcō, *lead in* (introduce)
    intrō-mittō, *send in*
    intrō-spiciō, *look within* (introspect)

ob- (oc-, of-, op-), *towards, to, opposite, against, over.*
    ob-dūcō, *lead toward* or *against*
    ob-veniō, *come opposite, meet*
    oc-currō, *run to meet, meet* (occur)
    of-ferō, *bear towards, furnish* (offer)
    op-pōnō, *put opposite, set against, oppose* (opposition)

per- (pel-), *through;* intensive force: *thoroughly, very, completely.*
    per-dūcō, *lead through* or *along*
    per-veniō, *come through to, arrive at, reach*
    per-ferō, *carry through, bear thoroughly, endure*
    per-mittō, *let go through, entrust, allow* (permit)

> **per-ficiō (-faciō),** *do thoroughly, accomplish, finish* (perfect)
> **per-facilis,** *very easy*
> **per-paucus,** *very small*
> **pel-lūcidus,** *shining through, transparent*

post-, *after.*

> **post-pōnō,** *put after, esteem less, disregard* (postpone)
> **post-ferō,** *put after, esteem less, disregard* (postpone)
> **post-scrībō,** *write after, add* (postscript)

prae-, *before, in front, forth;* intensive force: *very.* (In Eng. also spelled *pre-.*)

> **prae-moneō,** *warn before, forewarn* (premonition)
> **prae-cēdō,** *go before, excel* (precede)
> **prae-pōnō,** *put before, place in command of, prefer* (preposition)
> **prae-mittō,** *send before or forth, set before* (premise)
> **prae-scrībō,** *write before, order* (prescribe, prescription)
> **prae-ferō,** *bear before, set before, prefer*
> **prae-clārus,** *very noble, very famous, excellent*

prō-, *before, in front, forth, out, away, instead of, for.* (Sometimes *pur-* in Eng.)

> **prō-vocō,** *call forth or out, challenge, excite* (provoke)
> **prō-videō,** *see ahead, foresee, care for* (provide, provision, purvey)
> **prō-dūcō,** *lead before or out, bring forth, prolong* (produce)
> **prō-cēdō,** *go forward, advance* (proceed)
> **prō-pōnō,** *put in front, set forth, declare* (proponent, purpose)
> **prō-mittō,** *send forth, assure* (promise)
> **prō-cōnsul,** *one who served in place of a consul* (proconsul)

re- (red-; inseparable), *back, again.*

> **re-vocō,** *call back, recall* (revoke)
> **re-dūcō,** *lead back* (reduce)
> **re-cēdō,** *go back, retire* (recede)
> **re-pōnō,** *put back, replace, restore* (repository)
> **re-mittō,** *send back, give up* (remit)
> **red-dō,** *give back, restore, return*
> **red-eō,** *go back, return*

sē- (inseparable**),** *apart, aside, without.*

> **sē-dūcō,** *lead aside, separate* (seduce)
> **sē-cēdō,** *go apart, withdraw, retire* (secede)
> **sē-pōnō,** *put aside, select*
> **sē-moveō,** *move aside, separate*
> **sē-cūrus,** *without care, untroubled, serene* (secure)

sub- (suc-, suf-, sug-, sup-, sur-, sus-), *under, up (from beneath); rather, somewhat, a little, secretly.*

> **sub-dūcō,** *draw from under, withdraw secretly*
> **suc-cēdō,** *go under, go up, approach, prosper* (succeed)
> **sup-pōnō,** *put under, substitute* (supposition, supposititious)
> **sub-veniō,** *come under, help* (subvene, subvention)
> **sus-tineō (-teneō),** *hold up, support, endure* (sustain)

super- (also *sur-* in Eng.), *over, above.*

> **super-pōnō,** *place over* or *upon, set over* (superposition)
> **super-sedeō,** *sit above* or *upon, be superior to, be above, refrain from, desist* (supersede)
> **super-sum,** *be over and above, be left, survive*
> **superō,** *be above, surpass, conquer* (insuperable)
> **superbus,** *above others, haughty, proud* (superb)
> **super-vīvō,** *survive*
> **super-ficiēs,** *surface*

trāns- (trā-), *across, over.*

> **trāns-mittō,** *send across, cross over* (transmit)
> **trā-dūcō,** *lead across* (traduce)
> **trāns-eō,** *go across* (transition)
> **trā-dō,** *give over, surrender, hand down* (tradition)

SUFFIXES

Of the very numerous Latin suffixes only a few of the more important ones are listed here with their English equivalents.

1. Suffix denoting the *agent,* the *doer,* the *one who* (**-tor** or **-sor,** m.; **-trīx,** f.).

-tor *or* **-sor** (cp. *Eng.* -er)

> **victor** (**vincō, victum,** *conquer*), *conqueror, victor*
> **scrīptor** (**scrībō, scrīptum,** *write*), *writer*
> **lēctor, lēctrīx** (**legō, lēctum,** *read*), *reader*
> **ōrātor** (**ōrō, ōrātum,** [*speak*], *plead*), *speaker, orator*
> **repertor, repertrīx** (**reperiō, repertum,** *discover*), *discoverer*
> **auctor** (**augeō, auctum,** *increase*), *increaser, author*
> **līberātor** (**līberō, līberātum,** *free*), *liberator*
> **tōnsor** (**tondeō, tōnsum,** *shave, clip*), *barber*
> **amātor** (**amō, amātum,** *love*), *lover*

These nouns have the same base as that of the perfect participle.

2. Suffixes denoting *action* or *result of action* (**-or, -ium, -tiō**).

-or (Eng. *-or*)

> **amor** (**amō,** *love*), *love, amour*
> **timor** (**timeō,** *fear*), *fear*
> **dolor** (**doleō,** *suffer pain*), *pain, suffering, grief*
> **error** (**errō,** *go astray, err*), *error*
> **terror** (**terreō,** *frighten, terrify*), *fright, terror*

-ium (Eng. *-y;* *-ce* when **-ium** is preceded by c or t)

> **studium** (**studeō,** *be eager*), *eagerness, study*
> **colloquium** (**colloquor,** *talk with*), *talk, conference, colloquy*
> **imperium** (**imperō,** *command*), *command, power*
> **odium** (**ōdī,** *hate*), *hate*
> **aedificium** (**aedificō,** *build*) *building, edifice*
> **silentium** (**silēns, silentis,** *silent*), *silence*

-tiō, -tiōnis, *or* -siō, -siōnis (Eng. *-tion* or *-sion*)

    admonitiō (admoneō, admonitum, *admonish*) *admonition*

    ratiō (reor, ratum, *reckon, think*), *reckoning, plan, reason (ration)*

    ōrātiō (ōrō, ōrātum, [*speak*], *plead*), *oration*

    nātiō (nāscor, nātum, *be born*), *birth, nation*

    occāsiō (occidō, occāsum, *fall down*) *a befalling, occasion, opportunity*

3. Suffixes denoting *quality, state, or condition* (-ia, -tia, -tās, -tūdō).

-ia (Eng. *-y*)

    miseria (miser, *miserable*), *misery*

    īnsānia (īnsānus, *insane*), *insanity*

    victōria (victor, *victor*), *victory*

    invidia (invidus, *envious*), *envy*

    iniūria (iniūrus, *wrong, unjust*), *injustice, injury*

-tia (Eng. *-ce*)

    amīcitia (amīcus, *friendly*), *friendship*

    sapientia (sapiēns, *wise*), *wisdom, sapience*

    scientia (sciēns, *knowing*), *knowledge, science*

    iūstitia (iūstus, *just*), *justice*

    dīligentia (dīligēns, *diligent*), *diligence*

-tās, -tātis (Eng. *-ty*)

    lībertās (liber, *free*), *freedom, liberty*

    vēritās (vērus, *true*), *truth, verity*

    paupertās (pauper, *poor*), *poverty*

    cupiditās (cupidus, *desirous, greedy*), *greed, cupidity*

    gravitās (gravis, *heavy, grave*), *weight, seriousness, gravity*

    celeritās (celer, *swift*), *swiftness, celerity*

-tūdō, -tūdinis (Eng. *-tude*)

    multitūdō (multus, *much, many*), *multitude*

    magnitūdō (magnus, *large, great*), *magnitude*

    pulchritūdō (pulcher, *beautiful*), *beauty, pulchritude*

    sōlitūdō (sōlus, *alone*), *solitude*

    sollicitūdō (sollicitus, *agitated, solicitous*), *solicitude*

4. Adjectival suffix meaning *full of* (-ōsus).

-ōsus, -ōsa, -ōsum (Eng. *-ous* or *-ose*)

    studiōsus (studium, *zeal*), *full of zeal, eager (studious)*

    imperiōsus (imperium, *command*), *full of command, imperious*

    perīculōsus (perīculum, *danger*), *full of danger, dangerous*

    vitiōsus (vitium, *fault, vice*), *faulty, vicious*

    verbōsus (verbum, *word*), *wordy, verbose*

5. Adjectival suffix meaning *able to be, worthy to be;* sometimes *able to* (-bilis).

-bilis, -bile (Eng. *-able, -ible, -ble*)

    laudābilis (laudō, *praise*), *worthy to be praised, laudable*

    amābilis (amō, *love*), *worthy to be loved, lovable, amiable*

      incrēdibilis (**crēdō,** *believe*), *not worthy to be believed, incredible*
      mōbilis (**moveō,** *move*), *able to be moved, movable, mobile*
      inexpugnābilis (**expugnō,** *conquer*), *unconquerable*
      stabilis (**stō,** *stand*), *able to stand, stable*

6. Adjectival suffixes denoting *pertaining to* (**-ālis** or **-āris, -ānus, -icus**).

-ālis, -āle, *or* **-āris, -āre** (Eng. *-al* or *-ar*)

      mortālis (**mors,** *death*), *pertaining to death, mortal*
      vītālis (**vīta,** *life*), *pertaining to life, vital*
      fātālis (**fātum,** *fate*), *fatal*
      populāris (**populus,** *people*), *popular*
      vulgāris (**vulgus,** *the common people*), *common, vulgar*

-ānus, -āna, -ānum (Eng. *-an* or *-ane*)

      Rōmānus (**Rōma,** *Rome*), *pertaining to Rome, Roman*
      hūmānus (**homō,** *man*), *pertaining to man, human, humane*
      urbānus (**urbs,** *city*), *urban, urbane*
      mundānus (**mundus,** *world*), *worldly, mundane*

-icus, -ica, -icum (Eng. *-ic*)

      domesticus (**domus,** *house*), *pertaining to the house, domestic*
      pūblicus (**populus,** *people*), *pertaining to the people, public*
      rūsticus (**rūs,** *country*), *rustic*
      cīvicus (**cīvis,** *citizen*), *civic*
      classicus (**classis,** *class*), *pertaining to the classes, of the highest class; classic*

SUPPLEMENTARY SYNTAX

The following constructions are listed for the benefit of students who plan to continue their study of Latin beyond the introductory year. A number of these constructions have already been encountered here and there in the 40 formal chapters of this book. However, although often these can be easily translated without benefit of syntactical labels, it seems wise to catalog them here along with the more difficult items.

GENITIVE OF MATERIAL

The genitive may indicate the material of which a thing is made.

      pōculum aurī, *a goblet of gold*
      Numerus **hostium** crēscit, *the number of the enemy is increasing.*
      Mōns **aquae** secūtus est et tempestās trēs nāvēs cīnxit aggere **harēnae,** *a mountain of water followed and the storm surrounded three ships with a mound of sand.*

OBJECTIVE GENITIVE

The objective genitive depends on a noun of verbal meaning and is used as the object of the verbal idea. It is sometimes translated by *for.*

amor **laudis,** *love of praise* (= amat laudem, *he loves praise.*)
cupiditās **pecūniae,** *greed for money* (= cupit pecūniam, *he longs for money.*)
metus **mortis,** *fear of death* (= metuit mortem, *he fears death.*)
spēs **salūtis,** *hope for safety* (= spērat salūtem, *he hopes for safety.*)
Fēmina erat dux **factī,** *a woman was the leader of the enterprise* (= dūxit factum.)
laudātor **temporis** āctī, *a praiser of the past* (= laudat tempus āctum.)

DATIVE OF PURPOSE

The dative may express the purpose for which a person or thing serves. A dative of reference (Ch. 38) often appears in conjunction with the dative of purpose, and this combination is called the "double dative" construction.

Petītiō mea **tibi** (dat. of ref.) summae **cūrae** (dat. of purp.) est, *my candidacy is (for) the greatest concern to you.*
Ea rēs **mihi** (ref.) summae **voluptātī** (purp.) erat, *that matter was for the greatest pleasure to me = gave me the greatest pleasure.*
Illī **nōbīs** (ref.) **auxiliō** (purp.) vēnērunt, *they came as an aid to us.*
Hōs librōs **dōnō** (purp.) mīsit, *he sent these books as a gift.*
Hoc mē iuvat et **mihi** (ref.) **mellī** (purp.) est, *this gratifies me and is (as) honey to me.*
Optant locum **tēctō** (purp.), *they desire a place for a roof (building).*

DATIVE OF POSSESSION

The dative can be used with **sum** to express the idea of possession.

Liber est **mihi,** *a book is to me = I have a book.*
  (Contrast: liber est **meus,** *the book is mine.*)
Illī maior turba clientium est, *that man has a greater throng of retainers.*
Sunt **tibi** animus et mōrēs, *you have a soul and character.*
Haec **eīs** semper erunt, *they will always have these things.*
Prūdentia est illī **puellae,** *that girl has prudence.*
Ō virgō, nōn **tibi** est vultus mortālis, *O maiden, you do not have the face of a mortal.*
Sī umquam **mihi** fīlius erit . . . , *if I ever have a son. . . .*

ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION

The ablative may be used to tell in what specific respect a verb or an adjective holds true.

Hī omnēs **linguā, īnstitūtīs, lēgibus** inter sē differunt, *these all differ from one another in language, customs, and laws.*
Illī **virtūte** omnibus (dat.) praestābant, *those men used to excel all in courage.*
Id genus erat intractābile **bellō,** *that race was unmanageable in war.*
Quis est praestantior aut **nōbilitāte** aut **probitāte** aut **studiō** optimārum artium? *Who is more outstanding in nobility or integrity or the pursuit of the finest arts?*
Ager bene cultus est über **ūsū** et ōrnātus **speciē,** *a field well cultivated is rich in usefulness and beautiful in appearance.*

Asia omnibus terrīs (dat.) antecellit **übertāte** agrōrum et **varietāte** frūctuum et **multitūdine** eārum quae exportantur, *Asia excels all lands in richness of fields and variety of fruits and large number of those things which are exported.*

ABLATIVE OF CAUSE

The ablative can be used to indicate a cause or reason.

Miser **timōre** dēlīrat, *the wretched man is insane with fear.*
Corpora eōrum **metū** dēbilia sunt, *their bodies are weak from fear.*
Aper **dentibus** timētur, *the boar is feared because of his teeth.*
Nihil arduum mortālibus est; caelum ipsum **stultitiā** petimus, *nothing is (too) arduous for mortals; we seek the sky itself in our folly.*
Odiō tyrannī in exsilium fūgit, *because of his hatred of the tyrant he fled into exile.*
Bonī **amōre** virtūtis peccāre ōdērunt, *good men because of their love of virtue hate to sin.*

ABLATIVE OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE

With comparatives and adverbs suggesting comparison the ablative can be used to indicate the degree of difference in the comparison.

Tantō melius, *the better by so much = so much the better.*
Senex nōn facit ea quae iuvenis, at **multō** maiōra et meliōra facit, *an old man does not do the things which a young man does, but he does much greater and better things (greater by much).*
Multō ācrius iam vigilābō, *I shall now watch much more keenly.*
Rōmam **paucīs** post **diēbus** vēnistī, *you came to Rome a few days afterwards (afterwards by a few days).*
Aberat ab eā urbe **tribus mīlibus** passuum, *he was three miles from that city (was away by three miles).*
Bonae Athēnae **paulō** plūs artis adiēcērunt, *good Athens added a little more skill (more by a little).*

SUBORDINATE CLAUSES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

In indirect discourse, subordinate clauses regularly have verbs in the subjunctive mood, even though they had the indicative in the direct form.

Lēgit librōs quōs mīserās, *he read the books which you had sent.*
Dīxit sē lēgisse librōs quōs **mīsissēs**, *he said that he had read the books which you had sent.*

Eī malī quī in urbe manent īnfīrmī erunt sine duce, *those evil men who remain in the city will be weak without their leader.*
Putō eōs malōs quī in urbe **maneant** īnfīrmōs futūrōs esse sine duce, *I think that those evil men who remain in the city will be weak without their leader.*

Sī id crēdet, errābit. *If he believes this, he will be wrong.*
Dīcō sī id **crēdat** eum errātūrum esse. *I say that if he believes this he will be wrong.*

OBJECTIVE INFINITIVE

The complementary infinitive has no subject accusative (see Ch. 6). However, when an infinitive with subject accusative is used as the object of a verb, it is called an objective infinitive.

Volunt venīre, *they wish to come.* (compl. inf.)

Iussit eōs venīre, *he ordered them to come.* (obj. inf.)

Nōn possum loquī, *I cannot speak.* (compl. inf.)

Nōn patitur mē loquī, *he does not permit me to speak.* (obj. inf.)

Nōn audet īre, *he does not dare to go.* (compl. inf.)

Coēgērunt eum īre, *they forced him to go.* (obj. inf.)

SUMMARY OF FORMS

NOUNS—DECLENSIONS

First	Second				Third	
porta, -ae	amīcus, -ī	puer, -ī	ager, -grī	dōnum, -ī	rēx, rēgis	corpus, -oris
f., *gate*	m., *friend*	m., *boy*	m., *field*	n., *gift*	m., *king*	n., *body*
Sg.						
N. port-a	amīc-us[1]	puer	ager	dōn-um	rēx	corpus
G. port-ae	amīc-ī	puer-ī	agr-ī	dōn-ī	rēg-is	corpor-is
D. port-ae	amīc-ō	puer-ō	agr-ō	dōn-ō	rēg-ī	corpor-ī
A. port-am	amīc-um	puer-um	agr-um	dōn-um	rēg-em	corpus
Ab. port-ā	amīc-ō	puer-ō	agr-ō	dōn-ō	rēg-e	corpor-e
Pl.						
N. port-ae	amīc-ī	puer-ī	agr-ī	dōn-a	rēg-ēs	corpor-a
G. port-ārum	amīc-ōrum	puer-ōrum	agr-ōrum	dōn-ōrum	rēg-um	corpor-um
D. port-īs	amīc-īs	puer-īs	agr-īs	dōn-īs	rēg-ibus	corpor-ibus
A. port-ās	amīc-ōs	puer-ōs	agr-ōs	dōn-a	rēg-ēs	corpor-a
Ab. port-īs	amīc-īs	puer-īs	agr-īs	dōn-īs	rēg-ibus	corpor-ibus

Third (I-Stems)			Fourth		Fifth
cīvis, -is	urbs, -is	mare, -is	frūctus, -ūs	cornū, -ūs	diēs, -ēī
m., *citizen*	f., *city*	n., *sea*	m., *fruit*	n., *horn*	m., *day*
Sg.					
N. cīv-is	urb-s	mar-e	frūct-us	corn-ū	di-ēs
G. cīv-is	urb-is	mar-is	frūct-ūs	corn-ūs	di-ēī
D. cīv-ī	urb-ī	mar-ī	frūct-uī	corn-ū	di-ēī
A. cīv-em	urb-em	mar-e	frūct-um	corn-ū	di-em
Ab. cīv-e	urb-e	mar-ī	frūct-ū	corn-ū	di-ē
Pl.					
N. cīv-ēs	urb-ēs	mar-ia	frūct-ūs	corn-ua	di-ēs
G. cīv-ium	urb-ium	mar-ium	frūct-uum	corn-uum	di-ērum
D. cīv-ibus	urb-ibus	mar-ibus	frūct-ibus	corn-ibus	di-ēbus
A. cīv-ēs	urb-ēs	mar-ia	frūct-ūs	corn-ua	di-ēs
Ab. cīv-ibus	urb-ibus	mar-ibus	frūct-ibus	corn-ibus	di-ēbus

Vīs is irregular: Sg., N., vīs, G. (vīs), D. (vī), A. vim. Ab. vī; Pl., N. vīrēs, G. vīrium, D. vīribus, A. vīrēs, Ab. vīribus.

[1] The vocative singular of nouns like **amīcus** and of masculine adjectives like **magnus** ends in **-e**. The vocative singular of **fīlius** and of names in **-ius** ends in a single **-ī** (**fīlī, Vergilī**); the vocative singular of the masculine adjective **meus** is **mī**; the vocative singular of masculine adjectives in **-ius** ends in **-ie** (**ēgregius; ēgregie**). Otherwise, the vocative has the same form as the nominative in all declensions.

ADJECTIVES—DECLENSIONS

First and Second Declensions

	Adjs. in -us, -a, -um			Adjs. in -er, -era, -erum; -er, -ra, -rum		
M.	**F.**	**N.**		**M.**	**F.**	**N.**
	Singular				**Singular**[2]	
N. magnus	magna	magnum		līber	lībera	līberum
G. magnī	magnae	magnī		līberī	līberae	līberī
D. magnō	magnae	magnō		līberō	līberae	līberō
A. magnum	magnam	magnum		līberum	līberam	līberum
Ab. magnō	magnā	magnō		līberō	līberā	līberō
	Plural				**Singular**[2]	
N. magnī	magnae	magna		pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum
G. magnōrum	magnārum	magnōrum		pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchrī
D. magnīs	magnīs	magnīs		pulchrō	pulchrae	pulchrō
A. magnōs	magnās	magna		pulchrum	pulchram	pulchrum
Ab. magnīs	magnīs	magnīs		pulchrō	pulchrā	pulchrō

Third Declension

Two endings		**Three endings**		**One Ending**		**Comparatives**[5]	
fortis, forte		ācer, ācris, ācre		potēns[3]		fortior, fortius	
brave		*keen, severe*		*powerful*		*braver*	
M. & F.	**N.**	**M. & F.**	**N.**	**M. & F.**	**N.**	**M. & F.**	**N.**
Sg.							
N. fortis	forte	ācer ācris	ācre	potēns	potēns	fortior	fortius
G. fortis		ācris		potentis		fortiōris	
D. fortī		ācrī		potentī		fortiōrī	
A. fortem	forte	ācrem	ācre	potentem	potēns	fortiōrem	fortius
Ab. fortī		ācrī		potentī		fortiōre	
Pl.							
N. fortēs	fortia	ācrēs	ācria	potentēs	potentia	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
G. fortium		ācrium		potentium		fortiōrum	
D. fortibus		ācribus		potentibus		fortiōribus	
A. fortēs[4]	fortia	ācres[4]	ācria	potentēs[4]	potentia	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
Ab. fortibus		ācribus		potentibus		fortiōribus	

[2] The plural follows the pattern of the singular except that it has the plural endings.

[3] Present participles follow the declension of **potēns** except that they have -e in the ablative singular when used as genuine participles.

[4] For -īs (acc. pl.) see Ch. 16.

[5] For irregular **plūs** see Ch. 27.

PRONOUNS

Demonstrative

| hic, *this* | | | ille, *that* | | |
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Sg.					
N. hic	haec	hoc	ille	illa	illud
G. huius	huius	huius	illīus	illīus	illīus
D. huic	huic	huic	illī	illī	illī
A. hunc	hanc	hoc	illum	illam	illud
Ab. hōc	hāc	hōc	illō	illā	illō
Pl.					
N. hī	hae	haec	illī	illae	illa
G. hōrum	hārum	hōrum	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
D. hīs	hīs	hīs	illīs	illīs	illīs
A. hōs	hās	haec	illōs	illās	illa
Ab. hīs	hīs	hīs	illīs	illīs	illīs

| Relative | | | Interrogative[6] | | Intensive | | |
| quī, *who, which* | | | quis, *who?* | | ipse, *himself*, etc. | | |
M.	F.	N.	M. & F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Sg.							
N. quī	quae	quod	quis	quid	ipse	ipsa	ipsum
G. cuius	cuius	cuius	cuius	cuius	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus
D. cui	cui	cui	cui	cui	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī
A. quem	quam	quod	quem	quid	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum
Ab. quō	quā	quō	quō	quō	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō
Pl.							
N. quī	quae	quae	(Plural is same		ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
G. quōrum	quārum	quōrum	as that of		ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
D. quibus	quibus	quibus	relative.)		ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
A. quōs	quās	quae			ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
Ab. quibus	quibus	quibus			ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

[6] The interrogative adjective **quī? quae? quod?** meaning *what? which? what kind of?* has the same declension as that of the relative pronoun.

PRONOUNS

Demonstrative

is, *this, that, he, she, it*			idem, *the same*		
M.	**F.**	**N.**	**M.**	**F.**	**N.**

Sg.

N. is	ea	id	īdem	eadem	idem
G. eius	eius	eius	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem
D. eī	eī	eī	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem
A. eum	eam	id	eundem	eandem	idem
Ab. eō	eā	eō	eōdem	eādem	eōdem

Pl.

N. eī, iī	eae	ea	eīdem, īdem	eaedem	eadem
G. eōrum	eārum	eōrum	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
D. eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīsdem[7]	eīsdem	eīsdem
A. eōs	eās	ea	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
Ab. eīs	eīs	eīs	eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem

Irregular Adjectives[8]			Personal[9]		Reflexive[9]
sōlus, *alone, only*					suī, *himself,*
M.	**F.**	**N.**	ego, *I*	tū, *you*	*herself, itself*

Sg.

N. sōlus	sōla	sōlum	ego	tū	———
G. sōlīus	sōlīus	sōlīus	meī	tuī	suī[10]
D. sōlī	sōlī	sōlī	mihi	tibi	sibi
A. sōlum	sōlam	sōlum	mē	tē	sē[11]
Ab. sōlō	sōlā	sōlō	mē	tē	sē[11]

Pl.

N. sōlī	sōlae	sōla	nōs	vōs	———
G. sōlōrum	sōlārum	sōlōrum	nostrum / nostrī	vestrum / vestrī	suī
D. sōlīs	sōlīs	sōlīs	nōbīs	vōbīs	sibi
A. sōlōs	sōlās	sōla	nōs	vōs	sē[11]
Ab. sōlīs	sōlīs	sōlīs	nōbīs	vōbīs	sē[11]

[7] Also **īsdem.**

[8] Similarly **ūnus, tōtus, ūllus, nūllus, alius, alter, uter, neuter** (see Ch. 9).

[9] All forms of the pronouns of the first and second persons except the nom. sg. and the nom. pl. may also be used as reflexive pronouns.

[10] These forms are reflexive only. The nonreflexive forms of the third person are supplied by **is, ea, id** (see Chs. 11, 13).

[11] The form **sēsē** is also frequently found.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
Regular		
longus, -a, -um (*long*)	longior, -ius	longissimus, -a, -um
fortis, -e (*brave*)	fortior, -ius	fortissimus, -a, -um
fēlīx, *gen.* fēlīcis, (*happy*)	fēlīcior, -ius	fēlīcissimus, -a, -um
sapiēns, *gen.* sapientis (*wise*)	sapientior, -ius	sapientissimus, -a, -um
facilis, -e (*easy*)	facilior, -ius	facillimus, -a, -um
līber, -era, -erum (*free*)	līberior, -ius	līberrimus, -a, -um
pulcher, -chra, -chrum (*beautiful*)	pulchrior, -ius	pulcherrimus, -a, -um
ācer, ācris, ācre (*keen*)	ācrior, -ius	ācerrimus, -a, -um
Irregular		
bonus, -a, -um (*good*)	melior, -ius	optimus, -a, -um
magnus, -a, -um (*large*)	maior, -ius	maximus, -a, -um
malus, -a, -um (*bad*)	peior, -ius	pessimus, -a, -um
multus, -a, -um (*much*)	—, plūs	plūrimus, -a, -um
parvus, -a, -um (*small*)	minor, minus	minimus, -a, -um
(prae, prō)	prior, -ius (*former*)	prīmus, -a, -um
superus, -a, -um (*that above*)	superior, -ius	summus (suprēmus), -a, -um

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
Regular		
longē (*far*)	longius	longissimē
fortiter (*bravely*)	fortius	fortissimē
fēlīciter (*happily*)	fēlīcius	fēlīcissimē
sapienter (*wisely*)	sapientius	sapientissimē
facile (*easily*)	facilius	facillimē
līberē (*freely*)	līberius	līberrimē
pulchrē (*beautifully*)	pulchrius	pulcherrimē
ācriter (*keenly*)	ācrius	ācerrimē
Irregular		
bene (*well*)	melius	optimē
magnopere (*greatly*)	magis	maximē
male (*badly*)	peius	pessimē
multum (*much*)	plūs	plūrimum
parum (*little*)	minus	minimē
(prae, prō)	prius (*before*)	prīmum; prīmō
diū (*a long time*)	diūtius	diūtissimē

NUMERALS

Cardinals	Ordinals	Roman Numerals
1. ūnus, -a, -um	prīmus, -a, -um	I
2. duo, duae, duo	secundus, alter	II
3. trēs, tria	tertius	III
4. quattuor	quārtus	IIII; IV
5. quīnque	quīntus	V
6. sex	sextus	VI
7. septem	septimus	VII
8. octō	octāvus	VIII
9. novem	nōnus	VIIII; IX
10. decem	decimus	X
11. ūndecim	ūndecimus	XI
12. duodecim	duodecimus	XII
13. tredecim	tertius decimus	XIII
14. quattuordecim	quārtus decimus	XIIII; XIV
15. quīndecim	quīntus decimus	XV
16. sēdecim	sextus decimus	XVI
17. septendecim	septimus decimus	XVII
18. duodēvīgintī	duodēvīcēsimus	XVIII
19. ūndēvīgintī	ūndēvīcēsimus	XVIIII; XIX
20. vīgintī	vīcēsimus	XX
21. vīgintī ūnus, ūnus et vīgintī	vīcēsimus prīmus	XXI
30. trīgintā	trīcēsimus	XXX
40. quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsimus	XXXX, XL
50. quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsimus	L
60. sexāgintā	sexāgēsimus	LX
70. septuāgintā	septuāgēsimus	LXX
80. octōgintā	octōgēsimus	LXXX
90. nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsimus	LXXXX; XC
100. centum	centēsimus	C
101. centum ūnus	centēsimus prīmus	CI
200. ducentī, -ae, -a	duocentēsimus	CC
300. trecentī	trecentēsimus	CCC
400. quadringentī	quadringentēsimus	CCCC
500. quīngentī	quīngentēsimus	D
600. sescentī	sescentēsimus	DC
700. septingentī	septingentēsimus	DCC
800. octingentī	octingentēsimus	DCCC
900. nōngentī	nōngentēsimus	DCCCC
1000. mīlle	mīllēsimus	M
2000. duo mīlia	bis mīllēsimus	MM

Declension of Numerals

For the declension of ūnus see Ch. 9 or sōlus above.

For **duo, trēs,** and **mīlle** see Ch. 15.

The forms from **trecentī** through **nōngentī** are declined in the plural like **ducentī, -ae, -a.**

The ordinals are declined like **prīmus, -a, -um.**

The other forms are indeclinable.

CONJUGATIONS 1–4

Principal Parts

1st:	laudō	laudāre	laudāvī	laudātum
2nd:	moneō	monēre	monuī	monitum
3rd:	agō	agere	ēgī	āctum
4th:	audiō	audīre	audīvī	audītum
3rd (-iō):	capiō	capere	cēpī	captum

Indicative Active

Present

laudō	moneō	agō	audiō	capiō
laudās	monēs	agis	audīs	capis
laudat	monet	agit	audit	capit
laudāmus	monēmus	agimus	audīmus	capimus
laudātis	monētis	agitis	audītis	capitis
laudant	monent	agunt	audiunt	capiunt

Imperfect

laudābam	monēbam	agēbam	audiēbam	capiēbam
laudābās	monēbās	agēbās	audiēbās	capiēbās
laudābat	monēbat	agēbat	audiēbat	capiēbat
laudābāmus	monēbāmus	agēbāmus	audiēbāmus	capiēbāmus
laudābātis	monēbātis	agēbātis	audiēbātis	capiēbātis
laudābant	monēbant	agēbant	audiēbant	capiēbant

Future

laudābō	monēbō	agam	audiam	capiam
laudābis	monēbis	agēs	audiēs	capiēs
laudābit	monēbit	aget	audiet	capiet
laudābimus	monēbimus	agēmus	audiēmus	capiēmus
laudābitis	monēbitis	agētis	audiētis	capiētis
laudābunt	monēbunt	agent	audient	capient

Perfect

laudāvī	monuī	ēgī	audīvī	cēpī
laudāvistī	monuistī	ēgistī	audīvistī	cēpistī
laudāvit	monuit	ēgit	audīvit	cēpit
laudāvimus	monuimus	ēgimus	audīvimus	cēpimus
laudāvistis	monuistis	ēgistis	audīvistis	cēpistis
laudāvērunt	monuērunt	ēgērunt	audīvērunt	cēpērunt

Pluperfect

laudāveram	monueram	ēgeram	audīveram	cēperam
laudāverās	monuerās	ēgerās	audīverās	cēperās
laudāverat	monuerat	ēgerat	audīverat	cēperat
laudāverāmus	monuerāmus	ēgerāmus	audīverāmus	cēperāmus
laudāverātis	monuerātis	ēgerātis	audīverātis	cēperātis
laudāverant	monuerant	ēgerant	audīverant	cēperant

Future Perfect

laudāverō	monuerō	ēgerō	audīverō	cēperō
laudāveris	monueris	ēgeris	audīveris	cēperis
laudāverit	monuerit	ēgerit	audīverit	cēperit
laudāverimus	monuerimus	ēgerimus	audīverimus	cēperimus
laudāveritis	monueritis	ēgeritis	audīveritis	cēperitis
laudāverint	monuerint	ēgerint	audīverint	cēperint

Subjunctive Active

Present

laudem	moneam	agam	audiam	capiam
laudēs	moneãs	agãs	audiãs	capiãs
laudet	moneat	agat	audiat	capiat
laudēmus	moneãmus	agãmus	audiãmus	capiãmus
laudētis	moneãtis	agãtis	audiãtis	capiãtis
laudent	moneant	agant	audiant	capiant

Imperfect

laudãrem	monĕrem	agerem	audīrem	caperem
laudãrēs	monĕrēs	agerēs	audīrēs	caperēs
laudãret	monĕret	ageret	audīret	caperet
laudãrēmus	monĕrēmus	agerēmus	audīrēmus	caperēmus
laudãrētis	monĕrētis	agerētis	audīrētis	caperētis
laudãrent	monĕrent	agerent	audīrent	caperent

Perfect

laudãverim	monuerim	ēgerim	audīverim	cēperim
laudãverīs	monuerīs	ēgerīs	audīverīs	cēperīs
laudãverit	monuerit	ēgerit	audīverit	cēperit
laudãverīmus	monuerīmus	ēgerīmus	audīverīmus	cēperīmus
laudãverītis	monuerītis	ēgerītis	audīverītis	cēperītis
laudãverint	monuerint	ēgerint	audīverint	cēperint

Pluperfect

laudãvissem	monuissem	ēgissem	audīvissem	cēpissem
laudãvissēs	monuissēs	ēgissēs	audīvissēs	cēpissēs
laudãvisset	monuisset	ēgisset	audīvisset	cēpisset
laudãvissēmus	monuissēmus	ēgissēmus	audīvissēmus	cēpissēmus
laudãvissētis	monuissētis	ēgissētis	audīvissētis	cēpissētis
laudãvissent	monuissent	ēgissent	audīvissent	cēpissent

Present Imperative Active

laudã	monĕ	age	audī	cape
laudãte	monēte	agite	audīte	capite

Indicative Passive

Present

laudor	moneor	agor	audior	capior
laudãris(-re)	monĕris(-re)	ageris(-re)	audīris(-re)	caperis(-re)
laudãtur	monētur	agitur	audītur	capitur
laudãmur	monēmur	agimur	audīmur	capimur
laudãminī	monēminī	agiminī	audīminī	capiminī
laudantur	monentur	aguntur	audiuntur	capiuntur

Imperfect

laudãbar	monēbar	agēbar	audiēbar	capiēbar
laudãbãris(-re)	monēbãris(-re)	agēbãris(-re)	audiēbãris(-re)	capiēbãris(-re)
laudãbãtur	monēbãtur	agēbãtur	audiēbãtur	capiēbãtur
laudãbãmur	monēbãmur	agēbãmur	audiēbãmur	capiēbãmur
laudãbãminī	monēbãminī	agēbãminī	audiēbãminī	capiēbãminī
laudãbantur	monēbantur	agēbantur	audiēbantur	capiēbantur

Future

laudābor	monēbor	agar	audiar	capiar
laudāberis(-re)	monēberis(-re)	agēris(-re)	audiēris(-re)	capiēris(-re)
laudābitur	monēbitur	agētur	audiētur	capiētur
laudābimur	monēbimur	agēmur	audiēmur	capiēmur
laudābiminī	monēbiminī	agēminī	audiēminī	capiēminī
laudābuntur	monēbuntur	agentur	audientur	capientur

Perfect

laudātus[12] sum	monitus sum	āctus sum	audītus sum	captus sum
laudātus es	monitus es	āctus es	audītus es	captus es
laudātus est	monitus est	āctus est	audītus est	captus est
laudātī sumus	monitī sumus	āctī sumus	audītī sumus	captī sumus
laudātī estis	monitī estis	āctī estis	audītī estis	captī estis
laudātī sunt	monitī sunt	āctī sunt	audītī sunt	captī sunt

Pluperfect

laudātus eram	monitus eram	āctus eram	audītus eram	captus eram
laudātus erās	monitus erās	āctus erās	audītus erās	captus erās
laudātus erat	monitus erat	āctus erat	audītus erat	captus erat
laudātī erāmus	monitī erāmus	āctī erāmus	audītī erāmus	captī erāmus
laudātī erātis	monitī erātis	āctī erātis	audītī erātis	captī erātis
laudātī erant	monitī erant	āctī erant	audītī erant	captī erant

Future Perfect

laudātus erō	monitus erō	āctus erō	audītus erō	captus erō
laudātus eris	monitus eris	āctus eris	audītus eris	captus eris
laudātus erit	monitus erit	āctus erit	audītus erit	captus erit
laudātī erimus	monitī erimus	āctī erimus	audītī erimus	captī erimus
laudātī eritis	monitī eritis	āctī eritis	audītī eritis	captī eritis
laudātī erunt	monitī erunt	āctī erunt	audītī erunt	captī erunt

Subjunctive Passive

Present

lauder	monear	agar	audiar	capiar
laudēris(-re)	moneāris(-re)	agāris(-re)	audiāris(-re)	capiāris(-re)
laudētur	moneātur	agātur	audiātur	capiātur
laudēmur	moneāmur	agāmur	audiāmur	capiāmur
laudēminī	moneāminī	agāminī	audiāminī	capiāminī
laudentur	moneantur	agantur	audiantur	capiantur

Imperfect

laudārer	monērer	agerer	audīrer	caperer
laudārēris(-re)	monērēris(-re)	agerēris(-re)	audīrēris(-re)	caperēris(-re)
laudārētur	monērētur	agerētur	audīrētur	caperētur
laudārēmur	monērēmur	agerēmur	audīrēmur	caperēmur
laudārēminī	monērēminī	agerēminī	audīrēminī	caperēminī
laudārentur	monērentur	agerentur	audīrentur	caperentur

---

[12] The participles **laudātus (-a, -um), monitus (-a, -um)**, etc., are used as predicate adjectives, and so their endings vary to agree with the subject.

Perfect

laudātus sim	monitus sim	āctus sim	audītus sim	captus sim
laudātus sīs	monitus sīs	āctus sīs	audītus sīs	captus sīs
laudātus sit	monitus sit	āctus sit	audītus sit	captus sit
laudātī sīmus	monitī sīmus	āctī sīmus	audītī sīmus	captī sīmus
laudātī sītis	monitī sītis	āctī sītis	audītī sītis	captī sītis
laudātī sint	monitī sint	āctī sint	audītī sint	captī sint

Pluperfect

laudātus essem	monitus essem	āctus essem	audītus essem	captus essem
laudātus essēs	monitus essēs	āctus essēs	audītus essēs	captus essēs
laudātus esset	monitus esset	āctus esset	audītus esset	captus esset
laudātī essēmus	monitī essēmus	āctī essēmus	audītī essēmus	captī essēmus
laudātī essētis	monitī essētis	āctī essētis	audītī essētis	captī essētis
laudātī essent	monitī essent	āctī essent	audītī essent	captī essent

Present Imperative Passive

In classical Latin, passive form imperatives are found chiefly in deponent verbs (for forms, see Ch. 34).

Participles

Active

Pres. laudāns	monēns	agēns	audiēns	capiēns
Fut. laudātūrus	monitūrus	āctūrus	audītūrus	captūrus

Passive

Perf. laudātus	monitus	āctus	audītus	captus
Fut. laudandus	monendus	agendus	audiendus	capiendus

Infinitives

Active

Pres. laudāre	monēre	agere	audīre	capere
Perf. laudāvisse	monuisse	ēgisse	audīvisse	cēpisse
Fut. laudātūrus esse	monitūrus esse	āctūrus esse	audītūrus esse	captūrus esse

Passive

Pres. laudārī	monērī	agī	audīrī	capī
Perf. laudātus esse	monitus esse	āctus esse	audītus esse	captus esse
Fut. laudātum īrī	monitum īrī	āctum īrī	audītum īrī	captum īrī

DEPONENT VERBS

Principal Parts

1st Conj.:	hortor	hortārī	hortātus sum (*urge*)
2nd Conj.:	fateor	fatērī	fassus sum (*confess*)
3rd Conj.:	sequor	sequī	secūtus sum (*follow*)
4th Conj.:	mōlior	mōlīrī	mōlītus sum (*work at*)
3rd (-iō):	patior	patī	passus sum (*suffer*)

Indicative

Present

hortor	fateor	sequor	mōlior	patior
hortāris(-re)	fatēris(-re)	sequeris(-re)	mōlīris(-re)	pateris(-re)
hortātur	fatētur	sequitur	mōlītur	patitur
hortāmur	fatēmur	sequimur	mōlīmur	patimur
hortāminī	fatēminī	sequiminī	mōlīminī	patiminī
hortantur	fatentur	sequuntur	mōliuntur	patiuntur

Imperfect

hortābar	fatēbar	sequēbar	mōliēbar	patiēbar
hortābāris(-re)	fatēbāris(-re)	sequēbāris(-re)	mōliēbāris(-re)	patiēbāris(-re)
hortābātur	fatēbātur	sequēbātur	mōliēbātur	patiēbātur
hortābāmur	fatēbāmur	sequēbāmur	mōliēbāmur	patiēbāmur
hortābāminī	fatēbāminī	sequēbāminī	mōliēbāminī	patiēbāminī
hortābantur	fatēbantur	sequēbantur	mōliēbantur	patiēbantur

Future

hortābor	fatēbor	sequar	mōliar	patiar
hortāberis(-re)	fatēberis(-re)	sequēris(-re)	mōliēris(-re)	patiēris(-re)
hortābitur	fatēbitur	sequētur	mōliētur	patiētur
hortābimur	fatēbimur	sequēmur	mōliēmur	patiēmur
hortābiminī	fatēbiminī	sequēminī	mōliēminī	patiēminī
hortābuntur	fatēbuntur	sequentur	mōlientur	patientur

Perfect

hortātus sum	fassus sum	secūtus sum	mōlītus sum	passus sum
hortātus es	fassus es	secūtus es	mōlītus es	passus es
hortātus est	fassus est	secūtus est	mōlītus est	passus est
hortātī sumus	fassī sumus	secūtī sumus	mōlītī sumus	passī sumus
hortātī estis	fassī estis	secūtī estis	mōlītī estis	passī estis
hortātī sunt	fassī sunt	secūtī sunt	mōlītī sunt	passī sunt

Pluperfect

hortātus eram	fassus eram	secūtus eram	mōlītus eram	passus eram
hortātus erās	fassus erās	secūtus erās	mōlītus erās	passus erās
hortātus erat	fassus erat	secūtus erat	mōlītus erat	passus erat
hortātī erāmus	fassī erāmus	secūtī erāmus	mōlītī erāmus	passī erāmus
hortātī erātis	fassī erātis	secūtī erātis	mōlītī erātis	passī erātis
hortātī erant	fassī erant	secūtī erant	mōlītī erant	passī erant

Future Perfect

hortātus erō	fassus erō	secūtus erō	mōlītus erō	passus erō
hortātus eris	fassus eris	secūtus eris	mōlītus eris	passus eris
hortātus erit	fassus erit	secūtus erit	mōlītus erit	passus erit
hortātī erimus	fassī erimus	secūtī erimus	mōlītī erimus	passī erimus
hortātī eritis	fassī eritis	secūtī eritis	mōlītī eritis	passī eritis
hortātī erunt	fassī erunt	secūtī erunt	mōlītī erunt	passī erunt

Subjunctive

Present

horter	fatear	sequar	mōliar	patiar
hortēris(-re)	fateāris(-re)	sequāris(-re)	mōliāris(-re)	patiāris(-re)
hortētur	fateātur	sequātur	mōliātur	patiātur
hortēmur	fateāmur	sequāmur	mōliāmur	patiāmur
hortēminī	fateāminī	sequāminī	mōliāminī	patiāminī
hortentur	fateantur	sequantur	mōliantur	patiantur

Imperfect

hortārer	fatĕrer	sequerer	mōlīrer	paterer
hortārĕris(-re)	fatērēris(-re)	sequerēris(-re)	mōlīrēris(-re)	paterēris(-re)
hortārētur	fatērētur	sequerētur	mōlīrētur	paterētur
hortārēmur	fatērēmur	sequerēmur	mōlīrēmur	paterēmur
hortārēminī	fatērēminī	sequerēminī	mōlīrēminī	paterēminī
hortārentur	fatērentur	sequerentur	mōlīrentur	paterentur

Perfect

hortātus sim	fassus sim	secūtus sim	mōlītus sim	passus sim
hortātus sīs	fassus sīs	secūtus sīs	mōlītus sīs	passus sīs
hortātus sit	fassus sit	secūtus sit	mōlītus sit	passus sit
hortātī sīmus	fassī sīmus	secūtī sīmus	mōlītī sīmus	passī sīmus
hortātī sītis	fassī sītis	secūtī sītis	mōlītī sītis	passī sītis
hortātī sint	fassī sint	secūtī sint	mōlītī sint	passī sint

Pluperfect

hortātus essem	fassus essem	secūtus essem	mōlītus essem	passus essem
hortātus essēs	fassus essēs	secūtus essēs	mōlītus essēs	passus essēs
hortātus esset	fassus esset	secūtus esset	mōlītus esset	passus esset
hortātī essēmus	fassī essēmus	secūtī essēmus	mōlītī essēmus	passī essēmus
hortātī essētis	fassī essētis	secūtī essētis	mōlītī essētis	passī essētis
hortātī essent	fassī essent	secūtī essent	mōlītī essent	passī essent

Present Imperative

hortāre	fatēre	sequere	mōlīre	patere
hortāminī	fatēminī	sequiminī	mōlīminī	patiminī

Participles

Pres. hortāns	fatēns	sequēns	mōliēns	patiēns
Perf. hortātus	fassus	secūtus	mōlītus	passus
Fut. hortātūrus	fassūrus	secūtūrus	mōlītūrus	passūrus
Ger. hortandus	fatendus	sequendus	mōliendus	patiendus

Infinitives

Pres. hortārī	fatērī	sequī	mōlīrī	patī
Perf. hortātus esse	fassus esse	secūtus esse	mōlītus esse	passus esse
Fut. hortātūrus esse	fassūrus esse	secūtūrus esse	mōlītūrus esse	passūrus esse

IRREGULAR VERBS

Principal Parts

sum	esse	fuī	futūrum	*(be)*
possum	posse	potuī		*(be able, can)*
volō	velle	voluī		*(wish, be willing)*
nōlō	nōlle	nōluī		*(not to wish, be unwilling)*
mālō	mālle	māluī		*(prefer)*
eō	īre	iī	itum	*(go)*

Indicative[13]

Present

sum	possum	volō	nōlō	mālō	eō
es	potes	vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs	īs
est	potest	vult	nōn vult	māvult	it
sumus	possumus	volumus	nōlumus	mālumus	īmus
estis	potestis	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis	ītis
sunt	possunt	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt	eunt

Imperfect

eram	poteram	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam	ībam
erās	poterās	volēbās	nōlēbās	mālēbās	ībās
erat	poterat	volēbat	nōlēbat	mālēbat	ībat
erāmus	poterāmus	volēbāmus	nōlēbāmus	mālēbāmus	ībāmus
erātis	poterātis	volēbātis	nōlēbātis	mālēbātis	ībātis
erant	poterant	volēbant	nōlēbant	mālēbant	ībant

Future

erō	poterō	volam	nōlam	mālam	ībō
eris	poteris	volēs	nōlēs	mālēs	ībis
erit	poterit	volet	nōlet	mālet	ībit
erimus	poterimus	volēmus	nōlēmus	mālēmus	ībimus
eritis	poteritis	volētis	nōlētis	mālētis	ībitis
erunt	poterunt	volent	nōlent	mālent	ībunt

Perfect

fuī	potuī	voluī	nōluī	māluī	iī
fuistī	potuistī	voluistī	nōluistī	māluistī	īstī
fuit	potuit	voluit	nōluit	māluit	iit
fuimus	potuimus	voluimus	nōluimus	māluimus	iimus
fuistis	potuistis	voluistis	nōluistis	māluistis	īstis
fuērunt	potuērunt	voluērunt	nōluērunt	māluērunt	iērunt

Pluperfect

fueram	potueram	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram	ieram
fuerās	potuerās	voluerās	nōluerās	māluerās	ierās
etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.

Future Perfect

fuerō	potuerō	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō	ierō
fueris	potueris	volueris	nōlueris	mālueris	ieris
etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.

Subjunctive

Present

sim	possim	velim	nōlim	mālim	eam
sīs	possīs	velīs	nōlīs	mālīs	eās
sit	possit	velit	nōlit	mālit	eat
sīmus	possīmus	velīmus	nōlīmus	mālīmus	eāmus
sītis	possītis	velītis	nōlītis	mālītis	eātis
sint	possint	velint	nōlint	mālint	eant

[13] Note that the verbs in this list have no passive voice (except for the idiomatic impersonal passive of eō, which is not used in this book).

Imperfect

essem	possem	vellem	nõllem	mãllem	īrem
essēs	possēs	vellēs	nõllēs	mãllēs	īrēs
esset	posset	vellet	nõllet	mãllet	īret
essēmus	possēmus	vellēmus	nõllēmus	mãllēmus	īrēmus
essētis	possētis	vellētis	nõllētis	mãllētis	īrētis
essent	possent	vellent	nõllent	mãllent	īrent

Perfect

fuerim	potuerim	voluerim	nõluerim	mãluerim	ierim
fuerīs	potuerīs	voluerīs	nõluerīs	mãluerīs	ierīs
fuerit	potuerit	voluerit	nõluerit	mãluerit	ierit
fuerīmus	potuerīmus	voluerīmus	nõluerīmus	mãluerīmus	ierīmus
fuerītis	potuerītis	voluerītis	nõluerītis	mãluerītis	ierītis
fuerint	potuerint	voluerint	nõluerint	mãluerint	ierint

Pluperfect

fuissem	potuissem	voluissem	nõluissem	mãluissem	īssem
fuissēs	potuissēs	voluissēs	nõluissēs	mãluissēs	īssēs
fuisset	potuisset	voluisset	nõluisset	mãluisset	īsset
fuissēmus	potuissēmus	voluissēmus	nõluissēmus	mãluissēmus	īssēmus
fuissētis	potuissētis	voluissētis	nõluissētis	mãluissētis	īssētis
fuissent	potuissent	voluissent	nõluissent	mãluissent	īssent

Present Imperative

es	———	—— ——	nõlī	—— —— ——	ī
este	———	—— ——	nõlīte	——— ——	īte

Participles

Pres. ———	potēns	volēns	nõlēns	—— ——	iēns (*gen.* euntis)
Perf. ———	———	———	———	—— ——	itum
Fut. futūrus	———	—— ——	———	———	itūrus
Ger. —— ——	———	——— ——	———	———	eundus

Infinitives

Pr. esse	posse	velle	nõlle	mãlle	īre
Pf. fuisse	potuisse	voluisse	nõluisse	mãluisse	īsse
Fu. futūrus esse *or* fore	———	—— —	———	———	itūrus esse

IRREGULAR: ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, *to bear, carry*

Indicative

Present		Imperfect		Future	
Act.	**Pass.**	**Act.**	**Pass.**	**Act.**	**Pass.**
ferō	feror	ferēbam	ferēbar	feram	ferar
fers	ferris(-re)	ferēbās	ferēbāris(-re)	ferēs	ferēris(-re)
fert	fertur	ferēbat	ferēbātur	feret	ferētur
ferimus	ferimur	ferēbāmus	ferēbāmur	ferēmus	ferēmur
fertis	feriminī	ferēbātis	ferēbāminī	ferētis	ferēminī
ferunt	feruntur	ferēbant	ferēbantur	ferent	ferentur

| Perfect | | Pluperfect | | Future Perfect | |
Act.	Pass.	Act.	Pass.	Act.	Pass.
tulī	lātus sum	tuleram	lātus eram	tulerō	lātus erō
tulistī	lātus es	tulerās	lātus erās	tuleris	lātus eris
tulit	lātus est	tulerat	lātus erat	tulerit	lātus erit
etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.

Subjunctive

| Present | | Imperfect | | Perfect | |
Act.	Pass.	Act.	Pass.	Act.	Pass.
feram	ferar	ferrem	ferrer	tulerim	lātus sim
ferās	ferāris(-re)	ferrēs	ferrēris(-re)	tulerīs	lātus sīs
ferat	ferātur	ferret	ferrētur	tulerit	lātus sit
ferāmus	ferāmur	ferrēmus	ferrēmur	etc.	etc.
ferātis	ferāminī	ferrētis	ferrēminī		
ferant	ferantur	ferrent	ferrentur		

				Pluperfect	
				tulissem	lātus essem
				tulissēs	lātus essēs
				tulisset	lātus esset
				etc.	etc.

| Pres. Imper. | | Participles | | Infinitives | |
Act.	Pass.	Act.	Pass.	Act.	Pass.
fer	———	*Pres.* ferēns	———	ferre	ferrī
ferte	———	*Perf.* ———	lātus	tulisse	lātus esse
		Fut. lātūrus	ferendus	lātūrus esse	lātum īrī

IRREGULAR: fīō, fierī, factus sum, to happen, become; be made, be done

Indicative

Pres.	Impf.	Fut.	Perf.	Pluperf.	Fut. Perf.
fīō	fīēbam	fīam	factus sum	factus eram	factus erō
fīs	fīēbās	fīēs	factus es	factus erās	factus eris
fit	fīēbat	fīet	factus est	factus erat	factus erit
fīmus	fīēbāmus	fīēmus	factī sumus	factī erāmus	factī erimus
fītis	fīēbātis	fīētis	factī estis	factī erātis	factī eritis
fīunt	fīēbant	fīent	factī sunt	factī erant	factī erunt

Subjunctive

Pres.	Impf.	Perf.	Pluperf.
fīam	fierem	factus sim	factus essem
fīās	fierēs	factus sīs	factus essēs
fīat	fieret	factus sit	factus esset
fīāmus	fierēmus	factī sīmus	factī essēmus
fīātis	fierētis	factī sītis	factī essētis
fīant	fierent	factī sint	factī essent

Part.	Inf.
Pres. ———	fierī
Perf. factus	factus esse
Fut. faciendus	factum īrī

Imperative: fī, fīte

English-Latin Vocabulary

An Arabic (1) in parentheses after a verb shows that this is a regular verb of the first conjugation with a sequence of principal parts ending in **-āre, -āvī, -ātum.** For prefixes and suffixes see the lists in the Appendix. For more complete definitions of the Latin words, see the Latin-English Vocabulary.

A

abandon, relinquō, -ere, -liquī, -lictum
able (be), possum, posse, potuī
about (concerning), dē + *abl.*
absolute ruler, tyrannus, -ī, *m.*
abundance, cōpia, -ae, *f.*
accomplish, faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum; **be accomplished,** fīo, fierī, factus sum
across, trāns + *acc.*
advice, cōnsilium, -iī, *n.*
advise, moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum
affect, adficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum
afraid (be), metuō, -ere, -uī
after, post + *acc.*
afterwards, posteā
after all, postrēmum
again, iterum
against, contrā + *acc.*
age, aetās, -tātis, *f.*
alas, heu, vae
all, omnis, -e
alone, sōlus, -a, -um

also, quoque
although, cum + *subj.*
always, semper
among, inter + *acc.*
ancestors, maiōrēs, maiōrum, *m. pl.*
ancient, antīquus, -a, -um
and, et, -que, ac, atque
anger, īra, -ae, *f.*
angry, īrātus, -a, -um
animal, animal, -mālis, *n.*
announce, nūntiō (1)
another, alius, -a, -ud
answer, respondeō, -ēre, -spondī, -spōnsum
any, ūllus, -a, -um
any (anyone, anything, *after* sī, nisi, nē, num), quis, quid
argument, argūmentum, -ī, *n.*
army, exercitus, -ūs, *m.*
arms, arma, -ōrum, *n. pl.*
arrest, comprehendō, -ere, -ī, -hēnsum
arrogant, superbus, -a, -um
art, ars, artis, *f.*

as, ut + *indic.*
as . . . as possible, quam + *superlative*
Asia, Asia, -ae, *f.*
ask, rogō (1)
assure (I assure you, you may be assured), *use*
  personal pron. in dat. case (dat. of reference, e.g.,
  tibi)
at (= *time*), *abl. of time;* (= *place*), *loc. of names*
  of cities
Athens, Athēnae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
attack, oppugnō (1)
author, auctor, -tōris, *m.*
avert, āvertō, -ere, -ī, -versum
away from, ab + *abl.*

B

bad, malus, -a, -um
band, manus, -ūs, *f.*
banish, expellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum
base, turpis, -e
be, sum, esse, fuī, futūrum
beard, barba, -ae, *f.*
beautiful, pulcher, -chra, -chrum; bellus, -a, -um
beauty, fōrma, -ae, *f.*
because, quod
become, fīō, fierī, factus sum
before, ante + *acc.*
beg, ōrō (1)
began, coepī, coepisse, coeptum (*pres. system*
  supplied by incipiō)
begin, incipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum (*see* **began**
  above)
believe, crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum
benefit, beneficium, -iī, *n.*
best, optimus, -a, -um
better, melior, -ius
blind, caecus, -a, -um
body, corpus, -poris, *n.*
(be) born, nāscor, -ī, nātus sum
book, liber, -brī, *m.*
both . . . and, et . . . et
boy, puer, puerī, *m.*
brave, fortis, -e
brief, brevis, -e.
bright, clārus, -a, -um
bring, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum
bring (back), referō, -ferre, -ttulī, -lātum
brother, frāter, -tris, *m.*
bull, bōs, bovis, *m./f.*

but, sed, at
by (= *agent*), ā *or* ab + *abl.*;
  (= *means*), *simple abl.*

C

Caesar, Caesar, -saris, *m.*
call, vocō (1); appellō (1)
can, possum, posse, potuī
capture, capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum
care, cūra, -ae, *f.*
certain (definite, sure), certus, -a, -um;
  (*indef.*) quīdam, quaedam, quiddam (*pron.*) *or*
  quoddam (*adj.*)
certainly, certē
change, mūtō (1)
character, mōrēs, mōrum, *m. pl.*
cheer, recreō (1)
Cicero, Cicerō, -rōnis, *m.*
citizen, cīvis, -is, *m./f.*
citizenship, cīvitās, -tātis, *f.*
city, urbs, urbis, *f.*
come, veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventum
come back, reveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum
comfort, sōlācium, -iī, *n.*
command (*noun*), imperium, -iī, *n.;*
  (*vb.*), imperō (1)
common, commūnis, -e
commonwealth, rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, *f.*
compare, comparō (1)
complain, queror, -ī, questus sum
concerning, dē + *abl.*
confess, fateor, -ērī, fassus sum
conquer, superō (1); vincō, -ere, vīcī, victum
conspirators, coniūrātī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
constellation, sīdus, -deris, *n.*
consul, cōnsul, -sulis, *m.*
country, patria, -ae, *f.;* terra, -ae, *f.*
courage, virtūs, -tūtis, *f.*
create, creō (1)
custom, mōs, mōris, *m.*
crime, scelus, -leris, *n.*

D

danger, perīculum, -ī, *n.*
dare, audeō, -ēre, ausus sum
daughter, fīlia, -ae, *f. (dat. and abl. pl.* fīliābus)
day, diēs, -ēī, *m.*
dear, cārus, -a, -um

death, mors, mortis, *f.*
dedicate, dēdicō (1)
deed, factum, -ī, *n.*
defend, dēfendō, -ere, -ī, -fēnsum
delay, mora, -ae, *f.*
delight, dēlectō (1)
deny, negō (1)
depart, discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum; abeō, -īre, -iī, -itum
deprived of (be), careō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrum
descendant, nepōs, -pōtis, *m.*
desire (*vb.*), cupiō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum; dēsīderō (1); (*noun*), voluptās, -tātis, *f.*
despise, contemnō, -ere, -tempsī, -temptum
destroy, dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum
destruction, exitium, -ī, *n.*
die, morior, -ī, mortuus sum
difficult, difficilis, -e
dignity, dignitās, -tātis, *f.*
dine, cēnō (1)
dinner, cēna, -ae, *f.*
discover, reperiō, -īre, -pperī, -pertum
disgraceful, turpis, -e
dissimilar, dissimilis, -e
do, faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum; **be done,** fīō, fierī, factus sum
doctor, medica, -ae, *f.*; medicus, -ī, *m.*
drag, trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractum
dread (*vb.*), metuō, -ere, -uī; (*noun*), metus, -ūs, *m.*
drive out, expellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum

E

eagerness, studium, -iī, *n.*
ear, auris, -is, *f.*
easy, facilis, -e
eight, octō
either, uter, utra, utrum
either . . . or, aut . . . aut
eleven, ūndecim
emperor, imperātor, -tōris, *m.*
end, fīnis, -is, *m.*
endure, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum; patior, -ī, passus sum
enemy, hostis, -is, *m.* (*usually pl.*)
enjoy, ūtor, -ī, ūsus sum + *abl.*
enjoyment, frūctus, -ūs, *m.*
enough, satis
entire, tōtus, -a, -um

entrust, committō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum
envy, (be) envious, invideō, -ēre, -vīdī, -vīsum + *dat.*
err, errō (1)
esteem, dīligō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum
even, etiam; **not even,** nē . . . quidem
ever, umquam
every(one), omnis, -e
evil (*adj.*), malus, -a, -um; (*noun*), malum, -ī, *n.*
exhibit, ostendō, -ere, -ī, -tentum
expect, exspectō (1)
expel, expellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum
eye, oculus, -ī, *m.*

F

face, vultus, -ūs, *m.*
faith, fidēs, -eī, *f.*
faithful, fidēlis, -e
fall, cadō, -ere, cecidī, casūrum
false, falsus, -a, -um
fame, fāma, -ae, *f.*
family, familia, -ae, *f.*
farmer, agricola, -ae, *m.*
father, pater, -tris, *m.*
fault, culpa, -ae, *f.*; vitium, -iī, *n.*
fear (*vb.*), timeō, -ēre, -uī; (*noun*), metus, -ūs, *m.*; timor, -mōris, *m.*
feel, sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsum
feeling, sēnsus, -ūs, *m.*
ferocious, ferōx, *gen.* ferōcis
few, paucī, -ae, -a (*pl.*)
fidelity, fidēs, -eī, *f.*
fierce, ācer, ācris, ācre; ferōx, *gen.* ferōcis
fifth, quīntus, -a, -um
finally, dēnique
find, inveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum
first (*adj.*), prīmus, -a, -um; (*adv.*) prīmum, prīmō
five, quīnque
flee, fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitūrum
follow, sequor, -ī, secūtus sum
foolish, stultus, -a, -um
for (*conj.*), nam, enim; (= **since, because**), quod, quoniam; (*prep.*), prō + *abl.; often simply the dat. case.*
force, vīs, vīs, *f.*
forces (troops), cōpiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
forgive, ignōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nōtum + *dat.*
former, prior, prius
fortunate, fortūnātus, -a, -um

fortune, fortūna, -ae, *f.*
forum, forum -ī, *n.*
four, quattuor
free *(vb.)*, līberō (1); *(adj.)*, līber, -era, -erum
freedom, lībertās, -tātis, *f.*
freely, līberē
friend, amīca, -ae, *f.;* amīcus, -ī, *m.*
friendly, amīcus, -a, -um
friendship, amīcitia, -ae, *f.*
frighten, terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum
from (away), ab; **(out)** ex; **(down)** dē: *all* + *abl.*
fruit, frūctus, -ūs, *m.*
full, plēnus, -a, -um

G

game, lūdus, -ī, *m.*
gate, porta, -ae, *f.*
general, dux, ducis, *m.;* imperātor, -tōris, *m.*
gift, dōnum, -ī, *n.*
girl, puella, -ae, *f.*
give, dō, dare, dedī, datum
(be) glad, gaudeō, -ēre, gāvīsus sum
glory, glōria, -ae, *f.*
go, eō, īre, iī, itum
go astray, errō (1)
go away, abeō, -īre, -iī, -itum
god, deus, -ī, *m. (voc. sg.* deus, *nom. pl.* deī *or* dī, *dat. and abl. pl.* dīs)
goddess, dea, -ae, *f. (dat. and abl. pl.* deābus)
good, bonus, -a, -um
gratitude, grātia, -ae, *f.*
great, magnus, -a, -um
greedy, avārus, -a, -um
Greek, Graecus, -a, -um; **a Greek,** Graecus, -ī, *m.*
grieve, doleō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrum
ground, humus, -ī, *f.;* terra, -ae, *f.*
guard, custōdia, -ae, *f.*

H

hand, manus, -ūs, *f.*
happy, beātus, -a, -um; fēlīx, *gen.* fēlīcis
harm, noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum + *dat.*
harsh, dūrus, -a, -um; acerbus, -a, -um
have, habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum
he, is; *often indicated only by the personal ending of vb.*
head, caput, -pitis, *n.*

healthy, sānus, -a, -um
hear, audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum
heart (in one's), *use personal pron. in dat. case (dat. of reference, e.g.,* mihi, tibi)
heavy, gravis, -e
help *(vb.)*, adiuvō, -āre, -iūvī, -iūtum; *(noun)*, auxilium, -iī, *n.*
her *(possessive)* eius *(not reflexive)*; suus, -a, -um *(reflexive)*
herself, suī *(reflexive)*; ipsa *(intensive)*
hesitate, dubitō (1)
high, altus, -a, -um
higher, altior, -ius; superior, -ius
himself, suī *(reflexive)*; ipse *(intensive)*
his, eius *(not reflexive)*; suus, -a, -um *(reflexive)*
hold, teneō, -ēre, -uī, tentum
home, domus, -ūs, *f.;* **at home,** domī; **(to) home,** domum; **from home,** domō
honor, honor, -nōris, *m.*
hope *(noun)*, spēs, -eī, *f.;* *(vb.)*, spērō (1)
horn, cornū, -ūs, *n.*
horse, equus, -ī, *m.*
hour, hōra, -ae, *f.*
house, casa, -ae, *f.*
however, autem *(postpositive)*
how great, quantus, -a, -um
how many, quot
human, hūmānus, -a, -um
human being, homō, -minis, *m.*
humane, hūmānus, -a, -um
humble, humilis, -e
hundred, centum
hurt, noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum + *dat.*

I

I, ego, meī; *often expressed simply by the personal ending of vb.*
if, sī; **if . . . not,** nisi
ill, malum, -ī, *n.*
illustrious, clārus, -a, -um
immortal, immortālis, -e
in, in + *abl.*
infancy, īnfantia, -ae, *f.*
injustice, iniūria, -ae, *f.*
into, in + *acc.*
invite, invītō (1)
iron, ferrum, -ī, *n.*
it, is, ea, id; *often indicated only by personal ending of vb.*

Italy, Italia, -ae, *f.*
itself, suī (*reflexive*); ipsum (*intensive*)

J

join, iungō, -ere, iūnxī, iūnctum
judge, iūdex, -dicis, *m.*
judgment, iūdicium, -iī, *n.*
just, iūstus, -a, -um

K

keen, ācer, ācris, ācre
keenly, ācriter
kindness, beneficium, -iī, *n.*
king, rēx, rēgis, *m.*
kiss, bāsium, -iī, *n.*
knee, genū, -ūs, *n.*
know, sciō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum; **not know,** nesciō, -īre,
    -īvī, -ītum
knowledge, scientia, -ae, *f.*

L

labor, labor, -bōris, *m.*
lack, careō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrum + *abl.*
land, patria, -ae, *f.*; terra, -ae, *f.*
language, lingua, -ae, *f.*
large, magnus, -a, -um
Latin, Latīnus, -a, -um
law, lēx, lēgis, *f.*
lead, dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum
leader, dux, ducis, *m.*
learn (*in the academic sense*), discō, -ere, didicī;
    (*get information*), cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum
leave, abeō, -īre, -iī, -itum
left, sinister, -tra, -trum
leisure, ōtium, -iī, *n.*
let (someone do something), *express this with
    jussive subj.*
letter (epistle), litterae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
liberty, lībertās, -tātis, *f.*
life, vīta, -ae, *f.*
light, lūx, lūcis, *f.*
listen (to), audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum
literature, litterae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
little, parvus, -a, -um; **little book,** libellus, -ī, *m.*
live, vīvō, -ere, vīxī, vīctum; **live one's life,** vītam
    agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum
long (for a long time), diū

lose, āmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum
love (*vb.*), amō (1); (*noun*), amor, amōris, *m.*
loyal, fidēlis, -e
luck, fortūna, -ae, *f.*

M

make, faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum
man, vir, virī, *m.*; homō, -minis, *m.*;
    often expressed by masc. of an adj.
many, multī, -ae, -a
master, magister, -trī, *m.*; dominus, -ī, *m.*
may (*indicating permission to do something*), licet
    + *dat.* + *inf.*
me. *See* **I.**
memory, memoria, -ae, *f.*
mercy, clēmentia, -ae, *f.*
method, modus, -ī, *m.*
middle, medius, -a, -um
mind, mēns, mentis, *f.*
mix, misceō, -ēre, -uī, mixtum
mob, vulgus, -ī, *n. (sometimes m.)*
modest, pudīcus, -a, -um
money, pecūnia, -ae, *f.*
monument, monumentum, -ī, *n.*
more, plūs, plūris; *comp. of adj. or adv.*
most, plūrimus, -a, -um; *superl. of adj. or adv.*
mother, māter, -tris, *f.*
mountain, mōns, montis, *m.*
move, moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum
much, multus, -a, -um
murder, necō (1)
must, dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum; *or, for passive, use
    passive periphrastic*
my, meus, -a, -um (*m. voc. sg.* mī)
myself (*reflexive*), meī, mihi, *etc.*;
    (*intensive*) ipse, ipsa

N

name, nōmen, -minis, *n.*
narrate, narrō (1)
nation, gēns, gentis, *f.*
nature, nātūra, -ae, *f.*
neglect, neglegō, -ere, -glēxī, -glēctum
neighbor, vīcīna, -ae, *f.*; vīcīnus, -ī, *m.*
neither . . . nor, neque . . . neque
never, numquam
nevertheless, tamen
new, novus, -a, -um

night, nox, noctis, *f.*
nine, novem
no, nūllus, -a, -um
nobody, no one, nēmō, *m./f.; for decl. see Lat.-Eng. Vocab.*
not, nōn; nē *with jussive, jussive noun, and purp-clauses;* ut *with fear clauses*
nothing, nihil (*indecl.*), *n.*
now, nunc
number, numerus, -ī, *m.*

O

obey, pāreō, -ēre, -uī + *dat.*
offer, offerō, -ferre, obtulī, oblātum
office, officium, -iī, *n.*
often, saepe
old, antīquus, -a, -um; senex, senis
old man, senex, senis, *m.*
on (= *place*), in + *abl.*; (= *time*), *simple abl.*
on account of, propter + *acc.*
once, semel
one, ūnus, -a, -um
only (*adv.*), tantum; (*adj.*), sōlus, -a, -um
opinion, sententia, -ae, *f.;* (**in one's) opinion,** *use personal pron. in dat. case (dat. of reference, e.g.,* mihi, tibi)
opportunity, occāsiō, -ōnis, *f.*
or, aut
oration, ōrātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
orator, ōrātor, -tōris, *m.*
order, iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussum; imperō (1) + *dat.*
(in) order to, ut (+ *subj.*); **in order not to,** nē (+ *subj.*)
other, another, alius, alia, aliud;
    the other (of two), alter, -era, -erum;
    (all) the other, cēterī, -ae, -a
ought, dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum; *or, for passive, use passive periphrastic*
our, noster, -tra, -trum
out of, ex + *abl.*
overcome, superō (1)
overpower, opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum
own, his own, suus, -a, -um; **my own,** meus, -a, -um

P

pain, dolor, -lōris, *m.*
part, pars, partis, *f.*
passage, locus, -ī, *m.*
passion, cupiditās, -tātis, *f.*

patience, patientia, -ae, *f.*
pay. *See* **penalty.**
peace, pāx, pācis, *f.*
penalty, poena, -ae, *f.;* **pay the penalty,** poenās dare
people, populus, -ī, *m.*
perceive, sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsum
perhaps, fortasse
period (of time), aetās, -tātis, *f.*
perish, pereō, -īre, -iī, -itum
permit, patior, -ī, passus sum;
    it is permitted, licet, licēre, licuit (*impers.*)
perpetual, perpetuus, -a, -um
persuade, persuādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsum + *dat.*
philosopher, sapiēns, -entis, *m.;* philosopha, -ae, *f.;* philosophus, -ī, *m.*
philosophy, philosophia, -ae, *f.*
place, locus, -ī, *m.; pl.,* loca, -ōrum, *n.*
plan, cōnsilium, -iī, *n.*
pleasant, iūcundus, -a, -um
please, placeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum + *dat.;* **with a request,** amābō tē
pleasure, voluptās, -tātis, *f.*
plebeians, plēbs, plēbis, *f.*
plot, īnsidiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
poem, carmen, -minis, *n.*
poet, poēta, -ae, *m.*
(as . . . as) possible (*or* **greatest possible, brightest possible,** *etc.*), quam + *superl. of adj. or adv.*
power (command), imperium, -iī, *n.*
powerful, potēns, *gen.* potentis
praise (*vb.*), laudō (1); (*noun*), laus, laudis, *f.*
prefer, mālō, mālle, māluī
prepare, parō (1)
preserve, cōnservō (1)
press, premō, -ere, pressī, pressum
pretty, bellus, -a, -um; pulcher, -chra, -chrum
priest, sacerdōs, -dōtis, *m.*
prohibit, prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum
promise, prōmittō, -ere, mīsī, -missum
provided that, dummodo + *subj.*
pupil, discipula, -ae, *f.;* discipulus, -ī, *m.*
pursuit, studium, -iī, *n.*
put, pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum

Q

queen, rēgīna, -ae, *f.*
quick, celer, -eris, -ere
quickly, celeriter, cito

R

raise, tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum
rather: *express this with comp. degree of adj. or adv.*
read, legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctum
real, vērus, -a, -um
reason, ratiō, -ōnis, *f.*
receive, accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum
recite, recitō (1)
recognize, recognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum
refuse, recūsō (1)
regain, recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum
region, loca, -ōrum, *n.*
remain, remaneō, -ēre, -mānsī, -mānsum
report, nūntiō (1)
republic, rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, *f.*
reputation, fāma, -ae, *f.*
rescue, ēripiō, -ere, -uī, -reptum
rest, the rest, cēterī, -ae, -a
restrain, teneō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum
return (go back), redeō, -īre, -iī, -itum
return (in return for), prō + *abl.*
riches, dīvitiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
right (*noun*), iūs, iūris, *n.*; (*adj.*), dexter, -tra, -trum
road, via, -ae, *f.*
Roman, Rōmānus, -a, -um
Rome, Rōma, -ae, *f.*
rose, rosa, -ae, *f.*
rule (*noun*), regnum, -ī, *n.*; (*vb.*), regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctum
rumor, rūmor, -mōris, *m.*
run, currō, -ere, cucurrī, cursum

S

sad, tristis, -e
safe, salvus, -a, -um
safety, salūs, -lūtis, *f.*
sailor, nauta, -ae, *m.*
sake (for the sake of), *gen.* + causā
salt, sāl, salis, *m.*
same, īdem, eadem, idem
satisfy, satiō (1)
save, servō (1); cōnservō (1)
say, dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum
school, lūdus, -ī, *m.*
sea, mare, -is, *n.*
second, secundus, -a, -um; alter, -era, -erum
see, videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsum

seek, petō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum; quaerō, -ere, -sīvī, -sītum
seem, videor, -ērī, vīsus sum
seize, rapiō, -ere, -uī, raptum
senate, senātus, -ūs, *m.*
send, mittō, -ere, mīsī, missum
serious, gravis, -e
serve, serviō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum + *dat.*
service, officium, -iī, *n.*
seven, septem
she, ea; *often indicated only by the personal ending of vb.*
ship, nāvis, -is, *f.*
short, brevis, -e
show, ostendō, -ere, -ī, -tentum
shun, vītō (1); fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitūrum
sign, signum, -ī, *n.*
similar, similis, -e
since, quoniam + *indic.;* cum + *subj.; abl. abs.*
sister, soror, -rōris, *f.*
six, sex
skill, ars, artis, *f.*
slave, servus, -ī, *m.;* **slavegirl,** serva, -ae, *f.*
slavery, servitūs, -tūtis, *f.*
sleep (*vb.*), dormiō, -īre, -īvī, -itum; (*noun*), somnus, -ī, *m.*
slender, gracilis, -e
small, parvus, -a, -um
so, ita, sīc (*usually with vbs.*), tam (*usually with adjs. and advs.*); **so great,** tantus, -a, -um
soldier, mīles, -litis, *m.*
some, a certain one (*indef.*), quīdam, quaedam, quiddam; (*more emphatic pron.*), aliquis, aliquid
some . . . others, aliī . . . aliī
son, fīlius, -iī, *m.*
soon, mox
sort, genus, -neris, *n.*
soul, animus, -ī, *m.*
sound, sānus, -a, -um; salvus, -a, -um
spare, parcō, -ere, pepercī, parsūrum + *dat.*
speak, dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum; loquor, -ī, locūtus sum
spirit, spīritus, -ūs, *m.*
stand, stō, stāre, stetī, statum
start, proficīscor, -ī, -fectus sum
state, cīvitās, -tātis, *f.*; rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, *f.*
story, fābula, -ae, *f.*
street, via, -ae, *f.*
strength, vīrēs, -ium, *f. pl.*
strong, fortis, -e; **be strong,** valeō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrum
student, discipula, -ae, *f.;* discipulus, -ī, *m.*

study (*noun*), studium, -iī, *n.*; (*vb.*), studeō, -ēre, -uī
+ *dat.*
suddenly, subitō
summer, aestās, -tātis, *f.*
sun, sōl, sōlis, *m.*
support, alō, -ere, -uī, altum
suppose, opīnor, -ārī, -ātus sum; putō (1)
suppress, opprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressum
supreme power, imperium, -iī, *n.*
sure, certus, -a, -um
surrender, trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditum
sweet, dulcis, -e
swift, celer, -eris, -ere
sword, ferrum, -ī, *n.*; gladius, -iī, *m.*
Syracuse, Syrācūsae, -ārum, *f. pl.*

T

talk, loquor, -ī, -cūtus sum
teach, doceō, -ēre, -uī, doctum
teacher, magister, -trī, *m.*; magistra, -ae, *f.*
tear, lacrima, -ae, *f.*
tell, dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum
ten, decem
terrify, terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum
territory, fīnēs, -ium, *m. pl.*
than, quam; *or simple abl.*
thank, grātiās agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum + *dat.*
that (*demonstrative*), ille, illa, illud; is, ea, id;
that (of yours), iste, ista, istud
that (*subord. conj.*), *not expressed in ind. state.;* ut
(*purp. and result*); nē (*fear*)
that . . . not, nē (*purp.*), ut . . . nōn (*result*); ut
(*fear*)
that (*rel. pron.*), quī, quae, quod
their, suus, -a, -um (*reflexive*); eōrum, eārum (*not
reflexive*)
them. *See* **he, she, it.**
then, tum, deinde
there, ibi
therefore, igitur (*postpositive*)
these. *See* **this,** *demonstrative.*
they. *See* **he, she, it;** *often expressed simply by the
personal ending of vb.*
thing, rēs, reī, *f.; often merely the neut. of an adj.*
think, putō (1); arbitror, -ārī, -ātus sum
third, tertius, -a, -um
this, hic, haec, hoc; is, ea, id
those. *See* **that,** *demonstrative.*
thousand, mīlle (*indecl. adj. sg.*), mīlia, -ium, *n.*
(*noun in pl.*)

three, trēs, tria
through, per + *acc.*
throughout, per + *acc.*
throw, iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactum
thus, sīc
time, tempus, -poris, *n.;* **(period of) time,** aetās,
-tātis, *f.*
to (*place to which*), ad + *acc.*; (*ind. obj.*), *dat.;*
(*purp.*), ut + *subj.*, ad + *gerund or gerundive*
today, hodiē
tolerate, tolerō (1)
tomorrow, crās
too, nimis, nimium; *or use comp. degree of adj. or
adv.*
touch, tangō, -ere, tetigī, tāctum
travel (abroad), peregrīnor, -ārī, -ātus sum
trivial, levis, -e
troops, cōpiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
Troy, Trōia, -ae, *f.*
true, vērus, -a, -um
truly, vērē
trust, crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum + *dat.*
truth, vēritās, -tātis, *f.*
try, experior, -īrī, expertus sum
turn, vertō, -ere, -ī, versum
twenty, vīgintī
two, duo, duae, duo
type, genus, -neris, *n.*
tyrant, tyrannus, -ī, *m.*

U

unable (be) nōn possum
uncertain, incertus, -a, -um
under, sub + *abl.* (= *place where*),
+ *acc.* (= *place to which*)
understand, intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum;
comprehendō, -ere, -ī, -hēnsum
unfortunate, miser, -era, -erum
unless, nisi
unwilling (be), nōlō, nōlle, nōluī
urban, urbane, urbānus, -a, -um
urge, hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum
use, ūtor, -ī, ūsus sum + *abl.*

V

verse, versus, -ūs, *m.*
very, *express this by the superl. degree of adj. or
adv.*
vice, vitium, -iī, *n.*

Virgil, Vergilius, -iī, *m.*
virtue, virtūs, -tūtis, *f.*

W

wage, gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum
walls, moenia, -ium, *n. pl.*
want, volō, velle, voluī
war, bellum, -ī, *n.*
warn, moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum
water, aqua, -ae, *f.*
we. *See* **I;** *often expressed simply by the personal ending of vb.*
wealth, dīvitiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
weapons, arma, -ōrum, *n. pl.*
well, bene
what (*pron.*), quid; (*adj.*), quī, quae, quod
whatever, quisquis, quidquid
when, *participial phrase; abl. abs.;* cum + *subj.;* (*interrogative*), quandō; (*rel.*), ubi
whence, unde, *adv.*
where, ubi
wherefore, quārē
which (*rel. pron. and interrogative adj.*), quī, quae, quod
while, dum
who (*rel.*), quī, quae, quod; (*interrogative*), quis, quid
whole, tōtus, -a, -um
why, cūr
wicked, malus, -a, -um
wife, uxor, uxōris, *f.*

willing (be), volō, velle, voluī
window, fenestra, -ae, *f.*
wine, vīnum, -ī, *n.*
wisdom, sapientia, -ae, *f.*
wise, sapiēns, *gen.* sapientis
wisely, sapienter
wish, cupiō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum; volō, velle, voluī
with, cum + *abl.; abl. of means* (*no prep.*)
without, sine + *abl.*
woman, fēmina, -ae, *f.; often expressed by fem. of an adj.*
word, verbum, -ī, *n.*
work, labor, -bōris, *m.;* opus, operis, *n.*
world, mundus, -ī, *m.*
worse, peior, -ius
worst, pessimus, -a, -um
write, scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptum
writer, scrīptor, -tōris, *m.*

Y

year, annus, -ī, *m.*
yesterday, herī
yield, cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessum
you, tū, tuī; *often expressed simply by the personal ending of vb.*
young man, adulēscēns, -centis, *m.*
your (*sg.*), tuus, -a, -um; (*pl.*), vester, -tra, -trum
yourself (*reflexive*), tuī, tibi, *etc.;* (*intensive*), ipse, ipsa
youth, iuvenis, -is, *m.*

Latin-English Vocabulary

An Arabic numeral after a vocabulary entry indicates the chapter in which the word is first introduced as an item of required vocabulary. Arabic (1) in parentheses after a verb shows that this is a regular verb of the first conjugation with a sequence of principal parts ending in -āre, -āvī, -ātum. For prefixes and suffixes see the lists in the Appendix.

A

ā *or* **ab,** *prep.* + *abl.,* from, away from; by (*agent*). 14

abeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, go away, depart, leave. 37

absconditus, -a, -um, hidden, secret

absēns, *gen.* **-sentis,** *adj.,* absent, away. 37

absum, -esse, āfuī, āfutūrum, be away, be absent

abundantia, -ae, *f.,* abundance

ac. *See* **atque.**

accēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, come near, approach. 36

accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, take, receive, accept. 24

accommodō (1), adjust, adapt

accūsātor, -tōris, *m.,* accuser

accūsō (1), accuse

ācer, ācris, ācre, sharp, keen, eager, severe, fierce. 16

acerbitās, -tātis, *f.,* harshness

acerbus, -a, -um, harsh, bitter, grievous. 12

Achillēs, -is, *m.,* Achilles, Greek hero, chief character in the *Iliad*

aciēs, -ēī, *f.,* sharp edge, keenness, line of battle

acquīrō, -ere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītum, acquire, gain

ācriter, *adv.,* keenly, fiercely. 32

ad, *prep.* + *acc.,* to, up to, near to. 8

addiscō, -ere, -didicī, learn in addition

addūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead to, induce

adeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, go to, approach. 37

adferō, -ferre, attulī, allātum, bring to. 31

adficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, affect, afflict, weaken

adiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, add

adiuvō, -āre, -iūvī, -iūtum, help, aid, assist; please. 4

admīror, -ārī, -ātus sum, wonder at, admire

admittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, admit, receive, let in. 17

admoneō = moneō

adnuō, -ere, -nuī, nod assent

adoptō (1), wish for oneself, select, adopt

adsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrum, be near, be present, assist

adūlātiō, -ōnis, *f.,* fawning, flattery

adulēscēns, -centis, *m. and f.,* young man or woman. 12

adulēscentia, -ae, *f.,* youth, young manhood; youthfulness. 5

adultus, -a, -um, grown up, mature, adult

adūrō, -ere, -ussī, -ustum, set fire to, burn, singe

adveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, come (to), arrive

adversus, -a, -um, facing, opposite, adverse. 34

adversus, *prep.* + *acc.*, toward, facing; against

advesperāscit, advesperāscere, advesperāvit,
   impers., evening is coming on, it is growing
   dark

aedificium, -iī, *n.*, building, structure. 39

aegrē, *adv.*, with difficulty, hardly, scarcely

aequitās, -tātis, *f.*, justice, fairness, equity

aequus, -a, -um, level, even, calm, equal, just,
   favorable. 22

aes, aeris, *n.*, bronze. 40

aestās, -tātis, *f.*, summer. 35

aestus, -ūs, *m.*, heat, tide

aetās, -tātis, *f.*, period of life, life, age, an age,
   time. 16

aeternus, -a, -um, eternal

Agamemnon, -nonis, *m.*, Agamemnon,
   commander-in-chief of the Greek forces at Troy

ager, agrī, *m.*, field, farm. 3

agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum, drive, lead, do, act; *of time
   or life,* pass, spend;
   grātiās agere + *dat.*, thank. 8

agricola, -ae, *m.*, farmer. 3

agrīcultūra, -ae, *f.*, agriculture

āit, āiunt, he says, they say, assert. 25

Alexander, -drī, *m.*, Alexander the Great,
   renowned Macedonian general and king,
   4th cen., B.C.

aliēnus, -a, -um, belonging to another (*cp.* **alius**),
   foreign, strange, alien

aliōquī, *adv.*, otherwise

aliquī, aliqua, aliquod, *indef. pronominal adj.*,
   some

aliquis, aliquid (*gen.* **alicuius;** *dat.* **alicui**), *indef.
   pron.*, someone, somebody, something. 23

aliter, *adv.*, otherwise

alius, alia, aliud, other, another;
   aliī . . . aliī, some . . . others. 9

alō, -ere, aluī, altum, nourish, support, sustain,
   increase; cherish. 13

alter, -era, -erum, the other (of two), second. 9

altus, -a, -um, high, deep

ambitiō, -ōnis, *f.*, a canvassing for votes; ambition;
   flattery

ambulō (1), walk. 39

āmēn, *adv. from Hebrew,* truly, verily, so be it

amīca, -ae, *f.*, (female) friend. 3

amīcitia, -ae, *f.*, friendship. 10

amīculum, -ī, *n.*, cloak

amīcus, -a, -um, friendly. 11

amīcus, -ī, *m.*, (male) friend. 3

āmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, lose, let go. 12

amō (1), love, like; **amābō tē,** please. 1

amor, amōris, *m.*, love. 7

āmoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, move away, remove

an, *adv. and conj. introducing the second part of a
   double question* (*see* **utrum**), or; *used alone,* or,
   can it be that

ancilla, -ae, *f.*, maidservant

angelus, -ī, *m.*, angel

angulus, -ī, *m.*, corner

angustus, -a, -um, narrow, limited

anima, -ae, *f.*, soul, spirit. 34

animal, -mālis, *n.*, a living creature, animal. 14

animus, -ī, *m.*, soul, spirit, mind; **animī, -ōrum,**
   high spirits, pride, courage. 5

annus, -ī, *m.*, year. 12

ante, *prep.* + *acc.*, before (*in place or time*), in
   front of; *adv.*, before, previously. 13

anteā, *adv.*, before, formerly

antepōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, put before, prefer
   + *dat.* 35

antīquus, -a, -um, ancient, old-time. 2

Apollō, -linis, *m.*, Phoebus Apollo, god of sun,
   prophecy, poetry, etc.

apparātus, -ūs, *m.*, equipment, splendor

appellō (1), speak to, address (as), call, name. 14

approbō (1), approve

appropinquō (1) + *dat.*, approach, draw near to

aptus, -a, -um, fit, suitable

apud, *prep.* + *acc.*, among, in the presence of, at
   the house of. 31

aqua, -ae, *f.*, water. 14

āra, -ae, *f.*, altar

arānea, -ae, *f.*, spider's web

arbitror, -ārī, -ātus sum, judge, think. 34

arbor, -boris, *f.*, tree. 38

arcus, -ūs, *m.*, bow

argentum, -ī, *n.*, silver, money

argūmentum, -ī, *n.*, proof, evidence, argument. 19

arma, -ōrum, *n.*, arms, weapons. 28

arō (1), plow

ars, artis, *f.*, art, skill. 14

arx, arcis, *f.*, citadel, stronghold. 23

as, assis, *m.*, an as (a small copper coin roughly
   equivalent to a cent). 31

Asia, -ae, *f.*, Asia, commonly the Roman province
   in Asia Minor. 12

asper, -era, -erum, rough, harsh. 21

aspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum, look at, behold

assentātor, -tōris, *m.,* yes-man, flatterer

astrum, -ī, *n.,* star, constellation

at, *conj.,* but; but, mind you; but, you say; *a more emotional adversative than* **sed.** 19

āter, ātra, ātrum, dark, gloomy

Athēnae, -ārum, *f. pl.,* Athens. 37

Athēniēnsis, -e, Athenian; **Athēniēnsēs, -ium,** the Athenians

atque *or* **ac,** *conj.,* and, and also, and even. 21

atquī, *conj.,* and yet, still

auctor, -tōris, *m.,* increaser; author, originator. 19

auctōritās, -tātis, *f.,* authority

audācia, -ae, *f.,* daring, boldness, audacity

audāx, *gen.* **audācis,** daring, bold

audeō, -ēre, ausus sum, dare. 7

audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, hear, listen to. 10

audītor, -tōris, *m.,* hearer, listener, member of an audience. 16

auferō, -ferre, abstulī, ablātum, bear away, carry off

Augustus, -ī, *m.,* Augustus, the first Roman emperor

aureus, -a, -um, golden

auris, -is, *f.,* ear. 14

aurum, -ī, *n.,* gold

aut, *conj.,* or; **aut . . . aut,** either . . . or. 17

autem, *postpositive conj.,* however; moreover. 11

auxilium, -iī, *n.,* aid, help. 31

avāritia, -ae, *f.,* greed, avarice

avārus, -a, -um, greedy, avaricious. 3

āvehō, -ere, -vexī, -vectum, carry away

āvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum, turn away, avert. 23

āvocō (1), call away, divert

B

balbus, -a, -um, stammering, stuttering

barba, -ae, *f.,* beard

bāsium, -iī, *n.,* kiss. 4

beātus, -a, -um, happy, fortunate, blessed. 10

bellicus, -a, -um, relating to war, military

bellum, -ī, *n.,* war. 4

bellus, -a, -um, pretty, handsome, charming. 4

bene, *adv. of* **bonus,** well, satisfactorily, quite. 11 (*comp.* **melius;** *superl.* **optimē.** 32)

beneficium, -iī, *n.,* benefit, kindness, favor. 19

benevolentia, -ae, *f.,* good will, kindness

bēstia, -ae, *f.,* animal, beast

bibō, -ere, bibī, drink. 30

bis, *adv.,* twice

bonus, -a, -um, good, kind. 4 (*comp.* **melior;** *superl.* **optimus.** 27)

bōs, bovis, *m./f.,* bull, ox, cow

brevis, -e, short, small, brief. 16

brevitās, -tātis, *f.,* shortness, brevity

breviter, *adv.,* briefly

Britannia, -ae, *f.,* Britain

Brundisium, -iī, *n.,* important seaport in S. Italy

Brūtus, -ī, *m.,* famous Roman name: L. Junius Brutus, who helped establish the Roman republic; M. Junius Brutus, one of the conspirators against Julius Caesar

C

C., abbreviation for the common name **Gāius**

cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsūrum, fall. 12

caecus, -a, -um, blind. 17

caelestis, -e, heavenly, celestial

caelum, -ī, *n.,* sky, heaven. 5

Caesar, -saris, *m.,* Caesar, especially Gaius Julius Caesar. 12

calamitās, -tātis, *f.,* misfortune, disaster

calculus, -ī, *m.,* pebble

campana, -ae, *f.,* bell (*late Lat.*)

candidus, -a, -um, shining, bright, white; beautiful. 33

canis, -is (*gen. pl.* **canum**), *m./f.,* dog

canō, -ere, cecinī, cantum, to sing about

cantō (1), sing

capillus, -ī, *m.,* hair (*of head or beard*)

capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum, take, capture, seize, get. 10

captō (1), grab, seek to get, hunt for (legacies, etc.)

caput, -pitis, *n.,* head; leader; beginning; life; heading, chapter. 11

carbō, -bōnis, *m.,* coal, charcoal

careō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrum + *abl. of separation,* be without, be deprived of, want, lack, be free from. 20

cāritās, -tātis, *f.,* dearness, affection

carmen, -minis, *n.,* song, poem. 7

carpō, -ere, carpsī, carptum, harvest, pluck; seize. 36

Carthāgō, -ginis, *f.,* Carthage (city in N. Africa). 24

cārus, -a, -um, dear. 11

casa, -ae, *f.,* house, cottage, hut. 21

cāsus, -ūs, *m.,* accident, chance

catēna, -ae, *f.,* chain

Catilīna, -ae, *m.,* L. Sergius Catiline, leader of the conspiracy against the Roman state in 63 B.C.

Catullus, -ī, *m.,* Gaius Valerius Catullus, 1st cen. B.C. lyric poet

cattus, -ī, *m.,* cat (*late word for classical* fēlēs, -is)

causa, -ae, *f.,* cause, reason; case, situation; causā *with a preceding gen.,* for the sake of, on account of. 21

caveō, -ēre, cāvī, cautum, beware, avoid

cavus, -ī, *m.,* hole

cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessum, go, withdraw; yield to, submit, grant. 28

celer, -eris, -ere, swift, quick, rapid. 16

celeritās, -tātis, *f.,* speed, swiftness

celeriter, swiftly, quickly

cēna, -ae, *f.,* dinner. 26

cēnō (1), dine. 5

centum, *indecl. adj.,* a hundred. 15

cernō, -ere, crēvī, crētum, distinguish, discern, perceive. 22

certē, *adv.,* certainly

certus, -a, -um, definite, sure, certain, reliable. 19

cervus, -ī, *m.,* stag, deer

cēterī, -ae, -a, the remaining, the rest, the other. 30

Cicerō, -rōnis, *m.,* Marcus Tullius Cicero. 8

cicūta, -ae, *f.,* hemlock (*poison*)

cinis, -neris, *m.,* ashes

circēnsēs, -ium, *m. pl.* (*sc.* lūdī), games in the Circus

cito, *adv.,* quickly. 17

cīvīlis, -e, civil, civic

cīvis, -is, *m./f.,* citizen. 14

cīvitās, -tātis, *f.,* state, citizenship. 7

clārus, -a, -um, clear, bright; renowned, famous, illustrious. 18

claudō, -ere, clausī, clausum, shut, close

clēmentia, -ae, *f.,* mildness, gentleness, mercy. 16

coepī, coepisse, coeptum (*defective vb.; pres. system supplied by* incipiō), began. 17

coerceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, curb, check, repress

cōgitō (1), think, ponder, consider, plan. 1

cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum, become acquainted with, learn, recognize; *in perf. tenses,* know. 30

cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctum, drive *or* bring together, force, compel. 36

colligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum, gather together, collect

collocō (1), place, put, arrange

collum, -ī, *n.,* neck

colō, -ere, coluī, cultum, cultivate; cherish

color, -ōris, *m.,* color

commemorō (1), remind, relate, mention

commisceō, -ēre, -uī, -mixtum, intermingle, join

committō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, entrust, commit. 15

commūnis, -e, common, general, of/for the community. 20

comparō (1), compare

compōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, put together, compose

comprehendō, -ere, -hendī, -hēnsum, grasp, seize, arrest; comprehend, understand. 30

concēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, yield, grant, concede

concilium, -iī, *n.,* council

condō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, put together or into, store; build, found, establish. 29

cōnferō, -ferre, -contulī, collātum, bring together, compare; sē cōnferre, betake oneself, go. 31

cōnfīdō, -ere, -fīsus sum, have confidence in, believe confidently, be confident

cōnfiteor, -ērī, -fessus sum, confess

congregō (1), gather together, assemble

coniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, throw, hurl, put with force; put together, conjecture

coniūrātiō, -ōnis, *f.,* conspiracy

coniūrātī, -ōrum, *m. pl.,* conspirators. 20

cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum, try, attempt. 34

cōnscientia, -ae, *f.,* consciousness, knowledge; conscience

cōnscius, -a, -um, conscious, aware of

cōnservō (1), preserve, conserve, maintain. 1

cōnsilium, -iī, *n.,* counsel, advice, plan, purpose; judgment, wisdom. 4

cōnsistō, -ere, -stitī + in, depend on

cōnstō, -āre, -stitī, -stātūrum + ex, consist of

cōnsuēscō, -ere, -suēvī, -suētum, become accustomed

cōnsul, -sulis, *m.,* consul. 11

cōnsulō, -ere, -suluī, -sultum, look out for, have regard for

cōnsultum, -ī, *n.,* decree

cōnsūmō, -ere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptum, use up, consume. 30

contemnō, -ere, -tempsī, -temptum, despise, scorn. 36

contendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum, strive, struggle, contend, hasten. 29

contineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, hold together, keep, enclose, restrain, contain. 21

contingō, -ere, -tigī, -tāctum, touch closely, befall, fall to one's lot

contrā, *prep.* + *acc.*, against. 19

contundō, -tundere, -tudī, -tūsum, beat, crush, bruise, destroy. 36

conturbō (1), throw into confusion

convertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum, turn around, cause to turn

convocō (1), call together, convene

cōpia, -ae, *f.*, abundance, supply; cōpiae, -ārum, supplies, troops, forces. 8

cōpiōsē, *adv.*, fully, at length, copiously

Corinthus, -ī, *f.*, Corinth

cornū, -ūs, *n.*, horn. 20

corōna, -ae, *f.*, crown

corpus, -poris, *n.*, body. 7

corrigō, -ere, -rēxī, -rēctum, make right, correct

corrōborō (1), strengthen

corrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, ruin, corrupt

cōtīdiē, *adv.*, daily, every day. 36

crās, *adv.*, tomorrow. 5

creātor, -tōris, *m.*, creator

creātūra, -ae, *f.*, creature (*late Lat.*)

crēber, -bra, -brum, thick, frequent, numerous

crēdō, -ere, crēdidī, crēditum, believe, trust. 25; + *dat.* 35

creō (1), create. 12

crēscō, -ere, crēvī, crētum, increase. 34

crūdēlis, -e, cruel

crūstulum, -ī, *n.*, pastry, cookie

cubiculum, -ī, *n.*, bedroom, room

culpa, -ae, *f.*, fault, blame. 5

culpō (1), blame, censure. 5

cultūra, -ae, *f.*, cultivation

cum, *conj.*, *with subj.*, when, since, although; *with ind.*, when. 31

cum, *prep.* + *abl.*, with. 10

cūnctātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, delay

cūnctātor, -tōris, *m.*, delayer

cūnctor (1), delay

cupiditās, -tātis, *f.*, desire, longing, passion; cupidity, avarice. 10

cupīdō, -dinis, *f.*, desire, passion. 36

cupidus, -a, -um, desirous, eager, fond; + *gen.*, desirous of, eager for. 39

cupiō, -ere, cupīvī, cupītum, desire, wish, long for. 17

cūr, *adv.*, why. 18

cūra, -ae, *f.*, care, attention, caution, anxiety. 4

cūrō (1), care for, attend to; heal, cure; take care. 36

currō, -ere, cucurrī, cursum, run, rush, move quickly. 14

cursus, -ūs, *m.*, running, race; course. 28

curvus, -a, -um, curved, crooked, wrong

custōdia, -ae, *f.*, protection, custody; *pl.*, guards. 32

custōs, -tōdis, *m.*, guardian, guard

D

damnō (1), condemn

Dāmoclēs, -is, *m.*, Damocles, an attendant of Dionysius

dē, *prep.* + *abl.*, down from, from; concerning, about. 3

dea, -ae, *f.* (*dat. and abl. pl.* deābus), goddess. 6

dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, owe, ought, must. 1

dēbilitō (1), weaken

dēcernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētum, decide, settle, decree. 36

dēcertō (1), fight it out, fight to the finish, contend

decimus, -a, -um, tenth. 15

dēcipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, deceive

decor, -cōris, *m.*, beauty, grace

dēcrētum, -ī, *n.*, decree

dēdicō (1), dedicate. 28

dēfendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsum, ward off, defend, protect. 20

dēficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, fail

dēgustō (1), taste

dehinc, *adv.*, then, next. 25

deinde, *adv.*, thereupon, next, then. 18

dēlectātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, delight, pleasure, enjoyment. 27

dēlectō (1), delight, charm, please. 19

dēleō, -ēre, dēlēvī, dēlētum, destroy, wipe out, erase. 17

dēlīberō (1), consider, deliberate

dēmēns, *gen.* -mentis, *adj.*, out of one's mind, insane, foolish

dēmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, let down, lower

dēmōnstrō (1), point out, show, demonstrate. 8

Dēmosthenēs, -is, *m.*, Demosthenes, the most famous Greek orator, 4th cen. B.C.

dēnique, *adv.*, at last, finally. 29

dēns, dentis, *m.*, tooth

dēpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, put down, lay aside

dēportō (1), carry off

dēsīderō (1), desire, long for, miss. 17

dēsidiōsus, -a, -um, lazy

dēsinō, -ere, -sīvī, -situm, cease, leave off. 34

dēsipiō, -ere, act foolishly

dēstinātus, -a, -um, resolved, resolute, firm

dētrīmentum, -ī, *n.*, loss, detriment

deus, -ī, *m.* (*voc. sg.* **deus,** *nom. pl.* **deī** *or* **dī,** *dat. and abl. pl.* **dīs**), god. 6

dēvocō (1), call down *or* away

dexter, -tra, -trum, right, right-hand. 20

diabolus, -ī, *m.*, devil

dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum, say, tell, speak; call, name. 10

dictāta, -ōrum, *n. pl.*, things dictated, lessons, precepts

dictātor, -tōris, *m.*, dictator

dictō (1), say repeatedly, dictate

diēs, -ēī, *m.*, day. 22

difficilis, -e, hard, difficult, troublesome. 16

digitus, -ī, *m.*, finger, toe. 31

dignitās, -tātis, *f.*, merit, prestige, dignity. 38

dignus, -a, -um + *abl.*, worthy, worthy of. 29

dīligēns, *gen.* **-gentis,** *adj.*, diligent, careful. 27

dīligenter, *adv.*, diligently

dīligentia, -ae, *f.*, diligence

dīligō, -ere, dīlēxī, dīlēctum, esteem, love. 13

dīmidium, -ī, *n.*, half

dīmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, send away, dismiss

Dionȳsius, -iī, *m.*, Dionysius, tyrant of Syracuse

discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, go away, depart. 20

discipula, -ae, *f.*, and **discipulus, -ī,** *m.*, learner, pupil, disciple. 6

discō, -ere, didicī, learn. 8

disputātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, discussion

disputō (1), discuss

dissimilis, -e, unlike, different. 27

dissimulō (1), conceal

distinguō, -ere, -stīnxī, -stīnctum, distinguish

diū, *adv.*, long, for a long time. 12

dīves, *gen.* **dīvitis** *or* **dītis,** *adj.*, rich. 32

dīvīnus, -a, -um, divine, sacred

dīvitiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*, riches, wealth. 13

dō, dare, dedī, datum, give, offer. 1

doceō, -ēre, -uī, doctum, teach. 8

doctrīna, -ae, *f.*, teaching, instruction, learning

doctus, -a, -um, taught, learned, skilled. 13

doleō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrum, grieve, suffer; hurt, give pain. 31

dolor, -lōris, *m.*, pain, grief. 38

domesticus, -a, -um, domestic; civil

domina, -ae, *f.*, mistress, lady. 40

dominātus, -ūs, *m.*, rule, mastery, tyranny

dominicus, -a, -um, belonging to a master; the Lord's

dominus, -ī, *m.*, master, lord. 40

domus, -ūs (-ī), *f.*, house, home; **domī,** at home; **domum,** (to) home; **domō,** from home. 37

dōnum, -ī, *n.*, gift, present. 4

dormiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, sleep. 31

dubitō (1), doubt, hesitate. 30

dubium, -ī, *n.*, doubt

dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum, lead; consider, regard; prolong. 8

dulcis, -e, sweet, pleasant, agreeable. 16

dum, *conj.*, while, as long as; at the same time that; until. 8

dummodo, *conj.*, *with subj.*, provided that, so long as. 32

duo, duae, duo, two. 15

dūrō (1), harden, last, endure

dūrus, -a, -um, hard, harsh, rough, stern, unfeeling, hardy, tough, difficult. 29

dux, ducis, *m.*, leader, guide, commander, general. 23

E

ē. *See* **ex.**

ecclēsia, -ae, *f.*, church (*ecclesiastical Lat.*)

ēducō (1), bring up, educate. 23

ēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead out

efferō, -ferre, extulī, ēlātum, carry out; bury; lift up, exalt

efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, accomplish, perform, bring about, cause

effugiō, -ere, -fūgī, -fugitūrum, flee from, flee away, escape

egeō, -ēre, eguī + *abl. or gen.*, need, lack, want. 28

ego, meī, I. 11

ēgredior, -ī, -gressus sum, go out, depart. 34

ēiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, throw out, drive out. 15

elementum, -ī, *n.*, element, first principle

elephantus, -ī, *m.*, elephant. 31

ēloquēns, *gen.* **-quentis,** *adj.*, eloquent

ēloquentia, -ae, *f.*, eloquence

ēmendō (1), correct, emend

emō, -ere, ēmī, ēmptum, buy

ēmoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, move away, remove

enim, *postpositive conj.*, for, in fact, truly. 9

Ennius, -iī, *m.*, Quintus Ennius, early Roman writer

ēnumerō (1), count up, enumerate

eō, īre, iī (*or* **īvī**), **itum,** go. 37

epigramma, -matis, *n.*, inscription, epigram

epistula, -ae, *f.*, letter, epistle

eques, equitis, *m.*, horseman

equidem, *adv. especially common with 1st pers.,* indeed, truly, for my part

equitātus, -ūs, *m.,* cavalry

equus, -ī, *m.,* horse. 23

ergā, *prep. + acc.,* toward. 38

ergō, *adv.,* therefore

ēripiō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptum, snatch away, take away, rescue. 22

errō (1), wander; err, go astray, make a mistake, be mistaken. 1

error, -rōris, *m.,* a going astray, error, mistake

et, *conj.,* and; even (= **etiam**); **et . . . et,** both . . . and. 2

etiam, *adv.,* even, also. 11

etsī, *conj.,* even if (**et-sī**), although. 38

ēveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, come out, turn out, happen

ēventus, -ūs, *m.,* outcome, result

ex *or* **ē,** *prep + abl.,* out of, from within, from; by reason of, on account of; *following cardinal numerals,* of. **Ex** *can be used before consonants or vowels;* **ē,** *before consonants only.* 8

excellentia, -ae, *f.,* excellence, merit

excipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, take out, except; take, receive, capture. 24

exclāmō (1), cry out, call out

exclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsum, shut out, exclude

excruciō (1), torture, torment

excūsātiō, -ōnis, *f.,* excuse

exemplar, -plāris, *n.,* model, pattern, original. 14

exemplum, -ī, *n.,* example, model

exeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, go out, exit. 37

exercitus, -ūs, *m.,* army. 32

exigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum (**ex** + **agō**), drive out, force out, extract, drive through, complete, perfect. 36

eximius, -a, -um, extraordinary, excellent

exitium, -iī, *n.,* destruction, ruin. 4

expellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum, drive out, expel, banish. 24

experior, -īrī, -pertus sum, try, test; experience. 39

expleō, -ēre, -plēvī, -plētum, fill, fill up, complete. 28

explicō (1), unfold; explain; spread out, deploy. 40

expōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, set forth, explain, expose. 30

exquīsītus, -a, -um, sought-out, exquisite, excellent

exsilium, -iī, *n.,* exile, banishment. 31

exspectō (1), look for, expect, await. 15

exstinguō, -ere, -stīnxī, -stīnctum, extinguish

externus, -a, -um, foreign

extorqueō, -ēre, -torsī, -tortum, twist away, extort

extrā, *prep. + acc.,* beyond, outside

extrēmus, -a, -um, outermost, last, extreme

F

Fabius, -iī, *m.,* Roman name; especially Quintus Fabius Maximus Cunctator (the Delayer), celebrated for his delaying tactics (Fabian tactics) against Hannibal

fābula, -ae, *f.,* story, tale; play. 24

facile, *adv.,* easily. 32

facilis, -e, easy; agreeable, affable. 16

faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum, make, do, accomplish, 10; *passive:* **fīō, fierī, factus sum.** 36

factum, -ī, *n.,* deed, act, achievement. 13

facultās, -tātis, *f.,* ability, skill, opportunity, means

falsus, -a, -um, false, deceptive

fāma, -ae, *f.,* rumor, report; fame, reputation. 2

familia, -ae, *f.,* household, family. 19

fās (*indecl.*), *n.,* right, sacred duty; **fās est,** it is right, fitting, lawful

fateor, -ērī, fassus sum, confess, admit. 34

fatīgō (1), weary, tire out. 40

fātum, -ī, *n.,* fate; death; *often pl.,* the Fates. 29

faucēs, -ium, *f. pl.,* jaws; narrow passage.

fēlīciter, *adv.,* happily. 32

fēlīx, *gen.* **-līcis,** *adj.,* lucky, fortunate, happy. 22

fēmina, -ae, *f.,* woman. 3

fenestra, -ae, *f.,* window. 21

ferē, *adv.,* almost, nearly, generally

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, bear, carry, bring; suffer, endure, tolerate; say, report. 31

ferōx, gen. **-rōcis,** fierce, savage. 25

ferrum, -ī, *n.,* iron, sword. 22

ferus, -a, -um, wild, uncivilized, fierce

festīnātiō, -ōnis, *f.,* haste

festīnō (1), hasten, hurry

fīcus, -ī *and* **-ūs,** *f.,* fig tree

fidēlis, -e, faithful, loyal. 25

fidēs, -eī, *f.,* faith, trust, trustworthiness, fidelity; promise, guarantee, protection. 22

fīlia, -ae, *f.* (*dat. and abl. pl.* **fīliābus**), daughter. 3

fīlius, -iī, *m.,* son. 3

fīnis, -is, *m.,* end, limit, boundary; purpose; **fīnēs, -ium** (boundaries) territory. 21

fīō, fierī, factus sum, occur, happen; become, be made, be done. 36

firmus, -a, -um, firm, strong; reliable. 38

flamma, -ae, *f.,* flame, fire

fleō, -ēre, flēvī, flētum, weep

flūctus, -ūs, *m.,* billow, wave
flūmen, -minis, *n.,* river. 18
fluō, -ere, flūxī, flūxum, flow. 18
for, fārī, fātus sum, speak (prophetically), talk, foretell. 40
forīs, *adv.,* out of doors, outside. 37
fōrma, -ae, *f.,* form, shape, beauty. 2
formīca, -ae, *f.,* ant
fōrmō (1), form, shape, fashion
fors, fortis, *f.,* chance, fortune
forsan, *adv.,* perhaps
fortasse, *adv.,* perhaps. 36
fortis, -e, strong, brave. 16
fortiter, *adv.,* bravely. 32
fortūna, -ae, *f.,* fortune, luck. 2
fortūnātē, *adv.,* fortunately
fortūnātus, -a, -um, lucky, fortunate, happy. 13
forum, -ī, *n.,* market place, forum. 26
foveō, -ēre, fōvī, fōtum, comfort, nurture, support. 35
frāter, -tris, *m.,* brother. 8
frōns, frontis, *f.,* forehead, brow, front
frūctus, -ūs, *m.,* fruit; profit, benefit, enjoyment. 20
frūgālitās, -tātis, *f.,* frugality
frūstrā, *adv.,* in vain
fuga, -ae, *f.,* flight
fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitūrum, flee, hurry away; escape; go into exile; avoid, shun. 10
fugitīvus, -ī, *m.,* fugitive, deserter, runaway slave
fugō (1), put to flight, rout
fulgeō, -ēre, fulsī, flash, shine
furor, -rōris, *m.,* rage, frenzy, madness
fūrtificus, -a, -um, thievish
fūrtim, *adv.,* stealthily, secretly. 30

G

Gāius, -ī, *m.,* Gaius, a common praenomen (first name); usually abbreviated to C. in writing
Gallus, -ī, *m.,* a Gaul. The Gauls were a Celtic people who inhabited the district which we know as France.
gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum, be glad, rejoice. 23
gaudium, -ī, *n.,* joy, delight
geminus, -a, -um, twin. 25
gēns, gentis, *f.,* clan, race, nation, people. 21
genū, genūs, *n.,* knee. 20
genus, generis, *n.,* origin; kind, type, sort, class. 18
gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum, carry; carry on, manage, conduct, wage, accomplish, perform. 8
gladius, -ī, *m.,* sword

glōria, -ae, *f.,* glory, fame. 5
gracilis, -e, slender, thin. 27
Graecia, -ae, *f.,* Greece. 19
Graecus, -a, -um, Greek; **Graecus, -ī,** *m.,* a Greek. 6
grātia, -ae, *f.,* gratitude, favor; **grātiās agere +** *dat.,* to thank. 8
grātus, -a, -um, pleasing, agreeable; grateful. 37
gravis, -e, heavy, weighty; serious, important; severe, grievous. 19
gravitās, -tātis, *f.,* weight, seriousness, importance, dignity
graviter, *adv.,* heavily, seriously
gustō (1), taste

H

habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, have, hold, possess; consider, regard. 3
hāmus, -ī, *m.,* hook
Hannibal, -balis, *m.,* Hannibal, celebrated Carthaginian general in the 2nd Punic War, 218–201 b.c.
hasta, -ae, *f.,* spear. 23
haud, *adv.,* not, not at all (*strong negative*)
herī, *adv.,* yesterday. 5
heu, *interjection,* ah!, alas! (*a sound of grief or pain*). 33
hīc, haec, hoc, *demonstrative adj. and pron.,* this, the latter; *at times weakened to* he, she, it, they. 9
hīc, *adv.,* here. 25
hinc, *adv.,* from this place, hence
hodiē, *adv.,* today. 3
Homērus, -ī, *m.,* Homer, the Greek epic poet
homō, hominis, *m.,* human being, man. 7
honor, -nōris, *m.,* honor, esteem; public office. 30
hōra, -ae, *f.,* hour, time. 10
horrendus, -a, -um, horrible, dreadful
hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, urge, encourage. 34
hortus, -ī, *m.,* garden
hospes, -pitis, *m.,* stranger, guest; host
hostis, -is, *m.,* an enemy (of the state); **hostēs, -ium,** the enemy. 18
hui, *interj.,* sound of surprise or approbation not unlike our "whee"
hūmānitās, -tātis, *f.,* kindness, refinement
hūmānus, -a, -um, pertaining to man, human; humane, kind; refined, cultivated. 4
humilis, -e, lowly, humble. 27
humus, -ī, *f.,* ground, earth; soil. 37
hypocrita, -ae, *m.,* hypocrite (*ecclesiastical Lat.*)

I

iaceō, -ēre, -uī, lie; lie prostrate; lie dead. 25
iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactum, throw, hurl. 15
iaculum, -ī, *n.*, dart, javelin
iam, *adv.*, now, already, soon. 19
iānua, -ae, *f.*, door. 35
ibi, *adv.*, there. 6
īdem, eadem, idem, the same. 11
identidem, *adv.*, repeatedly, again and again
idōneus, -a, -um, suitable, fit, appropriate. 37
igitur, *postpositive conj.*, therefore, consequently. 5
ignārus, -a, -um, not knowing, ignorant
ignis, -is, *m.*, fire. 22
ignōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nōtum + *dat.*, grant pardon to, forgive, overlook. 35
illacrimō (1) + *dat.*, weep over
ille, illa, illud, *demonstrative adj. and pron.*, that, the former; the famous; *at times weakened to* he, she, it, they. 9
illūdō, -ere, -lūsī, -lūsum, mock, ridicule
imāgō, -ginis, *m.*, image, likeness
imitor, -ārī, -ātus sum, imitate
immincō, -ēre, overhang, threaten
immodicus, -a, -um, beyond measure, moderate, excessive
immortālis, -e, not subject to death, immortal. 19
immōtus, -a, -um, unmoved; unchanged; unrelenting. 37
impedīmentum, -ī, *n.*, hindrance, impediment
impediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, impede, hinder, prevent. 38
impellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum, urge on, impel
impendeō, -ēre, hang over, threaten, be imminent
imperātor, -tōris, *m.*, general, commander-in-chief, emperor. 24
imperiōsus, -a, -um, powerful, domineering, imperious
imperium, -iī, *n.*, power to command, supreme power, authority, command, control. 24
imperō (1), give orders to, command + *dat.* + ut. 35
impleō, -ēre, implēvī, implētum, fill up, complete
imprīmīs, *adv.*, especially, particularly
imprōvidus, -a, -um, improvident
impudēns, *gen.* -dentis, *adj.*, shameless, impudent
impudenter, *adv.*, shamelessly, impudently
impūnītus, -a, -um, unpunished, unrestrained, safe
in, *prep.* + *abl.*, in, on, 3; + *acc.*, into, toward, against. 9

inānis, -e, empty, vain
incertus, -a, -um, uncertain, unsure, doubtful
incipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, begin, commence. 17
inclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsum, shut in, inclose
incorruptus, -a, -um, uncorrupted, genuine, pure
incrēdibilis, -e, incredible
indicō (1), indicate, expose, accuse
indignus, -a, -um, unworthy
indūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead in, introduce, induce
industria, -ae, *f.*, industry, diligence
industrius, -a, -um, industrious, diligent
ineō, -īre, -iī, -itum, go in, enter. 37
ineptiō, -īre, play the fool, trifle
inexpugnābilis, -e, impregnable, unconquerable
īnfantia, -ae, *f.*, infancy
īnferī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, those below, the dead
īnferō, -ferre, intulī, illātum, bring in, bring upon, inflict
īnfīnītus, -a, -um, unlimited, infinite
īnfirmus, -a, -um, not strong, weak, feeble. 38
īnflammō (1), set on fire, inflame
īnfōrmis, -e, formless, deformed, hideous
īnfortūnātus, -a, -um, unfortunate
ingenium, -iī, *n.*, nature, innate talent. 29
ingēns, *gen.* -gentis, *adj.*, huge. 16
ingrātus, -a, -um, unpleasant, ungrateful
iniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, throw on *or* into, put on; inspire
inimīcus, -ī, *m.*, (personal) enemy
inīquus, -a, -um, unequal, unfair, unjust
initium, -iī, *n.*, beginning, commencement. 33
iniūria, -ae, *f.*, injustice, injury, wrong. 39
iniūstus, -a, -um, unjust. 10
inops, *gen.* -opis, *adj.*, poor, needy
inquam. *See* inquit.
inquit, *defective verb.* he says, *placed after one or more words of a direct quotation; other forms:* inquam, I say, inquis, you say. 22
īnsānia, -ae, *f.*, insanity, folly
īnsciēns, *gen.* -entis, unknowing, unaware
īnscrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum, inscribe, entitle
īnsidiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*, ambush, plot, treachery. 6
īnsōns, *gen.* -sontis, guiltless, innocent
īnstituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtum, establish, institute
īnsula, -ae, *f.*, island. 23
īnsurgō, -ere, -surrēxī, -surrēctum, rise up
integer, -gra, -grum, untouched, whole, unhurt
intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum, understand. 11
intempestīvus, -a, -um, untimely
inter, *prep.* + *acc.*, between, among. 15

intercipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, intercept
interdum, *adv.*, at times, sometimes
intereā, *adv.*, meanwhile
interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, kill, murder. 37
interrogātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, interrogation, inquiry
intrō (1), walk into, enter
intrōdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead in, introduce
intus, *adv.*, within
invādō, -ere, -vāsī, -vāsum, enter on, move against, assail
inveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, come upon, find. 10
inventor, -tōris, *m.*, inventor
invēstīgō (1), track out, investigate
invictus, -a, -um, unconquered; unconquerable
invideō, -ēre, -vīdī, -vīsum, be envious; + *dat.*, look at with envy, envy, be jealous of. 31
invidia, -ae, *f.*, envy, jealousy, hatred. 31
invīsus, -a, -um, hated; hateful
invītō (1), entertain; invite, summon. 26
invītus, -a, -um, unwilling, against one's will
iocus, -ī, *m.*, joke, jest
ipse, ipsa, ipsum, *intensive pron.*, myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, *etc.;* the very, the actual. 13
īra, -ae, *f.*, ire, anger. 2
īrāscor, -ī, īrātus sum, be angry
īrātus, -a, -um, angered, angry. 35
irrītō (1), excite, exasperate, irritate
is, ea, id, *demonstrative pron. and adj.*, this, that; *personal pron.*, he, she, it. 11
iste, ista, istud, *demonstrative pron. and adj.*, that of yours, that; such; *sometimes with contemptuous force.* 9
ita, *adv. used with adjs., vbs., and advs.*, so, thus. 29
Italia, -ae, *f.*, Italy. 15
itaque, *adv.*, and so, therefore. 15
iter, itineris, *n.*, journey; route, road. 37
iterō (1), repeat
iterum, *adv.*, again, a second time. 21
iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussum, bid, order, command. 21
iūcunditās, -tātis, *f.*, pleasure, charm
iūcundus, -a, -um, agreeable, pleasant, gratifying. 16
iūdex, -dicis, *m.*, judge, juror. 19
iūdicium, -ī, *n.*, judgment, decision, opinion; trial. 19
iūdicō (1), judge, consider
iungō, -ere, iūnxī, iūnctum, join. 13
Iuppiter, Iovis, *m.*, Jupiter, Jove
iūrō (1), swear

iūs, iūris, *n.*, right, justice, law. 14; iūs iūrandum, iūris iūrandī, *n.*, oath
iussū, *defective noun, abl. sg. only, m.*, at the command of
iūstus, -a, -um, just, right. 40
iuvenis, -is (*gen. pl.* iuvenum), *m./f.*, a youth, young person
iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtum, help, aid, assist; please. 4

L

lābor, -ī, lāpsus sum, slip, glide
labor, -bōris, *m.*, labor, work, toil. 7
labōrō (1), labor; be in distress. 21
labrum, -ī, *n.*, lip
lacessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum, harass, attack
lacrima, -ae, *f.*, tear. 40
lacūnar, -nāris, *n.*, paneled ceiling
laetāns, *gen.* -tantis, *adj.*, rejoicing
laetus, -a, -um, happy, joyful
Latīnus, -a, -um, Latin. 22
laudātor, -tōris, *m.*, praiser
laudō (1), praise. 1
laus, laudis, *f.*, praise, glory, fame. 8
lēctor, -tōris, *m.*, lēctrīx, -trīcis, *f.*, reader. 36
lectus, -ī, *m.*, bed
lēgātus, -ī, *m.*, ambassador, deputy
legiō, -ōnis, *f.*, legion
legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctum, pick out, choose; read. 18
lēnis, -e, smooth, gentle, kind
lentē, *adv.*, slowly
Lentulus, -ī, *m.*, P. Cornelius Lentulus Sura, chief conspirator under Catiline, left in charge of the conspiracy when Catiline was forced to flee from Rome
Lesbia, -ae, *f.*, Lesbia, the name which Catullus gave to his sweetheart
levis, -e, light; easy, slight, trivial. 17
lēx, lēgis, *f.*, law, statute. 26
libellus, -ī, *m.*, little book. 17
libenter, *adv.*, with pleasure, gladly. 38
līber, -era, -erum, free. 5
liber, -brī, *m.*, book. 6
līberālis, -e, of, relating to a free person; worthy of a free man, decent, liberal, generous. 39
līberālitās, -tātis, *f.*, generosity, liberality
līberātor, -tōris, *m.*, liberator
līberē, *adv.*, freely. 32
līberī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, (one's) children
līberō (1), free, liberate. 19
lībertās, -tātis, *f.*, liberty, freedom. 8

libō (1), pour a libation of, on; pour ritually; sip; touch gently. 39

licet, licēre, licuit, *impers.* + *dat. and inf.,* it is permitted, one may. 37

ligō (1), bind, tie

līmen, -minis, *n.,* threshold. 26

lingua, -ae, *f.,* tongue; language. 25

linteum, -ī, *n.,* linen, napkin

littera, -ae, *f.,* a letter of the alphabet; **litterae, -ārum,** a letter (epistle); literature. 7

lītus, -toris, *n.,* shore, coast. 23

locō (1), place, put

locuplētō (1), enrich

locus, -ī, *m.,* place; passage in literature; *pl.,* **loca, -ōrum,** *n.,* places, region; **locī, -ōrum,** *m.,* passages in literature. 9

longē, *adv.,* far. 32

longinquitās, -tātis, *f.,* distance, remoteness

longus, -a, -um, long. 16

loquāx, *gen.* **-quācis,** *adj.,* talkative, loquacious

loquor, -ī, locūtus sum, say, speak, tell, talk. 34

lucrum, -ī, *n.,* gain, profit

lūdō, -ere, lūsī, lūsum, play

lūdus, -ī, *m.,* game, sport; school. 18

lūna, -ae, *f.,* moon. 28

lupus, -ī, *m.,* wolf

lūx, lūcis, *f.,* light. 26

luxuria, -ae, *f.,* luxury, extravagance

M

Maecēnās, -ātis, *m.,* Maecenas, unofficial "prime minister" of Augustus, and patron and friend of Horace

magis, *adv.,* more, rather

magister, -trī, *m.,* master, schoolmaster, teacher. 4

magistra, -ae, *f.,* mistress, schoolmistress. 4

magnanimus, -a, -um, great-hearted, brave, magnanimous. 23

magnopere, *adv.,* greatly, exceedingly
(*comp.* **magis;** *superl.* **maximē**). 32

magnus, -a, -um, large, great; important. 2
(*comp.* **maior;** *superl.* **maximus.** 27);
maiōrēs, -um, *m. pl.,* ancestors. 27

maiestās, -tātis, *f.,* greatness, dignity, majesty

maior. *See* **magnus.**

maiōrēs, -um, *m. pl.,* ancestors. 27

male, *adv.,* badly, ill, wrongly
(*comp.* **peius;** *superl.* **pessimē**). 32

mālō, mālle, māluī, to want (something) more, instead; prefer. 32

malum, -ī, *n.,* evil, misfortune, hurt, injury. 30

malus, -a, -um, bad, wicked, evil. 4
(*comp.* **peior;** *superl.* **pessimus.** 27)

mandātum, -ī, *n.,* order, command, instruction

maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsum, remain, stay, abide, continue. 5

manus, -ūs, *f.,* hand; handwriting; band. 20

Mārcellus, -ī, *m.,* Marcellus, Roman general who captured Syracuse in 212 B.C.

Mārcus, -ī, *m.,* Marcus, a common Roman first name, usually abbreviated to M. in writing

mare, -is, *n.,* sea. 14

marītus, -ī, *m.,* husband

māter, -tris, *f.,* mother. 12

māteria, -ae, *f.,* material, matter

mātrimōnium, -iī, *n.,* marriage

maximus. *See* **magnus.**

medicus, -ī, *m.,* **medica, -ae,** *f.,* doctor, physician. 12

mediocris, -e, ordinary, moderate, mediocre. 31

meditor, -ārī, -ātus sum, reflect upon, practice

medius, -a, -um, middle; *used partitively,* the middle of. 22

mel, mellis, *n.,* honey

melior. *See* **bonus.**

meminī, meminisse, *defective,* remember

memor, *gen.* **-moris,** *adj.,* mindful

memoria, -ae, *f.,* memory, recollection. 15

mendōsus, -a, -um, full of faults, faulty

mēns, mentis, *f.,* mind, thought, intention. 16

mēnsa, -ae, *f.,* table; dining; dish, course; **mēnsa secunda,** dessert. 26

mēnsis, -is, *m.,* month

mercēs, -cēdis, *f.,* pay, reward, recompense

merīdiānus, -a, -um, of midday, noon; southern

merus, -a, -um, pure, undiluted. 33

mēta, -ae, *f.,* turning point, goal, limit, boundary. 40

metuō, -ere, metuī, fear, dread; be afraid for + *dat.* 38

metus, -ūs, *m.,* fear, dread, anxiety. 20

meus, -a, -um (*m. voc.* **mī**), my. 2

mīles, mīlitis, *m.,* soldier. 23

mīlitāris, -e, military

mīlle, *indecl. adj. in sg.,* thousand; **mīlia, -ium,** *n., pl. noun,* thousands. 15

minimus. *See* **parvus.**

minor. *See* **parvus.**

minuō, -ere, minuī, minūtum, lessen, diminish. 30

mīrābilis, -e, amazing, wondrous, remarkable. 38

mīror, -ārī, -ātus sum, marvel at, admire, wonder. 35

mīrus, -a, -um, wonderful, surprising, extraordinary

misceō, -ēre, miscuī, mixtum, mix, stir up, disturb. 18

miser, -era, -erum, wretched, miserable, unfortunate. 15

miserē, *adv.*, wretchedly

misericordia, -ae, *f.*, pity, mercy

mītēscō, -ere, become *or* grow mild

mītis, -e, mild, gentle; ripe

mittō, -ere, mīsī, missum, send, let go. 11

modo, *adv.*, now, just now, only; **modo . . . modo,** at one time . . . at another

modus, -ī, *m.*, measure, bound, limit; manner, method, mode, way. 22

moenia, -ium, *n. pl.*, walls of a city. 29

molestus, -a, -um, troublesome, disagreeable, annoying

mōlior, -īrī, mōlītus sum, work at, build, undertake, plan. 34

molliō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, soften; make calm *or* less hostile. 29

mollis, -e, soft, mild, weak

moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, remind, warn, advise, 1; **moneō eum ut** + *subj.* 36

monitiō, -ōnis, *f.*, admonition, warning

mōns, montis, *m.*, mountain. 20

mōnstrum, -ī, *n.*, portent; monster

monumentum, -ī, *n.*, monument. 40

mora, -ae, *f.*, delay. 4

morbus, -ī, *m.*, disease, sickness. 9

morior, -ī, mortuus sum, die. 34

mors, mortis, *f.*, death. 14

mortālis, -e, mortal. 18

mortuus, -a, -um, dead. 28

mōs, mōris, *m.*, habit, custom, manner; **mōrēs, mōrum,** habits, morals, character. 7

moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum, move; arouse, affect. 18

mox, *adv.*, soon. 30

mulier, -eris, *f.*, woman. 39

multō (1), punish, fine

multum, *adv.*, much (*comp.* plūs; *superl.* plūrimum). 32

multus, -a, -um, much, many, 2 (*comp.* plūs; *superl.* plūrimus. 27)

mundus, -ī, *m.*, world, universe. 21

mūnīmentum, -ī, *n.*, fortification, protection

mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, fortify, defend; build (a road)

mūnus, -neris, *n.*, service, office, function, duty; gift

mūs, mūris, *m./f.*, mouse

Mūsa, -ae, *f.*, a Muse (one of the goddesses of poetry, music, etc.)

mūtātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, change

mūtō (1), change, alter; exchange. 14

N

nam, *conj.*, for. 13

nārrō (1), tell, narrate, report. 24

nāscor, -ī, nātus sum, be born, spring forth, arise. 34

nāsus, -ī, *m.*, nose. 40

nāta, -ae, *f.*, daughter. 29

nātālis, -is (*sc.* diēs), *m.*, birthday

nātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, nation, people

nātūra, -ae, *f.*, nature. 10

nauta, -ae, *m.*, sailor. 2

nāvigātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, voyage, navigation

nāvigō (1), sail, navigate. 17

nāvis, -is, *f.*, ship. 21

nē, *conj. with subj.*, that . . . not, in order that . . . not, in order not to, 28, 36; that, 40; *adv. in* **nē . . . quidem,** not . . . even. 29

-ne, *enclitic added to the emphatic word at the beginning of a question the answer to which may be either "yes" or "no." It can be used in both direct and indirect questions.* 5

nec. See neque.

necessārius, -a, -um, necessary

necesse, *indecl. adj.*, necessary, inevitable. 39

necō (1), murder, kill. 7

nefās (*indecl.*), *n.*, wrong, sin

neglegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum, neglect, disregard. 17

negō (1), deny, say that . . . not. 25

nēmō, (nullīus), nēminī, nēminem, (nūllō, -ā), *m./f.*, no one, nobody. 11

nepōs, -pōtis, *m.*, grandson, descendant. 27

neque *or* nec, *conj.*, and not, nor; **neque . . . neque,** neither . . . nor. 11

nesciō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, not to know, be ignorant. 25

neuter, -tra, -trum, not either, neither. 9

nēve, and not, nor (*used to continue* ut *or* nē + *subj.*)

niger, -gra, -grum, black

nihil (*indecl.*), *n.*, nothing. 1, 4

nihilum, -ī, *n.*, nothing

nimis *or* nimium, *adv.*, too, too much, excessively. 9

nisi, if . . . not, unless, except. 19

niveus, -a, -um, snowy, white

noceō, -ēre, nocuī, nocitum + *dat.*, do harm to, harm, injure. 35

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, not . . . wish, be unwilling. 32

nōmen, nōminis, *n.*, name. 7

nōn, *adv.*, not. 1

nōndum, *adv.*, not yet

nōnne, *interrog. adv. which introduces questions expecting the answer "yes."* 40

nōnnūllus, -a, -um, some, several

nōnnumquam, sometimes

nōnus, -a, -um, ninth

nōs. *See* ego.

nōscō. *See* cognōscō.

noster, -tra, -trum, our, ours. 5

notārius, -iī, *m.*, writer of shorthand, stenographer

novem, *indecl. adj.*, nine. 15

novus, -a, -um, new, strange. 7

nox, noctis, *f.*, night. 26

nūbēs, -is, *f.*, cloud. 14

nūbō, -ere, nūpsī, nūptum, cover, veil; + dat. (*of a bride*) be married to, marry. 35

nūllus, -a, -um, not any, no, none. 9

num, *interrogative adv.:* (1) *introduces direct questions which expect the answer "no"; (2) introduces indirect questions and means* whether. 40

numerus, -ī, *m.*, number. 3

numquam, *adv.*, never. 8

nunc, *adv.*, now, at present. 6

nūntiō (1), announce, report, relate. 25

nūntius, -iī, *m.*, messenger, message

nūper, *adv.*, recently. 12

nūtriō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, nourish, rear

O

Ō, *interjection,* O!, oh! 2

obdūrō (1), be hard, persist, endure

obeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, go up against, meet; die. 37

obiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, offer; cite (*as grounds for condemnation*)

oblectō (1), please, amuse, delight; pass time pleasantly. 36

obruō, -ere, -ruī, -rutum, overwhelm, destroy

obsequium, -iī, *n.*, compliance

obstinātus, -a, -um, firm, resolved

occāsiō, -ōnis, *f.*, occasion, opportunity. 28

occidō, -ere, -cidī, -cāsum (cadō, fall), fall down; die; set (*of the sun*). 31

occīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum (caedō, cut), cut down; kill, slay

occultē, *adv.*, secretly

occupō (1), seize

oculus, -ī, *m.*, eye. 4

ōdī, ōdisse, ōsūrum (*defective vb.*), hate. 20

odium, -iī, *n.*, hatred. 38

Oedipūs, -podis, *m.*, Oedipus, Greek mythical figure said to have murdered his father and married his mother

offerō, -ferre, obtulī, oblātum, offer. 31

officium, -iī, *n.*, duty, service. 4

ōlim, *adv.*, at that time, once, formerly; in the future. 13

omittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, let go, omit

omnīnō, *adv.*, wholly, entirely, altogether. 40

omnipotēns, *gen.* -tentis, *adj.*, all-powerful, omnipotent

omnis, -e, every, all. 16

onerō (1), burden, load

onus, oneris, *n.*, burden, load

opera, -ae, *f.*, work, pains, help

opīnor, -ārī, -ātus sum, suppose. 40

oportet, -ēre, oportuit (*impers.*), it is necessary, proper, right. 39

oppōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, set against, oppose

opportūnē, *adv.*, opportunely

opportūnus, -a, -um, fit, suitable, advantageous, opportune

opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum, suppress, overwhelm, overpower, check. 23

opprobrium, -iī, *n.*, reproach, taunt, disgrace

oppugnō (1), fight against, attack, assault, assail. 39

ops, opis, *f.*, help, aid; opēs, opum, power, resources, wealth. 33

optimus. *See* bonus.

optō (1), wish for, desire

opus, operis, *n.*, a work, task; deed, accomplishment. 38

ōrātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, speech. 38

ōrātor, -tōris, *m.*, orator, speaker. 23

orbis, -is, *m.*, circle, orb; orbis terrārum, the world, the earth

ōrdō, ōrdinis, *m.*, rank, class, order

orior, -īrī, ortus sum, arise, begin, proceed, originate

ōrnō (1), equip, furnish, adorn. 39

ōrō (1), speak, plead; beg, beseech, entreat, pray. 36

ōs, ōris, *n.*, mouth, face. 14

ōsculum, -ī, *n.*, kiss. 29

ostendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum, exhibit, show, display. 23

ōstium, -iī, *n.*, entrance, door

ōtium, -iī, *n.,* leisure, peace. 4

ovis, -is, *f.,* sheep

P

paedagōgus, -ī, *m.,* slave who attended children (*particularly at school*)

pāgānus, -ī, *m.,* a countryman, peasant; pagan

palam, *adv.,* openly, plainly

palma, -ae, *f.,* palm

pānis, -is, *m.,* bread

pār, *gen.* **paris,** *adj.,* equal, like. 32

parcō, -ere, peperci, parsūrum + *dat.,* be lenient to, spare. 35

parēns, -rentis, *m./f.,* parent. 28

pāreō, -ēre, -uī + *dat.,* be obedient to, obey. 35

pariēs, -ietis, *m.,* wall

pariō, -ere, peperī, partum, beget, produce

parmula, -ae, *f.,* little shield

parō (1), prepare, provide; get, obtain. 19

pars, partis, *f.,* part, share; direction. 14

parum, *adv.,* little, too little, not very (much) (*comp.* **minus;** *superl.* **minimē**). 32

parvus, -a, -um, small, little, 4 (*comp.* **minor;** *superl.* **minimus.** 27)

passer, -seris, *m.,* sparrow

patefaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factum, make open, open; disclose, expose. 25

pateō, -ēre, -uī, be open, lie open; be accessible; be evident. 32

pater, -tris, *m.,* father. 12

patiēns, *gen.* **-entis,** *adj.,* patient; + *gen.,* capable of enduring

patientia, -ae, *f.,* suffering; patience, endurance. 12

patior, -ī, passus sum, suffer, endure; permit. 34

patria, -ae, *f.,* fatherland, native land, (one's) country. 2

patrōnus, -ī, *m.,* patron, protector

paucī, -ae, -a, *usually pl.,* few, a few. 3

pauper, *gen.* **-peris,** *adj.,* of small means, poor. 32

paupertās, -tātis, *f.,* poverty, humble circumstances. 32

pāx, pācis, *f.,* peace. 7

peccō (1), sin, do wrong

pectus, -toris, *n.,* breast, heart. 35

pecūnia, -ae, *f.,* money. 2

pelor. *See* **malus.**

pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsum, strike, push; drive out, banish. 24

per, *prep.* + *acc.,* through; *with reflex. pron.,* by. 13

percipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, gain, learn, perceive

perdō, -ere, perdidī, perditum, destroy, ruin, lose

pereō, -īre, -iī, -itum, pass away, be destroyed, perish. 37

peregrīnor, peregrīnārī, peregrīnātus sum, travel abroad, wander. 37

perfectus, -a, -um, complete, perfect

perferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, bear, endure, suffer

perficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, do thoroughly, accomplish, bring about

perfugium, -iī, *n.,* refuge, shelter. 24

perīculōsus, -a, -um, dangerous

perīculum, -ī, *n.,* danger, risk. 4

perimō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēmptum, destroy

perītus, -a, -um, skilled, expert

permittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, permit, allow

perniciōsus, -a, -um, destructive, pernicious

pernoctō (1), spend *or* occupy the night. 39

perpetuus, -a, -um, perpetual, lasting, uninterrupted, continuous. 6

perscrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum, write out, place on record

persequor, -ī, -secūtus sum, follow up, pursue, take vengeance on

Persicus, -a, -um, Persian

persuādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsum, succeed in urging, persuade, convince

perterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, frighten thoroughly, terrify

pertineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum, pertain to, relate to, concern

perturbō (1), throw into confusion, trouble, disturb, perturb

perveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum + **ad,** come through to, arrive at, reach

pēs, pedis, *m.,* lower leg, foot. 38

pessimus. *See* **malus.**

pestis, -is, *f.,* plague, pestilence, curse, destruction

petō, -ere, petīvī, petītum, seek, aim at, beg, beseech, 23; **petō ab eō ut** + *subj.* 36

philosophia, -ae, *f.,* philosophy, love of wisdom. 2

philosophus, -ī, *m.,* **philosopha, -ae,** *f.,* philosopher. 33

piger, -gra, -grum, lazy, slow, dull

pīpiō (1), chirp, pipe

piscātor, -tōris, *m.,* fisherman

piscis, -is, *m.,* fish

placeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum + *dat.,* be pleasing to, please. 35

plācō (1), placate, appease

plānē, *adv.*, plainly, clearly
platea, -ae, *f.*, broad way, street
Platō, -tōnis, *m.*, Plato, the renowned Greek philosopher
plēbs, plēbis, *f.*, the common people, populace, plebeians. 33
plēnus, -a, -um, full, abundant, generous. 6
plūrimus. *See* **multus.**
plūs. *See* **multus.**
poēma, -matis, *n.*, poem
poena, -ae, *f.*, penalty, punishment; **poenās dare**, pay the penalty. 2
poēta, -ae, *m.*, poet. 2
pōmum, -ī, *n.*, fruit, apple
pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum, put, place, set. 27
pōns, pontis, *m.*, bridge
populus, -ī, *m.*, the people, a people, nation. 3
porta, -ae, *f.*, gate, entrance. 2
possessiō, -ōnis, *f.*, possession, property
possum, posse, potuī, be able, can, have power. 6
post, *prep.* + *acc.*, after, behind. 7
posteā, *adv.*, afterwards. 24
postpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, put after, consider secondary
postquam, *conj.*, after
postrēmum, *adv.*, after all, finally; for the last time. 40
potēns, *gen.* **-tentis**, *pres. part. of* **possum** *as adj.*, able, powerful, mighty, strong. 16
potestās, -tātis, *f.*, power, ability, opportunity
potior, -īrī, potītus sum + *gen.* or *abl.*, get possession of, possess, hold
potius, *adv.*, rather, preferably
prae, *prep.* + *abl.*, in front of, before. 26
praebeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, offer, provide. 32
praeceptum, -ī, *n.*, precept
praeclārus, -a, -um, noble, distinguished, famous, remarkable
praeferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, bear before, display; place before, prefer
praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, put in charge of
praemittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, send ahead *or* forward
praemium, -iī, *n.*, reward, prize. 35
praesidium, -iī, *n.*, guard, detachment, protection
praestō, -āre, -stitī, -stitum, excel (+ *dat.*); exhibit, show, offer, supply. 28
praesum, -esse, -fuī, be at the head of, be in charge of
praeter, *prep.* + *acc.*, besides, except; beyond, past. 40

praetereō, -īre, -iī, -itum, go by, pass, omit
praeteritus, -a, -um, *perf. part. of* **praetereō** *as adj.*, past
premō, -ere, pressī, pressum, press; press hard, pursue. 23
pretium, -iī, *n.*, price, value, reward
prex, precis, *f.*, prayer
prīmō, *adv.*, at first, first, at the beginning. 30
prīmum, *adv.*, first, in the first place; **quam prīmum**, as soon as possible
prīmus. *See* **prior.** 27
prīnceps, *gen.* **-cipis**, chief; *m./f. noun*, leader, prince, emperor. 28
prīncipium, -iī, *n.*, beginning. 12
prior, prius, *comp. adj.*, former, prior; **prīmus, -a, -um**, first, foremost, chief, principal. 27
prīstinus, -a, -um, ancient, former, previous. 38
prius, *adv.*, before, previously
prīvātus, -ī, *m.*, private citizen
prīvō (1), deprive
prō, *prep.* + *abl.*, in front of, before, on behalf of, in return for, instead of, for, as. 12
probitās, -tātis, *f.*, uprightness, honesty, probity. 18
probō (1), approve; recommend; test. 27
prōcōnsul, -sulis, *m.*, proconsul, governor of a province
prōditor, -tōris, *m.*, betrayer, traitor
proelium, -iī, *n.*, battle
prōferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, bring forward, produce, make known, extend
proficīscor, -ī, -fectus sum, set out, start. 34
profor, -ārī, -ātus sum, speak out
prōfundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsum, pour forth
prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, prevent, hinder, restrain, prohibit. 20
prōiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, throw forward *or* out
prōmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, send forth, promise. 32
prōnūntiō (1), proclaim, announce; declaim; pronounce. 20
prōpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, put forward, propose
proprius, -a, -um, one's own, peculiar, proper, personal, characteristic
propter, *prep.* + *acc.*, on account of, because of. 5
prōtinus, *adv.*, immediately. 22
prōvideō, -ēre, -vīdī, -vīsum, foresee, provide, make provision
proximus, -a, -um (*superl. of* **propior**), nearest, next
prūdēns, *gen.* **-dentis**, *adj.*, wise, prudent
prūdenter, *adv.*, wisely, discreetly

prūdentia, -ae, *f.,* foresight, wisdom, discretion
pūblicus, -a, -um, of the people, public;
   rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, *f.,* the state
pudīcus, -a, -um, modest, chaste. 26
pudor, -dōris, *m.,* modesty, bashfulness
puella, -ae, *f.,* girl. 2
puer, puerī, *m.,* boy; *pl.* boys, children. 3
puerīliter, *adv.,* childishly, foolishly
pugna, -ae, *f.,* fight, battle
pugnō (1), fight. 29
pulcher, -chra, -chrum, beautiful, handsome;
   fine. 5
pulchrē, *adv.,* beautifully, finely. 32
pulchritūdō, -dinis, *f.,* beauty
pūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, punish
pūrgō (1), cleanse
pūrus, -a, -um, pure, free from
putō (1), reckon, suppose, judge, think,
   imagine. 25
Pȳthagorās, -ae, *m.,* Pythagoras, Greek
   philosopher and mathematician of 6th cen. B.C.

Q

quā, *adv.,* by which route, where
quadrāgintā, *indecl. adj.,* forty
quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesītum, seek, look for,
   strive for; ask, inquire, inquire into. 24
quam, *adv.,* how, 16; *conj.,* than, 26; as . . . as
   possible (*with superl.*), 26
quamvīs, *adv. and conj.,* however much, however;
   although
quandō, *interrogative and rel. adv. and conj.,* when;
   sī quandō, if ever. 5
quantus, -a, -um, how large, how great, how
   much. 30
quārē, *adv.,* because of which thing, therefore,
   wherefore, why. 6
quārtus, -a, -um, fourth. 15
quasi, *adv. or conj.,* as if, as it were. 39
quattuor, *indecl. adj.,* four. 15
-que, *enclitic conj.,* and. *It is appended to the*
   second of two words to be joined. 6
quemadmodum, *adv.,* in what manner, how
queror, -ī, questus sum, complain, lament. 38
quī, quae, quod, *rel. pron.,* who, which, what,
   that. 17
quī? quae? quod?, *interrog. adj.,* what? which? what
   kind of? 19
quia, *conj.,* since, because
quid, what, why. *See* **quis.**

quīdam, quaedam, quiddam (*pron.*) *or* **quoddam**
   (*adj.*), *indef. pron. and adj.: as pron.,* a certain
   one *or* thing, someone, something; *as adj.,* a
   certain. 26
quidem, *postpositive adv.,* indeed, certainly, at
   least, even; **nē . . . quidem,** not even. 29
quiēs, -ētis, *f.,* quiet, rest, peace
quīn, *adv.,* indeed, in fact. 40
quīn etiam, *adv.,* why even, in fact, moreover
Quīntus, -ī, *m.,* Quintus, a Roman praenomen,
   abbreviated to Q. in writing
quis? quid?, *interrogative pron.,* who? what? which?
   19
quis, quid, *indef. pron., after* **sī, nisi, nē,** *and* **num,**
   anyone, anything, someone, something. 33
quisquam, quidquam (*or* **quicquam**), *indef. pron.*
   and adj., anyone, anything
quisque, quidque, *indef. pron.,* each one, each
   person, each thing. 13
quisquis, quidquid, *indef. pron.,* whoever,
   whatever. 23
quō, *adv.,* to which *or* what place, whither, where
quod, *conj.,* because. 11
quōmodo, *adv.,* in what way, how
quondam, *adv.,* formerly, once. 22
quoniam, *conj.,* since, inasmuch as. 10
quoque, *adv.,* also, too. 17
quot, *indecl. adj.,* how many, as many. 27
quotiēnscumque, *adv.,* however often, whenever

R

rapiō, -ere, rapuī, raptum, seize, snatch, carry
   away. 21
rārus, -a, -um, rare
ratiō, -ōnis, *f.,* reckoning, account; reason,
   judgment, consideration; system, manner,
   method. 8
recēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, go back, retire, recede
recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, take back, regain;
   admit, receive. 24
recitō (1), read aloud, recite. 17
recognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum, recognize,
   recollect. 38
recordātiō, -ōnis, *f.,* recollection
recreō (1), restore, revive; refresh, cheer. 36
rēctus, -a, -um, straight, right; **rēctum, -ī,** *n.,* the
   right, virtue
recuperātiō, -ōnis, *f.,* recovery
recuperō (1), regain
recūsō (1), refuse. 33

reddō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, give back, return
redeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, go back, return. 37
redūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead back, bring back
referō, -ferre, -ttulī, -lātum, carry back, bring
 back; repeat, answer, report. 31
rēgīna, -ae, *f.,* queen. 7
rēgius, -a, -um, royal
rēgnum, -ī, *n.,* rule, authority, kingdom
regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctum, rule, guide, direct. 16
relegō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum, read again, reread
relevō (1), relieve, alleviate, diminish
relinquō, -ere, -līquī, -lictum, leave behind, leave,
 abandon. 21
remaneō, -ēre, -mānsī, -mānsum, remain, stay
 behind, abide, continue. 5
remedium, -iī, *n.,* cure, remedy. 4
remissiō, -ōnis, *f.,* letting go, release; relaxation. 34
removeō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, remove
repente, *adv.,* suddenly. 30
reperiō, -īre, -pperī, -pertum, find, discover, learn;
 get. 40
repetītiō, -ōnis, *f.,* repetition
repetō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum, seek again, repeat
rēpō, -ere, rēpsī, rēptum, creep, crawl
repugnō (1) + *dat.,* fight against, be incompatible
 with
requiēscō, -ere, -quiēvī, -quiētum, rest. 37
requīrō, -ere, -quīsīvī, -sītum, seek, ask for; miss,
 need, require. 36
rēs, reī, *f.,* thing, matter, business, affair; **rēs**
 pūblica, reī pūblicae, state, commonwealth. 22
resistō, -ere, -stitī, make a stand, resist, oppose
respondeō, -ēre, -spondī, -spōnsum, answer. 29
restituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtum, restore
retrahō, -ere, -trāxī, -tractum, drag *or* draw back
reveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, come back, return
revertor, -ī, -vertī (*perf. is act.*), **-versum,** return
revocō (1), call back, recall
rēx, rēgis, *m.,* king. 7
rhētoricus, -a, -um, of rhetoric, rhetorical
rīdeō, -ēre, rīsī, rīsum, laugh, laugh at. 24
rīdiculus, -a, -um, laughable, ridiculous. 30
rogō (1), ask, ask for. 30; **rogō eum ut** + *subj.,* 36
Rōma, -ae, *f.,* Rome. 14
Rōmānus, -a, -um, Roman. 3
rosa, -ae, *f.,* rose. 2
rōstrum, -ī, *n.,* beak of a ship; **Rōstra, -ōrum,** the
 Rostra, speaker's platform
rota, -ae, *f.,* wheel
rotundus, -a, -um, wheel-shaped, round

rūmor, -mōris, *m.,* rumor, gossip. 31
ruō, -ere, ruī, rutum, rush, fall, be ruined
rūs, rūris, *n.,* the country, countryside. 37
rūsticor, -ārī, -ātus sum, live in the country. 34
rūsticus, -a, -um, rustic, rural

S

sabbatum, -ī, *n.,* the Sabbath
sacculus, -ī, *n.,* little bag, purse
sacrificium, -iī, *n.,* sacrifice
sacerdōs, sacerdōtis, *m.,* priest. 23
sacrilegus, -a, -um, sacrilegious, impious
saepe, *adv.,* often. 1
saeta equīna, -ae -ae, *f.,* horse-hair
sagitta, -ae, *f.,* arrow
sāl, salis, *m.,* salt; wit. 33
salsus, -a, -um, salty, witty
salūbris, -e, healthy, salubrious
salūs, salūtis, *f.,* health, safety; greeting. 21
salūtō (1), greet
salveō, -ēre, be well, be in good health. 1
salvus, -a, -um, safe, sound. 6
sānctificō (1), sanctify, treat as holy
sānctus, -a, -um, sacred, holy
sānitās, -tātis, *f.,* health, soundness of mind, sanity
sānō (1), heal
sānus, -a, -um, sound, healthy, sane. 5
sapiēns, gen. -entis, adj., wise, judicious; *as a noun,*
 m., a wise man, philosopher. 25
sapienter, *adv.,* wisely, sensibly. 32
sapientia, -ae, *f.,* wisdom. 3
sapiō, -ere, sapīvī, have good taste; have good
 sense, be wise. 35
satiō (1), satisfy, sate. 3
satis, *indecl. noun, adj., and adv.,* enough,
 sufficient(ly). 5
sator, -tōris, *m.,* sower, planter; begetter, father. 38
satura, -ae, *f.,* satire. 16
saxum, -ī, *n.,* rock, stone. 40
scabiēs, -ēī, *f.,* the itch, mange
scelerātus, -a, -um, criminal, wicked, accursed
scelestus, -a, -um, wicked, accursed, infamous
scelus, -leris, *n.,* evil deed, crime, sin, wickedness.
 19
schola, -ae, *f.,* school
scientia, -ae, *f.,* knowledge, science, skill. 18
sciō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, know. 21
scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptum, write, compose. 8
scrīptor, -tōris, *m.,* writer, author. 8
sēcernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētum, separate

secundus, -a, -um, second; favorable. 6
sēcūrus, -a, -um, free from care, untroubled, safe
sed, *conj.*, but. 2
sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sessum, sit. 34
sēductor, -tōris, *m.* *(ecclesiastical Lat.)*, seducer
semel, *adv.*, a single time, once, once and for all, simultaneously. 31
semper, *adv.*, always. 3
senātor, -tōris, *m.*, senator
senātus, -ūs, *m.*, senate. 20
senectūs, -tūtis, *f.*, old age. 10
senex, senis, *adj. and n.*, old, aged; old man. 16
sēnsus, -ūs, *m.*, feeling, sense. 20
sententia, -ae, *f.*, feeling, thought, opinion, vote; sentence. 2
sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsum, feel, perceive, think, experience. 11
septem, *indecl. adj.*, seven. 15
sepulchrum, -ī, *n.*, grave, tomb
sequor, -ī, secūtus sum, follow. 34
serēnō (1), make clear, brighten; cheer up, soothe. 36
sēriō, *adv.*, seriously
sērius, -a, -um, serious, grave
sermō, -mōnis, *m.*, conversation, talk
serō, -ere, sēvī, satum, sow
serviō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum + *dat.*, be a slave to, serve. 35
servitūs, -tūtis, *f.*, servitude, slavery. 20
servō (1), preserve, keep, save, guard. 1
servus, -ī, *m.*, *and* serva, -ae, *f.*, slave. 24
sevēritās, -tātis, *f.*, severity, sternness, strictness
sī, *conj.*, if. 1
sīc, *adv. (most commonly with verbs)*, so, thus. 29
sīcut, *adv. and conj.*, as, just as, as it were
sīdus, -deris, *n.*, constellation, star. 29
signum, -ī, *n.*, sign, signal, indication; seal. 13
silentium, -iī, *n.*, silence
silva, -ae, *f.*, forest, wood
similis, -e, similar to, like, resembling. 27
simplex, *gen.* -plicis, *adj.*, simple, unaffected
simulātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, pretense
sine, *prep.* + *abl.*, without. 2
singulī, -ae, -a, *pl.*, one each, single, separate
singultim, *adv.*, stammeringly
sinister, -tra, -trum, left, left-hand; harmful, ill-omened. 20
sitiō, -īre, -īvī, be thirsty
socius, -iī, *m.*, companion, ally
Sōcratēs, -is, *m.*, Socrates

sōl, sōlis, *m.*, sun. 27
sōlācium, -iī, *n.*, comfort, relief. 24
soleō, -ēre, solitus sum, be accustomed. 37
sōlitūdō, -dinis, *f.*, solitude, loneliness
sollicitō (1), stir up, arouse, incite
sollicitūdō, -dinis, *f.*, anxiety, concern, solicitude
sollicitus, -a, -um, troubled, anxious, disturbed
Solōn, -lōnis, *m.*, Solon, Athenian sage and statesman of the 7th-6th cen. B.C.
sōlum, *adv.*, only, merely; nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam, not only . . . but also. 9
sōlus, -a, -um, alone, only, the only. 9
somnus, -ī, *m.*, sleep. 26
Sophoclēs, -is, *m.*, Sophocles, one of the three greatest writers of Greek tragedy
sopor, -pōris, *m.*, deep sleep
sordēs, -dium, *f. pl.*, filth; meanness, stinginess
soror, -rōris, *f.*, sister. 8
spargō, -ere, sparsī, sparsum, scatter, spread, strew
spectāculum, -ī, *n.*, spectacle, show
spectō (1), look at, see. 34
speculum, -ī, *n.*, mirror. 33
spernō, -ere, sprēvī, sprētum, scorn, despise, spurn
spērō (1), hope for, hope. 25
spēs, -eī, *f.*, hope. 22
spīritus, -ūs, *m.*, breath, breathing; spirit, soul. 20
stabilis, -e, stable, steadfast
stadium, -iī, *n.*, stadium
statim, *adv.*, immediately, at once
statua, -ae, *f.*, statue
stēlla, -ae, *f.*, star, planet. 28
stilus, -ī, *m.*, stilus *(for writing)*
stō, stāre, stetī, statum, stand, stand still *or* firm. 13
studeō, -ēre, -uī + *dat.*, direct one's zeal to, be eager for, study. 35
studiōsus, -a, -um, full of zeal, eager, fond of
studium, -iī, *n.*, eagerness, zeal, pursuit, study. 9
stultus, -a, -um, foolish; stultus, -ī, *m.*, a fool. 4
suāvis, -e, sweet. 33
sub, *prep.* + *abl. with verbs of rest,* + *acc. with verbs of motion,* under, up under, close to. 7
subitō, *adv.*, suddenly. 33
subitus, -a, -um, sudden
subiungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnctum, subject, subdue
sublīmis, sublīme, elevated, lofty; heroic, noble. 38
subrīdeō, -rīdēre, -rīsī, -rīsum, smile (down) upon. 35
succurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursum, run up under, help
sufficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, be sufficient, suffice

suī (sibi, sē, sē), *reflex. pron. of 3rd pers.,* himself, herself, itself, themselves. 13

sum, esse, fuī, futūrum, be, exist. 4; **est, sunt** *may mean* there is, there are. 1

summa, -ae, *f.,* highest part, sum, whole

summus, -a, -um. *See* **superus.**

sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum, take, take up, assume

sūmptus, -ūs, *m.,* expense, cost

supellex, -lectilis, *f.,* furniture, apparatus

superbus, -a, -um, arrogant, overbearing, haughty, proud. 26

superior. *See* **superus.**

superō (1), be above, have the upper hand, surpass, overcome, conquer. 5

superus, -a, -um, above, upper; **superī, -ōrum,** *m.,* the gods (*comp.* **superior, -ius,** higher; *superl.* **suprēmus, -a, -um,** last, *or* **summus, -a, -um,** highest). 27

supplicium, -iī, *n.,* punishment

suprā, *adv. and prep.* + *acc.,* above

suprēmus. *See* **superus.**

surculus, -ī, *m.,* shoot, sprout

surgō, -ere, surrēxī, surrēctum, get up, arise. 29

suscipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, undertake. 25

suspendō, -ere, -pendī, -pēnsum, hang up, suspend; interrupt. 38

sustineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum, hold up, sustain, endure

suus, -a, -um, *reflexive possessive adj. of 3rd pers.,* his own, her own, its own, their own. 13

synagōga, -ae, *f.,* synagogue

Syrācūsae, -ārum, *f. pl.,* Syracuse. 37

T

tabella, -ae, *f.,* writing tablet; **tabellae, -ārum,** letter, document

taceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, be silent, leave unmentioned. 28

tālis, -e, such, of such a sort. 34

tam, *adv. used with adjs. and advs.,* so, to such a degree; **tam . . . quam,** so . . . as. 29

tamen, *adv.,* nevertheless, still. 8

tamquam, *adv.,* as it were, as if, so to speak. 29

tandem, *adv.,* at last, finally

tangō, -ere, tetigī, tāctum, touch. 21

tantum, *adv.,* only. 26

tantus, -a, -um, so large, so great, of such size. 29

tardus, -a, -um, slow, tardy

tēctum, -ī, *n.,* roof, house

tegō, -ere, tēxī, tēctum, cover, hide, protect

temeritās, -tātis, *f.,* rashness, temerity

temperantia, -ae, *f.,* moderation, temperance, self-control

tempestās, -tātis, *f.,* period of time, season; weather, storm. 15

templum, -ī, *n.,* sacred area, temple

temptātiō, -ōnis, *f.,* trial, temptation

tempus, -poris, *n.,* time; occasion, opportunity. 7

tendō, -ere, tetendī, tentum *or* **tēnsum,** stretch, extend; go

teneō, -ēre, -uī, tentum, hold, keep, possess, restrain. 14

terō, -ere, trīvī, trītum, rub, wear out

terra, -ae, *f.,* earth, ground, land, country. 7

terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, frighten, terrify. 1

tertius, -a, -um, third. 15

thema, -matis, *n.,* theme

Themistoclēs, -is, *m.,* Themistocles, celebrated Athenian statesman and military leader who advocated a powerful navy at the time of the Persian Wars

timeō, -ēre, -uī, fear, be afraid of, be afraid. 15

timor, -mōris, *m.,* fear. 10

titulus, -ī, *m.,* label, title; placard

toga, -ae, *f.,* toga, the garb of peace

tolerō (1), bear, endure, tolerate. 6

tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum, raise, lift up; take away, remove, destroy. 22

tondeō, -ēre, totondī, tōnsum, shear, clip

tōnsor, -sōris, *m.,* barber

tōnsōrius, -a, -um, of *or* pertaining to a barber, barber's

tot, *indecl. adj.,* that number of, so many. 40

tōtus, -a, -um, whole, entire. 9

tractō (1), drag about; handle, treat, discuss

trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, give over, surrender, hand down, transmit, teach. 33

tragoedia, -ae, *f.,* tragedy

trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractum, draw, drag; derive, acquire. 8

trāns, *prep.* + *acc.,* across. 14

trānseō, -īre, -iī, -itum, go across, cross; pass over, ignore. 39

trānsferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, bear across, transfer, convey

trānsitus, -ūs, *m.,* passing over, transit; transition. 39

trēdecim, *indecl. adj.,* thirteen. 15

tremō, -ere, tremuī, tremble

trepidē, *adv.,* with trepidation, in confusion

trēs, tria, three. 15
trīgintā, *indecl. adj.,* thirty
trīstis, -e, sad, sorrowful; joyless, grim, severe. 26
triumphus, -ī, *m.,* triumphal procession, triumph
Trōia, -ae, *f.,* Troy. 23
Trōiānus, -a, -um, Trojan
tū, tuī, you. 11
Tullius, -iī, *m.,* Cicero's family name
tum, *adv.,* then, at that time; thereupon, in the
next place. 5
tumultus, -ūs, *m.,* uprising, disturbance
tumulus, -ī, *m.,* mound, tomb
tunc, *adv.,* then, at that time
turba, -ae, *f.,* uproar, disturbance; mob, crowd,
multitude. 14
turpis, -e, ugly; shameful, base, disgraceful. 26
tūtus, -a, -um, protected, safe, secure
tuus, -a, -um, your, yours (*sg.*). 2
tyrannus, -ī, *m.,* absolute ruler, tyrant. 6

U

ubi, *rel. adv. and conj.,* where; when; *interrogative,*
where? 6
ulcīscor, -ī, ultus sum, avenge, punish for wrong
done
ūllus, -a, -um, any. 9
ultimus, -a, -um, farthest, extreme; last, final. 25
ultrā, *adv. and prep.* + *acc.,* on the other side of,
beyond. 22
umbra, -ae, *f.,* shade; ghost
umerus, -ī, *m.,* shoulder, upper arm
umquam, *adv.,* ever, at any time. 23
unde, *adv.,* whence, from what *or* which place;
from which, from whom. 30
ūnus, -a, -um, one, single, alone. 9
urbānus, -a, -um, of the city, urban, urbane,
elegant. 26
urbs, urbis, *f.,* city. 14
ūsque, *adv.,* all the way, up (to), even (to),
continuously, always. 31
ūsus, -ūs, *m.,* use, experience, skill, advantage
ut, *conj.; A. with subj.,* introducing (1) *purpose,* in
order that, that, to (28); (2) *result,* so that, that
(29); (3) *jussive noun clauses,* to, that (36); (4)
fear clauses, that . . . not (40); *B. with indic.,* just
as, as, when. 24
uter, utra, utrum, either, which (of two). 9
ūtilis, -e, useful, advantageous. 27
ūtilitās, -tātis, *f.,* usefulness, advantage
ūtor, -ī, ūsus sum + *abl.,* use; enjoy, experience. 34

utrum . . . an, *conj.,* whether . . . or. 30
uxor, -ōris, *f.,* wife. 7

V

vacō (1), be free from, be unoccupied
vacuus, -a, -um, empty, devoid (of), free (from)
vae, *interjection,* alas, woe to. 34
valeō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrum, be strong, have power; be
well, fare well; **valē (valēte),** good-bye. 1
valētūdō, -dinis, *f.,* health, good health, bad
health
varius, -a, -um, various, varied, different
-ve, *conj.,* or 33
vehemēns, *gen.* **-mentis,** *adj.,* violent, vehement,
emphatic, vigorous
vehō, -ere, vexī, vectum, carry, convey
vel, *conj.,* or (*an optional alternative*)
vēlōx, *gen.* **-lōcis,** *adj.,* swift
vēndō, -ere, vēndidī, vēnditum, sell. 38
venia, -ae, *f.,* kindness, favor, pardon
veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventum, come. 10
ventitō (1), come often
ventus, -ī, *m.,* wind. 39
Venus, -neris, *f.,* Venus, goddess of grace, charm,
and love
verbera, -rum, *n. pl.,* blows, a beating
verbum, -ī, *n.,* word. 5
vērē, *adv.,* truly, really, actually, rightly
vereor, -ērī, veritus sum, show reverence for,
respect; be afraid of, fear. 40
Vergilius, -iī, *m.,* Virgil, the Roman epic poet
vēritās, -tātis, *f.,* truth. 10
vērō, *adv.,* in truth, indeed, to be sure, however. 29
versus, -ūs, *m.,* line, verse. 20
vertō, -ere, vertī, versum, turn, change. 23
vērus, -a, -um, true, real, proper. 4
vesper, -peris *or* **-perī,** *m.,* evening; evening star. 28
vespillō, -lōnis, *m.,* undertaker
vester, -tra, -trum, your, yours (*pl.*). 6
vestiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, clothe
vetus, *gen.* **-teris,** *adj.,* old. 34
via, -ae, *f.,* road, street, way. 10
vīcīnus, -ī, *m.,* **vīcīna, -ae,** *f.,* neighbor. 21
vicissitūdō, -dinis, *f.,* change, vicissitude
victor, -tōris, *m.,* victor
victōria, -ae, *f.,* victory. 8
vīctus, -ūs, *m.,* living, mode of life
videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsum, see, observe;
understand, 1; **videor, -ērī, vīsus sum,** be seen,
seem, appear. 18

vigilō (1), be awake, watch, be vigilant

vigor, -gōris, *m.*, vigor, liveliness

vīlla, -ae, *f.*, villa, country house

vincō, -ere, vīcī, victum, conquer, overcome. 8

vinculum, -ī, *n.*, bond, chain. 36

vīnum, -ī, *n.*, wine. 31

vir, virī, *m.*, man, hero. 3

virgō, -ginis, *f.*, maiden, virgin. 7

virtūs, -tūtis, *f.*, manliness, courage; excellence, virtue, character, worth. 7

vīs, vīs, *f.*, force, power, violence; **vīrēs, vīrium,** strength. 14

vīta, -ae, *f.*, life, mode of life. 2

vitiōsus, -a, -um, full of vice, vicious. 34

vitium, -ī, *n.*, fault, vice, crime. 6

vītō (1), avoid, shun. 14

vīvō, -ere, vīxī, victum, live. 10

vīvus, -a, -um, alive, living. 30

vix, *adv.*, hardly, scarcely, with difficulty

vocō (1), call, summon. 1

volō, velle, voluī, wish, want, be willing, will. 32

volō (1), fly

voluntārius, -a, -um, voluntary

voluntās, -tātis, *f.*, will, wish

voluptās, -tātis, *f.*, pleasure. 10

vōs. *See* **tū**.

vōx, vōcis, *f.*, voice, word. 34

vulgus, -ī, *n.* (*sometimes m.*), the common people, mob, rabble. 21

vulnus, -neris, *n.*, wound. 24

vultus, -ūs, *m.*, countenance, face, 40.

X

Xenophōn, -phontis, *m.*, Xenophon, Greek general and author

Abbreviations

AUTHORS AND WORKS CITED

Aug., St. Augustine (Confessions)
Caes., Caesar
  B.C., Bellum Civile
  B.G., Bellum Gallicum
Catull., Catullus (Poems)
Cic., Cicero
  Am., De Amicitia
  Arch., Oratio pro Archia
  Att., Epistulae ad Atticum
  Cat., Orationes in Catilinam
  De Or., De Oratore
  Div., De Divinatione
  Fam., Epistulae ad Familiares
  Fin., De Finibus
  Inv., De Inventione Rhetorica
  Leg., De Legibus
  Marcell, Oratio pro Marcello
  Off., De Officiis
  Or., Orator
  Phil., Orationes Philippicae in M. Antonium
  Pis., Oratio in Pisonem
  Planc., Oratio pro Plancio
  Q. Fr., Epistulae ad Q. Fratrem

Rep., De Re Publica
Sen., De Senectute
Sex. Rosc., Oratio pro Sex. Roscio
Sull., Oratio pro Sulla
Tusc., Tusculanae Disputationes
Verr., Actio in Verrem
Enn., Ennius (Poems)
Hor., Horace
  A.P., Ars Poetica (Ep. 2.3)
  Ep., Epistulae
  Epod., Epodes
  Od., Odes (Carmina)
  Sat., Satires (Sermones)
Juv., Juvenal (Satires)
Liv., Livy (Ab Urbe Condita)
Lucr., Lucretius (De Natura Rerum)
Mart., Martial (Epigrams)
Macr., Macrobius (Saturnalia)
Nep., Nepos
  Att., Atticus
  Cim., Cimon
  Milt., Miltiades
Ov., Ovid

A.A., Ars Amatoria
Am., Amores
Her., Heroides
Met., Metamorphoses
Pers., Persius (Satires)
Petron., Petronius (Satyricon)
Phaedr., Phaedrus (Fables)
Plaut., Plautus
  Aul., Aulularia
  Mil., Miles Gloriosus
  Most., Mostellaria
  Stich., Stichus
Plin., Pliny the Elder
  H.N., Historia Naturalis
Plin., Pliny the Younger
  Ep., Epistulae
Prop., Propertius (Elegies)
Publil. Syr., Publilius Syrus (Sententiae)
Quint., Quintilian
  Inst., Institutiones Oratoriae
Sall., Sallust
  Cat., Catilina
Sen., Seneca the Elder
  Contr., Controversiae
Sen., Seneca the Younger
  Brev. Vit., De Brevitate Vitae
  Clem., De Clementia

Cons. Polyb., Ad Polybium de
  Consolatione
Ep., Epistulae
Suet., Suetonius
  Aug., Augustus Caesar
  Caes., Julius Caesar
Tac., Tacitus
  Ann., Annales
  Dial., Dialogus de Oratoribus
Ter., Terence
  Ad., Adelphi
  And., Andria
  Heaut., Heauton Timoroumenos
  Hec., Hecyra
  Phorm., Phormio
Veg., Vegetius Renatus
  Mil., De Re Militari
Vell., Velleius Paterculus (Histories)
Virg., Virgil
  Aen., Aeneid
  Ecl., Eclogues
  Geor., Georgics
Vulg., Vulgate
  Eccles., Ecclesiastes
  Exod., Exodus
  Gen., Genesis

OTHER ABBREVIATIONS

abl.	ablative case	conj.	conjunction
abs.	absolute	contr. to fact	contrary to fact
acc.	accusative case	cp.	compare (Lat. *comparā*)
act.	active voice	dat.	dative case
A.D.	after Christ (Lat. *annō dominī*, lit., *in the year of the Lord*)	decl.	declension
		dep.	deponent
adj.	adjective	e.g.	for example (Lat. *exemplī grātiā*)
adv.	adverb	Eng.	English
App.	Appendix	etc.	and others (Lat. *et cētera*)
B.C.	before Christ	f./F./fem.	feminine gender
ca.	about (Lat. *circā*)	ff.	and the following (lines, pages)
cen(s).	century(ies)	Fr.	French
Ch(s).	Chapter(s)	fr.	from
cl(s).	clause(s)	fut.	future tense
comp.	comparative (degree)	fut. perf.	future perfect tense
compl.	complementary	gen.	genitive case

Ger.	German	pass.	passive voice
Gk.	Greek	perf.	perfect (present perfect) tense
ibid.	in the same place (Lat. *ibidem*)	pers.	person
id.	the same (Lat. *idem*)	pl.	plural
i.e.	that is (Lat. *id est*)	plupf.	pluperfect (past perfect) tense
imper.	imperative mood	P.R.	Practice and Review (sentences)
impers.	impersonal	prep.	preposition
impf.	imperfect tense	pres.	present tense
ind. quest.	indirect question	pron.	pronoun
ind. state.	indirect statement	purp.	purpose
indecl.	indeclinable	ref.	reference
indef.	indefinite	rel.	relative
indic.	indicative mood	Russ.	Russian
inf.	infinitive	sc.	supply, namely (Lat. *scīlicet*)
interj.	interjection	sent.	sentence
Introd.	Introduction	sg.	singular
irreg.	irregular	Sp.	Spanish
It.	Italian	spec.	special
L.A.	*Locī Antīquī*	S.A.	*Sententiae Antīquae*
Lat.	Latin	S.S.	Supplementary Syntax
L.I.	*Locī Immūtātī*		(p. 442–45)
lit.	literally	subj.	subjunctive mood
loc.	locative case	superl.	superlative
m./M./masc.	masculine gender	s.v.	under the word (Lat. *sub verbō*)
mid.	middle	vb(s).	verb(s)
n./N./neut.	note *or* neuter gender	voc.	vocative case
no(s).	number(s)	Vocab.	Vocabulary
nom.	nominative case	vs.	as opposed to, in comparison with
obj.	object *or* objective		(Lat. *versus*)
p.	page(s)	w.	with
part.	participle		

Index

Page references to illustrations are italicized.

Location of the
Sententiae Antīquae

1. (1) Pers., Sat. 6.27. (2) Plaut., Most. 1.3.30.
(3) Suet., Aug. 25 (4) Hor., Sat. 1.2.11.
(5) Sen., Clem. 1.2.2. (6) Cic., Sest. 67.141.
(7) Cic., Cat. 4.3. (8) Virg., Aen. 3.121 and
4.173 and 184. (9) Ter., Heaut. 190 et pas-
sim. (10) Cic., Fam. 2.16.4. (11) Hor., Sat.
1.9.78. (12) Hor., Sat. 1.10.81–83.
(13) Cic., Cat. 1.12.30. (14) Cic., Inv. 1.1.1.
(15) Publil. Syr. 321.
2. (1) Plaut., Stich. 5.2.2. (2) Virg., Aen. 3.121.
(3) Ter., Ad. 5.8.937. (4) Cic., Marcell. 4.12.
(5) Cic., Verr. 2.4.54. (6) Hor., Sat. 2.7.22–
24. (7) Sen., Ep. 8.1. (8) Sen., Ep. 17.5.
(9) Cic., Fin. 3.1.2. (10) Sen., Ep. 8.5.
(11) Sen., Ep. 18.14, De Ira 1.1.2; cp. Ch. 16
S.A.8. (12). Sen., Ep. 18.15. (13) Sen., Ep.
115.16. (14) Hor., Od. 3.11.45. (15) Cic.,
Pis. 10.22.
3. (1) Cic., Cat. 4.1. (2) Hor., Sat. 2.6.41.
(3) Phaedr., Fab. 1. Prologus 4. (4) Cic.,
Tusc. 5.3.9. (5) Hor., Sat. 2.7.84 and 88.
(6) Nep., Cim. 4. (7) Hor., Ep. 1.2.56.
(8) Sen., Ep. 94.43. (9) Publil. Syr., 56.
(10) Publil. Syr. 697. (11) Sen., Clem. 1.2.2.
4. (1) Cic., Am. 15.54. (2) Ter., Heaut. 2.3.295–
296. (3) Ter., Ad. 5.9.961. (4) Hor., Sat.
1.4.114. (5) Proverbial; cp. Cic., Phil. 12.2.5.
(6) Hor., Od. 2.16.27–28. (7) Sen., De Ira II
18ff. and III init.; cp. Ter., Phor. 1.4.185.
(8) Virg., Ecl. 5.61. (9) Hor., Sat. 1.1.25.
(10) Ter., Ad. 4.5.701–702. (11) Catull. 5.7.
(12) Vulg., Eccles. 1.15. (13) Cic., Am.
21.79. (14) Pers., Sat. 6.27. (15) Cic., Cat.
1.4.9.
5. (1) Cic., Cat. 1.9.23. (2) Cic., Cat. 1.13.31.
(3) Cic., Off. 1.20.68. (4) Ov., Her. 3.85.
(5) Cic., Fam. 14.3.1 (6) Ter., Ad. 5.8.937.
(7) Ter., Ad. 5.9.992–993. (8) Cic., Att. 2.2.
(9) Sen., Cons. Polyb. 9.6. (10) Ter., Ad.
5.8.937. (11) Sen., Ep. 17.5. (12) Virg., Ecl.
5.78. (13) Hor., Ep. 2.3.445–446 (Ars Po-
etica).
6. (1) Cic., Tusc. 5.20.57. (2) Cic., Tusc. 5.21.61.
(3) Cic., Cat. 3.1.3. (4) Cic., Cat. 3.12.29.
(5) Cic., Cat. 1.6.13. (6) Liv. 21.1.2.
(7) Cic., Arch. 3.5. (8) Sen., Ep. 73.16.
(9) Publil. Syr. 302. (10) Publil. Syr. 282.

7. (1) Ter., Heaut. 1.1.77. (2) Vulg., Eccles. 1.10.
(3) Hor., Od. 3.1.2–4. (4) Hor., Sat. 2.7.22–
23. (5) Hor., Ep. 1.16.52. (6) Mart.
12.6.11–12. (7) Hor., Sat. 1.6.15–16.
(8) Cic.; cp. graffiti. (9) Sen., Ep. 82.2.
(10) Cic., Phil. 10.10.20. (11) Hor., Sat.
1.9.59–60. (12) Cic., Cat. 3.12.29.
(13) Vulg., Luke 2.14.
8. (1) Ter., Ad. 5.4.863. (2) Ter., Heaut. 3.1.432.
(3) Laberius; see Macr. 2.7. (4) Cic., Cat.
3.1.3. (5) Publil. Syr. 507; also Macr. 2.7.
(6) Sen., Ep. 8.3. (7) Catull. 49. (8) Liv.
26.50.1. (9) Cic., Tusc. 1.42.98. (10) Cic.,
Arch. 11.26. (11) Cic., Marcell. 5.15.
(12) Hor., Ep. 2.2.65–66. (13) Hor., Ep.
1.2.1–2. (14) Sen., Ep. 106.12. (15) Sen.,
Ep. 7.8. (16) Liv. 22.39.21.
9. (1) Ter., Phor. 4.5.727. (2) Ter., Phor. 4.3.670.
(3) Ter., Heaut. 4.3.709. (4) Cic., Am.
27.102. (5) Ter., Phor. 3.3.539. (6) Cic.,
Cat. 1.13.31. (7) Cic., Cat. 1.4.9. (8) Mart.
10.72.4. (9) Liv. 22.39.10.
10. (1) Cic., Off. 1.20.68. (2) Ter., Ad. 4.3.593.
(3) Ter., Ad. 3.2.340. (4) Mart. 6.70.15.
(5) Cic., Clu. 18.51. (6) Lucr. 6.93–95.
(7) Pers. 5.153. (8) Hor., Epod. 13.3–4.
(9) Cic., Sen. 19.67. (10) Virg., Georg. 3.284.
(11) Virg., Aen. 3.395. (12) Publil. Syr. 764.
(13) Cic., Am. 24.89.
11. (1) Hor., Sat. 2.5.33. (2) Ter., Ad. 1.1.49.
(3) Plin., Ep. 1.11.1. (4) Plin., Ep. 5.18.1.
(5) Ter., Hec. 1.2.197. (6) Cic., Cat. 1.8.20.
(7) Cic., Marcell. 11.33. (8) Cic., Fam.
1.5.b.2. (9) Liv. 120. (10) Hor., Ep. 2.2.58.
(11) Mart. 12.47. (12) Cic., Am. 21.80.
12. (1) Vulg., Gen. 1.1 and 27. (2) Suet., Caes. 37.
(3) Ter., Hec. 3.5.461. (4) Cic., Sen. 19.68.
(5) Sen., Brev. Vit.; see Duff, Silver Age p.
216. (6) Ter., Phor. 2.1.302. (7) Cic., Sen.
7.22. (8) Cic., Off. 1.24.84. (9) Tac., Ann.
1.1.1. (10) Laber. in Macr. 2.7.
13. (1) Caes., B.G. 1.21. (2) Cic., Sull. 24.67.
(3) Cic. Cat. 3.10. (4) Cic., Am. 21.80.
(5) Publil. Syr. 206. (6) Sen., Ep. 7.8.
(7) Sen., Ep. 80.3. (8) Phaedr. 4.21.1.
14. (1) Vulg., Gen. 1.10. (2) Lucr. 5.822–823.
(3) Virg., Ecl. 2.33. (4) Hor., Sat. 1.1.33–

34. (5) Ter., Phor. 3.2.506.   (6) Hor., Od.
3.1.13.   (7) Enn. in Cic., Rep. 3.3.6.
(8) Sall., Cat. 3.4.   (9) Hor., Od. 3.30.6–7.
(10) Hor., Ep. 2.3.268–269.   (11) Cic., Sen.
6.17.   (12) Hor., Ep. 1.11.27.

15. (1) Ter., Hec. 3.4.421–422.   (2) Cic., Fam. 16.9.2.
(3) Cic., Arch. 3.5.   (4) Tac., Ann. 12.32.
(5) Cic., Cat. 3.2.3.   (6) Cic., Verr. 2.5.62.
(7) Catull. 3.5 and 10.   (8) Ter., Ad. 5.4 pas-
sim.   (9) Cic., Tusc. 5.20.58.

16. (1) Phaedr., 3.7.1.   (2) Virg., Geor. 1.145.
(3) Ter., Phor. 1.4.203.   (4) Cic., Or. 59.200.
(5) Virg., Aen. 3.657–658.   (6) Virg., Aen.
4.569–570.   (7) Mart. 7.85.3–4.   (8) Hor.,
Ep. 1.2.62; cp. Ch. 2 S.A. 11.   (9) Servius on
Aen. 1.683.   (10) Hor., Od. 2.16.27–28.
(11) Phaedr., Fab. 1. Prologus 3–4.   (12) Cic.,
Leg. 1.22.58.   (13) Sen., Clem. 1.19.6.
(14) Sen. Brev. Vit.   (15) Cic., Sen. 19.70.
(16) Vell. 2.66.3 (cp. Duff., Silver Age p. 91).

17. (1) Ter., Phor. 2.1.287–288.   (2) Cic., N.D.
3.34.83.   (3) Cic., Cat. 1.12.30.   (4) Publil.
Syr. 321.   (5) Hor., Ep. 1.2.40–41.
(6) Publil. Syr. 353.   (7) Publil. Syr. 232.
(8) Cic., Am. 15.54.   (9) Publil. Syr. 86.
(10) Cic., Am. 25.92.   (11) Cic., Am. 27.102.
(12) Sen., Ep. 7.1 and 8.

18. (1) Virg., Aen. 5.231.   (2) Tac., Ann. 15.59.
(3) Cic., Cat. 1.3.6.   (4) Publil. Syr. 393.
(5) Ov., Met. 4.428.   (6) Plin., Ep. 9.6.1.
(7) Cic., Fam. 9.20.3.   (8) Lucr. 3.830–831.
(9) Publil. Syr. 37.   (10) Cic., Marcell. 2.7.
(11) Enn. (See Duff, Golden Age p. 148.)
(12) Hor., Sat. 1.2.11.   (13) Juv. 1.74.

19. (1) Lucr. 1.112.   (2) Cic., Cat. 3.5.13.   (3) Cic.,
Sest. 67.141.   (4) Ter., Hec. 1.2.132.
(5) Cic., Cat. 1.4.9.   (6) Cic., Planc. 33.80.
(7) Cic., Am. 15.55.

20. (1) Mart. 13.94.1.   (2) Cic., Fin. 5.29.87.
(3) Cic., Am. 12.42.   (4) Cic., De Or.
1.61.261.   (5) Hor., Od. 1.38.1.   (6) Hor.,
Sat. 1.3.66.   (7) Cic., Sen. 5.15.   (8) Sen.,
Clem. 1.6.2–3.   (9) Cic., Off. 1.2.4.
(10) Quint., Inst. 8.3.41.   (11) Hor., Od.
1.22.1–2.   (12) Cic., Fam. 16.9.3.   (13) Cic.,
Cat. 3.5.10.

21. (1) Publil. Syr. 507.   (2) Mart. 1.86.1–2.
(3) Cic., Cat. 1.11.27.   (4) Hor., Epod.
16.1–2.   (5) Cic., Am. 6.22.   (6) Cic., Sen.
19.69.   (7) Cic., N.D. 2.62.154.   (8) Cic.,
Sen. 17.59.   (9) Phaedr., App. 27.
(10) Vulg., Job 28.12.   (11) Liv., 22.39.19.

22. (1) Cic., Att. 9.10.3.   (2) Hor., Od. 2.3.1–2.
(3) Cic., Rep. 3.31.   (4) Cic., Cat. 1.1.3.
(5) Cic., Marcell. 10.32.   (6) Cic., Cat.

1.12.30.   (7) Cic., Cat. 3.1.1.   (8) Liv.
32.33.10.   (9) Plaut., Aul. 4.10.772.
(10) Cic., Am. 17.64.   (11) Hor., Ep. 2.3.148–
149.   (12) Virg., Georg. 2.490 and 493.
(13) Sen., Ep. 17.12.   (14) Hor., Ep. 1.1.19.
(15) Hor., Sat. 1.1.106–107.   (16) Mart.
10.76.1

23. (1) Cic., Cat. 1.2.6.   (2) Liv. 44.42.4.   (3) Hor.,
Sat. 1.1.68–69.   (4) Cic., N.D. 2.4.12.
(5) Hor., Ep. 2.1.156.   (6) Nep., Att. 4.
(7) Quint., Inst. Praef. 5.   (8) Hor., Sat.
1.10.72.   (9) Quint., Inst. 11.3.157.
(10) Cic., N.D. 3.33.82.   (11) Cic., Sen. 3.9.
(12) Hor., Ep. 1.16.66.   (13) Sen., Ep. 61.3.
(14) Hor., Ep. 1.18.71.

24. (1) Cp. Plutarch, Cato ad fin.   (2) Plin., H.N.
33.148.   (3) Caes., B.C. 2.43.   (4) Cic., Sex.
Rosc. 1.3.   (5) Cic., Marcell. 8.24.   (6) Hor.,
Od. 3.14.14–16.   (7) Cic., Rep. 2.30.
(8) Tac., Dial. 5.

25. (1) Ter., Heaut. Prolog. 18.   (2) Cic., 1.11.27.
(3) Cic., Cat. 1.11.27.   (4) Cic., Cat. 3.2.4.
(5) Cic., Cat. 4.10.22.   (6) Cic., Off. 1.1.1.
(7) Ter., Phor. 4.1.581–582.   (8) Cic., Sen.
16.56.   (9) Enn. in Cic., Div. 2.56.116.
(10) Cic., Tusc. 1.42.101.   (11) Cic., Tusc.
5.37.108.   (12) Cic., quoted in Dumesnil's
Lat. Synonyms s.v. abnuere.   (13) Cic., Tusc.,
5.40.118.   (14) Cic., Sen. 21.77.   (15) Cic.,
Sen. 19.68.   (16) Plin., Ep. 7.9.15.

26. (1) Cic., Sen. 16.55.   (2) Cic., Cat. 1.3.6.
(3) Sen., Contr. 6.7.2; Publil. Syr. 253.
(4) Cic., Cat. 3.1.5.   (5) Sen., Ep. 61.3.
(6) Ov., Her. 17.71–72.   (7) Hor., Epod.
2.1,7,8.   (8) Cic., Am. 26.99.   (9) Cic.,
Sen. 19.68.   (10) Mart. 1.107.1–2.
(11) Mart. 14.208.   (12) Cic., Off. 1.22.74.
(13) Catull. 12.

27. (1) Ov., Met. 7.21–22.   (2) Mart. 1.16.1.
(3) Ter., Ad. 5.5.884, 5.7.922.   (4) Plin., Ep.
10.88.   (5) Cic., Sen. 6.19.   (6) Cic., Off.
1.22.78.   (7) Cic., Off. 1.22.77.   (8) Cic., Sen.
2.5.   (9) Sen., Ep. 17.9.   (10) See Ch. 4
S.A.7.   (11) Cic., Marcell. 3.8.   (12) Cic.,
Tusc. 5.20.57–5.21.62.   (13) Virg., Aen. 7.312.

28. (1) Liv. 22.39.21.   (2) Cic., Off. 1.22.77.
(3) Cic., Cat. 1.7.18.   (4) Ter., Phor. 5.5.831.
(5) Hor., Epod. 13.3–4.   (6) Sen., Ep. 80.3.
(7) Sen.   (8) Diog. Laert.: a Latin translation
from his Greek.   (9) Quint., Inst. 2.2.5.
(10) Cic., Am. 24.89.   (11) Ov., A.A. 1.97.
(12) Virg., Aen. 1.1–2.

29. (1) Virg., Ecl. 10.69.   (2) Virg., Aen. 4.653, 655
(3) Ter., Phor. 3.2.497–498.   (4) Hor., Ep.
1.1.40.   (5) Juv. 1.30.   (6) Cic., Cat. 1.1.3.

(7) Cic., Phil. 10.10.20. (8) Cic., Phil. 4.5.9.
(9) Nep., Milt. 5. (10) Cic., De Or. 1.61.260.
(11) Hor., A.P. (Ep. 2.3) 335–336. (12) Ter.,
Heaut. 4.2.675. (13) Cic., Off. 1.23.80.
(14) Cic., Am. 9.29.

30. (1) Cic., Cat. 4.3.6. (2) Phaedr. 3.7.1. (3) Hor.,
Sat. 1.5.67–68. (4) Virg., Ecl. 8.43.
(5) Hor., Sat. 1.4.16. (6) Cic., Marcell.
10.30. (7) Lucr. 1.55–56. (8) Lucr. 2.4.
(9) Hor., Ep. 1.2.1–4. (10) Hor., Ep. 1.18.96–
97, 100–101. (11) Sen., Ep. 115.14.
(12) Prop. 2.15.29–30. (13) Cic., Tusc.
1.41.99.

31. (1) Cic., Cat. 1.6.15. (2) Cic., Am. 12.42.
(3) Cic., Cat. 1.5.10 and 1.9.23. (4) Hor.,
Od. 1.14.1–2. (5) Cic., Marcell. 7.22.
(6) Cic., Q. Fr. 1.2.4.14. (7) Cic., Cat. 3.5.12.
(8) Cic., Sen. 10.33. (9) Liv. 45.8. (10) Ter.,
Ad. 2.1.155. (11) Ter., Phor. 1.2.137–138.
12. Cic., Cluent. 53.146.

32. (1) Publil. Syr. 512. (2) Cic., Cat. 1.5.10.
(3) Hor., Ep. 1.6.29. (4) Ter., Ad. 5.9.996.
(5) Ter., Heaut. 4.1.622. (6) Cic., Sen. 3.7.
(7) Ter., Ad. 4.5.701. (8) Caes., B.G. 3.18.
(9) Plaut., Trin. 2.2.361. (10) Publil. Syr.
129. (11) Sall., Cat. 8. (12) Cic., Fin.
3.7.26. (13) See Ch. 18 S.A. 11. (14) Sen.,
Ep. 80.6. (15) Hor., Sat. 1.1.25–26.
16. Hor., Ep. 2.3.102–103 (Ars Poetica).

33. (1) Veg., Mil. Prolog. 3. (2) Cic., Off. 1.22.76.
(3) Cic., Sull. 31.87. (4) Cic., Q. Fr. 1.3.5.
(5) Phaedr. App. 18. (6) Hor., Sat. 2.7.22–
24. (7) Publil. Syr. 412. (8) Hor., Od.
4.10.6. (9) Juv. 3.152–153.

34. (1) Virg., Aen. 3.188. (2) Hor., Sat. 1.3.68–69.
(3) Cic., N.D. 2.62.154. (4) Cp. Sen., De Ira
2.9.1 and Cic., Tusc. 3.9.19. (5) Cic., Cat.
1.5.10. (6) Hor., Od. 3.16.7. (7) Cic., Fam.
7.10.1. (8) Publil. Syr. 350. (9) Mart. Bk. I
Praef. 1–2. (10) Cic., Sen. 19.69. (11) Ter.,
Heaut. 1.2.239–240. (12) Cic., Am. 6.22.
(13) Cic., De Or. 2.67.274. (14) Virg., Aen.
1.199.

35. (1) Sen., cp. Ep. 8.7; and Hor., Sat. 2.7.83 ff. and
Ep. 1.16.66. (2) Publil. Syr. 290. (3) Publil.
Syr. 99. (4) Hor., Sat. 1.1.86–87. (5) Cic.,
Fin. 1.18.60, 4.24.65; De Or. 1.3.10 et pas-
sim. (6) Publil. Syr. 767 and 493. (7) Vulg.,
Gen. 1.26. (8) Cic., Rep. 2.24.59. (9) Caes.,
B.G. 4.23 and 5.45. (10) Quint., Inst.

10.1.112. (11) Hor., Ep. 2.2.41–42.
(12) Publil. Syr. 687. (13) Hor., Sat. 2.2.135–
136. (14) Virg., Aen. 1.630. (15) Publil.
Syr. 288.

36. (1) Vulg., Gen. 1.3. (2) Lucr. 1.205. (3) Ter.,
Heaut. 2.3.314. (4) Caes., B.C. 2.43.
(5) Ter., Ad. 3.4.505. (6) Ter., Heaut.
5.5.1049 and 1067. (7) Hor., Od. 1.11.7–8.
(8) Pers. 5.151–152. (9) Sen., Ep. 61.2.
(10) Cic., Sen. 8.26. (11) Hor., Ep. 2.2.206–
211. (12) Hor., Od. 1.24.19–20. (13) Ov.,
Am. 1.2.10. (14) Cic., Am. 5.7. (15) Cic.,
Arch. 2.3.

37. (1) Hor., Ep. 2.3.68. (2) Virg., Aen. 6.127.
(3) Ov., A.A. 3.62–65. (4) Ter., Hec. 1.2.132;
Ad. 1.1.26. (5) Ter., Ad. 5.5.882. (6) Ter.,
Ad. 4.1.517, 4.2.556. (7) Hor., Sat. 1.9.1.
(8) Cic., Tusc. 5.21.62. (9) Cic., Verr.
2.4.54.120. (10) Ter., Hec. 3.4.421 and 423.
(11) Cic., Cat. 1.9.23. (12) Nep., Att. 8; Cic.,
Phil. 2.12.28, Tusc. 5.37.109 (names
changed). (13) Cic., Att. 12.50. (14) Cic.,
Sen. 7.24. (15) Prop., 2.15.23–24.

38. (1) Caes., B.G. 1.31. (2) Cic., Cat. 1.4.9.
(3) Cat., 4.7.16. (4) Cic., Am. 7.23.
(5) Cic., Cat. 1.6.13. (6) Cic., Am. 15.53.
(7) Cic., Cat. 1.7.18. (8) Cic., Cat. 4.11.24.
(9) Virg., Ecl. 1.7. (10) Cic., Fam. 4.5.6.
(11) Sen., Ep. 17.11. (12) Cic., Marcell. 4.11.
(13) Plin., Ep. 5.16.4–5. (14) Hor., Od.
1.37.1–2.

39. (1) Cic., Cat. 1.12.30. (2) Cic., Cat. 1.13.32.
(3) Cic., Off. 1.22.74. (4) Publil. Syr. 762.
(5) Cic., Off. 1.25.89. (6) Cic., Verr. 2.4.54.
(7) Cic., Off. 3.32.113. (8) Cic., Sest. 2.5
(9) Cic., Sen. 5.15. (10) Cic., Att. 2.23.1.
(11) Publil. Syr. 704. (12) Cic., Leg. 1.23.60.
(13) Virg., Aen. 4.175. (14) Cic., Fam.
5.12.4.

40. (1) Cic., Cat. 4.7.14. (2) Hor., Od. 3.30.6–7.
(3) Cic., Tusc. 1.41.97. (4) Ter., Ad. 5.4.856.
(5) Sen., Ep. 7.7. (6) Plin., Ep. 9.6.2.
(7) Lucr. 4.1286–87. (8) Cic., Fam. 14.12.
(9) Liv.: see Loci Immutati #17. (10) Cic.,
Marcell. 10.32. (11) Catull. 43.1–3.
(12) Ter., Heaut. 1.1.77. (13) Cic., Am.
21.81. (14) Vulg., Exod. 20.11. (15) Caes.,
B.G. 1.47. (16) Cic., Cat. 1.4.8. (17) Cic.,
Planc. 42.101.

ABOUT THE AUTHORS

Frederic M. Wheelock (1902–1987) received the A.B., A.M., and Ph.D. degrees from Harvard University. His long and distinguished teaching career included appointments at Haverford College, Harvard University, the College of the City of New York, Brooklyn College, Cazenovia Junior College (where he served as Dean), the Darrow School for Boys (New Lebanon, NY), the University of Toledo (from which he retired as full Professor in 1968), and a visiting professorship at Florida Presbyterian (now Eckerd) College. He published a number of articles and reviews in the fields of textual criticism, palaeography, and the study of Latin; in addition to *Wheelock's Latin* (previously titled *Latin: An Introductory Course Based on Ancient Authors*), his books include *Wheelock's Latin Reader* (previously titled *Latin Literature: A Book of Readings*) and *Quintilian as Educator* (trans. H. E. Butler; introd. and notes by Prof. Wheelock). Professor Wheelock was a member of the American Classical League, the American Philological Association, and the Classical Association of the Atlantic States. Biographies of Professor Wheelock authored by Professor Ward Briggs appear in his book, *A Biographical Dictionary of American Classicists* (Westport, CT: Greenwood Press, 1994), as well as in the Winter, 2003, issue of the *Classical Outlook*.

Richard A. LaFleur received the B.A. and M.A. in Latin from the University of Virginia and the Ph.D. in Classical Studies from Duke. He has taught since 1972 at the University of Georgia, where he served for 21 years as head of one of the largest Classics programs in North America and has held since 1998 the chair of Franklin Professor of Classics. He has numerous publications in Latin language, literature, and pedagogy, including the books *The Teaching of Latin in American Schools: A Profession in Crisis, Latin Poetry for the Beginning Student, Love and Transformation: An Ovid Reader, Latin for the 21st Century: From Concept to Classroom, A Song of War: Readings from Vergil's Aeneid* (with Alexander G. McKay), *Wheelock's Latin* (revised 5th and 6th eds.), *Wheelock's Latin Reader* (revised 2nd ed.), and (with Paul Comeau) *Workbook for Wheelock's Latin* (revised 3rd ed.). Professor LaFleur also served as editor of *The Classical Outlook* (1979–2003) and is past President of the American Classical League (1984–1986). He has been recipient of over one million dollars in grants from the National Endowment for the Humanities and other agencies, and of state, regional, and national awards for teaching and professional service, including, in 1984, the American Philological Association's award for Excellence in the Teaching of Classics.

WHEN PROFESSOR FREDERIC M. WHEELOCK'S *LATIN*
first appeared in 1956, the reviews extolled its thoroughness, organization, and conciseness; at least one reviewer predicted that the book "might well become the standard text" for introducing students to elementary Latin. Now, five decades later, that prediction has certainly proved accurate.
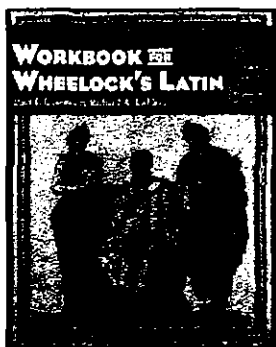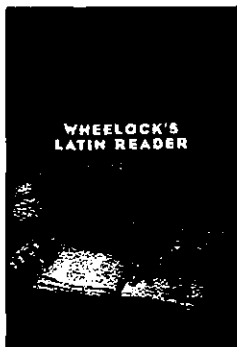
The revised sixth edition of *Wheelock's Latin* has all the features that have made it the best-selling single-volume beginning Latin textbook, many of them improved and expanded:

- 40 chapters with grammatical explanations and readings based on ancient Roman authors
- Self-tutorial exercises with an answer key for independent study
- A newly enlarged English-Latin/Latin-English vocabulary
- A rich selection of original Latin readings—unlike other textbooks, which contain primarily made-up Latin texts
- Etymological aids

Also included are maps of the Mediterranean, Italy, and the Aegean area, as well as numerous photographs illustrating aspects of classical culture, mythology, and historical and literary figures presented in the chapter readings.

Praise for the New Edition

"Generations of students have learned Latin successfully
from Wheelock's venerable text. LaFleur preserves the best features
of the original book, while adapting it to meet
twenty-first-century demands."
—PROFESSOR ANNE H. GROTON, St. Olaf College

"The new edition makes a world of difference."
—PROFESSOR ROBERT A. KASTER, Princeton University

"For those long familiar with [*Wheelock's Latin*], the new edition
shows the continuing vitality of a venerable pedagogical classic."
—PROFESSOR WILLIAM HYLAND, St. Norbert College

COVER DESIGN BY MUCCA DESIGN

HarperResource
An Imprint of HarperCollins*Publishers*
www.harpercollins.com

ALSO AVAILABLE
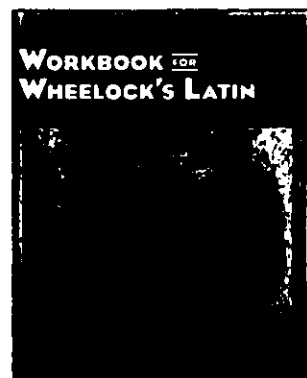
*Workbook for Wheelock's
Latin, 3rd Edition,
Revised*

*Wheelock's Latin Reader,
2nd Edition*

www.wheelockslatin.com

WHEELOCK'S LATIN READER

Selections from Latin Literature

SECOND
EDITION

Frederic M. Wheelock
Revised by Richard A. LaFleur,
Editor of *Wheelock's Latin*

The WHEELOCK'S LATIN Series

WHEELOCK'S LATIN
Frederic M. Wheelock, revised by Richard A. LaFleur

WORKBOOK FOR WHEELOCK'S LATIN
Paul Comeau, revised by Richard A. LaFleur

WHEELOCK'S LATIN READER:
SELECTIONS FROM LATIN LITERATURE
Frederic M. Wheelock, revised by Richard A. LaFleur

WHEELOCK'S LATIN READER

Selections from Latin Literature

WHEELOCK'S LATIN READER

Selections from Latin Literature

Frederic M. Wheelock

Revised by

Richard A. LaFleur

2nd Edition

DOROTHEAE CONIVGI
MARTHAE DEBORAEQUE FILIABVS
CARISSIMIS PATERFAMILIAS
FREDERICVS
D.D.

CONTENTS

PREFACE

The genesis of this book derives from the demand for an intermediate Latin reader that could be readily employed as a sequel to *Wheelock's Latin* and other beginning texts. The volume's purpose is to provide, not a survey of all Latin literature, but an interesting and stimulating selection from a variety of important authors, together with notes that assume and enlarge upon the student's knowledge of basic Latin grammar. Students who complete the readings in this text, or a generous sampling of them, will be well prepared to move on to more advanced work in Latin prose and verse; at the same time, those who do not continue with the language can with this book enjoy the rewards of reading selections from some of the most interesting and influential works of Latin literature, ranging from the late republic and the empire to the late Middle Ages, and including Cicero, Livy, Ovid, Pliny the Younger, St. Jerome's translation of the Latin Bible (the so-called Vulgate edition), and a variety of medieval writers.

In deciding upon the passages for this volume, preference was given to including longer selections from fewer authors rather than brief snippets from a wider array of works (the only exception being the sampling from medieval texts presented at the end of the book). Whenever a student comes to a new Latin author, some time is required to become familiar and comfortable with the characteristics of that author's style, and it is easy to imagine the compounding of those challenges in a text that ranges through numerous authors, works, and subjects in a multitude of short passages. Moreover, a very positive advantage in an anthology of longer readings is that each excerpt can provide a better sense of the character of the work as a whole.

All the readings included in this volume, unlike those in some intermediate textbooks, are authentic, unadapted Latin. The only liberty taken with the original texts is the use of classical spelling in the medieval Latin selections and the occasional omission of passages that are either too difficult or digressive or of too little interest. The majority of the passages, including most of Cicero's and Pliny's letters and the selections from Ovid's *Metamorphoses,* and the several medieval texts, are in fact unexcerpted, and those that have been excerpted are identified as such and provided with references to the full original text.

In the notes, outright translations are given as seldom as possible.

Instead, words that are likely to be unfamiliar are glossed, and comments on grammar and context are provided to help students comprehend the Latin and arrive at an accurate understanding of the text through their own abilities.

Finally, the end vocabulary includes English meanings for all Latin words appearing in the text, the sole exception being certain personal names and other proper nouns that are adequately defined in the notes. Macrons, though not appearing in the text (since the Romans themselves did not ordinarily employ them and they are not used in advanced Latin textbooks), are provided in the vocabulary.

To Professor Edwin S. Ramage of Indiana University I am very grateful for his most conscientious and critical survey of the manuscript of the passages and notes; many of his suggestions have led to improvements. Likewise I am grateful to Professors Joseph J. Prentiss of West Virginia University and W. M. Read of the University of Washington for submitting lists of corrigenda for the book's second printing. To the keen observation, good judgment, and acute queries of Dr. Gladys Walterhouse of Barnes and Noble I am also deeply indebted. Finally, my heartfelt and abiding thanks to my very patient and very devoted wife, Dorothy, who typed the manuscript so accurately and so understandingly, and to my daughter Deborah for her very faithful and accurate assistance in proofreading the galleys.

<div style="text-align: right">

FREDERIC M. WHEELOCK
Amherst, New Hampshire
Summer, 1969

</div>

The Revised Edition

In many respects *Wheelock's Latin Reader* (originally titled *Latin Literature: A Book of Readings*) is one of the very best intermediate Latin texts published in the last generation. When the book first appeared in 1967, reviewers extolled the accessibility and comprehensiveness of its readings from Cicero, Livy, Ovid, and Pliny, praised its incorporation of selections from medieval Latin and the Vulgate as "a particularly happy innovation," and hailed the volume as "a solid companion" to *Wheelock's Latin,* the author's best-selling beginning Latin textbook.

The book's primary virtues were, and remain, these two: the wide range of selections from both classical and medieval Latin—about 3,400 lines altogether—and Professor Wheelock's judicious annotations. From

Cicero are included a rich and diverse sampling of his widely varied works, constituting nearly half the volume's readings: the extensive excerpts from Cicero's orations against Verres, the corrupt governor of Sicily whom he courageously prosecuted in 70 B.C., provide valuable insights into the political and judicial proceedings of the late republic and a marvelous specimen of Ciceronian rhetoric; the selections from two of his philosophical treatises, the *De Officiis* and the *De Amicitia,* probingly examine ethical and moral issues that continue to be of great concern to us today; and the several letters (most of them included in their entirety), addressed to family, friends, and associates, give us some remarkably candid glimpses into the personal and political life of that most famous orator and statesman.

The selections from Livy's *Ab Urbe Condita,* which include the story of Romulus and Remus and other legends of early Rome, as well as an account of Hannibal's assault on Italy during the Second Punic War, are at once invaluable historical documents and lively, captivating narratives. The four transformation tales from Ovid's *Metamorphoses*—the tragic love stories of Pyramus and Thisbe, and of Orpheus and Eurydice, the myths of Daedalus and Icarus and of Midas' golden touch—make for delightful reading and provide an ideal introduction to classical Latin poetry. The selections from Pliny's literary epistles present an interesting contrast with Cicero's more spontaneous letters and contain important and interesting information on social and political institutions of the early empire, as well as detailed evidence for both the catastrophic eruption of Mt. Vesuvius in A.D. 79 and the Roman government's policies regarding practices of the early Christian church during the reign of the emperor Trajan.

The passages from St. Jerome's Vulgate edition of the Bible, including the Ten Commandments, the Sermon on the Mount, the Prodigal Son, and others, are an excellent introduction to that profoundly influential document and to the vulgar Latin (the Latin of the *vulgus,* the common people) of the early fifth century. And finally, the several selections drawn from Latin literature of the Middle Ages demonstrate the evolution of the language from the eighth to the fourteenth centuries as well as the remarkable diversity of matter and manner seen in such disparate works as Bede's *Historia Ecclesiastica Gentis Anglorum,* the allegorizing tales of the *Gesta Romanorum,* the sometimes reverent, sometimes raucous *Carmina Burana,* and the hypnotic power of that most powerful of medieval hymns, the *Dies Irae.*

It would be difficult to improve upon so rich a selection from Latin

literature, ranging as it does over the prose and verse of some 1,400 years and including ample material from which to pick and choose for a semester's course in college or, if read straight through, for up to two college semesters or a year's work in high school. Thus I have made few changes to the content of the reading passages. Here and there I have restored some of the Latin that Professor Wheelock omitted, but only when the level of interest was high and the difficulty low, and often in order to reconstitute a continuous, unexcerpted passage (as, for example, in some of the letters, the Ovid selections, and all the readings from the Vulgate). In a very few instances I have deleted passages that seemed to me inordinately difficult for students at the intermediate level (including the notoriously abstruse preface to Livy's history). Perhaps most obviously, the layout of the Latin text has been entirely redesigned and set in a more legible 12-point font.

The layout of the notes has likewise been redesigned, removing them from the back of the book and setting them in a larger font on pages facing the text. I have made considerable changes to the content of the notes as well, deleting some that seemed to provide unnecessary information, adding others where intermediate students might need more help. The glossing of vocabulary has been systematized; within each unit definitions are provided for words that students are not likely to have encountered in their previous study (including words not found in the Latin-English end vocabulary to *Wheelock's Latin*) and whose meanings cannot be easily deduced based on English derivatives; several definitions are usually given in each gloss, so the student must select the one that best suits the context; vocabulary glosses, usually including the nominative singular for a noun and the second principal part for a verb, are provided at a word's first occurrence within a unit and are repeated at the first occurrence in subsequent units, since some teachers and students may not read all the selections in the text or may not read them in the order in which they appear. In any case, as noted earlier in Professor Wheelock's preface, nearly every word in the text is defined in the extensive end vocabulary, which has been expanded in this edition and indicates those words that occur five or more times in the text and which therefore should be memorized.

Difficult or unusual grammatical constructions, figures of speech, and poetic and rhetorical devices that merit comment are printed in SMALL CAPITAL LETTERS LIKE THESE to focus the student's attention; in some instances, explanations or definitions are provided, but in most the teacher is expected to elaborate.

Each unit has been provided with a short introduction, drawn in part from comments previously included in Professor Wheelock's endnotes; and the brief bibliography, listing works useful for background and supplemental information, has been completely updated. Also new to this edition are several maps listing nearly every placename mentioned in the Latin text and many of those in the notes, as well as dozens of photographs which are intended to enrich the reader's understanding and appreciation of the text.

Once again it has been a pleasure and a privilege to have the opportunity of revising one of Frederic Wheelock's books, thus completing the "Wheelock's Latin Series" and rendering the three volumes (*Wheelock's Latin,* Paul Comeau's *Workbook for Wheelock's Latin,* and this *Wheelock's Latin Reader*) more serviceable, it may be hoped, for a new generation of Latin students. I am particularly grateful to Professor Wheelock's daughters, Martha Wheelock and Deborah Wheelock Taylor, my "sisters-in-Latin," for extending me this opportunity, and to my editor at Harper-Collins, Greg Chaput, for supporting my work on all the Wheelock projects every step of the way.

Thanks are due to many others as well: to my stalwart graduate assistants Brandon Wester and Jim Yavenditti for their service in a wide range of research and proofreading tasks; to Tom Elliott, Nicole Feldl, Alexandra Retzleff, and Joyce Uy of the Ancient World Mapping Center at the University of North Carolina, for their expert assistance in producing the maps newly included in this edition; to Tim McCarthy of Art Resource for his generous help in researching literally hundreds of photo options for the book; to my friend and Senior Associate Editor on the staff of *The Classical Outlook,* Mary Ricks, for reading and commenting ever so helpfully on numerous drafts of the typescript; to my colleagues Jim Anderson, Bob Curtis, Timothy Gantz, Bob Harris, Sallie Spence, Fran Teague, Erika Thorgerson, and Ann Williams, for their assistance in providing illustrations and information on topics beyond my very limited areas of competence; and finally, most emphatically and most affectionately, to my dear wife Laura, for her constant love and her unceasingly cheerful tolerance of all my little undertakings.

RICHARD A. LaFLEUR
Athens, Georgia
Spring, 2001

BIBLIOGRAPHY

The following brief bibliography contains works consulted for this new edition and recommended to students and instructors for background and other supplemental information.

Ackroyd, P.R., and C.F. Evans, eds. *The Cambridge History of the Bible.* 3 vols. Cambridge ENG: Cambridge Univ. Press, 1963–70.

Anderson, William S., ed. *Ovid's Metamorphoses: Books 1–5.* Norman OK: Univ. of Oklahoma Press, 1997.

———. *Ovid's Metamorphoses: Books 6–10.* Norman OK: Univ. of Oklahoma Press, 1972.

Barsby, John. *Ovid.* New Surveys in the Classics, 12. Oxford ENG: Clarendon Press, 1978.

Dickison, Sheila, ed. *Cicero's Verrine Oration II.4.* Detroit MI: Wayne State Univ. Press, 1992.

Dorey, T.A., ed. *Cicero.* Studies in Latin Literature and Its Influence. New York NY: Basic Books, 1965.

Dyck, Andrew R. *A Commentary on Cicero, De Officiis.* Ann Arbor MI: Univ. of Michigan Press, 1996.

Fisher, M.B., and M.R. Griffin. *Selections from Pliny's Letters: Handbook.* Cambridge ENG: Cambridge Univ. Press, 1977.

Gould, H.E., and J.L. Whiteley, eds. *Cicero: De Amicitia.* 1941. Reprint. Wauconda IL: Bolchazy-Carducci, 1999.

———. *Titus Livius: Book One.* Blasingstoke ENG: Macmillan, 1952.

Harrington, K.P., ed. *Medieval Latin.* 2nd ed. Rev. Joseph Pucci. Chicago IL: Univ. of Chicago Press, 1997.

Herman, József. *Vulgar Latin.* Rev. ed. Trans. Roger White. Univ. Park, PA: Pennsylvania State Univ., 2000.

Hill, D.E., ed. and trans. *Ovid: Metamorphoses IX-XII.* Warminster ENG: Aris and Phillips, 1999.

Hornblower, Simon, and Antony Spawforth, eds. *Oxford Classical Dictionary.* 3rd ed. Oxford ENG: Oxford Univ. Press, 1996.

How, W.W., and A.C. Clark, eds. *Cicero: Select Letters.* London ENG: Oxford Univ. Press, 1962.

Kelly, J.N.D. *Jerome: His Life, Writings, and Controversies.* New York NY: Harper and Row, 1975.

Kenney, E.J., and W.V. Clausen, eds. *The Cambridge History of Classical Literature.* Vol. 2. *Latin Literature.* Cambridge ENG: Cambridge Univ. Press, 1982.

Luce, T.J. *Livy: The Composition of His History.* Princeton NJ: Princeton Univ. Press, 1977.

Mack, Sara. *Ovid.* New Haven CT: Yale Univ. Press, 1988.

Mantello, F.A.C., and A.G. Rigg, eds. *Medieval Latin: An Introduction and Bibliographical Guide.* Washington DC: Catholic Univ. of America Press, 1996.

Ogilvie, R.M. *A Commentary on Livy Books 1–5.* Oxford ENG: Clarendon Press, 1965.

Powell, J.G.F., ed. and trans. *Cicero: Laelius, On Friendship.* Warminster ENG: Aris and Phillips, 1990.

Raby, F.J.E. *A History of Christian Latin Poetry from the Beginnings to the Close of the Middle Ages.* 2nd ed. London ENG: Oxford Univ. Press, 1953.

Shackleton Bailey, D.R., ed. and trans. *Cicero's Letters.* Vols. 1–10. Cambridge ENG: Cambridge Univ. Press, 1965–81.

Sherwin-White, A.N. *The Letters of Pliny: A Historical and Social Commentary.* London ENG: Oxford Univ. Press, 1966.

Stockton, David, ed. *Thirty-five Letters of Cicero.* London ENG: Oxford Univ. Press, 1969.

Thompson, John, and F.S. Plaistowe, eds. *Livy: Book XXII.* Bristol ENG: Bristol Classical Press, 1988.

Walsh, P.G. *Livy: His Historical Aims and Methods.* Cambridge ENG: Cambridge Univ. Press, 1961.

———, ed. *Livy: Book XXI.* Bristol, ENG: Bristol Classical Press, 1985.

Westcott, J.H., ed. *Selected Letters of Pliny.* Norman OK: Univ. of Oklahoma Press, 1965.

ABBREVIATIONS

The following abbreviations are employed in the notes and vocabulary:

abl.	ablative case	indecl.	indeclinable
abs.	absolute	indef.	indefinite
acc.	accusative case	indic.	indicative mood
act.	active voice	inf(s).	infinitive(s)
A.D.	after Christ (Lat. *anno Domini,* lit., *in the year of the Lord*)	interj(s).	interjection(s)
		interrog.	interrogative
		Lat.	Latin
adj(s).	adjective(s), adjectival	lit.	literally
adv(s).	adverb(s), adverbial	loc.	locative case
appos.	appositive, apposition, appositional	m.	masculine gender
		n.	neuter gender
B.C.	before Christ	nom.	nominative case
ca.	about (Lat. *circa*)	obj(s).	object(s), objective
cent.	century	partic(s).	participle(s)
cl(s).	clause(s)	pass.	passive voice
class.	classical	perf.	perfect (present perfect) tense
compl.	complement, complementary	pers.	person, personal
conj(s).	conjunction(s)	pl.	plural
cp.	compare (Lat. *compara*)	plpf.	pluperfect tense
dat.	dative case	pred.	predicate
decl.	declension	prep(s).	preposition(s), prepositional
dir.	direct		
eccl.	ecclesiastical	pres.	present tense
e.g.	for example (Lat. *exempli gratia*)	pron(s).	pronoun(s)
		ref.	reference
Eng.	Engli	rel.	relative
etc.	and others (Lat. *et cetera*)	sc.	supply, namely (Lat. *scilicet*)
f.	feminine gender	sent(s).	sentence(s)
fut.	future tense	sg.	singular
gen.	genitive case	subj(s).	subject(s)
hist.	historical	subjunct.	subjunctive mood
i.e.	that is (Lat. *id est*)	vb(s).	verb(s)
imper.	imperative	voc.	vocative case
impers.	impersonal	vs.	as opposed to, in comparison with (Lat. *versus*)
impf.	imperfect tense		
ind. quest(s).	indirect question(s)		
ind. state(s).	indirect statement(s)		

ANCIENT ITALY

Map by Richard A. LaFleur, Tom Elliott, Nicole Feldl, Alexandra Retzleff, and Joyce Uy.
Copyright 2001, Ancient World Mapping Center (http://www.unc.edu/depts/awmc)

BRITANNIA

Londinium

BELGICA

GERMANIA

Rhenus

LUGDUNENSIS

GALLIA

NORICUM

Aquincum

SCYTHIA

SARMATIA

CASPIUM MARE

AQUITANIA

NARBONENSIS

ALPES MONTES

Comum

PANNONIA

DACIA

Danubius

CAUCASUS MONS

Sebastopolis

PONTUS EUXINUS

Pyrenaeus Saltus

PYRENAEI MONTES

VOLCAE ARECOMICI

Druentia

ITALIA

DALMATIA

MOESIA

THRACIA

Byzantium

BITHYNIA & PONTUS

ARMENIA

TARRACONENSIS

Hiberus

CORSICA

Roma

MACEDONIA

ASIA

GALATIA ET CAPADOCIA

MESOPOTAMIA

LUSITANIA

Saguntum

SARDINIA

Misenum

ACHAEA

Athenae

CILICIA

Antiochia

BAETICA

Carthago Nova

Gades

Iol Caesarea

SICILIA

Syracusae

CRETA

CYPRUS

SYRIA

Babylon

Tingi

MAURETANIA TINGITANA

MAURETANIA CAESARIENSIS

NUMIDIA

AFRICA PROCONSULARIS

Carthago

Hericho

Hierusalem

IUDAEA

ATLAS MONS

Lepcis Magna

Hesperidum Horti

Alexandria

Nilus

ARABIA

CYRENE

AEGYPTUS

250   500   750 miles

250   500   750   1000 kilometers

THE ROMAN EMPIRE

Map by Richard A. LaFleur, Tom Elliott, Nicole Feldl, Alexandra Retzleff, and Joyce Uy. Copyright 2001, Ancient World Mapping Center (http://www.unc.edu/depts/awmc)

ANCIENT GREECE AND THE AEGEAN
Map by Richard A. LaFleur, Tom Elliott, Nicole Feldl, Alexandra Retzleff, and Joyce Uy. Copyright 2001,
Ancient World Mapping Center (http://www.unc.edu/depts/awmc)

WHEELOCK'S LATIN READER

Selections from Latin Literature

Cicero's Orations against Verres

Marcus Tullius Cicero was ancient Rome's most famous orator, an eminent statesman, and one of the best known, most prolific, and most admired of all classical Latin authors. Born in Arpinum in central Italy on January 3, 106 B.C., Cicero's family was wealthy and well-connected. His father saw to it that the young man received an excellent education, and after a brief stint in the army when he was only 17 years old, Cicero turned to the study of law, serving an apprenticeship with some of the leading jurists of the day. He argued his first case in 81 B.C., and in the following year his successful defense of Sextus Roscius in his trial for murder—a case in which he risked incurring the enmity of the dictator Sulla—earned him a reputation as a bold and highly competent lawyer. In 79 his wife Terentia gave birth to their daughter Tullia.

During the early 70's Cicero continued his study of philosophy and rhetoric in Greece and returned to Rome to commence a political career, which began with his election to the quaestorship in 75 B.C., to the praetorship in 66, and, despite his status as a *novus homo* (a candidate whose family had no tradition of office-holding), to the consulship in 63. Cicero's year as consul was notable for his suppression of the conspiracy of Lucius Sergius Catilina, an episode of Roman history richly docu-

"Cicero Denouncing Catiline in the Roman Senate"
Cesare Maccari, 19th century, Palazzo Madama, Rome, Italy

mented in a monograph written by the contemporary historian Sallust and especially in Cicero's four highly celebrated Catilinarian orations.

Cicero's speeches were so persuasive, and the evidence so compelling, that Catiline fled Rome immediately and joined his rebel troops. Soon he and his army were outlawed, five conspirators who had remained in Rome were arrested and executed, and in early 62 Catiline and nearly all his forces fell in battle at Pistoria, in northern Etruria, in a bloody confrontation with the Roman legions sent in their pursuit. Thanks to Cicero's personal courage, his political adroitness, and his oratorical skills (well evidenced in the excerpts you are about to read from his earlier Verrine orations), he managed to suppress a rebellion that could have had far more sweeping, and violent, consequences.

In executing several of the Catilinarian conspirators, Cicero had acted under the authority of an emergency decree of the senate; nevertheless, the legality of the action was open to question and Cicero's political adversaries ultimately engineered his banishment from Rome in 58 B.C. With the support of Pompey the Great, Cicero was recalled the next year; but under the shadow of Pompey's alliance with Gaius Julius Caesar and Marcus Licinius Crassus (the so-called "first triumvirate"), he played a less active role in politics during the mid-50's, devoting his time instead to the courts and to writing a number of oratorical and political treatises, including the *De Oratore,* the *De Republica,* and the *De Legibus.*

In 52 B.C. he was elected to the augurate, a prestigious state priesthood, and then in 51–50 he was dispatched to serve as proconsular governor of Cilicia, taking with him his young son Marcus (born in 65). When he returned to Rome this time, Cicero found the state embroiled in civil war after the split between Caesar and Pompey. Pompey was soon defeated, and, to Cicero's great dismay, Caesar was elected to a series of consulships and ultimately appointed dictator for life. During this same period Cicero divorced Terentia for suspected financial improprieties, and, plunged into despair over their daughter's death in 45, he withdrew entirely from public life and turned to philosophy, authoring several important works on ethics and religion (discussed below in the introduction to "Cicero's *Philosophica*").

After Caesar's assassination in 44, Cicero returned briefly but with a passion to the political scene, vehemently attacking Caesar's former lieutenant and would-be successor, Mark Antony, in a series of speeches known as the "Philippics." When Antony joined ranks in the "second triumvirate" with Marcus Aemilius Lepidus and Octavian (Caesar's

adoptive son and the future emperor Augustus), Cicero's fate was sealed; at Antony's insistence, his name was included among those proscribed on the triumvirs' enemies list and he was hunted down and beheaded on the 7th of December, 43 B.C.—a grim and unmerited conclusion to a brilliant life and career.

One of the many bright moments in that career was in 75 B.C., when at the age of 31 Cicero took his first step on the traditional course of political offices known as the *cursus honorum* and was elected to the financial post of quaestor. Cicero served his quaestorship in the province of Sicily, and he administered the office with such integrity that he won the enduring esteem and affection of the provincials. In 70 B.C., after the notoriously corrupt and rapacious Gaius Verres had governed the island for three years (73–71), the Sicilians called upon Cicero to represent them in prosecuting their former governor in the extortion courts for his crimes against the province and its people. Verres enjoyed the support of not a few prominent men in Rome and had every expectation of escaping justice through his influence, bribery, and the postponement of his trial to the following year, when the composition of the court would be more favorable to his defense. Cicero, however, by his rapid amassing of evi-
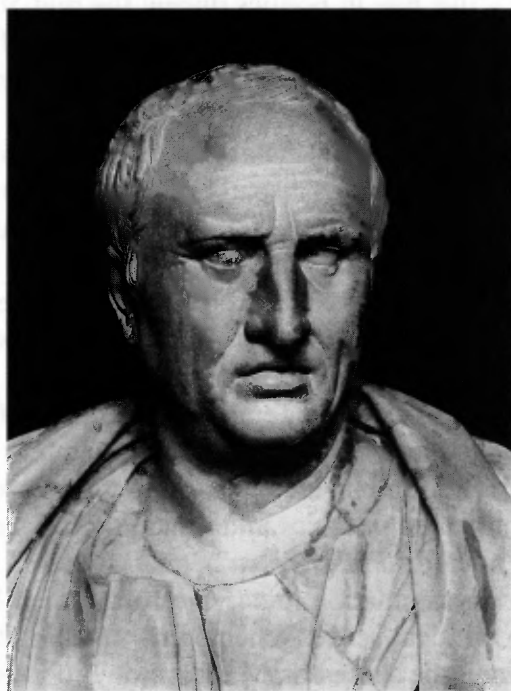
Cicero, 1st century B.C.
Museo Capitolino, Rome, Italy

dence and the immediate presentation of witnesses during the trial's opening phase, the so-called *Actio Prima,* provided such damning testimony that Verres' lawyer, Quintus Hortensius Hortalus, withdrew from the case and Verres fled into voluntary exile in Massilia (modern Marseilles).

This stunning victory made unnecessary the more formal presentation of the case which Cicero had prepared for the second phase of the trial, the *Actio Secunda,* but he nevertheless polished and published in five volumes the text of his planned speeches, rightly considering them good publicity for a political aspirant and a rising orator. Hortensius' reputation as the leading lawyer of the day was soon eclipsed by Cicero's; and Verres himself died in exile, proscribed by Mark Antony, ironically, for his art collection, much of which had been stolen from the Sicilians.

The passages from the Verrines excerpted in this book include some of the most interesting sections of both the *Actio Prima* and the *Actio Secunda.* Focusing on the enormity of Verres' crimes, in particular his plundering of Syracuse, capital of the province, and his torture and crucifixion of Publius Gavius, a Roman citizen who had dared to speak out against Verres, the selections provide valuable insights into provincial administration and the juridical process in the first century B.C. as well as a generous sampling of Cicero's spectacular rhetorical powers.

1.   **quod:** the antecedent is **id** (3).

      unum: *alone* or *especially.*

2.   **vestri ordinis:** OBJ. GEN.; i.e., the senatorial class (vs. the equestrians, or busi-
      nessmen, and the urban plebs, or common people). Senatorial juries,
      commonly biased in favor of any fellow senator who was tried before
      them on the charge of extortion, had a bad reputation, hence **invidiam**
      and **infamiam.** In this case, however, Cicero felt that he had managed to
      secure a reliable jury and wanted to indict Verres as quickly as possible,
      since both he and Verres had reason to believe that the senatorial court
      of the following year would be more easily swayed by Verres and acquit
      him.

      vestri . . . vobis (4): some manuscripts have **nostri . . . nobis,** which could be
      the correct reading, since Cicero, as a former quaestor, was himself a
      member of the senate.

      iudiciorum: iudicium can mean not only a *judgment* or *trial* but also a *court*
      or *jury* (i.e., those who gave the judgment).

      sedandam: sedare, *to settle, check, stop, mitigate.*

3.   **prope:** adv., *nearly, almost.*

      divinitus: adv., *divinely, providentially.*

4.   **summo:** here, *most critical.*

5.   **inveteravit: inveterascere,** *to grow old, become established;* note the emphasis
      achieved both by placing the main verb at the beginning of the sentence
      and by employing CHIASMUS (the ABBA order in the phrase **perniciosa
      rei publicae vobisque periculosa**).

7.   **exteras nationes:** i.e., the provinces.

      sermone: not *sermon,* but *conversation, talk;* the IND. STATE. **pecuniosum . . .
      posse** (8–9) depends on this speech word.

      percrebruit: percrebrescere, *to spread abroad.*

8.   **pecuniosum:** i.e., as long as he is wealthy.

      neminem: emphatic for **nullum.**

9.   **discrimine: discrimen,** *turning point, crisis, critical moment;* a bill had been
      proposed (and was subsequently passed) limiting the authority of the
      senate over the courts.

10.   **qui . . . conentur (11):** REL. CL. OF PURPOSE, *(when men are ready) to attempt.*

      contionibus: contio, *meeting, assembly, speech.*

11.   **reus:** *defendant.*

12.   **vita atque factis:** ABL. OF CAUSE.

      omnium: depends on **opinione.**

13.   **pecuniae . . . absolutus (14):** sc. **sed;** both the omission of the conj. (ASYNDE-
      TON) and the parallelism of the two cls. emphasize the contrast between
      damnatus and **absolutus.**

      praedicatione: praedicatio, *proclamation, declaration;* with **spe,** *according to
      his own hopeful assertion,* an example of HENDIADYS (use of two nouns
      connected by a conj., instead of one modified noun, to convey vividly a
      single complex idea).

14.   **absolutus: absolvere,** *to absolve, acquit.*

IN C. VERREM: ACTIO PRIMA

Confidence in the incorruptibilty of the senatorial jury, which now has the opportunity to redeem Rome's honor in the eyes of the world.

Quod erat optandum maxime, iudices, et quod unum ad invidiam vestri ordinis infamiamque iudiciorum sedandam maxime pertinebat, id non humano consilio sed prope divinitus datum atque oblatum vobis summo rei publicae tempore videtur.
5   Inveteravit enim iam opinio perniciosa rei publicae vobisque periculosa, quae non modo apud populum Romanum sed etiam exteras nationes omnium sermone percrebruit: his iudiciis, quae nunc sunt, pecuniosum hominem, quamvis sit nocens, neminem posse damnari. Nunc in ipso discrimine ordinis iudiciorumque
10   vestrorum, cum sint parati qui contionibus et legibus hanc invidiam senatus inflammare conentur, reus in iudicium adductus est C. Verres, homo vita atque factis omnium iam opinione damnatus, pecuniae magnitudine sua spe ac praedicatione absolutus.
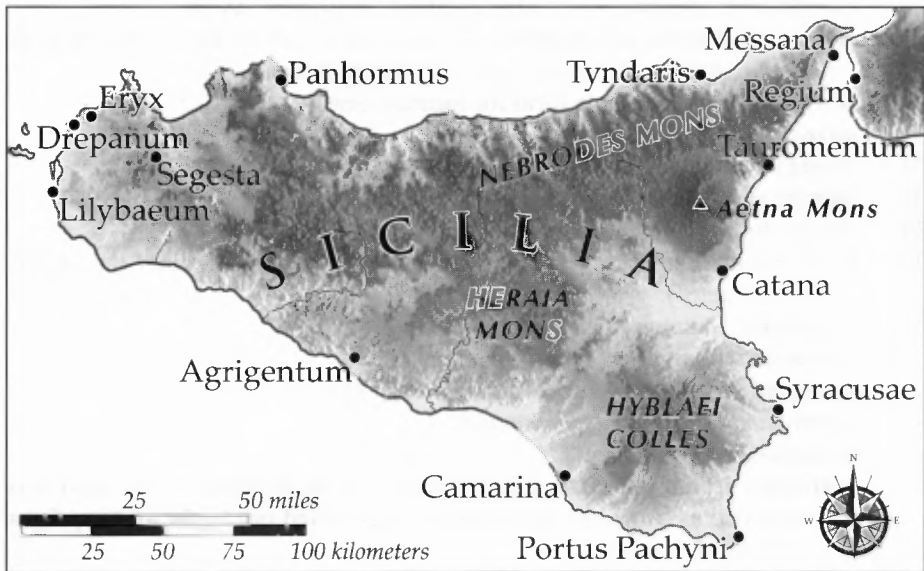
SICILY
*Map by R. A. LaFleur, Tom Elliott, Nicole Feldl, Alexandra Retzleff,
and Joyce Uy. Copyright 2001, Ancient World Mapping Center
(http://www.unc.edu/depts/awmc)*

16. **actor:** here, not *actor,* but *prosecutor, attorney.*
    augerem: augere, *to increase, enlarge.*
17. **communi:** i.e., which both the senate and Cicero himself shared.
18. **reconciliare:** here, not *reconcile,* but *win back.*
    existimationem: existimatio, *judgment, good name, reputation.*
20. **depeculatorem: depeculator,** *plunderer, embezzler.*
    aerari: aerarium, *treasury.*
    Asiae atque Pamphyliae (21): the Roman province of Asia and Pamphylia,
       during Cicero's day part of the province of Cilicia (of which Cicero him-
       self became proconsular governor in 51–50 B.C.), were both in Asia Mi-
       nor, where Verres had served the corrupt governor Dolabella.
21. **praedonem: praedo,** *robber;* the allusion is to Verres' term as praetor urbanus
       in 74 B.C.
    labem atque perniciem (22): from **labes** and **pernicies,** *ruin and destruction.*
22. **religiose:** adv., *conscientiously.*
23. **haerebit: haerere,** *to cling, stick, persist.*
24. **quam ob rem (25):** here = **cur.**
25. **proficere:** *to gain, accomplish.*
26. **intellegere non possum:** because the current praetor (Manius Acilius Glabrio)
       and panel **(consilium)** are reliable.
27. **reiectione: reiectio,** *challenging, rejection;* during the selection of a panel, pro-
       spective jurors could be challenged and rejected.
27. **ea spe . . . ut (28):** lit., *with such hope . . . that;* the cl. is in appos. with **unum illud.**
28. **praeditum:** *endowed (with)* + abl.; freely, *his hopes were such that.*
    constitueret: constituere, *to place, establish, determine, decide.*
29. **sibi . . . adiumento: adiumentum,** *help, assistance;* DAT. OF REF. + DAT. OF PUR-
       POSE (together sometimes called the DOUBLE DAT.).
    fore: a common alternate form for **futurum esse.**
32. **quae . . . possit (34):** REL. CL. OF RESULT.
34. **aliqua ex parte:** *in any way, even partially.*
36. **indicia:** *proofs, evidence.*
39. **aliquando:** adv., *at some time, at any time, ever, at last.*
40. **hoc praetore:** ABL. ABS.; the governor of Sicily was a propraetor (i.e., a for-
       mer praetor).
41. **communia:** *common to all men, universal.*
43. **imprudentiam:** lit., *lack of foresight.*
    superfuit: superesse, *to be more than enough (for).*
44. **nutum:** *nod (of approval), command.*
    pecuniae: *sums of money.*
45. **aratorum: arator,** *plowman, farmer, tenant;* in Sicily much of the land was
       regarded as owned by the state and was rented out to the **aratores** for a
       tithe of their crops.
    bonis: *goods.*
    instituto: institutum, practice, custom.
    coactae: sc. **sunt;** Cicero and other writers frequently omitted forms of **sum**
       in the perf. pass. system, employing only the perf. pass. partic. (so **ex-
       istimati, cruciati,** etc., later in this sent.).

15   Huic ego causae, iudices, cum summa voluntate et exspec-
tatione populi Romani, actor accessi, non ut augerem invidiam
ordinis sed ut infamiae communi succurrerem. Adduxi enim
hominem in quo reconciliare existimationem iudiciorum amis-
sam, redire in gratiam cum populo Romano, satisfacere exteris
20   nationibus possetis—depeculatorem aerari, vexatorem Asiae
atque Pamphyliae, praedonem iuris urbani, labem atque perni-
ciem provinciae Siciliae. De quo si vos vere ac religiose iudica-
veritis, auctoritas ea, quae in vobis remanere debet, haerebit.
Quid iste speret et quo animum intendat facile perspicio. Quam
25   ob rem vero se confidat aliquid proficere posse, hoc praetore et
hoc consilio, intellegere non possum. Unum illud intellego (quod
populus Romanus in reiectione iudicum iudicavit) ea spe istum
fuisse praeditum ut omnem rationem salutis in pecunia consti-
tueret, hoc erepto praesidio ut nullam sibi rem adiumento fore
30   arbitraretur. (I.1–10, excerpts)

A summary of Verres' crimes, especially in Sicily.

Etenim quod est ingenium tantum, quae tanta facultas di-
cendi aut copia, quae istius vitam, tot vitiis flagitiisque con-
victam, iam pridem omnium voluntate iudicioque damnatam,
aliqua ex parte possit defendere?
35   Iam vero omnium vitiorum suorum plurima et maxima con-
stituit monumenta et indicia in provincia Sicilia, quam iste per
triennium ita vexavit ac perdidit ut ea restitui in antiquum sta-
tum nullo modo possit, vix autem per multos annos innocen-
tisque praetores aliqua ex parte recreari aliquando posse vide-
40   atur. Hoc praetore, Siculi neque suas leges neque nostra senatus
consulta neque communia iura tenuerunt. Tantum quisque ha-
bet in Sicilia quantum hominis avarissimi et libidinosissimi aut
imprudentiam subterfugit aut satietati superfuit. Nulla res per
triennium nisi ad nutum istius iudicata est. Innumerabiles pecu-
45   niae ex aratorum bonis novo nefarioque instituto coactae;

46.   **socii:** not allies in the international sense, but non-Roman members of communities within the Roman state which had special rights such as local independence.

    existimati: existimare, *to estimate, think, consider.*

47.   **cruciati: cruciare,** *to crucify, torture;* it was illegal to inflict serious physical punishment on a Roman citizen except as a result of a trial by peers at Rome.

48.   **integerrimi: integer,** *untouched, blameless, honest.*

49.   **indicta:** lit., *not spoken = untried, unheard;* with **causa** (49), ABL. ABS.

    eiecti: i.e., into exile.

    portus: *ports, harbors.*

52.   **fame: fames,** *hunger, starvation.*

    classes: classis, *fleet;* maintained by the Sicilians as a defense against pirates.

    opportunissimae: here, *most serviceable.*

54.   **partim:** adv., *partly.*

55.   **locupletissimorum: locuples,** *rich, wealthy.*

    illi: the antecedent is **regum;** e.g., Hiero II, king of Syracuse ca. 270–216 B.C.

    ornamento urbibus: DOUBLE DAT.

56.   **imperatorum:** e.g., Marcus Claudius Marcellus, who recaptured Syracuse from the Carthaginians in 212 B.C. and spared its public monuments, and Scipio Aemilianus, who after his victory in the Third Punic War restored to the Sicilians a number of statues that had been removed to Carthage.

57.   **spoliavit: spoliare,** *to rob, plunder.*

59.   **delubra: delubrum,** *shrine, temple.*

60.   **in:** *in the case of, in respect to.*

    stupris: stuprum, *debauchery.*

    flagitiis: flagitium, *shameful act, disgrace.*

63.   **consili:** PARTITIVE GEN.

    profecto: adv., *surely, actually, really.*

    taciti: agrees with the subj. of **dabitis.**

    egomet: -met is a suffix appended to prons. for emphasis.

64.   **necessario:** adv.

65.   **legitimo:** i.e., the time allotted by law for Cicero's prosecution of the case.

66.   **ut . . . videatur (68):** NOUN CL. OF RESULT, common after **perficere, efficere, accidere,** etc.

    post: our idiom says *within.*

67.   **compositior: compositus,** *put together, arranged, prepared, calm.*

68.   **reus ne elabatur (69): elabi,** *to slip away, escape;* FEAR CL., dependent on **periculum est.**

70.   **absconditum:** *concealed, hidden.*

71.   **perpetua:** *uninterrupted, complete.*

72.   **hominem:** here, contemptuous compared with **virum.**

    tabulis: tabula, *board, writing tablet, document, record.*

    testibus: testis, *witness.*

socii fidelissimi in hostium numero existimati; cives Romani servilem in modum cruciati et necati; homines nocentissimi propter pecunias iudicio liberati; honestissimi atque integerrimi, absentes rei facti, indicta causa, damnati et eiecti; por-
50   tus munitissimi, maximae tutissimaeque urbes piratis praedonibusque patefactae; nautae militesque Siculorum, socii nostri atque amici, fame necati; classes optimae atque opportunissimae, cum magna ignominia populi Romani, amissae et perditae. Idem iste praetor monumenta antiquissima, partim regum
55   locupletissimorum, quae illi ornamento urbibus esse voluerunt, partim etiam nostrorum imperatorum, quae victores civitatibus Siculis aut dederunt aut reddiderunt, spoliavit nudavitque omnia. Neque hoc solum in statuis ornamentisque publicis fecit, sed etiam delubra omnia sanctissimis religionibus consecrata
60   depeculatus est. In stupris vero et flagitiis, nefarias eius libidines commemorare pudore deterreor. (I.10–14, excerpts)

Cicero's strategy: immediate presentation of evidence and witnesses without formal development of the case.

Nunc ego, iudices, iam vos consulo quid mihi faciendum putetis. Id enim consili mihi profecto taciti dabitis quod egomet mihi necessario capiendum intellego. Si utar ad dicendum meo
65   legitimo tempore, mei laboris, industriae, diligentiaeque capiam fructum, et ex accusatione perficiam ut nemo umquam post hominum memoriam paratior, vigilantior, compositior ad iudicium venisse videatur. Sed in hac laude industriae meae, reus ne elabatur summum periculum est. Quid est igitur quod fieri pos-
70   sit? Non obscurum, opinor, neque absconditum. Fructum istum laudis, qui ex perpetua oratione percipi potuit, in alia tempora reservemus; nunc hominem tabulis, testibus, privatis publicisque litteris auctoritatibusque accusemus.

Doric temple, 5th century B.C.
Segesta, Sicily, Italy

74.   **mihi certum est:** *I am determined.*
       committere: here, *permit* + **ut** cl.
       praetor: Glabrio, the incumbent praetor, was unbiased, but the praetor-elect,
           under whom the case of Verres would be tried if delayed to the next year,
           was prejudiced in Verres' favor.
       nobis: DAT. OF REF., implying disadvantage.
75.   **mutetur:** sg. because the compound subj. is viewed as a single entity.
76.   **homines:** here, simply *human beings.*
77.   **supplices: supplex,** *suppliant.*
       omnis: = **omnes;** this alternate acc. pl. form for **i**-stems is common in Cicero
           and other class. authors.
78.   **verum:** conj., *but.*
       deplorandi: deplorare, *to weep, lament the loss of, complain of.*
80.   **ut . . . statim:** noun cl. in appos. with **hoc non novum.**
81.   **testis:** acc. pl. (cp. **omnis** in 77).
       quod . . . explicem (82): in appos. to **illud . . . novum;** instead of delivering the
           usual opening argument, providing an overview of the case, Cicero will
           introduce witnesses to support each charge as he enumerates them, a
           clever ploy allowing him to produce evidence before the defense attorney
           (Quintus Hortensius Hortalus) has an opportunity to counter with his
           own opening remarks.
       constituam: here, *arrange, deploy.*
82.   **crimen:** *charge, accusation.*
83.   **altera actione:** excerpts from this *second action,* i.e., the second part of the
           trial, are included below.
87.   **quadringentiens sestertium:** = **quadringentiens (centena milia) sestertium,** *400
           x 100,000 sesterces = 40,000,000 sesterces;* a **sestertius** was a *sesterce,*
           and **sestertium,** *1,000 sesterces,* when used with a numeral adv., stood for
           100,000 sesterces.
89.   **statuatis: statuere,** *to set up, decide, determine.*
       spatium: *space, time, opportunity.*
90.   **nostro commodo: commodum,** *convenience, advantage;* ABL. OF ACCORDANCE,
           according to our convenience.
91.   **oratione:** ABL. OF MEANS with the idiom **opus est,** *there is need of* (lit., *there is
           work to be done by . . .*).
       nihil: emphatic for **non.**
       dixi: indicating the end of his opening remarks; depositions and the testi-
           mony of witnesses followed.
93.   **Syracusarum: Syracusae,** pl. in form but sg. in meaning; Syracuse was capital
           of the province of Sicily.
       direptionem: direptio, *plundering.*

Mihi certum est non committere ut in hac causa praetor no-
75 bis consiliumque mutetur. Non patiar rem in id tempus adduci
ut homines miseri, antea socii atque amici populi Romani, nunc
servi ac supplices, non modo ius suum fortunasque omnis amit-
tant, verum etiam deplorandi iuris sui potestatem non habeant.
      Faciam hoc non novum, sed ab eis qui nunc principes nos-
80 trae civitatis sunt ante factum, ut testibus utar statim; illud a
me novum, iudices, cognoscetis quod ita testis constituam ut
crimen totum explicem. Si quis erit qui perpetuam orationem
accusationemque desideret, altera actione audiet.
      Haec primae actionis erit accusatio: dicimus C. Verrem, cum
85 multa libidinose, multa crudeliter in civis Romanos atque in
socios, multa in deos hominesque nefarie fecerit, tum praeterea
quadringentiens sestertium ex Sicilia contra leges abstulisse.
Hoc testibus, hoc tabulis privatis publicisque auctoritatibus ita
vobis planum faciemus ut hoc statuatis, etiam si spatium ad di-
90 cendum nostro commodo vacuosque dies habuissemus, tamen
oratione longa nihil opus fuisse. Dixi. (I.32–33, 53–56, excerpts)

IN C. VERREM: ACTIO SECUNDA

Verres' Plundering of Syracuse

*Contrast the treatment of Syracuse by Marcellus in war and by Verres
in peace.*

Unius etiam urbis omnium pulcherrimae atque ornatissi-
mae, Syracusarum, direptionem commemorabo. Nemo fere

Temple G, 6th century B.C.
Selinunte, Sicily, Italy

14 *Wheelock's Latin Reader*

94. **vestrum:** PARTITIVE GEN.
   quin: when used to introduce a REL. CL. OF CHARACTERISTIC after a generalizing negative word (here **nemo**) has the force of **qui non.**
   M. Marcello: Hiero II, the Syracusan king, had been friendly to the Romans in the Second Punic War, but on his death in 216 B.C. the city went over to the Carthaginians; Marcus Claudius Marcellus, a former consul and commander of Rome's legions in Sicily, then besieged Syracuse and finally won it back for Rome in 212 B.C.
95. **audierit:** = **audiverit,** perf. subjunct., one of the common short forms of perf. system tenses which drop the **v** (and sometimes an accompanying vowel as well, e.g., **amasset** for **amavisset**).
   annalibus: annales, *annals* = *history;* Roman historical writings were frequently annalistic.
96. **conferte:** the contrast between Marcellus and Verres was not quite so sharp as Cicero suggests, for Marcellus, as a victorious general, did permit considerable plundering, and he sent many art treasures to Rome; however, the acts of Marcellus in war were hardly so heinous as those of Verres in peace.
97. **cohortem:** commonly a military term but here = *band, retinue.*
99. **conditas . . . captas:** sc. **esse.**
   constitutas: here, *well established.*
101. **omitto:** a good example of the common rhetorical device known as PRAETERITIO ("passing over"), where a speaker says that he will not talk about something and then proceeds to do so.
102. **introitu: introitus,** *entrance.*
103. **purum:** PRED. ADJ. after **servatum esset.**
   servatum esset: subjunct. in a SUBORDINATE CL. IN IND. STATE.
   id: refers back to **forum** as subj. of the IND. STATE.
104. **redundasse:** = **redundavisse;** from **redundare,** *to overflow.*
   portum . . . patuisse (106): note the close structural similarity of this and the preceding cl. **(forum . . . redundasse);** this sort of parallelism is a recurring feature of Cicero's style.
105. **classibus:** dat.; Marcellus had not been able to enter the harbor during his siege of Syracuse.
   Carthaginiensium: possessive gen. with **classibus,** balancing **nostris.**
106. **eum:** refers to **portum** and picks up the idea after the interruption caused by the rel. cl., just as **id** looked back to **forum** in the preceding cl.
   isto praetore: ABL. ABS.; **iste** often, as here, has a contemptuous force.
   Cilicum: Cilices, *Cilicians,* the people of Cilicia in southern Asia Minor. At this time pirates **(praedones)** were sailing at will all over the Mediterranean; in 67 B.C. Pompey was commissioned to wipe out this menace and did so in the amazingly brief space of three months.
   mitto: = **omitto;** Latin authors often employed the simple form of a vb. in place of the expected compound form.
   adhibitam: adhibere, *to hold to, apply, employ (against).*

vestrum est quin quem ad modum captae sint a M. Marcello
95 Syracusae saepe audierit, non numquam etiam in annalibus
legerit. Conferte hanc pacem cum illo bello, huius praetoris ad-
ventum cum illius imperatoris victoria, huius cohortem impu-
ram cum illius exercitu invicto, huius libidines cum illius conti-
nentia: ab illo qui cepit, conditas, ab hoc qui constitutas accepit,
100 captas dicetis Syracusas.

Ac iam illa omitto quae disperse a me multis in locis di-
centur et dicta sunt: forum Syracusanorum, quod introitu Mar-
celli purum a caede servatum esset, id adventu Verris Siculorum
innocentium sanguine redundasse; portum Syracusanorum, qui
105 tum et nostris classibus et Carthaginiensium clausus fuisset,
eum isto praetore Cilicum praedonibus patuisse. Mitto adhibi-

Relief of warship, temple of Fortuna Primigenia, 1st century A.D.
Praeneste, Italy
Museo Pio Clementino, Vatican Museums, Vatican State

107. **ingenuis:** *native, freeborn.*
    familias: an archaic form of the gen. **familiae** which survived in the phrases **pater familias,** *the head of a household,* and **mater familias,** *matron.*
    quae: n. pl. referring to the crimes described in the preceding cl.
108. **neque . . . neque (109):** the repeated conjs. (POLYSYNDETON) are emphatic and do not negate but intensify the preceding **non.**
111. **illis rebus:** Verres' thefts of works of art in other parts of Sicily were detailed earlier in the speech.
112. **Graecarum . . . omnium (113):** sc. **urbium.**
113. **audistis:** = **audivistis;** see above on **audierit** (96).
115. **Insula:** Ortygia (here called simply *the Island*), site of the original city and connected to the mainland by a bridge over a narrow channel.
116. **aedes:** *sanctuaries, temples.*
    complures: *several.*
117. **antecellant:** **antecellere,** *to surpass.*
    Dianae: gen., *(one) Diana's.*
118. **extrema:** not *the farthest* but *the farthest part of;* some adjs. which indicate a sequence can be used to indicate a part of an object (e.g., **medius,** *middle, middle of*), the so-called partitive use of an adj.
119. **fons:** *spring, source, fountain.*
    dulcis: i.e., *fresh.*
    cui: DAT. OF POSSESSION.
    Arethusa: associated with the river nymph Arethusa, whose waters were said to flow beneath the earth from Elis in Greece to Syracuse.
120. **urbs:** here, *district.*
    Syracusis: loc.
122. **porticus:** one of the few f. nouns of the fourth decl.; in Greek cities porticoes were commonly employed for shelter, the conduct of business and academic lectures, etc.
    prytaneum: *town hall.*
123. **egregium:** *uncommon, extraordinary.*
    ceterae: i.e., in contrast to the public center.
124. **lata:** *broad, wide.*
    transversis: sc. **viis.**
125. **continentur:** *are occupied, filled.*
126. **fanum:** *temple, shrine.*
    Tycha: *Tyche* is Greek for **Fortuna,** the goddess of fate or luck.
128. **Neapolis:** Greek for *New-city;* cp. Naples in Italy.
129. **quam ad summam:** = **et ad summam eam,** *and at the highest point of it;* for the partitive sense of **summam,** see above on **extrema** (118).
    theatrum: sc. **est** (forms of **esse** are often omitted in Lat. and their equivalents must be supplied in translation); the theatre Cicero mentions survives to this day.

tam vim ingenuis, matres familias violatas, quae tum in urbe capta commissa non sunt neque odio hostili neque licentia mili-tari neque more belli neque iure victoriae; mitto, inquam, haec
110   omnia, quae ab isto per triennium perfecta sunt. Ea, quae con-iuncta cum illis rebus sunt de quibus antea dixi, cognoscite. (IV.115–16, excerpts)

Description of Syracuse.

Urbem Syracusas maximam esse Graecarum, pulcherrimam omnium saepe audistis. Est, iudices, ita ut dicitur. Ea tanta est urbs ut ex quattuor urbibus maximis constare dicatur, quarum
115   una est Insula, in qua domus est quae Hieronis regis fuit, qua praetores uti solent. In ea sunt aedes sacrae complures, sed duae quae longe ceteris antecellant: Dianae et altera, quae fuit ante istius adventum ornatissima, Minervae. In hac insula extrema est fons aquae dulcis, cui nomen Arethusa est, incredibili mag-
120   nitudine, plenissimus piscium. Altera autem est urbs Syracusis, cui nomen Achradina est, in qua forum maximum, pulcherri-mae porticus, ornatissimum prytaneum, amplissima est curia templumque egregium Iovis Olympii; ceteraeque urbis partes, quae, una via lata perpetua multisque transversis divisae, priva-
125   tis aedificiis continentur. Tertia est urbs quae, quod in ea parte Fortunae fanum antiquum fuit, Tycha nominata est, in qua gymnasium amplissimum est et complures aedes sacrae. Quarta autem est quae, quia postrema coaedificata est, Neapolis nomi-natur; quam ad summam theatrum maximum. Praeterea duo

Roman theater, replacing a Greek original, with Mt. Aetna in background
1st century A.D., *Taormina, Sicily, Italy*

130.   **Cereris:** gen. of **Ceres;** Ceres was the Roman goddess of grain, equivalent to the Greek Demeter, and thus an important deity on Sicily, where grain was a major agricultural product.

      Liberae: *Libera,* another Italian agricultural deity, was associated with Proserpina (Persephone), daughter of the grain goddess.

      signum: here, *statue.*

131.   **Apollinis:** gen. of **Apollo,** god of the sun, who at Syracuse had the epithet "Temenites."

132.   **portare:** *to carry;* the cult statues in ancient temples were typically huge.

134.   **qui:** *for he;* the so-called "conjunctive" use of the rel. pron. at the beginning of a sentence, often to be translated *and he (qui = et is),* is very common in Cicero.

      vi copiisque (135): *by force and troops = by force of troops = by military force;* HENDIADYS.

135   **hoc:** explained by the appos. inf. phrase **hanc . . . exstinguere.**

136.   **praesertim:** adv., *especially.*

      ex qua . . . ostenderetur (137): a REL. CAUSAL CL., *since from it. . . .*

138.   **publicis privatis, sacris profanis:** a highly effective ASYNDETON, imparting a terse, staccato effect.

139.   **in:** *in the matter of, in respect to.*

140.   **habuit . . . habuit:** ANAPHORA (word repetition, especially at the beginning of successive phrases) and ASYNDETON emphasize the reasonableness and decency of Marcellus.

      victoriae rationem: OBJ. GEN., *consideration (regard) for his victory.*

      humanitatis: also with **rationem,** and positioned at the end of the sentence for emphasis; not always an easy word to translate, it seems here to connote *kindness, courtesy, decency.*

      victoriae . . . esse (141): PRED. GEN. OF POSSESSION, lit., *that it was of victory;* freely, with **deportare,** *that it was appropriate to his victory to carry off.*

142.   **humanitatis:** construed, like **victoriae** in the preceding cl., with **putabat esse** and the inf. **exspoliare.**

143.   **quam . . . voluisset:** another rel. cl. with causal force (see on **ex qua . . . ostenderetur,** 136–37).

      ornatus: OBJ. GEN.

145.   **quae:** sc. **ea** as antecedent and dir. obj. of **videmus.**

      aedem Honoris et Virtutis (146): this temple was just south of Rome on the Via Appia.

146.   **item:** adv., *also, likewise.*

      nihil . . . nihil . . . nihil (147): again ANAPHORA combined with ASYNDETON for emphasis—a favorite Ciceronian device.

      aedibus: aedes in pl. often = *house.*

147.   **suburbano:** sc. **praedio,** *estate, villa.*

      urbis ornamenta domum suam . . . domum suam ornamento urbi (149): CHIASMUS underscores the contrasting idea.

149.   **permulta: per-** as a prefix often has an intensive force such as *very.*

130 templa sunt egregia, Cereris unum, alterum Liberae, signumque
Apollinis, qui Temenites vocatur, pulcherrimum et maximum,
quod iste si portare potuisset, non dubitasset auferre. (IV.117–
19, excerpts)

Marcellus spared Syracuse when he captured the city in 212 B.C.

Nunc ad Marcellum revertar, ne haec a me sine causa com-
memorata esse videantur. Qui, cum tam praeclaram urbem vi
135 copiisque cepisset, non putavit ad laudem populi Romani hoc
pertinere, hanc pulchritudinem, ex qua praesertim periculi nihil
ostenderetur, delere et exstinguere. Itaque aedificiis omnibus,
publicis privatis, sacris profanis, sic pepercit quasi ad ea defen-
denda cum exercitu, non oppugnanda venisset. In ornatu urbis
140 habuit victoriae rationem, habuit humanitatis. Victoriae puta-
bat esse multa Romam deportare quae ornamento urbi esse
possent; humanitatis non plane exspoliare urbem, praesertim
quam conservare voluisset. In hac partitione ornatus non plus
victoria Marcelli populo Romano appetivit quam humanitas
145 Syracusanis reservavit. Romam quae apportata sunt, ad aedem
Honoris et Virtutis itemque aliis in locis videmus. Nihil in aedi-
bus, nihil in hortis posuit, nihil in suburbano: putavit, si urbis
ornamenta domum suam non contulisset, domum suam orna-
mento urbi futuram. Syracusis autem permulta atque egregia
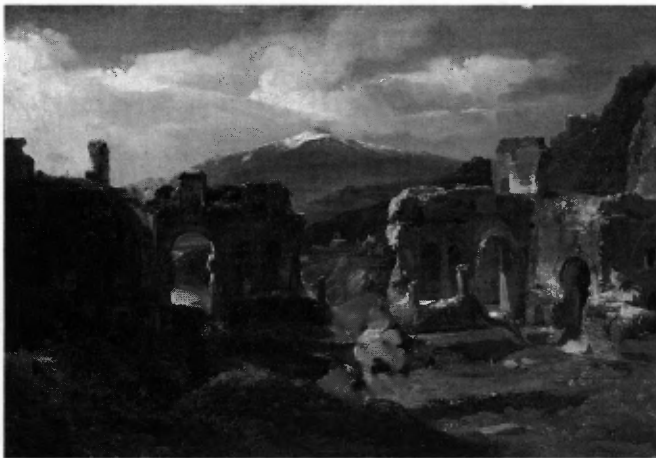
"Ruins of the Theater at Taormina"
Achille-Etna Michallon, 1821
Louvre, Paris, France

151. **qua:** f. nom. sg. of indef. adj. modifying **iniuria.**
153. **adventum et comitatum:** *a governor's arrival and his retinue.*
156. **attigit: attingere,** *to touch.*
158. **consuetudinis: consuetudo,** *custom.*
160. **Agathoclis:** gen. of **Agathocles,** tyrant and later king of Syracuse 317–289 B.C.
161. **nobilius:** here, *more famous, celebrated.*
162. **visendum: visere,** *to go to see, visit.*
163. **profana:** *secular, not sacred,* because when a city was conquered, its gods were thought to have abandoned it; OBJ. COMPL. with **omnia.**
164. **diuturnam:** *longlasting.*
165. **sacra religiosaque:** again OBJ. COMPL.; with the passing of time, the paintings were again deemed sacred.
167. **saecula: saeculum,** *century, generation.*
169. **is:** repeats the subj. **Marcellus** and parallels the use of **Verres/is** in the next, very similarly structured cl. (and see the note on **eum,** 105).
      aedificaturus: aedificare, *to build.*
170. **qui . . . deberet (171):** REL. CL. OF CHARACTERISTIC, *the sort of person who . . ..*
171. **quem ad modum ille:** we would say *in the way that he (Marcellus) had.*
      vota: votum, *prayer.*
173. **meretriciam:** *of a prostitute, meretricious;* Verres allegedly kept a mistress in his home.
178. **cognitione formarum:** lit., *by recognition of their forms* = *by familarizing people with their personal appearance.*
      quanto: ABL. OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE.
      taetrior: taeter, *offensive, hateful.*
179. **superiorum:** here, *predecessors.*
      tamen: i.e., although they were tyrants.
180. **ornarint:** = **ornaverint,** perf. subjunct., like **sustulerit,** in the CUM CAUSAL CL.
      hic: ASYNDETON emphasizes the contrast between **illi** and **hic.**

Temple to Castor and Pollux, 5th century B.C.
Agrigentum, Sicily, Italy

150 reliquit; deum vero nullum violavit, nullum attigit. Conferte
Verrem, non ut hominem cum homine comparetis, ne qua tali
viro mortuo fiat iniuria, sed ut pacem cum bello, leges cum vi,
forum et iurisdictionem cum ferro et armis, adventum et comi-
tatum cum exercitu et victoria conferatis. (IV.120–21)

Verres plundered the temple of Minerva, including the paintings.

155 Aedis Minervae est in Insula, de qua ante dixi: quam Mar-
cellus non attigit, quam plenam atque ornatam reliquit, quae ab
isto sic spoliata atque direpta est, non ut ab hoste aliquo, qui
tamen in bello religionem et consuetudinis iura retineret, sed ut
a barbaris praedonibus vexata esse videatur. Pugna erat eques-
160 tris Agathoclis regis in tabulis picta; his autem tabulis interiores
templi parietes vestiebantur. Nihil erat ea pictura nobilius, nihil
Syracusis quod magis visendum putaretur. Has tabulas M. Mar-
cellus, cum omnia victoria illa sua profana fecisset, tamen re-
ligione impeditus non attigit. Iste, cum illa propter diuturnam
165 pacem fidelitatemque populi Syracusani sacra religiosaque ac-
cepisset, omnes eas tabulas abstulit; parietes, quorum ornatus
tot saecula manserant, tot bella effugerant, nudos ac deformatos
reliquit. Et Marcellus qui, si Syracusas cepisset, duo templa se
Romae dedicaturum voverat, is id quod erat aedificaturus eis
170 rebus ornare quas ceperat noluit; Verres qui non Honori neque
Virtuti, quem ad modum ille, sed Veneri et Cupidini vota debe-
ret, is Minervae templum spoliare conatus est. Ille deos deorum
spoliis ornari noluit, hic ornamenta Minervae virginis in mere-
triciam domum transtulit. Viginti et septem praeterea tabulas
175 pulcherrime pictas ex eadem aede sustulit in quibus erant ima-
gines Siciliae regum ac tyrannorum, quae non solum pictorum
artificio delectabant, sed etiam commemoratione hominum et
cognitione formarum. Ac videte quanto taetrior hic tyrannus
Syracusanis fuerit quam quisquam superiorum: cum illi tamen
180 ornarint templa deorum immortalium, hic etiam illorum monu-
menta atque ornamenta sustulerit. (IV.122–23)

182.   **valvis: valvae,** *doors.*

       commemorem: DELIBERATIVE SUBJUNCT., used in questions implying doubt or, as here, indignation.

183.   **augere:** here, *exaggerate.*

184.   **liquido:** adv., *with certainty.*

185.   **ebore: ebur,** *ivory.*

       perfectiores: lit., *more thoroughly made, more carefully wrought.*

186.   **incredibile dictu: dictu** is a supine used as an ABL. OF SPECIFICATION, *incredible to say.*

187.   **scriptum:** *writing, account, record;* Cicero's point is that the Greeks were extremely fond of the arts and hence suffered deeply from Verres' wholesale looting.

188.   **mirentur atque efferant:** POTENTIAL SUBJUNCT. with **forsitan,** *they may perhaps. . . .*

       esto: fut. imper. of **esse,** *let it be = granted.*

189.   **honestius est:** *it is more honorable* (not *more honest*) *for* + the inf. phrase **imperatorem . . . reliquisse.**

       ea: obj. of **reliquisse** and **abstulisse.**

192.   **argumenta:** *subjects, scenes,* carved in relief on panels attached to the doors.

       curavit: *he took care (that), saw to it (that).*

193.   **Gorgonis:** gen. of **Gorgo,** *Gorgon.* The three Gorgons (Medusa the best known of them) were female monsters with snakes for hair who turned anyone who gazed upon them into stone; images of their faces were often attached to temples as apotropaic devices.

       cinctum: perf. partic. of **cingere,** *to surround, bind.*

       anguibus: anguis, *snake.*

       revellit: revellere, *to tear away, pull off.*

195.   **quaestu: quaestus,** *gain, profit.*

       bullas: ornamental *bosses* or *bolt heads.*

197.   **pondere: pondus,** *weight.*

200.   **Sappho:** i.e., a statue of Sappho, the celebrated Greek lyric poet of the seventh century B.C.

       tibi iustam excusationem (201): Cicero addresses Verres directly in a highly sarcastic tone.

201.   **concedendum . . . videatur:** an impers. pass. construction; lit., *it seems to have to be permitted and even pardoned = it seems we should permit and even pardon (you).*

202.   **Silanionis:** *Silanion,* a famous Athenian sculptor of the fourth century B.C.

203.   **quisquam . . . haberet (204):** POTENTIAL SUBJUNCT., *who should have had.*

205.   **nimirum:** adv., *doubtless, of course, surely.*

206.   **delicati:** *fastidious;* more sarcasm.

He stole the ornaments from the temple doors.

Iam vero quid ego de valvis illius templi commemorem? Vereor ne haec qui non viderunt, omnia me nimis augere atque ornare arbitrentur. Confirmare hoc liquido, iudices, possum valvas
185   magnificentiores, ex auro atque ebore perfectiores, nullas umquam ullo in templo fuisse. Incredibile dictu est quam multi Graeci de harum valvarum pulchritudine scriptum reliquerint. Nimium forsitan haec illi mirentur atque efferant. Esto; verum tamen honestius est rei publicae nostrae, iudices, ea quae illis
190   pulchra esse videantur imperatorem nostrum in bello reliquisse, quam praetorem in pace abstulisse. Ex ebore diligentissime perfecta argumenta erant in valvis: ea detrahenda curavit omnia. Gorgonis os pulcherrimum, cinctum anguibus, revellit atque abstulit; et tamen indicavit se non solum artificio sed etiam pretio
195   quaestuque duci. Nam bullas aureas omnes ex eis valvis, quae erant multae et graves, non dubitavit auferre, quarum iste non opere delectabatur, sed pondere. Itaque eius modi valvas reliquit ut quae olim ad ornandum templum erant maxime, nunc tantum ad claudendum factae esse videantur. (IV.124, excerpts)

The statue of Sappho was stolen from the city hall.

200   Sappho quae sublata de prytaneo est dat tibi iustam excusationem, prope ut concedendum atque ignoscendum esse videatur. Silanionis opus tam perfectum, tam elegans, tam elaboratum quisquam non modo privatus sed etiam populus potius haberet quam homo elegantissimus atque eruditissimus, Verres?
205   Nimirum contra dici nihil potest. Nostrum enim unus quisque— qui tam beati quam iste est non sumus, tam delicati esse non possumus—si quando aliquid istius modi videre volet, eat ad

Gorgon, 6th century B.C.
Museo Archeologico, Syracuse, Sicily, Italy

208.   **aedem Felicitatis:** *the temple of Fortune,* built ca. 150 B.C. and filled with art
objects taken from the conquered city of Corinth.

   monumentum Catuli: a portico constructed by Quintus Lutatius Catulus with
the spoils from his successful campaign against the Cimbri in 101 B.C.

   porticum Metelli: ca. 146 B.C. Quintus Caecilius Metellus Macedonicus en-
closed with a portico two temples (to Juno and Jupiter Stator) in the
Campus Martius; the buildings served much as art museums.

209.   **det operam:** a common idiom, *let him take care (to), make an effort (to)* +
JUSSIVE NOUN CL.

   istorum: i.e., Verres and his friends.

   Tusculanum: sc. **praedium,** *Tusculan villa, estate;* Tusculum, a beautiful spot
about 15 miles southeast of Rome, where many wealthy Romans had
estates, among whom later was Cicero.

210.   **suorum:** i.e., statues and other works of art; PARTITIVE GEN. with **quid.**

   aedilibus: the *aediles* were in charge of state entertainments and might bor-
row art objects from wealthy associates for public display.

   commodarit: = **commodaverit,** fut. perf. indic. of **commodare,** *to loan;* FUT.
MORE VIVID CONDITION, with an imper. in the apodosis, paralleling **si . . .
volet, eat** in 207.

211.   **habeat . . . habeat (212):** JUSSIVE SUBJUNCTS., paralleling **det** and **spectet;** Ver-
res should have his own private art collection, Cicero sarcastically as-
serts, so that he need not stoop to visit the public galleries and so that
he can accommodate the aediles when they require assistance.

   ornamentis: ABL. OF MEANS with **plenam** and **refertas** *(crammed full, packed).*

   oppidorum: **oppidum,** *town.*

212.   **plenam domum, villas refertas:** CHIASMUS and ASYNDETON underscore Cic-
ero's indignation.

   etiam: here, *still, even now.*

213.   **operari:** **operarius,** *day-laborer.*

   delicias: *delights, pleasures.*

214.   **animo et corpore:** ABL. OF SPECIFICATION.

   appositior: **appositus,** *suitable, suited.*

215.   **ferenda . . . auferenda:** i.e., to carry them on his back as a day laborer rather
than to carry them off as a connoisseur, a delightful play on the two
forms of **fero.**

   haec . . . reliquerit (216): the IND. QUEST. is dependent on **dici vix potest,** *it
can hardly be said how great.*

216.   **desiderium sui:** lit., *desire of itself* = *loss.*

217.   **cum . . . tum:** *not only . . . but also.*

   epigramma: *inscription.*

218.   **basi:** abl. sg. of **basis,** *pedestal, base.*

   quod: conjunctive rel. = **et hoc epigramma,** obj., along with **unam litteram,**
of **scisset,** i.e., *and if he had understood this epigram, had understood even
a single letter of Greek, he would not have . . ..*

   Graeculus: *little Greek, Greekling;* the diminutive has contemptuous force.

220.   **sustulisset:** sc. **statuam.**

221.   **fuerit:** sc. **ibi.**

aedem Felicitatis, ad monumentum Catuli, in porticum Metelli;
det operam ut admittatur in alicuius istorum Tusculanum; spec-
210   tet forum ornatum, si quid iste suorum aedilibus commodarit;
Verres haec habeat domi, Verres ornamentis fanorum atque op-
pidorum habeat plenam domum, villas refertas. Etiamne huius
operari studia ac delicias, iudices, perferetis?—qui ita natus, ita
educatus est, ita factus et animo et corpore ut multo appositior
215   ad ferenda quam ad auferenda signa esse videatur. Atque haec
Sappho sublata quantum desiderium sui reliquerit dici vix potest.
Nam cum ipsa fuit egregie facta, tum epigramma Graecum per-
nobile incisum est in basi; quod iste eruditus homo et Graecu-
lus, qui haec subtiliter iudicat, qui solus intellegit, si unam lit-
220   teram Graecam scisset, certe non sustulisset. Nunc enim quod
scriptum est inani in basi, declarat quid fuerit, et id ablatum
indicat. (IV.126–27)

"Sappho Playing the Lyre"
Leopold Burthe, 1848
Musée des Beaux-Arts
Carcassone, France

223. **quid:** *what about this?*
      Paeanis: *Paean* was an epithet of Apollo the healer, father of Aesculapius, god of medicine.
224. **non:** = **nonne,** as also in line 225.
226. **Liberi:** *Liber* was the Roman equivalent of Bacchus.
      Aristaei: *Aristaeus,* a son of Apollo and protector of flocks, bees, the grape-vine, and olives.
229. **simul:** adv., *at the same time, along with.*
230. **olei: oleum,** *(olive) oil.*
      una: adv., *together, along (with).*
232. **quanto honore:** ABL. OF DESCRIPTION, used here in the pred.; lit., *of what great esteem* = *how greatly esteemed.*
233. **recordari:** deponent, *to recall, remember.*
234. **specie: species,** *appearance;* **eadem specie ac forma** = ABL. OF DESCRIPTION with **signum.**
235. **Capitolio:** the *Capitolium* was the magnificent temple of Jupiter Capitolinus on the Capitoline Hill.
      Flamininus: the consul *Titus Quinctius Flamininus* defeated Philip V of Macedon in 197 B.C. and proclaimed the liberty of Greece the follow-ing year.
236. **ferebantur: ferre** often, as here, means *to report, say.*
      uno in genere (237): *of one type, of the same type.*
238. **vidimus:** past tense, as the statue and the temple that housed it were both destroyed by fire in 83 B.C.
      in Ponti ore et angustiis: *at the mouth and narrows of the Black Sea,* i.e., where the Black Sea and the Bosporus meet.
240. **ita:** *so, as (he did);* **ut . . . poneret (239–40)** is a PURPOSE CL., not result.
      sua: refers, not to the subj. (Flamininus), as might be expected, but rather to **illud (signum),** which has been placed at the beginning of the sentence as the focus of Cicero's point.
      hoc est: parenthetical, like **id est,** *that is.*
      terrestri domicilio: the Romans regarded their capital city, the seat of the Roman empire, as the proper *earthly home* of Jupiter.
241. **introitum: introitus,** *entrance.*
242. **emerserint: emergere,** *to come forth, emerge.*
      porro: adv., *straight on, forward,* or, here, *in turn.*
243. **invecta sint: invehere,** *to carry into, bring in.*
      hanc diem: dies is treated variously as m. or f., the latter especially when referring to a specific day or to time in general.
244. **quod . . . Syracusis, quod . . . viderat, quod . . . concesserat, quod . . . solebant (247):** a good example of TRICOLON CRESCENS, a common rhetorical de-vice consisting of three (or more) consecutive cls., each longer and more complex than the one preceding and building to a climax.
246. **incolae: incola,** m., *inhabitant, resident.*
      advenae: advena, m., *stranger, foreigner.*
247. **id:** repeats **hoc tertium** in 243, following the elaborate tricolon.

Verres stole other statues as well, including a famous one of Jupiter.

Quid? signum Paeanis ex aede Aesculapi praeclare factum, sacrum ac religiosum, non sustulisti?—quod omnes propter pul-
225 chritudinem visere, propter religionem colere solebant. Quid? ex aede Liberi simulacrum Aristaei non tuo imperio palam ab-latum est? Quid? ex aede Iovis religiosissimum simulacrum Iovis Imperatoris, pulcherrime factum, nonne abstulisti? Atque ille Paean sacrificiis anniversariis simul cum Aesculapio apud
230 illos colebatur; Aristaeus, qui inventor olei esse dicitur, una cum Libero patre apud illos eodem erat in templo consecratus.

Iovem autem Imperatorem quanto honore in suo templo fu-isse arbitramini? Conicere potestis, si recordari volueritis quanta religione fuerit eadem specie ac forma signum illud quod ex
235 Macedonia captum in Capitolio posuerat T. Flamininus. Etenim tria ferebantur in orbe terrarum signa Iovis Imperatoris uno in genere pulcherrime facta: unum illud Macedonicum quod in Capitolio vidimus; alterum in Ponti ore et angustiis; tertium, quod Syracusis ante Verrem praetorem fuit. Illud Flamininus
240 ita ex aede sua sustulit ut in Capitolio, hoc est, in terrestri domi-cilio Iovis, poneret. Quod autem est ad introitum Ponti, id, cum tam multa ex illo mari bella emerserint, tam multa porro in Pontum invecta sint, usque ad hanc diem integrum inviola-tumque servatum est. Hoc tertium, quod erat Syracusis, quod
245 M. Marcellus armatus et victor viderat, quod religioni conces-serat, quod cives atque incolae Syracusani colere, advenae non solum visere verum etiam venerari solebant, id Verres ex templo Iovis sustulit.

Colossal head of Zeus
Otricoli, Italy
Museo Pio Clementino
Vatican Museums
Vatican State
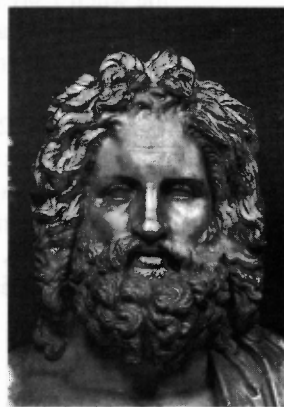
249. **saepius:** lit., *rather often* = *once again.*
     habetote: 2nd pers. pl. of fut. imper., *think, consider.*
250. **esse . . . desideratos (251):** *have been missed* = *have been lost.*
     istius adventu . . . victoria Marcelli (251): CHIASMUS underscores the contrast; **adventu** and **victoria** are ABL. OF CAUSE.
251. **ille:** Marcellus.
     requisisse: = **requisivisse;** Marcellus hoped to save him at the capture of Syracuse.
252. **Archimedem illum:** when **ille** follows the noun it modifies, it generally means *that famous;* Archimedes, the renowned Greek mathematician and inventor, was born at Syracuse in 287 B.C. and was carelessly slain by some Roman soldiers during Marcellus' sack of the city in 212.
253. **quem:** = **et eum;** conjunctive use of the rel.
     permoleste: adv., *with much annoyance, with great distress.*
     tulisse: with **dicitur** (251).
254. **asportaret:** **asportare,** *to carry off.*
256. **eos:** the Syracusans.
261. **nimio opere:** *excessively* or perhaps, in a more positive sense, *exceedingly* (cp. **magnopere**); although Cicero here speaks somewhat patronizingly of the Greeks' devotion to art, Greek artworks were actually very popular among the Romans, as is shown by the fact that so many ancient Greek works are known to us through Roman copies.
     querimoniis: querimonia, *lament, complaint.*
264. **hosce:** emphatic for **hos,** *these (recent).*
     exterae nationes: see on line 7.
266. **huiusce modi:** GEN. OF DESCRIPTION with **spoliationes** = **tales spoliationes.**
268. **licet . . . dicat:** often construed with acc. + inf., **licet** can also take a subjunct. cl., as here; *it is permitted that he say* = *although he may say.*
     emisse: i.e., the various art objects he had stolen.
     sicuti: = **sicut.**
     credite hoc mihi (269): this cl. combines the two case constructions which may follow **credo,** (a) **credite hoc,** *believe this* (acc. of thing), (b) **credite mihi,** *believe me* (dat. of person), where Eng. might instead have, "believe me when I say this . . . ."
269. **tota Asia et Graecia:** sc. **in;** the prep. is often omitted in place constructions, especially where the placename is modified by **totus, medius,** or a similar adj.
     signum . . . urbis (270): this TRICOLON CRESCENS along with the ANAPHORA and the accumulation of indef. adv./adj./pron. **(umquam/ullum/ullam/ullum/cuiquam)** all intensify Cicero's point.
271. **scitote:** for the form, see on **habetote** in 248.
272. **emptionem: emptio,** *purchase.*
     qui: the indef. adj. is often used for the indef. pron. **quis.**

Ut saepius ad Marcellum revertar, iudices, sic habetote:
250 plures esse a Syracusanis istius adventu deos quam victoria
Marcelli homines desideratos. Etenim ille requisisse etiam di-
citur Archimedem illum, summo ingenio hominem ac disci-
plina, quem cum audisset interfectum, permoleste tulisse; iste
omnia quae requisivit, non ut conservaret verum ut asportaret,
255 requisivit. (IV.127–31, excerpts).

The resentment of the Syracusans.

Quid tum? Mediocrine tandem dolore eos adfectos esse ar-
bitramini? Non ita est, iudices: primum, quod omnes religione
moventur et deos patrios quos a maioribus acceperunt colendos
sibi diligenter et retinendos esse arbitrantur; deinde hic ornatus,
260 haec opera atque artificia, signa, tabulae pictae, Graecos homi-
nes nimio opere delectant. Itaque ex illorum querimoniis intel-
legere possumus haec illis acerbissima videri quae forsitan nobis
levia et contemnenda esse videantur. Mihi credite, iudices, cum
multas acceperint per hosce annos socii atque exterae nationes
265 calamitates et iniurias, nullas Graeci homines gravius ferunt ac
tulerunt quam huiusce modi spoliationes fanorum atque oppi-
dorum.
Licet iste dicat emisse se, sicuti solet dicere, credite hoc
mihi, iudices: nulla umquam civitas tota Asia et Graecia signum
270 ullum, ullam tabulam pictam, ullum denique ornamentum urbis
sua voluntate cuiquam vendidit; acerbiorem etiam scitote esse
civitatibus falsam istam et simulatam emptionem quam si qui
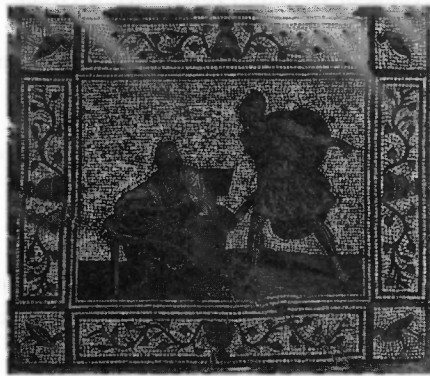
Death of Archimedes, 18th century copy of 2nd century mosaic
Liebieghaus, Frankfurt am Main, Germany

273.   **clam:** adv., *secretly, privately;* the contrast with **palam** is emphasized through
        CHIASMUS and the use of two compound vbs. of different meaning from
        the same root **(surripiant/eripiat).**
        surripiat: surripere, *to snatch (stealthily), steal.*
        turpitudinem . . . arbitrantur (274): with the inf. phrase **referri in tabulas publi-
        cas,** which in turn governs the IND. STATE. **pretio . . . abalienasse,** *for it to
        be entered into the public records that a state . . ..*
276.   **abalienasse:** = **abalienavisse,** from **abalienare,** *to transfer (ownership of).*
        mirandum in modum (277): adv. phrase, *in a wonderful way.*
278.   **esse apud illos:** *to remain in their possession.*
279.   **imperio nostro:** i.e., as proud states within the Roman empire.
280.   **florentissimique: florens,** *flowering, flourishing.*
        vectigalis: *subject to taxation.*
        stipendiarios: *required to pay tribute,* imposed on subject states originally to
        defray the costs of an occupying army.
281.   **fecerant . . . relinquebant:** sc. as subj. **maiores nostri.**
282.   **oblectamenta: oblectamentum,** *delight, pleasure.*
284.   **quae apud quosque:** *what (works of art) among the several peoples;* in an omit-
        ted passage Cicero names more than a dozen works in different parts of
        the Greek world, each priceless to the Greeks and a number of them
        known to us today, including a statue of Venus from the island of
        Cnidus.
285.   **mirum . . . auferantur (286):** this entire IND. STATE. is in appos. with **hoc.**
287.   **Consano:** *of Consa,* possibly to be identified with Compsa, a city of the Hir-
        pini in south central Italy.
        municipe: municeps, *a municipal, citizen of a free town* (a **municipium**); in Cic-
        ero's day the citizens of Italy's self-governing **municipia** enjoyed exten-
        sive rights.
290.   **tametsi:** conj., *although.*
292.   **negotiantur: negotiari,** *to be in business, trade.*
293.   **Valentinorum:** *the people of Valentia* (also known as Vibo), in Bruttium, the
        toe of Italy.
294.   **Reginorum:** *the people of Regium (Rhegium),* a Greek city on the very tip of
        the Italian toe, opposite Sicily.
295.   **Messanae:** *Messana* (or *Zancle*) was on the extreme northeast tip of Sicily
        opposite Regium.
        dedi: here, *I produced.*
        priore actione: i.e., in the first phase of the trial, where numerous witnesses
        were called and extensive evidence presented.
        testium: testis, *witness;* PARTITIVE GEN. with **tantum,** lit., *so much of wit-
        nesses = so many witnesses.*
297.   **iam . . . dicam (298):** the common idiomatic use of pres. tense with words
        indicating duration of time, *= I have already spoken.*
        genere: here, *topic.*
300.   **quem ad modum:** *in what manner, how.*
301.   **in medio:** i.e., *before you.*

clam surripiat aut eripiat palam atque auferat. Nam turpitudi-
nem summam esse arbitrantur referri in tabulas publicas, pretio
275 adductam civitatem (et pretio parvo) ea quae accepisset a mai-
oribus vendidisse atque abalienasse. Etenim mirandum in mo-
dum Graeci rebus istis, quas nos contemnimus, delectantur.
Itaque maiores nostri facile patiebantur haec esse apud illos
quam plurima: apud socios, ut imperio nostro quam ornatissimi
280 florentissimique essent; apud eos autem quos vectigalis aut sti-
pendiarios fecerant, tamen haec relinquebant ut illi quibus haec
iucunda sunt (quae nobis levia videntur) haberent haec oblecta-
menta et solacia servitutis. Longum est et non necessarium
commemorare quae apud quosque visenda sunt tota Asia et
285 Graecia; verum existimare vos hoc volo—mirum quendam do-
lorem accipere eos ex quorum urbibus haec auferantur. (IV.132–
35, excerpts)

The Crucifixion of Publius Gavius

The case of Gavius is almost unbelievable.

Quid ego de P. Gavio, Consano municipe, dicam, iudices?
aut qua vi vocis, qua gravitate verborum, quo dolore animi di-
cam? Crimen eius modi est ut, cum primum ad me delatum est,
290 usurum me illo non putarem; tametsi enim verissimum esse in-
tellegebam, tamen credibile fore non arbitrabar. Coactus la-
crimis omnium civium Romanorum qui in Sicilia negotiantur,
adductus Valentinorum, hominum honestissimorum, omnium-
que Reginorum testimoniis multorumque equitum Romanorum
295 qui casu tum Messanae fuerunt, dedi tantum priore actione tes-
tium, res ut nemini dubia esse posset.

Quid nunc agam? Cum iam tot horas de uno genere ac de
istius nefaria crudelitate dicam, cum prope omnem vim verbo-
rum eius modi, quae scelere istius digna sint, aliis in rebus con-
300 sumpserim, quem ad modum de tanta re dicam? Opinor, unus
modus atque una ratio est: rem in medio ponam, quae tantum

302. **gravitatis:** with **tantum.**
      mea: with **eloquentia.**
304. **in illo numero:** earlier in the speech Cicero told how Verres had brutally
      incarcerated in the quarries at Syracuse fugitives from the army of
      Quintus Sertorius, a revolutionary who had been defeated by Pompey
      (Gnaeus Pompeius Magnus) a few years earlier.
305. **nescio qua: nescio qui/quae/quod** taken together form a frequently used indef.
      adj., *some* (lit., *I do not know what*).
306. **lautumiis: lautumiae,** *stone-quarry;* presumably the same quarries in which
      the remnant of the Athenian force to Sicily came to an ignominious end
      during the Peloponnesian War and which can still be seen today.
307. **Reginorum:** Regium was only four miles across the strait from Messana.
308. **tenebris: tenebrae,** *shadows, darkness, gloom.*
311. **sibi:** DAT. OF POSSESSION, with **iter esse Romam,** lit., *that he had a journey to
      Rome = that he was going to Rome.*
      recta: sc. **via,** i.e., *directly.*
      praesto: adv., *on hand, ready, waiting for.*
      advenienti: *for him arriving = on his arrival,* i.e., ready to prosecute him on
      his return, a threat that clearly cost Gavius his life.
312. **interesse:** the basic vb. means *to be between, in the midst of,* but the frequently
      used impers. sense employed here = *to be important, of interest, of con-
      cern, make a difference;* with **nihil** here, *it made no difference.*
313. **praetorio: praetorium,** *general's tent, governor's residence.*
314. **iste:** Cicero repeatedly uses this word, with its contemptuous force, of Verres.
      delegerat: deligere, *to pick out, choose, select.*
      quam haberet: REL. CL. OF PURPOSE, *to have it (as).*
      adiutricem . . . consciam (315): TRICOLON CRESCENS.
315. **furtorum: furtum,** *theft, stolen property.*
      consciam: here, *accomplice.*
316. **Mamertinum:** a name applied to the residents of Messana, the Mamertini
      were originally Campanian mercenaries who served Agathocles, tyrant
      of Messana, and after his death seized the town for themselves (289
      B.C.).
318. **esse civem:** IND. STATE. suggested by **res defertur,** *that there was . . ..*
319. **quem:** conjunctive rel. = **et eum.**
320. **minitantem: minitari** + dat., *to threaten.*
321. **in eum . . . quod videretur:** i.e., *what seemed best to do with him.*
324. **eminebat: eminere,** *to project, stand out, be conspicuous.*
325. **quo tandem:** *just how far.*
      quidnam: quisnam, an emphatic form of the interrog. pron., *who/what in the
      world.*
327. **deligari: deligare,** *to bind.*
      virgas: virga, *stick, rod.*
      expediri: expedire, *to let loose, prepare, procure.*
      clamabat: the impf. suggests that Gavius cried out repeatedly.
328. **meruisse:** sc. **se** as subj.; from **merere,** *to earn (one's pay), serve as a soldier.*

habet ipsa gravitatis ut neque mea (quae nulla est) neque cuius-
quam ad inflammandos vestros animos eloquentia requiratur.
(V.158–59, excerpts)

Gavius voiced complaints which were reported to Verres.

Gavius hic, quem dico, Consanus, cum in illo numero civi-
305   um Romanorum ab isto in vincula coniectus esset et nescio qua
ratione clam e lautumiis profugisset Messanamque venisset—
qui tam prope iam Italiam et moenia Reginorum, civium Ro-
manorum, videret et ex illo metu mortis ac tenebris, quasi luce
libertatis et odore aliquo legum recreatus, revixisset—loqui Mes-
310   sanae et queri coepit se, civem Romanum, in vincula coniectum,
sibi recta iter esse Romam, Verri se praesto advenienti futurum.
Non intellegebat miser nihil interesse utrum haec Messanae an
apud istum in praetorio loqueretur. Nam (ut antea vos docui)
hanc sibi iste urbem delegerat quam haberet adiutricem sce-
315   lerum, furtorum receptricem, flagitiorum omnium consciam.
Itaque ad magistratum Mamertinum statim deducitur Gavius:
eoque ipso die casu Messanam Verres venit. Res ad eum de-
fertur: esse civem Romanum qui se Syracusis in lautumiis fuisse
quereretur; quem, iam ingredientem in navem et Verri nimis
320   atrociter minitantem, ab se retractum esse et adservatum, ut
ipse in eum statueret quod videretur. (V.160)

Though Gavius protested that he was a Roman citizen, Verres had him
beaten and prepared a cross for his crucifixion.

Agit hominibus gratias et eorum benivolentiam erga se dili-
gentiamque collaudat. Ipse, inflammatus scelere et furore, in fo-
rum venit. Ardebant oculi; toto ex ore crudelitas eminebat. Ex-
325   spectabant omnes quo tandem progressurus aut quidnam
acturus esset; cum repente hominem proripi atque in foro medio
nudari ac deligari et virgas expediri iubet. Clamabat ille miser
se civem esse Romanum, municipem Consanum; meruisse cum

329. **equite:** here, *knight, equestrian,* i.e., a member of the equestrian class, wealthy
       Roman businessmen.
       Panhormi: loc. of **Panhormus,** an important town in northwest Sicily, mod-
       ern Palermo.
330. **iste:** sc. **dixit.**
       comperisse: comperire, *to find out, learn, discover.*
331. **speculandi: speculari,** *to spy.*
       a ducibus fugitivorum: the gladiator Spartacus and his fellow **fugitivi** *(run-*
       away slaves) held out against the Roman armies and ravaged Italy until
       finally defeated by Marcus Licinius Crassus in 71 B.C.
332. **cuius rei . . . esset (333):** REL. CL. OF CHARACTERISTIC, not part of what Verres
       claimed to have found out, but rather **res,** the incorporated antecedent
       of the cl., refers to Verres' charge, *a circumstance of which there was . . ..*
       index: *witness, informer.*
       vestigium: *track, trace, evidence.*
334. **verberari: verberare,** *to beat.*
       caedebatur: caedere, *to cut, beat, slay;* the imperf. tense, with its idea of con-
       tinuous action, adds vividness and pathos.
335. **gemitus:** *groan.*
336. **crepitum: crepitus,** *rattling, rustling, noise.*
       plagarum: plaga, *blow, wound.*
337. **commemoratione: commemoratio,** *mention, remembrance.*
338. **cruciatum: cruciatus,** *torture, torment.*
340. **ut . . . deprecaretur: deprecari,** *to avert, ward off (by entreaty);* NOUN CL. OF
       RESULT, in appos. with **hoc.**
341. **usurparet: usurpare,** *to claim, employ, repeatedly mention.*
       crux: *cross.*
342. **aerumnoso:** *distressed, troubled.*
345. **lex Porcia:** passed ca. 198 B.C., this law forbade the infliction of capital or
       corporal punishment by a magistrate without the right of appeal and a
       trial before the assembly.
       leges . . . Semproniae: these laws, passed by Gaius Sempronius Gracchus in
       123 B.C., granted a citizen the right of appeal even against an official to
       whom dictatorial power had been given.
346. **tribunicia potestas:** the tribunes were essentially the protectors and leaders
       of Rome's lower classes. By ca. 80 B.C. Sulla's reformed, pro-senatorial
       constitution had limited their powers considerably (hence, **graviter de-**
       siderata); but in 70 B.C., just before Cicero's prosecution of Verres, the
       consuls Pompey and Crassus restored the tribunes' authority, including
       the right to try criminal cases before the assembly.
       hucine: interrog. form of **huc,** *to this (place, point).*
347. **reciderunt: recidere,** *to fall back, return, be reduced.*
       ut . . . caederetur (349): RESULT CL.
348. **foederatorum:** *allies* (allied with Rome by a treaty, **foedus**).
       beneficio: i.e., by his election to the office of praetor.
349. **fascis et securis:** acc. pl., *rods and axes,* the familiar symbol of Roman offi-
       cials, including praetors and consuls, who held the imperium.

L. Raecio, splendidissimo equite Romano, qui Panhormi nego-
330   tiaretur, ex quo haec Verres scire posset. Tum iste, se comperisse
eum speculandi causa in Siciliam a ducibus fugitivorum esse
missum—cuius rei neque index neque vestigium aliquod neque
suspicio cuiquam esset ulla. Deinde iubet undique hominem ve-
hementissime verberari. Caedebatur virgis in medio foro Mes-
335   sanae civis Romanus, iudices, cum interea nullus gemitus, nulla
vox alia illius miseri inter dolorem crepitumque plagarum au-
diebatur, nisi haec, "Civis Romanus sum." Hac se commemora-
tione civitatis omnia verbera depulsurum, cruciatumque a cor-
pore deiecturum, arbitrabatur. Is non modo hoc non perfecit,
340   ut virgarum vim deprecaretur, sed, cum imploraret saepius
usurparetque nomen civitatis, crux—crux, inquam—infelici et
aerumnoso, qui numquam istam pestem viderat, comparaba-
tur. (V.161–62)

Gavius' crucifixion was a brutal violation of the dignity and rights of
Roman citizenship.

O nomen dulce libertatis! O ius eximium nostrae civitatis! O
345   lex Porcia legesque Semproniae! O graviter desiderata, et ali-
quando reddita plebi Romanae, tribunicia potestas! Hucine
tandem omnia reciderunt, ut civis Romanus in provincia populi
Romani, in oppido foederatorum, ab eo qui beneficio populi
Romani fascis et securis haberet deligatus in foro virgis caedere-

Theater, 3rd century B.C.
Syracuse, Sicily, Italy

350.   **ardentes: ardere,** *to be on fire, blaze, burn.*
       laminae: lamina, *thin plate, layer;* here, *iron plates* (heated for torture).
       ceteri . . . cruciatus: *other forms of torture.*
353.   **fletu: fletus,** *weeping, lamentation.*
       commovebare: -re is a common alternate pass. ending for **-ris.**
       in crucem . . . agere: *to crucify.*
354.   **quemquam: quisquam** is regularly used after a negative or an implied nega-
       tive; here the incredulity implicit in the question provides the negative
       connotation.
355.   **exploratum est: explorare,** *to search out, ascertain.*
       loco: locus, because of its very meaning, is often used without a prep. in a
       place construction; here the meaning is figurative, *plight, condition.*
356.   **quid . . . sit:** i.e., what is going to happen to you; the fut. act. periphrastic
       often serves, as here, to indicate future action in a subjunct. cl.
       agam: here, *I shall deal.*
357.   **repentinum:** *unexpected, all of a sudden,* i.e., contrary to the original charge
       that he was a fugitive from Sertorius' army.
       in lautumias: a convicted spy would have received more severe treatment.
358.   **abs:** a common alternate form of **a/ab.**
       litteris: here, *records.*
359.   **aliquis . . . Gavius (360):** *someone with the name Gavius;* the name was com-
       mon, and so Verres might try to prove that the Gavius Cicero says had
       been compelled to labor in the quarries was in fact a different man than
       the one he had himself punished for spying.
360.   **fingere:** *to imagine, pretend, invent.*
361.   **ad arbitrium:** *at your bidding,* implying *to your heart's content.*
362.   **dicant:** REL. CL. OF PURPOSE; similarly **doceant** (362).
363.   **necessarios:** lit., *a necessary person* = *an intimate friend, a relative.*
364.   **sero:** adv., *too late;* ANAPHORA and asyndeton give the parallel phrases **te nunc**
       sero . . . iudices non sero an epigrammatic quality.
367.   **patronis:** the general meaning is *protector;* the specific meaning here is *ad-*
       vocate.
368.   **istuc:** adv., *to where you are, to what you mention;* here essentially = **istud.**
       tenebo: here, *I will grab hold of, seize upon.*
370.   **impetu: impetus,** *violent movement, violence, attack.*
       exsiluisti: exsilire, *to leap forth, start up.*
371.   **illum . . . clamitasse . . . sed . . . fuisse (373):** IND. STATE. depending on **elocu-**
       tus es.
372.   **ideo:** adv., *therefore.*
       clamitasse: = **clamitavisse,** from **clamitare,** frequentative form of **clamare,** *to*
       shout, cry out (repeatedly).
373.   **veri sunt:** i.e., they are telling the truth.
374.   **C. Numitorius:** *Gaius Numitorius* and all the other witnesses named here
       testified that they had heard Gavius crying out that he was a Roman
       citizen.

350 tur? Quid? cum ignes ardentesque laminae ceterique cruciatus admovebantur, si te illius acerba imploratio et vox miserabilis non inhibebat, ne civium quidem Romanorum qui tum aderant fletu et gemitu maximo commovebare? In crucem tu agere ausus es quemquam qui se civem Romanum esse diceret? (V.163)

It can be proven that Gavius was not a spy.

355 Nunc, quoniam exploratum est omnibus quo loco causa tua sit et quid de te futurum sit, sic tecum agam: Gavium istum, quem repentinum speculatorem fuisse dicis, ostendam in lautumias Syracusis abs te esse coniectum neque id solum ex litteris ostendam Syracusanorum, ne possis dicere me, quia sit aliquis
360 in litteris Gavius, hoc fingere et eligere nomen ut hunc illum esse possim dicere; sed ad arbitrium tuum testis dabo qui istum ipsum Syracusis abs te in lautumias coniectum esse dicant. Producam etiam Consanos, municipes illius ac necessarios, qui te nunc sero doceant, iudices non sero, illum P. Gavium, quem tu
365 in crucem egisti, civem Romanum et municipem Consanum, non speculatorem fugitivorum fuisse. (V.164)

Gavius' claim to Roman citizenship should have been investigated.

Cum haec omnia, quae polliceor, cumulate tuis patronis plana fecero, tum istuc ipsum tenebo, quod abs te mihi datur; eo contentum me esse dicam. Quid enim nuper tu ipse, cum
370 populi Romani clamore atque impetu perturbatus exsiluisti, quid, inquam, elocutus es? Illum, quod moram supplicio quaereret, ideo clamitasse se esse civem Romanum, sed speculatorem fuisse. Iam mei testes veri sunt. Quid enim dicit aliud C. Numitorius? quid M. et P. Cottii, nobilissimi homines, ex

375.   **agro Tauromenitano:** *the district of Tauromenium,* a town in eastern Sicily
         (modern Taormina).

         argentariam: *silver business* = *banking business.*

376.   **ceteri:** *all the others,* a strong, all-inclusive word (**alii** would have meant
         simply *others*).

377.   **se vidisse:** therefore supremely important as eyewitnesses.

379.   **illum clamitasse . . . nomen . . . valuisse (381):** the two inf. phrases are in
         appos. with **hoc.**

380.   **se . . . Romanum:** this obviously and intentionally has become a refrain
         throughout this passage.

         apud te: *with you, in your estimation.*

381.   **ut . . . ut . . . moram (382):** ANAPHORA, ASYNDETON, and the CHIASMUS **dubita-
         tionem . . . crucis . . . supplici . . . moram** all lend emphasis to Cicero's
         point.

         dubitationem . . . crucis: *some hesitancy to inflict crucifixion.*

382.   **saltem:** adv., *at least.*

384.   **hic haereo:** lit., *here I cling* = *I cling to this point.*

385.   **induatur ac iuguletur:** from **induere,** *to clothe, wrap, entangle,* and **iugulare,** *to
         cut the throat, slay;* here, with **necesse est,** the passives can be translated
         reflexively, *he must inevitably entangle and destroy himself* (lit., *cut his
         own throat*).

386.   **necesse est:** impers., *it is necessary (that);* the construction ordinarily takes
         ut + subjunct., but **ut** is often omitted.

         qui: *what kind of person* (Gavius was), i.e., a citizen or not.

         qui esset . . . dicebat (388): note how Cicero adapts his style to the excitement
         and tension of the passage with the stiletto thrusts of the short cls., the
         juxtaposition of **tua te,** the interlocked word-order of **tua te accuso orati-
         one,** and the culminating refrain **civem . . . dicebat.**

         esse: sc. **eum (Gavium)** as subj.; such prons. are often omitted in Lat. when
         easily understood from the context.

388.   **si . . . ducerere (389):** the pres. (vs. past) contrary to fact condition makes
         Cicero's point more vivid.

         Persas: *the Persians.*

         extrema: the partitive use of the adj.

389.   **deprensus: deprehendere,** *to seize, arrest.*

390.   **si . . . profuisset . . . potuit (396):** MIXED CONDITION.

         ignoto: *unknown, strange (a stranger);* dat. with **profuisset,** from **prosum, pro-
         desse,** *to be useful, benefit, profit.*

         apud . . . positos (392): TRICOLON CRESCENS.

396.   **adsequi:** *to overtake, reach, attain, gain.*

397.   **tenues:** lit., *thin, slender;* here, *poor.*

         obscuro loco: i.e., of humble origin.

398.   **quo:** adv. with **eis** as antecedent = **ad quos.**

399.   **cognitoribus: cognitor,** *attorney, witness to one's identity.*

400.   **fiducia:** *confidence, reliance, trust.*

401.   **existimationis: existimatio,** *public opinion.*

         neque . . . solum (402): = **et non solum.**

375   agro Tauromenitano? quid Q. Lucceius, qui argentariam Regii
maximam fecit? quid ceteri? Adhuc enim testes ex eo genere a
me sunt dati, non qui novisse Gavium, sed se vidisse dicerent,
cum is, qui se civem Romanum esse clamaret, in crucem agere-
tur. Hoc tu, Verres, idem dicis; hoc tu confiteris, illum clami-
380   tasse se civem esse Romanum, apud te nomen civitatis ne tantum
quidem valuisse ut dubitationem aliquam crucis, ut crudelissimi
taeterrimique supplici aliquam parvam moram saltem posset
adferre. (V.165)

Roman citizenship provides protection throughout the world.

Hoc teneo, hic haereo, iudices. Hoc sum contentus uno;
385   omitto ac neglego cetera; sua confessione induatur ac iuguletur
necesse est. Qui esset ignorabas; speculatorem esse suspicabare.
Non quaero qua suspicione: tua te accuso oratione. Civem Ro-
manum se esse dicebat. Si tu, apud Persas aut in extrema India
deprensus, Verres, ad supplicium ducerere, quid aliud clami-
390   tares, nisi te civem esse Romanum? et si tibi ignoto apud ig-
notos, apud barbaros, apud homines in extremis atque ultimis
gentibus positos, nobile et illustre apud omnis nomen civitatis
tuae profuisset—ille, quisquis erat, quem tu in crucem rapiebas,
qui tibi esset ignotus, cum civem se Romanum esse diceret, apud
395   te praetorem, si non effugium, ne moram quidem mortis, menti-
one atque usurpatione civitatis, adsequi potuit? (V.166)

The value of Roman citizenship is threatened by Verres' action.

Homines tenues, obscuro loco nati, navigant; adeunt ad ea
loca quae numquam antea viderunt, ubi neque noti esse eis quo
venerunt, neque semper cum cognitoribus esse possunt. Hac
400   una tamen fiducia civitatis, non modo apud nostros magistra-
tus, qui et legum et existimationis periculo continentur, neque
apud civis solum Romanos, qui et sermonis et iuris et multarum

403. **quocumque:** adv., *to whatever place, wherever.*

404. **rem:** i.e., their Roman citizenship.

405. **tolle . . . praecluseris (412):** this highly climactic sent., characterized by extensive use of ANAPHORA, ASYNDETON, and TRICOLON CRESCENS, has the force of a FUT. MORE VIVID CONDITION, with a series of imper. vbs. directed at Catiline in the protasis **(tolle . . . tolle . . . constitue)** and the fut. perf. **praecluseris** (from **praecludere**) in the apodosis, *(if you) take away . . . you will soon have closed.*

      constitue: the imper. *(decide, determine)* governs the parallel IND. STATES., **nihil esse** and **posse . . . praetorem aut alium quemlibet.**

406. **opis:** with **nihil,** *no force.*

407. **quemlibet:** quilibet, *any (you please).*

408. **constituere:** COMPL. INF. with **posse.**

409. **quis:** = **aliquis.**

413. **plura:** sc. **dicam.**

      quasi tu . . . fueris: Cicero continues to address Verres. The vb. is perf. subjunct. in a CL. OF IMAGINED COMPARISON; related to conditions, these cls. are introduced by **quasi** or **velut si** and generally take vbs. in the pres. or pres. perf. tense, where Eng. would more often employ the plpf., *as if you had been.*

414. **infestus:** *dangerous, hostile (to).*

      generi: *class, society;* i.e., Verres has become the public enemy **(hostis)** of all Roman citizens, not merely the personal enemy of Gavius alone.

416. **quid . . . attinuit: attinere,** *to pertain to;* with the inf. cls. **(te iubere . . . et . . . addere),** lit., *what did it pertain to that you ordered . . . and that you added = what was the point of your ordering . . . and adding.*

      more atque instituto: HENDIADYS, *in accordance with their established practice* (ABL. OF ACCORDANCE).

417. **fixissent: figere,** *to attach, fasten, fix, set up.*

418. **fretum:** *strait, channel.*

      hoc: obj. of **addere** and in appos. with the IND. STATE. **te . . . deligere.**

420. **idcirco:** adv., *on that account, therefore;* the word often serves, as here, as antecedent to a purpose cl., *for this reason . . . that . . . .* This accusation amplifies Cicero's characterization of Verres' cruelty.

422. **post conditam Messanam (423):** lit., *after Messana having been founded = (for the first time) since the founding of Messana.*

425. **divisa:** sc. **esse.**

      servitutis: crucifixion was the form of execution for slaves.

428. **facinus . . . tollere (429):** note the climactic progression of both nouns and verbs, **facinus** *(bad deed), scelus (crime), parricidium (murder of a relative),* and **vincire** *(to bind), verberare (to beat), necare (to murder),* and finally **(civem) in crucem tollere,** a violation so heinous, Cicero suggests, that it is beyond his power to describe **(quid dicam).**

430. **digno:** here, *fitting, appropriate.*

433. **unum hominem nescio quem:** *just some single human being.*

rerum societate iuncti sunt, fore se tutos arbitrantur; sed, quo-
cumque venerint, hanc sibi rem praesidio sperant futuram.
405 Tolle hanc spem, tolle hoc praesidium civibus Romanis, con-
stitue nihil esse opis in hac voce, "Civis Romanus sum," posse
impune praetorem aut alium quemlibet supplicium quod velit
in eum constituere qui se civem Romanum esse dicat, quod eum
quis ignoret: iam omnis provincias, iam omnia regna, iam omnis
410 liberas civitates, iam omnem orbem terrarum, qui semper nos-
tris hominibus maxime patuit, civibus Romanis ista defensione
praecluseris. (V.167–68)

Verres is a menace to all Roman citizens.

Sed quid ego plura de Gavio? quasi tu Gavio tum fueris
infestus, ac non nomini, generi, iuri civium hostis. Non illi,
415 inquam, homini sed causae communi libertatis inimicus fuisti.
Quid enim attinuit, cum Mamertini more atque instituto suo
crucem fixissent post urbem, in via Pompeia, te iubere in ea
parte figere quae ad fretum spectaret et hoc addere—quod ne-
gare nullo modo potes, quod omnibus audientibus dixisti pa-
420 lam—te idcirco illum locum deligere, ut ille, quoniam se civem
Romanum esse diceret, ex cruce Italiam cernere ac domum
suam prospicere posset? Itaque illa crux sola, iudices, post con-
ditam Messanam, illo in loco fixa est. Italiae conspectus ad eam
rem ab isto delectus est ut ille, in dolore cruciatuque moriens,
425 perangusto fretu divisa servitutis ac libertatis iura cognosceret,
Italia autem alumnum suum servitutis extremo summoque sup-
plicio adfixum videret. (V.169)

The audacity of the crime.

Facinus est vincire civem Romanum, scelus verberare, prope
parricidium necare: quid dicam in crucem tollere? Verbo satis
430 digno tam nefaria res appellari nullo modo potest. Non fuit his
omnibus iste contentus; "Spectet," inquit, "patriam; in con-
spectu legum libertatisque moriatur." Non tu hoc loco Gavium,
non unum hominem nescio quem, sed communem libertatis et
civitatis causam in illum cruciatum et crucem egisti. Iam vero

435. **nonne . . . defigere (437):** Cicero suggests that Verres aspires to be dictator, with the power to crucify citizens in the very strongholds of Rome *(the forum . . . the assembly place . . . the rostra);* hence he is a menace not only to someone like Gavius but to the state itself and all its citizens.

436. **non . . . non (437):** ANAPHORA and ASYNDETON.

437. **Quod . . . elegit (438):** = **elegit (id) quod . . . (esse) potuit,** *he chose that (place) which could be.*

    his locis: i.e., **foro . . . rostris;** dat. with **simillimum** and **proximum.**

438. **celebritate:** *in its populousness.*

    regione: *location.*

440. **praetervectione: praetervectio,** *passing place.*

441. **ultro citroque:** adv., *up and down, back and forth.*

442. **ad cives . . . ad scopulos (446):** another highly effective use of climax.

446. **scopulos: scopulus,** *crag, cliff;* with **saxa,** used for any wild and desolate region.

    conqueri et deplorare: note the intensive force of the prefixes, *to complain loudly and lament bitterly,* and cp. **commoverentur** (447).

450. **non . . . dignus:** sc. **iudicetur** from the next cl.; *that one citizen* (i.e., Verres) *may not be judged deserving.*

451. **paulo:** adv., *a little, somewhat.*

452. **nauarchorum: nauarchus,** *captain of a ship;* in an earlier passage Cicero told how pirates had destroyed the Syracusan fleet and killed the captains in the forum, and he implied that this had been done through Verres' connivance.

456. **postulat: postulare,** *to demand.*

457. **ubicumque:** adv., *wherever, anywhere, everywhere.*

459. **commoda:** here, *interests.*

461. **versari:** *to be turned, be busy, engaged, involved (in), depend (on).*

Limestone quarries
Syracuse, Sicily, Italy

435   videte hominis audaciam. Nonne eum graviter tulisse arbitramini, quod illam civibus Romanis crucem non posset in foro, non in comitio, non in rostris defigere? Quod enim his locis in provincia sua celebritate simillimum, regione proximum potuit, elegit. Monumentum sceleris audaciaeque suae voluit esse in con-
440   spectu Italiae, vestibulo Siciliae, praetervectione omnium qui ultro citroque navigarent. (V.170)

Cicero's confidence in a just decision.

    Si haec non ad cives Romanos, non ad aliquos amicos nostrae civitatis, non ad eos qui populi Romani nomen audissent, denique si non ad homines verum ad bestias, aut etiam (ut lon-
445   gius progrediar) si in aliqua desertissima solitudine ad saxa et ad scopulos haec conqueri et deplorare vellem, tamen omnia muta atque inanima tanta et tam indigna rerum acerbitate commoverentur. Nunc vero cum loquar apud senatores populi Romani, legum et iudiciorum et iuris auctores, timere non debeo
450   ne non unus iste civis Romanus illa cruce dignus, ceteri omnes simili periculo indignissimi iudicentur. Paulo ante, iudices, lacrimas in morte misera atque indignissima nauarchorum non tenebamus; et recte ac merito sociorum innocentium miseria commovebamur; quid nunc in nostro sanguine tandem facere
455   debemus? Nam civium Romanorum sanguis coniunctus existimandus est, quoniam id et salutis omnium ratio et veritas postulat. Omnes hoc loco cives Romani, et qui adsunt et qui ubicumque sunt, vestram severitatem desiderant, vestram fidem implorant, vestrum auxilium requirunt; omnia sua iura, com-
460   moda, auxilia, totam denique libertatem in vestris sententiis versari arbitrantur. (V.171–72)

CICERO'S LETTERS

The nearly 800 letters of Marcus Tullius Cicero which have come down to us cover the quarter century from 68 B.C. to 43 B.C. and provide us with unrivaled source material for the political and social life of that period—one of the most important in Roman history—as well as an intimate acquaintance with Cicero's thought and personality. A wide range of topics, both serious and light-hearted, are found here, from politics and literature to travel and the affairs of family and friends. Preserved in the collection are epistles to his wife Terentia and their children Tullia and Marcus, his younger brother Quintus Tullius Cicero, his life-long friend Titus Pomponius Atticus (there are altogether 16 books of *Epistulae ad Atticum*), his beloved freedman and personal secretary Marcus Tullius Tiro, and numerous other associates and politicians; in addition, there are, within the 16 volumes of the *Epistulae ad Familiares,* over 100 letters written to him by such public figures as Julius Caesar and Pompey the Great.

The letters survive thanks to Tiro, who collected and published the *Ad Familiares* after Cicero's death, as well as to Atticus, who likely published those in his possession, and to other ancient scholars who understood the inestimable value of the correspondence. Cicero himself did not consider his *Epistulae* formal literary productions, as Pliny the Younger clearly did, and appears to have had little idea of ever publishing more than an abbreviated selection. Hence his style, while occasionally formal and close to that of his speeches, is more often that of an educated man's *sermo cotidianus,* simple, colloquial, and free of the self-consciousness that often characterizes the letters of Pliny (as seen from the selections included later in this volume). These are the work not so much of Cicero the rhetorician and orator as of Cicero the man, revealing without inhibition his human feelings.

The selections chosen for this volume, nearly all of them complete and unexcerpted, include letters: to Atticus on a variety of topics, including the deteriorating relations between Pompey and Caesar; to his brother Quintus on the First Triumvirate and Clodius Pulcher's threats to prosecute him for executing the Catilinarians; to his wife and children, lamenting his exile in Greece in 58; to his friend Marcus Marius on the vulgarity of Pompey's public entertainments, an epistolary essay of sorts, like many of Pliny's more formal letters; to Tiro on the freedman's ill health and the volatile political situation in Rome following

Caesar's crossing of the Rubicon River in early 49; to Sulpicius Rufus, a friend who had written Cicero a *consolatio* on the death of his daughter Tullia in 45; to Basilus, one of the conspirators who assassinated Caesar on the Ides of March, 44; and finally, in the autumn of 44, to Cassius, in whom (together with his fellow assassin Brutus) Cicero placed all hope of ridding Rome of Caesar's successor, the "crazed gladiator" Mark Antony, and restoring the republic to senatorial control—a hope, of course, that was never to be realized.

A note on epistolary usages: Roman letters were typically written down, by the author or a secretary, using a reed pen on papyrus or, in the case of short notes, a stilus on a wax-covered folding tablet, then tied with a string, sealed with wax marked with a sealstone, and given to a slave or other courier for delivery. The salutation usually consists of the writer's name in the nominative case, the addressee's name in the dative, and some expression of greeting, generally abbreviated, such as *S.* or *Sal. (salutem,* sc. *dicit)* or *S.P.D. (salutem plurimam dicit).* The complimentary close, when there was one, was usually a simple *vale* or *cura ut valeas,* sometimes followed by the date (using abbreviations explained below in the notes). Often the past tenses are used to apply to the moment when the recipient reads a letter, not to the time it was written. In translating these so-called "epistolary tenses," one should employ standard English idiom; hence, *hanc epistulam Romae scribebam* is equivalent to "I am writing this letter at Rome," and *scripseram* to "I wrote."

Paquius Proculus (?) and wife
Fresco from Pompeii, house at region VII.ii.6, 1st century A.D.
Museo Archeologico Nazionale, Naples, Italy

1. **Cicero Attico Sal.:** i.e., **salutem dicit,** a standard epistolary salutation; lit., *Cicero says good health to Atticus,* = "Dear Atticus." Titus Pomponius Atticus, dedicatee of the *De Amicitia,* was Cicero's closest friend.

2. **ames:** *admire, approve;* **volo** takes a JUSSIVE NOUN CL. with or without **ut.**

    constantiam: *firmness, strength of character;* perhaps said somewhat tongue in cheek, as **non placet** can mean both *it does not seem advisable* (i.e., since in 59 B.C. the First Triumvirate were in control of Rome) and *it is not pleasing* (i.e., since Cicero does not enjoy the games anyway).

    Anti: loc. of **Antium,** *Antium* (modern Anzio), a town on the coast about 30 miles south of Rome and 12 miles west of the Appian Way.

3. *hyposoloicon:* Greek, *somewhat awkward;* Cicero, like most educated Romans of the period, spoke Greek as well as Latin and occasionally employed Greek words just as we might use a French or German or even a Latin word or phrase in a letter to a friend.

    vitare . . . suspicionem (4): perhaps because of the political tension revealed in the next letter.

    deliciarum: deliciae, *luxurious pleasures;* so **delicate** below, *luxuriously.*

4. *anaphainesthai:* Greek = **videri,** *to be seen.*

5. **inepte:** adv., *foolishly.*

    peregrinantem: peregrinari, *to travel abroad* or *about.*

    Nonas Maias: *the Nones of May;* the Nones = the 5th day of most months, the 7th in March, May, July, and October.

6. **Formiano:** sc. **praedio,** *my estate at Formiae,* on the coast of Latium considerably south of Antium.

    fac ut: a common idiom, **facere ut** = *to make sure that, see to it that.*

    visuri simus: FUT. ACT. PERIPHRASTIC in an IND. QUEST.

7. **ab Appi Foro:** sc. **hanc epistulum dabam,** *I am mailing this letter.* The *Forum of Appius* and *Three Taverns* (**Tres Tabernae**) were villages on the Appian Way east of Antium; Cicero stayed on the Appian Way and by-passed Antium completely.

    hora quarta: roughly 10:00 a.m., calculated from sunrise.

    dederam aliam: sc. **epistulam.** Letter-writers often used the impf. instead of the pres. and the plupf. instead of the perf., the so-called EPISTOLARY TENSES, depicting actions as they will appear to the recipient of the letter; in Eng. these are generally better translated as pres. and perf., respectively.

9. **Marcus Quinto Fratri:** sc. **salutem dicit** (the salutation was frequently omitted); note the familiar use of the sender's and recipient's **praenomina.** Plebeian aedile in 65 B.C. and praetor in 62, Quintus was governor of Asia 61–58, when Marcus sent him two long letters that have survived, including the one from which this selection has been excerpted.

10. **rem publicam:** three men, Gaius Julius Caesar, Gnaeus Pompeius Magnus (Pompey), and Marcus Licinius Crassus, were in effect ruling by their arbitrary power what had been a constitutional republic.

11. **funditus:** adv., *utterly, completely.*

    Cato: *Gaius Porcius Cato* (not the famous Marcus Cato, a kinsman), an opponent of Pompey's in the early 50's, when this letter was written, tribune in 57–56 and probably praetor in 55.

AD ATTICUM 2.10

On a trip to his villa at Formiae (on the coast of Latium, south of Rome), Cicero writes Atticus to tell him he has decided not to stop over for the games at Antium. April, 59 B.C.

Cicero Attico Sal.

Volo ames meam constantiam: ludos Anti spectare non pla-cet; est enim *hyposoloicon,* cum velim vitare omnium deliciarum suspicionem, repente *anaphainesthai* non solum delicate sed
5   etiam inepte peregrinantem. Quare usque ad Nonas Maias te in Formiano exspectabo. Nunc fac ut sciam quo die te visuri si-mus. Ab Appi Foro, hora quarta; dederam aliam paulo ante a Tribus Tabernis. Vale.

AD QUINTUM FRATREM 1.2.15–16

Excerpt from a lengthy letter to his younger brother Quintus, then governor of Asia. The First Triumvirate dominates the state, quelling opposition by force, and Clodius threatens to prosecute Cicero. November (?), 59 B.C.

Marcus Quinto Fratri

10   Nunc ea cognosce quae maxime exoptas. Rem publicam funditus amisimus, adeo ut Cato, adulescens nullius consili sed

Portrait of a young woman with stilus and tabella, fresco from Pompeii
Museo Archeologico Nazionale, Naples, Italy

12.   **Cato:** *a Cato (nonetheless),* i.e., despite his lack of judgment.

13.   **Gabinium:** *Aulus Gabinius,* a politician working with the Triumvirate (not the Catilinarian conspirator), was consul-elect (along with Caesar's father-in-law) for 58.

   ambitu: ambitus, *bribery, electoral corruption.*

   postulare: *to demand, request, prosecute.*

   diebus aliquot (14): *for several days;* the ABL. OF DURATION OF TIME was sometimes used instead of the acc. Cato had to make arrangements with the **praetores** (*praetors,* the leading judicial officers), before the trial, and they in the interests of the triumvirate refused to see him.

14.   **contionem: contio,** *meeting, assembly.*

   escendit: escendere, *to go, arise;* since Cato held no public office at this time, some magistrate must have invited him to speak.

   privatum: i.e., *self-appointed,* one not elected by due constitutional process.

15.   **propius . . . quam:** lit., *nothing was more nearly done than (that);* i.e., he was very nearly killed.

   ut occideretur (16): NOUN CL. OF RESULT.

   qui: interrog. adj. agreeing with **status.**

18.   **nostrae . . . causae:** = **meae causae** (Cicero typically employs first pers. pl. for sg., cp. **nos** below). Cicero's political enemies, especially Publius Clodius Pulcher (brother of the notorious Clodia/Lesbia of Catullus' poems), were attempting to prosecute him on the grounds that he had executed Roman citizens without right of appeal—as indeed he had done in the case of the Catilinarian conspirators in 63 B.C. Despite his confidence here, his adversaries did finally secure his banishment in 58 B.C.

   defuturi: deesse, + dat., *to be wanting, fail;* here, *likely to fail.*

   mirandum in modum (19): *in a way to be marveled at, in a marvelous fashion.*

   profitentur: profiteri, *to speak out openly.*

   offerunt se: i.e., in his support.

   pollicentur: polliceri, *to promise, make promises.*

20.   **spe . . . maxima . . . maiore . . . animo:** CHIASMUS; the ABL. OF DESCRIPTION, regularly with an adj. as here, is continued in the following cls. **(spe . . . animo)** without one.

   animo: here, *courage, confidence.*

   superiores: i.e., victorious in the political struggle; PRED. ADJ. with **fore** (= **futuros esse) nos,** IND. STATE. depending on **spe** *(of the hope that . . .).*

21.   **ut . . . pertimescam (22):** RESULT CL. with **animo** (sc. **tanto**).

22.   **se . . . habet:** an idiom common in Cicero; lit., *the situation thus has itself* = *the situation is this.*

   diem . . . dixerit: *appoints a day, fixes a date* (for trial); sc. **Clodius.**

23.   **concurret:** i.e., to support Cicero and oppose Clodius.

   discedamus: from court, i.e., escape the charges.

   sin: conj., *but if.*

tamen civis Romanus et Cato, vix vivus effugerit, quod, cum
Gabinium de ambitu vellet postulare neque praetores diebus
aliquot adiri possent, in contionem escendit et Pompeium "pri-
15   vatum dictatorem" appellavit. Propius nihil est factum quam ut
occideretur. Ex hoc qui sit status totius rei publicae videre
potes.

    Nostrae tamen causae non videntur homines defuturi; mi-
randum in modum profitentur, offerunt se, pollicentur. Equidem
20   cum spe sum maxima, tum maiore etiam animo: spe, superiores
fore nos; animo, ut in hac re publica ne casum quidem ullum
pertimescam. Sed tamen se res sic habet: si diem nobis dixerit,
tota Italia concurret, ut multiplicata gloria discedamus; sin
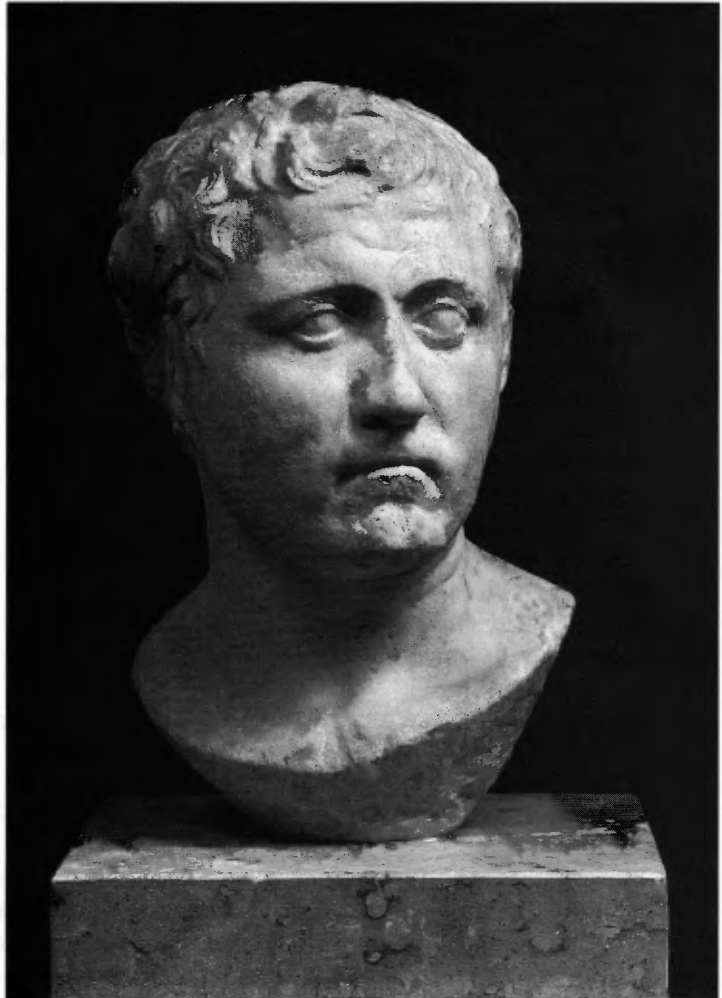
Pompey
1st century B.C.
Louvre
Paris, France

24.   **vi agere:** the possibility of violence on the part of Clodius and his followers is in ugly contrast to the legal procedure suggested at the beginning of the sent.; the resort to force was all too common in the 1st century B.C.

   spero fore . . . ut . . . resistamus (25): fore (= **futurum esse**) + a subjunct. RESULT CL. was a common circumlocution for the fut. inf.

   studiis: pl. because **amicorum** and **alienorum** are pl.

25.   **alienorum:** i.e., those who were not of Cicero's immediate political party.

   vi: ABL. OF MEANS or possibly (though the form is rare) dat. with **resistamus.**

26.   **clientis:** acc. pl. of **cliens,** *dependent, client, follower;* wealthy Roman patrons **(patroni)** typically had dozens or even hundreds of dependents, to whom they provided financial and other assistance in return for political support.

   libertos: libertus, *freedman, former slave.*

27.   **antiqua:** Cicero likely has in mind those who had supported him against Catiline in 63 B.C.

   bonorum: an epithet frequently applied by Cicero to members of his political faction, the Optimates.

   nostri: again = **mei;** OBJ. GEN.

28.   **qui:** interrog. pron., indef. after **si.**

29.   **horum regum:** the word **rex,** boldly applied here to the triumvirs, was despised in Roman politics.

31.   **comparatione: comparatio,** *preparation.*

   tribuni . . . designati: *tribunes-elect;* we know half a dozen of the 10 plebeian tribunes for 58 B.C., some of them, including Clodius himself, hostile to Cicero, and others sympathetic.

32.   **consules:** if Cicero means the consuls-elect, as seems to be the case, then his comment here is wishful thinking, or rather encouragement for his brother, since one of the two was Aulus Gabinius and the other Caesar's father-in-law Calpurnius Piso (see note on 13 above).

   praetores: the four men named were praetors-elect for 58.

34.   **alios:** i.e., some of the other four praetors.

   fac: idiom, sc. **ut,** *see to it that.*

36.   **faciam te . . . certiorem:** idiom, *I shall keep you informed.*

   crebro: adv., *frequently.*

39.   **distinear: distinere,** *to distract.*

41.   **voculae: vocula,** diminutive of **vox;** here = *my weak voice,* probably strained from speaking.

   dictavi: a slave would take down Cicero's dictation, typically his much admired **scriba,** Tiro (see *Ad Familiares* 16.11 below).

   ambulans: walking was considered good for the voice.

43.   **illud:** *the following,* obj. of **scire** and explained by the following infs. in IND. STATE.

   Sampsiceramum: obj. of **paenitere** and subj. of **cupere.** *Sampsiceramus* was a petty Syrian monarch whom Pompey had defeated; here and elsewhere Cicero applied this and similar oriental names to Pompey in ridiculing his growing arrogance and eastern mannerisms.

autem vi agere conabitur, spero fore studiis non solum amico-
25 rum sed etiam alienorum ut vi resistamus. Omnes et se et suos
amicos, clientis, libertos, servos, pecunias denique suas polli-
centur. Nostra antiqua manus bonorum ardet studio nostri
atque amore. Si qui antea aut alieniores fuerant aut languidi-
ores, nunc horum regum odio se cum bonis coniungunt. Pom-
30 peius omnia pollicetur et Caesar; quibus ego ita credo ut nihil
de mea comparatione deminuam. Tribuni plebis designati sunt
nobis amici; consules se optime ostendunt; praetores habemus
amicissimos et acerrimos civis, Domitium, Nigidium, Mem-
mium, Lentulum; bonos etiam alios. Quare magnum fac ani-
35 mum habeas et spem bonam. De singulis tamen rebus quae co-
tidie gerantur faciam te crebro certiorem.

AD ATTICUM 2.23

News of Pompey's political problems and of Clodius' vicious campaign for the tribune-
ship. August or September, 59 B.C.

Cicero Attico Sal.

Numquam ante arbitror te epistulam meam legisse nisi mea
manu scriptam. Ex eo colligere poteris quanta occupatione dis-
40 tinear. Nam cum vacui temporis nihil haberem et cum recrean-
dae voculae causa necesse esset mihi ambulare, haec dictavi am-
bulans.
Primum igitur illud te scire volo: Sampsiceramum, nostrum

44.　**sui status paenitere:** the impers. vb. **paenitet** takes an acc. of the repentant person + a gen. of the thing which causes the regret or displeasure; lit., with **Sampsiceramum,** *it repents Sampsiceramus of his status* = *Sampsiceramus is sorry about his status.* Pompey's position in 59 B.C. was that of neither general nor politician; he was simply a member of the unofficial triumvirate formed in 60 B.C. with Caesar and Crassus.

　　locum: i.e., as a general with extensive powers such as he had been in 67–61 B.C.

45.　**impertire:** *to impart to, share with.*

46.　**medicinam ... quaerere:** a common metaphor, applied here to Pompey's quest for a solution to his political ills.

　　aperte: adv., *openly.*

47.　**nullam:** to be translated as an emphatic adv., *not at all, in no way,* though it is an adj. with **quam.**

　　omnes ... fuisse (49): both IND. STATES. dependent on **te scire volo.**

　　partis: here, *(political) party.*

48.　**nullo adversario:** ABL. ABS., *though there is no opponent, no opposition.*

　　consenescere: *to grow very old* (figuratively) = *to lose power;* though the word is not etymologically connected with **consensionem,** Cicero juxtaposes the two terms and omits the conjunction in order to accentuate their AS-SONANCE.

　　universorum: = **omnium.**

　　nec voluntatis nec sermonis (49): i.e., men were never in greater agreement in what they wanted and what they said in their conversations.

50.　**nos ... intersumus (51):** *I am in the midst of* = *I take part in.*

51.　**totos:** Eng. would employ an adv., *entirely.*

　　forensem operam laboremque (52): i.e., *legal business* in the courts, as opposed to politics.

52.　**contulimus:** here, *applied, devoted.*

　　ex quo: = **et ex hoc,** *and as a result of this (situation);* conjunctive use of the rel. pron.

53.　**earum rerum:** depends on both **commemoratione** and **desiderio** *(longing);* Cicero had a weakness for dwelling on his own accomplishments, particularly his role in suppressing the Catilinarian conspiracy of 63 B.C.

　　versamur: **versari,** *to be busy, engaged (in), concerned (with).*

54.　***Boopidos:*** Greek for *Ox-eyed (= big-eyed) girl,* an allusion to the notorious Clodia (the "Lesbia" of Catullus' poems), sister of Cicero's nemesis Clodius Pulcher (see note on line 18 above). Homer applies the term to the goddess Juno, and Cicero's use of the word, though intended disparagingly, shows that Clodia was famous for her large, lustrous eyes.

　　consanguineus: *of the same blood, related;* here, *brother.*

　　terrores: *terroristic threats.* Cicero had exposed Clodius, who was now running a ruthless campaign for election to the tribuneship in order to introduce, among other things, legislation which would lead to Cicero's banishment; through terrorist tactics he succeeded in both objectives.

55.　**denuntiat: denuntiare,** *to announce, declare, threaten* (not *denounce*).

　　negat ... fert ... ostentat (56): sc. **terrores** with each vb.

amicum, vehementer sui status paenitere, restituique in eum lo-
45 cum cupere ex quo decidit, doloremque suum impertire nobis
et medicinam interdum aperte quaerere, quam ego possum in-
venire nullam; deinde omnes illius partis auctores ac socios,
nullo adversario, consenescere, consensionem universorum nec
voluntatis nec sermonis maiorem umquam fuisse.
50   Nos autem (nam id te scire cupere certo scio) publicis consi-
liis nullis intersumus totosque nos ad forensem operam labo-
remque contulimus. Ex quo, quod facile intellegi possit, in multa
commemoratione earum rerum quas gessimus desiderioque ver-
samur. Sed *Boopidos* nostrae consanguineus non mediocres ter-
55 rores iacit atque denuntiat, et Sampsiceramo negat, ceteris prae

"The Head of Pompey Presented to Caesar"
Bonifazio de' Pitati, 16th century
Coll. Berenson, Florence, Italy

56.   **quamobrem:** adv., *wherefore, therefore.*
        profecto: adv., *really, surely, actually, undoubtedly.*
57.   **expergiscere: expergisci,** *to wake up.*
        ingredere: ingredi, *to walk.*
58.   **advola:** *fly to (me).*
        quantum: obj. of **ponam,** *rely (on).*
59.   **quodque maximum est:** *and what is most important,* emphasizes the following
        quantum cl.; **(id) quod** is often used to refer to an entire phrase or cl.
62.   **permagni nostra interest:** idiom, with abl. sg. of possessive + inf. phrase as
        subj. (here, **te . . . esse),** *it is of very great importance to us (that).*
        comitiis: comitia, n. pl., *election;* sc. **in,** *at the election.* The elections for this
        year, in an act of political disruption typical of the period, had been
        delayed from July to October 18.
        potueris: sc. **esse.**
63.   **declarato: declarare,** *to make clear, declare, declare as elected to office.*
        cura ut valeas: a conventional closing remark; cp. Eng. "take care of your-
        self." No correspondence between Atticus and Cicero exists for the next
        four months, probably an indication that Atticus in fact complied with
        his request and returned to Rome, as Cicero requested in this letter.
64.   **Terentiae:** *Terentia,* Cicero's first wife and mother of his two children; she
        encouraged his activities against Catiline and later Clodius, and exerted
        herself on his behalf during his exile. The two were later divorced, in 48,
        due to Cicero's suspicions that she was mishandling their finances.
        Tulliolae: *little Tullia,* a diminutive form of the name of Cicero's daughter,
        used as a term of endearment. Born ca. 79 B.C., Tullia was 21 years old
        at this time and married to Gaius Calpurnius Piso Frugi, a quaestor
        who lobbied for Cicero's recall.
65.   **Ciceroni:** Cicero's son, named *Marcus Tullius Cicero* for his father; born in
        65, he was just seven years old at the time of his father's banishment.
66.   **perfertur: fero** and a number of its compounds are often used with the sense
        of *bringing news, reporting.*
67.   **incredibilem:** PRED. ADJ., placed at the beginning of its cl. for emphasis.
        tuam . . . te: Terentia; Cicero refers to each of the three family members,
        following the order in the salutation.
68.   **me miserum:** ACC. OF EXCLAMATION.
        te . . . incidisse (70): the inf. used independently (i.e., without an introductory
        main vb.) to express an exclamation, *(to think) that you have . . ..*
        ista virtute (69): ABL. OF DESCRIPTION, = *a person of such excellence.*
69.   **humanitate:** here, *human kindness.*
        aerumnas: aerumna, *hardship.*
70.   **patre:** logically with **ex eo** as antecedent of **quo,** the word is attracted into
        the rel. cl., common when the rel. cl. precedes its antecedent.
71.   **luctus:** *grief, sorrow, distress;* here, acc. pl.
72.   **sapere:** *to have understanding.*
73.   **quae:** = **et haec,** n. pl., referring to **dolores miseriasque.**
        facta: sc. **esse.**
74.   **paulo:** adv., *a little.*

se fert et ostentat. Quamobrem, si me amas quantum profecto amas, si dormis, expergiscere; si stas, ingredere; si vero ingrederis, curre; si curris, advola. Credibile non est quantum ego in consiliis et prudentia tua, quodque maximum est, quantum
60 in amore et fide ponam. Magnitudo rei longam orationem fortasse desiderat; coniunctio vero nostrorum animorum brevitate contenta est. Permagni nostra interest te, si comitiis non potueris, at declarato illo esse Romae. Cura ut valeas.

AD FAMILIARES 14.1

Clodius was elected tribune for 58 and authored a bill banishing Cicero for his role in the execution of the Catilinarians; from exile in Greece, Cicero writes to his wife Terentia and their daughter Tullia and son Marcus on a wide range of topics. Most of the letter was written in Thessalonica, with a postscript added in Dyrrhachium. November 25, 58 B.C.

Tullius Terentiae Suae, Tulliolae Suae,
65   Ciceroni Suo Salutem Dicit

Et litteris multorum et sermone omnium perfertur ad me incredibilem tuam virtutem et fortitudinem esse teque nec animi neque corporis laboribus defatigari. Me miserum!—te ista virtute, fide, probitate, humanitate in tantas aerumnas propter
70 me incidisse! Tulliolamque nostram, ex quo patre tantas voluptates capiebat, ex eo tantos percipere luctus! Nam quid ego de Cicerone dicam?—qui cum primum sapere coepit, acerbissimos dolores miseriasque percepit. Quae si, tu ut scribis, fato facta putarem, ferrem paulo facilius, sed omnia sunt mea culpa com-

75.   **ab eis:** the senatorial party; from the beginning Cicero had to struggle against their grudging acceptance of him because he was a **novus homo,** and now, he felt, they were jealous **(invidebant)** of his accomplishments.

76.   **qui petebant:** the triumvirs, Caesar in particular, who did invite Cicero to join them but whose political philosophy he could not accept.

77.   **quod si:** *but if.*
      apud nos: *with me.*
      tantum: adv., *so much.*

78.   **sermo:** here, *advice.*
      improborum: *wicked, dishonest, treacherous.*

80.   **dabo operam: operam dare,** idiom, *to give attention, take care,* + **ut** cl.
      valetudo: in the next paragraph Cicero mentions a plague at Thessalonica, where he had been staying, possibly a source of Terentia's concern.

81.   **quanto:** ABL. OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE.

82.   **omnis . . . habemus:** i.e., with us, on our side.
      Lentulum: sc. **habemus;** *Publius Cornelius Lentulus Spinther* was consul-elect at this time, and then as consul in 57 B.C. he did much to secure Cicero's return from exile and to assist in the restoration of his property.

84.   **est desperandum:** impers. pass.

85.   **familia:** here, the household *slaves.*
      quo modo: *as (in what way);* what the friends had suggested is not clear, but Cicero himself had considered the possibility of freeing his slaves.
      de loco (86): *with regard to this place;* on fleeing into exile Cicero had gone to Gnaeus Plancius, quaestor of Macedonia, who provided him asylum at his residence in Thessalonica.

86.   **quam diu:** *how long = as long as.*

87.   **attigit: attingere,** *to touch, reach, affect.*

88.   **Epiro:** *Epirus,* a remote section of northwest Greece.

89.   **quo:** adv., *where.*
      Hispo: probably a pseudonym for Lucius Calpurnius Piso, Caesar's father-in-law and the incoming governor of Macedonia; as consul in 58 B.C. he had worked with Clodius to secure Cicero's banishment.

90.   **decedat:** NOUN CL. OF RESULT; Plancius was about to retire from his post in Macedonia.

91.   **complexum: complexus,** *embrace.*

92.   **me ipsum:** i.e., his former position.
      recuperaro: = **recuperavero,** from **recuperare,** *to recover, regain.*

93.   **pietatis:** *affection, loyalty* (not "piety" in our ordinary sense of the word).
      Pisonis: Tullia's husband (see note on line 64 above); Piso died in 57 B.C. just before Cicero's return, and Tullia remarried the following year.

94.   **utinam:** adv., introducing wishes, *would that* + subjunct. (OPTATIVE SUB-JUNCT.).

95.   **ei voluptati:** the so-called DOUBLE DAT. = DAT. OF REF. + DAT. OF PURPOSE.

75   missa, qui ab eis me amari putabam, qui invidebant, eos non sequebar, qui petebant.

    Quod si nostris consiliis usi essemus neque apud nos tantum valuisset sermo aut stultorum amicorum aut improborum, beatissimi viveremus; nunc, quoniam sperare nos amici iubent,

80   dabo operam ne mea valetudo tuo labori desit. Res quanta sit, intellego, quantoque fuerit facilius manere domi quam redire: sed tamen, si omnis tribunos plebis habemus, si Lentulum tam studiosum quam videtur, si vero etiam Pompeium et Caesarem, non est desperandum.

85   De familia, quo modo placuisse scribis amicis, faciemus; de loco, nunc quidem iam abiit pestilentia, sed quam diu fuit, me non attigit. Plancius, homo officiosissimus, me cupit esse secum et adhuc retinet. Ego volebam loco magis deserto esse in Epiro, quo neque Hispo veniret nec milites, sed adhuc Plancius me re-

90   tinet; sperat posse fieri ut mecum in Italiam decedat—quem ego diem si videro et si in vestrum complexum venero ac si et vos et me ipsum recuperaro, satis magnum mihi fructum videbor percepisse et vestrae pietatis et meae. Pisonis humanitas, virtus, amor in omnis nos tantus est ut nihil supra possit. Uti-

95   nam ea res ei voluptati sit! Gloriae quidem video fore.
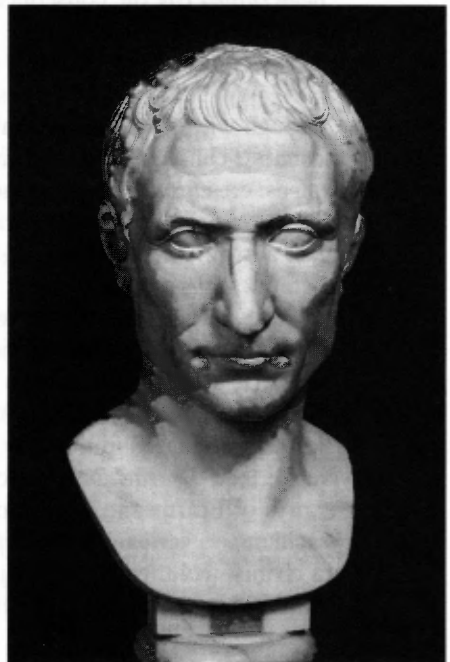
Julius Caesar
1st century B.C.
Museo Pio Clementino
Vatican Museums
Vatican State

96. **nihil:** = a strong **non.**
 te accusavi: Terentia and Quintus had had some disagreement, and Cicero,
 in attempting to mediate, apparently had given his wife the impression
 that he blamed her.
 vos: subj. of **esse;** also felt as subj. of **sitis.**
 praesertim: adv., *especially.*
98. **egi:** sc. **eis gratias,** with **eis** the antecedent of **quibus;** the antecedent of a rel.
 pron. was often omitted, especially when indef. or when, as here, the
 antecedent and rel. would be in the same case construction.
 certiorem factum esse: for the idiom, see note on line 36; in his letters to these
 men Cicero gave Terentia due credit for reporting to him their help.
99. **quod:** *as to the fact that.*
 vicum: vicus, *property, estate.*
100. **obsecro: obsecrare,** *to beg, beseech.*
101. **premet:** with **eadem** the sense is *will continue to oppress.*
 queo: = **possum.**
 reliqua: *the remaining (things), the other (things), the rest.*
103. **fletum: fletus,** *weeping, lamentation.*
 tantum: i.e., *only this much* (as follows).
 erunt in officio: *will do their duty.*
104. **deerit: deesse,** + dat., *to be lacking, wanting, fail.*
 efficere: here, *to manage.*
105. **per:** in oaths, *by.*
 vide ne puerum perditum perdamus: *see that we do not ruin* (i.e., financially,
 by your selling too much of your property) *the boy, who has (already)
 been ruined* (by the consequences of my exile).
106. **cui:** DAT. OF POSSESSION.
 mediocri virtute opus est: *there is need of (only) ordinary character* = *he will
 need only . . .;* i.e., if he can escape absolute poverty, he can manage well
 enough with just average character and a bit of luck.
107. **consequatur: consequi,** *to follow, follow up, gain.*
 fac valeas: cp. **cura ut valeas** at the end of the preceding letter.
108. **tabellarios: tabellarius,** *letter-carrier.*
109. **omnino:** adv., *wholly, completely, certainly, definitely.*
 exspectatio: *wait, waiting.*
110. **d. a. d. VI K. Decemb.:** = **(litterae) datae ante diem sextum Kalendas Decem-
 bres,** *given* (to the letter-carrier) *on the 6th day before the December Ka-
 lends* (= the first day of the month), i.e., Nov. 25. The first **d.** in such
 date formulations may also stand for **datum** or **dabam.** Many of Cicero's
 letters were dated in this way, using more or less standard abbreviations.
 Dyrrachi: loc.; *Dyrrachium* was on the west coast of the Balkan peninsula
 north of Epirus and approximately opposite the heel of Italy.
111. **Dyrrachium . . . scribam (113):** a postscript.
 libera civitas: technically not subject to Rome, and hence a place where Ro-
 man exiles could live unmolested.

De Quinto fratre nihil ego te accusavi, sed vos, cum praeser-
tim tam pauci sitis, volui esse quam coniunctissimos. Quibus
me voluisti agere gratias, egi, et me a te certiorem factum esse
scripsi. Quod ad me, mea Terentia, scribis te vicum vendituram,
100   quid, obsecro te—me miserum!—quid futurum est? Et, si nos
premet eadem fortuna, quid puero misero fiet? Non queo reli-
qua scribere—tanta vis lacrimarum est—neque te in eundem
fletum adducam. Tantum scribo: si erunt in officio amici, pecu-
nia non deerit; si non erunt, tu efficere tua pecunia non poteris.
105   Per fortunas miseras nostras, vide ne puerum perditum perda-
mus. Cui si aliquid erit ne egeat, mediocri virtute opus est et
mediocri fortuna, ut cetera consequatur. Fac valeas et ad me
tabellarios mittas ut sciam quid agatur et vos quid agatis. Mihi
omnino iam brevis exspectatio est. Tulliolae et Ciceroni salutem
110   dic. Valete. D.a.d. VI K. Decemb. Dyrrachi.

Dyrrachium veni, quod et libera civitas est et in me officiosa
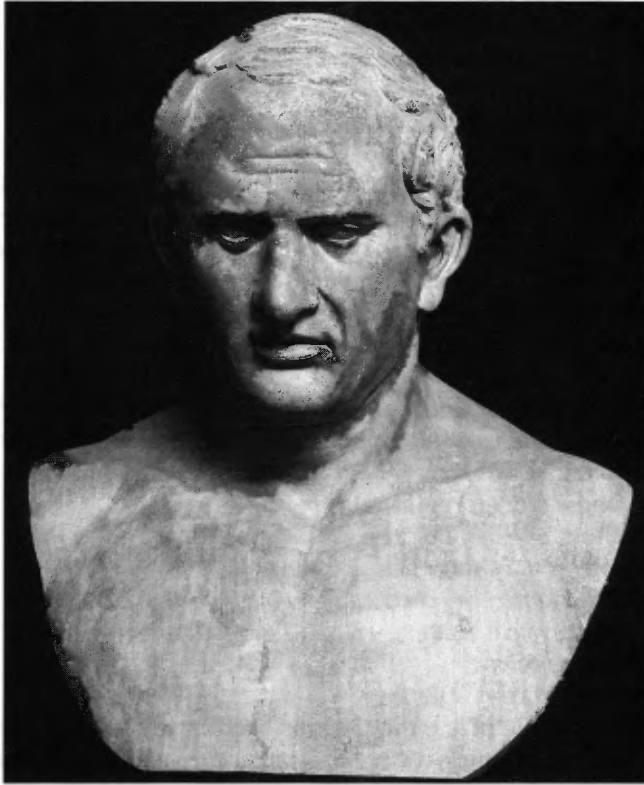
Cicero, 1st century B.C.
Vatican Museums, Vatican State

112. **celebritas:** *crowded condition,* because it was a major port for the traffic from Italy to Greece.

      alio: adv., *to another place, elsewhere.*

114. **S. D.: salutem dicit.**

      M. Mario: *Marcus Marius,* known only through a few of Cicero's letters as a person of taste and refinement who led a quiet lifestyle and suffered from ill health; possibly one of the Marii of Arpinum, Cicero's home-town, he had a villa at Stabiae near Cicero's.

115. **tenuit quominus . . . venires (116):** *kept you from coming;* vbs. of hindering and preventing are followed by **ne** or **quominus** + subjunct.

116. **ludos:** Pompey produced lavish games in August, 55 B.C., in connection with the dedication of his new theater, Rome's first permanent stone theater; the entertainments, which were so spectacular as to be mentioned a century later by Pliny the Elder, included plays, wild animal hunts, and athletic competitions.

      tribuo: tribuere, *to ascribe, attribute, give;* sc. **id.**

118. **posses:** sc. **venire.**

119. **utrumque:** *each of two, both.*

      laetor: laetari, *to be glad about, take delight in.*

      et . . . te fuisse et . . . valuisse: *both that you were . . . and that . . .;* both infs. are in appos. with **utrumque.**

121. **apparatissimi:** *most sumptuous;* sc. **erant.**

      stomachi: stomachus, *stomach, digestion, liking, taste.* We would say "to your taste"; and cp. the expression "I cannot stomach this."

122. **meo:** sc. **stomacho.**

      honoris causa . . . honoris causa (123): Cicero jokingly plays on two different meanings of **honor;** in the first instance he means *for the sake of the honor,* i.e., to honor Pompey on this occasion, and in the second, *for the sake of their own honor,* i.e., their (dwindling) reputation.

123. **scaenam: scaena,** *stage, theater.*

124. **deliciae:** lit., *delights;* but often, as here, the pl. is used in the sg. sense of *pet, favorite, darling.*

      noster Aesopus: *my friend Aesop;* in his younger days Clodius Aesopus was the most famous tragic actor at Rome and a friend of Cicero's.

125. **eius modi fuit:** *he was such;* he was so old and feeble that everyone was ready *for him to retire* **(ei desinere).**

      iurare: *to take an oath,* i.e., as a character in the play.

126. **sciens:** Eng. would use an adv., *knowingly.*

      fallo: fallere, *to deceive, cheat, disappoint, fail;* the joke is that, as Aesopus spoke the words from an oath, *if I . . . fail,* his voice in fact failed him.

127. **quid:** = **cur,** as often.

      narrem: DELIBERATIVE SUBJUNCT.

      nosti: = **novisti,** implying that Marius had already heard something of the games, not surprisingly, as they were a spectacular, if tasteless, event.

128. **leporis: lepos,** *charm, grace, wit;* PARTITIVE GEN. with **id.**

      mediocres: here, *ordinary.*

      apparatus . . . spectatio (129): *the spectacle (sight) of the elaborate display.*

et proxima Italiae; sed si offendet me loci celebritas, alio me
conferam, ad te scribam.

AD FAMILIARES 7.1 (excerpts)

*The public entertainments sponsored by Pompey at the dedication of his theater at
Rome are vulgar displays which displeased Cicero and would have displeased his
friend Marcus Marius as well; more formal than most of his correspondence, the letter
is essentially an epistolary essay of the sort later written by Horace (in verse) and the
younger Pliny. September or October, 55 B.C.*

M. Cicero S. D. M. Mario

Marius' absence from the games.

115   Si te dolor aliqui corporis aut infirmitas valetudinis tuae te-
nuit quominus ad ludos venires, fortunae magis tribuo quam
sapientiae tuae; sin haec, quae ceteri mirantur, contemnenda
duxisti et, cum per valetudinem posses, venire tamen noluisti,
utrumque laetor, et sine dolore corporis te fuisse et animo valu-
120 isse, cum ea, quae sine causa mirantur alii, neglexeris.

    Omnino, si quaeris, ludi apparatissimi, sed non tui sto-
machi; coniecturam enim facio de meo: nam primum honoris
causa in scaenam redierant ei, quos ego honoris causa de
scaena decessisse arbitrabar; deliciae vero tuae, noster Aesopus,
125 eius modi fuit ut ei desinere per omnis homines liceret. Is iurare
cum coepisset, vox eum defecit in illo loco, "si sciens fallo."
Quid tibi ego alia narrem? Nosti enim reliquos ludos, qui ne id
quidem leporis habuerunt quod solent mediocres ludi; appara-
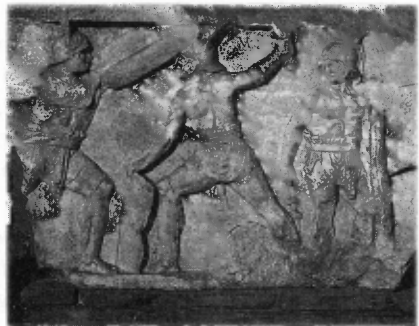
*Gladiators fighting, terracotta relief
2nd century A.D.
Museo Nazionale Romano, Rome, Italy*

129. **hilaritatem: hilaritas,** *enjoyment, amusement.*
130. **sescenti:** *600;* commonly used for an indefinite large number, here a hyperbole emphasizing the extravagance of the spectacle.

   muli: perhaps carrying Agamemnon's booty when he returned to Clytemnestra from Troy.

   ***Clytaemestra . . . Equo Troiano* (131):** *Clytemnestra* and *The Trojan Horse,* titles of two Roman tragedies presented during the **ludi;** they have not survived, but they clearly dealt with the Trojan cycle.

131. **creterrarum: creterra,** *mixing bowl,* for mixing water with wine as the ancients regularly did; here again possibly loot from the Trojan War.

   armatura: *armor, equipment.*

   peditatus et equitatus (132): both gen. sg., *of the infantry and cavalry.*
133. **attulissent:** sc. **si adfuisses.**
134. **Protogeni:** *Protogenes,* an educated Greek slave trained as a reader (in Greek, an **anagnostes**); many cultivated Romans had such slaves.

   dummodo . . . legerit (135): this self-deprecating aside shows that Cicero did, after all, have a sense of humor and could even poke fun at himself.

   quidvis: quivis, *anyone, anything.*
135. **ne:** a Greek interjection, employed in Lat. only before prons., *surely, indeed.*

   haud paulo plus: i.e., *a great deal more;* LITOTES.
136. **nostrum:** gen. with **quisquam.**

   delectationis: depends on **plus.**
137. **venationes: venatio,** *animal-hunt;* wild beasts (lions, panthers, elephants, etc.) were turned loose in an arena to fight human beings and one another.

   binae: *two each (day).*
138. **polito:** *polished,* therefore *refined, cultivated.*
139. **imbecillus:** *weak, powerless,* by nature as compared with **bestiae,** and also because sometimes the gladiators were unarmed.

   laniatur: laniare, *to tear, mangle.*
140. **venabulo: venabulum,** *hunting spear.*

   transverberatur: transverberare, *to pierce through.*
142. **elephantorum . . . fuit:** we would say "was devoted to . . .."
143. **admiratio:** not *admiration,* but *surprise, amazement.*

   vulgi atque turbae: *the vulgar throng;* HENDIADYS.

   exstitit: exsistere, *to stand out, show itself, appear.*
144. **quin:** here, *to the contrary.*

   misericordia: Pliny the Elder in his *Natural History* (8.21) reports that the terrified elephants seemed to plead with the spectators so pathetically that all the people arose with tears in their eyes and cursed Pompey.
145. **esse . . . societatem:** IND. STATE. depending on **opinio;** the symmetry of the phrase is appropriate to the bond that Cicero suggests was felt between man and beast.
147. **forte:** abl. of **fors** as adv., *by chance, perhaps.*
148. **dirupi: dirumpere,** *to burst, rupture.*

   paene: adv., *nearly, almost;* Eng. might say, "I practically killed myself."

tus enim spectatio tollebat omnem hilaritatem. Quid enim de-
130 lectationis habent sescenti muli in *Clytaemestra*? aut in *Equo
Troiano* creterrarum tria milia? aut armatura varia peditatus et
equitatus in aliqua pugna? Quae popularem admirationem ha-
buerunt; delectationem tibi nullam attulissent. Quod si tu per
eos dies operam dedisti Protogeni tuo (dummodo is tibi quidvis
135 potius quam orationes meas legerit), ne tu haud paulo plus
quam quisquam nostrum delectationis habuisti.

The wild animal hunts.

Reliquae sunt venationes binae per dies quinque, magnifi-
cae—nemo negat; sed quae potest homini esse polito delectatio,
cum aut homo imbecillus a valentissima bestia laniatur aut
140 praeclara bestia venabulo transverberatur? Quae tamen, si vide-
nda sunt, saepe vidisti; neque nos, qui haec spectamus, quic-
quam novi vidimus. Extremus elephantorum dies fuit. In quo
admiratio magna vulgi atque turbae, delectatio nulla exstitit:
quin etiam misericordia quaedam consecuta est atque opinio
145 eius modi, esse quandam illi beluae cum genere humano socie-
tatem.

Cicero is extremely busy.

His ego tamen diebus (ludis scaenicis), ne forte videar tibi
non modo beatus sed liber omnino fuisse, dirupi me paene in

Gladiators, Roman mosaic, 3rd century A.D.
Galleria Borghese, Rome, Italy

149.   **Galli Canini:** *Lucius Caninius Gallus* was a **tribunus plebis** in 56 B.C. and a
    supporter of Pompey, but we know nothing about this trial.
    familiaris: *friend, associate.*
    facilem populum: *an accommodating public;* another joke, since Aesopus' au-
    dience, as Cicero had noted earlier (124–25), were eager to be rid of him.

150.   **mehercule:** interj., *by Hercules* = *good heavens!* or *so help me!*
    artem desinerem (151): i.e., to retire.

151.   **nostri: similis** may be followed by either the dat. or the gen.

152.   **non numquam:** common for *sometimes.*

153.   **homines . . . meritos (152):** *men not deserving very much from me;* from **mereri,**
    to earn, deserve, merit.

155.   **causas . . . vivendi:** *reasons for living.*
    aliquando: adv., *at some time, at last, finally.*
    arbitratu: arbitratus, *choice, pleasure;* ABL. OF ACCORDANCE.

156.   **oti:** = **otii;** spelling with only one **-i** the gen. sg. of **-ius/-ium** nouns was com-
    mon through the Ciceronian period.

157.   **quodque:** *and as to the fact that;* the phrase introduced is in appos. with the
    following **hoc.**
    intervisis: intervisere, *to visit from time to time.*

158.   **neque nos . . . neque te:** both are subjs. of **frui,** *for me to enjoy;* the entire cl.
    is highly elliptical, = **neque nos lepore tuo frui liceret neque te lepore meo
    (si qui est lepos in me) frui liceret.**

159.   **qui:** indef. adj. after **si.**

160.   **quibus:** = **et eis (occupationibus);** ABL. OF SEPARATION.
    relaxaro: = **relaxavero.**

161.   **commentaris: commentari,** *to study, consider, practice;* with advs. such as **iam**
    and expressions of duration of time, such as **multos annos** here, Lat. uses
    the pres. where Eng. uses the perf., *have been studying.*
    humaniter: adv., *as a man* **(homo)** *should,* i.e., *in a refined manner.*

163.   **sustenta: sustentare,** *to endure with courage.*

164.   **tuere: tueri,** *to look at, guard, watch, protect.*
    lecticula: diminutive of **lectica,** *small litter.*

165.   **concursare:** *to run about, travel about.*

166.   **abundantia:** ABL. OF CAUSE.

167.   **subinvitaras:** = **subinvitaveras,** from **subinvitare,** *to gently invite, suggest, hint.*

168.   **quominus:** = **ne,** used to introduce a negative purpose cl.; lit., *by which . . .
    the less* = *so that . . . not.*
    paeniteret: for construction see note on line 44 above.

169.   **quod:** = **et hoc.**
    minus: = **non,** as often.

170.   **quod . . . vises:** cl. in appos. with **hoc.**

iudicio Galli Canini, familiaris tui. Quod si tam facilem popu-
150   lum haberem, quam Aesopus habuit, libenter mehercule artem
desinerem tecumque et cum similibus nostri viverem; neque
enim fructum ullum laboris exspecto, et cogor non numquam
homines non optime de me meritos rogatu eorum, qui bene
meriti sunt, defendere.
155   Itaque quaero causas omnis aliquando vivendi arbitratu
meo; teque et istam rationem oti tui et laudo vehementer et
probo; quodque nos minus intervisis, hoc fero animo aequiore,
quod, si Romae esses, tamen neque nos lepore tuo neque te—si
qui est in me—meo frui liceret propter molestissimas occupati-
160   ones meas; quibus si me relaxaro, te ipsum, qui multos annos
nihil aliud commentaris, docebo profecto quid sit humaniter
vivere.

A cordial conclusion.

Tu modo istam imbecillitatem valetudinis tuae sustenta et
tuere, ut facis, ut nostras villas obire et mecum simul lecticula
165   concursare possis. Haec ad te pluribus verbis scripsi quam so-
leo, non oti abundantia sed amoris erga te, quod me quadam
epistula subinvitaras, si memoria tenes, ut ad te aliquid eius
modi scriberem, quominus te praetermisisse ludos paeniteret.
Quod si adsecutus sum, gaudeo; sin minus, hoc me tamen con-
170   solor, quod posthac ad ludos venies nosque vises.

Three comic actors
Fresco from Pompeii
1st century A.D.
Museo Archeologico Nazionale
Naples, Italy

172. **Q.Q.:** = **Quintus** (Cicero's brother) and **Quintus** (the son of Quintus); the fact that Cicero composed this letter in the names of all his family, as well as his use of **plurimam (salutem),** suggests the affection in which all held Tiro. Marcus Tullius Tiro, as he was called after being freed by Cicero, invented the first known system of shorthand (the so-called **Notae Tironianae**) for the purpose of taking down Cicero's speeches, and he was also important in the editing of Cicero's letters.

     dic.: dicit.
173. **opportunitatem:** here, *advantage.*
174. **te . . . valere:** IND. STATE. dependent on **doleo.**
175. **quartanam:** sc. **febrim** *(fever), quartan fever,* which recurred every fourth day and was taken to be a sign of convalescence from more serious illnesses.
176. **Curius:** a banker at Patrae in whose care Cicero had left Tiro.
177. **humanitatis tuae:** *characteristic of your human feeling or kindness;* PRED. GEN.
178. **quam commodissime:** here, *as expeditiously as possible.*
179. **ex desiderio labores:** *you suffer from being away.*
180. **nauseae molestiam:** *the annoyance of seasickness.*
     aeger: *sick, ill.*
181. **hieme: hiems,** *winter;* the ancients thought that winter was no time for navigation.
182. **ad:** = *to the vicinity of.* A general could not enter Rome without surrendering his **imperium,** unless the senate had granted him a triumph (**triumphum,** an honorary military parade through the city to the temple of Jupiter Capitolinus); Cicero was awaiting such a triumph for a victory in his province of Cilicia but it had not yet been decreed by the senate.

     pr. Non. Ian.: pridie Nonas Ianuarias, *the day before the Nones of January* = January 4 (49 B.C.).

     obviam: adv., *in the way, towards, to meet,* + dat.; with **mihi** and the impers. pass. **est proditum** (from **prodire**), lit., *it was come forth* (by the people) *to meet me* = *the people came out to meet me.*
183. **ornatius:** *more splendidly.*
     incidi: incidere, *to fall into, come upon.*
184. **cui:** = **et ei (bello).**
     mederi: *to heal, cure,* + dat.; actually there was practically no likelihood that Cicero's actions could have resolved the crisis, as Rome was clearly moving toward one-man rule of some sort.
186. **ex utraque parte:** *on both* (each of two) *sides,* i.e., the Caesarians and the senatorial aristocracy.
187. **omnino:** here, *the sum of the matter is this, in sum.*
     et . . . Caesar . . . et Curio (189): *both Caesar . . . and Curio;* Gaius Scribonius Curio, tribune in 50 B.C. and a Caesarian, read to the senate on January 1 the letter Cicero mentions here.
     amicus noster: ever the mediator, Cicero had attempted to maintain reasonably amicable relations with both Pompey and Caesar, so much so in fact that he was accused by some of fence-straddling.
     minacis: *threatening;* acc. pl.

AD FAMILIARES 16.11

When returning from his province of Cilicia in November, 50 B.C., Cicero had left behind in Patrae, Greece, his beloved freedman and secretary Tiro; in this letter to Tiro, Cicero expresses his concern both over his friend's health and over the dangers Rome faced on the very eve of civil war between Caesar and Pompey. January 12, 49 B.C., the day following Caesar's crossing of the Rubicon River.

Tullius et Cicero, Terentia, Tullia,
Q. Q. Tironi Sal. Plurimam Dic.

Etsi opportunitatem operae tuae omnibus locis desidero, tamen non tam mea quam tua causa doleo te non valere; sed
175 quoniam in quartanam conversa vis est morbi—sic enim scribit Curius—spero te, diligentia adhibita, iam firmiorem fore. Modo fac (id quod est humanitatis tuae) ne quid aliud cures hoc tempore, nisi ut quam commodissime convalescas. Non ignoro quantum ex desiderio labores; sed erunt omnia facilia, si va-
180 lebis. Festinare te nolo, ne nauseae molestiam suscipias aeger et periculose hieme naviges.

Ego ad urbem accessi pr. Non. Ian. Obviam mihi sic est proditum ut nihil possit fieri ornatius; sed incidi in ipsam flammam civilis discordiae vel potius belli, cui cum cuperem mederi
185 et, ut arbitror, possem, cupiditates certorum hominum—nam ex utraque parte sunt qui pugnare cupiant—impedimento mihi fuerunt. Omnino et ipse Caesar, amicus noster, minacis ad sena-

Two ships with man overboard
Marble relief from a Roman sarcophagus, 2nd–3rd centuries A.D.
Ny Carlsberg Glyptotek, Copenhagen, Denmark

188. **qui . . . teneret (189):** REL. CL. OF RESULT with **erat adhuc impudens,** *he was still so shameless (defiant) that he . . . .* The senate had ordered Caesar to relinquish his extraordinary 10-year governorship of Gaul and return to Rome, where his enemies intended to prosecute him for illegal acts he had committed during his consulship in 59.

189. **provinciam:** Caesar had governed the triple province of Cisalpine Gaul, Transalpine (Narbonese) Gaul, and Illyricum.

190. **Antonius . . . et Q. Cassius:** partisans of Caesar and tribunes for 49 B.C. When the senate rejected the demands in Caesar's letter and decreed that he must disband his army or be regarded a public enemy, Antony and Cassius futilely interposed their veto against the senate's decree and were forced to flee; Caesar used their expulsion to justify his march on Rome.

191. **postea quam:** = **postquam.**

192. **nobis . . . pro consulibus (193):** Cicero (who had not yet entered the city and was thus still proconsul) and Pompey (who had been specially empowered by the senate); a proconsul was an ex-consul whose **imperium** had been extended by vote of the senate beyond his year of office, generally for service as a provincial governor.

193. **negotium:** *business, assignment.*
    ne . . . caperet (194): this was the wording of the **senatus consultum ultimum,** a decree of martial law issued by the senate and giving the magistrates extraordinary powers to deal with the crisis; a similar decree was passed during the Catilinarian conspiracy in 63 B.C.

194. **detrimenti: detrimentum,** *harm;* depends on **quid.**

196. **ex hac . . . parte:** *on our side.*
    comparatur: impers. pass.

197. **sero:** adv., *too late;* this adv. and the pres. tense of **comparatur** give evidence of Pompey's lack of preparation.

198. **frequens:** *crowded, full.*
    flagitavit: flagitare, *to demand.*

199. **Lentulus:** *Lucius Cornelius Lentulus Crus,* brother of Lentulus Spinther (line 82), he was elected consul for 49 as an anti-Caesarian.
    quo . . . faceret (200): i.e., to put Cicero more in his debt.

200. **simul atque:** *as soon as.*

201. **relaturum:** sc. **esse;** i.e., he would introduce a bill in the senate for a formal vote.
    discriptae sunt: discribere, lit., *to write separately* = *to distribute, assign.*
    quam . . . tueretur (202): an IND. QUEST., loosely appended in appos. to **regiones,** *(indicating) what part (the part which) each should defend.*

202. **Capuam:** *Capua,* one of the chief cities of Campania.

204. **etiam atque etiam:** repetition for emphasis = *again and again.*

205. **cui des:** sc. **aliquem** as antecedent; i.e., a letter-carrier.

206. **d. pr. Idus Ian.: datum** or **dabam** or **(litterae) datae pridie Idus Ianuarias,** *the day before the Ides of January* = January 12 (the Ides fell on the 13th of most months, the 15th in March, May, July, and October).

tum et acerbas litteras miserat, et erat adhuc impudens qui exer-
citum et provinciam invito senatu teneret, et Curio meus illum
190   incitabat. Antonius quidem noster et Q. Cassius, nulla vi ex-
pulsi, ad Caesarem cum Curione profecti erant postea quam
senatus consulibus, praetoribus, tribunis plebis, et nobis qui pro
consulibus sumus, negotium dederat ut curaremus ne quid res
publica detrimenti caperet. Numquam maiore in periculo civi-
195   tas fuit; numquam improbi cives habuerunt paratiorem ducem.
Omnino ex hac quoque parte diligentissime comparatur; id fit
auctoritate et studio Pompei nostri, qui Caesarem sero coepit
timere. Nobis inter has turbas senatus tamen frequens flagitavit
triumphum; sed Lentulus consul, quo maius suum beneficium
200   faceret, simul atque expedisset quae essent necessaria de re pu-
blica, dixit se relaturum. Italiae regiones discriptae sunt, quam
quisque partem tueretur: nos Capuam sumpsimus. Haec te
scire volui.

   Tu etiam atque etiam cura ut valeas litterasque ad me mit-
205   tas, quotienscumque habebis cui des. Etiam atque etiam vale.
D. pr. Idus Ian.

Funerary stele of
Publius Longidienus,
faber navalis
1st century B.C.
Museo Nazionale
Ravenna, Italy

208. **lippitudo: lippitudo,** *inflammation of the eyes;* Cicero frequently complained of problems with his eyes during this period.

      librari: librarius, *secretary.*

      manus: here, *handwriting;* Cicero often wrote out his own personal letters.

209. **scriberem . . . erat:** EPISTOLARY TENSES, to be translated as pres. (see note on line 7); similarly several of the vbs. following.

210. **omnis exspectatio nostra erat:** i.e., "we are eagerly awaiting."

      nuntiis Brundisinis: *the news from Brundisium;* after crossing the Rubicon in January, Caesar marched south and Pompey fled with his army to Brundisium, where he was preparing to cross over to Greece.

      nactus . . . esset (211): nancisci, *to find, get, obtain;* here = *if he has caught up with.*

211. **hic:** Caesar.

      Gnaeum: Pompey.

      dubia: here, not *dubious,* but *some, slight.*

      transmisisset: again epistolary, *has crossed* (to Greece).

212. **in quem hominem:** *to what kind of man* (i.e., Caesar); many had expected the worst of Caesar, but after his unexpected clemency in sparing the forces of Pompey who surrendered to him in a recent engagement at Corfinium, opinion throughout Italy began to turn in Caesar's favor.

214. **si . . . occiderit:** i.e., especially if there were to be no proscriptions (the public posting of names of political enemies to be liquidated), like those of Sulla.

      cuiquam: DAT. OF SEPARATION, common with vbs. that mean *to take away,* like **adimere** here; Cicero refers to the confiscations which regularly attended proscriptions.

216. **municipales homines:** *townspeople* (living in **municipia** outside of Rome).

      rusticani: *country people.*

217. **prorsus:** adv., *absolutely.*

      nisi . . . nummulos (218): ANAPHORA, ASYNDETON, TRICOLON CRESCENS, and the diminutives all serve to underscore Cicero's indignation over the people's apathy and fickleness.

218. **nummulos:** diminutive of **nummus,** *little sums of money.*

      illum: Pompey, who had posed as the champion of the senate and constitutionality.

219. **confidebant: confidere,** *to trust completely (in),* may take the dat. or, as here, the ABL. OF PLACE WHERE.

220. **nostris:** refers to the senatorial party.

221. **scripseram . . . exspectabam (222):** EPISTOLARY TENSES.

224. **valde:** adv., *greatly, very much.*

225. **quae apud Corfinium sunt gesta:** i.e., Caesar's clemency in releasing without injury Pompey's troops whom he had captured at Corfinium in central Italy.

226. **libentius:** with **hoc** (ABL. OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE), *the more gladly.*

      mea sponte: abl. used as adv., *voluntarily, of my own accord.*

      constitueram: constituere, *to place, determine, decide.*

227. **me praeberem:** here, *to show myself (to be).*

      Pompeium: with **reconciliarem** *(to regain, win back).*

AD ATTICUM 8.13

Whereas only recently Caesar had been feared and Pompey revered by many Romans, now, as Cicero complains to Atticus, in less than three months since the preceding letter and Caesar's crossing of the Rubicon, the public's attitude toward both men is changing. Written from his villa at Formiae, March 1, 49 B.C.

Cicero Attico Sal.

Lippitudinis meae signum tibi sit librari manus et eadem causa brevitatis, etsi nunc quidem quod scriberem nihil erat.
210 Omnis exspectatio nostra erat in nuntiis Brundisinis. Si nactus hic esset Gnaeum nostrum, spes dubia pacis; sin ille ante transmisisset, exitiosi belli metus. Sed videsne in quem hominem inciderit res publica, quam acutum, quam vigilantem, quam paratum? Si mehercule neminem occiderit nec cuiquam quidquam
215 ademerit, ab iis qui eum maxime timuerant maxime diligetur.

Multum mecum municipales homines loquuntur, multum rusticani; nihil prorsus aliud curant nisi agros, nisi villulas, nisi nummulos suos. Et vide quam conversa res sit; illum quo antea confidebant metuunt, hunc amant quem timebant. Id quantis
220 nostris peccatis vitiisque evenerit, non possum sine molestia cogitare. Quae autem impendere putarem, scripseram ad te et iam tuas litteras exspectabam.

AD ATTICUM 9.7c

Caesar wrote the following letter to Oppius and Cornelius, two of his agents in Rome, and a copy was sent to Cicero. He will not follow the extreme course of Sulla and others, but seeks reconciliation with Pompey and the senatorial party. March 5 (?), 49 B.C.

Caesar Oppio Cornelio Sal.

Gaudeo mehercule vos significare litteris quam valde probe-
225 tis ea quae apud Corfinium sunt gesta. Consilio vestro utar libenter et hoc libentius quod mea sponte facere constitueram ut quam lenissimum me praeberem et Pompeium darem ope-

228. **temptemus . . . si possimus:** *let us try in case we should be able,* a FUT. LESS
     VIVID CONDITION equivalent to an IND. QUEST. = *let us try to see whether
     we can.*

229. **reliqui:** Cicero likely has in mind the massacres ordered by Gaius Marius
     and, certainly, the proscriptions of Lucius Cornelius Sulla, both in the
     civil wars of the 80's.

232. **liberalitate:** here, *generosity.*

236. **N. Magium:** *Numerius Magius,* one of Pompey's prefects of engineers, cap-
     tured by Caesar after Corfinium and then dispatched by him to Pompey
     with a request that the two generals meet.

     scilicet: adv., *obviously, to be sure, of course.*

237. **instituto: institutum,** *custom, practice;* Caesar had demonstrated his **clementia**
     with other captured officers.

     missum feci: = *I dismissed, released.*

     duo praefecti: Magius was one, Vibullius Rufus the other.

238. **fabrum:** = **fabrorum,** from **faber,** *smith, engineer.*

240. **mihi . . . iis:** both dat. with **amicus.**

241. **inimicissimi:** i.e., certain senators.

     artificiis: artificium, *scheme.*

244. **vellem:** *I could wish;* POTENTIAL SUBJUNCT.

     casu: here, *misfortune, distress.*

246. **ex eo . . . quod:** *from the fact that.*

247. **aliquantum:** adv., *somewhat.*

     adquievi: adquiescere, *to become quiet, rest, calm down.*

249. **adhibuisti:** here, *you showed.*

     Servius . . . tuus: i.e., Sulpicius' son.

250. **declaravit:** here, not *declared,* but *made clear, demonstrated.*

251. **faceret:** lit., *made of* = *esteemed.*

     animum: *attitude.*

253. **oratio tua:** i.e., his words.

254. **societas . . . aegritudinis:** *partnership in my grief,* almost a translation of
     Greek *sympatheia,* which literally means *suffering with another,* as does
     also eccl. Lat. **compassio.**

     auctoritas: i.e., the influence of his advice.

ram ut reconciliarem. Temptemus hoc modo si possimus om-
nium voluntates reciperare et diuturna victoria uti, quoniam re-
230 liqui crudelitate odium effugere non potuerunt neque victoriam
diutius tenere praeter unum L. Sullam, quem imitaturus non
sum. Haec nova sit ratio vincendi ut misericordia et liberalitate
nos muniamus. Id quemadmodum fieri possit, nonnulla mihi in
mentem veniunt et multa reperiri possunt. De his rebus rogo
235 vos ut cogitationem suscipiatis.

N. Magium, Pompei praefectum, deprehendi. Scilicet meo
instituto usus sum et eum statim missum feci. Iam duo praefecti
fabrum Pompei in meam potestatem venerunt et a me missi
sunt. Si volent grati esse, debebunt Pompeium hortari ut malit
240 mihi esse amicus quam iis qui et illi et mihi semper fuerunt in-
imicissimi, quorum artificiis effectum est ut res publica in hunc
statum perveniret.

AD FAMILIARES 4.6

*We have, preserved amid Cicero's correspondence (*Ad Familiares *4.5), a letter of
consolation on the death of his daughter Tullia written to him from Greece in April,
45* B.C., *by the noted jurist, orator, and politician Servius Sulpicius Rufus. In the fol-
lowing reply Cicero expresses gratitude for Servius' kindness but remarks that his
sorrow is still hard to bear, because he cannot in these times take an active role in the
political and forensic activities that might otherwise provide distraction from his grief.
Written from Atticus' villa at Ficulea, just to the east of Rome, April, 45* B.C.

M. Cicero S.D. Ser. Sulpicio

Ego vero, Servi, vellem, ut scribis, in meo gravissimo casu
245 adfuisses; quantum enim praesens me adiuvare potueris et con-
solando et prope aeque dolendo, facile ex eo intellego quod,
litteris lectis, aliquantum adquievi. Nam et ea scripsisti quae
levare luctum possent, et in me consolando non mediocrem ipse
animi dolorem adhibuisti. Servius tamen tuus omnibus officiis,
250 quae illi tempori tribui potuerunt, declaravit et quanti ipse me
faceret et quam suum talem erga me animum tibi gratum pu-
taret fore; cuius officia iucundiora scilicet saepe mihi fuerunt,
numquam tamen gratiora. Me autem non oratio tua solum et
societas paene aegritudinis sed etiam auctoritas consolatur;

256. **praeditus:** *endowed.*
259. **Q. Maximus:** *Quintus Fabius Maximus,* dictator in 217 B.C. and hero in the war against Hannibal (see Livy's "Hannibal and the Second Punic War," below); his son, consul in 213 (hence **consularem,** *ex-consul*), predeceased him.
      rebus gestis: *accomplishments.*
260. **L. Paullus:** *Lucius Aemilius Paullus,* victor over king Perseus at the battle of Pydna in 168 B.C. in the Third Macedonian War; his triumph was marred by the deaths of his two youngest sons in the same week.
      duo: sometimes, as here, used for **duos.**
261. **Gaius:** *Gaius Sulpicius Gallus,* called **vester** as a member of Servius Sulpicius' **gens,** served under Paullus at Pydna and also lost a son.
      M. Cato: *Marcus Porcius Cato,* the famous orator, politician, and censor of the early second century B.C.; four years before his own death, his son died after being elected praetor in 153.
262. **iis:** here, *such.*
      fuerunt: = **vixerunt.**
265. **ornamentis:** here, *distinctions, honors.*
266. **eram . . . adeptus: adipisci,** *to gain.*
      unum manebat illud solacium (267): under Caesar's rule, with his own political career eclipsed, Cicero's one comfort had been the love and understanding of his daughter Tullia, who died in February, 45 B.C. (at the age of 33 or 34), two months before this letter was written.
268. **procuratione: procuratio,** *management, conduct.*
      impediebantur: here, *held in check.*
      cogitationes: i.e., his grief.
269. **in foro:** i.e., *in legal practice.*
      libebat: libere, libuit, impers., *it is pleasing.*
      curiam: *senate-house;* Caesar, now dictator, had greatly diminished the role of the senate.
270. **id quod erat: id** is in appos. with the whole cl. **existimabam . . . perdidisse,** *the thing which was = as was the case.*
272. **frangerem:** *I broke = I gained control over.*
273. **ferre:** sc. **me** as subj.
      quo: adv., lit., *whither = (a person) to whom;* with **confugerem,** REL. CL. OF PURPOSE.
      ubi: here, *with whom;* **quo, ubi,** and **cuius** refer to Tullia.
276. **consanuisse: consanescere,** *to become healthy, get well, heal.*
      recrudescunt: recrudescere, *to become raw again,* continuing the metaphor in **vulnere.**
      non: modifies **possum** (275).
277. **tum:** when Tullia was still alive.
      a re publica: i.e., from the political world.
      quae levaret: = **ut ea** (i.e., **domus**) **me levaret,** REL. CL. OF PURPOSE, and cp. the parallel **ut . . . adquiescam** below.
278. **maerens: maerere,** *to grieve, lament.*
279. **in eius bonis:** i.e., *in its good fortunes.*

255   turpe enim esse existimo me non ita ferre casum meum, ut tu
tali sapientia praeditus ferendum putas. Sed opprimor interdum
et vix resisto dolori, quod ea me solacia deficiunt, quae ceteris,
quorum mihi exempla propono, simili in fortuna non defuerunt.
Nam et Q. Maximus, qui filium consularem, clarum virum et
260   magnis rebus gestis, amisit, et L. Paullus, qui duo septem die-
bus, et vester Gaius, et M. Cato, qui summo ingenio, summa
virtute filium perdidit, iis temporibus fuerunt ut eorum luctum
ipsorum dignitas consolaretur ea quam ex re publica conseque-
bantur.
265   Mihi autem amissis ornamentis iis, quae ipse commemoras,
quaeque eram maximis laboribus adeptus, unum manebat illud
solacium, quod ereptum est. Non amicorum negotiis, non rei
publicae procuratione impediebantur cogitationes meae, nihil
in foro agere libebat; aspicere curiam non poteram; existim-
270   abam, id quod erat, omnes me et industriae meae fructus et for-
tunae perdidisse. Sed, cum cogitarem haec mihi tecum et cum
quibusdam esse communia, et cum frangerem iam ipse me co-
geremque illa ferre toleranter, habebam quo confugerem, ubi
conquiescerem, cuius in sermone et suavitate omnes curas dolo-
275   resque deponerem. Nunc autem hoc tam gravi vulnere etiam
illa, quae consanuisse videbantur, recrudescunt; non enim, ut
tum me a re publica maestum domus excipiebat, quae levaret,
sic nunc domo maerens ad rem publicam confugere possum, ut
in eius bonis adquiescam. Itaque et domo absum et foro, quod

281. **domesticum:** sc. **dolorem.**
282. **quo:** ABL. OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE, with **magis** = *all the more.*
283. **ratio nulla:** *no philosophical reasoning.*
284. **consuetudinis: consuetudo,** *custom, practice, close personal relationship;* with **coniunctio,** *the association of our daily lives.*
      quamquam: conj., *although,* or at the beginning of an independent cl., as here, *however, and yet.*
      sperabam . . . audiebam (285): EPISTOLARY TENSES.
286. **cum . . . tum:** = **non solum . . . sed etiam.**
287. **ante:** adv., *in advance,* i.e., before Caesar returns from Spain, where he had just defeated Pompey's sons at Munda.
      traducendum sit (288): traducere, *to pass, spend.*
288. **unius:** namely Caesar, modified by the four following adjs.; despite his aversion to dictatorship, Cicero can recognize good qualities in Caesar, as well as the necessity of political compromise.
290. **alieni:** here, *estranged.*
      amicissimi: Caesar had pardoned Sulpicius, a former supporter of Pompey, and appointed him governor of Achaia in 46 B.C.
      magnae . . . est deliberationis (291): *it is a matter for careful consideration.*
291. **ratio:** here, *plan*—and a plan not for action but for keeping quiet and out of Caesar's way.
292. **concessu et beneficio:** *with his permission and kindness;* probably a HENDIADYS, *by his kind permission.*
293. **Basilo:** *Lucius Minucius Basilus,* a former legate of Caesar's in Gaul who apparently served with him also in the civil war, joined the conspiracy after being denied a provincial governorship following his term as praetor in 45.
294. **gratulor: gratulari,** + dat., *to congratulate;* the brevity of this letter and its intense emotionality suggest to many historians that it was written within just hours after the assassination, to which Cicero may have been an eye-witness.
295. **quid agas:** *how you are;* a friend meeting another often commenced a conversation with **"Salve! Quid agis?"**

"Julius Caesar Proceeding to the Senate on the Ides of March"
Abel de Pujol
19th century
Musée des Beaux-Arts
Valenciennes, France

280   nec eum dolorem, quem de re publica capio, domus iam conso-
lari potest nec domesticum res publica.

Cicero longs to see Servius as soon as possible.

    Quo magis te exspecto teque videre quam primum cupio;
maius mihi solacium afferre ratio nulla potest quam coniunctio
consuetudinis sermonumque nostrorum; quamquam sperabam
285   tuum adventum (sic enim audiebam) appropinquare. Ego autem
cum multis de causis te exopto quam primum videre, tum etiam
ut ante commentemur inter nos qua ratione nobis traducendum
sit hoc tempus, quod est totum ad unius voluntatem accommo-
dandum et prudentis et liberalis et, ut perspexisse videor, nec a
290   me alieni et tibi amicissimi. Quod cum ita sit, magnae tamen
est deliberationis quae ratio sit ineunda nobis non agendi ali-
quid sed illius concessu et beneficio quiescendi. Vale.

AD FAMILIARES 6.15

*Cicero's apparent willingness to seek an accommodation with Caesar, as expressed in
the preceding letter, ultimately faded with the dictator's return to Rome in Septem-
ber of 45 and what seemed his ever-growing tyranny. In the following brief note,
almost certainly written on the Ides of March, Cicero congratulates one of Caesar's
assassins on the deed and, though not one of the conspirators himself nor even invited
to participate, he declares both his satisfaction and his support. Written in Rome,
March 15, 44 B.C.*

Cicero Basilo S.

    Tibi gratulor, mihi gaudeo; te amo, tua tueor; a te amari et,
295   quid agas quidque agatur, certior fieri volo.

296. **Cassio:** *Gaius Cassius Longinus,* a former Pompeian who had been pardoned and given a praetorship by Caesar, nonetheless joined with Marcus Junius Brutus as one of the leaders in the assassination plot; he committed suicide in 42 B.C. after being defeated by Marc Antony's forces in the first battle at Philippi.

297. **laetor: laetari,** *to be glad.*
       tibi: DAT. OF REF.
       orationem meam (298): the so-called "First Philippic," delivered September 2, 44 B.C., was the first of a series of vehement speeches delivered by Cicero against Antony that ultimately cost the orator his life; 14 of the speeches survive and at least three others have been lost.

298. **negoti:** PARTITIVE GEN. with **nihil,** = *it would not be difficult (to).*

299. **reciperare:** also spelled **recuperare,** *to regain.*
       homo amens: Marc Antony; Cicero used even harsher invective in his public denunciations of Antony, particularly in the acerbic Second Phillipic.

300. **nequior:** comparative of **nequam,** indecl. adj., *worthless, good for nothing, wicked.*
       ille: i.e., Caesar.
       nequissimum occisum esse (301): i.e., *was the wickedest man* (ever) *slain.*

301. **caedis: caedes,** *slaughter.*

302. **criminatur: criminari,** *to charge;* the charge was made by Antony following Cicero's First Philippic.
       nisi . . . incitentur (303): explains the **causam.**

303. **veterani:** Caesar's.

304. **modo:** here = **si modo,** *if only,* or **dummodo,** *provided that,* + subjunct.
       communicet: communicare, *to join.*

305. **Pisoni . . . mihi . . . Servilio (306):** each depends on **licet.** *L. Calpurnius Piso,* Caesar's father-in-law (see note on line 89 above), had been a political enemy of Cicero but, after Caesar's assassination, shared in his opposition to Antony; *Publius Servilius Isauricus,* consul with Caesar in 48, also initially opposed Antony, though the two subsequently reconciled.
       invectus est: invehere, *to carry against;* pass., *to be carried against, inveigh against.*
       nullo adsentiente: i.e., without anyone else at that time supporting him in his opposition to Antony **(eum).**

306. **tricensimo: trice(n)simus,** *thirtieth;* Piso spoke against Antony in early August, and Cicero delivered his First Philippic on September 2.

307. **tuto:** adv., *safely.*
       gladiator: an insulting term for Antony.

308. **eius:** sc. **caedis.**
       a. d. XIII Kal. Octobr.: ante diem tertium decimum Kalendas Octobres, *the 13th day before the Kalends of October* = September 19.
       a me: *from me* = *with me.*

AD FAMILIARES 12.2 (excerpts)

The assassination of Caesar has not restored the republic, Cicero laments, because Antony has taken over the state and is proving himself even worse than Caesar. Cicero has hope in the tyrannicides and professes in this letter his loyalty to Cassius, one of the leaders in the conspiracy against Caesar and the resistance to Antony and Octavian. September or October, 44 B.C.

Cicero Cassio S.

Vehementer laetor tibi probari sententiam et orationem meam; qua si saepius uti liceret, nihil esset negoti libertatem et rem publicam reciperare. Sed homo amens et perditus mul-
300   toque nequior quam ille ipse, quem tu nequissimum occisum esse dixisti, caedis initium quaerit nullamque aliam ob causam me auctorem fuisse Caesaris interficiendi criminatur, nisi ut in me veterani incitentur: quod ego periculum non extimesco, modo vestri facti gloriam cum mea laude communicet. Ita nec
305   Pisoni, qui in eum primus invectus est nullo adsentiente, nec mihi, qui idem tricensimo post die feci, nec P. Servilio, qui me est consecutus, tuto in senatum venire licet: caedem enim gladiator quaerit eiusque initium a. d. XIII Kal. Octobr. a me se fac-

"Death of Julius Caesar"
Vincenzo Camuccini, 19th century
Museo Nazionale di Capodimente, Naples, Italy

309. **ad quem:** sc. **diem,** *on which day.*
      venerat: sc. **in senatum.**
      Metelli: *Quintus Caecilius Metellus Pius Scipio,* consul in 52 and a leading
           Pompeian; after the defeat of his army and his death at the Battle of
           Thapsus, his property, including a villa at Tibur, was confiscated.
310. **complures:** *several;* in another of Cicero's letters (*Ad Atticum* 16.2) we are
           told that Antony practiced his speech against Cicero for 17 days.
311. **lustris: lustrum,** *den, brothel, debauchery.*
312. **vomere:** Cicero uses the same grotesque image in the Philippics.
      suo more (313): a slur on both his oratorical skills and his drinking habits.
313. **quod scribis:** *as regards your writing (that).*
314. **profici: proficere,** *to accomplish.*
      non nihil: = **aliquid;** common in Cicero, like **non numquam** for **interdum.**
      ut in tantis malis (315): lit., *as in such great evils* = *considering the grim situ-
           ation.*
316. **consulares:** i.e., Cicero, Piso, Servilius as mentioned above.
317. **locuti sint . . . possint:** subjunct. in SUBORDINATE CLS. IN IND. STATE.
318. **vobis:** Cassius, Brutus, and their supporters.
      aliquid . . . gloria: i.e., action against Antony.
      velim: sc. **ut vos id faciatis.**
319. **salvis nobis:** *while I am safe* (i.e., still alive). Cicero's wish, of course, was
           never realized, as he became a victim of the proscriptions, assassinated
           at Antony's order on December 7, 43 B.C., just over a year after the
           composition of this letter and several months before the defeat of Cas-
           sius and Brutus at Philippi.
      minus: = **non;** sc. **erit.** No matter what happens to Cicero, he is confident
           that the republic will soon be restored by Cassius and his followers.
320. **tuis:** sc. **amicis.**
321. **sive . . . sive:** conj., *whether . . . or.*
      ad me referent: *report (matters) to me* = *consult me.*

turum putavit, ad quem paratus venerat, cum in villa Metelli
310 complures dies commentatus esset.

Quae autem in lustris et in vino commentatio potuit esse?
Itaque omnibus est visus, ut ad te antea scripsi, vomere suo
more, non dicere. Quare, quod scribis te confidere auctoritate et
eloquentia nostra aliquid profici posse, non nihil, ut in tantis
315 malis, est profectum: intellegit enim populus Romanus tres esse
consulares, qui, quia quae de re publica bene senserint libere
locuti sint, tuto in senatum venire non possint. Quare spes est
omnis in vobis; si aliquid dignum vestra gloria cogitatis, velim
salvis nobis; sin id minus, res tamen publica per vos brevi tem-
320 pore ius suum reciperabit. Ego tuis neque desum neque deero:
qui sive ad me referent sive non referent, mea tibi benevolentia
fidesque praestabitur. Vale.

"Banquet of Anthony and Cleopatra"
Francesco Trevisani, 18th century
Galleria Spada, Rome, Italy

CICERO'S *PHILOSOPHICA:*
"ON MORAL RESPONSIBILITIES" AND
"ON FRIENDSHIP"

Throughout his life Cicero was deeply interested in philosophy, and he studied in Rome and Greece, both as a young man in his 20's and later in life, with some of the leading Stoic, Epicurean, and Academic philosophers of his day. Partly as a consequence of this interest and partly due to his growing disenchantment with the political strife in Rome, Cicero ultimately turned to writing on a wide range of philosophical topics. Prior to his governorship in Cilicia he published, in 55 B.C., the *De Oratore,* one of several important works he authored on rhetoric, and, a few years later, the *De Republica* and the *De Legibus,* political treatises on the ideal state and laws, both much influenced by Stoicism.

Following his proconsulship in Cilicia, Cicero returned to a Rome on the brink of civil war. Soon, in despair over the demise of the Roman republic during the dictatorship of Julius Caesar, and grief-stricken over the death of his daughter Tullia in early 45, Cicero again turned to writing, rapidly producing between February 45 and November 44 a number of works on philosophy, ethics, and theology, with the purpose of translating and transforming much of Greek thought for a Roman audience. Dating to this period are: the *De Finibus Bonorum et Malorum,* a treatise on ethics and the various theories of the *summum bonum*—what man should regard as the highest good in life; the *Tusculanae Disputationes,* an exploration of death, fear, and the passions, and what can bring man happiness; and three religious tracts, the *De Natura Deorum, De Divinatione,* and *De Fato,* dealing with differing views of the gods, the validity of divination, and the divine role in human life.

The last of Cicero's *philosophica,* the *Cato Maior de Senectute,* a discussion and consolation on old age, *Laelius de Amicitia,* and the *De Officiis,* were among his most popular and influential works during the Middle Ages and remain favorites today. In addressing his prefatory remarks in the *De Amicitia* to his close friend Titus Pomponius Atticus, Cicero makes it clear that he wishes the whole essay to be a tribute to their life-long friendship. This purpose Cicero accomplishes by representing the intellectual Gaius Laelius engaged in a discourse on friendship soon after the death in 129 B.C. of Laelius' dearest friend, Scipio the Younger (Publius Cornelius Scipio Aemilianus). Laelius delivers the

discourse in the framework of a conversation with his two sons-in-law, Gaius Fannius and Quintus Mucius Scaevola (the famous augur and jurist, whom Cicero had known when he was himself a very young man). The excerpts included in this volume explore, inter alia, the origin, nature, and benefits of friendship.

The *De Officiis* ("On Moral Responsibilities"), begun some months after Caesar's assassination on the Ides of March 44 B.C. and completed in November of that same year, was dedicated by Cicero to his son, Marcus, then a somewhat irresponsible 21-year-old studying philosophy in Athens. The treatise's three volumes were based closely upon a work by the second-century Greek philosopher, Panaetius of Rhodes, in which he discussed the nature of morally responsible action, an issue of interest to Cicero both intellectually and from the perspective of his ongoing political conflict with Mark Antony in the wake of Caesar's death. Despite evidence of haste, this practical moral work provides interesting, instructive reading and, like "On Friendship," has earned much praise. Among the selections included here are excerpts from Book One on the origin of morality and the cardinal virtues of wisdom, justice, courage, and moderation, and from Book Three on the conflict between moral right and expediency, a problem that still confronts us today.

A conversation among philosophers
Roman mosaic from Pompeii, 1st century A.D.
Museo Archeologico Nazionale, Naples, Italy

1. **quamquam:** conj., *although.*

    te . . . abundare oportet (2): *you should be well equipped* (lit., *overflowing with*).

    annum: Cicero's son had gone to study in Athens in April or May of 45 B.C.

    audientem: *hearing the lectures of, studying under.*

    Cratippum: *Cratippus* was a well known Athenian philosopher of the day and a friend of Cicero's.

2. **idque:** *and that too.*

    institutis: institutum, *custom, institution, instruction, principle.*

3. **summam:** with **auctoritatem;** Cicero frequently separates adj. from noun, here for emphasis.

    urbis: Athens, though it had become politically insignificant, was still venerated as an intellectual capital.

4. **augere:** *increase, enlarge.*

5. **Latina:** n. acc. pl., *Latin matters, Latin studies.*

7. **censeo: censere,** *to estimate, think, advise.*

8. **orationis:** here = *speech, language;* all educated Romans of this period were bilingual.

    quam ob rem: lit., *on account of this fact;* common in Cicero for *wherefore, therefore.*

10. **illis:** i.e., Cicero's speeches; the philosophical works were almost as numerous.

    aequarunt: = **aequaverunt;** shortened forms of the perf. tense, dropping the **v** and often the following vowel, were common, especially with first conj. vbs.

11. **statuissem: statuere,** *to put, place, decide, determine.*

12. **ordiri:** *to begin, commence.*

    aetati: the younger Cicero was 21 at the time this treatise was written.

13. **sint:** with **disputata,** from **disputare,** *to discuss, examine;* perf. pass. vb. forms were frequently separated in this way.

15. **patere:** *lie open, extend,* and hence *apply.*

17. **forensibus: forensis,** *of the forum, public, forensic.*

18. **contrahas:** *negotiate with, deal with.*

19. **officio:** cp. the abl. with **careo.**

    et . . . et (20): the conjs. imply fully coordinating phrases, i.e., **et in eo colendo omnis honestas sita est et in eo neglegendo omnis turpitudo sita est;** this sort of parallelism and ellipsis are quite common in Cicero.

    sita: *placed, situated.*

    honestas: *honor, virtue, worth;* not *honesty,* which is rather **probitas, fides.**

21. **nullis . . . tradendis (22):** ABL. OF ATTENDANT CIRCUMSTANCE; *in giving no instructions* = *if he gives no instructions.*

22. **philosophum:** OBJ. COMPL.

23. **potissimum:** adv., *chiefly;* Cicero was himself an Academic and did not always subscribe to Stoic doctrine.

    Stoicos: many Romans found the Stoic emphasis on **virtus** and character very attractive.

DE OFFICIIS

The value of studying philosophy and learning both Greek and Latin.

Quamquam te, Marce fili, annum iam audientem Cratip-
pum, idque Athenis, abundare oportet praeceptis institutisque
philosophiae propter summam et doctoris auctoritatem et urbis,
quorum alter te scientia augere potest, altera exemplis, tamen,
5 ut ipse ad meam utilitatem semper cum Graecis Latina con-
iunxi—neque id in philosophia solum sed etiam in dicendi exer-
citatione feci—idem tibi censeo faciendum ut par sis in utri-
usque orationis facultate. Quam ob rem magnopere te hortor,
mi Cicero, ut non solum orationes meas sed hos etiam de philo-
10 sophia libros, qui iam illis fere se aequarunt, studiose legas.
(I.1–3, excerpts)

The importance of moral duties is paramount, as the Stoics have shown.

Sed cum statuissem scribere ad te aliquid hoc tempore
(multa posthac), ab eo ordiri maxime volui quod et aetati tuae
esset aptissimum et auctoritati meae. Nam cum multa sint in
philosophia et gravia et utilia accurate copioseque a philosophis
15 disputata, latissime patere videntur ea quae de officiis tradita
ab illis et praecepta sunt. Nulla enim vitae pars—neque publicis
neque privatis neque forensibus neque domesticis in rebus, neque
si tecum agas quid neque si cum altero contrahas—vacare
officio potest; in eoque et colendo sita vitae est honestas omnis
20 et neglegendo turpitudo. Atque haec quidem quaestio commu-
nis est omnium philosophorum; quis est enim qui, nullis officii
praeceptis tradendis, philosophum se audeat dicere? Sequemur
hoc quidem tempore et hac in quaestione potissimum Stoicos.
(I.4–6, excerpts)

25.   **Panaetio:** *Panaetius* of Rhodes was one of the foremost proponents of Sto-
         icism in the second century B.C., and his works were an important source
         for the arguments Cicero employs in the *De Officiis.*
       praetermissum esse (26): praetermittere, *to pass over, omit, neglect.*
27.   **institutio:** *education, instruction, teaching.*
29.   **finem bonorum:** *the end, goal, summit of good things* = *the summum bonum.*
         This is the theory; the **alterum genus** provides the practical rules of con-
         duct by which to implement the theory.
30.   **in omnis partes:** *in all directions*
       usus: *practice, management, conduct.*
       conformari: conformare, *to shape, mold, fashion.*
32.   **principio:** *in the first place* (i.e., at the beginning of our discussion).
       animantium: animans, *living being, creature, animal.*
33.   **est . . . tributum: tribuere,** *to assign, ascribe, attribute, give.*
34.   **tueatur: tueri,** *to look at, protect.*
       nocitura: the fut. act. partic. can have the meaning of *likely to . . ..*
35.   **anquirat: anquirere,** *to seek, search after.*
       pastum: pastus, *food.*
36.   **latibula: latibulum,** *hiding place, shelter.*
       commune: commune should agree with **appetitus,** but the n. ending makes the
         adj. essentially a pred. noun, *a common thing, characteristic.*
       item: adv., *also, likewise.*
39.   **beluam: belua,** *beast.*
       hoc . . . interest, quod (40): *this makes a difference, (the fact) that . . ..*
40.   **haec:** i.e., **belua.**
       tantum quantum: adv., *only to the extent that.*
41.   **paulum admodum (42):** *very little.*
42.   **praeteritum aut futurum:** an awareness of *past* and *future,* vs. only the present,
         was viewed as a major distinction between man and beast.
       quod . . . futuras (46): the thought is simply that, through his faculty of rea-
         son, man can understand the concatenation of cause and effect and can
         govern himself accordingly.
44.   **praegressus: praegressus, -us,** *previous development, antecedent.*
       antecessiones: *antecedent (causes).*
45.   **similitudines comparat:** i.e., *makes analogies.*
46.   **adnectit: adnectere,** *to connect, associate.*
47.   **degendam:** from **de + agere.**
49.   **societatem:** here, *community, common bond.*
       in primis (50): = **imprimis,** adv., *particularly, especially.*
50.   **praecipuum:** *especial, peculiar, distinguished.*
51.   **impellitque ut . . . velit (52):** *drives (man) to want.*
       coetus et celebrationes: *meetings and assemblies;* subj. of both **esse** and **obiri.**
52.   **obiri:** *to be visited, attended.*
       suppeditent ad (53): *are sufficient for.*
53.   **cultum et . . . victum: cultus** refers to culture and refinement in living; **victus**
         refers to food and the other necessities of life.
       coniugi: coniunx, *wife.*

The need to define terms.

25

30

Placet igitur, quoniam omnis disputatio de officio futura est, ante definire quid sit officium (quod a Panaetio praetermissum esse miror). Omnis enim, quae ratione suscipitur de aliqua re, institutio debet a definitione proficisci ut intellegatur quid sit id de quo disputetur. Omnis de officio duplex est quaestio: unum genus est quod pertinet ad finem bonorum; alterum, quod positum est in praeceptis quibus in omnis partes usus vitae conformari possit. (I.7)

Origin of the concepts of right, morality, and virtue.

35

(a) Self-preservation and procreation. Principio, generi animantium omni est a natura tributum ut se, vitam, corpusque tueatur, declinet ea quae nocitura videantur, omniaque quae sint ad vivendum necessaria anquirat et paret, ut pastum, ut latibula, ut alia generis eiusdem. Commune item animantium omnium est coniunctionis appetitus procreandi causa et cura quaedam eorum quae procreata sint.

40

45

(b) Reason. Sed inter hominem et beluam hoc maxime interest, quod haec, tantum quantum sensu movetur, ad id solum quod adest quodque praesens est se accommodat, paulum admodum sentiens praeteritum aut futurum; homo autem—quod rationis est particeps, per quam consequentia cernit, causas rerum videt earumque praegressus et quasi antecessiones non ignorat, similitudines comparat rebusque praesentibus adiungit atque adnectit futuras—facile totius vitae cursum videt ad eamque degendam praeparat res necessarias.

50

(c) Society. Eademque natura vi rationis hominem conciliat homini et ad orationis et ad vitae societatem, ingeneratque in primis praecipuum quendam amorem in eos qui procreati sunt impellitque ut hominum coetus et celebrationes et esse et a se obiri velit ob easque causas studeat parare ea quae suppeditent ad cultum et ad victum, nec sibi soli sed coniugi, liberis, cete-

54. **quae cura:** the antecedent of a rel. pron. is often attracted into the rel. cl., = *and this concern* (referring to the preceding cl.).
     exsuscitat: exsuscitare, *to arouse.*
55. **maiores:** sc. **eos** (i.e., **animos**); OBJ. COMPL.
56. **propria:** *appropriate (to), characteristic (of).*
58. **avemus: avere,** *to wish, be eager.*
59. **occultarum aut admirabilium:** i.e., the mysteries or miracles of science.
61. **sit:** subjunct. in a SUBORDINATE (REL.) CL. IN IND. STATE.
63. **principatus: principatus, -us,** *preeminence, rule, independence.*
64. **informatus:** for this metaphor of molding or shaping the intellect, cp. **conformari** (31).
     praecipienti: practically synonymous with **docenti,** whereas **imperanti** is specifically political.
     utilitatis . . . legitime (65): a ruler must keep in mind both what is useful and what is just and legal.
66. **humanarum . . . rerum:** the insignificant matters of life, as the Stoics saw it.
67. **nec . . . est:** i.e., **nec illa vis** (here, *manifestation*) **naturae rationisque est parva;** with the **quod** cl. in appos., *nor is that . . . a slight thing, the fact that.*
68. **quid sit quod deceat (69): decet,** impers., *is decorous, appropriate, decent;* i.e., what (moral and aesthetic) propriety is.
69. **qui modus:** sc. **sit; modus** here = *moderation.*
71. **venustatem: venustas,** *charm, loveliness.*
     convenientiam: lit., *coming together,* here = *harmony.*
     quam similitudinem: *this resemblance,* i.e., the resemblance of the physical world to the spiritual world.
72. **natura ratioque:** the two are regarded as a single concept (= that which makes man distinctly different from other animals), and so they are modified by the sg. **transferens** and serve as the subj. of the sg. **putat, cavet,** etc.
     multo: ABL. OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE with **magis.**
73. **constantiam:** *consistency, constancy.*
74. **conservanda:** sc. **esse;** n. pl. to modify collectively the three subjs. of the IND. STATE.
     cavet: cavere, *to beware, be careful (to),* regularly takes a JUSSIVE NOUN CL.
75. **tum:** here, *and at the same time, and also.*
76. **libidinose:** adv., *impulsively, capriciously.*
78. **conflatur: conflare,** *to blow together, forge.*
     quaerimus: here, *investigate, inquire into.*
     honestum . . . honestum (79): we here have first **id honestum** (n. as a noun) meaning *virtue, moral excellence,* and then **honestum** (adj.), *honorable, proper;* cp. Cicero's comment in *De Finibus* II.45, **honestum igitur id intellegimus quod tale est ut, detracta omni utilitate sine ullis praemiis fructibusve per se ipsum possit iure laudari.**
79. **nobilitatum . . . sit: nobilitare,** *to make famous* (i.e., praised by the multitude); cp. **nobilis,** *well known.*
82. **ut ait Plato (83):** the Greek philosopher Plato makes a similar point in *Phaedrus* 250D.

55 risque quos caros habeat tuerique debeat; quae cura exsuscitat
etiam animos et maiores ad rem gerendam facit.

(d) Truth. In primisque hominis est propria veri inquisitio
atque investigatio. Itaque cum sumus necessariis negotiis cur-
isque vacui, tum avemus aliquid videre, audire, addiscere cog-
nitionemque rerum aut occultarum aut admirabilium ad beate
60 vivendum necessariam ducimus. Ex quo intellegitur quod verum,
simplex, sincerumque sit, id esse naturae hominis aptissimum.

(e) Independence. Huic veri videndi cupiditati adiuncta est
appetitio quaedam principatus, ut nemini parere animus bene
informatus a natura velit nisi praecipienti aut docenti aut uti-
65 litatis causa iuste et legitime imperanti; ex quo magnitudo animi
existit humanarumque rerum contemptio.

(f) Beauty and harmony. Nec vero illa parva vis naturae est
rationisque, quod unum hoc animal sentit quid sit ordo, quid sit
quod deceat, in factis dictisque qui modus. Itaque eorum ips-
70 orum quae aspectu sentiuntur, nullum aliud animal pulchritudi-
nem, venustatem, convenientiam partium sentit. Quam simili-
tudinem natura ratioque ab oculis ad animum transferens multo
etiam magis pulchritudinem, constantiam, ordinem in consiliis
factisque conservanda putat cavetque ne quid indecore effemi-
75 nateve faciat, tum in omnibus et opinionibus et factis ne quid
libidinose aut faciat aut cogitet.

(g) Hence the concept of moral excellence. Quibus ex rebus
conflatur et efficitur id, quod quaerimus, honestum, quod eti-
amsi nobilitatum non sit, tamen honestum sit, quodque vere
80 dicimus, etiamsi a nullo laudetur, natura esse laudabile. (I.11–14)

The four cardinal virtues: wisdom, justice, courage, temperance.

Formam quidem ipsam, Marce fili, et tamquam faciem hon-
esti vides, "Quae si oculis cerneretur, mirabiles amores," ut ait
Plato, "excitaret sapientiae." Sed omne quod est honestum, id

84.   **quattuor partium:** *of four sources;* in Greek thought there were four cardinal virtues, which Cicero translates as **sapientia (prudentia), iustitia, fortitudo,** and **temperantia,** and generally defines in the following list.
      perspicientia: *clear perception.*
85.   **sollertia:** *skillful mastery, intellectual development.*
      versatur: *is engaged in, concerned with.*
86.   **tribuendo . . . cuique:** i.e., in respecting the rights of others.
      fide: i.e., *the faithful observation (of).*
87.   **excelsi:** *lofty, noble.*
      invicti: *unconquered,* and therefore *unconquerable.*
      robore: robur, *oak,* and therefore *strength.*
89.   **modestia:** *moderation, restraint.*
90.   **locis:** here, *topics, divisions.*
92.   **attingit: attingere = ad + tangere.**
93.   **pulchrum:** n. pred. adj. to agree with **excellere,** *we think it (is) admirable to excel;* the same construction is found in the next cl.
95.   **genere:** *kind (of activity).*
97.   **temere:** adv., *rashly, heedlessly.*
      quod vitium: see on **quae cura** (54).
98.   **adhibebit: adhibere,** *to hold to, apply, devote.*
99.   **quod:** *the fact that,* introducing a noun cl.; *the other fault is the fact that.*
104. **fonte: fons,** *fountain, spring, source;* this sent. effectively closes out the discussion of intellect.
106. **reliquis:** sc. *virtues, divisions.*
      latissime patet ea ratio: lit., *that principle extends most widely;* i.e., *the principle with the widest application is the one (by which).*
107. **continetur:** *is maintained.*
109. **beneficentia:** *beneficence, charity.*
110. **eandem: idem** can often be translated *likewise* or *also.*
      benignitatem: benignitas, *kindness.*
112. **munus:** essentially = **officium,** *duty, function.*
113. **communibus pro communibus (114):** i.e., the various resources that are free to the members of a community are to be used for the equal benefit of all.
114. **utatur:** the subj. is supplied from **quis** in the preceding cl.
      ut: *as,* balancing **pro** in the preceding phrase; the distinction is between public and private property.
      fundamentum: with **iustitiae.**
115. **dictorum: dictum,** n. of the perf. partic. used as a noun.
      conventorum: conventum, *agreement, pact.*

quattuor partium oritur ex aliqua: (1) aut enim in perspicientia
85   veri sollertiaque versatur, (2) aut in hominum societate tuenda
tribuendoque suum cuique et rerum contractarum fide, (3) aut
in animi excelsi atque invicti magnitudine ac robore, (4) aut in
omnium quae fiunt quaeque dicuntur ordine et modo, in quo
inest modestia et temperantia. (I.15)

Wisdom.

90   Ex quattuor autem locis in quos honesti naturam vimque
divisimus, primus ille, qui in veri cognitione consistit, maxime
naturam attingit humanam. Omnes enim trahimur et ducimur
ad cognitionis et scientiae cupiditatem, in qua excellere pulch-
rum putamus; labi autem, errare, nescire, decipi et malum et
95   turpe ducimus. In hoc genere et naturali et honesto duo vitia
vitanda sunt: unum, ne incognita pro cognitis habeamus hisque
temere assentiamur; quod vitium effugere qui volet (omnes
autem velle debent), adhibebit ad considerandas res et tempus et
diligentiam. Alterum est vitium quod quidam nimis magnum
100 studium multamque operam in res obscuras atque difficiles con-
ferunt easdemque non necessarias. Omnis autem cogitatio mo-
tusque animi aut in consiliis capiendis de rebus honestis et per-
tinentibus ad bene beateque vivendum aut in studiis scientiae
cognitionisque versabitur. Ac de primo quidem officii fonte dixi-
105 mus. (I.18–19, excerpts)

Justice.

        De tribus autem reliquis latissime patet ea ratio qua societas
hominum inter ipsos et vitae quasi communitas continetur,
cuius partes duae sunt: iustitia, in qua virtutis splendor est max-
imus, ex qua viri boni nominantur, et huic coniuncta benefi-
110 centia, quam eandem vel benignitatem vel liberalitatem appel-
lari licet.
        (a) Justice proper. Sed iustitiae primum munus est ut ne cui
quis noceat nisi lacessitus iniuria, deinde ut communibus pro
communibus utatur, privatis ut suis. Fundamentum autem est
115 iustitiae fides, id est dictorum conventorumque constantia et
veritas.

117.   **unum:** sc. **est.**
118.   **inferunt:** sc. **iniuriam.**
         quibus: dat.
119.   **propulsant: propulsare,** *to repel, ward off.*
         impetum: impetus, *attack.*
         quempiam: quispiam, *someone.*
121.   **obsistit: obsistere** + dat., *to stand in the way, withstand, resist.*
122.   **in vitio:** cp. Eng. "at fault."
123.   **deserat: deserere,** *to desert, abandon.*
125.   **de industria:** *on purpose, intentionally.*
127.   **incommodo: incommodum,** *inconvenience, harm.*
         maximam . . . partem: *for the most part.*
128.   **adipiscantur: adipisci,** *to obtain, acquire.*
129.   **latissime patet:** cp. 106 above; here, *exercises the strongest influence.*
130.   **interest:** the subj. of the impers. vb. is the double IND. QUEST. introduced by
         utrum . . . an.
131.   **plerumque:** adv., *for the most part, generally.*
         consulto et cogitate: *intentionally and deliberately.*
132.   **repentino:** *sudden.*
133.   **accidunt: accidere,** *to happen.*
134.   **vetant: vetare,** *to forbid, veto.*
         quicquam: quisquam, quidquam (=quicquam), *anyone, anything.*
         quod: introduces a REL. CL. OF CHARACTERISTIC **(dubites)** and at the same time
             provides the subj. for **sit** (IND. QUEST.); freely, *when you are uncertain
             whether it is right or wrong.*
135.   **aequitas:** *fairness = justice.*
137.   **incidunt: incidere,** *to happen, occur.*
140.   **referri:** *to be carried back = to go back, return.*
142.   **ne cui noceatur:** impers. pass., common with certain intransitive vbs. (cp.
             serviatur in the next cl.); lit., *that it not be harmed to anyone = that no
             one be harmed.*
143.   **cum:** *when.*
146.   **calumnia:** *deceit, chicanery.*
         malitiosa: *malicious.*
147.   **summum . . . iniuria:** as A. Dyck explains, **ius** here refers to "rights over oth-
             ers (conferred by the law)," and so the proverb meant that one party's
             "right pushed to the maximum . . . is an **iniuria** for the other party."
         tritum: *well-worn, familiar, commonly used.*
148.   **genere:** *sort (of injustice).*
         in re publica: i.e., at the national and international level and not just in pri-
             vate actions.
149.   **ille qui:** the allusion is to the Spartan king Cleomenes III in the campaign
             against Argos.
150.   **indutiae:** only in pl., *truce.*
         populabatur: populari, *to plunder, devastate.*

(b) Injustice. Iniustitiae genera duo sunt, unum eorum qui inferunt; alterum eorum qui ab iis quibus infertur, si possunt, non propulsant iniuriam. Nam qui iniuste impetum in quem-
120 piam facit aut ira aut aliqua perturbatione incitatus, is quasi manus afferre videtur socio; qui autem non defendit nec obsistit, si potest, iniuriae, tam est in vitio quam si parentes aut patriam deserat.

(c) Motives for injustice. Atque illae quidem iniuriae quae
125 nocendi causa de industria inferuntur, saepe a metu proficiscuntur, cum is qui nocere alteri cogitat timet ne, nisi id fecerit, ipse aliquo afficiatur incommodo. Maximam autem partem ad iniuriam faciendam aggrediuntur ut adipiscantur ea quae concupiverunt; in quo vitio latissime patet avaritia. Sed in omni
130 iniustitia permultum interest utrum perturbatione aliqua animi, quae plerumque brevis est et ad tempus, an consulto et cogitate fiat iniuria. Leviora enim sunt ea quae repentino aliquo motu accidunt quam ea quae meditata et praeparata inferuntur. Bene praecipiunt qui vetant quicquam agere quod dubites aequum sit
135 an iniquum. Aequitas lucet ipsa per se; dubitatio cogitationem significat iniuriae. (I.20–30, excerpts)

(d) Justice in special cases: (1) Promises. Sed incidunt saepe tempora cum ea quae maxime videntur digna esse iusto homine, eoque quem virum bonum dicimus, commutantur fiuntque con-
140 traria, ut reddere depositum, facere promissum. Referri enim decet ad ea quae posui principio fundamenta iustitiae—primum ut ne cui noceatur, deinde ut communi utilitati serviatur. Ea cum tempore commutantur, commutatur officium, et non semper est idem. Nec promissa igitur servanda sunt ea quae sint
145 iis, quibus promiseris, inutilia. Exsistunt etiam saepe iniuriae calumnia quadam et callida sed malitiosa iuris interpretatione. Ex quo illud "Summum ius summa iniuria" factum est iam tritum sermone proverbium. Quo in genere etiam in re publica multa peccantur, ut ille qui, cum triginta dierum essent cum
150 hoste indutiae factae, noctu populabatur agros, quod dierum

151. **essent pactae: paciscere,** *to arrange, negotiate, agree upon;* SUBJUNCT. OF
     QUOTED REASON.
     noster: i.e., a fellow Roman, vs. the Greek Cleomenes.
152. **Q. Fabium Labeonem:** *Quintus Fabius Labeo,* consul in 183 B.C.; subj. of **locu-**
     tum (esse) in the IND. STATE. dependent on **verum est.**
     seu: = **sive,** *or if, or.*
153. **auditum:** *hearsay.*
     Nolanis . . . finibus (155): Labeo was appointed to arbitrate a border dispute
     between Nola and Naples.
154. **datum:** simply a partic. here, *appointed.*
155. **appetenter:** adv. from **ad+petens,** *greedily.*
156. **aliquantum:** *a good deal.*
159. **decipere:** used as a pred. noun, *this is deception (cheating).*
160. **quocirca:** adv., *therefore.*
     sollertia: here, *trickery, chicanery.*
163. **haud scio an (164):** *I do not know whether* = *I am inclined to think.*
164. **eum . . . paenitere: paenitet,** impers., takes as dir. obj. the repentant person
     (**eum**) and a gen. of that of which he repents (**iniuriae**); thus, lit., *that it*
     repent him of his injury = *that he be repentant for his injury.*
     lacessierit: = **lacessiverit;** intervocalic **v** was often dropped in such perf. sys-
     tem forms.
165. **ne quid tale:** sc. **faciat.**
166. **in re publica:** i.e., in international affairs (cp. 148 above).
168. **ut:** introduces **censuit** (171).
     Regulus: *Marcus Atilius Regulus,* consul in 267 and 256 B.C. and a general in
     the First Punic War; the story briefly told here was a favorite example
     of Roman **fides.**
169. **Poenis: Poeni,** *Carthaginians.*
     commutandis: commutare, *to exchange;* having been captured along with
     other Romans, Regulus was sent to Rome to see whether the Romans
     would ransom those held by the Carthaginians. In a meeting of the sen-
     ate Regulus argued against the ransom of himself and his fellow cap-
     tives, and then, loyal to his oath, returned voluntarily to Carthage and
     to certain death (see below, lines 448–69).
     iurasset: = **iuravisset** (see on **aequarunt,** 10).
171. **propinquis: propinquus,** *kinsman, relative.*
173. **fallere:** *to deceive, be false to, violate.*
174. **meminerimus:** JUSSIVE SUBJUNCT. of the defective vb. **meminisse,** *let us re-*
     member.
175. **infimos:** *the lowest, basest* (superlative of **inferus**).
176. **quibus:** = **et eis,** abl. with **uti.**
     qui . . . mercennariis (177): = **qui iubent uti quibus** (= **servis**) **ita ut mercennar-**
     iis *(hired men, employees).*
177. **operam exigendam:** sc. **esse,** *(saying that) service ought to be . . ..*
     iusta: *their just deserts,* e.g., food, clothing, shelter.
179. **elatio:** *exaltation.*
180. **iustitia:** ABL. OF SEPARATION with **vacat.**

essent pactae, non noctium indutiae. Ne noster quidem proban-
dus, si verum est Q. Fabium Labeonem seu quem alium (nihil
enim habeo praeter auditum) arbitrum Nolanis et Neapolitanis
de finibus a senatu datum, cum ad locum venisset, cum utrisque
155   separatim locutum ne cupide quid agerent, ne appetenter, atque
ut regredi quam progredi mallent. Id cum utrique fecissent, ali-
quantum agri in medio relictum est. Itaque illorum finis sic, ut
ipsi dixerant, terminavit; in medio relictum quod erat, populo
Romano adiudicavit. Decipere hoc quidem est, non iudicare.
160   Quocirca in omni est re fugienda talis sollertia.

(2) Duties in war and toward the enemy. Sunt autem quae-
dam officia etiam adversus eos servanda a quibus iniuriam ac-
ceperis. Est enim ulciscendi et puniendi modus; atque haud scio
an satis sit eum qui lacessierit iniuriae suae paenitere, ut et ipse
165   ne quid tale posthac et ceteri sint ad iniuriam tardiores. Atque
in re publica maxime conservanda sunt iura belli. Etiam si quid
singuli, temporibus adducti, hosti promiserunt, est in eo ipso
fides conservanda, ut primo Punico bello Regulus, captus a
Poenis, cum de captivis commutandis Romam missus esset iu-
170   rassetque se rediturum, primum, ut venit, captivos reddendos in
senatu non censuit, deinde, cum retineretur a propinquis et ab
amicis, ad supplicium redire maluit quam fidem hosti datam
fallere.

(3) Justice toward slaves. Meminerimus autem etiam adver-
175   sus infimos iustitiam esse servandam. Est autem infima con-
dicio et fortuna servorum, quibus non male praecipiunt qui ita
iubent uti ut mercennariis: operam exigendam, iusta prae-
benda. (I.31–41, excerpts)

Physical and moral courage.

(a) Courage must be based on justice. Ea animi elatio, quae
180   cernitur in periculis et laboribus, si iustitia vacat pugnatque non

181.　**commodis: commodum,** *convenience, advantage.*
　　　in vitio: = **vitiosa.**
182.　**consecutus est: consequi,** *to follow, pursue, gain.*
183.　**adeptus: adipisci,** *to acquire, obtain.*
184.　**illud:** *that (remark).*
185.　**calliditas:** *cunning, cleverness.*
189.　**concupieris:** = **concupiveris,** in the indef. 2nd pers. sg., *you* or *one.*
190.　**quo . . . praeclarius (191):** *the more difficult (it is), the more admirable* (lit., *by what . . . by this);* ABL. OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE.
191.　**tempus:** here, *occasion.*
195.　**positum:** pred. adj. agreeing with **honestum illud.**
　　　principem: i.e., *foremost;* the truly magnanimous person prefers moral action to the mere appearance of morality.
198.　**despicientia:** *contempt (of), indifference (to).*
199.　**persuasum est:** impers. pass.; lit., *it has been persuaded* = *a person has been persuaded.*
　　　nihil . . . succumbere (202): the infs. are subjs. of the impers. vb. **oportere,** which in turn is subj. of **persuasum est,** i.e., **oportere** *(it is necessary)* **hominem admirari (optare, expetere) nihil nisi quod . . . sit** and **(oportere hominem) succumbere nulli homini neque perturbationi nec fortunae.**
204.　**ut . . . geras:** RESULT CL., dependent on **altera est res,** *the other characteristic is such (that).*
　　　cum . . . animo: i.e., when one has true greatness of spirit.
206.　**cum . . . tum:** *not only . . . but also.*
207.　**ea . . . parva ducere (208):** *to regard those things . . . as trivial;* this inf. and **ea . . . contemnere** are the subjs. of **ducendum est,** *should be considered.*
　　　plerisque: plerique, pl., *the majority, most people.*
209.　**fortis animi:** *(characteristic) of a brave mind,* PRED. GEN. OF POSSESSION; for the construction, cp. **robusti . . . constantiae (207)** and **angusti . . . parvi (212).**
210.　**versantur:** lit., *are turned* = *are encountered.*
211.　**nihil:** = a strong **non.**
213.　**non est . . . consentaneum:** *it is not consistent (for)* + acc./inf.
214.　**frangatur: frangere,** *to break, shatter, subdue.*
215.　**a labore . . . a voluptate:** ABL. OF AGENT, with the abstract nouns personified.

Herm of Plato
Museo Pio Clementino
Vatican Museums
Vatican State
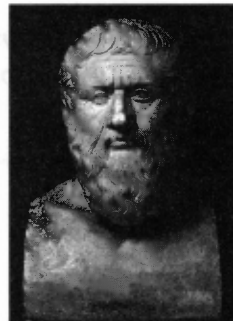
pro salute communi, sed pro suis commodis, in vitio est. Quocirca nemo qui fortitudinis gloriam consecutus est insidiis et malitia laudem est adeptus; nihil enim honestum esse potest quod iustitia vacat. Praeclarum igitur illud Platonis: "Non," in-
185 quit, "solum scientia quae est remota ab iustitia calliditas potius quam sapientia est appellanda, verum etiam animus paratus ad periculum, si sua cupiditate, non utilitate communi, impellitur, audaciae potius nomen habeat quam fortitudinis." Difficile autem est, cum praestare omnibus concupieris, servare aequita-
190 tem, quae est iustitiae maxime propria. Sed quo difficilius, hoc praeclarius; nullum enim est tempus quod iustitia vacare debeat. Fortes igitur et magnanimi sunt habendi, non qui faciunt, sed qui propulsant, iniuriam. Vera autem et sapiens animi magnitudo honestum illud, quod maxime natura sequitur, in factis
195 positum non in gloria iudicat, principemque se esse mavult quam videri. (I.62–65, excerpts)

(b) Two characteristics of courage: (1) Indifference to external circumstance. Omnino fortis animus et magnus duabus rebus maxime cernitur, quarum una in rerum externarum despicientia ponitur, cum persuasum est nihil hominem, nisi quod honestum
200 decorumque sit, aut admirari aut optare aut expetere oportere nullique neque homini neque perturbationi animi nec fortunae succumbere.

(2) Readiness to do the useful but dangerous. Altera est res ut, cum ita sis affectus animo ut supra dixi, res geras magnas
205 illas quidem et maxime utiles sed vehementer arduas plenasque laborum et periculorum cum vitae, tum multarum rerum quae ad vitam pertinent. Nam et ea, quae eximia plerisque et praeclara videntur, parva ducere eaque ratione stabili firmaque contemnere fortis animi magnique ducendum est, et ea quae videntur
210 acerba, quae multa et varia in hominum vita fortunaque versantur, ita ferre ut nihil a statu naturae discedas, nihil a dignitate sapientis, robusti animi est magnaeque constantiae.

(c) Courage to resist excessive desires. Non est autem consentaneum, qui metu non frangatur, eum frangi cupiditate nec,
215 qui invictum se a labore praestiterit, vinci a voluptate. Quam ob rem et haec vitanda et pecuniae fugienda cupiditas; nihil enim est tam angusti animi tamque parvi quam amare divitias, nihil

219.   **conferre:** here, *to devote.*
221.   **vacandum ... est:** impers. pass., *one must be free from.*
222.   **aegritudine: aegritudo,** *illness, sorrow, pain.*
227.   **quaecumque: quicumque,** *whoever, whatever.*
       obliti: *heedless (of);* **oblivisci,** + gen., *to forget.*
230.   **tutela:** *protection, guardianship.*
       procuratio: *administration.*
234.   **populares:** the *populares,* or reform party, and the conservative "optimates"
       (**studiosi optimi cuiusque,** lit., *partisans of each best man*) were the two
       major political factions in Cicero's day.
235   **universorum:** *of all (the citizens) together.*
       hinc: i.e., from partisanship and the selfish use of power.
       apud Athenienses: the allusion is to the civil discord in Athens during the
       Peloponnesian War and afterward.
237.   **bella civilia:** those of Marius and Sulla, Caesar and Pompey. In fact, the ugly
       situation continued after Cicero's death at the battles of Philippi and
       Actium, until Augustus finally established the Pax Romana. Vergil, Hor-
       ace, and many other Romans became heartily weary of civil war and
       were grateful to see Augustus embody many of the ideals expressed by
       Cicero here.
239.   **consectabitur: consectari,** *to pursue, strive after.*
240.   **criminibus: crimen,** *charge, accusation.*
242.   **adhaerescet: adhaerescere,** *to stick to, cling to.*
243.   **offendat: offendere,** *to suffer grief.*
       oppetat: oppetere, *to encounter.*
246.   **ad:** *according to.*
       superbiam: superbia, *pride, insolence.*
247.   **fastidium:** *haughtiness, disdain.*
248.   **levitatis: levitas;** PRED. GEN., *(a sign) of weakness.*
       praeclara: though agreeing with **aequabilitas** *(equability, serenity),* this is
       pred. adj. with **vultus** and **frons** as well.
250.   **Socrate ... Laelio:** *Socrates* was known for his moderation and calm in the
       face of adversity, as was the Roman consul (in 140 B.C.) and intellectual
       Gaius Laelius; a member of the so-called "Scipionic Circle," Laelius was
       a friend of the Stoic philosopher Panaetius of Rhodes, whose treatise
       On Duty was a major influence on Cicero's *De Officiis.*
251.   **sequitur ut:** + subjunct., a common idiom for *it remains that . . .* or *what
       comes next is that . . ..*
252.   **verecundia:** *respect, reverence, modesty, propriety.*
       ornatus: *embellishment.*
       temperantia: *self-control, restraint, avoidance of excess, temperance.*

honestius magnificentiusque quam pecuniam contemnere, si non habeas, si habeas ad beneficentiam liberalitatemque conferre.

220 Cavenda etiam est gloriae cupiditas, ut supra dixi; eripit enim libertatem. Vacandum autem omni est animi perturbatione, cum cupiditate et metu, tum etiam aegritudine et voluptate nimia et iracundia ut tranquillitas animi et securitas adsit, quae affert cum constantiam, tum etiam dignitatem. (I.66–69, excerpts)

(d) Political leaders should serve the interests of state and not
225 *merely those of self or party.* Omnino qui rei publicae praefuturi sunt, duo Platonis praecepta teneant: unum, ut utilitatem civium sic tueantur ut, quaecumque agunt, ad eam referant, obliti commodorum suorum; alterum, ut totum corpus rei publicae curent, ne, dum partem aliquam tuentur, reliquas deserant. Ut
230 enim tutela, sic procuratio rei publicae ad eorum utilitatem qui commissi sunt, non ad eorum quibus commissa est, gerenda est. Qui autem parti civium consulunt, partem neglegunt, rem perniciosissimam in civitatem inducunt, seditionem atque discordiam; ex quo evenit ut alii populares, alii studiosi optimi cui-
235 usque videantur, pauci universorum. Hinc apud Athenienses magnae discordiae, in nostra re publica non solum seditiones, sed etiam pestifera bella civilia; quae gravis et fortis civis et in re publica dignus principatu fugiet atque oderit, tradetque se totum rei publicae, neque opes aut potentiam consectabitur, to-
240 tamque eam sic tuebitur ut omnibus consulat. Nec vero criminibus falsis in odium aut invidiam quemque vocabit, omninoque ita iustitiae honestatique adhaerescet ut, dum ea conservet, quamvis graviter offendat mortemque oppetat potius quam deserat illa quae dixi. (I.85–86)

245 *(e) Arrogance and flattery are to be avoided.* Atque etiam in rebus prosperis et ad voluntatem nostram fluentibus, superbiam magnopere, fastidium, arrogantiamque fugiamus. Nam ut adversas res, sic secundas immoderate ferre levitatis est, praeclaraque est aequabilitas in omni vita et idem semper vultus eademque
250 frons, ut de Socrate idemque de C. Laelio accepimus. (I.90)

Moderation and self-control.

Sequitur ut de una reliqua parte honestatis dicendum sit, in qua verecundia et, quasi quidam ornatus vitae, temperantia et

254. **hoc loco:** *under this heading.*
       decorum: *decorum, propriety, that which is fitting;* cp. **decet,** *it is fitting, proper, becoming, decent.*
255. **vis:** *force, essence.*
       ea: = **talis,** pred. adj.
       queat: = **possit;** from **queo, quire,** defective vb. found chiefly in pres.
259. **hac parte honestatis (260):** i.e., moderation.
260. **disserendum est:** impers. pass. from **disserere,** *to discuss.*
       tribus superioribus (261): wisdom, justice, courage, the other three cardinal virtues, each of which is briefly touched upon below in connection with this discussion of proper and decorous behavior.
261. **uti:** this and the three infs. following are subjs. of **decet.**
264. **mente esse captum:** lit., *to have been seized in (respect to) the mind* = *to be insane, mad.*
266. **ratio fortitudinis:** i.e., *the reasoning in the case of courage.*
270. **huc et illuc:** *here and there, in one direction and another.*
272. **obtemperet: obtemperare,** *to obey, submit.*
274. **agere:** dependent on **debet,** but supply **quisquam** *(anybody)* as subj.
       probabilem: *commendable, acceptable.*
275. **descriptio:** *definition.*
276. **oboediant: oboedire,** *to listen to, obey.*
277. **pigritiam: pigritia,** *laziness, indolence.*
       ignaviam: ignavia, *listlessness.*
       sintque: sc. **homines** as subj.
279. **appetitus:** with **ii,** antecedent of **qui** but incorporated into the rel. cl., *those appetites which.*
       evagantur: evagari, *to wander, spread.*
285. **gestiunt: gestire,** *to exult, be excited.*
286. **status:** *state (of mind), attitude.*
287. **illud:** the following inf. phrases are in appos., *that is understood, the fact that all appetites . . ..*
       formam: *outline, description.*
288. **contrahendos: contrahere,** *to contract, control.*
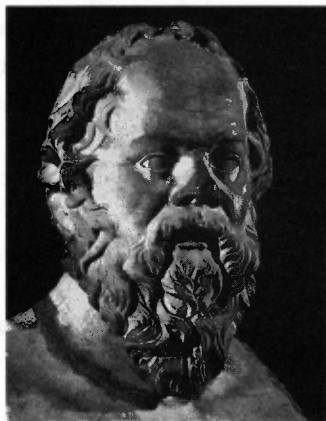
Socrates
Copy of a 4th century
B.C. original by Lysippus
Louvre
Paris, France

modestia omnisque sedatio perturbationum animi et rerum mo-
dus cernitur. Hoc loco continetur id quod dici Latine decorum
255 potest. Huius vis ea est ut ab honesto non queat separari; nam
et quod decet honestum est, et quod honestum est decet. Qualis
autem differentia sit honesti et decori facilius intellegi quam ex-
planari potest. Quidquid est enim quod deceat, id tum apparet
cum antegressa est honestas. Itaque non solum in hac parte
260 honestatis de qua hoc loco disserendum est, sed etiam in tribus
superioribus quid deceat apparet. Nam et ratione uti atque ora-
tione prudenter, et agere quod agas considerate, omnique in re
quid sit veri videre et tueri decet; contraque falli, errare, labi,
decipi tam dedecet quam delirare et mente esse captum; et iusta
265 omnia decora sunt, iniusta contra, ut turpia, sic indecora. Simi-
lis est ratio fortitudinis. Quod enim viriliter animoque magno
fit, id dignum viro et decorum videtur, quod contra, id ut turpe,
sic indecorum. (I.93–94, excerpts)

*(a) The dual nature of the soul: (1) appetite; (2) reason, to
govern the appetites.* Duplex est enim vis animorum atque na-
270 tura: una pars in appetitu posita est, quae hominem huc et illuc
rapit; altera, in ratione, quae docet et explanat quid faciendum
fugiendumque sit. Ita fit ut ratio praesit, appetitus obtemperet.
Omnis autem actio vacare debet temeritate et neglegentia, nec
vero agere quidquam cuius non possit causam probabilem red-
275 dere; haec est enim fere descriptio officii. Efficiendum autem est
ut appetitus rationi oboediant eamque neque praecurrant nec
propter pigritiam aut ignaviam deserant, sintque tranquilli
atque omni animi perturbatione careant; ex quo elucebit omnis
constantia omnisque moderatio. Nam qui appetitus longius eva-
280 gantur et tamquam exultantes non satis a ratione retinentur, ii
sine dubio finem et modum transeunt; relinquunt enim et abici-
unt oboedientiam nec rationi parent, cui sunt subiecti lege natu-
rae; a quibus non modo animi perturbantur sed etiam corpora.
Licet ora ipsa cernere iratorum aut eorum qui aut libidine ali-
285 qua aut metu commoti sunt aut voluptate nimia gestiunt; quo-
rum omnium vultus, voces, motus, statusque mutantur. Ex
quibus illud intellegitur (ut ad officii formam revertamur) appe-
titus omnes contrahendos sedandosque esse excitandamque di-

293. **quo:** ABL. OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE.
294. **animadvertatur: animadvertere,** *to notice, consider;* here impers., *that it should be observed.*
296. **postulet: postulare,** *to demand, require, request.*
297. **liberalem:** *gentlemanly, befitting a free man.*
      speciem: species, *appearance*
298. **modus:** here, *rule, method* (for accomplishing all this).
      decus: a variant for **decorum.**
299. **praestantissimum: praestans,** *excellent, important.*
301. **species:** here, *specious form.*
      utilitatis: here, *advantage, expediency*
      commoveri: sc. **nos,** *for us to be greatly moved, affected.*
302. **attenderis:** sc. **ad eam,** *you give your attention to it.*
304. **intellegendum:** sc. **est;** impers. pass.
306. **celandi et occultandi:** from **celare** and **occultare;** both mean *to hide, conceal* (here, one's actions).
      opinio: here, *thought, expectation.*
307. **nobis . . . persuasum esse debet (308):** impers. pass.; lit., *it ought to have been persuaded to us = we should have been persuaded.*
      profecimus: proficere, *to gain, accomplish.*
308. **celare:** here, *to hide from, escape the attention of.*
      nihil . . . nihil (309): ANAPHORA (repetition) and ASYNDETON (omission of conjunctions) add emphasis to the point.
309. **incontinenter:** adv., *immoderately, intemperately.*
311. **hinc:** i.e., for purposes of illustrating this point.
312. **Gyges:** king of Lydia in the 7th cent. B.C.; antecedent of **qui.**
      a Platone: in Book II of the *Republic.*
      discessisset: *had gone apart = had opened up.*
313. **imbribus: imber,** *violent rain, storm;* ABL. OF CAUSE.
      hiatum: hiatus, *opening, gap.*
      aeneum: *bronze.*
314. **lateribus: latus,** *side.*
      fores: foris, *door,* usually pl. referring to *folding doors.*
316. **invisitata:** *not seen = unusual.*
      anulum: anulus, *ring.*
317. **induit: induere,** *to put on.*
      pastor: *shepherd.*
      se . . . recepit (318): *he took himself,* i.e., *he went.*
318. **palam: pala,** *bezel, mounted gem* (of a ring).
319. **rursus:** adv., *again.*
321. **stuprum:** *dishonor, (illicit) sexual intercourse;* with **intulit** (+ dat.) = *he seduced.*
      adiutrice: adiutrix, *assistant,* here, *accomplice;* ABL. ABS.
322. **interemit: interimere,** *to kill.*

ligentiam ut ne quid temere ac fortuito, inconsiderate neglegen-
290　terque agamus. (I.101–03, excerpts)

*(b) In every action three tenets should be observed: (1) re-
straint of appetites, (2) proportion, (3) moderation.* In omni
autem actione suscipienda tria sunt tenenda: primum ut appe-
titus rationi pareat, quo nihil est ad officia conservanda accom-
modatius; deinde ut animadvertatur quanta illa res sit quam
295　efficere velimus, ut neve maior neve minor cura et opera suscipi-
atur quam causa postulet; tertium est ut caveamus ut ea, quae
pertinent ad liberalem speciem et dignitatem, moderata sint.
Modus autem est optimus decus ipsum tenere, de quo ante dixi-
mus, nec progredi longius. Horum tamen trium praestantissi-
300　mum est appetitum obtemperare rationi. (I.141)

Expediency and moral right.

Cum igitur aliqua species utilitatis obiecta est, commoveri
necesse est; sed si, cum animum attenderis, turpitudinem videas
adiunctam ei rei quae speciem utilitatis attulerit, tum non uti-
litas relinquenda est, sed intellegendum, ubi turpitudo sit, ibi
305　utilitatem esse non posse. Atque etiam ex omni deliberatione
celandi et occultandi spes opinioque removenda est. Satis enim
nobis, si modo in philosophia aliquid profecimus, persuasum
esse debet, si omnes deos hominesque celare possimus, nihil ta-
men avare, nihil iniuste, nihil libidinose, nihil incontinenter
310　esse faciendum.

Illustrated by Plato's story about the ring of Gyges. Hinc ille
Gyges inducitur a Platone, qui, cum terra discessisset magnis
quibusdam imbribus, descendit in illum hiatum aeneumque
equum, ut ferunt fabulae, animadvertit, cuius in lateribus fores
315　essent. Quibus apertis, corpus hominis mortui vidit magnitud-
ine invisitata anulumque aureum in digito; quem ut detraxit,
ipse induit (erat autem regius pastor), tum in concilium se pas-
torum recepit. Ibi cum palam eius anuli ad palmam converterat,
a nullo videbatur, ipse autem omnia videbat; idem rursus vide-
320　batur, cum in locum anulum inverterat. Itaque, hac opportuni-
tate anuli usus, reginae stuprum intulit; eaque adiutrice, regem
dominum interemit, sustulit quos obstare arbitrabatur, nec in

323. **facinoribus: facinus,** *deed, misdeed, crime.*
324. **exortus est: exoriri,** *to arise, rise (to become), emerge (as).*
327. **bonis viris:** DAT. OF REF., with somewhat more emotional force than the more factual ABL. OF AGENT, *in the case of good men.*
328. **hoc loco:** here, *on this point.*
        philosophi quidam: possibly an allusion to the Epicureans, who would assert that one should avoid immoral or criminal acts simply in order to avoid punishment or the other consequences of having one's misdeeds discovered.
329. **fictam: fingere,** *to mold, fashion, imagine.*
        commenticiam: *invented, fictitious.*
330. **quasi . . . defendat (331):** CL. OF IMAGINED COMPARISON.
335. **negant . . . posse:** i.e., that an immoral act can be concealed from both men and gods.
336. **quidnam: quisnam, quidnam,** interrog. pron., *who/what in the world.*
337. **tamquam . . . adhibemus (338):** *we are, so to speak, applying.*
338. **tormenta: tormentum,** *an instrument of torture.*
340. **omnia . . . concedant:** i.e., they would have to concede Cicero's (and the Stoics') point.
341. **incidunt: incidere,** *to happen, occur.*
        causae: here, *cases, situations.*
342. **hoc:** explained by the appos. cl. (an IND. QUEST.) **relinquendane . . . magnitudinem.**
344. **illud:** parallel to **hoc,** i.e., **cum illud deliberetur,** explained by the cl. **possitne . . . turpiter.**
346. **Collatino collegae:** DAT. OF SEPARATION; Lucius Tarquinius Collatinus was one of the Roman republic's first two consuls, along with his colleague, Lucius Junius Brutus, who led the uprising against the city's last king, Tarquinius Superbus.
        imperium abrogabat (347): *was taking away the imperium,* which was the supreme power of command possessed by the consuls.
349. **consilium hoc:** explained by the following appos. inf. phrase.
        cognationem: *family, kindred.*
351. **quod:** the antecedent is **id.**
354. **in:** *in the case of.*
356. **solum:** sc. **se,** subj. of **regnare.**
        fratrem: Remus; for the story, see Livy's account in "Legends of Early Rome," below.

his eum facinoribus quisquam potuit videre. Sic repente, anuli beneficio, rex exortus est Lydiae.

325   *The point of the story.* Hunc igitur ipsum anulum si habeat sapiens, nihilo plus sibi licere putet peccare, quam si non habe- ret; honesta enim bonis viris, non occulta quaeruntur. Atque hoc loco philosophi quidam, minime mali illi quidem, sed non satis acuti, fictam et commenticiam fabulam prolatam dicunt a

330   Platone—quasi vero ille aut factum id esse aut fieri potuisse defendat! Haec est vis huius anuli et huius exempli: si nemo sciturus, nemo ne suspicaturus quidem sit, cum aliquid diviti- arum, potentiae, dominationis, libidinis causa feceris, si id dis hominibusque futurum sit semper ignotum, sisne facturus?

335   Negant id fieri posse. Sed quaero, quod negant posse, id si pos- set, quidnam facerent. Cum enim quaerimus si celare possint, quid facturi sint, non quaerimus possintne celare, sed tamquam tormenta quaedam adhibemus ut, si responderint se impunitate proposita facturos quod expediat, facinorosos se esse fateantur,

340   si negent, omnia turpia per se ipsa fugienda esse concedant. (III.35–39, excerpts)

Some examples of expediency vs. justice.

Incidunt multae saepe causae quae conturbent animos uti- litatis specie, non, cum hoc deliberetur—relinquendane sit ho- nestas propter utilitatis magnitudinem (nam id quidem impro- bum est)—sed illud—possitne id quod utile videatur fieri non

345   turpiter.
Brutus and Collatinus. Cum Collatino collegae Brutus impe- rium abrogabat, poterat videri facere id iniuste; fuerat enim in regibus expellendis socius Bruti consiliorum et adiutor. Cum autem consilium hoc principes cepissent—cognationem Su-

350   perbi nomenque Tarquiniorum et memoriam regni esse tollen- dam—quod erat utile, patriae consulere, id erat ita honestum ut etiam ipsi Collatino placere deberet. Itaque utilitas valuit propter honestatem, sine qua ne utilitas quidem esse potuisset.
Romulus. At in eo rege qui urbem condidit non item; species

355   enim utilitatis animum pepulit eius; cui cum visum esset utilius solum quam cum altero regnare, fratrem interemit. Omisit hic

357. **pietatem: pietas,** *loyalty, devotion* (to family and friends, to country, to the gods).

358. **muri causam:** *the excuse of the wall* (over which Remus is said to have leaped to show his scorn of Romulus' modest fortifications on the Palatine).

360. **pace ... Quirini:** lit., *with the peace of Quirinus* = *with all due respect to Quirinus* (the name given to Romulus after his death and deification).

      dixerim: POTENTIAL SUBJUNCT., *I would say.*

362. **suae cuique utilitati ... serviendum est (363):** lit., *it should be served by each person to his own advantage.*

363. **quod ... fiat:** REL. CL. OF CHARACTERISTIC, with the antecedent implied in the main cl., *whatever may be done, as far as one may do.*

364. **scite:** adv., *cleverly.*

      Chrysippus ut multa ... inquit: = **Chrysippus inquit ut multa dicit,** i.e., in his colorful, vivid language. Chrysippus (ca. 280–207 B.C.), head of the Stoic school after Zeno and Cleanthes, was famous for his systematization of Stoic doctrine.

      stadium: *a race in the stadium.*

      eniti: *to struggle.*

365. **supplantare:** *to trip up.*

366. **certet: certare,** *to struggle, contend, compete.*

369. **illa:** sc. **exempla sunt.**

371. **cum ... tum:** *not only ... but also;* Latin is fond of stating the general idea first and then following with a specific example.

372. **Cannensi: Cannensis,** *at Cannae,* a town in Apulia where, during the second Punic war in 216 B.C. the Romans suffered a calamitous loss at the hands of Hannibal; see Livy's account in "Hannibal and the Second Punic War," below.

376. **impetum:** the allusion is to the battle of Thermopylae in 480 B.C., which the Greeks lost to the invading Persians and their king Xerxes but which was made famous by the heroic stand and death of the Spartan king Leonidas and his men.

378. **Troezene:** loc.; *Troezen,* an old city across the Saronic Gulf southwest of Athens.

      conscenderent: conscendere, *to ascend, go on board.*

379. **classe: classis,** *fleet, navy;* the Greeks did in fact defeat the Persians at sea at the decisive battle of Salamis in 480 B.C. under the leadership of the Athenian commander Themistocles.

      Cyrsilum: *Cyrsilus,* an otherwise unknown Athenian.

381. **lapidibus: lapis,** *stone, rock.*

      videbatur: i.e., **sibi.**

384. **contione: contio,** *assembly* (convened especially to hear a speech by a magistrate).

385. **salutare: salutaris,** *healthful, advantageous.*

      sciri: i.e., publicly; inf. subj. of the impers. **opus esse,** *to be necessary.*

et pietatem et humanitatem ut id, quod utile videbatur neque
erat, assequi posset; et tamen muri causam opposuit, speciem
honestatis nec probabilem nec sane idoneam. Peccavit igitur—
360   pace vel Quirini vel Romuli, dixerim.

In the stadium. Nec tamen nostrae nobis utilitates omitten-
dae sunt aliisque tradendae, cum iis ipsis egeamus, sed suae
cuique utilitati, quod sine alterius iniuria fiat, serviendum est.
Scite Chrysippus ut multa, "Qui stadium," inquit, "currit, eniti
365   et contendere debet quam maxime possit, ut vincat; supplantare
eum quocum certet aut manu depellere nullo modo debet. Sic
in vita sibi quemque petere quod pertineat ad usum non ini-
quum est, alteri deripere ius non est." (III.40–42)

In the Second Punic War. Illa praeclara in quibus publicae
370   utilitatis species prae honestate contemnitur. Plena exemplorum
est nostra res publica cum saepe, tum maxime bello Punico se-
cundo; quae, Cannensi calamitate accepta, maiores animos ha-
buit quam umquam rebus secundis: nulla timoris significatio,
nulla mentio pacis. Tanta vis est honesti ut speciem utilitatis ob-
375   scuret.

The Athenians in 480 B.C. Athenienses cum Persarum im-
petum nullo modo possent sustinere statuerentque ut urbe re-
licta, coniugibus et liberis Troezene depositis, naves conscen-
derent libertatemque Graeciae classe defenderent, Cyrsilum
380   quendam, suadentem ut in urbe manerent Xerxemque reci-
perent, lapidibus obruerunt. At ille utilitatem sequi videbatur;
sed ea nulla erat, repugnante honestate.

Themistocles and Aristides. Themistocles, post victoriam eius
belli quod cum Persis fuit, dixit in contione se habere consilium
385   rei publicae salutare, sed id sciri non opus esse; postulavit ut

Chrysippus
3rd century B.C.
Louvre
Paris, France
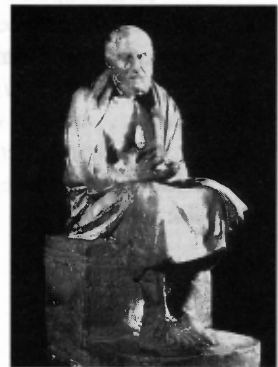
386. **quicum:** = **quocum.**
      Aristides: an Athenian statesman so famous for his incorruptibility that he
         was called "the Just."
387. **ille:** sc. **dixit.**
      Lacedaemoniorum: *Laecdaemonians, Spartans,* with whom the Athenians
         were in conflict.
      subducta esset . . . esset (389): SUBORDINATE CLS. IN IND. STATE.
388. **Gytheum:** *Gytheum,* a Spartan port.
      quo facto: ABL. ABS.
389. **necesse esset:** impers.; here, *it was inevitable.*
390. **exspectatione:** i.e., of all the people; ABL. OF ATTENDANT CIRCUMSTANCE.
      perutile: note the force of the prefix.
393. **auctore Aristide (394):** i.e., at his instigation.
395. **id:** i.e., the issue of the conflict between expediency and moral action.
      alias: adv., *at another time, other times.*
      Pyrrhi: *Pyrrhus,* king of the Greek state of Epirus, championed the Greek
         cities of southern Italy against Roman imperialism; after victories
         against Rome in 280 and 279 B.C., in which he won the battles but lost
         large numbers of his own soldiers (giving us the term "Pyrrhic victory"),
         he ultimately lost the war and withdrew from Italy.
396. **C. Fabricio:** *Gaius Fabricius Luscinus,* consul in 282 and 278 B.C. and censor
         in 275, became for the Romans an example of frugality and incorrupt-
         ibility.
      iterum: i.e., *for the second time.*
      iudicatum est (397): *was decided.*
397. **ultro:** adv., *voluntarily, without provocation.*
398. **certamen:** *contest, struggle, fight.*
      generoso: *noble.*
399. **perfuga:** *deserter.*
      est pollicitus: polliceri, *to promise.*
400. **ut:** *just as;* with this meaning **ut** ordinarily takes the indic., but here the vb.
         is subjunct. in a SUBORDINATE CL. IN IND. STATE.
401. **rediturum et . . . necaturum:** sc. **esse.**
403. **si . . . quaerimus . . . sustulisset (405):** MIXED CONDITION, with a past contrary
         to fact apodosis following a simple pres. protasis.
406. **quicum:** the antecedent is **eum;** for the form, see above on line 386.
      eum . . . superatum (407): sc. **esse;** inf. phrase with **flagitium fuisset,** *it would
         have been a disgrace for him . . ..*
407. **utrum . . . utilius:** sc. **erat;** with **armis . . . certare an venenis** in 409–10, *which
         (of the two actions) was more expedient, to contend . . ..*
409. **seiunxit: seiungere,** *to separate.*
411. **sin:** conj., *but if.*

aliquem populus daret quicum communicaret. Datus est Aris-
tides. Huic ille classem Lacedaemoniorum quae subducta esset
ad Gytheum clam incendi posse, quo facto frangi Lacedaemo-
niorum opes necesse esset. Quod Aristides cum audisset, in con-
390 tionem magna exspectatione venit dixitque perutile esse consi-
lium quod Themistocles adferret, sed minime honestum. Itaque
Athenienses, quod honestum non esset, id ne utile quidem pu-
taverunt totamque eam rem, quam ne audierant quidem, auc-
tore Aristide repudiaverunt. (III.47–49)

395   *Fabricius and Pyrrhus.* Id quidem cum saepe alias, tum Pyr-
rhi bello a C. Fabricio consule iterum et a senatu nostro iudica-
tum est. Cum enim rex Pyrrhus populo Romano bellum ultro
intulisset, cumque de imperio certamen esset cum rege generoso
ac potenti, perfuga ab eo venit in castra Fabricii eique est polli-
400 citus, si praemium sibi proposuisset, se, ut clam venisset, sic clam
in Pyrrhi castra rediturum et eum veneno necaturum. Hunc
Fabricius reducendum curavit ad Pyrrhum idque eius factum
laudatum a senatu est. Atqui, si speciem utilitatis opinionemque
quaerimus, magnum illud bellum perfuga unus et gravem ad-
405 versarium imperii sustulisset, sed magnum dedecus et flagitium
fuisset, quicum laudis certamen fuisset, eum non virtute sed
scelere superatum. Utrum igitur utilius vel Fabricio, qui talis in
hac urbe qualis Aristides Athenis fuit, vel senatui nostro, qui
numquam utilitatem a dignitate seiunxit, armis cum hoste cer-
410 tare an venenis? Si gloriae causa imperium expetendum est,
scelus absit, in quo non potest esse gloria; sin ipsae opes expe-
tuntur quoquo modo, non poterunt utiles esse cum infamia.

Themistocles
Museo Archeologico Nazionale
Naples, Italy

413.   **L. Philippi Q. f.:** = **Luci Philippi Quinti fili,** *of Lucius Philippus the son of Quintus.*

414.   **sententia:** *opinion, proposal,* i.e., **ut . . . redderemus.**
       quas civitates: the antecedent is incorporated into its rel. cl. = **eae civitates quas.**
       L. Sulla: *Lucius Cornelius Sulla,* conservative military and political rival of Gaius Marius and finally, in 82–79 B.C., dictator.
       pecunia accepta: i.e., after a lump-sum payment to Rome's treasury.
       ex: *in accordance with.*

415.   **vectigales:** vectigalis, *tributary, liable to taxes* **(vectigal).**

417.   **est adsensus:** adsentiri, *to agree with, assent to.*

418.   **at . . . igitur:** an imagined objection to Cicero's point.
       quousque: adv., *how far, how long.*

420.   **fultum esse:** fulcire, *to prop up, support.*

421.   **odium et infamia:** **potest** and **utile** agree with **odium,** the nearer of the two subjs.

424.   **Sol:** i.e., *Apollo,* here in his role as god of the sun.

426.   **currum:** currus, *chariot.*
       constitit: here, *stood firmly* (on the ground).

427.   **ictu:** ictus, *blow, stroke.*
       fulminis: fulmen, *lightning, thunderbolt.*
       deflagravit: deflagrare, *to destroy by fire* or, here, *be destroyed by fire.*
       fuerat: for the more usual contrary to fact **fuisset,** *it would have been.*
       promissum . . . non esse servatum (428): *for the promise . . .,* subj. of **fuerat.**

429.   **quid quod:** *what of the fact that.*
       Theseus: the legendary hero and king of early Athens. As a special favorite, Theseus had received from Neptune the promise to fulfill any three requests which Theseus might make of him; when Theseus wrongly suspected Hippolytus, his son, of having an affair with his wife Phaedra, he prayed for his son's death.

431.   **interitum:** interitus, *destruction, ruin.*
       patri: DAT. OF AGENT.

432.   **noverca:** *stepmother.*
       impetrato: impetrare, *to obtain, gain, accomplish, succeed in a request.*
       luctibus: luctus, *grief, sorrow.*

434.   **Agamemnon:** the commander of the Greek forces in the Trojan war, Agamemnon sacrificed his daughter Iphigenia to Diana to atone for a crime and thus gain favorable winds for his expedition to Troy.

435.   **devovisset:** devovere, *to vow, consecrate.*
       Dianae: *Diana* (the Greek Artemis), goddess of the hunt.

436.   **immolavit:** immolare, *to sacrifice.*
       qua: ABL. OF COMPARISON.

438.   **taetrum:** taeter, *hideous, offensive.*

Even Romans can err. Non igitur utilis illa L. Philippi Q. f. sententia, quas civitates L. Sulla pecunia accepta ex senatus
415   consulto liberavisset, ut eae rursus vectigales essent neque iis pecuniam, quam pro libertate dederant, redderemus. Ei senatus est adsensus. Turpe imperio! Piratarum enim melior fides quam senatus. "At aucta vectigalia, utile igitur." Quousque audebunt dicere quidquam utile quod non honestum? Potest autem ulli
420   imperio, quod gloria debet fultum esse et benevolentia sociorum, utile esse odium et infamia? (III.86–88)

Promises may be broken when inexpedient for those to whom they have been made.

Ac ne illa quidem promissa servanda sunt quae non sunt iis ipsis utilia quibus illa promiseris.
The case of Phaethon. Sol Phaethonti filio (ut redeamus ad
425   fabulas) facturum se esse dixit quidquid optasset; optavit ut in currum patris tolleretur; sublatus est. Atque is, antequam constitit, ictu fulminis deflagravit. Quanto melius fuerat in hoc promissum patris non esse servatum!
Theseus and Hippolytus. Quid quod Theseus exegit promis-
430   sum a Neptuno? Cui cum tres optationes Neptunus dedisset, optavit interitum Hippolyti filii, cum is patri suspectus esset de noverca. Quo optato impetrato, Theseus in maximis fuit luctibus.
Agamemnon and Iphigenia. Quid quod Agamemnon, cum
435   devovisset Dianae quod in suo regno pulcherrimum natum esset illo anno, immolavit Iphigeniam, qua nihil erat eo quidem anno natum pulchrius? Promissum potius non faciendum quam tam taetrum facinus admittendum fuit.

"Phaedra and Hippolytus"
Pierre N. Guerin, 1802
Louvre, Paris, France

439. **facienda:** sc. **est;** here, *should be kept.*
440. **non numquam:** *not never = sometimes.*
      deposita: depositum, *something deposited* or *entrusted.*
      si . . . reddere (441): deposuerit and **repetat** are the vbs. of the protasis of this
      fut. less vivid condition, and **sit,** to be taken with both **reddere** (as its
      subj.) **peccatum** (*a sin,* pred. nom.) and the parallel phrase **officium non**
      reddere, is the vb. of the apodosis. The structure is highly rhetorical,
      with both parts of the sent. characterized by ASYNDETON (**deposuerit/**
      repetat and **reddere peccatum/officium non reddere**) and CHIASMUS (ABBA
      word order: [A] **sana mente,** [B] **deposuerit,** [B] **repetat,** [A] **insaniens,** and
      [A] **reddere,** [B] **peccatum,** [B] **officium,** [A] **non reddere**).
444. **facias:** POTENTIAL SUBJUNCT., essentially the conclusion of an understood
      condition ("if you should return the deposit, then *you would . . .*").
446. **conventis: conventum,** *agreement.*
448. **Regulus:** after winning a number of victories in the First Punic War, Regulus
      was finally captured by the Carthaginians in 255 B.C. Although the exact
      circumstances of his death are somewhat disputed today, the story which
      Cicero here outlines (and see above, lines 168–73) became a paradigm
      for Roman courage and morality.
      consul: actually proconsul, having served his second consulship during the
      previous year.
449. **iuratus:** act. and governing the **ut** cl., *having sworn that.*
452. **quae:** the antecedent is **utilitatis speciem,** i.e., *the apparent advantage,* ex-
      plained by the three inf. phrases following.
453. **quam calamitatem:** the antecedent is attracted into the rel. cl., = **calamitatem**
      (obj. of **iudicantem**) **quam.**
454. **fortunae bellicae:** dat. with **(calamitatem) communem.**
      iudicantem: acc. to agree with the understood subj. of **tenere,** *(for him), judg-*
      ing that . . ., to retain.
455. **gradum: gradus,** *position, rank.*
457. **mandata: mandatum,** *orders* (which he had from the Carthaginians).
      recusavit: vbs. meaning *to refuse* and *to hinder* are often followed by **ne** +
      subjunct.; here, *he refused to state his opinion* (saying that . . .).
458. **esse se senatorem:** IND. STATE. depending on the reported speech implicit in
      recusavit.
459. **illud:** sc. **dixit** or **fecit.**
      dixerit quispiam: POTENTIAL SUBJUNCT., *someone may say.*
461. **confectum: conficere,** *to accomplish, finish, wear out, weaken.*
465. **exquisita:** *sought ought,* i.e., *carefully chosen.*
466. **vigilando:** *by staying awake,* i.e., *by being kept awake;* other sources in-
      clude starvation along with sleep deprivation as the cause of Regulus'
      death.
467. **causa:** here, *state* or *situation.*
      senex: here used as an adj. with **captivus,** *an aged (former) prisoner of war.*
      periurus: *perjured, lying.*
      consularis: here a noun, *ex-consul, a man of consular rank.*

A promise to return something. Ergo et promissa non faci-
440 enda non numquam; neque semper deposita reddenda. Si gla-
dium quis apud te sana mente deposuerit, repetat insaniens, red-
dere peccatum sit, officium non reddere. Quid si is qui apud
te pecuniam deposuerit bellum inferat patriae, reddasne de-
positum? Non credo; facias enim contra rem publicam, quae
445 debet esse carissima. Sic multa, quae honesta natura videntur
esse, temporibus fiunt non honesta: facere promissa, stare con-
ventis, reddere deposita, commutata utilitate, fiunt non honesta.
(III.94–95)

The famous example of Regulus in the First Punic War.

M. Atilius Regulus, cum consul iterum in Africa ex insidiis
captus esset, iuratus missus est ad senatum ut, nisi redditi essent
450 Poenis captivi nobiles quidam, rediret ipse Carthaginem. Is cum
Romam venisset, utilitatis speciem videbat sed eam, ut res de-
clarat, falsam iudicavit; quae erat talis: manere in patria; esse
domui suae cum uxore, cum liberis; quam calamitatem accepis-
set in bello communem fortunae bellicae iudicantem, tenere
455 consularis dignitatis gradum. Quis haec negat esse utilia? Mag-
nitudo animi et fortitudo negat. Itaque quid fecit? In senatum
venit; mandata exposuit; sententiam ne diceret recusavit: quam-
diu iure iurando hostium teneretur, non esse se senatorem.
Atque illud etiam ("O stultum hominem," dixerit quispiam, "et
460 repugnantem utilitati suae!"): reddi captivos negavit esse utile;
illos enim adulescentes esse et bonos duces, se iam confectum
senectute. Cuius cum valuisset auctoritas, captivi retenti sunt;
ipse Carthaginem rediit, neque eum caritas patriae retinuit nec
suorum. Neque vero tum ignorabat se ad crudelissimum hostem
465 et ad exquisita supplicia proficisci, sed ius iurandum conservan-
dum putabat. Itaque tum cum vigilando necabatur, erat in meli-
ore causa quam si domi senex captivus, periurus consularis re-
mansisset. Potest autem, quod inutile rei publicae sit, id cuiquam
civi utile esse? (III.99–101, excerpts)

470. **laudandus:** sc. **est.**
     iure: sc. **iurando.**
     decem illi (471): subj. of **redierunt** and **vituperandi (sunt)** in 473.
471. **Cannensem:** see Livy's account of Rome's defeat at the battle of Cannae in
     "Hannibal and the Second Punic War," below.
472. **se . . . redituros:** IND. STATE. depending on **iuratos.**
     quorum: potiri, *to gain possession of,* takes the gen. (sometimes the abl.); **cas-**
     tra . . . ea is the antecedent.
473. **redimendis: redimere,** *to buy back, ransom.*
     redierunt: a simple fact condition, since there were varying accounts of the
     incident and whether the 10 men all returned or not.
     vituperandi: sc. **sunt;** from **vituperare,** *to blame, censure.*
474. **non omnes:** sc. **auctores,** i.e., historians.
     Polybius: a Greek historian of the 2nd century B.C. who lived at Rome as a po-
     litical hostage 167–151 B.C.; he wrote in Greek a sober and reliable history
     of Rome's rise to imperial power during the period of the Punic wars.
477. **paulo:** ABL. OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE, with **post quam** as with compara-
     tives, = *a little after.*
478. **reditu: reditus,** *return.*
479. **interpretabatur: interpretari,** *to explain, interpret.*
     fraus: *deceit, fraud.*
480. **adstringit: adstringere,** *to bind, tighten;* here, by contrast with **dissolvit** *(to*
     loosen, absolve), = *to aggravate, make worse.*
     calliditas: *skill, shrewdness, cunning.*
482. **veterator:** *experienced person, old hand* (often, as here, pejorative).
     vinctus: vincire, *to bind.*
483. **illud maximum:** sc. **est;** i.e., the most important part of the story.
485. **Paulo . . . Varrone:** Lucius Aemilius Paulus and Gaius Terentius Varro were
     the two consuls whose army was crushed by Hannibal at Cannae; see
     Livy's "Hannibal and the Second Punic War," below.
487. **insitum: inserere,** + dat., *to implant, instill.*
     emori: *to die.*
489. **idem:** *the same man,* i.e., Polybius.
     adflictis: adfligere, *to dash down, shatter.*
     excelso: *lofty, high;* the CHIASMUS in **rebus afflictis . . . excelso animo** empha-
     sizes the intended contrast.

Two examples after the defeat of the Romans at Cannae in the Second Punic War.

470   Sed, ut laudandus Regulus in conservando iure, sic decem illi quos post Cannensem pugnam iuratos ad senatum misit Hannibal se in castra redituros ea, quorum erant potiti Poeni, nisi de redimendis captivis impetravissent, si non redierunt, vituperandi. De quibus non omnes uno modo: nam Polybius, bo-
475   nus auctor in primis, ex decem nobilissimis, qui tum erant missi, novem revertisse dicit, re a senatu non impetrata; unum ex decem, qui, paulo post quam erat egressus e castris, redisset quasi aliquid esset oblitus, Romae remansisse; reditu enim in castra liberatum se esse iure iurando interpretabatur—non recte, fraus
480   enim adstringit, non dissolvit periurium. Fuit igitur stulta calliditas, perverse imitata prudentiam. Itaque decrevit senatus ut ille veterator et callidus, vinctus, ad Hannibalem duceretur. Sed illud maximum: octo hominum milia tenebat Hannibal, non quos in acie cepisset aut qui periculo mortis diffugissent, sed
485   qui relicti in castris fuissent a Paulo et a Varrone consulibus. Eos senatus non censuit redimendos (cum id parva pecunia fieri posset) ut esset insitum militibus nostris aut vincere aut emori. Qua quidem re audita, fractum animum Hannibalis scribit idem quod senatus populusque Romanus rebus adflictis tam ex-
490   celso animo fuisset. Sic honestatis comparatione ea, quae videntur utilia, vincuntur. (III.113–14)

"The Oath of Hannibal"
Johann Heinrich Schoenfeld, 17th century
Germanisches Nationalmuseum, Nuremberg, Germany

1. **Scaevola:** *Quintus Mucius Scaevola* (ca. 170–87 B.C.) was consul in 117 B.C., an augur, and a famous Roman jurist, with whom Cicero studied for about two years (ca. 90–88 B.C.); a son-in-law of Gaius Laelius, after whom the *De Amicitia* was titled, both men are characters in the dialogue that follows. Scaevola is depicted as relating the conversation to Cicero in 88 B.C.

    Laeli: *Gaius Laelius* (born ca. 190 B.C.), consul in 140, a celebrated orator, and, as the closest friend of Publius Cornelius Scipio Aemilianus (victor over the Carthaginians in the Third Punic War), a member of the so-called "Scipionic Circle"; the principal figure in this dialogue, he also appeared in Cicero's *De Republica.*

2. **genero: gener,** *son-in-law.*

    C. Fannio: *Gaius Fannius,* consul in 122, a student of the philosopher Panaetius of Rhodes, son-in-law of Laelius, and the third character in the dialogue.

3. **diebus:** ABL. OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE.

    post mortem Africani: i.e., the younger Africanus, Scipio Aemilianus, who died in 129 B.C. (the dramatic date of the dialogue Scaevola reports). He earned the honorary title *Africanus* for his victory over Carthage in 146 B.C.; his illustrious adoptive grandfather, P. Cornelius Scipio Africanus Maior, had been given the same title because of his victory over Hannibal in 202 B.C.

    sententias: i.e., the ideas rather than the exact words.

4. **mandavi: mandare,** *to commit, entrust.*

5. **coram:** adv., *face to face, personally.*

6. **ageres:** here, *you were pleading;* the subj. is Titus Pomponius Atticus (born 110 B.C.), Cicero's dearest friend from their childhood days and the addressee of this work.

7. **cum . . . tum (8):** = **non solum . . . sed etiam.**

    cognitione: cognitio, *study, consideration.*

8. **familiaritate: familiaritas,** *close friendship.*

9. **prodessem: prosum,** *to be useful to, benefit.*

11. **persona:** originally *mask* (worn by an actor); hence *personality, character.*

    ea ipsa: not with **amicitia,** but n. pl. dir. obj.

12. **dissereret: disserere,** *to discuss, argue;* with **quae,** a REL. CL. OF RESULT.

    disputata: sc. **esse.**

14. **plus:** with **gravitatis.**

15. **amicissimus:** = *a completely devoted friend;* a fine tribute to Cicero's friendship with Atticus.

17. **socerum: socer,** *father-in-law.*

19. **te ipse cognosces:** Cicero complimented Atticus not only by dedicating the *De Amicitia* to him but by imagining their relationship as equal to the proverbially close friendship of Scipio and Laelius.

20. **quaerunt:** the subj. is general, *people ask.*

    quonam: from the interrog. adj. **quinam, quaenam, quodnam,** *who, which, what (in the world).*

    pacto: pactum, *pact, agreement, way.*

LAELIUS DE AMICITIA

Preface and dedication to Atticus.

Tum Scaevola exposuit nobis sermonem Laeli de amicitia habitum ab illo secum et cum altero genero C. Fannio paucis diebus post mortem Africani. Eius disputationis sententias memoriae mandavi, quas hoc libro exposui arbitratu meo; quasi
5   enim ipsos induxi loquentes ut tamquam a praesentibus coram haberi sermo videretur. Cum enim saepe mecum ageres ut de amicitia scriberem aliquid, digna mihi res cum omnium cognitione tum nostra familiaritate visa est. Itaque feci non invitus ut prodessem multis rogatu tuo. Cum accepissemus a patribus
10   maxime memorabilem C. Laeli et P. Scipionis familiaritatem fuisse, idonea mihi Laeli persona visa est quae de amicitia ea ipsa dissereret quae disputata ab eo meminisset Scaevola. Genus autem hoc sermonum, positum in hominum veterum auctoritate et eorum illustrium, plus videtur habere gravitatis. (Sed hoc
15   libro ad amicum amicissimus de amicitia scripsi.) Nunc Laelius, amicitiae gloria excellens, de amicitia loquitur. C. Fannius et Q. Mucius ad socerum veniunt post mortem Africani. Ab his sermo oritur, respondet Laelius, cuius tota disputatio est de amicitia, quam legens te ipse cognosces. (3–5, excerpts)

Introductory conversation: how Laelius bore the loss of Scipio.

20   FANNIUS. Itaque ex me quaerunt quonam pacto mortem Africani feras.

SCAEVOLA. Quaerunt quidem, C. Laeli, multi, ut est a

Scipio Africanus the Elder
Museo Archeologico Nazionale
Naples, Italy
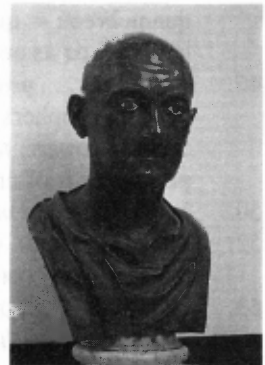
23. **animum adverti:** taken as a unit, *I have noticed, perceived.*
25. **nec potuisse non:** a common formulation, *you were unable not (to), you could not have failed (to).*
27. **viderint:** a parenthetical POTENTIAL SUBJUNCT.; i.e., if Laelius should deny his grief (philosophers would understand and approve such denial), he would be concealing the truth.
28. **sapientes:** *philosophers,* particularly the Stoics, whose ideal of imperturbability would theoretically not permit them to be disturbed by any circumstance.
    mentiar: mentiri, *to lie.*
29. **orbatus: orbare,** + abl., *to deprive of.*
    recordatione: recordatio, *recollection.*
30. **fruor: frui,** + abl., *to enjoy.*
31. **ista:** with **sapientiae . . . fama,** *that reputation for wisdom.*
32. **quam . . . quam (33):** the first is a rel. pron. with **fama** as antecedent; the second a correlative conj. with **tam.**
    falsa: *(since it is) untrue.*
    praesertim: adv., *especially (since).*
33. **quod:** *the fact that,* introducing a noun cl. that, like **fama,** is a subj. of **delectat.**
    sempiternam: *enduring, eternal.*
34. **fore:** = **futuram esse.**
    eo: ABL. OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE with **magis,** *more by this much* = *this much more.*
    cordi: cor, *heart;* DAT. OF PURPOSE, lit., *(it is) for the heart* = *(it is) pleasing.*
35. **saeculis: saeculum,** *century, generation.*
    paria: n. of the adj. **par,** used as a noun, *pairs;* the pairs of friends most famous in legend were Theseus and Pirithous, Achilles and Patroclus, Orestes and Pylades, Damon and Pythias.
39. **pergratum:** note the force of the prefix **per-.**
    disputaris: = **disputaveris,** fut. perf. in a FUT. MORE VIVID CONDITION.
40. **qualem:** sc. **amicitiam esse;** i.e., what the nature of friendship is.
    existimes: existimare, *to estimate, reckon, think.*
42. **gravarer: gravare,** *to weigh down, burden,* pass., *to be reluctant.*
44. **magnum opus est:** i.e., a thorough philosophical discussion.
45. **exercitatione: exercitatio,** *exercise, training, practice.*
    quamobrem: = **quam ob rem,** *wherefore, therefore.*
    quae: sc. **ea** as antecedent of **quae** and obj. of **petatis.**
46. **eis . . . qui . . . profitentur: profiteri,** *to declare openly, profess;* i.e., professional philosophers or Sophists.
    censeo: censere, *to estimate, think, advise, recommend.*
    petatis: ut is often omitted in a JUSSIVE NOUN CL.
50. **bonis:** i.e., *good men.*
52. **rerum:** OBJ. GEN. with **consensio,** *an agreement on all matters.*
    qua: ABL. OF COMPARISON with **nihil melius.**
53. **haud scio an:** idiom introducing an IND. QUEST., *I do not know whether* = *I am inclined to think.*
    excepta sapientia: ABL. ABS. = *with the exception of . . ..*

Fannio dictum; sed id respondeo quod animum adverti: te do-
lorem quem acceperis cum summi viri tum amicissimi morte
25 ferre moderate, nec potuisse non commoveri.

LAELIUS. Recte tu quidem, Scaevola, et vere. Ego si Sci-
pionis desiderio me moveri negem—quam id recte faciam vi-
derint sapientes—sed certe mentiar. Moveor enim tali amico
orbatus qualis, ut arbitror, nemo umquam erit. Sed tamen re-
30 cordatione nostrae amicitiae sic fruor ut beate vixisse videar,
quia cum Scipione vixerim. Itaque non tam ista me sapientiae,
quam modo Fannius commemoravit, fama delectat (falsa prae-
sertim) quam quod amicitiae nostrae memoriam spero sempi-
ternam fore. Idque mihi eo magis est cordi quod ex omnibus
35 saeculis vix tria aut quattuor nominantur paria amicorum, quo
in genere sperare videor Scipionis et Laeli amicitiam notam
posteritati fore.

FANNIUS. Quoniam amicitiae mentionem fecisti et sumus
otiosi, pergratum mihi feceris si de amicitia disputaris quid sen-
40 tias, qualem existimes, quae praecepta des.

SCAEVOLA. Mihi vero erit gratum. (7–16, excerpts)

Laelius' observations on the nature of friendship.

LAELIUS. Ego vero non gravarer, si mihi ipse confiderem;
nam et praeclara res est, et sumus, ut dixit Fannius, otiosi. Sed
quis ego sum? Aut quae est in me facultas? Magnum opus est
45 egetque exercitatione non parva. Quamobrem quae disputari de
amicitia possunt, ab eis censeo petatis qui ista profitentur. Ego
vos hortari tantum possum ut amicitiam omnibus rebus hu-
manis anteponatis; nihil est enim tam naturae aptum, tam con-
veniens ad res vel secundas vel adversas. Sed hoc primum sen-
50 tio: nisi in bonis amicitiam esse non posse.

Est autem amicitia nihil aliud nisi omnium divinarum hu-
manarumque rerum cum benevolentia et caritate consensio, qua
quidem haud scio an, excepta sapientia, nihil melius homini sit

56. **beluarum: belua,** *animal, beast.*
     hoc extremum: *this end, objective;* i.e., the last mentioned, **voluptates.**
     superiora: i.e., *earlier ones* (**divitias, valetudinem,** etc.); sc. **sunt.**
     caduca: *falling, frail, perishable, transitory.*
58. **temeritate:** here, *impulse, accident.*
59. **illi:** sc. **agunt.**
     gignit: gignere, *to beget, bring forth.*
61. **talis:** = **tales,** i.e., **bonos.**
     opportunitates: here, *advantages.*
62. **queo:** = **possum.**
     qui: adv., *how.*
     vitalis: *worth living.*
63. **Ennius:** *Quintus Ennius* (239–169 B.C.), one of the earliest Roman poets and
         author of the epic poem, the *Annales,* was much admired and frequently
         quoted by Cicero.
64. **quid:** sc. **est.**
     quicum: sc. **aliquem,** *(someone) with whom; qui,* an old abl. form used with
         cum.
65. **qui:** adv., as in 62 above.
     haberes: sc. **aliquem.**
66. **aeque ac tu:** *as much as you; ac (atque)* means *as* after words of comparison
         and similarity.
67. **sine eo:** serves to introduce a conditional cl., = *if there were not a person
         (who).*
68. **singulae . . . singulis (69):** the repetition emphasizes the limited nature and
         service of aims other than friendship, = *individually for generally single*
         (i.e., limited) *purposes.*
69. **utare:** = **utaris,** sc. **eis.**
71. **fungare: fungi,** + abl., *to perform, discharge, complete.*
72. **quoquo:** adv., indefinite of **quo,** *wherever.*
     praesto: adv., *at hand, ready.*
74. **locis:** ABL. OF PLACE WHERE without a prep. is common with **locus.**
75. **splendidiores:** OBJ. COMPL.
     adversas: obj. both of the partics. and of the understood **facit.**
     partiens: partire, *to divide, distribute.*
     communicans: communicare, *to share, take a share in.*
77. **cum . . . tum (78):** *since . . . also.*
78. **illa:** sc. **commoditate;** ABL. OF SPECIFICATION.
     nimirum: adv., *doubtless, of course, to be sure.*
     bonam spem praelucet in posterum (79): *it (friendship) shines (a ray of) good
         hope into the future.*
80. **intuetur: intueri,** *to look upon, behold.*
     exemplar: here, *likeness, image.*

a dis immortalibus datum. Divitias alii praeponunt, bonam alii
55   valetudinem, alii potentiam, alii honores, multi etiam volup-
tates. Beluarum hoc quidem extremum; illa autem superiora ca-
duca et incerta, posita non tam in consiliis nostris quam in for-
tunae temeritate. Qui autem in virtute summum bonum ponunt,
praeclare illi quidem; sed haec ipsa virtus amicitiam et gignit et
60   continet, nec sine virtute amicitia esse ullo pacto potest. (17–
20, excerpts)

The benefits of friendship.

Talis igitur inter viros amicitia tantas opportunitates habet
quantas vix queo dicere. Principio, qui potest esse vita vitalis,
ut ait Ennius, quae non in amici mutua benevolentia conquies-
cit? Quid dulcius quam habere quicum omnia audeas sic loqui
65   ut tecum? Qui esset tantus fructus in prosperis rebus, nisi habe-
res qui illis aeque ac tu ipse gauderet? Adversas vero ferre
difficile esset sine eo qui illas gravius etiam quam tu ferret. De-
nique ceterae res quae expetuntur opportunae sunt singulae re-
bus fere singulis: divitiae, ut utare; opes, ut colare; honores, ut
70   laudere; voluptates, ut gaudeas; valetudo, ut dolore careas et
muneribus fungare corporis; amicitia res plurimas continet.
Quoquo te verteris praesto est; nullo loco excluditur; numquam
intempestiva, numquam molesta est. Itaque non aqua, non igni,
ut aiunt, pluribus locis utimur quam amicitia. Nam et secundas
75   res splendidiores facit amicitia, et adversas partiens communi-
cansque leviores.
Cumque plurimas et maximas commoditates amicitia con-
tineat, tum illa nimirum praestat omnibus, quod bonam spem
praelucet in posterum nec debilitari animos aut cadere patitur.
80   Verum etiam amicum qui intuetur, tamquam exemplar aliquod

81.   **quocirca:** adv., *therefore.*
       et . . . et (82): POLYSYNDETON emphasizes the point.
       et absentes: *(friends) even though absent.*
82.   **imbecilli:** *weak.*
83.   **desiderium:** *longing, grief.*
       amicorum: SUBJECTIVE GEN.
84.   **illorum . . . horum:** i.e., the deceased and their surviving friends.
       beata . . . laudabilis: PRED. ADJS., contrasted through CHIASMUS.
       quod si (85): *but if.*
85.   **exemeris: eximere,** *to take away.*
       coniunctionem: here, *bond.*
87.   **id:** i.e., the assertion in the preceding sentence.
       minus: adv. = **non.**
       concordiae . . . discordiis (88): Cicero plays on the shared etymology of the
         two words, both of which are based on **cor, cordis,** *heart.*
89.   **quae non . . . everti:** REL. CL. OF RESULT.
90.   **discidiis: discidium,** *division, disagreement.*
       funditus: adv., *completely.*
91.   **si quando:** *if ever.*
       officium: *dutiful action, service.*
92.   **exstitit: exsistere,** *to stand forth, arise, appear.*
       adeundis: adire, here = *to incur.*
93.   **efferat:** REL. CL. OF CHARACTERISTIC.
       clamores: sc. some appropriate vb. such as **facti (auditi, sublati) sunt.**
       tota cavea: *in the entire theater* (strictly the auditorium); the ABL. OF PLACE
         WHERE is regularly used without a prep. when the noun is modified by
         totus.
94.   **M. Pacuvii:** *Marcus Pacuvius,* a tragic poet of the second cent. B.C. whose
         plays have not survived, despite his fame in antiquity; Laelius, as this
         passage indicates, was his patron.
       fabula: the regular word for *play* as well as *story.* This play was apparently
         based on Euripides' *Iphigenia among the Taurians,* in which the famous
         friends Orestes and Pylades are arrested by Thoas, king of the Taurians.
         Thoas has condemned Orestes to death but does not know which of the
         two strangers actually is Orestes, hence the setting for this display of
         loyalty between friends.
96.   **ita ut erat:** i.e., *as was the case.*
97.   **perseveraret: perseverare,** *to persevere, persist, insist.*
       stantes: i.e., the audience at the play.
       ficta: fingere, *to invent, imagine, make up.*
101.   **hactenus:** adv., *thus far.*
102.   **si quae . . . sunt:** *if there are any (other) things.*
       praeterea: adv., *beyond, besides.*
       eis: the professional philosophers alluded to in line 46.
       si videbitur (103): *if it seems best, if you please.*
103.   **quaeritote:** fut. imper., a formal equivalent of **quaerite.**

intuetur sui. Quocirca et absentes adsunt et egentes abundant
et imbecilli valent et, quod difficilius dictu est, mortui vivunt;
tantus eos honos, memoria, desiderium prosequitur amicorum.
Ex quo illorum beata mors videtur, horum vita laudabilis. Quod
85   si exemeris ex rerum natura benevolentiae coniunctionem, nec
domus ulla nec urbs stare poterit; ne agri quidem cultus per-
manebit. Id si minus intellegitur, quanta vis amicitiae concordi-
aeque sit ex dissensionibus atque discordiis percipi potest. Quae
enim domus tam stabilis, quae tam firma civitas est quae non
90   odiis et discidiis funditus possit everti?—ex quo quantum boni
sit in amicitia iudicari potest. Itaque si quando aliquod officium
exstitit amici in periculis aut adeundis aut communicandis, quis
est qui id non maximis efferat laudibus? Qui clamores tota cavea
nuper in hospitis et amici mei M. Pacuvii nova fabula cum, ig-
95   norante rege uter esset Orestes, Pylades Orestem se esse diceret
ut pro illo necaretur; Orestes autem, ita ut erat, Orestem se esse
perseveraret. Stantes, plaudebant in re ficta: quid arbitramur in
vera facturos fuisse? Facile indicabat ipsa natura vim suam cum
homines, quod facere ipsi non possent, id recte fieri in altero
100   iudicarent. (22–24, excerpts)

Transition to a new topic.

Hactenus mihi videor de amicitia quid sentirem potuisse di-
cere. Si quae praeterea sunt (credo autem esse multa), ab eis, si
videbitur, qui ista disputant, quaeritote.

"Pylades and Orestes Brought as Victims before Iphigenia"
Benjamin West, 1766
Tate Gallery, London, Great Britain

104.   **a te:** sc. **quaerimus.**
       quamquam: conj., *although* or, at the beginning of a sent. or a main cl., *and yet.*
105.   **aliud quoddam (106):** lit., *a certain other thing* = *something quite different.*
106.   **filum:** *thread,* hence metaphorically *style;* sc. **est.**
108.   **illud:** subj. of **solet** and in appos. to the **utrum . . . an** cl., a double IND. QUEST.
       considerandum: PRED. ADJ., *deserving of consideration.*
109.   **inopiam:** inopia, *need, want.*
110.   **meritis:** meritum, *benefit, service.*
       quod . . . acciperet (111): = **(ut) quisque ab alio acciperet id quod ipse per se (accipere) minus posset.**
111.   **vicissim:** adv., *in turn.*
       an: *or,* introducing the second part of the IND. QUEST., which itself has two parts, (1) **hoc esset proprium,** (2) **sed alia causa (esset) antiquior . . ..**
       hoc: i.e., the desire of mutual advantage just mentioned.
113.   **profecta:** here, *derived.*
       alia causa: sc. **amicitiae esset.**
       amor . . . est (114): more etymologizing (see above on line 88).
114.   **princeps est:** lit., *is foremost* = *is the chief principle.*
       coniungendam: coniungere, *to unite,* here *generate, show.*
115.   **ab eis percipiuntur:** *are gained from those.*
116.   **observantur:** here, *are honored.*
       temporis causa: *for the purposes of the moment.*
117.   **quidquid est:** i.e., **in amicitia.**
118.   **voluntarium:** *spontaneous.*
119.   **orta:** sc. **esse.**
       applicatione: applicatio, *attachment, inclination.*
120.   **cogitatione:** *from a consideration (of).*
       utilitatis: with **quantum.**
121.   **quod:** = **et hoc** (i.e., this instinct which gives rise to friendship), conjunctive use of rel., subj. of the IND. QUEST.
122.   **animadverti:** animadvertere, *to notice, observe.*
125.   **caritate:** caritas, *affection, love.*
       dirimi: dirimere, *to sunder, break off, end.*
127.   **nacti sumus:** nancisci, *to find.*
128.   **congruamus:** congruere, *to come together, harmonize, agree.*
       lumen: *light.*
130.   **adliciat:** adlicere, *to allure, attract.*
       quippe: adv. common in explanations, *indeed, certainly; quippe cum, inasmuch as.*
132.   **C. Fabrici . . . M'. Curi:** *Gaius Fabricius Luscinus* and *Manius Curius Dentatus,* popular heroes in the war against Pyrrhus, were regarded as exemplars of honesty and virtuous living.
133.   **usurpet:** usurpare, *to use, employ;* with **memoriam,** *cherish.*
134.   **Tarquinium Superbum:** *Tarquinius Superbus,* Rome's last king, an Etruscan hated by the Romans and expelled in 510 B.C. (see Livy's "Legends of Early Rome" below).

FANNIUS. Nos autem a te potius: quamquam etiam ab
105   istis saepe quaesivi et audivi non invitus equidem, sed aliud
quoddam filum orationis tuae. (24–25)

The origin and basis of friendship is love, not practical advantage.

LAELIUS. Saepissime igitur mihi de amicitia cogitanti
maxime illud considerandum videri solet, utrum propter imbe-
cillitatem atque inopiam desiderata sit amicitia ut dandis reci-
110   piendisque meritis, quod quisque minus per se ipse posset, id
acciperet ab alio vicissimque redderet, an esset hoc quidem pro-
prium amicitiae, sed antiquior et pulchrior et magis a natura
ipsa profecta alia causa. Amor enim, ex quo amicitia nominata
est, princeps est ad benevolentiam coniungendam. Nam uti-
115   litates quidem etiam ab eis percipiuntur saepe qui simulatione
amicitiae coluntur et observantur temporis causa. In amicitia
autem nihil fictum est, nihil simulatum; et quidquid est, id est
verum et voluntarium. Quapropter a natura mihi videtur potius
quam indigentia orta amicitia, applicatione magis animi cum
120   quodam sensu amandi quam cogitatione quantum illa res uti-
litatis esset habitura. Quod quidem quale sit etiam in bestiis
quibusdam animadverti potest, quae ex se natos ita amant ad
quoddam tempus et ab eis ita amantur ut facile earum sensus
appareat. Quod in homine multo est evidentius—primum ex ea
125   caritate quae est inter natos et parentes, quae dirimi nisi de-
testabili scelere non potest; deinde, cum similis sensus exstitit
amoris, si aliquem nacti sumus cuius cum moribus et natura
congruamus, quod in eo quasi lumen aliquod probitatis et vir-
tutis perspicere videamur. Nihil est enim virtute amabilius; nihil
130   quod magis adliciat ad diligendum, quippe cum propter virtu-
tem et probitatem etiam eos quos numquam vidimus quodam
modo diligamus. Quis est qui C. Fabrici, M'. Curi non cum cari-
tate aliqua et benevolentia memoriam usurpet, quos numquam
viderit? Quis autem est qui Tarquinium Superbum non oderit?

135. **est decertatum:** impers. pass., *it was fought to the finish* = *we fought to the finish.*
      Pyrrho et Hannibale (136): *Pyrrhus,* king of the Greek state of Epirus, led the Greeks of south Italy in their resistance to Roman encroachment (280–275 B.C.); *Hannibal,* of course, was the Carthaginian leader in the Second Punic War (218–201 B.C.—see Livy's "Hannibal and the Second Punic War," below).
136. **propter probitatem:** Pyrrhus was respected by the Romans, not least for an incident in which he returned to them a number of prisoners of war without ransom.
137. **alienos:** here, *unfriendly.*
      crudelitatem: Roman views of Hannibal were especially hostile, as he had brought their empire to the brink of disaster.
142. **usu:** *by experience,* i.e., by close social contact.
      perspicere: *to observe, note.*
144. **studio:** here, *affection.*
145. **consecutae sunt: consequi,** *to follow, result, follow up, pursue, gain.*
147. **eius:** = **amicitiae.**
148. **conglutinaret: conglutinare,** *to cement together.*
      dissolveret: sc. **amicitiam;** friendship would not be able to stand the test of adversity.
149. **idcirco:** adv., *therefore, for that reason.*
150. **ortum: ortus,** *rising, origin, source.*
151. **perge: pergere,** *to continue.*
156. **nam:** sc. **dicebat.**
      ut . . . ut (157): both **ut** cls. are subjs. of **incidere,** *to befall, happen* = *it often happened that.*
      non idem expediret: *the same thing was not expedient* or *useful* (to both the friends); i.e., their objectives and priorities had changed.
158. **alias . . . alias:** adv., *at one time . . . at another.*
159. **ingravescente: ingravescere,** *to grow heavy, become burdensome.*
      discidia: discidium, *separation, disagreement, alienation.*
      plerumque: adv., *generally.*
160. **postularetur: postulare,** *to demand.*
161. **adiutores: adiutor,** *helper, assistant.*
162. **quatenus:** adv., *how far.*
163. **Coriolanus:** *Coriolanus,* a patrician, was banished from Rome early in the 5th cent. B.C. for resisting the authority of the tribunes; subsequently he marched on Rome with a Volscian army but was dissuaded from his attack by his mother.

135   Cum duobus ducibus de imperio in Italia est decertatum, Pyr-
rho et Hannibale: ab altero propter probitatem eius non nimis
alienos animos habemus; alterum propter crudelitatem semper
haec civitas oderit.

Quod si tanta vis probitatis est ut eam vel in eis quos num-
140   quam vidimus, vel—quod maius est—in hoste etiam diligamus,
quid mirum est si animi hominum moveantur, cum eorum qui-
buscum usu coniuncti esse possunt virtutem et bonitatem per-
spicere videantur? Quamquam confirmatur amor et beneficio
accepto et studio perspecto. Sed quamquam utilitates multae et
145   magnae consecutae sunt, non sunt tamen ab earum spe causae
diligendi profectae. Sic amicitiam, non spe mercedis adducti,
sed quod omnis eius fructus in ipso amore inest, expetendam
putamus. Nam si utilitas conglutinaret, eadem commutata dis-
solveret. Sed quia natura mutari non potest, idcirco verae ami-
150   citiae sempiternae sunt. Ortum quidem amicitiae videtis.

FANNIUS. Tu vero perge, Laeli.

SCAEVOLA. Recte tu quidem. Quamobrem audiamus. (26–
33, excerpts)

The difficulties of maintaining friendship throughout life.

LAELIUS. Audite vero, optimi viri, ea quae saepissime in-
ter me et Scipionem de amicitia disserebantur; quamquam ille
155   quidem nihil difficilius esse dicebat quam amicitiam usque ad
extremam vitae diem permanere: nam vel ut non idem expediret
incidere saepe, vel ut de re publica non idem sentiretur; mutari
etiam mores hominum saepe dicebat, alias adversis rebus, alias
aetate ingravescente; magna etiam discidia et plerumque iusta
160   nasci cum aliquid ab amicis quod rectum non esset postulare-
tur, ut aut libidinis ministri aut adiutores essent ad iniuriam.
(33–35, excerpts)

The proper use of friendship.

Quamobrem id primum videamus, si placet, quatenus amor
in amicitia progredi debeat. Numne, si Coriolanus habuit
amicos, ferre contra patriam arma illi cum Coriolano debue-

166. **conciliatrix:** *uniter, promoter.*
      opinio: here, (a friend's) *belief (in).*
168. **sanciatur: sancire,** *to make sacred, ratify.*
170. **pro . . . fidem:** idiomatic in exclamations, *by the faith (of), in the name (of).*
      ut: in a limiting cl., as here, = *on the condition that, with the proviso that.*
171. **circumfluere:** *to overflow (with).*
172. **copiis:** i.e., *resources, wealth.*
177. **coluntur:** sc. **tyranni.**
      dumtaxat: adv., *at least, at any rate, only.*
179. **quod:** *and this,* obj. of **dixisse,** referring to the point made in the preceding
          sent. and in appos. with the IND. STATE. **se intellexisse.**
      Tarquinium: for *Tarquinius,* see note on line 134.
      exsulantem: exsulare, *to go into exile.*
182. **superbia:** *arrogance,* ABL. OF CAUSE.
      importunitate: importunitas, *insolence, inconsiderateness.*
186. **complexa est: complecti,** *to embrace.*
      efferuntur: *they are carried away,* i.e., with their arrogance and self-
          importance.
187. **fastidio: fastidium,** *scorn, disdain.*
      contumacia: *obstinacy, haughtiness.*
      insipiente: as **sapiens** is a *wise man,* **insipiens** is a fool.
188. **hoc:** obj. of **videre** and in appos. with the inf. phrases following, *you may
          observe this, that . . ..*
189. **commodis . . . moribus:** PRED. ABL. OF DESCRIPTION, *of agreeable character.*
190. **amicitias:** subj. of **sperni.**
      indulgeri: impers. pass. of an intransitive vb. + dat., *it is indulged in* = *they
          indulge in, enjoy.*
191. **cum plurimum . . . possint (192):** *when they are the most able* = *when they have
          the greatest influence.*
      facultatibus: facultas, *opportunity, means.*
193. **famulos: famulus,** *household slave.*
      vestem: vestis, *clothing.*
      egregiam: *extraordinary, splendid.*
      vasa pretiosa: we would say "fine china."
      amicos: sc. **sed.**
194. **ut ita dicam:** *so to speak,* used to qualify a somewhat extreme metaphor.
      supellectilem: supellex, *furniture, equipment.*

165   runt? Nulla est igitur excusatio peccati si amici causa peccaveris; nam, cum conciliatrix amicitiae virtutis opinio fuerit, difficile est amicitiam manere, si a virtute defeceris. Haec igitur lex in amicitia sanciatur ut neque rogemus res turpis nec faciamus rogati. (36–40, excerpts)

The blessings of friendship cannot be bought.

170   Quis est—pro deorum fidem atque hominum!—qui velit, ut neque diligat quemquam nec ipse ab ullo diligatur, circumfluere omnibus copiis atque in omnium rerum abundantia vivere? Haec enim est tyrannorum vita, nimirum in qua nulla fides, nulla caritas, nulla stabilis benevolentiae potest esse fiducia; omnia sem-

175   per suspecta atque sollicita, nullus locus amicitiae. Quis enim aut eum diligat quem metuat, aut eum a quo se metui putet? Coluntur tamen simulatione dumtaxat ad tempus. Quod si forte, ut fit plerumque, ceciderint, tum intellegitur quam fuerint inopes amicorum. Quod Tarquinium dixisse ferunt exsulantem:

180   tum se intellexisse quos fidos amicos habuisset, quos infidos, cum iam neutris gratiam referre posset. Quamquam miror illa superbia et importunitate si quemquam amicum habere potuit. Atque ut huius, quem dixi, mores veros amicos parare non potuerunt, sic multorum opes praepotentium excludunt amicitias

185   fideles. Non enim solum ipsa fortuna caeca est, sed eos etiam plerumque effecit caecos quos complexa est. Itaque efferuntur fere fastidio et contumacia, nec quidquam insipiente fortunato intolerabilius fieri potest. Atque hoc quidem videre licet—eos qui antea commodis fuerunt moribus, imperio, potestate, pros-

190   peris rebus immutari, sperni ab eis veteres amicitias, indulgeri novis. Quid autem stultius quam, cum plurimum copiis, facultatibus, opibus possint, cetera parare quae parantur—pecunia, equos, famulos, vestem egregiam, vasa pretiosa—amicos non parare, optimam et pulcherrimam vitae, ut ita dicam, supellec-

195   tilem? (52–55)

197.   **querebatur:** sc. **Scipio** as subj.
        omnibus in rebus: sc. **aliis;** i.e., besides friendship.
198.   **capras . . . esse (200):** each of these two pairs of cls. is marked by parallelism,
        ASYNDETON, AND CHIASMUS **(dicere posse . . . non posse dicere** and **adhi-
        bere curam . . . neglegentis esse);** the devices are common in Cicero, who
        frequently uses CHIASMUS, as here, to underscore a contrast.
        capras: capra, *she-goat.*
        ovis: ovis, *sheep.*
199.   **posse:** sc. **eos (homines)** here, and with the several infs. following, as subj. of
        the IND. STATE. depending on the speech implied in **querebatur.**
200.   **deligendis: deligere,** *to choose, select.*
        neglegentis: acc., PRED. ADJ.
201.   **notas: nota,** *mark.*
202.   **sunt . . . eligendi (203):** sc. **homines (amici).**
203.   **penuria:** *scarcity, lack.*
        iudicare . . . est (204): sc. **aliquem** as subj. of the inf.
204.   **expertum:** agrees with the subj. of **iudicare;** with **nisi,** *unless having tested (a
        person)* = *unless he has tested (a person).*
205.   **ita . . . potestatem (206):** i.e., in order to know the true worth of a friend, one
        must first make him a friend, so one cannot exercise perfect judgment
        in this matter without first taking a chance.
206.   **prudentis:** PRED. GEN. OF POSSESSION, *it is the part of a prudent man.*
        sustinere: here, *to check, hold back.*
        ut cursum: *as (he would) a race;* as clarified by **equis temptatis** in the next
        line, the simile compares the rush to form a friendship with a chariot-
        race (a very popular form of entertainment among the Romans).
207.   **quo:** = **ut,** introducing a PURPOSE CL.
208.   **aliqua parte:** *in some degree, to some extent.*
        periclitatis: periclitari, *to test;* sometimes the perf. partic. of a deponent vb.
        has a pass. meaning, as here in this ABL. ABS.
209.   **in parva pecunia:** i.e., in some transaction involving a small sum of money.
        leves: here, *unreliable.*
210.   **parva . . . magna:** sc. **pecunia.**
211.   **sin:** conj., *but if.*
212.   **sordidum:** sc. **esse,** *that it is base.*
214.   **ex altera parte:** Eng. would say *on one side* or *on the one hand.*
        ius: here, *bond;* the word refers to both the responsibilities and the privileges
        that friendship entails.
216.   **obscuratum iri (217): obscurare,** *to hide, conceal, forget;* here, the relatively
        rare fut. pass. inf.
219.   **versantur: versari,** *to be engaged in, take part in.*
        invenias: *would you find;* POTENTIAL SUBJUNCT.
220.   **haec:** the considerations of wealth and power just discussed.
221.   **plerisque:** *very many, most.*

Choosing friends.

Sed (saepe enim redeo ad Scipionem cuius omnis sermo erat de amicitia) querebatur quod omnibus in rebus homines diligentiores essent: capras et ovis quot quisque haberet dicere posse, amicos quot haberet non posse dicere; et in illis quidem
200 parandis adhibere curam, in amicis deligendis neglegentis esse nec habere quasi signa quaedam et notas, quibus eos qui ad amicitiam essent idonei iudicarent. Sunt igitur firmi et stabiles et constantes eligendi, cuius generis est magna penuria; et iudicare difficile est sane nisi expertum, experiendum autem est in
205 ipsa amicitia: ita praecurrit amicitia iudicium tollitque experiendi potestatem. Est igitur prudentis sustinere, ut cursum, sic impetum benevolentiae, quo utamur, quasi equis temptatis, sic amicitia, aliqua parte periclitatis moribus amicorum. Quidam saepe in parva pecunia perspiciuntur quam sint leves. Quidam
210 autem quos parva movere non potuit, cognoscuntur in magna. Sin vero erunt aliqui reperti qui pecuniam praeferre amicitiae sordidum existiment, ubi eos inveniemus qui honores, magistratus, imperia, potestates, opes amicitiae non anteponant, ut, cum ex altera parte proposita haec sint, ex altera ius amicitiae, non
215 multo illa malint? Imbecilla enim est natura ad contemnendam potentiam, quam etiam si neglecta amicitia consecuti sint, obscuratum iri arbitrantur, quia non sine magna causa sit neglecta amicitia. Itaque verae amicitiae difficillime reperiuntur in eis qui in honoribus reque publica versantur. Ubi enim istum in-
220 venias qui honorem amici anteponat suo? Quid?—haec ut omittam, quam graves, quam difficiles plerisque videntur calamita-

222.   **societates: societas,** *partnership, association, sharing.*
    ad quas: i.e., the depths of another's misfortunes.
    inventu qui: sc. **eos (homines)** as obj. of the supine and antecedent of the REL.
        CL. OF CHARACTERISTIC.

223.   **Ennius:** see on line 63 above.
    amicus . . . cernitur: the ALLITERATION and ASSONANCE are characteristic of
        Ennius' poetry; cp. our proverb, "A friend in need is a friend indeed."

224.   **haec duo:** *these two points,* i.e., the two just discussed and summarized in **aut**
    . . . deserunt.
    levitatis: *of fickleness;* GEN. OF THE CHARGE with **convincunt,** *convict.*

225.   **bonis rebus:** i.e., their own good fortune.
    contemnunt: sc. **amicos.**
    malis: their friends' misfortune.

227.   **hunc:** sc. **esse.**

230.   **quamquam:** here, *to be sure, indeed.*

232.   **tenuis:** *slender, modest, simple.*
    victus: *mode of living, food.*
    cultus: *lifestyle, refinement.*
    delectat: sg. because both subjs. constitute a single idea.

235.   **cetera:** obj. of **putent.**

236.   **nihilo: nihilum** is used as a collateral form of **nihil** when case distinction is
        necessary.
    ad unum: *to a man.*

237.   **serpit: serpere,** *to creep, permeate.*
    nescio quo modo: a kind of parenthetical cl. equivalent to an adv., *I do not*
        know how = somehow.

238.   **degendae: degere,** *to pass* (one's life), *live.*
    expertem: expers, + gen., *without a share in, free from, devoid of.*

240.   **adminiculum:** *prop* (for vines), *support;* with **aliquod tamquam,** *some support,*
    as it were.
    adnititur: adniti, *to struggle toward, lean on.*
    in amicissimo quoque: *in the case of one's dearest friend as well.*

242.   **illa prima:** i.e., to his first major points, that virtue is the source of friendship
    and that true friendship, therefore, can exist only among good men
    (above, lines 50–60).
    aliquando: adv., *at last.*

243.   **conciliat: conciliare,** *to bring together, unite.*

244.   **in ea . . . in ea (245):** the ANAPHORA and ASYNDETON here are among several
    rhetorical devices that lend intensity to Laelius' closing remarks.
    convenientia: *harmony, agreement.*

247.   **exardescit: exardescere,** *to become hot, glow, blaze forth;* the vb. continues the
    metaphor begun in **lumen.**
    sive . . . sive (248): conj., *whether . . . or.*

249.   **amare:** the vb. has a more emotional and physical connotation than **diligere,**
    the sense of which is more rational and intellectual.

250.   **efflorescit: efflorescere,** *to begin to flower, blossom;* another vivid metaphor.

251.   **minus:** = **non.**

tum societates, ad quas non est facile inventu qui descendant.
Quamquam Ennius recte: "Amicus certus in re incerta cernitur."
Tamen haec duo levitatis et infirmitatis plerosque convincunt:
225 aut si in bonis rebus contemnunt aut in malis deserunt. Qui igi-
tur utraque in re gravem, constantem, stabilem se in amicitia
praestiterit, hunc ex maxime raro genere hominum iudicare de-
bemus et paene divino. (62–64)

The universal appeal of friendship.

Una est enim amicitia in rebus humanis de cuius utilitate
230 omnes uno ore consentiunt; quamquam a multis virtus ipsa
contemnitur et ostentatio esse dicitur. Multi divitias despiciunt,
quos parvo contentos tenuis victus cultusque delectat. Honores
vero, quorum cupiditate quidam inflammantur, quam multi ita
contemnunt ut nihil inanius, nihil esse levius existiment; item-
235 que cetera, quae quibusdam admirabilia videntur, permulti sunt
qui pro nihilo putent. De amicitia omnes ad unum idem sen-
tiunt. Serpit enim nescio quo modo per omnium vitas amicitia,
nec ullam aetatis degendae rationem patitur esse expertem sui.
Sic natura solitarium nihil amat, semperque ad aliquod tam-
240 quam adminiculum adnititur quod in amicissimo quoque dul-
cissimum est. (86–88, excerpts)

Recapitulation and conclusion.

Ad illa prima redeamus eaque ipsa concludamus aliquando.
Virtus, virtus inquam, C. Fanni et tu Q. Muci, et conciliat ami-
citias et conservat. In ea est enim convenientia rerum, in ea
245 stabilitas, in ea constantia; quae cum se extulit et ostendit suum
lumen et idem aspexit agnovitque in alio, ad id se movet vicis-
simque accipit illud quod in altero est, ex quo exardescit sive
amor sive amicitia. Utrumque enim dictum est ab amando;
amare autem nihil est aliud nisi eum ipsum diligere quem ames,
250 nulla utilitate quaesita, quae tamen ipsa efflorescit ex amicitia,
etiam si tu eam minus secutus sis. Sed quoniam res humanae

256. **vivit tamen semperque vivet:** CHIASMUS emphasizes Laelius' point.
259. **tribuit: tribuere,** *to grant, bestow.*
260. **quod . . . senserim (261):** idiom, *so far as I observed.*
261. **una . . . erat (262):** sc. **nobis,** = *we had . . ..*
262. **communis:** *shared.*
      militia: *military service.*
263. **peregrinationes: peregrinatio,** *foreign travel.*
      rusticationes: rusticatio, *visit to the country.*
      quid . . . dicam (264): *why should I speak;* the DELIBERATIVE SUBJUNCT. is often
          more rhetorical than real, as here, where the meaning in effect is *there is
          no need for me to speak.*
266. **contrivimus: conterere,** *to wear out, consume, spend.*
      una: adv., *along, together.*
268. **illa:** i.e., his experiences with Scipio.
269. **augentur: augere,** *to increase.*
270. **magnum . . . solacium:** the wide separation of adj. and noun is likely meant
          to emphasize the degree of solace Laelius felt.
      aetas: i.e., his own age. Laelius was about 60 at the time of the dialogue; the
          date of his death is unknown, though the remarks Cicero attributes to
          him here suggest that he may not have lived much later than 129 B.C.,
          the year that Scipio died and the dramatic date of this dialogue.
271. **in hoc desiderio:** *in this state of bereavement.*
273. **haec . . . dicerem:** a conventional formula for concluding a discussion, =
          these are the things I had to say.
      ut . . . locetis (274): *that you place* or *rank.*
275. **praestabilius:** *more excellent, better.*

fragiles caducaeque sunt, semper aliqui anquirendi sunt quos diligamus et a quibus diligamur; caritate enim benevolentiaque
255   sublata, omnis est e vita sublata iucunditas. Mihi quidem Scipio, quamquam est subito ereptus, vivit tamen semperque vivet; virtutem enim amavi illius viri quae exstincta non est.

Equidem ex omnibus rebus, quas mihi aut fortuna aut natura tribuit, nihil habeo quod cum amicitia Scipionis possim
260   comparare. Numquam illum ne minima quidem re offendi quod quidem senserim; nihil audivi ex eo ipse quod nollem. Una domus erat, idem victus isque communis; neque militia solum sed etiam peregrinationes rusticationesque communes. Nam quid ego de studiis dicam cognoscendi semper aliquid atque dis-
265   cendi, in quibus, remoti ab oculis populi, omne otiosum tempus contrivimus? Quarum rerum recordatio et memoria si una cum illo occidisset, desiderium coniunctissimi atque amantissimi viri ferre nullo modo possem. Sed nec illa exstincta sunt alunturque potius et augentur cogitatione et memoria mea; et si illis plane
270   orbatus essem, magnum tamen affert mihi aetas ipsa solacium, diutius enim iam in hoc desiderio esse non possum; omnia autem brevia tolerabilia esse debent etiam si magna sunt.

Haec habui quae de amicitia dicerem. Vos autem hortor ut ita virtutem locetis, sine qua amicitia esse non potest, ut, ea
275   excepta, nihil amicitia praestabilius putetis. (100–04, excerpts)

"School of Athens" (with Plato and Aristotle at center)
Raphael, 1508
Stanze di Raffaelo, Vatican Palace, Vatican State

LIVY'S HISTORY OF ROME: "LEGENDS OF EARLY ROME" AND "HANNIBAL AND THE 2ND PUNIC WAR"

Titus Livius, "Livy" as he is commonly known, is one of the most highly regarded of Rome's historians. Born in the prosperous north Italian town of Patavium (modern Padua), possibly in 59 B.C., he was likely educated there before moving to Rome. Concerning his life we have remarkably few details: he was married (perhaps to a Cassia Prima), had two sons and a daughter, and came to know well and in many respects admire the emperor Augustus. The region around Patavium was noted for its stern moral conservatism, which proved to be an important influence on Livy's works, a corpus that included some early philosophical dialogues (now lost) and his monumental 142-volume history of Rome, the *Ab Urbe Condita* ("From the Founding of the City").

Writing during the reign of Augustus, Livy shared the emperor's concern over the moral decline that plagued Roman society; "we can tolerate neither our vices nor their remedies" *(nec vitia nostra nec remedia pati possumus),* he wrote in the Preface to his history. Nevertheless, as he also makes clear in his Preface, he intended his work to be a kind of remedy, a moral remedy, and many of his narratives, especially those looking back to the early republic, were designed and choreographed to portray the glory days of a heroic past as an exemplum for present and future generations. Although Livy was obviously not, therefore, a strictly scientific historian in our sense of the word, he did employ a range of literary sources, often comparing different accounts, and his rich pages provide an accurate assessment of what his fellow Romans thought about the *mores* and *gravitas* and *fides* and *virtus* of their forebears.

Livy's ethical didacticism and the frequently epic qualities of his narrative have caused his work, and rightly so, to be regarded in certain respects as the prose counterpart to the *Aeneid,* the grand epic of his somewhat older contemporary Vergil. Not only does the *Ab Urbe Condita* begin with an account of Aeneas' wanderings, which Livy acknowledges is more akin to the tales poets tell than to genuine history, but the diction of his writing is very often, and deliberately, dramatic and rhetorical (with its many speeches in both direct and indirect discourse), and highly poetic. The first-century A.D. rhetorician and educator Quin-

tilian referred to the "milky richness" *(lactea ubertas)* of his style, a quality that readers of the following selections will come to savor.

Of Livy's original 142 volumes, composed over a period of about 40 years (ca. 25 B.C.–A.D. 17, the year of his death) and ranging from Rome's founding down to 9 B.C., only Books 1–10 and 21–45 survive essentially intact; we have, in addition, some fragments and quotations from later authors, as well as brief summaries *(periochae)*, composed in the fourth century, of nearly all the missing books. The passages excerpted for this volume include, from Books One and Two, some of the best known legends of early Rome (Romulus and Remus, the Horatii and the Curiatii, the expulsion of the Tarquins, Horatius at the bridge) and, from Books 21–22, Hannibal's invasion of Italy and his stunning victories over the Romans at Trasimene in 217 B.C. and the next year at Cannae, one of the most disastrous military defeats in European history. Readers will appreciate throughout these selections Livy's consummate narrative skill and his steadfastly patriotic aim of demonstrating the valor and high moral character of the Roman people and their heroes even in the face of catastrophic adversity.

Battle of Cannae
Illuminated manuscript
Inv. RF 5271
Louvre
Paris, France
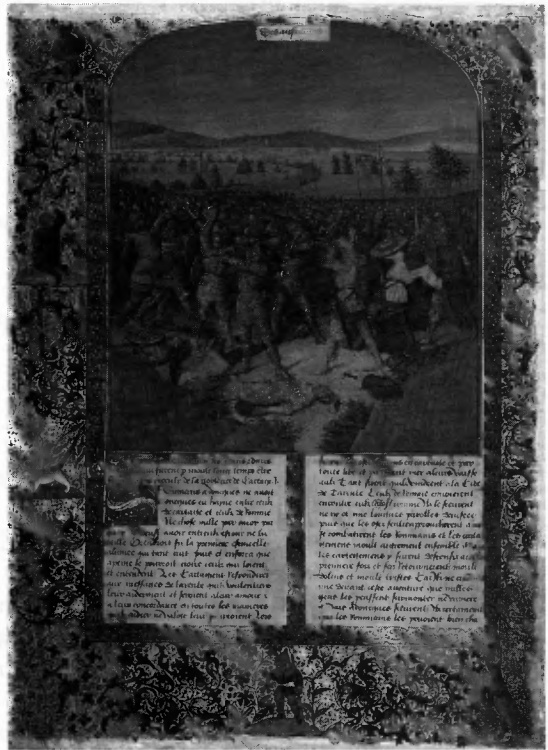
1. **Proca:** Livy has just recounted the legend of Aeneas' founding of Lavinium, of his son Ascanius' transfer of the people to Alba Longa, and of the succession of Alban kings down to Proca, the father of Numitor and Amulius.

    regnat: Livy frequently employs the HIST. PRES. tense.

2. **stirpis: stirps,** *trunk, stock, family, lineage.*

    maximus: i.e., in years, *oldest.*

    Silviae gentis (3): so-called after Silvius, the son of Ascanius.

3. **legat: legare,** *to appoint, bequeath.*

4. **plus . . . potuit:** i.e., *had greater power.*

    verecundia: *respect, reverence;* with **aetatis,** the respect due to Numitor's seniority.

6. **interemit: interimere,** *to take away, destroy, kill.*

    filiae Reae Silviae: in Eng. usually spelled *Rhea Silvia;* DAT. OF SEPARATION with **adimit.**

    speciem: species, *view, appearance, semblance.*

7. **Vestalem:** the Vestal Virgins in the service of the goddess of hearth fire took a vow of chastity; breaking this vow meant death.

8. **partus:** gen. of **partus,** *offspring, giving birth.*

    adimit: adimere, *to take away.*

9. **debebatur . . . fatis:** a recurrent theme also in Vergil's *Aeneid;* the vb. is sg. as the subjs. **origo** and **principium** constitute a single idea.

10. **secundum:** prep. + acc., *following, after.*

11. **edidisset: edere,** *to give forth, give birth to.*

    seu . . . seu: = **sive . . . sive,** *whether . . . or.*

    rata: reri, *to think, believe;* sc. **est.**

    deus auctor (12): i.e., *(having) a god as. . . .*

12. **honestior:** *more honorable,* pred. adj.

    Martem: *Mars,* the god of warriors and warfare, second only to Jupiter in his importance to the Romans.

13. **nuncupat: nuncupare,** *to name.*

    dii: = **dei; dii** and **di** are alternative nom. pl. forms.

14. **vincta: vincire,** *to bind.*

15. **iubet:** sc. **rex.**

16. **divinitus:** adv., *divinely, providentially.*

    ripas: ripa, *bank (of a river).*

    Tiberis: *Tiber River;* subj. of both **poterat** and **dabat.**

    effusus: effundere, *to pour out.*

17. **stagnis: stagnum,** *standing water, pool;* sc. **in.**

    iusti . . . amnis: i.e., *of its regular stream.*

    posse . . . infantes (18): IND. STATE., depending on **spem . . . dabat; infantes** serves as both obj. of **ferentibus** and subj. of **posse mergi.**

18. **quamvis languida . . . aqua:** *by the water however sluggish.*

19. **velut:** adv., *as, just as, as if.*

    defuncti: defungi, *to perform, discharge, complete* + abl.; the partic. here is nom., agreeing with the subj. of **exponunt.**

    adluvie: adluvies, *overflow, pool, floodwater.*

LEGENDS OF EARLY ROME

Romulus and Remus

The birth of Romulus and Remus and their abandonment on the banks of the Tiber River.

Proca deinde regnat. Is Numitorem atque Amulium procreat; Numitori, qui stirpis maximus erat, regnum vetustum Silviae gentis legat.

Plus tamen vis potuit quam voluntas patris aut verecundia
5 aetatis. Pulso fratre, Amulius regnat. Addit sceleri scelus: stirpem fratris virilem interemit, fratris filiae Reae Silviae per speciem honoris, cum Vestalem eam legisset, perpetua virginitate spem partus adimit.

Sed debebatur, ut opinor, fatis tantae origo urbis maximique
10 secundum deorum opes imperii principium. Vi compressa Vestalis cum geminum partum edidisset, seu ita rata seu quia deus auctor culpae honestior erat, Martem incertae stirpis patrem nuncupat. Sed nec dii nec homines aut ipsam aut stirpem a crudelitate regia vindicant: sacerdos vincta in custodiam datur;
15 pueros in profluentem aquam mitti iubet.

Forte quadam divinitus super ripas Tiberis effusus lenibus stagnis nec adiri usquam ad iusti cursum poterat amnis et posse quamvis languida mergi aqua infantes spem ferentibus dabat. Ita velut defuncti regis imperio in proxima adluvie, ubi nunc

She-wolf with Romulus and Remus
Etruscan bronze, ca. 500 B.C. (the infants a later addition)
Museo Capitolino, Rome, Italy

20. **ficus Ruminalis:** *the fig-tree Ruminalis,* on the slope of the Palatine hill where there was a temple of Rumina, goddess of suckling infants.

    Romularem: *of Romulus;* the Romans were fond of etymologizing and readily associated the name **Ruminalis** with their founding king Romulus.

    vocatam: sc. **esse;** agreeing in gender with **ficus,** which, like most trees (and the word **arbor**), is f.

21. **solitudines:** in contrast to the dense population in Livy's time.

22. **tenet fama:** cp. our idiom "rumor has it"; the expression takes an IND. STATE. **(lupam . . . flexisse; eam . . . praebuisse).**

    fluitantem: fluitare, *to flow, float.*

    alveum: alveus, *trough, tub, basket.*

23. **tenuis:** *slender, thin;* here, *shallow, receding.*

    in sicco: siccus, *dry;* sc. **loco.** Livy often employs adjs. substantively.

24. **vagitum:** vagitus, *crying.*

25. **adeo:** adv., *to such a degree, so.*

    mitem: with **eam,** *gently;* Lat. often uses an adj. in the pred. where Eng. would employ an adv.

26. **lambentem:** lambere, *to lick.*

    pecoris: pecus, *flock.*

    Faustulo . . . nomen (27): i.e., **nomen fuisse (ei) Faustulo; Faustulo** is attracted into the case of the understood pron. **ei** (DAT. OF POSSESSION), *he had the name Faustulus.*

27. **ferunt:** *they say;* the vb. is common in this sense (cp. **fertur** below, *is said*) and often, as here, takes an IND. STATE.

    ad stabula: *at his hut;* from **stabulum,** *stable, lodging.*

28. **datos:** sc. **esse** and **pueros** as subj., still dependent on **tenet fama.**

29. **Albana re:** sc. **publica,** *the Alban state;* after Romulus and Remus had reached maturity, they discovered their true identities, murdered Amulius, and restored Numitor to the throne at Alba Longa.

30. **urbis condendae (31):** depends on **cupido;** the phrase recalls the title of Livy's history, *Ab Urbe Condita.*

31. **supererat: superesse,** *to be left over, survive,* here *to be excessive;* Alba Longa had become overpopulated.

32. **ad id:** *to this* (number).

    accesserant: adcedere, *to go to, approach, be added;* i.e., the population had also been increased by the shepherds (among whom Romulus and Remus had been reared).

    qui . . . facerent: *who altogether could easily hope,* i.e., whose combined numbers were so great that they were encouraged in their plans; a REL. CL. OF RESULT.

33. **parvam:** PRED. ADJ. with **Albam . . . fore.**

    prae: prep. + abl.; here, *in comparison with.*

    conderetur: SUBORDINATE CL. IN IND. STATE.

34. **avitum:** *ancestral,* referring in particular to Amulius and Numitor.

35. **foedum:** *foul, base, shameful.*

    certamen: *contest, struggle, fight.*

    coortum: sc. **est;** from **cooriri,** *to arise, break out.*

20   ficus Ruminalis est (Romularem vocatam ferunt), pueros expo-
      nunt. Vastae tum in his locis solitudines erant.

The twins are suckled by a wolf and reared by Faustulus.

      Tenet fama, cum fluitantem alveum, quo expositi erant
      pueri, tenuis in sicco aqua destituisset, lupam sitientem ex mon-
      tibus, qui circa sunt, ad puerilem vagitum cursum flexisse; eam
25   summissas infantibus adeo mitem praebuisse mammas ut lin-
      gua lambentem pueros magister regii pecoris invenerit—Faus-
      tulo fuisse nomen ferunt; ab eo ad stabula Laurentiae uxori
      educandos datos.

*Now grown, the twins wish to found a city on the Palatine and agree to
decide the leadership by augury.*

      Ita Numitori Albana re permissa, Romulum Remumque cu-
30   pido cepit in iis locis, ubi expositi ubique educati erant, urbis
      condendae. Et supererat multitudo Albanorum Latinorumque;
      ad id pastores quoque accesserant qui omnes facile spem face-
      rent parvam Albam, parvum Lavinium prae ea urbe quae con-
      deretur fore. Intervenit deinde his cogitationibus avitum ma-
35   lum, regni cupido, atque inde foedum certamen coortum a satis

"Romulus and Remus"
Peter Paul Rubens
17th century
Museo Capitolino
Rome, Italy

36.   **miti:** here, *innocent* or *uncontroversial.*
       essent: SUBJUNCT. OF QUOTED REASON.
37.   **ut . . . legerent (38):** dependent on the main vb. **capiunt.**
       quorum . . . essent: lit., *of whose protection these places were* = *under whose
       protection the region was;* the vb. is SUBJUNCT. BY ATTRACTION.
38.   **auguriis: augurium,** *augury, omen;* also known as "taking the auspices" (from
       avis, *bird*), this was the practice of determining the will of the gods by
       interpreting the flight of birds or similar omens.
       qui . . . daret, qui . . . regeret (39): REL. CL. OF PURPOSE, or, construing **qui** as
       interrogative (= **uter**), IND. QUEST.
39.   **Palatium Romulus, Remus Aventinum:** CHIASMUS; the Palatine and Aventine
       hills are adjacent.
       inaugurandum: inaugurare, *to take the auguries.*
40.   **templa:** *as sacred precincts,* in appos. with **Palatium** and **Aventinum;** originally
       templum indicated simply a sacred area marked out in the sky or on the
       ground as a place for taking omens or as a spot sacred to a divinity.
41.   **priori Remo:** *for Remus first (sooner),* DAT. OF REF.; the position of **priori** at
       the beginning of the sentence emphasizes Remus' advantage in time;
       Romulus' advantage was in quantity.
       sex vultures: in appos. with **augurium.**
43.   **multitudo:** i.e., of supporters.
       tempore . . . praecepto (44): lit., *the time (of the omen) having been taken as
       foremost,* i.e., on the grounds that they had received their omen sooner;
       CHIASMUS **(tempore illi . . . hi numero)** accentuates the conflicting claims.
44.   **trahebant:** *kept claiming.*
       cum altercatione: *in a dispute, in conflict of words.*
45.   **certamine:** ABL. OF CAUSE.
       irarum: the pl. emphasizes the *angry feelings* on both sides.
       caedem: caedes, *cutting, slaughter, murder.*
       ibi . . . cecidit (46): the very brevity of the sentence emphasizes the quickness
       with which the hotheaded brawl was over.
46.   **ictus: icere,** *to strike, hit.*
       vulgatior: not *more vulgar* but *more commonly known.*
       fama est: this construction typically governs an IND. STATE, here **Remum . . .
       transiluisse . . . inde . . . interfectum (esse).**
       ludibrio: ludibrium, *mockery, derision;* DAT. OF PURPOSE.
47.   **transiluisse: transilire,** *to leap over.*
       muros: murus, *wall.* According to this version, Romulus had apparently de-
       cided for himself that his omens were superior and had immediately
       begun constructing his walls, to a height of perhaps three or four feet,
       by the time Remus happened along; the walls followed the pomerium, a
       consecrated plowed boundary around the city, and so Remus' leap was
       actually an act of sacrilege.
       inde: adv., *thence, after that, thereupon.*
48.   **increpitans: increpitare,** *to call out to, reproach, rebuke.*
       sic: sc. **pereat.**
       quicumque: *whoever.*

miti principio. Quoniam gemini essent nec aetatis verecundia
discrimen facere posset, ut dii, quorum tutelae ea loca essent,
auguriis legerent qui nomen novae urbi daret, qui conditam im-
perio regeret, Palatium Romulus, Remus Aventinum ad in-
40   augurandum templa capiunt.

Remus is killed in an ensuing quarrel, and Romulus gains sole power.

Priori Remo augurium venisse fertur, sex vultures; iamque
nuntiato augurio cum duplex numerus Romulo sese ostendisset,
utrumque regem sua multitudo consalutaverat. Tempore illi
praecepto, at hi numero avium regnum trahebant. Inde cum al-
45   tercatione congressi, certamine irarum ad caedem vertuntur. Ibi
in turba ictus Remus cecidit. Vulgatior fama est ludibrio fratris
Remum novos transiluisse muros, inde ab irato Romulo, cum
verbis quoque increpitans adiecisset "Sic deinde quicumque
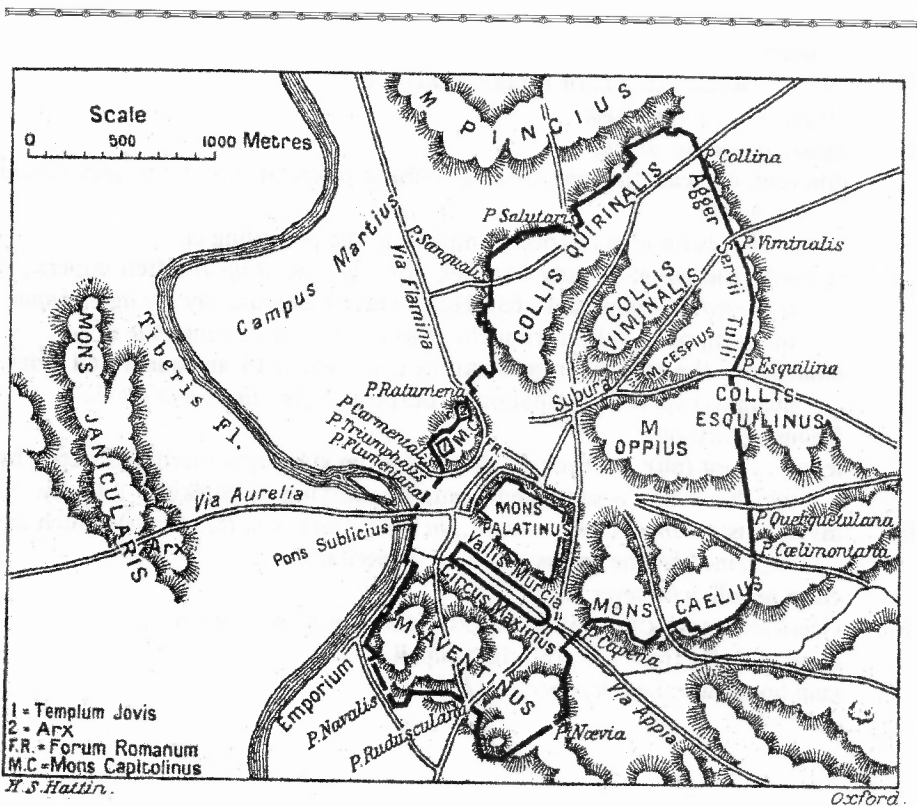
ROME

49.   **potitus . . . appellata (50):** sc. **est** with each; like other Lat. writers, Livy often omits forms of **esse** when easily understood from the context.

51.   **duobus . . . exercitus:** i.e., of Rome and Alba Longa. After Romulus had firmly established the Roman state and its constitution, and then mysteriously vanished in a storm and was transformed into the god Quirinus, the people elected as their king Numa, a man of peace and piety who was credited with having systematized Roman religious institutions. Rome's third king was the warlike Tullus Hostilius, among whose campaigns was one against Alba, the very city from which Romulus had come. To avoid great bloodshed in what amounted to a civil war, both sides agreed to the plan recounted in the following passage.

    trigemini: *triplet.*

52.   **aetate . . . viribus:** ABL. OF SPECIFICATION with **dispares.**

53.   **constat:** impers., *it is agreed.*

    nec ferme: *and scarcely, and hardly.*

    res: here, *story, tradition.*

    nobilior: *more renowned, well known.*

54.   **error:** *confusion, uncertainty.*

    utrius populi: i.e., whether Roman or Alban.

55.   **utroque:** adv., *in both directions;* i.e., Livy's sources were divided over the question.

    trahunt: sc. **nos.**

56.   **qui . . . vocent:** REL. CL. OF CHARACTERISTIC.

    Horatios: OBJ. COMPLEM.

57.   **agunt:** *negotiate, arrange.*

    dimicent: dimicare, *to fight, struggle;* **quisque** often takes a pl. vb., *they should each . . ..*

58.   **fore:** depends on idea of speech implicit in the preceding cl.

59.   **convenit: convenire,** *to come together, meet, be agreed upon;* often impers., *it is agreed* (so **convenerat,** 63). Here, where we would say *are agreed upon,* the compound subj. is thought of as a single idea, hence the sg. vb.

    dimicarent: the ANTICIPATORY SUBJUNCT. is used with **antequam** and **priusquam** to express anticipation or purpose, *before they should fight.*

    foedus: *treaty, pact.*

    ictum . . . est (60): the thought develops from striking a sacrificial victim by which a treaty is sanctified to simply ratifying or "striking" a treaty.

60.   **his legibus:** *on these conditions* (lit., *in accordance with these laws*), which are explained by the appos. cl. **ut . . . imperitaret.**

    cuius populi: *whichever nation's.*

61.   **vicissent:** SUBJUNCT. BY ATTRACTION within the JUSSIVE NOUN CL.

    is: sc. **populus** from the preceding **populi.**

    cum bona pace: i.e., *in peace and harmony.*

alius transiliet moenia mea!" interfectum. Ita solus potitus im-
50   perio Romulus; condita urbs conditoris nomine appellata.
(I.3.10–7.3, excerpts)

The Horatii and the Curiatii

Arrangements for settling a war between Rome and Alba by a fight
between two sets of triplets, one from each city.

Forte in duobus tum exercitibus erant trigemini fratres nec
aetate nec viribus dispares. Horatios Curiatiosque fuisse satis
constat, nec ferme res antiqua alia est nobilior; tamen in re tam
clara nominum error manet, utrius populi Horatii, utrius Cu-
55   riatii fuerint. Auctores utroque trahunt; plures tamen invenio
qui Romanos Horatios vocent; hos ut sequar inclinat animus.
Cum trigeminis agunt reges ut pro sua quisque patria dimi-
cent ferro: ibi imperium fore unde victoria fuerit. Nihil recusa-
tur, tempus et locus convenit. Priusquam dimicarent, foedus ic-
60   tum inter Romanos et Albanos est his legibus ut, cuius populi
cives eo certamine vicissent, is alteri populo cum bona pace im-
peritaret.

"The Oath of the Horatii"
Jacques Louis David, 18th century
Louvre, Paris, France

64.   **sui:** *their own (people)*, i.e., the people of each side.
      utrosque: their own set of triplets.
      deos ... intueri (66): the IND. STATE., with its several subjs. and two objs.
          (arma ... manus) is dependent on the speech act implied in **adhorta-**
          rentur, *urged them on (saying that ...).*

65.   **quidquid ... quidquid ... illorum ... illorum (66):** note how Livy's use of
          short, rapid-fire phrases, together with ANAPHORA, ASYNDETON, and AL-
          LITERATION **(patrios, patriam, parentes),** add intensity to the narrative.
      civium: PARTITIVE GEN. with the indef. **quidquid.**

66.   **et ... et:** the regular order would be **et feroces ... et pleni.**
      suopte: -pte is an indecl. suffix with intensive force, *very own.*
      pleni: the adj. can be used with either the gen. (as in the Eng. idiom) or the
          abl. (of means), as here.

69.   **expertes: expers,** adj. + gen., *having no part in, free from.*
      quippe: adv., *for, indeed.*
      agebatur: *was at stake.*

72.   **infestis:** *unsafe, dangerous, hostile.*
      terni: distributive numeral, *three each = the three young men on each side.*

74.   **increpuere:** = **increpuerunt;** from **increpare,** *to rattle, make a loud noise, re-*
          proach, rebuke.
      arma: strictly the defensive arms, and here probably the shields.
      micantes: micare, *to shake, shine, flash, sparkle.*

75.   **spectantis:** = **spectantes.**
      perstringit: perstringere, *to affect deeply, strike, move.*
      neutro: adv., *to neither side.*
      torpebat ... spiritusque (76): torpere, *to be stiff, sluggish, numb, stupefied;* i.e.,
          they seemed unable to speak or even breathe.
      consertis ... manibus: conserere, *to connect, join, engage (in battle);* i.e., in
          hand to hand fighting.

77.   **anceps:** here, *on both sides.*
      telorum: telum, *missile, javelin, spear, weapon.*

78.   **vulnera ... et sanguis:** HENDIADYS = *bloody wounds.*
      spectaculo essent: *were for a sight* (DAT. OF PURPOSE) = *were to be seen.*

80.   **corruerunt: corruere,** *to fall together, fall to the ground.*
      quorum: = **eorum;** where Eng. would use a pers. pron., Livy, like other class.
          authors, often employed the rel. pron. at the beginning of a sentence,
          with its antecedent in the preceding sentence.

81.   **legiones: legio,** *legion* or, here, any *military force.*

82.   **deseruerat: deserere,** *to desert.*
      exanimes: *lifeless, breathless* (here, with horror).
      vice: vicis, *change, vicissitude, lot, plight, fate;* ABL. OF CAUSE.

83.   **ut ... sic (84):** *as ... so,* but here better rendered *although ... nevertheless.*
      universis: *all together.*
      nequaquam: adv., *by no means.*

As the armies of both cities watch the contest, the tension mounts.

Foedere icto, trigemini sicut convenerat arma capiunt. Cum
sui utrosque adhortarentur, deos patrios, patriam ac parentes,
65   quidquid civium domi, quidquid in exercitu sit, illorum tunc
arma, illorum intueri manus, feroces et suopte ingenio et pleni
adhortantium vocibus, in medium inter duas acies procedunt.
Consederant utrimque pro castris duo exercitus, periculi magis
praesentis quam curae expertes; quippe imperium agebatur in
70   tam paucorum virtute atque fortuna positum. Itaque ergo erecti
suspensique in minime gratum spectaculum animos intendunt.

The battle begins, and one surviving Roman kills the three Albans.

Datur signum infestisque armis, velut acies, terni iuvenes
magnorum exercituum animos gerentes concurrunt. Ut primo
statim concursu increpuere arma micantesque fulsere gladii,
75   horror ingens spectantis perstringit; et neutro inclinata spe, tor-
pebat vox spiritusque. Consertis deinde manibus, cum iam non
motus tantum corporum agitatioque anceps telorum armorum-
que sed vulnera quoque et sanguis spectaculo essent, duo Ro-
mani super alium alius, vulneratis tribus Albanis, expirantes
80   corruerunt. Ad quorum casum cum conclamasset gaudio Alba-
nus exercitus, Romanas legiones iam spes tota, nondum tamen
cura deseruerat, exanimes vice unius quem tres Curiatii circum-
steterant. Forte is integer fuit, ut universis solus nequaquam par,
sic adversus singulos ferox. Ergo ut segregaret pugnam eorum,

Battle scene between
Romans and barbarians
Relief on sarcophagus
Portonaccio, Italy
1st–3rd centuries A.D.
Museo Nazionale Romano
Rome, Italy

85.   **capessit:** from **capere** + the desiderative infix **-ess-**, which indicates eagerness.
       ita . . . ut: *in such a way as,* i.e., as quickly as; **ut** in this sense ordinarily takes
             an indic. but here introduces **sineret** (from **sinere,** *to allow*), subjunct. in
             a SUBORDINATE CL. WITHIN IND. STATE.
       ratus: reri, *to think, suppose.*
       secuturos: i.e., **eos secuturos esse.**
86.   **aliquantum spatii:** *some distance,* ACC. OF EXTENT OF SPACE + PARTITIVE GEN.
87.   **videt . . . sequentes (88):** sc. **eos.**
88.   **sequentes . . . abesse:** note the easy shift from partic. phrase to IND. STATE.
       procul: adv., *far off, at a distance.*
89.   **uti:** a common alternate form of **ut.**
90.   **caeso: caedere,** *to cut, beat, slay.*
91.   **qualis . . . solet (92):** i.e., **qualis clamor ex insperato faventium** (from **favere,**
             to support, favor) **esse solet,** freely, *such as is customary of supporters at
             an unexpected turn of events.*
       ex insperato: lit., *out of the unhoped for.*
93.   **prius . . . quam: priusquam** is often separated into its component elements,
             as here.
       alter . . . alterum (94): *the one* (the more distant of the two remaining Cu-
             riatii) . . . *the other* (the closer of the two).
94.   **et:** as often, = **etiam,** *also,* i.e., as well as the first brother.
       conficit: conficere, *to accomplish, finish, destroy, kill.*
       Marte: here, as often, *fight, contest.*
95.   **singuli:** *one on each side.*
       alterum: i.e., Horatius; the word must be obj. of **dabat,** since both in position
             and in usage it balances **alter** at the beginning of the next cl.
       intactum . . . corpus et geminata victoria (96): both are nom., subj. of **dabat.**
96.   **ferocem:** OBJ. COMPL. with **alterum,** the phrase neatly surrounding the com-
             pound subj.
97.   **fessum . . . fessum:** *weary, exhausted;* ANAPHORA and ASYNDETON effectively
             intensify the scene's pathos.
98.   **strage: strages,** *ruin, slaughter;* with **fratrum,** OBJ. GEN.
       obicitur: reflexive use of the pass. (sometimes called the MIDDLE VOICE), indi-
             cating the subj. acting upon himself; lit., *is cast before = casts himself
             before, opposes.*
       nec . . . fuit (99): i.e., the fight was so one-sided, it was not a real contest.
100.   **manibus: manes,** *shades, ghosts;* the two slain Curiatii he regards as a kind of
             sacrifice to the dead, as in the case of Achilles' slaying of Hector.
       huiusce: the suffix **-ce** intensifies the demonstrative.

85   capessit fugam, ita ratus secuturos ut quemque vulnere adfectum corpus sineret. Iam aliquantum spatii ex eo loco ubi pugnatum est aufugerat, cum respiciens videt magnis intervallis sequentes, unum haud procul ab sese abesse. In eum magno impetu rediit, et dum Albanus exercitus inclamat Curiatiis uti
90   opem ferant fratri, iam Horatius, caeso hoste victor, secundam pugnam petebat. Tum clamore, qualis ex insperato faventium solet, Romani adiuvant militem suum et ille defungi proelio festinat. Prius itaque quam alter, qui nec procul aberat, consequi posset, et alterum Curiatium conficit. Iamque aequato Marte
95   singuli supererant, sed nec spe nec viribus pares. Alterum intactum ferro corpus et geminata victoria ferocem in certamen tertium dabat; alter, fessum vulnere, fessum cursu trahens corpus victusque fratrum ante se strage, victori obicitur hosti. Nec illud proelium fuit. Romanus exsultans "Duos," inquit, "fra-
100   trum manibus dedi; tertium causae belli huiusce, ut Romanus

"Battle of the Horatii and the Curiatii"
Cavaliere d'Arpino (Giuseppe Cesari), 17th century
Museo Capitolino, Rome, Italy

101.   **male:** here, *scarcely, with difficulty;* the rapidity of this final sentence pathetically harmonizes with the words **nec illud proelium fuit.**

   sustinenti: sc. **ei,** DAT. OF REF.

   superne: adv., *from above.*

102.   **iugulo: iugulum,** *throat;* sc. **in.** Like some other writers, especially the poets, Livy frequently omits a prep. where one would ordinarily be expected in class. Lat.

   defigit: defigere, *to fix, fasten, drive down.*

   spoliat: spoliare, *to strip, despoil, rob;* stripping the armor from a victim was common practice.

103.   **ovantes: ovare,** *to rejoice, exult.*

   eo maiore . . . quo (104): *all the greater as.*

104.   **res:** *the matter,* i.e., *the fight.*

   sepulturam: sepultura, *burial.*

106.   **alteri . . . alteri:** *the one group . . . the other group.*

   aucti: augere, *to increase, enlarge,* or here *exalt.*

   dicionis alienae facti: *subjected to foreign control;* PRED. GEN. OF POSSESSION, a construction found often in Livy.

107.   **quo . . . loco:** *where.*

108.   **distantia locis:** *standing apart in their locations* = *separated.*

   ut et: *as also, just as.*

110.   **addita:** sc. **est,** *was added,* i.e., to his other condemnatory remarks. Sextus Tarquinius (son of Lucius Tarquinius Superbus, the seventh king of Rome) had raped Lucretia, the wife of Tarquinius Collatinus, a trusting fellow army officer. Then, when she had called upon Collatinus, Lucius Junius Brutus, and others to swear vengeance against Sextus, Lucretia committed suicide and was buried at Collatia. Vowing the ouster of Superbus ("the Arrogant") and his family, Brutus hurried to Rome and delivered to an assembly in the Forum an intense oration, which Livy here recounts, about the fate of Lucretia and the crimes of Superbus.

112.   **regi:** DAT. OF SEPARATION.

   abrogaret: abrogare, *to repeal, abrogate, take away.*

113.   **coniuge: coniunx,** *wife.*

   ultro: adv., *to the farther side, beyond, voluntarily.*

114.   **concitandum: concitare,** *to stir up, excite.*

115.   **Ardeam:** *Ardea,* a town in Latium which Tarquinius Superbus was besieging at the time.

116.   **Lucretio:** *Lucretius,* father of the dead Lucretia.

   praefecto: praefectus, *overseer, commander, prefect.*

117.   **re nova:** a *new thing* politically is a *revolution.*

118.   **pergeret: pergere,** *to go on, keep on, continue, proceed.*

119.   **obvius fieret:** *become in the way* = *meet.*

121.   **clausae . . . indictum:** sc. **sunt** and **est.**

122.   **inde:** i.e., **ex castris.**

125.   **regnatum:** sc. **est;** impers. pass., *it was ruled* = *kings ruled.*

   ad liberatam: sc. **urbem,** *to the liberation of . . . .*

Albano imperet, dabo." Male sustinenti arma gladium superne
iugulo defigit; iacentem spoliat.

The dead are buried and the Albans accept Roman rule.

Romani ovantes ac gratulantes Horatium accipiunt, eo mai-
ore cum gaudio quo prope metum res fuerat. Ad sepulturam
105   inde suorum nequaquam paribus animis vertuntur, quippe im-
perio alteri aucti, alteri dicionis alienae facti. Sepulcra exstant
quo quisque loco cecidit, duo Romana uno loco propius Al-
bam, tria Albana Romam versus, sed distantia locis, ut et pug-
natum est. (I.24.1–25.14, excerpts)

The End of the Kingdom and the Beginning of the Republic

The last of the Etruscan Tarquins are expelled from Rome.

110   Addita superbia ipsius regis miseriaeque et labores plebis.
His atrocioribusque aliis memoratis, incensam multitudinem
perpulit ut imperium regi abrogaret exsulesque esse iuberet
L. Tarquinium cum coniuge ac liberis. Ipse, iunioribus qui ultro
nomina dabant lectis armatisque, ad concitandum inde adver-
115   sus regem exercitum Ardeam in castra est profectus. Imperium
in urbe Lucretio, praefecto urbis iam ante ab rege instituto, re-
linquit. Harum rerum nuntiis in castra perlatis, cum re nova
trepidus rex pergeret Romam ad comprimendos motus, flexit
viam Brutus (senserat enim adventum) ne obvius fieret; eodem-
120   que fere tempore diversis itineribus Brutus Ardeam, Tarquinius
Romam venerunt. Tarquinio clausae portae exsiliumque in-
dictum; liberatorem urbis laeta castra accepere, exactique inde
liberi regis.

*In place of a king, two consuls are appointed, Lucius Junius Brutus and
Lucius Tarquinius Collatinus.*

L. Tarquinius Superbus regnavit annos quinque et viginti.
125   Regnatum Romae ab condita urbe ad liberatam annos ducentos

126. **consules:** an anachronism, as the two chief republican magistrates were originally called "praetors."

   comitiis centuriatis: the *comitia centuriata,* regularly pl. as here, was one of a number of Roman assemblies of the people.

127. **ex commentariis:** *according to the regulations;* according to tradition, Servius Tullius, the sixth Roman king, had created the centuriate assembly and a number of new political procedures.

129. **nescio an:** *I am unsure whether* (strictly speaking, **an** introduces the second part of a double question **utrum . . . an**).

   nimis: with **muniendo.**

   undique: adv., *from* or *on all sides, everywhere.*

   eam: sc. **libertatem,** i.e., the Romans' newly gained liberty.

   minimis . . . rebus: *in the most trivial details,* as indicated in the following episode.

130. **modum excesserint:** sc. **Romani;** Livy wonders whether the Romans may have gone too far in their efforts at protecting their freedom from tyranny.

   alterius: i.e., one of the two.

   nihil aliud offenderit (131): i.e., *he gave no other offense.*

   nomen: i.e., Tarquinius.

132. **adsuesse:** = **adsuevisse;** this and the following infs. are part of an understood IND. STATE. giving the people's reasons for **invisum,** i.e., *(people said that) the Tarquins had been too accustomed,* etc.

   penes: prep. + acc., *in the possession of.*

133. **Tarquinios:** subj. of **nescire,** *did not know how.*

   privatos: PRED. ADJ. after **vivere.**

135. **contionem: contio,** *assembly* (especially for a magistrate to address the people).

   populum Romanum: subj. of **credere** in an IND. STATE. depending on an understood speech verb ("Brutus argued that . . . ").

139. **absolve:** *free,* i.e., *complete.*

141. **auctore me:** freely, *at my request, under my authority.*

   deest: deesse, *to be lacking.*

   amicus: nom. not voc., *as a friend.*

142. **forsitan:** adv., *perhaps.*

143. **animis:** i.e., of the citizens; dat. with **persuasum est,** here an impers. pass., where Eng. would say, *the citizens' hearts have been persuaded.*

   regnum: here, *kingship, monarchy;* subj. of **abiturum (esse),** inf. in IND. STATE. after the impers. **persuasum est.**

144. **Lavinium:** a town in Latium said to have been founded by Aeneas; Collatinus would hardly dare to go to an Etruscan city because of his part in the expulsion of Tarquinius Superbus.

145. **tulit:** sc. **legem.**

147. **P. Valerium:** Brutus is generally regarded as an historical figure, but Collatinus and Valerius likely were not.

   quo adiutore: adiutor, *assistant;* ABL. ABS., freely, *with whose assistance.*

quadraginta quattuor. Duo consules inde comitiis centuriatis a praefecto urbis ex commentariis Servi Tulli creati sunt: L. Iunius Brutus et L. Tarquinius Collatinus. (I.59.9–60.4, excerpts)

Collatinus, though loyal, is asked to leave Rome because of his name.

Ac nescio an, nimis undique eam minimisque rebus muni-
130   endo, modum excesserint. Consulis enim alterius, cum nihil aliud offenderit, nomen invisum civitati fuit: nimium Tarquinios regno adsuesse; pulso Superbo, penes Collatinum imperium esse; nescire Tarquinios privatos vivere; non placere nomen, periculosum libertati esse. Sollicitam suspicione plebem Brutus ad
135   contionem vocat: non credere populum Romanum solidam libertatem reciperatam esse; regium genus, regium nomen non solum in civitate sed etiam in imperio esse; id obstare libertati. "Hunc tu," inquit, "tua voluntate, L. Tarquini, remove metum. Meminimus, fatemur, eiecisti reges; absolve beneficium tuum,
140   aufer hinc regium nomen. Res tuas tibi non solum reddent cives tui, auctore me; sed, si quid deest, munifice augebunt. Amicus abi; exonera civitatem vano forsitan metu; ita persuasum est animis cum gente Tarquinia regnum hinc abiturum." Abdicavit se consulatu; rebusque suis omnibus Lavinium translatis, civi-
145   tate cessit. Brutus ex senatus consulto ad populum tulit ut omnes Tarquiniae gentis exsules essent. Collegam sibi comitiis centuriatis creavit P. Valerium, quo adiutore reges eiecerat.

"Tarquin and Lucretia"
Jan Sanders van Hemessen, 16th century
Musée des Beaux-Arts, Lille, France

148. **Lartem:** an Etruscan name or title.
     Clusinum: *of Clusium,* one of the most important Etruscan cities; many rich Etruscan tombs have been found in the vicinity.
149. **se:** here, as often, the reflex. pron. refers to the subj. of the vb. in the main clause (the Tarquins) rather than to the subject of its own clause (Porsenna).
150. **oriundos:** gerundive of **oriri,** *to rise, spring from;* here essentially = **ortos.**
152. **inultum:** *unavenged;* sc. **esse.**
     cum regem esse Romae tum (153): *not only for there to be a king at Rome but also;* the inf. phrase depends on **ratus.**
153. **amplum Tuscis ratus:** sc. **esse,** *thinking it was an important thing for the Etruscans.*
154. **alias:** adv., *at another time, elsewhere.*
155. **res:** sc. **publica.**
158. **saepiunt:** saepire, *to hedge in, enclose, protect.*
     alia . . . alia: *some things (= parts of the city) . . . others.*
     Tiberi obiecto (159): *with the Tiber situated in (= blocking) the way.*
159. **sublicius:** *built on piles,* in contrast to the regular use of arches; the old wooden bridge survived to the fifth century A.D.
160. **ni:** = **nisi.**
     Horatius Cocles: the cognomen means *one-eyed;* his story is one of the most famous and oldest Roman legends.
     id munimentum: i.e., Horatius.
162. **Ianiculum:** the *Janiculum,* a hill across the Tiber opposite the city of Rome.
164. **reprehensans:** frequentative intensive of **reprehendere,** *seizing and holding back.*
     obsistens: obsistere, *to stand in the way, withstand, resist.*
165. **obtestans: obtestari,** *to call to witness, implore, entreat.*
     deum: poetic form = **deorum.**
     testabatur: testari, *to bear witness to, declare, assert;* governing both **fugere** and **fore** in IND. STATE.
     nequiquam: adv., *in vain, to no purpose.*
166. **transitum pontem:** *the bridge, after they had crossed it* (lit., *the crossed bridge*).
     a tergo: we would say *at their rear* or *behind them.*
167. **Capitolio: Capitolium;** the *Capitoline hill* and the Palatine were situated in Rome across the Tiber from the Janiculum.
169. **monere, praedicere:** the HIST. INF. (with subj., if there is one, in the nom.) can be used as the main vb. in a passage of lively, rapid narration and is regularly translated as a past tense; here, *he warned, he instructed.* ASYNDETON adds further speed and intensity to the narrative.
170. **interrumpant: interrumpere,** *to break down.*
     se . . . excepturum (171): sc. **esse** and some speech vb., e.g., *saying that.*
     quantum: adv. *in so far as.*
171. **posset obsisti:** impers. pass.
     vadit: vadere, *to go, rush.*
     aditum: aditus, *approach, entrance.*

Some Ordeals of the Early Republic

The Tarquins flee to Lars Porsenna of Clusium, who leads an army against Rome.

Iam Tarquinii ad Lartem Porsennam, Clusinum regem, perfugerant. Ibi miscendo consilium precesque nunc orabant ne se,
150   oriundos ex Etruscis, eiusdem sanguinis nominisque, egentes exsulare pateretur; nunc monebant etiam ne orientem morem pellendi reges inultum sineret. Porsenna, cum regem esse Romae tum Etruscae gentis regem amplum Tuscis ratus, Romam infesto exercitu venit. Non umquam alias ante tantus terror se-
155   natum invasit: adeo valida res tum Clusina erat magnumque Porsennae nomen. (II.2.2–9.5, excerpts)

Horatius Cocles is posted to defend the bridge at Rome.

Cum hostes adessent, pro se quisque in urbem ex agris demigrant, urbem ipsam saepiunt praesidiis. Alia muris, alia Tiberi obiecto videbantur tuta. Pons sublicius iter paene hostibus
160   dedit, ni unus vir fuisset, Horatius Cocles: id munimentum illo die fortuna urbis Romanae habuit. Qui positus forte in statione pontis, cum captum repentino impetu Ianiculum atque inde citatos decurrere hostes vidisset, trepidamque turbam suorum arma ordinesque relinquere, reprehensans singulos, obsistens
165   obtestansque deum et hominum fidem, testabatur nequiquam deserto praesidio eos fugere; si transitum pontem a tergo reliquissent, iam plus hostium in Palatio Capitolioque quam in Ianiculo fore.

Cocles orders the bridge to be destroyed behind him, while he holds the Etruscans at the entrance.

Itaque monere, praedicere ut pontem ferro, igni, quacumque
170   vi possint, interrumpant; se impetum hostium, quantum corpore uno posset obsisti, excepturum. Vadit inde in primum aditum

172. **insignis . . . inter . . . terga:** lit., *conspicuous among the visible backs of those yielding to the fight* = *conspicuous among those who were clearly turning their backs to the fight.*

173. **comminus:** adv., *hand to hand, at close quarters.*

174. **obstupefecit:** obstupefacere, *to astonish, amaze.*

175. **Sp. Larcium ac T. Herminium:** *Spurius Larcius and Titus Herminius;* both family names are of Etruscan origin.
    ambos: *both.*

176. **procellam:** procella, *storm, onset.*
    tumultuosissimum: *the most turbulent part of.*

177. **parumper:** adv., *for a little while.*
    exigua: *scanty, small, little.*

178. **revocantibus:** sc. **eis** as antecedent of **qui;** those dismantling **(rescindere)** the bridge were calling out to Larcius and Herminius to retreat.

179. **circumferens . . . oculos:** Eng. would say *casting . . . glances.*
    truces: *savage, fierce.*
    minaciter: adv., *menacingly, threateningly.*

180. **proceres:** procer, *chief, noble.*
    provocare . . . increpare: both HIST. INFS.

181. **servitia:** = **servos.**
    immemores . . . venire (182): sc. **eos,** *(saying) that they, forgetful . . ., were coming.*

182. **alienam:** sc. **libertatem,** obj. of **oppugnatum.**
    oppugnatum: *to attack,* acc. of the supine.

183. **alius alium . . . circumspectant:** idiomatic, *one looked at one, one at another,* hence the pl. vb.

185. **quae cum . . . cuncta:** = **cum haec cuncta,** sc. **tela;** the INTERLOCKED WORD ORDER (ABAB: **quae . . . obiecto cuncta scuto**), common in poetry and in Livy's often poetic style, is perhaps meant to create a WORD PICTURE, with the word **cuncta** (= **omnia**) contained within the phrase **obiecto . . . scuto,** just as *all (the spears)* are themselves pictured as stuck within the circle of *the shield.*
    haesissent: haerere, *to cling, stick.*

186. **ingenti pontem . . . gradu:** another WORD PICTURE with Cocles' *huge stride* actually spanning *the bridge.*

187. **detrudere:** *to thrust down, dislodge.*
    simul fragor . . . simul clamor (188): ANAPHORA, ASYNDETON, and ASSONANCE all contribute to the poetic quality of the passage.
    fragor: *breaking, crash, noise.*

189. **pavore:** pavor, *trembling, terror.*

190. **Tiberine pater:** Cocles ritually prays to the god of the Tiber; river deities were regularly conceived of as male.
    precor: precari, *to pray, beseech, invoke.*

191. **accipias:** sc. **ut,** JUSSIVE NOUN CL. with **precor.**

193. **incolumis:** *uninjured, safe.*
    tranavit: tranare, *to swim across.*

pontis, insignisque inter conspecta cedentium pugnae terga, obversis comminus ad ineundum proelium armis, ipso miraculo audaciae obstupefecit hostes. Duos tamen cum eo pudor tenuit,
175 Sp. Larcium ac T. Herminium, ambos claros genere factisque. Cum his primam periculi procellam et quod tumultuosissimum pugnae erat parumper sustinuit; deinde eos quoque ipsos, exigua parte pontis relicta, revocantibus qui rescindebant, cedere in tutum coegit. Circumferens inde truces minaciter oculos ad
180 proceres Etruscorum, nunc singulos provocare, nunc increpare omnes, servitia regum superborum, suae libertatis immemores alienam oppugnatum venire. Cunctati aliquamdiu sunt, dum alius alium, ut proelium incipiant, circumspectant. Pudor deinde commovit aciem, et, clamore sublato, undique in unum hostem
185 tela coniciunt. Quae cum in obiecto cuncta scuto haesissent, neque ille minus obstinatus ingenti pontem obtineret gradu, iam impetu conabantur detrudere virum, cum simul fragor rupti pontis, simul clamor Romanorum alacritate perfecti operis sublatus, pavore subito impetum sustinuit.

Cocles leaps to safety in the Tiber and is honored by the Romans.

190 Tum Cocles "Tiberine pater," inquit, "te, sancte, precor, haec arma et hunc militem propitio flumine accipias!" Ita sic armatus in Tiberim desiluit, multisque superincidentibus telis, incolumis ad suos tranavit, rem ausus plus famae habituram ad posteros quam fidei. Grata erga tantam virtutem civitas fuit:

Lunette with Fortitude and Temperance above and Lucius Licinius, Leonidas, Horatius Cocles, Scipio Africanus the Elder, Pericles, and Cincinnatus
Pietro Perugino, 15th century
Collegio del Cambio, Palazzo dei Priori (Comunale), Perugia, Italy

195.   **statua:** Pliny the Elder reports that an ancient statue of Cocles was still to be seen in Rome in his own day (the first century A.D.).

      agri: PARTITIVE GEN. with **quantum,** *as much land as.*

      datum: i.e., **ei datum est.**

198.   **obsidendam:** obsidere, *to besiege.*

199.   **accitis: accire,** *to summon, send for.*

      et ad . . . et ut (200): *both for . . . and so that.*

200.   **frumenti: frumentum,** *grain.*

201.   **praedatum:** supine of **praedari,** *to plunder.*

202.   **brevi:** sc. **tempore.**

203.   **cetera:** i.e., the rest of their belongings.

204.   **propellere:** sc. **pecus.**

206.   **obsidio erat: obsidio,** *siege;* i.e., *the siege continued.*

      nihilo minus: i.e., despite a temporarily successful Roman action against some Etruscan foragers.

      caritate: caritas, here, *high price.*

207.   **inopia:** *want, lack, need.*

208.   **cum:** *when,* should introduce **constituit,** but the cl. becomes so involved that after **fuderit** Livy starts all over with **itaque.**

      C. Mucius: *Gaius Mucius Scaevola,* whose bold venture described here is another very old Roman legend.

      indignum videbatur: *it seemed disgraceful that,* governing the IND. STATE. that follows.

209.   **servientem, cum . . . esset:** lit., *being in slavery when under the kings* = *when enslaved under the kings.*

210.   **liberum eundem populum (211):** sc. **sed.**

212.   **fuderit:** sc. **populus Romanus;** strictly speaking, the hist. sequence of tenses requires **fudisset** in this SUBORDINATE CL. IN IND. STATE., but Livy often employs primary tenses in hist. sequence.

      facinore: facinus, *deed, crime.*

213.   **sponte:** a defective noun, used chiefly in the abl. = *of (one's) own accord, voluntarily, freely.*

214.   **iniussu:** another specialized abl. used adverbially, *without the orders.*

216.   **ut transfuga:** *as a deserter.*

      fortuna . . . adfirmante: ABL. ABS. giving the circumstances which would justify the accusation that Mucius was a **transfuga.**

      crimen: here, as often, *charge, accusation,* rather than *crime.*

218.   **praedo:** *robber, pirate, plunderer.*

      populationum: populatio, *plundering, devastation;* OBJ. GEN. with **ultor.**

      in vicem (219): *in turn.*

219.   **approbant:** Livy's narrative becomes suspenseful at this point, as the **patres** know the **facinus** and we as yet do not.

221.   **abdito: abdere,** *to put away, hide.*

      vestem: vestis, *clothing, garment.*

      confertissima: confertus, *closely packed, dense, crowded.*

222.   **prope:** prep. + acc., *near;* adv., *nearly, almost.*

195   statua in comitio posita; agri quantum uno die circumaravit datum. (II.10.1–12)

Porsenna now besieges Rome.

    Porsenna primo conatu repulsus, consiliis ab oppugnanda urbe ad obsidendam versis, praesidio in Ianiculo locato, ipse in plano ripisque Tiberis castra posuit, navibus undique accitis, et
200   ad custodiam, ne quid Romam frumenti subvehi sineret, et ut praedatum milites trans flumen per occasiones aliis atque aliis locis traiceret; brevique adeo infestum omnem Romanum agrum reddidit ut non cetera solum ex agris sed pecus quoque omne in urbem compelleretur, neque quisquam extra portas propel-
205   lere auderet.

Gaius Mucius resolves to do something about the desperate situation.

    Obsidio erat nihilo minus et frumenti cum summa caritate inopia, sedendoque expugnaturum se urbem spem Porsenna habebat, cum C. Mucius, adulescens nobilis, cui indignum videbatur populum Romanum servientem, cum sub regibus esset,
210   nullo bello nec ab hostibus ullis obsessum esse, liberum eundem populum ab isdem Etruscis obsideri quorum saepe exercitus fuderit—itaque magno audacique aliquo facinore eam indignitatem vindicandam ratus, primo sua sponte penetrare in hostium castra constituit. Dein metuens ne, si consulum iniussu et
215   ignaris omnibus iret, forte deprehensus a custodibus Romanis retraheretur ut transfuga, fortuna tum urbis crimen adfirmante, senatum adit. "Transire Tiberim," inquit, "patres, et intrare, si possim, castra hostium volo, non praedo nec populationum in vicem ultor: maius, si di iuvant, in animo est facinus." Appro-
220   bant patres.

Mucius enters the Etruscan camp and is arrested as he attempts to assassinate Porsenna.

    Abdito intra vestem ferro proficiscitur. Ubi eo venit, in confertissima turba prope regium tribunal constitit. Ibi cum sti-

223. **pari . . . ornatu (224):** ABL. OF DESCRIPTION with **scriba.**

224. **vulgo:** adv., here *openly.*

225. **sciscitari:** *to inquire, seek to know.*

      semet: -met is an intensive suffix occasionally added to pers. prons.

226. **aperiret: aperire,** *to open, reveal.*

      quo: adv., *whither, where* (motion to which—as opposed to **qua** in the next sent. = *where* in the sense of *at which place*); sc. something like *proceeding,* looking ahead to the next cl., i.e., *proceeding where.*

227. **obtruncat: obtruncare,** *to cut down, kill.*

      vadentem: sc. **Mucium,** in a general way parallel to **comprehensum** and obj. of **retraxissent;** in view of the complexity of the sent., this phrase is perhaps best translated as an independent cl. = *(He walked away) from there (the scene), proceeding where he had made . . ..*

228. **cruento:** *bloody.*

      mucrone: mucro, *sharp point (of a sword), sword.*

229. **satellites: satelles,** *attendant.*

230. **minas: mina,** *threat.*

232. **vocant:** SC. **me.**

233. **animi:** PARTITIVE GEN. with **minus;** we would say *nor am I less prepared.*

234. **Romanum:** PRED. ADJ. (cp. **errare humanum est**); a fine epigram by which to describe Roman character at its best.

235. **idem:** with **decus** *(honor),* i.e., **longus ordo (virorum) idem decus petentium.**

      proinde: adv., *therefore.*

      in hoc discrimen: *for this hazard, critical danger,* explained by the two cls. **ut dimices** and **(ut) habeas.**

236. **accingere:** reflexive pass. 2nd pers. sg. imper., *arm yourself (be armed).*

      in singulas horas: *from hour to hour.*

      capite: = **vita,** ABL. OF PRICE, a kind of instrumental abl. denoting the price or cost of the action; here, *for your life.*

      dimices: dimicare, *to fight, struggle.*

237. **regiae: regia,** *palace.*

      hoc . . . bellum (238): adj. and noun, often widely separated in Livy, here frame the entire sentence, adding emphasis to Mucius' bold declaration.

238. **nullam . . . timueris (239): ne** or a similar negative + the perf. subjunct. in 2nd pers. = a negative command.

239. **uni . . . erit:** *the affair will be between you alone and (us) one by one.*

240. **infensus:** *hostile.*

      circumdari ignes (241): lit., *fires to be put around him* = *him to be burned.*

241. **minitabundus:** *threatening.*

      expromeret: expromere, *to disclose, tell.*

      propere: adv., *quickly.*

242. **quas insidiarum . . . minas:** = **quas minas insidiarum.**

      ambages: *ambiguous words, riddles.*

      en: interj., *behold, see.*

      tibi: *for yourself,* DAT. OF REF.

243. **vile:** *cheap, worthless.*

pendium militibus forte daretur, et scriba cum rege sedens pari
fere ornatu multa ageret, eumque milites vulgo adirent, timens
225   sciscitari uter Porsenna esset, ne ignorando regem semet ipse
aperiret quis esset, quo temere traxit fortuna facinus, scribam
pro rege obtruncat. Vadentem inde, qua per trepidam turbam
cruento mucrone sibi ipse fecerat viam, cum concursu ad cla-
morem facto comprehensum regii satellites retraxissent, ante
230   tribunal regis destitutus, tum quoque inter tantas fortunae mi-
nas metuendus magis quam metuens, "Romanus sum," inquit,
"civis; C. Mucium vocant. Hostis hostem occidere volui, nec ad
mortem minus animi est quam fuit ad caedem: et facere et pati
fortia Romanum est. Nec unus in te ego hos animos gessi; lon-
235   gus post me ordo est idem petentium decus. Proinde in hoc dis-
crimen, si iuvat, accingere, ut in singulas horas capite dimices
tuo, ferrum hostemque in vestibulo habeas regiae. Hoc tibi iu-
ventus Romana indicimus bellum. Nullam aciem, nullum proe-
lium timueris; uni tibi et cum singulis res erit."

*Boldly demonstrating his courage, Mucius wins Porsenna's admiration
and is released.*

240   Cum rex, simul ira infensus periculoque conterritus, cir-
cumdari ignes minitabundus iuberet, nisi expromeret propere
quas insidiarum sibi minas per ambages iaceret, "En tibi," in-
quit, "ut sentias quam vile corpus sit eis qui magnam gloriam
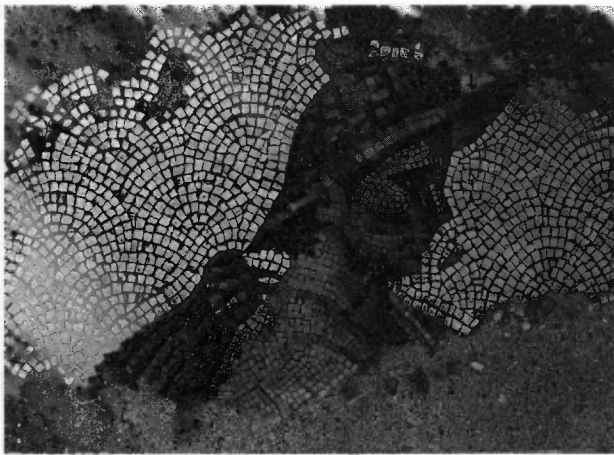
Roman soldier mosaic
Imperial palace, Istanbul, Turkey

244. **dextram:** sc. **manum.**
     foculo: foculus, *little fire, brazier.*
     quam cum (245): = **cum eam,** i.e., **dextram.**
245. **velut alienato . . . animo:** ABL. ABS.
     torreret: torrere, *to burn, roast.*
     attonitus: *thunderstruck, astonished.*
248. **macte:** in origin the voc. of **mactus,** *honored,* but treated as indecl.; the common idiomatic phrase **macte virtute,** which often = *well done, congratulations,* here with **iuberem esse** means something like *honored for your courage.*
251. **meritum:** *merit, service.*
     quando quidem: conj. (sometimes written as a single word), *since.*
253. **nequisti:** = **nequivisti,** from **nequire,** *to be unable;* the implied main cl. follows, "I will tell you what you want to know."
254. **hac via:** *in this way* or *manner.*
     grassaremur: grassari, *to proceed (against).*
255. **cuiusque . . . primi:** sc. **sors,** *the lot of each one first* = *of each in order.*
     quoad: conj., *how long, as long as, until.*
     opportunum: lit., *suitable;* here, *accessible (to us), vulnerable.*
257. **Scaevolae:** from **scaevus,** *left,* dat. by attraction to **cui;** we would say *to whom the cognomen Scaevola* (the "Left-handed") *was given.*
     clade: clades, *destruction, loss.*
     cognomen: the formal Roman name was composed of three elements, the **nomen** (indicating the **gens** or family), the **praenomen** (the given name, which stood before the **nomen**), and the **cognomen** (which stood after the **nomen** and in origin must have been rather like what we call a nickname, often based on some physical characteristic as here in the case of Gaius Mucius Scaevola).
258. **et . . . casus . . . et . . . dimicatio (260):** both subjs. of **moverat.**
259. **casus:** here, *experience.*
     texisset . . . superessent (260): the reasons for dispatching ambassadors expressed in these two cls. are those Livy attributes to Porsenna **(eum)** and not his own, hence the SUBJUNCT. OF QUOTED REASON.
260. **subeunda dimicatio:** freely, *having to undergo an assault.*

*"Mucius Scaevola
Confronting King Porsenna"
Bernardo Cavallino
1650
Kimbell Art Museum
Fort Worth, Texas*

vident," dextramque accenso ad sacrificium foculo inicit. Quam
245 cum velut alienato ab sensu torreret animo, prope attonitus mi-
raculo rex, cum ab sede sua prosiluisset amoveriqrue ab altaribus
iuvenem iussisset, "Tu vero abi," inquit, "in te magis quam in
me hostilia ausus. Iuberem macte virtute esse, si pro mea patria
ista virtus staret: nunc iure belli liberum te intactum invio-
250 latumque hinc dimitto."

The terrified Porsenna offers to make peace with Rome.

Tunc Mucius quasi remunerans meritum, "Quando quidem,"
inquit, "est apud te virtuti honos, ut beneficio tuleris a me quod
minis nequisti: trecenti coniuravimus principes iuventutis Ro-
manae ut in te hac via grassaremur. Mea prima sors fuit; ceteri,
255 ut cuiusque ceciderit primi, quoad te opportunum fortuna dede-
rit, suo quisque tempore aderunt." Mucium dimissum, cui postea
Scaevolae a clade dextrae manus cognomen inditum, legati a
Porsenna Romam secuti sunt: adeo moverat eum et primi peri-
culi casus, a quo nihil se praeter errorem insidiatoris texisset, et
260 subeunda dimicatio totiens quot coniurati superessent, ut pacis
condiciones ultro ferret Romanis. (II.11.1–13.2, excerpts)

"Romulus and Remus Given Shelter by Faustulus"
Pietro da Cortona, 17th century
Louvre, Paris, France

2.   **in se convertit:** *attracted to him.*
    Hamilcarem: *Hamilcar Barca,* father of Hannibal and a Carthaginian general in the First Punic War (264–241 B.C.).
3.   **veteres milites:** veterans of the First Punic War, nom. subj. of the HISTORICAL INFS. **credere** and **intueri.**
    vigorem in vultu vimque: ALLITERATION, just one of the many poetic features of Livy's style, adds emphasis; cp. the Eng. expression "vim and vigor."
4.   **habitum oris:** *expression.*
    lineamenta: lineamentum, *line,* (pl.) *(facial) features.*
    intueri: here, *they beheld, saw.*
    brevi: sc. **tempore.**
5.   **pater in se:** *the father (Hamilcar) in him,* i.e., *his similarity to his father.*
    momentum: here, *influence, importance;* PRED. NOUN.
6.   **parendum . . . imperandum (7):** gerunds in appos. with **res.**
7.   **habilius: habilis,** *handy, fit, skillful.*
    discerneres: POTENTIAL SUBJUNCT. in the indef. 2nd pers. sg., *you could decide.*
8.   **Hasdrubal:** son-in-law of Hamilcar, and the general currently in command of Spain; subj. of **malle.**
9.   **praeficere:** *to put in command.*
    quid: *anything.*
10. **agendum esset:** Livy uses the impf. and plpf. subjunct. to indicate repeated action; hence **ubi** = *whenever.*
    alio duce: ABL. ABS.
11. **capessenda: capessere,** *to seize eagerly, enter upon.*
12. **erat:** sc. **ei;** i.e., *he had.*
13. **caloris: calor,** *heat.*
    patientia par: sc. **erat;** forms of **esse** are omitted from several of the following cls., accelerating the narrative.
    cibi potionisque (14): with **modus,** *measure* or, here, *consumption;* Livy has Stoic ideals in mind.
14. **vigiliarum somnique (15):** with **tempora;** the word order deliberately parallels that of **cibi . . . modus** above.
15. **discriminata:** *were separated/demarcated.*
    id quod (16): i.e., **id tempus quod.**
16. **gerendis rebus:** dat. with the compound vb. **superesset;** lit., *that (time) which was more than enough for doing things* = *that (time) which was not required for things which had to be done.*
    ea: i.e., **quies.**
17. **strato: stratum,** *bed, blanket.*
    accersita: = **arcessita,** from **arcessere,** *to summon, obtain, induce.*
    sagulo: sagulum, *military cloak.*
    opertum: operire, *to cover.*
19. **vestitus:** *clothing.*
    nihil: here = a strong **non.**
    inter aequales: i.e., *in comparison to his fellow soldiers.*
    excellens: *superior, extravagant.*

HANNIBAL AND THE SECOND PUNIC WAR

The nature and character of Hannibal.

Missus Hannibal in Hispaniam primo statim adventu om-
nem exercitum in se convertit: Hamilcarem iuvenem redditum
sibi veteres milites credere; eundem vigorem in vultu vimque in
oculis, habitum oris lineamentaque intueri. Dein brevi effecit ut
5   pater in se minimum momentum ad favorem conciliandum es-
set. Numquam ingenium idem ad res diversissimas, parendum
atque imperandum, habilius fuit. Itaque haud facile discerneres
utrum imperatori an exercitui carior esset; neque Hasdrubal
alium quemquam praeficere malle, ubi quid fortiter ac strenue
10   agendum esset, neque milites alio duce plus confidere aut au-
dere. Plurimum audaciae ad pericula capessenda, plurimum con-
silii inter ipsa pericula erat. Nullo labore aut corpus fatigari aut
animus vinci poterat. Caloris ac frigoris patientia par; cibi po-
tionisque desiderio naturali, non voluptate, modus finitus; vi-
15   giliarum somnique nec die nec nocte discriminata tempora: id
quod gerendis rebus superesset quieti datum; ea neque molli
strato neque silentio accersita; multi saepe militari sagulo oper-
tum humi iacentem inter custodias stationesque militum con-
spexerunt. Vestitus nihil inter aequales excellens; arma atque

"Hamilcar Asks Hannibal to Swear His Hatred of the Romans"
Giovanni Battista Pittoni, 18th century
Pinacoteca di Brera, Milan, Italy

20.   **conspiciebantur:** *were conspicuous.*
       peditum: pedes, *foot-soldier;* pl., *infantry.*
21.   **conserto: conserere,** *to connect, join, engage (in battle).*
23.   **perfidia plus quam Punica:** since to the Romans **fides Punica** was proverbial
       for utter faithlessness and treachery, this characterization is the ulti-
       mate insult.
       deum: = **deorum.**
24.   **nullum ius iurandum:** *no oath* = *no respect for oaths.* This entire characteriza-
       tion reflects the Romans' bitter hatred of Hannibal, who had nearly de-
       feated Rome and for over a decade had roamed the heartland of Italy at
       will; in fact, based on the account of the historian Polybius and even
       some other passages in Livy, it is generally agreed that descriptions like
       the one here exaggerated the enormity of Hannibal's sins.
       indole: indoles, *nature, disposition, talent;* here, *natural endowment.*
25.   **triennio:** a not uncommon use of the ABL. OF TIME WITHIN WHICH where we
       might have expected the ACC. OF DURATION OF TIME.
       meruit: merere, *to earn (pay), serve as a soldier.*
26.   **nulla re . . . praetermissa (27):** ABL. ABS.
28.   **Druentia:** *the Durance,* a tributary of the Rhone in southeastern Gaul.
       campestri: lit., *like a field, level;* i.e., the march was largely through open
       country.
29.   **cum bona pace:** i.e., *with the good will;* ABL. OF ATTENDANT CIRCUMSTANCE.
       incolentium: incolere, *to inhabit.*
30.   **praecepta . . . erat:** *had been anticipated.*
       ex propinquo: Livy is fond of using a prep. and the n. of an adj. with adv. or
       adj. force: *from a near thing, close at hand, at close range.*
31.   **nives: nix,** *snow.*
       caelo: dat. with **immixtae.**
       prope: prep. + acc., *near;* adv., *nearly, almost.*
       tecta: tectum, *roof, dwelling, house.*
32.   **imposita:** we might say *perched on.*
       rupibus: rupes, *rock, cliff.*
       pecora: pecus, *cattle, herd.*
       iumenta: iumentum, *beast of burden, pack animal.*
       torpida: *stiff, numb.*
33.   **intonsi et inculti:** *unshaven and unkempt.*
34.   **gelu:** *frost, cold.*
       cetera . . . foediora: i.e., *more dreadful* than words can describe.
       erigentibus . . . agmen (35): *to those directing their line of march* = *to those
       marching.*
35.   **clivos: clivus,** *slope, hill.*
       imminentes: modifies **tumulos,** here *hilltops,* obj. of **insidentes montani** *(moun-
       taineers).*
36.   **consistere signa:** *to set up the standards,* i.e., to encamp.

20   equi conspiciebantur. Equitum peditumque idem longe primus
erat: princeps in proelium ibat, ultimus conserto proelio excede-
bat. Has tantas viri virtutes ingentia vitia aequabant: inhumana
crudelitas, perfidia plus quam Punica, nihil sancti, nullus deum
metus, nullum ius iurandum, nulla religio. Cum hac indole vir-
25   tutum atque vitiorum triennio sub Hasdrubale imperatore me-
ruit nulla re, quae agenda videndaque magno futuro duci esset,
praetermissa. (XXI.4.1–10)

*In crossing the Alps Hannibal's army suffers from both the cold and the
hostility of the natives.*

    Hannibal a Druentia campestri maxime itinere ad Alpes
cum bona pace incolentium ea loca Gallorum pervenit. Tum,
30   quamquam fama prius praecepta res erat, tamen ex propinquo
visa montium altitudo nivesque caelo prope immixtae, tecta in-
formia imposita rupibus, pecora iumentaque torpida frigore,
homines intonsi et inculti, animalia inanimaque omnia rigentia
gelu, cetera visu quam dictu foediora, terrorem renovarunt. Eri-
35   gentibus in primos agmen clivos apparuerunt imminentes tu-
mulos insidentes montani. Hannibal consistere signa iussit;

"Snow Storm: Hannibal and His Army Crossing the Alps"
Joseph Mallord William Turner, 1812
Tate Gallery, London, Great Britain

37. **quam . . . valle (38):** sc. **in;** Livy often omits the prep. in ABL. OF PLACE WHERE constructions, as again with **tumulis** below (39).

38. **die . . . consumpto (39):** ABL. ABS.

   aliud: Hannibal actually fortified his camp, but he pretended that he would try to lead his army through the pass at the foot of the heights held by the mountaineers. At the end of the day, however, when the natives finally realized that Hannibal was not going to carry out this apparent intention, they withdrew from their posts on the heights and returned home in the evening; Hannibal then built a large number of camp fires to make the enemy think that his army was spending the night in camp.

40. **expeditis:** sc. **militibus,** *his light-armed soldiers.*

   quoque: from **quisque.**

41. **raptim:** adv., *quickly, hurriedly.*

   angustias: angustiae, pl., *narrow pass, defile.*

   evadit: evadere, *to go forth, escape, travel over;* here, *marched up to* (i.e., out of the valley).

42. **prima . . . luce:** i.e., *at daybreak.*

   mota: sc. **sunt.**

43. **castellis: castellum,** *fort, fortified village.*

45. **alios . . . alios:** both with **hostes** (46).

   via: *by the (regular) road,* which ran along at the foot of the heights; ABL. OF ROUTE, a common construction related to the ABL. OF MEANS.

46. **iuxta:** *equally.*

   in . . . adsueti: *(the mountaineers) being accustomed to.*

47. **ab iniquitate:** the prep., not usual with an ABL. OF MEANS, is here employed to balance **ab hostibus.**

48. **plus:** with **certaminis** (PARTITIVE GEN.) **erat.**

   quoque: from **quisque.**

49. **ut . . . primus:** *he might be the first to.*

   certaminis: certamen, *contest, struggle, fight.*

50. **infestum:** *unsafe, hostile, dangerous;* OBJ. COMPL.

   qui . . . consternabantur (52): the basic structure of the rel. cl. is **qui et . . . territi trepidabant, et icti . . . consternabantur.**

51. **nemora: nemus,** *grove.*

   repercussae: *re-echoing.*

   augebant: augere, *to increase, amplify.*

52. **trepidabant: trepidare,** *to be agitated, alarmed, anxious.*

   icti: icere, *to strike, hit, stab.*

   adeo: adv., *to such a degree, so, even.*

53. **stragem: strages,** *ruin, slaughter.*

   sarcinarum: sarcina, *soldier's pack, baggage.*

54. **turba:** here, *crowding.*

   deruptae: *steep.*

55. **utrimque:** adv., *on both sides.*

   immensum altitudinis: a poetic circumlocution, using the n. adj. as a noun with a PARTITIVE GEN., lit., *an immensity of depth = an immense depth.*

56. **ruinae . . . modo:** *in the manner of a falling building.*

Gallisque ad visenda loca praemissis, castra quam extentissima
potest valle locat. Die deinde simulando aliud quam quod para-
tur consumpto, ubi primum digressos tumulis montanos laxa-
40   tasque sensit custodias, ipse cum expeditis, acerrimo quoque
viro, raptim angustias evadit iisque ipsis tumulis, quos hostes
tenuerant, consedit. Prima deinde luce castra mota, et agmen
reliquum incedere coepit. Iam montani, signo dato, ex castellis
ad stationem solitam conveniebant, cum repente conspiciunt
45   alios arce occupata sua supra caput imminentes, alios via trans-
ire hostes; diversis rupibus, iuxta in vias ac devia adsueti, decur-
runt. Tum vero simul ab hostibus simul ab iniquitate locorum
Poeni oppugnabantur, plusque inter ipsos, sibi quoque tendente
ut periculo primus evaderet, quam cum hostibus certaminis
50   erat. Equi maxime infestum agmen faciebant, qui et clamoribus
dissonis, quos nemora etiam repercussaeque valles augebant,
territi trepidabant, et icti forte aut vulnerati adeo consternaban-
tur ut stragem ingentem simul hominum ac sarcinarum omnis
generis facerent; multosque turba, cum praecipites deruptaeque
55   utrimque angustiae essent, in immensum altitudinis deiecit,
quosdam et armatos; sed, ruinae maxime modo, iumenta cum

Mont Blanc, viewed from the southeast

57.   **quae:** = **haec.**
58.   **parumper:** adv., *for a little while.*
61.   **inde:** adv., *then, after that, thereupon.*
       caput: i.e., *the principal town.*
       viculos: viculus, *hamlet.*
       capit et . . . aluit (62): sc. **Hannibal.**
62.   **cibo: cibus,** *food.*
       triduum: *a period of three days.*
63.   **nono die:** i.e., from the time when they began their ascent.
       iugum: *yoke, ridge.*
       perventum est: a common impers. vb., where Eng. would say *they arrived.*
       pleraque: *very many.*
64.   **errores:** here, *circuitous routes, detours.*
       stativa habita: sc. **castra,** *a stationary camp was made.*
       fessis: *tired, exhausted;* with **militibus,** a favorite device of word order in Livy
           (and in Lat. verse), framing an entire cl. with adj. + modified noun.
67.   **fessis:** sc. **eis,** dat. with **adiecit.**
       taedio: taedium, *weariness, disgust.*
       nivis: with **casus,** *snow-fall, snow-storm.*
68.   **sidere Vergiliarum:** *the constellation of the Pleiades,* which set toward the end
           of October, signalling the onset of wintry weather.
69.   **oppleta: opplere,** *to fill, cover.*
       segniter: adv., *sluggishly, slowly.*
70.   **pigritia:** *sluggishness, disinclination (to act).*
       emineret: eminere, *to project, stand out, be conspicuous.*
71.   **praegressus: praegredi,** + acc., *to precede, go in advance of;* Hannibal was
           likely proceeding on the basis of some special information.
72.   **consistere iussis militibus . . . ostentat (73):** Eng. would use two vbs. rather
           than the partic., *he ordered them to stop and he showed them . . .;* **ostentat,**
           to eagerly point out, display, is frequentative or intensive of **ostendere,** an
           indication of Hannibal's mood.
73.   **subiectos:** + dat., *lying at the foot of, adjacent to.*
       circumpadanos: *surrounding the Po;* from **Padus,** the Po River, the largest
           river in northern Italy.
       campos: campus, *field, plain.*
74.   **eos . . . transcendere:** IND. STATE., like the following inf. phrases, with *he said
           that* or some such speech vb. understood.
75.   **cetera:** i.e., *the rest (of their journey).*
       plana, proclivia: *level, downhill;* the ASYNDETON emphasizes the eagerness of
           Hannibal's assurances.
       fore: a common alternative form for **futurum esse,** fut. inf. of **sum.**
       summum: adv., *at most.*
76.   **in manu ac potestate:** a quasi-legal expression indicating total control.

oneribus devolvebantur. Quae quamquam foeda visu erant,
stetit parumper tamen Hannibal ac suos continuit ne tumultum
ac trepidationem augeret. Sed is tumultus momento temporis,
60   postquam liberata itinera fuga montanorum erant, sedatur.
Castellum inde, quod caput eius regionis erat, viculosque capit
et captivo cibo ac pecoribus per triduum exercitum aluit.
(XXI.32.6–33.11, excerpts)

Having passed the summit of the Alps, Hannibal shows his men the Po
Valley spreading southward.

Nono die in iugum Alpium perventum est per invia ple-
raque et errores. Biduum in iugo stativa habita, fessisque labore
65   ac pugnando quies data militibus; iumentaque aliquot, quae
prolapsa in rupibus erant, sequendo vestigia agminis in castra
pervenere. Fessis taedio tot malorum nivis etiam casus, occi-
dente iam sidere Vergiliarum, ingentem terrorem adiecit. Per om-
nia nive oppleta cum, signis prima luce motis, segniter agmen
70   incederet, pigritiaque et desperatio in omnium vultu emineret,
praegressus signa, Hannibal in promuntorio quodam, unde
longe ac late prospectus erat, consistere iussis militibus Italiam
ostentat subiectosque Alpinis montibus circumpadanos campos,
moeniaque eos tum transcendere non Italiae modo sed etiam
75   urbis Romanae: cetera plana, proclivia fore; uno aut summum
altero proelio arcem et caput Italiae in manu ac potestate ha-

Sarcophagus with battle between Romans and Germans
Museo Nazionale Romano, Rome, Italy

77.   **nihil ne hostibus . . . temptantibus (78):** the double negative simply empha-
          sizes the negative force, *with the enemy* (the mountaineers) *not even try-
          ing anything at all (against them).*
78.   **furta: furtum,** *theft;* pl. here, *raids.*
      per occasionem: i.e., *as the opportunity arose.*
      ceterum: adv., *but;* if the mountaineers were now no trouble, the steep south-
          ern slopes of the Alps proved more difficult than the western and north-
          ern ones had been.
80.   **ferme:** = **fere.**
      praeceps: *steep.*
82.   **ventum:** sc. **est;** cf. **perventum est** (63).
      rectis: here, *perpendicular, sheer;* ABL. OF DESCRIPTION with **rupem.**
83.   **expeditus:** *unimpeded, unencumbered, light-armed.*
      temptabundus: *feeling his way.*
84.   **virgulta: virgultum,** *shrub, bush.*
      stirpes: stirps, *trunk, root.*
85.   **velut:** conj., *as, just as, as if.*
87.   **nequiquam:** adv., *in vain, to no avail.*
89.   **id ipsum:** *this very purpose.*
      fodiendum: fodere, *to dig up.*
90.   **ad rupem muniendam:** on the model of **viam munire,** *to build* (lit., *fortify*) *a
          road* = *to build a road along the cliff.*
      unam: = **solam.**
91.   **ducti:** actually a partic. agreeing with **milites,** subj. of **faciunt,** but translate
          as if the reading were **milites ducti sunt et . . . struem faciunt.**
      caedendum esset: caedere, *to cut, beat, slay.*
92.   **circa:** *in the vicinity.*
      immanibus: *huge, immense.*
      detruncatis: here, *stripped of their branches.*
      struem: strues, *heap, pile.*
93.   **lignorum: lignum,** *wood, log.*
      et: = **etiam.**
94.   **succendunt: succendere,** *to set on fire.*
      ardentia: *hot, glowing.*
      infuso aceto: *with vinegar (wine) poured onto them;* there is some additional
          ancient evidence for this process of softening or breaking up rocks by
          heating them and then pouring vinegar over them, but Livy's account
          here is generally seen as exaggerated.
      putrefaciunt: putrefacere, *to soften, make brittle.*
95.   **ferro:** i.e., with iron tools.
      pandunt: pandere, *to extend, spread, lay open.*
      molliunt: *make gentler.*
96.   **anfractibus: anfractus,** *turn, bend;* here, *zigzag paths.*
      modicis: *moderate, easy, gentle.*
      clivos: clivus, *slope, hill.*

bituros. Procedere inde agmen coepit, iam nihil ne hostibus quidem praeter parva furta per occasionem temptantibus. Ceterum iter multo, quam in ascensu fuerat, difficilius fuit. Omnis

80 enim ferme via praeceps, angusta, lubrica erat ut non sustinere se a lapsu possent. (XXI.35.4–12, excerpts)

Hannibal breaks up a gigantic boulder which blocks his way, and completes the descent into Italy.

Ventum deinde ad multo angustiorem rupem atque ita rectis saxis ut aegre expeditus miles, temptabundus manibusque retinens virgulta ac stirpes circa eminentes, demittere sese posset.

85 Ibi cum velut ad finem viae equites constitissent, miranti Hannibali quae res moraretur agmen nuntiatur rupem inviam esse. Digressus deinde ipse ad locum visendum. Tandem nequiquam iumentis atque hominibus fatigatis, castra in iugo posita, aegerrime ad id ipsum loco purgato—tantum nivis fodiendum atque

90 egerendum fuit. Inde ad rupem muniendam, per quam unam via esse poterat, milites ducti, cum caedendum esset saxum, arboribus circa immanibus deiectis detruncatisque struem ingentem lignorum faciunt eamque, cum et vis venti apta faciendo igni coorta esset, succendunt ardentiaque saxa infuso aceto pu-

95 trefaciunt. Ita torridam incendio rupem ferro pandunt molliuntque anfractibus modicis clivos ut non iumenta solum sed

Barbarian fighting a Roman legionary
Roman stone relief, 2nd century A.D.
Louvre, Paris, France

97. **elephanti:** *war-elephants* were first employed against the Romans (and with great success) by the Greek general Pyrrhus in 280–279 B.C. Although the Carthaginians' elephants helped to terrify the natives in Hannibal's march through the Alps, they were apparently otherwise little used during the Second Punic War.

98. **fame: fames,** *hunger, starvation.*
    cacumina: cacumen, *top, peak (of a mountain).*

99. **pabuli: pabulum,** *fodder, grass, pasture;* here, PARTITIVE GEN. with **si quid,** *whatever grass (there was).*
    inferiora: sc. **loca.**

100. **apricos:** *sunny, warm.*
     colles: collis, *hill.*
     rivos: rivus, *stream.*

101. **cultu: cultus,** *culture, life, occupation;* abl. with **dignus.**
     muniendo: ABL. OF CAUSE with **fessis;** refers to **ad rupem muniendam** (90).

103. **hoc maxime modo:** *in this way for the most part;* since Livy's dramatic narrative of Hannibal's crossing of the Alps is more rhetorical than geographically literal, much uncertainty exists about the exact route taken.
     quinto mense: the march is usually dated May–September, 218 B.C.

104. **Carthagine Nova:** *New Carthage* in southeastern Spain, the point of departure for Hannibal's march to Italy.
     quidam auctores: the Greek historian Polybius is one important source.

106. **nobilis:** *well-known.*
     Trasumennum: *Lake Trasimene,* in central Italy, west of Perugia; several months after crossing the Alps into Italy, on the 21st of July 217 B.C., Hannibal's army of some 60,000 men dealt the Romans a devastating blow at this site, slaughtering 15,000 of their 25,000 troops along with their commander, the consul Gaius Flaminius.
     inter paucas memorata (107): i.e., *memorable as only a few are;* three other losses at Hannibal's hands were at Ticinus, Trebia, and Cannae.

107. **clades:** *calamity, disaster, slaughter.*

109. **urbem:** Rome.
     petiere: = **petierunt; -ere** is a common alternate ending for the 3rd pers. perf. tense.

112. **frequentis contionis modo:** *in the manner of a crowded assembly.*

113. **versa:** middle or reflexive use of the pass., *having turned itself to* or *turning to.*
     comitium et curiam: the meeting places for the assemblies and the senate.

114. **pugna . . . victi sumus (115):** laconic enough to suit even the Spartans, and undoubtedly intended to emphasize that **gravitas** *(seriousness, dignity, morale)* which was for so long one of the most noble and valuable characteristics of the Romans.

115. **quamquam:** conj., *although.*

116. **alius ab alio impleti rumoribus:** an example of the distributive sense of **alius,** meaning lit., *one person having been filled with rumors by one person and another by another,* or more smoothly, *filling one another with rumors.*

elephanti etiam deduci possent. Quadriduum circa rupem con-
sumptum, iumentis prope fame absumptis; nuda enim fere ca-
cumina sunt, et si quid est pabuli, obruunt nives. Inferiora valles
100 apricosque colles habent rivosque prope silvas et iam humano
cultu digniora loca. Ibi iumenta in pabulum missa, et quies mu-
niendo fessis hominibus data.

Hoc maxime modo in Italiam perventum est, quinto mense
a Carthagine Nova, ut quidam auctores sunt, quinto decimo die
105 Alpibus superatis. (XXI.36.1–38.1, excerpts)

Aftermath of the Romans' defeat at Lake Trasimene.

Haec est nobilis ad Trasumennum pugna atque inter paucas
memorata populi Romani clades. Quindecim milia Romanorum
in acie caesa; decem milia, sparsa fuga per omnem Etruriam,
diversis itineribus urbem petiere; duo milia quingenti hostium
110 in acie, multa postea ex vulneribus periere. Romae ad primum
nuntium cladis eius cum ingenti terrore ac tumultu concursus
in forum populi est factus. Et cum, frequentis contionis modo,
turba in comitium et curiam versa magistratus vocaret, tandem
haud multo ante solis occasum M. Pomponius praetor "Pugna,"
115 inquit, "magna victi sumus"; et quamquam nihil certius ex eo
auditum est, tamen alius ab alio impleti rumoribus domos re-

Allegory of Africa, Mosaic from Roman villa
Piazza Armerina, Sicily, Italy, 4th century A.D.

117. **caesum:** sc. **esse;** inf. in IND. STATE. after **referunt,** *they carry back to their homes the report that . . ..*

      superesse: from **supersum,** *to be left over, survive.*

119. **quot casus . . . fuerant:** *however many had been the misfortunes,* i.e., loss of life, flight, or capture.

120. **propinqui:** *relatives.*

      C. Flaminio: *Gaius Flaminius,* consul for the second time in 217, was a major political figure and reformer; his defeat at Trasimene was blamed by some on his failure to take the auspices and observe other religious practices.

121. **ignorantium:** modifies **eorum.**

122. **satis certum habet:** *know with any degree of certainty.*

123. **praetores:** the *praetors* had judicial functions and presided over the senate in the absence of the consuls.

      aliquot: indecl. adj., *several, some.*

      ab orto: sc. **sole,** *from the risen sun = from sunrise.*

124. **quonam duce:** *by what leader, pray;* the intensive suffix **-nam** adds a sense of urgency and desperation to the question.

125. **resisti . . . Poenis:** the impers. pass. inf. takes the same dat. noun it would have in the act. voice; idiomatic Eng., of course, would use an act. construction, *they might be able to resist the victorious Carthaginians.*

126. **adhibitum: adhibere,** *to hold to, apply, employ.*

127. **dictatorem dicendum:** in appos. with **remedium,** *a dictator to be appointed =* *the appointment of a dictator.* A sole dictator could be appointed to meet a specific emergency; his term was six months unless he completed his mission in less time, and his power was absolute.

128. **uno:** = **solo.**

      videbatur: sc. **dictator.**

130. **quod:** the **(id) quod** cl. looks forward to and is in appos. with the cl. **populus creavit.**

      eam diem (131): dies, usually m., was f. when referring to a specific day.

131. **Q. Fabium Maximum:** *Quintus Fabius Maximus* was a former consul and censor; his campaigns against Hannibal, including his famous delaying tactics, contributed much to the Romans' ultimate victory.

132. **magistrum equitum:** the *master of the horse,* usually appointed by the dictator himself, was his second in command.

      M. Minucium Rufum: *Marcus Minucius Rufus,* also a former consul, was subsequently elevated to the extraordinary position of joint dictator with Fabius; he died fighting in the battle of Cannae.

133. **muros: murus,** *wall.*

      turres: turris, *tower.*

134. **locis: locus** is often used without a prep. of place.

      videretur: *it seemed best;* SUBJUNCT. BY ATTRACTION.

      rescinderent: rescindere, *to tear away, tear down.*

ferunt consulem cum magna parte copiarum caesum, superesse paucos aut fuga passim per Etruriam sparsos aut captos ab hoste. Quot casus exercitus victi fuerant, tot in curas distracti
120 animi eorum erant, quorum propinqui sub C. Flaminio consule meruerant, ignorantium quae cuiusque suorum fortuna esset; nec quisquam satis certum habet quid aut speret aut timeat. Senatum praetores per dies aliquot ab orto usque ad occiden-tem solem in curia retinent, consultantes quonam duce aut
125 quibus copiis resisti victoribus Poenis posset. (XXII.7.1–14, ex-cerpts)

Quintus Fabius Maximus appointed dictator.

Itaque ad remedium iam diu neque desideratum nec adhibi-tum, dictatorem dicendum, civitas confugit. Et quia et consul aberat, a quo uno dici posse videbatur, nec per occupatam armis Punicis Italiam facile erat aut nuntium aut litteras mitti, nec
130 dictatorem praetor creare poterat, quod numquam ante eam diem factum erat, dictatorem populus creavit Q. Fabium Maxi-mum et magistrum equitum M. Minucium Rufum; hisque nego-tium ab senatu datum ut muros turresque urbis firmarent et prae-sidia disponerent quibus locis videretur, pontesque rescinderent
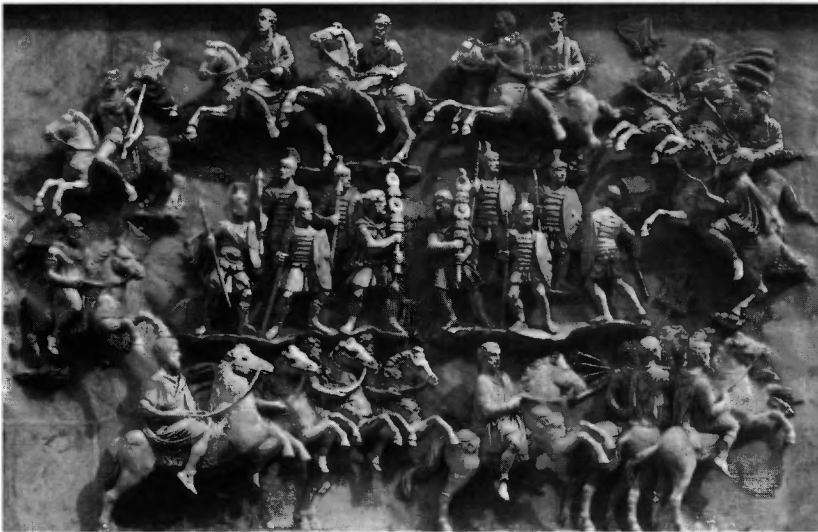
Battle scene, base of the column of Antoninus Pius
2nd century A.D.
Vatican Palace, Vatican State

135. **fluminum:** the Tiber and the Anio.

     penatibus: penates, *penates,* the household gods; the people's efforts now were to be devoted to the defense of the city and their homes rather than to the rest of Italy.

     dimicandum esse: dimicare, *to fight, struggle;* impers. pass. of the PASS. PERIPHRASTIC in an IND. STATE. governed by an understood speech vb.

136. **tueri:** *to protect, defend.*

     nequissent: nequire, *to be unable.*

137. **viam Latinam:** the *Via Latina,* a major road leading south from Rome, somewhat parallel to the Appian Way, only more inland.

139. **ducit:** sc. **exercitum.**

     nullo loco . . . commissurus (140): *intending to entrust himself to fortune in no place;* i.e., *determined not to entrust himself to (mere) luck in any place.* This policy of caution and watchful waiting earned Fabius the epithet **Cunctator** *(the Delayer)* and has given us the terms "Fabian tactics" and "Fabian socialism"; disregard of the policy in 216 B.C. led to the tremendous Roman defeat at Cannae.

     nisi . . . cogeret: the vb. is subjunct. in a SUBORDINATE CL. IN IND. STATE., depending on Fabius' intention implied in **commissurus.**

141. **nulla mora facta quin:** sc. **est,** *no delay was made but that* = *without delay.*

     Poenus: i.e., Hannibal.

     educeret: sc. **milites.**

     copiam . . . pugnandi faceret (142): idiomatic, *and prepared for battle.*

143. **increpans: increpare,** *to make a loud noise, shout angrily.*

144. **Martios:** *of Mars, martial, warlike.*

     Romanis: DAT. OF REF.

145. **demum:** adv., *at length, at last, finally.*

146. **quaesissent:** SUBJUNCT. OF QUOTED REASON, indicating that the reason given for Hannibal's anxiety was his own, not Livy's.

147. **extemplo:** adv., *immediately.*

     constantiam: i.e., Fabius'.

     hauddum: = **nondum,** *not yet.*

148. **crebro:** adv., *frequently.*

     populando: populari, *to devastate, plunder.*

151. **omitteret:** here, *lose contact with.*

152. **magistrum equitum:** Minucius, Fabius' second in command.

153. **ferox:** *impetuous.*

     consiliis ac lingua: ABL. OF SPECIFICATION.

154. **pro . . . compellabat (155):** sc. as dir. obj. **eum** (Fabius), with **segnem** and **timidum** functioning as OBJ. COMPL., *he kept calling him sluggish instead of one who delays . . . ;* note the effect of the impf.

     adfingens: adfingere, *to fashion, invent.*

156. **aquas Sinuessanas:** *the waters (= mineral springs) of Sinuessa,* a coastal town in Latium, near its border with Campania.

     populatio: *devastation;* Hannibal's plundering of Rome's allies continues.

135   fluminum: pro urbe ac penatibus dimicandum esse, quando Italiam tueri nequissent. (XXII.8.5–7)

Fabius' tactics save the day but irritate some of his own people no less than Hannibal.

    Dictator, exercitu consulis accepto, in viam Latinam est egressus, unde itineribus summa cum cura exploratis ad hostem ducit, nullo loco, nisi quantum necessitas cogeret, fortunae se
140   commissurus. Quo primum die in conspectu hostium posuit castra, nulla mora facta quin Poenus educeret in aciem copiamque pugnandi faceret. Sed ubi quieta omnia apud hostes nec castra ullo tumultu mota videt, increpans quidem victos tandem Martios animos Romanis, in castra rediit. Ceterum tacita
145   cura animum incessit, quod tum demum, edocti malis, Romani parem Hannibali ducem quaesissent. Et prudentiam quidem novi dictatoris extemplo timuit. Constantiam hauddum expertus, agitare ac temptare animum movendo crebro castra populandoque in oculis eius agros sociorum coepit. Fabius per
150   loca alta agmen ducebat modico ab hoste intervallo, ut neque omitteret eum neque congrederetur. Sed non Hannibalem magis infestum tam sanis consiliis habebat quam magistrum equitum. Ferox rapidusque consiliis ac lingua immodicus—primo inter paucos, dein propalam in vulgus—pro cunctatore segnem, pro
155   cauto timidum, adfingens vicina virtutibus vitia, compellabat.
    Usque ad aquas Sinuessanas populatio pervenit. Ingentem

157.   **tamen ... latius:** the actual destruction was enormous, but the area from
       which people fled was greater. Undoubtedly Hannibal was counting on
       this sort of thing coupled with spectacular victories to break the loyalty
       of the members of the Roman federation and cause wholesale deser-
       tions, thus bringing Rome to her knees and obviating the need for a
       siege. In this Hannibal made his greatest miscalculation.

       Numidae: *the Numidians,* i.e., the Carthaginians.

158.   **flagrarent: flagrare,** *to blaze, be inflamed.*

159.   **videlicet:** adv., *clearly, of course, to be sure.*

160.   **abnuebant: abnuere,** *to deny, refuse.*

       quod: the antecedent is **melioribus parere.**

       melioribus: i.e., the Romans.

161.   **Volturnum flumen:** *the Volturnus river,* in Campania.

       castra: sc. **Hannibalis.**

162.   **exurebatur: exurere,** *to burn up.*

       amoenissimus: *the most lovely.*

       ager: here, *district, countryside.*

163.   **Massici montis:** *Mount Massicus,* along the border of Latium and Campania,
       north of the Volturnus.

164.   **de integro:** *anew.*

       accensa: accendere, *to kindle, set on fire, stir up, incite;* sc. **est.**

       in suos ... intentus (165): *alert to his own men.*

167.   **infamem:** *unpopular.*

169.   **actum est:** impers. pass.; **agere** here = *discuss.*

170.   **enimvero:** adv., *indeed, certainly.*

171.   **dictatorem:** subj. of the IND. STATE., which continues through the next several
       cls. to the end of the sent., following an understood speech vb.

       rei bene gerendae: freely, *the proper management of matters;* dat. with **obsti-
       tisse.**

172.   **gestae:** sc. **rei bene,** paralleling **rei bene gerendae;** the ever-cautious Fabius
       had expressed reluctance to celebrate even a recent battle in which the
       Romans had enjoyed a minor victory.

       sedulo: adv., *deliberately.*

173.   **quo:** *by which action,* but essentially = **ut; quo** was often used to introduce a
       PURPOSE CL. containing a comparative adj. or adv.

174.   **promulgaturum:** sc. **se** as subj. of the IND. STATE.; with **rogationem,** *to intro-
       duce a bill.*

175.   **de aequando ... iure:** the whole purpose of the dictatorship was to secure in
       an emergency greater efficiency by granting all the imperium to one man
       instead of two consuls; thus the measure here proposed was by no means
       modicam, as it nullified the original intent of the dictatorship. After be-
       ing appointed co-dictator, Minucius and his army were trapped by Han-
       nibal until they were rescued by Fabius; thereafter Minucius had the
       good sense to recognize Fabius as his superior until the end of Fabius'
       six-month term.

cladem, fugam tamen terroremque latius Numidae fecerunt;
nec tamen is terror, cum omnia bello flagrarent, fide socios di-
movit, videlicet quia iusto et moderato regebantur imperio, nec
160   abnuebant, quod unum vinculum fidei est, melioribus parere.
(XXII.12.1–13.11, excerpts)

Disagreement with Fabius increases both in the army and at Rome.

Ut vero, postquam ad Volturnum flumen castra sunt posita,
exurebatur amoenissimus Italiae ager villaeque passim incen-
diis fumabant, per iuga Massici montis Fabio ducente, tum
prope de integro seditio accensa. Fabius pariter in suos haud
165   minus quam in hostes intentus, prius ab illis invictum animum
praestat. Quamquam probe scit non in castris modo suis sed
iam etiam Romae infamem suam cunctationem esse, obstinatus
tamen tenore eodem consiliorum, aestatis reliquum extraxit. De
iis rebus persaepe et in senatu et in contione actum est. Tum
170   M. Metilius, tribunus plebis, id enimvero ferendum esse negat:
non praesentem solum dictatorem obstitisse rei bene gerendae,
sed absentem etiam gestae obstare, et in ducendo bello sedulo
tempus terere, quo diutius in magistratu sit solusque et Romae
et in exercitu imperium habeat; nunc modicam rogationem pro-
175   mulgaturum de aequando magistri equitum et dictatoris iure;

"The Banquet of Syphax"
(with Scipio Africanus)
Geraert van der Strecken
17th century
Palazzo Labia
Venice, Italy

176.   **nec . . . ne ita quidem:** the double negatives do not cancel each other, *and not even so.*

   prius . . . quam (177): *sooner . . . than, until.*

   mittendum: sc. **esse,** still IND. STATE.

177.   **Flamini:** who had died at Trasimene.

   suffecisset: sufficere, *to suffice, supply, substitute, appoint* (in place of another).

178.   **suasor:** *recommender, advocate.*

   C. Terentius Varro: praetor in 218, *Gaius Terentius Varro* became consul in 216, when, along with Lucius Aemilius Paulus, he led the Roman army that Hannibal crushed at the battle of Cannae.

179.   **loco . . . sordido:** ABL. OF ORIGIN, a common construction, usually, as here, without a prep.; his father was a butcher and he was himself a plebeian and, in Livy's somewhat biased account, a demagogue.

180.   **cum:** conj.

   orationibus: delivered by a tribune who had inveighed against the patricians.

181.   **rogando collegae:** *for electing a colleague,* DAT. OF PURPOSE.

182.   **experta: experiri;** lit., *having tried = realizing from experience.*

   competitoribus: one of the two consuls had to be a plebeian and the other a patrician, but the patrician vote had been split among several candidates, so that none had received the required majority and only Varro had been initially elected; thus the patricians were especially eager to find a candidate who would be a strong match for his plebeian colleague.

183.   **plebei:** an alternate fifth decl. form for **plebi;** Paulus had earlier been consul, in 219 B.C., and was involved in an indictment brought by the people against his colleague, hence his hostility.

   recusantem: recusare, *to decline, refuse, protest.*

184.   **ad petitionem:** *to the campaign for election, to run for election.*

185.   **eum proficiscentem:** i.e., Paulus; Fabius, no longer dictator, addresses the consul as he leaves for the war.

186.   **tui:** gen. of **ego,** *like you;* some adjs. like **similis** which usually take the dat. may be modified by a gen. as here.

187.   **supervacanea:** *superfluous.*

189.   **nescio an:** *I do not know whether = I am inclined to suppose.*

190.   **adversarius:** *political opponent.*

   maneat te: *may await you = may prove to be.*

191.   **rem . . . hunc (192):** a highly effective ASYNDETON.

192.   **nobilior:** here, *more notorious.*

193.   **ita res se habet:** a common idiom, = *the situation (the fact of the matter) is this.*

194.   **ratio:** here, *method, system.*

195.   **stultorum:** it is the mark of a fool to learn simply by trial and error, simply by experience undirected by reason.

196.   **ratio:** here, *reasoning, judgment.*

   donec: conj., *as long as.*

197.   **sede: sedes,** *seat, abode, home.*

   solo: solum, *soil, earth.*

199.   **commeatibus: commeatus,** *supplies, provisions.*

nec tamen ne ita quidem prius mittendum ad exercitum Q. Fabium quam consulem in locum C. Flamini suffecisset. Unus inventus est suasor legis, C. Terentius Varro, qui priore anno praetor fuerat, loco non humili solum sed etiam sordido ortus. (XXII.14.1–25.18, excerpts)

Gaius Terentius Varro, a plebeian, and Lucius Aemilius Paulus, a patrician, are elected consuls.

180   Cum his orationibus accensa plebs esset, C. Terentius consul unus creatur ut in manu eius essent comitia rogando collegae. Tum experta nobilitas parum fuisse virium in competitoribus, L. Aemilium Paulum infestum plebei, diu ac multum recusantem, ad petitionem compellit. (XXII.35.1–3, excerpts)

Fabius exhorts Paulus as the latter sets out with Varro against Hannibal.

185   Q. Fabius Maximus sic eum proficiscentem adlocutus fertur: "Si aut collegam, id quod mallem, tui similem, L. Aemili, haberes aut tu collegae tui esses similis, supervacanea esset oratio mea. Erras enim, L. Paule, si tibi minus certaminis cum C. Terentio quam cum Hannibale futurum censes: nescio an infestior
190   hic adversarius quam ille hostis maneat te. Atqui si hic, quod facturum se denuntiat, extemplo pugnaverit, aut ego rem militarem, belli hoc genus, hostem hunc ignoro, aut nobilior alius Trasumenno locus nostris cladibus erit. Ita res se habet: una ratio belli gerendi adversus Hannibalem est, qua ego gessi. Nec
195   eventus modo hoc docet—stultorum iste magister est—sed eadem ratio, quae fuit futuraque, donec res eaedem manebunt, immutabilis est. In Italia bellum gerimus, in sede ac solo nostro; omnia circa plena civium ac sociorum sunt; armis, viris, equis, commeatibus iuvant iuvabuntque—id iam fidei documentum in
200   adversis rebus nostris dederunt; meliores, prudentiores, con-

201. **tempus diesque:** = *each day that passes.*
203. **illi:** DAT. OF POSSESSION.
204. **usquam:** adv., *anywhere.*
      in diem rapto (205): *by what he has plundered for the day.*
205. **eius:** here a weak demonstrative with **exercitus**, delayed by attraction to the rel. cl., *of that army.*
      Hiberum: *the Ebro river,* in eastern Spain.
206. **fame quam ferro:** ALLITERATION emphasizes the contrast; the style throughout this speech is highly rhetorical.
207. **victus:** *food.*
      suppeditat: suppeditare, *to supply, furnish, suffice (for).*
208. **superaturi simus:** *we are going to overcome;* the ACT. PERIPHRASTIC, sometimes termed the "fut. subjunct.," formed with the fut. act. partic. + subjunct. of **sum,** here with a CL. OF IDEAL CERTAINTY after **dubitas quin,** *do you doubt that.*
210. **idem . . . idem (211):** i.e., an immediate battle.
      tui: nom. pl.; sc. **milites.**
212. **resistas oportet (213): oportet** may take a JUSSIVE SUBJUNCT. or an inf.
215. **falsa infamia:** i.e., the unfounded charges which his political enemies would make against him.
      nimis saepe: with **laborare.**
216. **aiunt:** often employed, as here, with a proverbial expression.
217. **sine . . . vocent (218): sine** from **sinere,** *let them call you;* **ut** is often omitted as the introductory word in a JUSSIVE NOUN CL.
218. **metuat:** volo and its compounds may take the subjunct. (with or without **ut/ ne**) as well as the more common inf.
221. **tuae potestatis:** PRED. GEN. OF POSSESSION = *in your own control.*
223. **desis: deesse** + dat., *to be wanting, fail.*
224. **properanti: properare,** *to hasten, act in haste.*
226. **sane:** adv., *indeed, truly, certainly.*
      fatentis: agrees with **consulis** but explains **haud laeta,** *admitting that those things.*
227. **factu:** abl. of the supine with **facilia.**
      consuli: DAT. OF POSSESSION.
228. **virium atque auctoritatis:** PARTITIVE GEN. with **quid.**
229. **fore:** implied IND. STATE. (continued in the next sent.); although **quid** should technically introduce an IND. QUEST., the cl. has the force of an emphatic statement, and hence the inf. is used.
230. **telis: telum,** *missile, javelin, spear, weapon.*
231. **caput:** i.e., *his life.*

stantiores nos tempus diesque facit. Hannibal contra in aliena,
in hostili est terra, inter omnia inimica infestaque, procul ab
domo, ab patria; neque illi terra neque mari est pax; nullae eum
urbes accipiunt, nulla moenia; nihil usquam sui videt; in diem
205 rapto vivit; partem vix tertiam exercitus eius habet quem Hi-
berum amnem traiecit; plures fame quam ferro absumpti, nec
his paucis iam victus suppeditat. Dubitas ergo quin sedendo
superaturi simus eum?
  "Haec una salutis est via, L. Paule, quam difficilem in-
210 festamque cives tibi magis quam hostes facient. Idem enim tui
quod hostium milites volent; idem Varro consul Romanus quod
Hannibal Poenus imperator cupiet. Duobus ducibus unus re-
sistas oportet. Resistes autem, si adversus famam rumoresque
hominum satis firmus steteris, si te neque collegae vana gloria
215 neque tua falsa infamia moverit. Veritatem laborare nimis saepe
aiunt, exstingui numquam: vanam gloriam qui spreverit, veram
habebit. Sine timidum pro cauto, tardum pro considerato, im-
bellem pro perito belli vocent. Malo te sapiens hostis metuat
quam stulti cives laudent. Omnia audentem contemnet Hanni-
220 bal, nihil temere agentem metuet. Nec ego, ut nihil agatur, mo-
neo, sed ut agentem te ratio ducat, non fortuna; tuae potestatis
semper tu tuaque omnia sint; armatus intentusque sis; neque
occasioni tuae desis neque suam occasionem hosti des. Omnia
non properanti clara certaque erunt; festinatio improvida est et
225 caeca." (XXII.38.13–39.22, excerpts)

Paulus replies firmly but with apprehension.

  Adversus ea consulis oratio haud sane laeta fuit, magis fa-
tentis ea, quae diceret, vera quam facilia factu esse: quid consuli
adversus collegam seditiosum ac temerarium virium atque auc-
toritatis fore? Se optare ut omnia prospere evenirent; sed si quid
230 adversi caderet, hostium se telis potius quam suffragiis iratorum
civium caput obiecturum. (XXII.40.1–3, excerpts)

232.   **satis exploratis:** this much, at least, the Romans had learned from Flaminius'
          fatal carelessness at Trasimene.
          Poenum . . . Poenum (233): the first **Poenum** may refer to Hannibal (cp. 141
          above) but the second, a collective sg., clearly means *the Carthaginians.*
233.   **Cannas:** *Cannae,* a town on the Aufidus River in Apulia in southeast Italy.
          bina castra (234): *two camps,* one on either side of the river; with nouns like
          castra that were normally used only in the pl. the Romans regularly
          employed distributive numerals **(singuli, bini, terni,** etc.) instead of
          cardinals.
234.   **nactus: nancisci,** *to find, obtain;* here = *entertaining* (the hope).
          facturos: sc. **esse;** for the idiom **copiam pugnandi facere,** see 141–42 above.
235.   **procursatione: procursatio,** *a charge, skirmish.*
236.   **sollicitari:** HIST. INF.; the subj., **Romana castra,** is delayed.
          seditione: *dissension, quarrel;* the soldiers were quarreling over the best tac-
          tics to employ, just as their consular generals were.
238.   **speciosum:** *beautiful, splendid;* but, when sarcastic, as here, = *specious.*
240.   **postero die:** Paulus had been in command on the day before and had re-
          strained the Romans from attacking; only one consul at a time had com-
          mand of the troops, on alternate days.
          sors: *lot, fate;* with **imperii,** *responsibility for command.*
          nihil: = **non,** *not at all.*
243.   **cornua:** Eng. would say *the wings.*
          tenuere: for the form, see on **petiere** (109).
244.   **laevum:** *left, left-hand.*
          Gemino Servilio: *Gnaeus Geminus Servilius,* consul in 217, here was given
          command of the center of the army.
245.   **tuenda data:** *was given to be looked after, was given for command.*
246.   **quosque:** i.e., *each of his units.*
247.   **Hasdrubal . . . Maharbal . . . Magone (248):** respectively, one of Hannibal's
          unit commanders (not the Hasdrubal mentioned above in line 8), his
          chief cavalry officer, and his youngest brother, Mago.
248.   **adversus:** here, an adj. agreeing with **ventus,** *against, adverse (to).*
249.   **pulvere: pulvis,** *dust.*
250.   **ademit: adimere,** *to take away.*
251.   **parte altera:** Paulus had been in command of the right wing of the army, but
          when those troops had been routed he moved to the **altera pars,** i.e.,
          the center.
252.   **funda:** *sling-stone.*
          et: = **etiam.**
253.   **confertis:** *closely packed, dense, crowded;* here, sc. **equitibus,** *with his cavalry-
          men in close formation.*
254.   **omissis . . . equis:** *their horses having been let go* = *having dismounted.*
255.   **pepulerunt:** sc. **hostes** as subj.
256.   **superantes:** here, *surviving.*
          dissipati sunt: dissipare, *to scatter.*
258.   **praetervehens:** *riding by.*
259.   **cruore: cruor,** *blood, gore.*

*The battle of Cannae: the consuls Varro and Paulus find Hannibal
ready to fight but are themselves disunited.*

Consules satis exploratis itineribus sequentes Poenum, ut
ventum ad Cannas est et in conspectu Poenum habebant, bina
castra communiunt. Hannibal, spem nactus facturos copiam
235   pugnandi consules, dirigit aciem lacessitque Numidarum pro-
cursatione hostes. Inde rursus sollicitari seditione militari ac
discordia consulum Romana castra, cum Paulus Flaminii te-
meritatem Varroni, Varro Paulo speciosum timidis ac segnibus
ducibus exemplum Fabium obiceret. (XXII.44.1–5, excerpts)

The lines of battle are finally drawn up.

240   Postero die Varro, cui sors eius diei imperi erat, nihil con-
sulto collega, signum proposuit instructasque copias flumen
traduxit, sequente Paulo, quia magis non probare quam non
adiuvare consilium poterat. Consules cornua tenuere, Teren-
tius laevum, Aemilius dextrum; Gemino Servilio media pugna
245   tuenda data.
Hannibal prima luce quosque in acie locabat. Duces corni-
bus praeerant, sinistro Hasdrubal, dextro Maharbal; mediam
aciem Hannibal ipse cum fratre Magone tenuit. Ventus adver-
sus Romanis coortus, multo pulvere in ipsa ora volvendo, pros-
250   pectum ademit. (XXII.45.5–46.9, excerpts)

The bravery and death of Paulus, and the rout of the Romans.

Parte altera pugnae Paulus, quamquam primo statim proe-
lio funda graviter ictus fuerat, tamen et occurrit saepe cum
confertis Hannibali et aliquot locis proelium restituit, prote-
gentibus eum equitibus Romanis, omissis postremo equis quia
255   consulem et ad regendum equum vires deficiebant. Pepulerunt
tamen iam paucos superantes et labore ac vulneribus fessos;
inde dissipati omnes sunt equosque ad fugam qui poterant re-
petebant. Cn. Lentulus, tribunus militum, cum praetervehens
equo sedentem in saxo cruore oppletum consulem vidisset,
260   "L. Aemili," inquit, "quem unum insontem culpae cladis ho-

262.   **comes:** *companion, comrade.*

263.   **ne . . . feceris:** JUSSIVE SUBJUNCT., *do not make.*
       funestam: *disastrous,* i.e., more catastrophic than it already is.

264.   **luctus:** *grief, sorrow;* gen.

265.   **macte virtute esto:** idiomatic, *be honored for your courage, bravo.*

266.   **cave:** (sometimes **cave ne**) + the JUSSIVE SUBJUNCT. **absumas,** a prohibition, lit., *beware of wasting* = *do not waste.*
       miserando: miserari, *to pity.*
       exiguum: *scanty, small, little.*

269.   **Fabio:** sc. **nuntia;** the vb. takes a JUSSIVE SUBJUNCT. in the preceding cl., an IND. STATE. here.

270.   **memet:** emphatic for **me.**

271.   **patere:** imper. of **patior.**
       reus: *defendant;* Paulus had earlier been charged with misappropriation of booty (in 219 B.C.) but not convicted.
       e: *as a result of, after.*

272.   **alieno crimine:** lit., *by a charge belonging to another,* i.e., *by incriminating another.*

274.   **haec . . . agentes:** i.e., as Lentulus and Paulus were engaged in this exchange.

276.   **undique:** adv., *from all sides, on all sides.*
       effuse: adv., *far and wide.*

277.   **consul alter:** Varro.
       insertus: inserere, *to introduce, join.*

278.   **Venusiam:** *Venusia,* the modern Venosa, a town in Apulia about 30 miles southwest of Cannae.

281.   **tantadem prope . . . pars (282):** *nearly the same proportion.*

282.   **caesi:** sc. **esse.**

283.   **haec est:** Eng. would say *such was.*

284.   **ceteri:** i.e., in contrast to Maharbal.
       circumfusi: circumfundere, *to pour around;* pass., *to gather around.* Eng. would use a finite vb., not a partic., in parallel with **gratularentur** and **suaderent,** *when the others had gathered round and were . . . .*

285.   **ut . . . et . . . sumeret et . . . daret (286):** JUSSIVE NOUN CL., depending on **suaderent,** *that he should both . . . and . . . .*
       perfunctus: perfungi + abl., *to perform, complete.*
       bello: these Carthaginians considered that the war, and not merely the battle, had been won.
       diei: PARTITIVE GEN. with **quod reliquum esset,** *what was left of the day.*

287.   **cessandum:** sc. **esse,** impers. pass., *that there ought to be no delay at all.*

288.   **immo:** adv., *on the contrary, indeed.*

289.   **Capitolio: Capitolium** was used both of the temple and the hill, apparently regarded as the **caput** of Rome; here either *on the Capitoline* or *in the Capitol.*
       epulaberis: epulari, *to banquet, feast.*
       equite: here used as a collective noun.

diernae dei respicere debent, cape hunc equum, dum et tibi
virium aliquid superest et comes ego te tollere possum ac prote-
gere. Ne funestam hanc pugnam morte consulis feceris; etiam
sine hoc lacrimarum satis luctusque est."

265   Ad ea consul: "Tu quidem, Cn. Corneli, macte virtute esto;
sed cave, frustra miserando, exiguum tempus e manibus hos-
tium evadendi absumas. Abi; nuntia publice patribus urbem
Romanam muniant ac, priusquam victor hostis advenit, prae-
sidiis firment; privatim Q. Fabio Aemilium, praeceptorum eius
270   memorem, et vixisse adhuc et mori. Memet in hac strage mili-
tum meorum patere exspirare, ne aut reus iterum e consulatu
sim aut accusator collegae exsistam ut alieno crimine inno-
centiam meam protegam."

Haec eos agentes prius turba fugientium civium, deinde
275   hostes oppressere; consulem ignorantes quis esset, obruere telis;
Lentulum inter tumultum abripuit equus. Tum undique effuse
fugiunt. Consul alter, seu forte seu consilio nulli fugientium in-
sertus agmini, cum quinquaginta fere equitibus Venusiam per-
fugit. (XXII.49.1–14, excerpts)

The Romans' catastrophic losses.

280   Quadraginta quinque milia quingenti pedites, duo milia
septingenti equites, et tantadem prope civium sociorumque
pars caesi dicuntur. Capta eo proelio tria milia peditum et
equites mille et quingenti dicuntur. Haec est pugna Cannensis.
(XXII.49.15–50.1, excerpts)

Hannibal fails to follow up his victory.

Hannibali victori cum ceteri circumfusi gratularentur sua-
285   derentque ut, tanto perfunctus bello, diei quod reliquum esset
noctisque insequentis quietem et ipse sibi sumeret et fessis daret
militibus, Maharbal, praefectus equitum, minime cessandum
ratus, "Immo ut quid hac pugna sit actum scias, die quinto,"
inquit, "victor in Capitolio epulaberis. Sequere; cum equite, ut

290. **prius venisse quam venturum:** sc. **esse** with **venturum** and **te** as subj. of both infs.; cp. Eng., "you will be there before they know it."

291. **maiorque quam ut:** *and greater than (that) he could = too great for him to be able;* the **ut** clause is result.

293. **pensandum: pensare,** *to weigh carefully.*
    opus esse: *there is need, it is necessary;* in this common phrase, **opus** is indecl. and can be accompanied by various constructions including the abl. (very common), the gen. (less commonly), the inf.

294. **nimirum:** adv., *doubtless, of course, to be sure.*

295. **saluti . . . urbi atque imperio (296):** DAT. OF PURPOSE + DAT. OF REF., sometimes called the DOUBLE DAT., *for the salvation for (of) the city and the empire.*

297. **nulla . . . esset:** POTENTIAL SUBJUNCT. Throughout this entire passage we see Roman character at its best; surely one of the clearest reasons for Rome's greatness is this morale and pertinacity, this **gravitas** and **virtus,** which had an epic quality that both Vergil and Livy appreciated, admired, and recorded for the inspiration of their readers.
    profecto: adv., *surely, actually, really.*
    mole: moles, *mass, large structure;* with **cladis,** Eng. would use an adj., *so massive a calamity.*

298. **praetores:** again in the absence of the consuls.
    curiam Hostiliam (299): the *Curia Hostilia* was the regular meeting place of the senate down to the time of Caesar; located in the Roman Forum, it was said to have been built by Tullus Hostilius, Rome's third king.

301. **expeditos:** *light-armed* and therefore swift.

302. **Appia et Latina via:** the two major highways leading south from Rome.
    obvios: *those in the way opposite = those whom they met;* i.e., fugitives straggling back to Rome.
    percunctando: percunctari, *to question.*

303. **referant:** REL. CL. OF PURPOSE; note that, for a more vivid narrative, Livy uses primary sequence after a historical main vb.

304. **quid:** with **reliquum . . . fecerint;** freely, *have left any remnant.*
    nominis: here, *power.*

305. **quo:** adv., *where.*

306. **acturus . . . sit:** *what he is going to do;* ACT. PERIPHRASTIC, commonly employed to indicate fut. tense in an IND. QUEST.
    haec . . . esse (307): IND. STATE., in parallel with **equites . . . mittendos,** depending on **censuit** in the preceding sent.

307. **impigros:** *energetic*
    illud: *the following,* looking ahead to, and explained by, the lengthy series of appositional JUSSIVE NOUN CLS. that follow.
    patres: = **patres conscripti, senatores; per patres,** like **per impigros iuvenes,** in place of the DAT. OF AGENT.

308. **tollant: tollere** can mean either *to raise up* or *to suppress,* here the latter.
    publico: i.e., indoors and away from public places.

309. **arceant: arcere,** *to keep away, restrain, prevent.*
    comploratus: *loud wailing, lamentations,* acc. pl.

312. **nisi . . . salvis (313):** ABL. ABS. with conditional force.

290   prius venisse quam venturum sciant, praecedam." Hannibali
nimis laeta res est visa maiorque quam ut eam statim capere
animo posset. Itaque voluntatem se laudare Maharbalis ait, ad
consilium pensandum temporis opus esse. Tum Maharbal: "Non
omnia nimirum eidem di dedere: vincere scis, Hannibal; victo-
295   ria uti nescis." Mora eius diei satis creditur saluti fuisse urbi
atque imperio. (XXII.51.1–4)

Action at Rome as the news reaches the city.

Nulla profecto alia gens tanta mole cladis non obruta esset.
P. Furius Philus et M. Pomponius, praetores, senatum in curiam
Hostiliam vocaverunt ut de urbis custodia consulerent; neque
300   enim dubitabant, deletis exercitibus, hostem ad oppugnandam
Romam venturum. Tum Q. Fabius Maximus censuit equites ex-
peditos et Appia et Latina via mittendos, qui obvios percunc-
tando referant quae fortuna consulum atque exercituum sit et,
si quid dii immortales reliquum Romani nominis fecerint, ubi
305   eae copiae sint; quo se Hannibal post proelium contulerit, quid
paret, quid agat acturusque sit. Haec exploranda noscendaque
per impigros iuvenes esse; illud per patres ipsos agendum ut
tumultum ac trepidationem in urbe tollant, matronas publico
arceant, comploratus familiarum coerceant, silentium per ur-
310   bem faciant, nuntios rerum omnium ad praetores deducendos
curent, custodesque praeterea ad portas ponant qui prohibeant
quemquam egredi urbe, cogantque homines nullam nisi urbe ac
moenibus salvis salutem sperare.

Tum demum litterae a C. Terentio consule adlatae sunt:

Via Appia, with ruins of tombs

315. **Canusii: Canusium,** modern Canosa, a town in Apulia.
316. **naufragio: naufragium,** *shipwreck.*
317. **vulgatae sunt (318): vulgare,** *to communicate, announce.*
318. **sacrum . . . Cereris (319):** the major ritual celebration of the grain-goddess, Ceres, was the Cerealia, held on April 19; as the battle of Cannae took place on August 2, Livy must have in mind some other festival.
321. **dilectu: dilectus,** *levy, draft.*
322. **praetextatos:** boys under 17; the **toga praetexta** with its crimson band around the edge was worn until a boy became of age at 17 or 18 and assumed the **toga virilis.**
      scribunt: *enroll.*
323. **Latinum . . . nomen:** *(those of) Latin status,* a class of allies who had special privileges; on the principle of **divide et impera,** Rome had a separate treaty with each of her allies.
      ad . . . accipiendos (324): *to enlist.*
      ex formula: *in accordance with their treaty.*
324. **arma, tela:** the former primarily defensive, the latter offensive.
325. **spolia . . . detrahunt:** to be used in case of need against the enemy.
326. **quanto:** ABL. OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE.
327. **vel:** here, adv., *even.*
      indicio: DAT. OF PURPOSE.
      quod: *the fact that,* introducing a noun cl. in appos. with **res.**
      eam diem: for the gender, see on 130–31 above.
328. **labare:** *to waver.*
      nulla . . . alia: with **de re.**
330. **moverunt:** sc. **animos.**
331. **consulis Romam adventum:** i.e., the return of Varro to Rome after his defeat at Cannae.
332. **quo in tempore ipso (333):** the prep. **in** was used in an ABL. OF TIME construction when a situation, rather than an exact time, was being described.
333. **magno animo:** ABL. OF DESCRIPTION.
      consuli . . . redeunti (334): dat. with the compound adv. **obviam,** *toward, to meet.*
334. **fuisset:** SUBJUNCT. BY ATTRACTION, within the RESULT CL.
      et . . . et (335): *both . . . and.*
      itum . . . ab omnibus ordinibus sit (335): impers. pass. with ABL. OF AGENT, *all classes went;* this must have included even senators, some of whom had favored another battle with Hannibal.
335. **frequenter:** adv., *in throngs.*
336. **desperasset:** the subjunct. shows that this is the people's reason, not Livy's; *because (as they said) he had not despaired.* When one considers what a scapegoat Varro might have been, Livy is showing us here Roman character at its best; this magnificent morale plus the fact that, for whatever reason, Hannibal did not march directly on Rome enabled the Romans to survive Cannae and to persevere until (as was the rule in Roman history) they won the final victory, at the battle of Zama in 202 B.C.

315   L. Aemilium consulem exercitumque caesum; sese Canusii esse, reliquias tantae cladis velut ex naufragio colligentem; Poenum sedere ad Cannas. Tum privatae quoque per domos clades vulgatae sunt, adeoque totam urbem opplevit luctus ut sacrum anniversarium Cereris intermissum sit. Inde dictator ex auctori-
320   tate patrum dictus M. Iunius et Ti. Sempronius magister equitum, dilectu edicto, iuniores ab annis septendecim et quosdam praetextatos scribunt. Quattuor ex his legiones et mille equites effecti. Item ad socios Latinumque nomen ad milites ex formula accipiendos mittunt. Arma, tela, alia parari iubent, et vetera
325   spolia hostium detrahunt templis porticibusque. (XXII.54.10–57.10, excerpts)

The remarkable morale of the Romans.

      Quanto autem maior ea clades superioribus cladibus fuerit, vel ea res indicio est, quod fides sociorum, quae ad eam diem firma steterat, tum labare coepit, nulla profecto alia de re quam quod desperaverant de imperio. Nec tamen eae clades defecti-
330   onesque sociorum moverunt ut pacis usquam mentio apud Romanos fieret, neque ante consulis Romam adventum nec postquam is rediit renovavitque memoriam acceptae cladis; quo in tempore ipso adeo magno animo civitas fuit ut consuli ex tanta clade, cuius ipse causa maxima fuisset, redeunti et obviam itum
335   frequenter ab omnibus ordinibus sit et gratiae actae quod de re publica non desperasset. (XXII.61.10–14, excerpts)

"Battle of Zama" (Scipio's defeat of Hannibal, 202 B.C.)
Anonymous (circle of Giulio Romano), ca. 1521
Pushkin Museum of Fine Arts, Moscow, Russia

OVID'S *METAMORPHOSES*

Ovid (Publius Ovidius Naso) was born to a wealthy equestrian family on March 20, 43 B.C., the year of Cicero's death and the year after the assassination of Julius Caesar. His father sent him to study in Rome and Athens, hoping the young man would embark upon a career in law and politics. But Ovid was far more inclined to literature, and in his early 20's he published his first books of verse (begun when he was only a teenager), the *Amores,* sprightly elegiac poems written to and about his fictional mistress, Corinna. Though quite self-consciously following the tradition of Catullus, Tibullus, and Propertius (these last two friends of his), his elegies were at once more contrived and more playful, almost a parody of his predecessors' work.

"Whatever I tried to compose became verse" *(quod temptabam scribere versus erat),* Ovid later wrote (*Tristia* 4.10), reflecting back on his career. And indeed he was an enormously prolific poet, publishing one book after another over a period of more than 40 years; most of his early work was sportively erotic, in the manner of the *Amores,* including: the *Heroides,* verse epistles from famous mythological heroines to their absent husbands or paramours (e.g., Medea to Jason, Dido to Aeneas); the only partially extant *Medicamina Faciei Femineae,* a how-to manual on ladies' cosmetics; the *Ars Amatoria,* another tongue-in-cheek didactic poem on how to attract and seduce a lover, with two volumes of instructions (some rather naughtily detailed) for men and another for women; and then, aptly concluding the series, the *Remedia Amoris,* a handbook on extricating oneself from a love affair, once one has had enough.

If all of this sounds ahead of its time and rather lacking in Roman *gravitas,* so it was. By the time the "Art of Love" first appeared, ca. 1 B.C., Octavian had long since been proclaimed "Augustus," his monarchy was firmly established, and his program of moral reform was well underway. In this context, Ovid's poetry, which routinely trumpeted adultery, travestied the sanctity of marriage, and poked fun at authority, could be easily viewed as subversive. It is not surprising, therefore, that in A.D. 8 Ovid was banished by Augustus to Tomis on the Black Sea. Writing from exile, the poet insists that his relegation was the consequence, not of any crime, but of a *carmen* and an *error;* the exact nature of the "mistake" has never been ascertained, but the offending poetry certainly included the *Ars Amatoria,* and the combined offense was so considerable that neither Augustus himself nor his successor Tiberius

gave in to the poet's unceasing pleas for a recall from Tomis, where he remained, embittered, until his death in A.D. 17 (the same year that Livy died) at the age of 60.

During the decade of his exile, Ovid continued work on two enormously important poetical works which he had begun earlier, the *Fasti* and the *Metamorphoses*. The former, a verse calendar describing the major historical events, legends, and festivals associated with each month of the Roman year, remains an invaluable source for these topics, though we have only the first six books (for January through June). The latter, a rich compendium of classical myths in 15 dactylic hexameter volumes, has remained over the centuries Ovid's most popular and influential work.

Set in a quasi-chronological framework and woven together with ingeniously crafted interconnections, the *Metamorphoses* recounts some 250 tales of transformation, from the creation of the world out of chaos to the deification of Julius Caesar. In this *carmen perpetuum,* as he called his greatest poem, Ovid presents us with dazzling narratives (in many cases the best known, or only, ancient source for a particular myth), which range in tone from the tragic to the comic, the heroic to the grotesque, the patriotic to the erotic, some of them charged with political (and occasionally anti-Augustan) undertones, and all of them providing astute insights into the human condition. A supreme manipulator of the language, Ovid has given us too a production that is remarkably "audio-visual," abounding in cinematographic effects and with a musicality perhaps unparalleled in classical Latin verse.

The four selections included in this book are among Ovid's best known. The story of the two star-crossed Babylonian lovers, Pyramus and Thisbe, may have originated in the near east, but Ovid is our earliest source; the two young people (teenagers most likely) were neighbors who, once acquainted, fell rapturously in love, only to have their parents forbid their relationship. At first communicating with each other through a crack in the wall connecting their homes, they soon conspire to slip away for a nocturnal, and ultimately fatal, rendezvous just outside the city. This story of young love and its tragic ending has charmed readers for centuries and was a major influence on Shakespeare's *Romeo and Juliet.* The similarly ill-fated love of Orpheus and Eurydice was well known to Ovid's readers from Vergil's longer and more dramatic narration in the *Georgics.* The lovely Eurydice dies of a snakebite on her wedding day, and her bridegroom boldly descends into the Underworld to bring her back from the kingdom of the dead; Ovid's perfunctory retell-

ing, which focuses on Orpheus' almost legalistic pleading with Pluto and Persephone in Hades, is regarded by many readers as a parody of his Vergilian model.

Also familiar to modern readers is Ovid's story of Midas, the Phrygian king who, granted one wish by the wine-god Bacchus, wasted the opportunity by asking that all he touched be turned to gold. Ovid's narration is spectacularly visual, as he shows us the king moving from one object to another, gleefully transforming each into gold, until too late he realizes that even his food and drink and his own body are being similarly metamorphosed. In the tale of the Athenian inventor Daedalus and his young son Icarus, another error of judgment leads to unfortunate, and in this case fatal, consequences; imprisoned by Minos, king of Crete, Daedalus constructs miraculous wings for himself and his son to aid in their escape from the island, and Icarus, with the impetuosity of youth, disregards his father's warnings and flies too near the sun, thus melting the wax that held together his wings and plummeting to his death in the sea.

"Daedalus and Icarus"
Antonio Canova
1779
Museo Correr
Venice, Italy

Exhibiting a variety that is characteristic of the *Metamorphoses,* two of these stories, those of Pyramus and Thisbe and of Daedalus and Icarus, focus on more or less ordinary human beings, their passions and their frailties, while the other two involve the agency of the gods, Bacchus and the king and queen of the Underworld. All involve miracles or transformations. And all are told in Ovid's lively, fluid, highly visual, and musical style.

Some Aspects of Ovid's Style

Ovid is one of the easiest of Roman authors to read and enjoy, and students will quickly become accustomed to the peculiarities of his style, many of which are characteristic of Latin verse in general and most of which are commented upon in the notes accompanying the selections below. Following are a few important points to keep in mind, as you begin to read, especially if this is your first extensive introduction to Latin poetry.

Word order: Word order is much freer in poetry than it is in prose, and Ovid is no exception. Words that logically belong together, e.g., an adjective and its noun or a preposition and its object, are often separated for emphasis or some other poetic effect (and, of course, for metrical considerations). For instance, an adjective may appear as the first word in a line and its noun as the last (a device referred to as "framing"), or a noun-adjective pair may even be split between two lines; a prepositional phrase may occur between a noun and its adjective or may itself be broken up by other words, or a preposition may follow its object ("anastrophe"); a relative pronoun may precede its antecedent or be placed late in the clause which it is supposed to introduce, or the antecedent may be attracted into the relative clause. A key word or phrase may be delayed and carried over to the beginning of the next verse ("enjambement").

"Chiasmus" (ABBA order, e.g., object-verb-verb-object, *omnia possideat . . . possidet aera,* "Daedalus and Icarus," line 187), often used to emphasize some contrast, is a favorite device, as is "interlocked word order," especially of the ABAB variety (e.g., adjective[A]-adjective[B]-noun[A]-noun[B], *una duos . . . nox . . . amantes,* "Pyramus and Thisbe," 108); an elaboration of this interlocked order known as a "golden line" places the verb at the center of the line with two adjectives preceding and two nouns following, in an ABCAB arrangement (*scelerata fero consumite viscera morsu,* "Pyramus," 113). Sometimes interlocked order is meant to create a "word-picture," where the words are arranged in a way that

suggests visually the image that is being described (*obscurum timido pede fugit in antrum,* "Pyramus," 100, where the fearful Thisbe is literally inside the "dark . . . cave").

Ellipsis is common in poetry as well (especially omission of forms of *sum* and the subject of an infinitive in indirect statement), and in Ovid one must frequently supply in one phrase a word from another adjacent phrase. The notes provided along with the text below will often call attention to such devices, but students, in reading and translating poetry, need to be aware of these and other variants of word order and thus be all the more attentive to the word endings that signal syntactical relationships.

Morphology and syntax: Latin poetry in general is characterized by a wider variety of forms and syntax than usual in prose; again, these are often commented upon in the notes, but students should be generally aware of these differences before beginning to read. The predicate geni-

Augustus of Prima Porta
1st century B.C.
Vatican Museums
Vatican State

tive (of description or possession) is commonly used in place of a predicate nominative; the dative is more freely used, often in place of the ablative, as in the dative of separation, the dative with verbs of mixing, and the dative of agent with passive forms other than the gerundive; the ablative instead of the accusative is employed for duration of time, the ablative of route is common, and the ablative of agent is used instead of the ablative of means, for purposes of personification. The so-called "poetic plural" is employed where prose would use the singular; and Greek forms appear frequently, especially with proper nouns.

Common too are: omission of prepositions where prose would require them, especially in place constructions; the use of simple verbs instead of their compounds; use of *-ere* for *-erunt* for the third person plural of the perfect indicative; use of the genitive plural *-um* in place of *-orum/-arum*.

Rhetorical and poetic devices and sound effects: Ovid employs a wide range of these devices, including anaphora, apostrophe, hendiadys, metonymy, personification, simile, synecdoche, and transferred epithet, many of which are identified in the notes. One of the most musical of Latin poets, Ovid also makes extensive use of alliteration, assonance, and onomatopoeia, as well as the various metrical effects discussed in the next section.

The Scansion and Reading of Ovid's Verse

In order to associate his poem with epic, Ovid deliberately composed the *Metamorphoses* in the metrical form known as dactylic hexameter, the same meter employed by Homer in his *Iliad* and *Odyssey* and by Vergil in the *Aeneid.* Like these authors, Ovid meant for his poetry to be read aloud, to be recited (from the Latin word *recitare,* which quite aptly means "to bring back to life"), hence the importance of such features as alliteration and assonance. But the most prominent sound effect in the poem is, of course, the meter itself; and in order to appreciate fully the work's musicality and indeed to experience it as the author intended, one must read aloud. The most important step in this regard is also the easiest, and that is, as the late Professor Gareth Morgan remarked, simply to read the words correctly and with attention to what they mean. The point is to read the poem as one would read a story in prose to a group of eager listeners, with proper pronunciation of course, but, in particular, expressively. Read the text aloud in just this way, each time you pick it up (and certainly before you commence the artificial exercise

of translation into English), and you will find yourself well on your way to a proper appreciation of Ovid's poetry; beyond that, one needs to know just a bit about the technicalities of dactylic hexameter verse.

Meter: From the Latin *metrum* (Greek *metron,* "measure"), poetic meter is simply the measured arrangement of syllables in a regular rhythmical pattern. In English poetry, meter is based upon the patterned alternation of accented and unaccented syllables (Jáck and Jíll went úp the híll"); the system is called "qualitative," as it depends upon the quality (stressed/unstressed) of the syllables. Medieval Latin verse works the same way, as we shall see later on in this book. But in classical Latin poetry the meter was "quantitative" (a system borrowed, like much else in Roman verse, from the Greeks), based on the alternation of long and short syllables.

Syllable quantity and elision: The syllables of a word may be long or short, as you learned in your first Latin course in order to know which syllable of a word is accented. A long syllable (indicated here by underlining) is one that contains either a long vowel (e.g., *amō*—macrons indicating long vowels are provided in the Vocabulary at the end of this book), or a diphthong (*ae, oe, ei, ui, au, eu;* e.g., *saepe*), or a short vowel followed by two or more consonants or the double consonant **x** (e.g., *quantus*). Exceptions to this last rule are as follows: *h* does not count as a consonant; *ch, ph, th,* and *qu* count only as single consonants; and when a stop *(p, b, c, g, d, t)* is followed by a liquid *(l, r),* the syllable may be treated as either long or short according to the requirements of the meter (*patria* or *patria*). In poetry the two-consonant rule also holds when the final syllable of a word within (not at the end of) a verse ends with a consonant and the next word begins with a consonant (*enim* pater).

When a word ends with a vowel (or diphthong) or a vowel + *-m* and the following word begins with a vowel/diphthong or *h-* + a vowel/diphthong, the two syllables involved were generally "elided," i.e., reduced to a single syllable, usually with the vowel in the first syllable muted or dropped altogether and the quantity of the second syllable determining the quantity of the resultant single syllable. For example, *quantum erat* ("Pyramus," 74) was pronounced *quant'erat* and the resultant elided syllable *(t'e)* is short, whereas *foribusque excedere* ("Pyramus," 85) would be pronounced *foribusqu'excedere* and the elided syllable *(qu'ex)* is long.

In the context of this discussion, it should be recalled that initial *i-* followed by a vowel functions as a consonant with the sound of *y,* and thus prevents elision (*quoque iure,* "Pyramus," 60, is not elided) and can make a preceding syllable long (*et iacuit,* "Pyramus," 121). Likewise intervocalic *-i-* serves both as a vowel producing a diphthong with the preceding vowel, and as a consonant; e.g., *huius* is scanned as if spelled "hui-yus."

Dactylic hexameter: The dactylic hexameter line consists of six measures, or feet, with the basic pattern of the first five feet being a dactyl, i.e., a long syllable followed by two shorts ($-$ uu). A spondee (two long syllables, $- -$) is often substituted for a dactyl in the first four feet of the line, rarely in the fifth (a line with a fifth-foot spondee is in fact called a "spondaic line"—see "Midas," line 93), and the sixth foot is always a spondee (or a trochee [$-$ u], which here has the force of a spondee, due to the slight pause naturally occurring at the end of the verse). The pattern of dactyls and possible spondees may be thus schematized:

$$\overline{}\quad\overline{}\quad\overline{}\quad\overline{}\quad(\overline{})$$
$$-\ \text{u\ u}\ /\ -\ \text{u\ u}\ /\ -\ \text{u\ u}\ /\ -\ \text{u\ u}\ /\ -\ \text{u\ u}\ /\ -\ -$$

An author may vary the balance of dactyls and spondees in a line to achieve some special effect, using more dactyls to describe rapid actions (e.g., "Pyramus," line 92, where the opening series of dactyls suggests the quick coming of nightfall) or more spondees to describe some slow, or deliberate, or solemn action (e.g., "Pyramus," 62, where the heavy spondees emphasize the unwavering intensity of the lovers' passion). Each foot in a dactylic hexameter line begins with a long syllable, and in reading aloud this syllable should be pronounced with a slight stress accent, known as an "ictus," which may or may not coincide with the normal word accent; poets sometimes manipulate the coincidence or "conflict" (non-coincidence) of ictus and accent for special effect, coincidence producing a smoother, more rapid flow, and conflict creating a harsher, staccato rhythm.

Each line generally contains a principal pause, sometimes two, generally coinciding with the end of some sense unit such as a phrase or a clause; if the principal pause occurs within a foot, it is called a "caesura," and if it occurs at the division between two feet (which is less common), it is called a "diaeresis." The commonest pattern in dactylic hexameter involves a major caesura in the third foot, though occasion-

ally there are two equivalent caesurae in the second and fourth feet (marking off some phrase within the line), and there are other patterns as well, thus producing greater rhythmical variety.

Scansion: Scansion is the process of marking the long and short syllables in a line of verse and indicating the feet and the principal pause(s), while keeping in mind the several points made in the preceding discussion. Conventionally, long syllables are indicated with a line over the syllable (⁻), short syllables with a micron (ᵘ); the individual feet are marked off with a slash (/), and the principal pause(s) with a double slash (//). Elisions are marked with parentheses, and the mark indicating the long or short quantity of the resultant single syllable is placed above the space between the two elided syllables.

With practice, students can scan lines with ease, from beginning to end, as the procedure is quite straightforward. But beginners may wish at first to follow these steps: 1) mark all elisions; 2) mark the last two syllables long, as the sixth foot may always be treated as a spondee; 3) mark all syllables long that contain a diphthong or what you know to be a long vowel; then 4) mark all remaining syllables, keeping in mind that the first syllable of each foot must be long, that the fifth foot is nearly always a dactyl, and that, whenever you identify a short syllable in the first five feet, there must always be a second short syllable adjacent to it. Consider the following examples, all drawn from the story of "Pyramus and Thisbe":

```
        ⁻ u u    ⁻    ⁻  ⁻   u u   ⁻    ⁻    ⁻  u u  ⁻ ⁻
55   Pyramus / et This/be, // iuve/num pul/cherrimu/s alter,
        ⁻ u u      ⁻ u u ⁻    u u  ⁻     ⁻   ⁻ u  u  ⁻ ⁻
56   altera, // quas ori/ens habu/it, // prae/lata pu/ellis
          ⁻     u  u  ⁻ u u  ⁻    ⁻  ⁻  ⁻    ⁻ u u  ⁻ ⁻
74   Quan(tum e)ra/t ut sine/res // to/to nos / corpore / iungi
          ⁻     ⁻  ⁻ u u   ⁻    u u  ⁻ u u  ⁻   u u  ⁻ ⁻
75   aut, hoc / si nimi/(um est) // vel a/d oscula / danda pa/teres?
```

Reading aloud: Scansion is merely a mechanical procedure designed to familiarize students with meter. Once you have had sufficient practice with scanning lines and then reading them aloud, you will find it a fairly easy matter to recite a text rhythmically without needing to scan the lines first. Let me repeat the cardinal rule stated earlier in this introduction: in order to properly recite a text, you need only read the words correctly and think about what they mean. The poet has done most of the work for you, after all, by arranging the words in each verse with

the appropriate alternation of long and short syllables; if you simply pronounce each word according to the rules you learned in beginning Latin and have practiced ever since, you will hear and even feel the quantitative rhythms the author has built into the line. Remembering that in the ancient world poetry was performance, you should read aloud yourself as if you were reading a story to a receptive audience; read expressively, with attention to meaning, pausing just briefly at the appropriate points, usually at the end of a phrase or clause (without any exaggerated pause at the end of a line, especially where there is enjambement), and adding the slight verse accent, or ictus, to the first syllable in each foot.

Whenever you pick up a Latin text—whether prose or verse, in fact—read it aloud. Then, once you have read, and translated, and thought about, and discussed a passage in class, and before you pack up your books, read that passage aloud again; as a consequence you will come to appreciate more fully not only the matter of an author's text but also the manner, often sonorous and dramatic, in which he expected his audience to experience it.

"Ovid"
Luca Signorelli, 15th century
Duomo, Orvieto, Italy

55.   **Pyramus et Thisbe:** there were rivers with these names in Cilicia, but the two
          characters are known from no source earlier than Ovid.

       iuvenum ... alter ... altera ... puellis (56): CHIASMUS; the device is very
          common in Ovid.

56.   **quas:** antecedent is **puellis.**

       praelata: praeferre, *to prefer.*

57.   **tenuere:** = **tenuerunt** (so also **vetuere, potuere,** etc., below).

       dicitur: the subj. is **Semiramis,** wife of the Assyrian king Ninus, reputed to
          have been the builder of Babylon.

       altam: with **urbem,** both positioned at line's end; adj.-noun pairs are often
          widely separated in Ovid, frequently for some special effect (as here,
          perhaps, to suggest the grandeur of the city).

58.   **coctilibus:** lit., *cooked* or *baked,* hence *made of brick.*

       muris: murus, *wall.*

       cinxisse: cingere, *to surround.*

59.   **notitiam: notitia,** *acquaintance.*

       gradus: acc. pl., *steps;* sc. **amoris,** or this may be, with **notitiam,** a HENDIADYS
          (the first steps of their relationship).

       vicinia: *proximity,* i.e., their being neighbors.

60.   **taedae: taeda,** *torch, marriage torch* (carried in the wedding procession).

       iure: here, *(legal) bond.*

       coissent: coire, *to come together, be joined;* POTENTIAL SUBJUNCT.

61.   **vetuere: vetare,** *to forbid, prevent.*

       quod: *what, that which;* the following cl. is antecedent.

62.   **ex aequo:** idiom, *equally;* the line's symmetry and the spondaic rhythms help
          to emphasize the equality and intensity of the lovers' feelings.

       captis ... mentibus: sc. **amore.**

63.   **conscius:** *witness.*

       abest: note the shift from the perf. tenses of the preceding sent. to the HIST.
          PRES. in this sent., lending further intensity and vividness to the narrative.

       nutu: nutus, *nod.*

64.   **quoque:** = **et quo,** ABL. OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE; **quoque magis ... (eo) ma-**
          gis, *and the more ... the more.*

       magis tegitur, tectus magis: CHIASMUS.

       aestuat: aestuare, *to burn, blaze;* **ignis** is subj. of both this vb. and **tegitur.**

65.   **fissus erat: findere,** *to split;* the subj. is **paries,** *wall* (of a house).

       tenui: *slender, thin.*

       rima: *crack.*

       duxerat: here, *had developed.*

66.   **utrique:** *each.*

67.   **vitium:** here, *flaw, defect.*

       nulli: dat. with **notatum,** *known (to).*

       saeculum: *age, generation.*

68.   **primi:** as often, Lat. employs an adj. where Eng. would use an adv. (so also
          tutae, *safely,* in 69).

       amantes: the partic. functions as a noun, *lovers;* Ovid addresses the two in a
          dramatic APOSTROPHE.

PYRAMUS AND THISBE

Metamorphoses. 4.55–166

Pyramus and Thisbe, two young lovers in Babylon, occupy adjoining houses, but their parents determine to keep them apart.

55   Pyramus et Thisbe, iuvenum pulcherrimus alter,
altera, quas oriens habuit, praelata puellis,
contiguas tenuere domos, ubi dicitur altam
coctilibus muris cinxisse Semiramis urbem.
Notitiam primosque gradus vicinia fecit;
60   tempore crevit amor; taedae quoque iure coissent,
sed vetuere patres. Quod non potuere vetare,
ex aequo captis ardebant mentibus ambo.
Conscius omnis abest; nutu signisque loquuntur,
quoque magis tegitur, tectus magis aestuat ignis.
65   Fissus erat tenui rima, quam duxerat olim,
cum fieret, paries domui communis utrique.
Id vitium nulli per saecula longa notatum
(quid non sentit amor?) primi vidistis amantes,

"Semiramis Building Babylon"
Edgar Degas, 1860–62
Musée d'Orsay, Paris, France

69. **vocis . . . iter:** *a passage for your speech,* an image elaborated in the next cl.

  tutae . . . murmure blanditiae minimo (70): this sort of ABAB arrangement, known as INTERLOCKED WORD ORDER, is a favorite device of Ovid's.

70. **blanditiae: blanditia,** *blandishment, endearment.*

71. **constiterant: constare,** *to stand firm, take a position.*

  hinc . . . illinc: *on this side . . . on that side;* the CHIASMUS here neatly suits the image.

72. **in . . . vices:** idiom, *in turn.*

  fuerat captatus: = **captatus erat,** *had been seized at.*

  anhelitus: *gasping, panting, breathing;* the young lovers are pictured longingly gasping at one another's breath through the crack in the wall.

73. **invidus:** *envious, jealous;* the lovers imagine the wall as a living creature.

  quid: = **cur.**

74. **quantum erat:** more vivid than **esset,** *how great a matter was it (to).*

  sineres: sinere, *to allow, permit.*

  toto . . . iungi: the lovers' wishes here become explicit.

77. **quod:** *the fact that;* the entire cl. is obj. of **debere.**

  amicas: here, *loving, of a lover.*

78. **nequiquam:** adv., *in vain.*

79. **sub:** here, *at the approach of, just before.*

  parti . . . oscula . . . suae . . . pervenientia (80): INTERLOCKED WORD ORDER.

  dedere . . . quisque (80): the pron. often takes a pl. vb., *they each gave.*

80. **contra:** adv., *to the other side.*

81. **postera:** *following, next.*

  nocturnos . . . ignes: i.e., the stars.

  Aurora: goddess of the dawn.

82. **pruinosas:** *frost-covered.*

  radiis: radius, *rod, spoke, ray.*

  siccaverat: siccare, *to dry.*

  herbas: herba, *grass.*

83. **coiere:** = **coierunt,** from **coire,** *to come together.*

84. **statuunt: statuere,** *to decide, determine,* introducing here a series of subjunct. vbs. in JUSSIVE NOUN CLS.

85. **fallere:** *to deceive, elude, disappoint.*

  custodes: i.e., their parents.

  foribus: foris, *door.*

  temptent: temptare, *to try, attempt.*

86. **tecta: tectum,** *roof, building.*

87. **neve:** = **et ne,** *and so that . . . not,* here introducing **sit errandum,** a PASS. PERIPHRASTIC vb. in the negative PURPOSE CL.

  spatiantibus: spatiari, *to walk (about);* sc. **eis,** DAT. OF AGENT.

88. **busta: bustum,** often pl. for sg., *tomb.*

  Nini: *Ninus,* king of Assyria and husband of Semiramis.

  lateant: latere, *to lie hidden, hide.*

et vocis fecistis iter; tutaeque per illud
70   murmure blanditiae minimo transire solebant.
Saepe, ubi constiterant hinc Thisbe, Pyramus illinc,
inque vices fuerat captatus anhelitus oris,
"Invide," dicebant, "paries, quid amantibus obstas?
Quantum erat ut sineres toto nos corpore iungi
75   aut, hoc si nimium est, vel ad oscula danda pateres?
Nec sumus ingrati; tibi nos debere fatemur,
quod datus est verbis ad amicas transitus aures."

The lovers plan a rendezvous in the night.

Talia diversa nequiquam sede locuti,
sub noctem dixere, "Vale," partique dedere
80   oscula quisque suae non pervenientia contra.
Postera nocturnos Aurora removerat ignes,
Solque pruinosas radiis siccaverat herbas;
ad solitum coiere locum. Tum, murmure parvo
multa prius questi, statuunt ut nocte silenti
85   fallere custodes foribusque excedere temptent,
cumque domo exierint, urbis quoque tecta relinquant,
neve sit errandum lato spatiantibus arvo,
conveniant ad busta Nini lateantque sub umbra
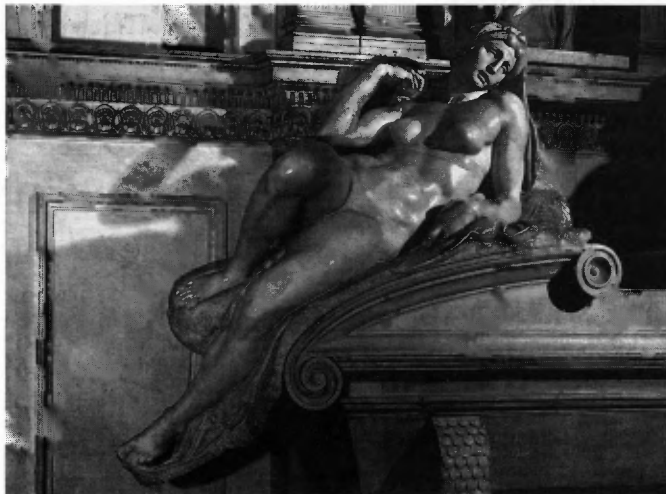
Aurora, from the tomb of Lorenzo, duke of Urbino
Michelangelo, 1521–34
Medici Chapel, S. Lorenzo, Florence, Italy

89.   **ibi:** syllables normally short were sometimes lengthened (DIASTOLE), when occurring, as here, under the ictus as the first syllable of a foot.

      niveis: the fruit of the mulberry tree **(morus)** is imagined here as white, before its metamorphosis later in the story.

      uberrima: *very rich.*

90.   **ardua:** *tall, high;* the gender of Lat. words for trees is regularly f.

      gelido: *cool, cold.*

      contermina: *adjacent (to), near,* + dat.

      fonti: fons, *spring, fountain.*

91.   **pacta: pactum,** *agreement;* poetry often uses pl. for sg.

      lux: *daylight;* the rest of the day seemed to drag because of the lovers' eagerness.

92.   **praecipitatur aquis . . . aquis . . . exit:** sc. **in** with the first noun, **ex** with the second; Ovid aptly employs CHIASMUS to describe the opposing actions and dactyls to suggest the rapidity of the sun's setting.

93.   **callida:** *skillful, clever;* here, perhaps, with adv. force.

      tenebras: tenebrae, *shadows, darkness, gloom;* the imagery of darkness permeates the rest of the tale.

      cardine: cardo, *door-hinge;* with **versato,** lit., *with the hinge turned* = *opening the door.*

94.   **suos:** her parents; cp. **fallere custodes** in 85 above.

      adoperta . . . vultum: *having covered her face;* the pass. form **adoperta (adoperire)** is employed as a reflexive with a dir. obj. **vultum,** a common poetic usage (cp. **oblita rictus** in 97).

96.   **audacem faciebat amor:** sc. **eam;** Ovid was a master of the short, epigrammatic statement, which he liked to alternate with longer, more complex sents.

      ecce: interj., *look, behold.*

97.   **caede: caedes,** *cutting, slaughter, murder;* note the deliberately harsh ALLITERATION with **recenti caede.**

      leaena: *lioness.*

      boum: gen. pl. of **bos,** *bull, ox, cow.*

      spumantes: spumare, *to foam.*

      oblita: oblinere, *to smear;* for the construction with **rictus** *(open mouth, jaws),* see note on **adoperta . . . vultum** (94).

98.   **depositura:** *intending to quench* (lit., *put aside*); the fut. partic. frequently expresses purpose.

      sitim: sitis, *thirst;* for this acc. sg. form, cp. **vim** from **vis.**

      unda: *wave, water.*

99.   **quam:** = **leaenam.**

      procul: adv., *far off, at a distance.*

      ad: here, *by.*

arboris (arbor ibi niveis uberrima pomis,
90   ardua morus, erat gelido contermina fonti).
Pacta placent, et lux tarde discedere visa,
praecipitatur aquis, et aquis nox exit ab isdem.

*Thisbe, fleeing from a lioness, loses her veil, which the lioness then finds
and tears to shreds with her bloody mouth.*

Callida per tenebras, versato cardine, Thisbe
egreditur fallitque suos, adopertaque vultum
95   pervenit ad tumulum dictaque sub arbore sedit.
Audacem faciebat amor. Venit ecce recenti
caede leaena boum spumantes oblita rictus,
depositura sitim vicini fontis in unda;
quam procul ad lunae radios Babylonia Thisbe

"Thisbe"
J. W. Waterhouse, 1909
Private collection

100. **timido:** logically applying to Thisbe, a TRANSFERRED EPITHET, another common poetic device.

      fugit: perf. in this line, pres. in the next, as the meter indicates.

      antrum: *cave;* the adj.-noun pair, **obscurum** (*shadowy,* continuing the imagery of darkness) . . . **antrum,** surrounds the rest of the cl., creating a typically Ovidian WORD-PICTURE that helps depict the girl's enclosure within the cave.

101. **tergo:** tergum, *back;* sc. **de.** With **lapsa,** Eng. would use a cl. rather than a participial phrase, *which had slipped (from).*

      velamina: velamen, *veil;* poetic pl. for sg. (see note on **pacta** in 91).

102. **lea:** = leaena.

      saeva: *savage, fierce.*

      compescuit: compescere, *to check, restrain;* with **unda,** *to satisfy, quench.*

103. **inventos:** with **amictus,** *robe, veil,* poetic pl.; the two words frame the cl.

      forte: abl. of **fors** as adv., *by chance.*

      ipsa: i.e., Thisbe.

104. **cruentato:** *stained with blood.*

      laniavit: laniare, *to tear (to pieces).*

105. **serius:** compar. of **sero,** adv., *late.*

      vestigia: vestigium, *track, footprint.*

106. **pulvere:** pulvis, *dust.*

      ferae: *wild, savage;* sc. **bestiae.**

      expalluit: expallescere, *to turn very pale.*

107. **vestem:** vestis, *clothing, clothes, garment.*

      sanguine: sanguis, *blood.*

      tinctam: tingere, *to wet, dip, dye, stain.*

108. **una . . . amantes:** the INTERLOCKED WORD ORDER neatly juxtaposes the contrasting numerals **una duos.**

110. **nostra:** = **mea.**

      nocens: partic. of **nocere** employed as an adj., *harmful, guilty.*

111. **venires:** sc. **ut,** JUSSIVE NOUN CL. instead of the usual inf. with **iussi.**

112. **divellite:** divellere, *to tear apart.*

113. **scelerata . . . morsu:** a special sort of interlocking word order known as a GOLDEN LINE, with a vb. at the center, adjs. preceding, and nouns following in an ABCAB arrangement (adj.^{A}, adj.^{B}, vb.^{C}, noun^A, noun^B).

      viscera: n. pl., *vitals, entrails, flesh.*

      morsu: morsus, *biting, bite, teeth.*

114. **quicumque:** *whatever;* the suffix **-cumque** added to a rel. makes it indef.

      habitatis: habitare, *to live, dwell.*

      rupe: rupes, *rock, cliff.*

115. **timidi est:** *it is (the part) of a cowardly person;* PRED. GEN. OF POSSESSION.

      necem: nex, *murder, violent death.*

      Thisbes: Greek gen. sg.

116. **pactae:** *agreed upon,* modifies **arboris.**

      umbram: with **ad,** delayed to the end of the line for emphasis.

100   vidit et obscurum timido pede fugit in antrum,
      dumque fugit, tergo velamina lapsa reliquit.
      Ut lea saeva sitim multa compescuit unda,
      dum redit in silvas, inventos forte sine ipsa
      ore cruentato tenues laniavit amictus.

When Pyramus finds the torn and bloody veil, he thinks Thisbe has been slain, and commits suicide.

105   Serius egressus vestigia vidit in alto
      pulvere certa ferae totoque expalluit ore
      Pyramus. Ut vero vestem quoque sanguine tinctam
      repperit, "Una duos," inquit, "nox perdet amantes,
      e quibus illa fuit longa dignissima vita;
110   nostra nocens anima est. Ego te, miseranda, peremi,
      in loca plena metus qui iussi nocte venires,
      nec prior huc veni. Nostrum divellite corpus,
      et scelerata fero consumite viscera morsu,
      o quicumque sub hac habitatis rupe leones.
115   Sed timidi est optare necem." Velamina Thisbes
      tollit et ad pactae secum fert arboris umbram,

Mosaic with Pyramus and Thisbe
2nd–3rd century A.D.
House of Dionysus, Paphos, Cyprus

117. **notae:** *well-known, familiar,* with **vesti.** Ovid frequently splits a noun/adj. pair in this way between two closely connected cls., here joined by the pathetic ANAPHORA of **dedit . . . dedit.**
118. **haustus:** *drink, draft.*
119. **quoque:** = **et quo;** the antecedent is **ferrum.**
      erat accinctus: accingere, *to gird, arm.*
      ilia: n. pl., *groin, genitals, entrails.*
120. **nec mora:** idiom, sc. **erat** = **et sine mora.**
      ferventi: *bleeding* (lit., *boiling*).
      traxit: sc. **ferrum.**
121. **resupinus:** *on the back.*
      cruor: *blood.*
      emicat: emicare, *to dart forth, spurt out.*
122. **non . . . cum:** a conventional expression used to introduce a simile.
      vitiato: *faulty, defective.*
      fistula: *tube, pipe, water-pipe.*
      plumbo: plumbum, *lead.*
123. **scinditur: scindere,** *to cut, split.*
      stridente: stridere, *to hiss.*
      foramine: foramen, *hole, perforation.*
124. **eiaculatur: eiaculari,** *to shoot out, spurt forth.*
      aquas: i.e., *streams of water.*
      ictibus: ictus, *blow, stroke;* here, *pulsing.*
      aera: aer, *air.*
      rumpit: rumpere, *to burst (through), break open.*
125. **fetus:** lit., *offspring* = *fruit.*
      adspergine: adspergo, *spray, sprinkling.*
126. **faciem: facies,** *form, face, appearance.*
      madefacta: *drenched.*
      radix: *root.*
127. **purpureo:** *purple, dark red;* the adj.-noun pair **purpureo . . . colore** frames the line, a favorite device of Ovid's, which here creates a kind of WORD-PICTURE, with the berries literally surrounded by the *purple color.*
      pendentia: pendere, *to hang, be suspended.*
      mora: morum, *mulberry* (the fruit, vs. the tree, **morus).**
128. **posito:** = **deposito;** Ovid often uses a simple vb. in place of a compound.
130. **vitarit:** = **vitaverit.**
      gestit: gestire, *to desire eagerly, be eager.*
131. **utque . . . sic (132):** *and although . . . still.*
      visa . . . in arbore formam: lit., *the shape in the seen tree* = *the shape of the tree which she saw.*
132. **incertam:** OBJ. COMPL. agreeing with **eam** understood.
      pomi: pomum, *fruit.*
      haeret: haerere, *to stick, hesitate, be uncertain.*
      an: conj., *or, whether.*
      haec sit: sc. **arbor.**

utque dedit notae lacrimas, dedit oscula vesti,
"Accipe nunc," inquit, "nostri quoque sanguinis haustus."
Quoque erat accinctus, demisit in ilia ferrum;
120   nec mora, ferventi moriens e vulnere traxit
et iacuit resupinus humo. Cruor emicat alte,
non aliter quam cum vitiato fistula plumbo
scinditur, et tenui stridente foramine longas
eiaculatur aquas, atque ictibus aera rumpit.
125   Arborei fetus adspergine caedis in atram
vertuntur faciem, madefactaque sanguine radix
purpureo tingit pendentia mora colore.

Thisbe returns to the scene and, finding Pyramus dead, kills herself.

Ecce metu nondum posito, ne fallat amantem,
illa redit iuvenemque oculis animoque requirit,
130   quantaque vitarit narrare pericula gestit.
Utque locum et visa cognoscit in arbore formam,
sic facit incertam pomi color. Haeret an haec sit.

"Pyramus and Thisbe"
Jacopo Tintoretto (Jacopo Robusti)
1650–1660

133.   **tremebunda . . . membra (134):** *trembling limbs,* subj. of **pulsare.**
         cruentum . . . solum (134): *bloody soil.*
134.   **retro:** adv., *backward.*
134.   **ora . . . gerens (135):** instead of *bearing her features* we say *with features.*
         buxo: buxum, *box-tree, boxwood.*
135.   **exhorruit: exhorrere,** *to shudder.*
         aequoris: aequor, *level surface, sea.*
         instar: indecl. n. noun, *image, likeness;* + gen., *like.*
136.   **exigua:** *scanty, small, slight.*
         summum: *its surface.*
         stringitur: stringere, *to touch lightly, graze.*
         aura: *air, breeze, wind.*
137.   **remorata: remorari,** *to linger.*
         amores: here, as often, *lover.*
138.   **percutit: percutere,** *to strike.*
         claro: here, *loud.*
         plangore: plangor, *striking, blow, lamentation, wailing;* the repetition of the
             long **o** sound (ASSONANCE) is perhaps onomatopoetic.
         lacertos: lacertus, *upper arm.*
139.   **laniata: laniare,** *to tear (at);* reflexive pass. with dir. obj.
         comas: coma, *hair* (of the head).
         amplexa: amplecti, *to embrace.*
140.   **supplevit: supplere,** *to fill up.*
         fletum: fletus, *weeping.*
         cruori: misceo may be used with the dat. as here, or with **cum.**
141.   **vultibus:** this word is often pl. for sg.
         figens: figere, *to fix, imprint.*
142.   **clamavit: clamare,** *to cry, shout, call out.*
         quis . . . casus: = qui casus.
         mihi: *from me;* DAT. OF SEPARATION.
         ademit: adimere, *to take away.*
144.   **nominat: nominare,** *to call by name;* note the emphatic placement of the
             names in 142–43.
145.   **a morte:** use of the prep. (ABL. OF AGENT instead of ABL. OF MEANS) has the
             effect of personifying death.
146.   **recondidit: recondere,** *to conceal again = to close again.*
147.   **quae:** conjunctive use of the rel.
         postquam . . . suam cognovit: a deliberate echo of **postquam . . . suos cognovit,**
             identically positioned in 137; like the repetition of **tua te** in 143 and 148,
             an example of the pervasive musicality of Ovid's verse.
         -que . . . et: = et . . . et, *both . . . and.*
         ense: ensis, *sword;* ABL. OF SEPARATION with **vacuum,** *empty.*
148.   **ebur:** *ivory;* here, by SYNECDOCHE, *= ivory scabbard.*

Dum dubitat, tremebunda videt pulsare cruentum
membra solum retroque pedem tulit, oraque buxo
135   pallidiora gerens exhorruit aequoris instar,
quod tremit exigua cum summum stringitur aura.
Sed postquam remorata suos cognovit amores,
percutit indignos claro plangore lacertos,
et laniata comas amplexaque corpus amatum
140   vulnera supplevit lacrimis fletumque cruori
miscuit, et gelidis in vultibus oscula figens,
"Pyrame," clamavit, "quis te mihi casus ademit?
Pyrame, responde! tua te carissima Thisbe
nominat. Exaudi vultusque attolle iacentes!"
145   Ad nomen Thisbes oculos a morte gravatos
Pyramus erexit visaque recondidit illa.
Quae postquam vestemque suam cognovit et ense
vidit ebur vacuum, "Tua te manus," inquit, "amorque

"Pyramus and Thisbe"
Gregorio Pagani
16th–early 17th century

149. **perdidit:** use of a sg. vb. with a compound subj. was not uncommon.
      et: = **etiam** both in this line and in the next.
      mihi: DAT. OF POSSESSION.
      in unum hoc (150): *for this one thing;* **in** is used similarly in the next line.
150. **hic:** sc. **amor; hic,** the pron., has a long **i** where the meter requires.
151. **exstinctum:** sc. **te.**
      leti: **letum,** *death;* with **tui,** framing the cl.
152. **comes:** *companion.*
      quique: = **et (tu) qui.**
      morte revelli ... poteras, poteris ... morte revelli (153): revellere, *to tear away;* an extraordinally effective use of ANAPHORA, CHIASMUS, and end-line rhyme.
153. **sola:** with **morte,** not **me.**
      nec: here, *not even.*
154. **hoc ... estote rogati:** *you shall be asked for this;* **estote** is fut. imper. of **sum.** **Rogare** and similar vbs. of asking take two accs., one of the pers. asked, one of the thing; in the pass. the latter acc. is retained.
      amborum: *of both.*
155. **multum miseri meus:** ALLITERATION of **m** is often meant to add a somber tone.
      meus: sg. perhaps because she is thinking only of her father.
156. **ut ... non invideatis (157):** JUSSIVE NOUN CL. in appos. with **hoc,** *that you not be unwilling to allow* + the inf. phrase **(nos) componi eodem tumulo; ut ... non** is used instead of **ne** to give negative emphasis to **invideatis.**
      novissima: here, *last.*
158. **tu, quae ... arbor:** = **tu, arbor, quae.**
      ramis: ramus, *branch.*
159. **tegis ... es tectura:** sc. **et,** as both vbs. belong to the rel. cl.
      unius ... duorum: cp. **una duos ... nox perdet amantes** (108); Thisbe's response to Pyramus' suicide echoes his response to what he thought was her death.
      es tectura: sc. **corpora;** FUT. ACT. PERIPHRASTIC.
160. **pullos:** *dark.*
      luctibus: luctus, *grief, sorrow.*
162. **aptato: aptare,** *to place, adapt.*
      mucrone: mucro, *point of a sword.*
      sub imum: *at the lowest part of.*
163. **incubuit: incumbere,** *to lean on;* with **ferro,** *fall on.*
      adhuc: adv., *still.*
      tepebat: tepere, *be warm.*
164. **vota: votum,** *prayer;* ANAPHORA, ASYNDETON, and the resounding ALLITERA-TION make this line a very effective introduction to the story's two, highly dramatic closing verses.

perdidit infelix. Est et mihi fortis in unum
150   hoc manus, est et amor; dabit hic in vulnera vires.
Persequar exstinctum letique miserrima dicar
causa comesque tui; quique a me morte revelli
heu sola poteras, poteris nec morte revelli.
Hoc tamen amborum verbis estote rogati,
155   o multum miseri meus illiusque parentes,
ut quos certus amor, quos hora novissima iunxit,
componi tumulo non invideatis eodem.
At tu, quae ramis arbor miserabile corpus
nunc tegis unius, mox es tectura duorum,
160   signa tene caedis, pullosque et luctibus aptos
semper habe fetus, gemini monumenta cruoris."
Dixit et, aptato pectus mucrone sub imum,
incubuit ferro quod adhuc a caede tepebat.
Vota tamen tetigere deos, tetigere parentes;

"Pyramus and Thisbe"
Lucas Cranach the Elder, 1520–25
Neue Residenz, Bamberg, Germany

165.   **nam . . . ater:** this verse, with the metamorphosis of the tree's berries from snowy-white **(niveis,** line 89) to black, reveals the gods' response **(tetigere deos)** to Thisbe's prayer in 158–61, while the following verse shows the parents' response **(tetigere parentes)** to the entreaty of 154–57.

166.   **quod:** sc. **id** (i.e., their ashes) as antecedent of **quod** and subj. of **requiescit.**
       rogis: rogus, *funeral pyre;* sc. **ex.**
       superest: superesse, *to be left over, survive.*
       una . . . in urna: the ASSONANCE especially, and the ALLITERATION of **r,** add a charming sound effect to the tale's closing line.

183.   **Daedalus:** a legendary Athenian inventor and craftsman (which is the meaning of his name, Greek *daidalos*), he was regarded as the earliest sculptor. Having murdered his nephew in a jealous rage over the young man's talents, he fled to the court of King Minos in Crete, where he constructed the fabulous labyrinth to contain the Minotaur. Later, when Minos imprisoned him and his son Icarus in the labyrinth, Daedalus contrived to fly away as we read in the following story.
       Creten: Greek acc. of **Creta.**
       perosus: *hating, loathing.*

185.   **pelago: pelagus,** *sea.* Either Daedalus was shut in *by the sea* (which barred his escape) or he was shut off (excluded) *from the sea* (i.e., Minos denied him access to the sea); in view of **undas obstruat** in the next sent., the latter option may have more to recommend it.
       licet . . . obstruat (186): licet, here *although,* may be used with the inf. or with the subjunct., as here, *he* (i.e., Minos) *may block.*

186.   **illac:** adv., *by that route.*

187.   **omnia possideat . . . possidet aera:** CHIASMUS underscores the contrast.
       possideat: sc. **licet,** *although he may possess.*
       aera: Greek acc. of **aer,** *air.*

188.   **ignotas:** *unknown, unfamiliar.*

189.   **novat: novare,** *to make new, change, alter.*
       pennas: penna, *feather.*

190.   **a minima coeptas:** sc. **penna;** we would say, *beginning with . . ..*
       longam breviore sequenti: i.e., **breviore penna sequenti longam pennam;** although the entire description is somewhat impressionistic, Ovid may mean that long feathers were alternated with shorter ones, giving the wing's edge a serrated effect.

191.   **ut . . . putes:** RESULT CL., *(in such a way) that . . ..*
       clivo: clivus, *slope;* sc. **in.**
       rustica . . . fistula (192): *a rustic pipe* = a Pan's pipe, or primitive harmonica, made of several small pipes of graduated lengths, each producing a different note.
       quondam: i.e., *from ancient times.*

192.   **disparibus:** *unequal, varying.*
       paulatim: adv., *gradually.*
       surgit: *rises* or, here, *tapers.*
       avenis: avena, *reed.*

165 nam color in pomo est, ubi permaturuit, ater,
     quodque rogis superest una requiescit in urna.

DAEDALUS AND ICARUS: THE FIRST FLIGHT

Metamorphoses **8.183–235**

Daedalus constructs wings for himself and his son Icarus.

       Daedalus interea Creten longumque perosus
     exsilium, tactusque loci natalis amore,
185 clausus erat pelago. "Terras licet," inquit, "et undas
     obstruat, et caelum certe patet; ibimus illac!
     Omnia possideat, non possidet aera Minos."
     Dixit et ignotas animum dimittit in artes,
     naturamque novat. Nam ponit in ordine pennas
190 a minima coeptas, longam breviore sequenti,
     ut clivo crevisse putes (sic rustica quondam
     fistula disparibus paulatim surgit avenis);

"Daedalus Attaching
Icarus' Wings"
Joseph Marie Vien
1754
École des Beaux-Arts
Paris, France

193. **lino: linum,** *linen, thread, cord.*
     medias et . . . imas atque . . . compositas (194): sc. **pennas.**
     ceris: cera, *wax.*
     alligat: alligare, *to tie, bind.*
     imas: *lowest, bottommost.*
194. **flectit: flectere,** *to bend.*
195. **aves: avis,** *bird.*
     una: adv., *together;* sc. **cum patre.**
196. **tractare:** *to handle.*
197. **renidenti: renidere,** *to shine, beam, smile.*
     modo . . . modo (198): both are advs.
     vaga: *wandering, shifting.*
198. **captabat: captare,** *to try to seize, catch, snatch at, pluck at.*
     plumas: = **pennas.**
     flavam: *yellow, golden.*
     pollice: pollex, *thumb.*
199. **mollibat:** = **molliebat.**
     lusu: lusus, *playing, sport.*
200. **manus ultima:** *the last hand* = *the finishing touch.*
     coepto: coeptum, *a thing begun* = *undertaking, project.*
201. **opifex:** *worker, artisan.*
     libravit: librare, *to balance, poise.*
     alas: ala, *wing.*
202. **mota:** i.e., by the movement of his wings.
203. **et:** = **etiam.**
     natum: natus, partic. of **nasci** used as a noun, = **filius.**
     limite: limes, *path, way;* ABL. OF ROUTE.
204. **demissior:** *too low.*
205. **celsior:** *too high.*
206. **utrumque:** *each, the two;* i.e., keep to the middle course.
     Booten aut Helicen (207): Greek acc., constellations of *the Plowman* and *the Great Bear;* Icarus should not try to set an independent course by the stars but should simply follow Daedalus.
207. **strictum: stringere,** with **ensis** *(sword),* = *to draw.* Orion is a constellation prominent to the south, the Plowman and the Great Bear to the north; so the order is a recapitulation of that in 206.
209. **umeris: umerus,** *shoulder, upper arm.*
     accommodat: accommodare, *to adapt, adjust, fit.*
210. **monitus:** acc. pl., *warnings.*
     genae: gena, *cheek.*
     maduere: madere, *to be wet;* sc. **lacrimis,** because of his anxiety for Icarus.
211. **patriae:** adj. with **manus.**
212. **repetenda:** *to be repeated* or *sought again.*
     levatus: levare, *to lighten, raise, lift up.*
213. **velut:** *just as.*
     ales: *bird.*
     ab alto: with **nido (nidus,** *nest),* producing an end-line rhyme.

tum lino medias et ceris alligat imas,
atque ita compositas parvo curvamine flectit,
195   ut veras imitetur aves. Puer Icarus una
stabat et, ignarus sua se tractare pericla,
ore renidenti modo, quas vaga moverat aura,
captabat plumas, flavam modo pollice ceram
mollibat, lusuque suo mirabile patris
200   impediebat opus. Postquam manus ultima coepto
imposita est, geminas opifex libravit in alas
ipse suum corpus motaque pependit in aura.

Daedalus instructs and warns Icarus.

Instruit et natum, "Medio"que "ut limite curras,
Icare," ait "moneo, ne, si demissior ibis,
205   unda gravet pennas, si celsior, ignis adurat:
inter utrumque vola. Nec te spectare Booten
aut Helicen iubeo strictumque Orionis ensem:
me duce, carpe viam!" Pariter praecepta volandi
tradit et ignotas umeris accommodat alas.
210   Inter opus monitusque genae maduere seniles,
et patriae tremuere manus; dedit oscula nato
non iterum repetenda suo, pennisque levatus
ante volat comitique timet, velut ales ab alto

"Daedalus and Icarus"
Charles Paul Landon
1799
Musée Municipal des Beaux-Arts
Alençon, France

214.   **teneram:** *tender, delicate, young.*
       prolem: proles, *offspring.*
215.   **sequi:** sc. **natum** as subj.
       damnosas: *destructive.*
       erudit: erudire, *to teach.*
216.   **alas:** with both **movet** and **respicit;** see note on **notae** (117).
217.   **hos:** obj. of **videt** and **obstipuit,** antecedent of **qui,** and subj. of **esse.**
       tremula: *shaking,* because there is a fish on the line, or *trembling,* because
           the fisherman is frightened at the sight of the two men flying.
       harundine: harundo, *rod.*
       pisces: piscis, *fish.*
218.   **pastor . . . arator:** *a shepherd leaning on* **(inniti)** *his staff* **(baculus)** *or a plow-*
           man (leaning on) the handle of his plow **(stiva);** CHIASMUS.
219.   **obstipuit: obstipescere,** *to be amazed, astounded.*
       aethera: Greek acc. of **aether,** *heaven, sky.*
       carpere: here, *to pass through.*
220.   **laeva parte (221):** *on their left side.*
221.   **Samos:** sc. **erat;** called **Iunonia** because it was *sacred to Juno.* Samos, Delos,
           Paros, Lebinthos, and Calymne are all Greek islands in the Aegean Sea.
222.   **dextra:** nom., as the meter indicates, though it balances **laeva parte.** Having
           flown north from Crete and past Delos and Paros, the pair are now fly-
           ing east, with Samos to the north, Lebinthos and Calymne to the south,
           and approaching what was to be named, after Icarus' disaster, the Icar-
           ian Sea.
       fecunda: *fertile, rich.*
223.   **audaci:** logically with **puer,** a TRANSFERRED EPITHET; and note the ASSONANCE
           with **gaudere.**
224.   **deseruit: deserere,** *to desert, abandon.*
225.   **rapidi:** here, *ravaging, fierce.*
226.   **odoratas:** *fragrant.*
227.   **tabuerant: tabescere,** *to waste away, melt;* the plpf. indicates sudden action.
       nudos: i.e., *stripped* (of their wings).
       quatit: quatere, *to shake.*
228.   **remigio: remigium,** *oarage, set of oars;* Ovid's use of this term for Icarus'
           wings deliberately anticipates the boy's fall from the sky into the sea.
       percipit: percipere, *to receive, catch.*
229.   **ora . . . aqua (230):** the complex interlocking order (ABCACB) suits Ovid's
           violent and pathetic image of the youth's drowning.
       caerulea: lit., *sky-blue,* mirroring the **caelum** (224) from which Icarus has
           fallen; similarly **excipiuntur aqua** in 230 is an ironic echo of **percipit auras**
           in 228, as the boy who cannot quite *catch hold of the air* through which
           he "sails" is himself *caught up by the water* in which he drowns.
231.   **nec iam pater:** i.e., since Icarus had just perished in the sea.

quae teneram prolem produxit in aera nido,
215 hortaturque sequi, damnosasque erudit artes,
et movet ipse suas et nati respicit alas.
Hos aliquis, tremula dum captat harundine pisces,
aut pastor baculo stivave innixus arator
vidit et obstipuit, quique aethera carpere possent,
220 credidit esse deos.

Icarus' youthful impetuosity precipitates his destruction.

Et iam Iunonia laeva
parte Samos (fuerant Delosque Parosque relictae),
dextra Lebinthos erat fecundaque melle Calymne,
cum puer audaci coepit gaudere volatu
deseruitque ducem caelique cupidine tractus
225 altius egit iter. Rapidi vicinia solis
mollit odoratas, pennarum vincula, ceras.
Tabuerant cerae; nudos quatit ille lacertos,
remigioque carens non ullas percipit auras,
oraque caerulea patrium clamantia nomen
230 excipiuntur aqua, quae nomen traxit ab illo.
At pater infelix, nec iam pater, "Icare," dixit;

"The Fall of Icarus"
Carlo Saraceni, ca. 1608
Museo Nazionale di Capodimonte, Naples, Italy

233.   **dicebat:** Ovid's shift to the impf. here *(he kept calling)*, after **dixit . . . dixit,** and his triple repetition of Icarus' name add to the pathos of the passage; and the repetition also of **nomen/nomen/nomine** underscores the story's point that Icarus gave his name to both the Icarian Sea **(quae nomen traxit ab illo,** 230) and the island of Icaria (the **tellus,** *land,* of 235).

234.   **devovit: devovere,** lit., *to vow away* = *curse.*
        sepulcro: sepulcrum, *tomb, sepulcher.*

235.   **sepulti: sepelire,** *to bury;* set at line's end to echo its cognate **sepulcro** and punctuate the narrative's grim conclusion.

1.   **inde:** adv., *thence, from there;* i.e., from Crete, where the marriage god Hymenaeus had attended a wedding (in the story preceding this one at the end of *Metamorphoses* 9).
        croceo: *saffron yellow,* the color of a bride's veil, and so a color naturally enough worn by the god of marriage.
        velatus: velare, *to veil, cover, cloak;* the word is surrounded by **croceo . . . amictu,** producing a WORD-PICTURE.
        amictu: amictus, *robe, cloak.*

2.   **Ciconum:** *the Cicones,* a people in Thrace, which was a district north of the Aegean Sea and the homeland of Orpheus.
        oras: ora, *coast, shore.*

3.   **Orphea:** adj., *of Orpheus.* A mythical poet, singer, and musician and son of the Muse Calliope, Orpheus was given a lyre by Apollo and instructed by the god; his skill was so great that he could charm with his music not only men and beasts but even trees and stones.
        nequiquam: because of the unhappy end of the marriage.

4.   **sollemnia:** *religious, festive, customary.*

6.   **fax:** *torch.* An attribute of Hymenaeus, torches were carried in the wedding procession; it was a bad omen for a torch not to burn with a bright flame.
        stridula: *hissing, sputtering.*

7.   **motibus:** *with its movement;* i.e., the torch did not flame up even when waved through the air to ignite the sparks.

8.   **exitus:** *outcome, result;* sc. **erat.**
        auspicio: auspicium, *omen.*
        nupta . . . nova (9): *the new bride;* i.e., Eurydice, who is curiously not named until line 31.

9.   **Naiadum: Nais,** *Naiad* (a water nymph).
        comitata: comitare, *to accompany.*
        vagatur: vagari, *to wander, roam.*

10.   **talum: talus,** *ankle, heel;* **in . . . recepto** seems an odd circumlocution and is taken by some readers, along with other curiosities in the narrative, as an intentional deflation of the story's seriousness by way of parodying the grander version in Vergil's *Georgics* (4.452–546).

11.   **quam:** Eurydice.
        Rhodopeius . . . vates (12): *the Thracian bard;* from Rhodope, a mountain of Thrace. Note the INTERLOCKED WORD ORDER with **superas . . . auras.**

12.   **deflevit: deflere,** *to weep for, bewail;* modified by the rather unheroic **satis.**
        ne non temptaret et: *that he might not* (**ne**) *fail to* (**non**) *try even* (**et**).

"Icare," dixit "ubi es? Qua te regione requiram?"
"Icare," dicebat. Pennas aspexit in undis,
devovitque suas artes, corpusque sepulcro
235   condidit; et tellus a nomine dicta sepulti.

ORPHEUS AND EURYDICE: A DESCENT INTO HADES

Metamorphoses **10.1–77, 11.61–66**

Inauspicious omens precede the death of Eurydice.

Inde per immensum, croceo velatus amictu,
aethera digreditur Ciconumque Hymenaeus ad oras
tendit, et Orphea nequiquam voce vocatur.
Adfuit ille quidem, sed nec sollemnia verba
5   nec laetos vultus nec felix attulit omen;
fax quoque quam tenuit lacrimoso stridula fumo
usque fuit nullosque invenit motibus ignes.
Exitus auspicio gravior. Nam nupta per herbas
dum nova, Naiadum turba comitata, vagatur,
10   occidit in talum serpentis dente recepto.

Orpheus' visits the underworld and pleas on behalf of Eurydice.

Quam satis ad superas postquam Rhodopeius auras
deflevit vates, ne non temptaret et umbras,

Orpheus, Eurydice, and Hermes
Marble relief
Roman copy of Greek original
5th century B.C.
Museo Archeologico Nazionale
Naples, Italy

13.   **Styga:** Greek acc. of **Styx,** *the Styx,* a river in the Underworld.

Taenaria . . . porta: *by the gate of Taenarus,* a supposed entrance to Hades in the southern tip of Greece; ABL. OF ROUTE.

14.   **functa: fungi,** + abl., *to perform, experience;* with **simulacra (simulacrum,** *phantom, ghost*) . . . **sepulcro,** *ghosts which had experienced burial* (without which they would have to wander in Limbo across the Styx outside of Hades).

15.   **Persephonen:** Greek acc.; *Persephone,* daughter of the grain-goddess Ceres and wife of Pluto, lord of the dead, was queen of the Underworld.

inamoena: *unpleasant.*

16.   **umbrarum dominum:** i.e., Pluto; the circumlocution is made all the more effective through ENJAMBEMENT and the booming ASSONANCE, which Ovid accentuates by positioning each of the **-um** syllables under the ictus.

ad carmina: i.e., *to accompany his songs;* Orpheus does not merely address Pluto and Persephone, but tries to charm them with his singing.

nervis: nervus, lit., *sinew* = *string of a lyre.*

17.   **numina: numen,** *divine will, divinity, god.*

18.   **reccidimus: reccidere,** *to fall back, sink, descend.*

quidquid: essentially = **qui,** looking back to the subj. of **reccidimus,** hence **creamur** not **creatur.**

19.   **positis:** = **depositis.**

ambagibus: ambages, *circumlocution, ambiguity.*

20.   **loqui:** sc. **me** as subj.

huc: adv., *to this place, here.*

opaca: *shady, dark.*

21.   **Tartara:** n. pl., *Tartarus,* the abode of the dead, Hades.

uti: = **ut.**

villosa . . . monstri (22): the INTERLOCKED WORD ORDER of the nouns and adjs. (ABACAC) suits the image of Cerberus' three heads *bristling* **(villosa)** *with snakes* **(colubris,** from **colubra).**

22.   **terna:** = **tria;** the distributive numerals (e.g., **ternus,** *three each*) were sometimes used by poets instead of the cardinals, especially when a pl. noun constituted a set, like the three heads of Cerberus, the savage hound who guarded the entrance to Hades.

Medusaei: *Medusa-like;* Cerberus was born of the snake-monster Echidna, one of Medusa's sisters, and like Medusa had snakes for hair.

vincirem: vincire, *to bind, tie;* Hercules had bound and carried off Cerberus as one of his labors.

guttura: guttur, *throat;* Ovid focuses on the **guttura** vs. the **capita** because of the vb. **vincire.**

23.   **coniunx:** *wife.*

calcata: *trodden upon, stepped on.*

venenum: *poison.*

24.   **crescentes:** here, *burgeoning, budding.*

25.   **pati:** sc. **mortem coniugis.**

temptasse: = **temptavisse.**

ad Styga Taenaria est ausus descendere porta,
perque leves populos simulacraque functa sepulcro
15   Persephonen adiit inamoenaque regna tenentem
umbrarum dominum, pulsisque ad carmina nervis
sic ait: "O positi sub terra numina mundi,
in quem reccidimus, quidquid mortale creamur,
si licet et, falsi positis ambagibus oris,
20   vera loqui sinitis, non huc, ut opaca viderem
Tartara, descendi, nec uti villosa colubris
terna Medusaei vincirem guttura monstri.
Causa viae est coniunx in quam calcata venenum
vipera diffudit crescentesque abstulit annos.
25   Posse pati volui, nec me temptasse negabo;

"Proserpine" (Persephone)
Dante Gabriel Rossetti
1874
Tate Gallery
London, Great Britain

27.   **et:** = **etiam;** with **hic** (adv.).
      auguror: augurari, *to divine, surmise.*
      esse: sc. **eum (Amorem)** as subj.

28.   **est mentita: mentiri,** *to lie, speak falsely.*
      rapinae: rapina, *abduction, rape;* Pluto had abducted Persephone and carried
          her off to Hades to be his queen.

29.   **per ego . . . loca:** when **ego** is used in an oath it regularly stands between **per**
          (by) and its object.

30.   **Chaos:** n. sg., *Chaos, the Abyss, the Underworld;* modified by **hoc,** which in
          poetry is often scanned as a long syllable in both the nom. and acc.
          cases.

31.   **Eurydices:** Greek gen. sg.
      properata: *hurried, premature,* from **properare,** *to hurry, rush, hasten.*
      retexite: retexere, *to unweave, reverse;* an allusion to the Fates, who in classi-
          cal myth weave the tapestry of one's life.

32.   **paulum:** adv., *a little, a while.*
      morati: morari, *to linger, delay.*

33.   **serius aut citius:** Eng. uses the reverse order, *sooner or later.*
      sedem: sedes, *seat, abode, home, place.*

34.   **vosque:** emphatically positioned, to strengthen his appeal (and cp. **vos** in 29).

35.   **regna:** pl. for sg., *rule (over)* + OBJ. GEN.

36.   **peregerit: peragere,** *to finish, live out.*

37.   **iuris erit vestri:** lit., *will be of your law* = *will be under your jurisdiction.*
      pro munere: *as a favor.*
      poscimus: poscere, *to request, demand.*
      usum: *loan;* a technical term for temporary use of another's property. This
          word, together with **iustos** and **iuris,** gives Orpheus' plea a legalistic tone.

38.   **quod si:** *but if.*
      veniam: venia, *kindness, favor, pardon.*
      certum est . . . mihi (39): i.e., *I am resolved (to);* the delay of **mihi** is meant to
          parallel that of **pro coniuge.**

40.   **dicentem . . . moventem:** positioning the first partic. at the caesura empha-
          sizes the internal rhyme, lending a musicality to the verse that suits its
          meaning.

41.   **exsangues:** *bloodless, lifeless, pale.*
      Tantalus: for his sins, *Tantalus* was placed near food and water which always
          withdrew just beyond his grasp when he reached for it; but for a mo-
          ment, under the spell of Orpheus' music, he forgot this "tantalizing"
          torture.

42.   **stupuit: stupere,** *to be amazed, stupefied;* with **Ixionis orbis,** *Ixion's wheel,*
          = *halted in amazement.* Like Tantalus and the others mentioned here,
          Ixion had committed a crime (the attempted seduction of Juno) for
          which he was condemned to eternal torment in Hades; Ixion's punish-
          ment was to be spread-eagled on a wheel that perpetually turned, but
          here even the wheel was mesmerized by Orpheus' song and ceased to
          revolve.

vicit Amor. Supera deus hic bene notus in ora est;
an sit et hic, dubito. Sed et hic tamen auguror esse,
famaque si veteris non est mentita rapinae,
vos quoque iunxit Amor. Per ego haec loca plena timoris,
30   per Chaos hoc ingens vastique silentia regni,
Eurydices, oro, properata retexite fata.
Omnia debentur vobis paulumque morati
serius aut citius sedem properamus ad unam.
Tendimus huc omnes, haec est domus ultima, vosque
35   humani generis longissima regna tenetis.
Haec quoque, cum iustos matura peregerit annos,
iuris erit vestri; pro munere poscimus usum.
Quod si fata negant veniam pro coniuge, certum est
nolle redire mihi; leto gaudete duorum."

Through the charm of his music Orpheus wins his request for Eurydice's
return, only to lose her again as they near the upper world.

40   Talia dicentem nervosque ad verba moventem
exsangues flebant animae; nec Tantalus undam
captavit refugam, stupuitque Ixionis orbis,

"Orpheus before Pluto and Proserpina"
François Perrier, 1650
Louvre, Paris, France

43. **iecur:** *liver.*
     volucres: volucris, *winged creature, bird.* The giant Tityus attempted to rape
        Leto, mother of Diana and Apollo, and was tied to the ground in Hades
        and exposed to vultures that plucked constantly at his liver.
     vacarunt: vacare, *to be free from.*
44. **Belides:** *Danaids,* the 50 daughters of Danaus, king of Libya and son of Be-
        lus; 49 of them murdered their husbands on their wedding night, at their
        father's bidding, and were punished in the Underworld by forever trying
        to fill water urns that had holes in the bottom.
     Sisyphe: in an abrupt APOSTROPHE the narrator addresses the Corinthian king
        Sisyphus, who for his deceit and avarice had been condemned in Hades
        to the unending task of pushing up a hill a huge stone that always rolled
        back down again when he neared the top.
45. **lacrimis:** with **genas maduisse,** IND. STATE. depending on **fama est.**
     carmine: with **victarum.**
46. **Eumenidum: Eumenides,** *Eumenides, Furies,* three winged demons with snaky
        hair who relentlessly harassed men for their crimes, both in life and
        beyond the grave; this was the first time they had ever wept.
47. **sustinet . . . negare:** *endure to deny* = *have the power to say no (to).*
     oranti: sc. **Orpheo** (dat.).
     ima: sc. **loca.**
48. **Eurydicen:** acc. sg.
     recentes: with **umbras,** obj. of **inter;** ANASTROPHE, reversal of the normal word
        order, especially in a prep. phrase, was common in poetry.
49. **passu: passus,** *step, pace.*
50. **simul et:** *at the same time as* = *together with.*
51. **ne flectat:** JUSSIVE NOUN CL. dependent on **legem,** *the stipulation (that).*
     lumina: lumen, *light, eye.*
     donec: conj., *until,* + subjunct. denoting anticipation or purpose.
     Avernas: *of Avernus (Hades).*
52. **exierit:** here transitive with a dir. obj.
     valles: vallis, *valley.*
     irrita: *void, invalid, in vain.*
     futura: sc. **esse,** IND. STATE. depending on the idea of speech in **legem.**
53. **acclivis:** *ascending, sloping upward.*
     trames: *path, trail.*
54. **caligine: caligo,** *fog.*
55. **afuerunt:** vowels normally long, like the **-e-** here, are sometimes shortened in
        poetry (SYSTOLE), when the syllable was not under the ictus.
     telluris . . . summae: *the highest part of the earth* = *the upper world.*
56. **hic:** adv.
     deficeret: sc. **Eurydice.**
     avidus videndi: *eager for seeing, eager to see.*
58. **bracchia: bracchium,** *arm.*
     prendi: prendere, *to grasp, seize.*
     certans: certare, *to struggle, strive.*
59. **cedentes:** *yielding, retreating.*

       nec carpsere iecur volucres, urnisque vacarunt
       Belides, inque tuo sedisti, Sisyphe, saxo.
45   Tunc primum lacrimis victarum carmine fama est
       Eumenidum maduisse genas. Nec regia coniunx
       sustinet oranti, nec qui regit ima, negare,
       Eurydicenque vocant. Umbras erat illa recentes
       inter, et incessit passu de vulnere tardo.
50   Hanc simul et legem Rhodopeius accipit Orpheus,
       ne flectat retro sua lumina, donec Avernas
       exierit valles, aut irrita dona futura.
         Carpitur acclivis per muta silentia trames,
       arduus, obscurus, caligine densus opaca.
55   Nec procul afuerunt telluris margine summae;
       hic, ne deficeret metuens avidusque videndi,
       flexit amans oculos, et protinus illa relapsa est;
       bracchiaque intendens, prendique et prendere certans,
       nil nisi cedentes infelix arripit auras.
60   Iamque iterum moriens, non est de coniuge quicquam

"Orpheus and Eurydice"
Peter Paul Rubens, 17th century
Museo del Prado, Madrid, Spain

61. **se ... amatam:** sc. **esse;** IND. STATE. with the POTENTIAL SUBJUNCT. **quereretur,** *what complaint was she to make except that . . ..*

62. **supremum ... "Vale":** *a last farewell.*

63. **quod ... acciperet:** REL. CL. OF CHARACTERISTIC.
     revoluta ... est: revolvere, *to roll back.*
     rursus: adv., *again.*
     eodem: adv., *to the same place.*

64. **non aliter ... quam ... qui ... quam qui (68):** the tables are turned, and now it is Orpheus who is dumbstruck (**stupuit,** echoing the same vb. in 42); just as his song had momentarily halted the actions of the criminals in the Underworld, and even the turning of Ixion's wheel, so here he is stunned at the sight of Eurydice plummeting backwards into Hades, and his temporary paralysis is compared, in this double simile, with that of two otherwise unknown mythic characters who were transformed into stone. The dactyls in 64–65 help suggest the suddenness of Orpheus' response.

65. **tria:** with **colla (collum,** *neck);* though he had not descended into Hades to see Cerberus (21–22), he is stunned as if he had gazed upon the beast.
     medio: sc. **collo;** his neck had been chained by Hercules.

66. **quem ... oborto (67):** i.e., he was transformed from his human state into stone even before he had stopped trembling in fear at the sight of the dog.
     pavor: *trembling, terror.*
     ante ... quam (67): conj., *before.*

67. **oborto:** oboriri, *to rise up, spring up.*

68. **quam qui ... Olenos (69):** = **quam Olenos qui.** Apparently Lethaea had committed some offense (**crimen),** perhaps in boasting about her beauty (**figurae),** and when her spouse or lover Olenos tried to take the blame himself, both were turned to stone.

69. **confisa:** *trusting in,* + dat.

71. **lapides: lapis,** *stone.*
     umida: *wet, moist, rainy.*
     sustinet: i.e., the rocks or boulders were on *Mt. Ida* (**Ide**—there were mountains of this name in Troy and Crete); the myth was perhaps based on some anthropomorphic rock formations.

72. **orantem:** i.e., Orpheus, who had returned towards Hades as far as the Styx.

73. **portitor:** *ferryman,* i.e., Charon, who ferried the dead, and rarely the living, across the Styx.
     arcuerat: arcere, *to keep out, debar, prevent.*
     septem ... diebus: ABL. OF DURATION OF TIME, instead of the usual acc.

74. **ripa:** *bank* (of a river).
     Cereris sine munere: *without the gift of Ceres* (**Ceres),** i.e., without food.

75. **alimenta: alimentum,** *food.*

76. **Erebi: Erebus** = Hades.

77. **Rhodopen:** acc. of Rhodope (see on 11 above).
     aquilonibus: aquilo, *north wind.*
     Haemum: Haemus, another mountain range in Thrace.

questa suo (quid enim nisi se quereretur amatam?),
supremumque "Vale," quod iam vix auribus ille
acciperet, dixit revolutaque rursus eodem est.
    Non aliter stupuit gemina nece coniugis Orpheus,
65 quam tria qui timidus, medio portante catenas,
colla canis vidit, quem non pavor ante reliquit,
quam natura prior, saxo per corpus oborto;
quam qui in se crimen traxit voluitque videri
Olenos esse nocens, tuque, o confisa figurae
70 infelix Lethaea tuae, iunctissima quondam
pectora, nunc lapides, quos umida sustinet Ide.
    Orantem frustraque iterum transire volentem
portitor arcuerat. Septem tamen ille diebus
squalidus in ripa Cereris sine munere sedit;
75 cura dolorque animi lacrimaeque alimenta fuere.
Esse deos Erebi crudeles questus, in altam
se recipit Rhodopen pulsumque aquilonibus Haemum.

"Orpheus and Eurydice"
Frederico Cervelli
17th century
Galleria Querini Stampalia
Venice, Italy

61.   **umbra:** i.e., Orpheus' ghost. Grieving over the final loss of his wife, he scorned all the women of Thrace and thus enraged a band of frenzied Maenads (female worshippers of Bacchus), who attacked him and tore him to pieces.

62.   **cuncta:** = **omnia.**
       arva: arvum, *field;* with **piorum** *(good, virtuous, blessed)* = the Elysian Fields, that region of the Underworld reserved for the virtuous.

63.   **amplectitur:** in Vergil's account Eurydice vanished into the darkness again as the two vainly attempted to embrace.
       ulnis: ulna, *arm.*

64.   **spatiantur: spatiari,** *to walk.*

65.   **sequitur: Orpheus** is subj. and **Eurydicen** obj. of the sent.'s three vbs.
       anteit: the **ei** is scanned as a single syllable (SYNIZESIS).

66.   **tuto:** adv., *safely.*

85.   **hoc:** the wine-god Bacchus, outraged by the slaying of his favorite bard, Orpheus, metamorphosed the Thracian women who had killed him into oak trees, but this was not punishment enough.

86.   **choro: chorus,** *band* (of followers); i.e., better than the Maenads who had slain Orpheus.
       vineta: vinetum, *vineyard.*
       Timoli: T(i)molus, a mountain in Lydia sacred to Bacchus.

87.   **Pactolon:** Greek acc. sg. of **Pactolus,** a river of Lydia in western Asia Minor which rose on Mount Timolus and was famous in antiquity for the gold found in its sand.

88.   **caris:** here, *dear* in the economic sense, *valuable.*
       invidiosus: lit., *full of envy* = *envied.*
       harenis: harena, *sand;* ABL. OF CAUSE.

89.   **adsueta:** *customary.*
       cohors: *throng, troop.*
       Satyri: *Satyrs,* lascivious woodland creatures who accompanied Bacchus in his revels; usually depicted as men with pointed ears, tails, and the legs and hooves of goats or horses, they represent the forces of male fertility.
       Bacchae: another name for the Maenads, female attendants of Bacchus, either semidivine spirits of vegetation and fertility as here or mortal women who took part in the orgiastic worship of Bacchus.
       frequentant: frequentare, *to attend in large numbers.*

90.   **Silenus:** an elderly satyr, son of Pan or Hermes, noted for both his wisdom and his love of strong drink; he raised Bacchus and was his tutor and faithful attendant.
       titubantem: titubare, *to stagger, reel;* sc. **Silenum.**
       meroque: merum (sc. **vinum**), *unmixed wine;* usually the ancients mixed water with their wine—but old Silenus took his neat.

91.   **ruricolae . . . Phryges:** *the Phrygian rustics;* Phrygia was a district of Asia Minor.
       coronis: corona, *garland,* often worn by the ancients at their festivities.

Orpheus and Eurydice are reunited in Hades.

Umbra subit terras et, quae loca viderat ante,
cuncta recognoscit quaerensque per arva piorum
invenit Eurydicen cupidisque amplectitur ulnis.
Hic modo coniunctis spatiantur passibus ambo:
65   nunc praecedentem sequitur, nunc praevius anteit
Eurydicenque suam iam tuto respicit Orpheus.

MIDAS AND THE GOLDEN TOUCH

Metamorphoses **11.85–145**

Bacchus' tutor Silenus is generously entertained by King Midas of Phrygia, and the wine god grants Midas his wish for the golden touch.

85   Nec satis hoc Baccho est: ipsos quoque deserit agros
cumque choro meliore sui vineta Timoli
Pactolonque petit, quamvis non aureus illo
tempore nec caris erat invidiosus harenis.
Hunc adsueta cohors, Satyri Bacchaeque, frequentant,
90   at Silenus abest. Titubantem annisque meroque
ruricolae cepere Phryges vinctumque coronis
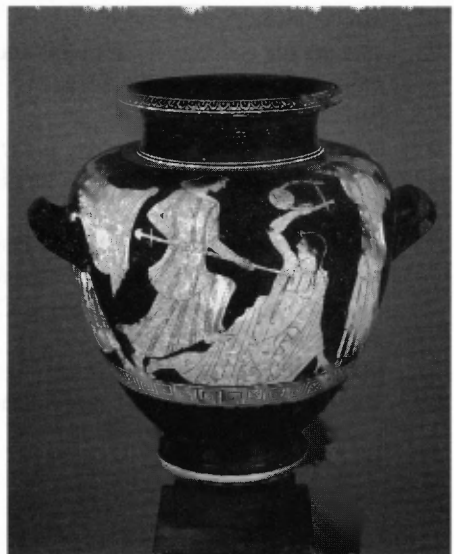
Death of Orpheus
Red-figure stamnos
Hermonax
5th century B.C.
Louvre
Paris, France

92.   **Midan:** acc. sg. of **Midas.** The legendary Phrygian king is best known from
          this story in Ovid; later in this same book of the *Metamorphoses,* how-
          ever, Ovid recounts another tale in which Midas was given the ears of
          an ass by Apollo for judging that god's music inferior to Pan's.
93.   **orgia:** n. pl., *ceremonies, rites,* here, the ecstatic rites of Bacchus.
          Cecropio: *Cecropian* (from Cecrops, the legendary second king of Athens),
          Athenian. The meter of the verse is unusual, with both HIATUS (the lack
          of elision between **Cecropio** and **Eumolpo**) and a spondee in the fifth foot,
          which nearly always is dactylic, thus producing a so-called SPONDAIC LINE.
          Eumolpo: *Eumolpus,* a Thracian bard and a pupil of Orpheus, was reputed
          to have brought the Eleusinian mysteries (the cult of Demeter and Per-
          sephone) to Eleusis, near Athens.
94.   **qui:** i.e., **Midas.**
          simul: adv., *at the same time;* here = **simul atque,** *as soon as.*
          comitem: comes, *comrade, companion;* possibly a HENDIADYS WITH **socium,**
          his allied comrade.
          sacrorum: sacra, here, *sacred rites, mysteries.*
95.   **hospitis: hospes,** *guest.*
          festum: *festival.*
97.   **sublime:** *lofty, celestial.*
          coegerat: here, *had driven away.*
          agmen: *band, throng, array.*
98.   **Lucifer:** lit., *Light-bringer,* = the morning star, which ushers in the dawn and
          thus compels the stars of the night to pale and disappear.
          Lydos: *Lydian.*
99.   **alumno: alumnus,** *foster son.*
100.   **optandi . . . arbitrium (101):** INTERLOCKED WORD ORDER, with **optandi** modi-
          fying **muneris,** *of choosing a gift.*
          fecit: with **arbitrium** *(power, opportunity),* = *made available, granted.*
101.   **altore: altor,** *foster father.*
102.   **usurus:** the fut. partic. here has the force of *destined to . . ..*
          effice . . . vertatur (103): sc. **ut.**
103.   **fulvum:** *yellow.*
104.   **solvit: solvere,** *to loosen, free, grant.*
105.   **Liber:** an early Italian god of fertility and vegetation who came to be associ-
          ated with Bacchus.
          quod . . . petisset: SUBJUNCT. OF QUOTED REASON.
106.   **Berecyntius:** *Berecyntian = Phrygian;* Mount Berecyntus in Phrygia was sa-
          cred to the fertility goddess Cybele, who in some accounts was mother
          of Midas.
107.   **polliciti: pollicitum,** *promise.*
108.   **vix . . . credens:** i.e., that he had the power granted to him.
          fronde: frons, *leaf, leafy bough.*
          virentem: virere, *to be green.*

ad regem duxere Midan, cui Thracius Orpheus
orgia tradiderat cum Cecropio Eumolpo.
Qui simul agnovit socium comitemque sacrorum,
95   hospitis adventu festum genialiter egit
per bis quinque dies et iunctas ordine noctes.
Et iam stellarum sublime coegerat agmen
Lucifer undecimus, Lydos cum laetus in agros
rex venit et iuveni Silenum reddit alumno.
100   Huic deus optandi gratum sed inutile fecit
muneris arbitrium, gaudens altore recepto.
Ille male usurus donis ait: "Effice quidquid
corpore contigero fulvum vertatur in aurum."
Adnuit optatis nocituraque munera solvit
105   Liber et indoluit quod non meliora petisset.

Midas' excitement is followed by disillusionment and agony.

Laetus abit gaudetque malo Berecyntius heros,
pollicitique fidem tangendo singula temptat,
vixque sibi credens non alta fronde virentem

"Silenus"
Jusepe de Ribera
17th century
Museo del Prado
Madrid, Spain

109.   **ilice: ilex,** *oak tree.*
     virgam: virga, *twig, shoot;* the following series of repeated forms of the same
        word **(virgam/virga, saxum/saxum, glaebam/glaeba, postibus/postes, pal-**
        mas/palmis, undis/unda), a favorite device of Ovid's known as POLYPTO-
        TON, focuses attention on the multiple transformations. The effect is
        amplified through CHIASMUS **(virentem . . . virgam; virga aurea** and **pal-**
        mas . . . undis, unda . . . palmis), and etymologizing wordplay **(contigit**
        . . . contactu).
111.   **glaebam: glaeba,** *clod, lump of soil.*
112.   **massa:** *mass, lump* (of gold).
     arentis: *dried up.*
     Cereris: by a common METONYMY = *of wheat.*
     decerpsit: decerpere, *to pluck.*
     aristas: arista, *ear of grain.*
113.   **messis:** *harvest.*
     demptum: demere, *to take away, pluck.*
114.   **Hesperidas: Hesperides,** *Hesperides, daughters of Hesperus* (the evening star
        of the west), who tended a garden in which grew golden apples.
     donasse: = **donavisse;** sc. **id (pomum).**
     postibus: postis, *post, doorpost,* pl. = *a door.*
116.   **laverat: lavare,** *to wash, bathe.*
117.   **Danaen:** Greek acc. sg. of **Danae;** daughter of Acrisius, king of Argos, *Danae*
        was impregnated by Zeus in the form of a shower of golden rain and
        from the union gave birth to the hero Perseus.
118.   **animo capit:** lit., *seizes with his mind* = *realizes, comprehends.*
     fingens: fingere, *to fashion, mold, imagine.*
119.   **gaudenti:** sc. **ei.**
     ministri: minister, *servant, attendant.*
120.   **exstructas: exstruere,** *to heap up, pile up.*
     dapibus: daps, s. and pl. = *feast, banquet.*
     tostae: torrere, *to burn, roast.*
     frugis: frux, *grain;* **frugis tostae,** = *bread,* with **egere** (which may take the
        gen. as well as the abl.). Ovid's point is that the feast included all kinds
        of food, from the simplest to the most elaborate.
121.   **sive:** conj., *if;* **sive . . . sive,** *if . . . or if.*
     Cerealia: adj., *of Ceres;* with **munera** = *bread.* The repeated phrases, each
        with slight variation **(Cerealia . . . munera . . . Cerealia dona,** and cp. in
        124–25 **dapes . . . dente parabat, . . . dapes . . . dente premebat),** serve
        much the same purpose as the word repetitions in 109–17.
     dextra: sc. **manu.**
122.   **rigebant: rigere,** *to be stiff, hard.*
123.   **convellere:** *to tear apart, devour.*
124.   **lammina:** sometimes spelled **lamina,** *thin metal plate.*
     premebat: here, *covered, surrounded.*
125.   **auctorem muneris:** = Bacchus and, by METONYMY, wine.
126.   **fusile:** *molten, liquefied, fluid.*

ilice detraxit virgam; virga aurea facta est.
110   Tollit humo saxum; saxum quoque palluit auro.
Contigit et glaebam; contactu glaeba potenti
massa fit. Arentis Cereris decerpsit aristas;
aurea messis erat. Demptum tenet arbore pomum;
Hesperidas donasse putes. Si postibus altis
115   admovit digitos, postes radiare videntur.
Ille etiam liquidis palmas ubi laverat undis,
unda fluens palmis Danaen eludere posset.
      Vix spes ipse suas animo capit aurea fingens
omnia. Gaudenti mensas posuere ministri
120   exstructas dapibus nec tostae frugis egentes.
Tum vero, sive ille sua Cerealia dextra
munera contigerat, Cerealia dona rigebant;
sive dapes avido convellere dente parabat,
lammina fulva dapes admoto dente premebat.
125   Miscuerat puris auctorem muneris undis;
fusile per rictus aurum fluitare videres.

"Bacchus Discovering Ariadne on Naxos"
Louis Le Nain, 1648
Musée des Beaux-Arts, Orleans, France

127. **attonitus:** *thunderstruck, astounded.*
128. **voverat: vovere,** *to vow, pray for.*
129. **famem: fames,** *hunger.*
130. **urit: urere,** *to burn.*
     meritus: lit., *having deserved* = *as he deserved, deservedly.*
     torquetur: torquere, *to twist, torment.*
     inviso . . . ab auro: ABL. OF AGENT, as indicated by the prep., rather than the more prosaic ABL. OF MEANS; with the adj. **inviso** Ovid personifies the gold as a malevolent entity.
131. **splendida:** *shining,* as Midas' arms now are turning to gold.
132. **Lenaee: Lenaeus,** another name for Bacchus.
133. **miserere: misereri,** *to pity.*
     precor: precari, *to pray, beseech.*
     specioso: *beautiful, fine, splendid,* often, as here, with reference to something deceptively attractive.
     eripe: sc. **me.**
     damno: damnum, *injury, loss, curse.*
134. **mite:** *gentle, mild;* sc. **est.**
     deum: = **deorum.**
     peccasse: = **peccavisse;** sc. **se** as subj. of the IND. STATE., dependent on **(eum) fatentem.**
135. **pacti . . . fide:** *as (by) a guarantee of their agreement.*
     solvit: lit., *loosened* = *canceled.*
136. **neve:** *and that . . . not.*
     circumlitus: circumlinere, *to surround;* note the WORD-PICTURE, as Midas/**circumlitus** is "surrounded" by the words **optato . . . auro.**
137. **vade: vadere,** *to go.*
     Sardibus: Sardes, pl., *Sardis,* capital of Lydia.
     amnem: amnis, *river,* i.e., the Pactolus.
138. **iugum Lydum:** *the Lydian ridge,* i.e., Mt. Timolus.
     obvius: *meeting, facing, making your way toward,* + dat.
139. **ortus:** acc. pl., *source.*
140. **spumigero:** *foaming;* the INTERLOCKED WORD ORDER suits the image of the spring waters pouring over and around Midas' head.
     qua: adv., *in what place, where.*
     plurimus: referring to **fonti** but with adv. force, *where it comes out the most,* i.e., where the water comes rushing forth from the spring.
141. **subde: subdere,** *to put under, plunge.*
     subde . . . simul, simul elue: ANAPHORA and CHIASMUS help suggest the simultaneity and finality of the two actions.
     elue: eluere, *to wash away.*
144. **semine: semen,** *seed.*
     venae: vena, *vein* (here, of gold).
145. **madidis:** *wet, soaked.*

Midas confesses his sin and is told how to atone for it.

      Attonitus novitate mali, divesque miserque,
effugere optat opes, et quae modo voverat, odit.
Copia nulla famem relevat; sitis arida guttur

130   urit, et inviso meritus torquetur ab auro.
Ad caelumque manus et splendida bracchia tollens,
"Da veniam, Lenaee pater, peccavimus," inquit,
"sed miserere, precor, speciosoque eripe damno!"
Mite deum numen: Bacchus peccasse fatentem

135   restituit pactique fide data munera solvit.
"Neve male optato maneas circumlitus auro,
vade," ait, "ad magnis vicinum Sardibus amnem,
perque iugum Lydum labentibus obvius undis
carpe viam, donec venias ad fluminis ortus;

140   spumigeroque tuum fonti, qua plurimus exit,
subde caput corpusque simul, simul elue crimen."
Rex iussae succedit aquae; vis aurea tinxit
flumen et humano de corpore cessit in amnem.
Nunc quoque, iam veteris percepto semine venae,

145   arva rigent auro, madidis pallentia glaebis.

Midas turning his
daughter into gold
From a non-Ovidian
version of the tale

PLINY'S LETTERS

Gaius Plinius Caecilius Secundus (known as "Pliny the Younger," to distinguish him from his famous uncle, the elder Pliny) was born in Comum in northern Italy, ca. A.D. 61. After his father's death, he lived, along with his mother, in the home of his uncle, an assiduous scholar and author of the monumental 37-volume encyclopedia, the *Naturalis Historia;* eventually the young man was adopted by his uncle and inherited his considerable estate. Following his education, which included studying rhetoric with the eminent orator and educator Quintilian, Pliny entered the legal profession, arguing cases throughout his career in the civil courts and prosecuting a number of corrupt provincial governors in the senate. He rose to the praetorship in 93 and the consulship in 100, and had a distinguished career as a civil servant; his series of administrative posts held during the reigns of Domitian, Nerva, and Trajan culminated in the governorship of Bithynia, which he commenced in A.D. 109 or 110 and continued until his death in ca. 112. He had three marriages, the last to Calpurnia Fabata, a younger woman to whom he was deeply and affectionately devoted.

As a literary figure he composed a variety of works, including drama and poetry, which has been almost entirely lost, as well as an extant speech to the senate known as the *Panegyricus,* in which he expresses gratitude for his elevation to the consulship and praises Trajan for the benevolence of his reign in contrast to that of the despotic Domitian. Pliny is best known, however, for his *Epistulae,* nine volumes of personal correspondence carefully edited by him for publication and issued between A.D. 98 and 109 in units of one or more books, as well as a 10th volume, less polished and likely published posthumously, comprising letters both to and from the emperor Trajan. Though the first nine books were written with an eye to publication and consequently lack the spontaneity of Cicero's letters, and though they are occasionally marred by self-consciousness and self-praise, they nevertheless reveal to us much about a Roman of rank who was conscientious, reliable, kind, affectionate, philanthropic, and sensitive—one who, refusing to be dismayed by the evils about him, made the very most of the best of his times. Reading his letters, we feel that we have come to know a decent man, and we are grateful to have this detailed evidence of the good in Roman life as at least a partial corrective to the black and pessimistic pictures painted by such of Pliny's contemporaries as the historian Tacitus (a

friend and correspondent), the epigrammatist Martial (an influence on Pliny's own verse), and the scathing satirist Juvenal.

The rich variety of selections from the *Epistulae* chosen for this book include: the dedicatory preface to the first volume; three quite different letters to friends about the pleasures of country life and escape from the urban bustle; another on the suicide of a close friend who had suffered long from disease; one to a young friend on the proper manner of hosting clients and freedmen at a dinner-party (an informative counterpoint to, and an inspiration for, one of Juvenal's satires on the same topic); a long letter to Tacitus, for use in his *Histories,* containing eye-witness accounts of the eruption of Vesuvius in A.D. 79 and the death of Pliny the Elder in that disaster; a brief missive to another friend on the devotion of a wife who had courageously joined her husband in suicide; a tender note to his wife Calpurnia, professing how much he misses her and thinks of her in her absence; and, finally, an exchange of letters between Pliny and Trajan discussing policies for investigating and punishing Christians in the province of Bithynia, invaluable documents for our knowledge of the persecutions and early church ritual.
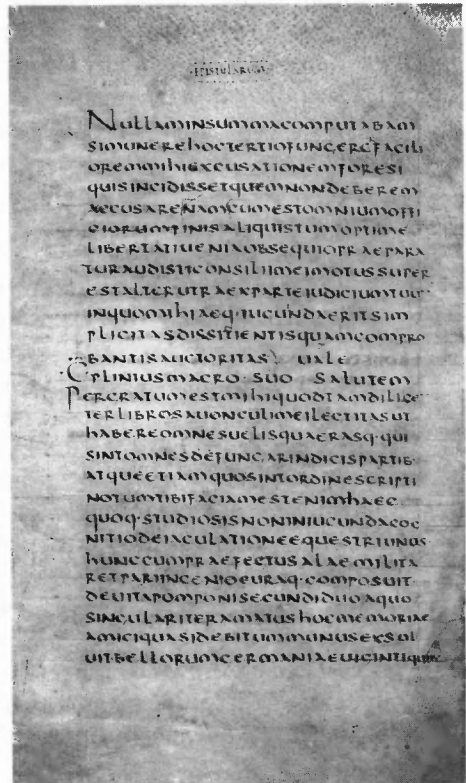
Page from manuscript of
Pliny's Epistulae
(3.4.8–9 and 3.5.1–3)
Italy, 6th century A.D.
The Pierpont Morgan Library
New York, New York

1. **Septicio Suo S.:** Septicius, an equestrian and praetorian prefect under Hadrian (ca. A.D. 119–121), is little known outside the four letters addressed to him by Pliny; in *Epistulae* 2.9.4 Pliny remarks, **C. Septicium, quo nihil verius, nihil simplicius, nihil candidius, nihil fidelius novi.** The **S.** = **salutem (dicit),** *says greetings,* a standard salutation in Roman letters.

2. **si quas:** *if any = whatever.*
    paulo: adv., *a little, somewhat;* the preserved letters are in general less spontaneous, *more carefully* **(accuratius)** composed and edited than most of Cicero's, as Pliny intended them for publication.

3. **non . . . ordine (4):** although the individual books were published successively, beginning ca. A.D. 99, the arrangement of the letters within a particular book is not strictly chronological.

4. **ut . . . venerat (5):** Pliny's arrangement of the letters was in fact far more calculated than he suggests here.

5. **superest: superesse,** *to be left over, remain;* + dat., *to survive.*
    paeniteat: with the impers. **superest,** *it remains (that);* **paenitet,** also impers., takes an acc. of the repentant person + a gen. of the thing which occasions the repentance, lit., **ut nec . . . te consilii . . . paeniteat** = *that it not repent you of your advice,* i.e., *that you not regret your advice.*

7. **requiram:** NOUN CL. OF RESULT, dependent on **fiet.**
    si . . . addidero: i.e., if he writes any more, as indeed he did.

8. **Cornelio Tacito:** *Publius Cornelius Tacitus,* ca. A.D. 56–118, a close friend of Pliny, addressee of 11 of his letters, and one of the most famous Roman historians; his partially extant *Annals* and *Histories* covered the period from the death of Augustus to the death of Domitian, and his *Germania* is the earliest full-length portrait of the German people.

9. **licet:** impers., + inf. or subjunct.; with **rideas** = *you may laugh* or *you have a right to laugh.*
    nosti: = **novisti.**
    apros: aper, *wild boar.*

10. **ut . . . discederem (11):** RESULT CL.; i.e., he was not so busy with hunting that it distracted him from his rest **(inertia = otium).**

11. **retia: rete,** *hunting net;* in the sort of hunt described here, huge nets were spread out and slaves drove animals into them from the woods to be slaughtered by gentleman hunters like Pliny.

12. **in proximo:** i.e., at his side.
    venabulum: *hunting spear* (for thrusting).
    lancea: *lance, spear* (for throwing).
    stilus: the *stilus* was a pointed implement used for writing on *wax tablets* **(pugillares).**

13. **manus vacuas, plenas . . . ceras (14):** CHIASMUS; **cera,** *wax,* and by METONYMY, *tablet.*

14. **non est quod:** *there is no reason why.*

15. **ut:** here, *how,* introducing an IND. QUEST.

17. **venationi: venatio,** *hunt, hunting.*

1.1

Pliny prefaces the first book of his letters with a dedication to his friend Gaius Sep-
ticius Clarus; latest of the letters in this book, published ca. A.D. 99.

C. Plinius Septicio Suo S.

Frequenter hortatus es ut epistulas, si quas paulo accuratius
scripsissem, colligerem publicaremque. Collegi non servato tem-
poris ordine (neque enim historiam componebam), sed ut quae-
5   que in manus venerat. Superest ut nec te consilii nec me paeni-
teat obsequii. Ita enim fiet ut eas quae adhuc neglectae iacent
requiram et, si quas addidero, non supprimam. Vale.

1.6

Pliny writes to his friend, the historian Tacitus, about a holiday he has taken for hunt-
ing and study, probably at his Tuscan estate; written ca. A.D. 96–97.

C. Plinius Cornelio Tacito Suo S.

Ridebis, et licet rideas. Ego, ille quem nosti, apros tres et
10   quidem pulcherrimos cepi. "Ipse?" inquis. Ipse; non tamen ut
omnino ab inertia mea et quiete discederem. Ad retia sedebam;
erat in proximo non venabulum aut lancea, sed stilus et pugil-
lares; meditabar aliquid enotabamque, ut, si manus vacuas, ple-
nas tamen ceras reportarem. Non est quod contemnas hoc stu-
15   dendi genus; mirum est ut animus agitatione motuque corporis
excitetur; iam undique silvae et solitudo ipsumque illud si-
lentium, quod venationi datur, magna cogitationis incitamenta

18. **proinde:** adv., *therefore.*
    venabere: venari, *to hunt.*
    auctore me: ABL. ABS., = *following my example.*
    ut . . . sic (19): *as . . . so = not only . . . but (also).*
    panarium: *bread basket, lunch basket.*
19. **lagunculam: laguncula,** *flask.*
    experieris: here, *you will discover,* + IND. STATE.
    Dianam . . . Minervam (20): goddesses of, respectively, hunting and wisdom.
20. **inerrare:** + dat., *to wander in, over.*
21. **Minicio Fundano:** *Minicius Fundanus* was a senator and consul in A.D. 107;
    we have a few letters Pliny addressed to him, chiefly on political mat-
    ters, and one he wrote to a mutual friend on the death of Fundanus'
    daughter.
22. **quam:** *how* (well); cp. **mirum est ut** in 1.6.15 above.
    singulis diebus: i.e., one day at a time.
    ratio . . . constet: *the account balances;* a bookkeeping term meaning that
    everything is satisfactory.
23. **pluribus iunctisque:** sc. **diebus;** i.e., when several days are considered together.
24. **officio:** here, *ceremony.*
25. **togae virilis:** when the bordered **toga praetexta** of boyhood was laid aside
    and the plain white *toga of manhood* was assumed, usually between the
    ages of 14 and 16, a coming-of-age party was held at the boy's home.
    interfui: interesse, + dat., *to be present at, attend.*
    sponsalia: pl., *betrothal,* an often legalistic ceremony.
    nuptias: nuptiae, pl., *wedding.*
    ille . . . ille (26): ANAPHORA and ASYNDETON are used frequently and in combi-
    nation throughout this letter.
26. **testamentum:** seven witnesses were required at the signing of a will.
    advocationem: advocatio, *assistance at court, legal advice.*
    consilium: various high magistrates and the emperor himself called on sena-
    tors to serve on their advisory councils.
27. **haec . . . necessaria:** = **haec, eo die quo ea feceris, videntur necessaria.**
    feceris: indef. 2nd pers., *you have done = one has done.*
28. **secesseris: secedere,** *to go apart, withdraw* (from the city).
29. **subit: subire,** *to go under, undergo, approach, come to mind.*
    frigidis: here, *dull, unproductive.*
30. **quod:** i.e., this realization.
    Laurentino: sc. **fundo (fundus),** *country estate near Laurentium;* this villa, one
    of a number that Pliny owned, was near the coast about 15 miles south
    of Rome.
31. **corpori:** *for the body,* i.e., for exercise, often neglected in busy city life.
    fulturis: fultura, *prop, support.*
34. **reprehendo: reprehendere,** *to seize, blame, censure.*
35. **commode:** adv., *easily.*
    spe: here, an unsettling *expectation, anticipation.*
37. **vitam:** ACC. OF EXCLAMATION.
    honestum: not *honest,* but *fine, respectable.*

sunt. Proinde, cum venabere, licebit auctore me ut panarium et lagunculam sic etiam pugillares feras: experieris non Dianam
20   magis montibus quam Minervam inerrare. Vale.

1.9

In this letter to his friend Minicius Fundanus, Pliny contrasts the demands of city life with the leisurely time spent at his villa in Laurentum; written ca. A.D. 97.

C. Plinius Minicio Fundano Suo S.

Mirum est quam singulis diebus in urbe ratio aut constet aut constare videatur, pluribus iunctisque non constet. Nam, si quem interroges, "Hodie quid egisti?" respondeat, "Officio
25   togae virilis interfui, sponsalia aut nuptias frequentavi, ille me ad signandum testamentum, ille in advocationem, ille in consilium rogavit." Haec quo die feceris, necessaria; eadem si cotidie fecisse te reputes, inania videntur, multo magis cum secesseris. Tunc enim subit recordatio: "Quot dies quam frigidis rebus ab-
30   sumpsi!" Quod evenit mihi, postquam in Laurentino meo aut lego aliquid aut scribo aut etiam corpori vaco, cuius fulturis animus sustinetur. Nihil audio quod audisse, nihil dico quod dixisse paeniteat; nemo apud me quemquam sinistris sermoni-bus carpit, neminem ipse reprehendo, nisi tamen me, cum parum
35   commode scribo; nulla spe, nullo timore sollicitor, nullis ru-moribus inquietor; mecum tantum et cum libellis loquor. O rec-tam sinceramque vitam, o dulce otium honestumque ac paene
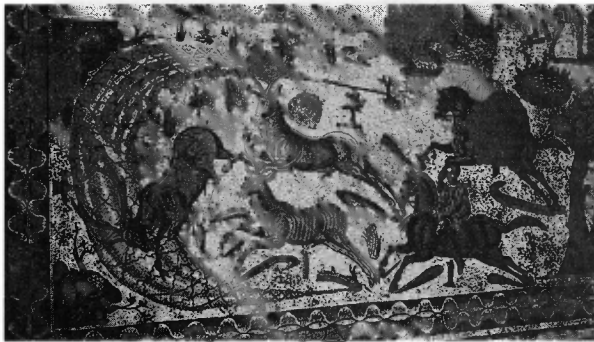
Trapping deer, detail from the "Small Game Hunt" mosaic, 4th century A.D. Villa del Casale, Piazza Armerina, Sicily, Italy

39.   *mouseion:* Greek for Lat. **museum,** a temple or home of the Muses, the god-
        desses of that inspiration which Pliny finds in his coastal retreat.
        invenitis: *you discover, suggest;* the subjs. of the vb. are **litus** and **mare,** i.e.,
        the surroundings.
        dictatis: wealthy Romans owned highly trained slaves to whom they could
        dictate their compositions; here Pliny fancies himself as the amanuensis.

40.   **strepitum: strepitus,** *noise, din.*
        multum: adv. modifying **ineptos,** = *very.*

41.   **ut primum:** *as soon as.*

42.   **Atilius:** *Atilius Crescens,* another of Pliny's close friends.

43.   **facetissime:** adv. from **facetus,** *elegant, witty, humorous.*
        nihil agere: a play on words, not *to do nothing* but *to be busy at nothing.*

45.   **iacturam: iactura,** *throwing away, loss.*
        feci: here, *I have experienced, suffered.*

46.   **sponte:** sc. **sua,** idiom, *of his own accord, by his own wish;* i.e., by starvation,
        in an act of Stoic fortitude.

47.   **exulcerat: exulcerare,** *to make extremely sore, aggravate, exacerbate.*
        luctuosissimum: *most sorrowful, most lamentable.*

48.   **fatalis:** *fated, in accordance with fate.*
        utcumque: adv., *somehow, in one way or another.*

50.   **arcessita:** *voluntary, self-inflicted;* from **arcessere,** *to call, summon, invite.*

52.   **pro necessitate est:** i.e., *takes priority over inevitability.*

53.   **quamquam:** conj., *although, and yet.*

55.   **pignora: pignus,** *pledge, proof;* used in the pl. of one's *close relatives.*

58.   **pretia: pretium,** *price, reward.*

59.   **pedum dolore:** probably gout.

60.   **patrius:** *inherited from his father,* i.e., not caused by dissolute living.
        hic: i.e., **dolor;** sc. **est.**
        plerumque: adv., *generally.*
        per successiones: i.e., by heredity from one generation to the next.

61.   **hunc:** sc. **morbum.**

Boar hunt, detail from the "Small Game Hunt" mosaic, 4th century A.D.
Villa del Casale, Piazza Armerina, Sicily, Italy

omni negotio pulchrius! O mare, o litus, verum secretumque
mouseion, quam multa invenitis, quam multa dictatis! Proinde
40   tu quoque strepitum istum inanemque discursum et multum in-
eptos labores, ut primum fuerit occasio, relinque teque studiis
vel otio trade. Satius est enim, ut Atilius noster eruditissime
simul et facetissime dixit, otiosum esse quam nihil agere. Vale.

1.12

*In one of several surviving letters to Calestrius Tiro, a senator and his colleague in
both the quaestorship and praetorship, Pliny here discusses the suicide of Corellius
Rufus, consul in* A.D. *78, a noble Roman Stoic, and a man he had often turned to for
advice; written ca.* A.D. *98.*

C. Plinius Calestrio Tironi Suo S.

*It is harder to reconcile oneself to the suicide of a friend than to his
death from natural causes.*

45   Iacturam gravissimam feci, si iactura dicenda est tanti viri
amissio. Decessit Corellius Rufus et quidem sponte, quod do-
lorem meum exulcerat. Est enim luctuosissimum genus mortis,
quae non ex natura nec fatalis videtur. Nam utcumque in illis
qui morbo finiuntur magnum ex ipsa necessitate solacium est;
50   in iis vero quos arcessita mors aufert, hic insanabilis dolor est,
quod creduntur potuisse diu vivere. Corellium quidem summa
ratio, quae sapientibus pro necessitate est, ad hoc consilium
compulit, quamquam plurimas vivendi causas habentem—op-
timam conscientiam, optimam famam, maximam auctoritatem,
55   praeterea filiam, uxorem, nepotem, sorores interque tot pignora
veros amicos.

Corellius' suffering lasted long and had broken his body.

Sed tam longa, tam iniqua valetudine conflictabatur, ut haec
tanta pretia vivendi mortis rationibus vincerentur. Tertio et
tricensimo anno, ut ipsum audiebam, pedum dolore correptus
60   est. Patrius hic illi; nam plerumque morbi quoque per successi-
ones quasdam ut alia traduntur. Hunc abstinentia, sanctitate,

62.	**quoad:** conj., *how long, as long as, until.*
	viridis: *green, youthful.*
	fregit: frangere, *to break.*
	ingravescentem: sc. **hunc (morbum)** from the beginning of the sent.
64.	**cruciatus:** acc. pl., *tortures.*
	indignissima: indignus, *unworthy, undeserved,* hence *cruel, harsh.*
65.	**pervagabatur: pervagari,** *to spread throughout, pervade.*
67.	**suburbano:** sc. **praedio,** *estate.*
	iacentem: i.e., sick in bed.
68.	**moris:** PARTITIVE GEN.; i.e., he routinely dismissed his slaves whenever a close
		friend visited.
70.	**capacissima:** *quite worthy of sharing.*
	circumtulit oculos: because of his encouragement of **delatores** *(informers),*
		the tyranny of Domitian (emperor A.D. 81–96) was as dangerous as that
		of Mussolini, Hitler, and Stalin.
71.	**scilicet:** adv., *obviously, of course.*
72.	**latroni: latro,** *bandit, cut-throat;* Domitian, of course.
	vel uno die: *even by one day;* ABL. OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE, depending on
		the idea that "to survive" means "to live longer."
	dedisses: indef. 2nd pers.; a conditional cl. without **si,** *had you given.*
73.	**fecisset quod optabat:** i.e., he would have assisted in Domitian's assassination
		(which took place on September 18, A.D. 96).
	voto: votum, *prayer.*
74.	**compos:** *in possession of,* + gen.; with **votum** (here **cuius**), an idiom = *having
		had one's prayer answered.*
	ut: here, *as (one).*
	moriturus: *ready to die;* notwithstanding Pliny's dramatization here, Corellius
		survived Domitian by as much as a year.
75.	**minora:** *too slight, too weak.*
	retinacula: retinaculum, usually pl., *rope, tether, rein.*
	abrumpit: abrumpere, *to break, throw off.*
76.	**perseverantem:** sc. **quam** from the preceding cl., *which continuing = its persis-
		tence.*
	constantia: *by his steadfast resolution* (to commit suicide).
78.	**Hispulla:** perhaps *Calpurnia Hispulla,* an aunt of Pliny's wife.
	C. Geminium: otherwise unknown, as is Julius Atticus below.
79.	**suis:** refers back to Hispulla, not to Geminius.
80.	**a quo . . . posset:** REL. CL. OF PURPOSE.
82.	**nihil . . . ne:** together an emphatic negative.
	impetraturum: sc. **esse;** from **impetrare,** *to obtain, accomplish.*
83.	**induruisse:** sc. **eum** (Corellius).
	sane: adv., *indeed.*
84.	*kekrika:* Greek, *I have decided, my mind is made up.*
89.	**superstitibus suis:** *with his own (family) surviving (him).*
	florente re publica: i.e., during the reign of Nerva (A.D. 96–98) or possibly of
		Trajan (A.D. 98–117).

quoad viridis aetas, vicit et fregit; novissime cum senectute in-
gravescentem viribus animi sustinebat, cum quidem incredibilis
cruciatus et indignissima tormenta pateretur. Iam enim dolor
65   non pedibus solis ut prius insidebat, sed omnia membra perva-
gabatur.

*Corellius' desire to outlive the tyrannous Domitian had buoyed him up
for a while.*

Veni ad eum Domitiani temporibus in suburbano iacentem.
Servi e cubiculo recesserunt (habebat hoc moris, quotiens in-
trasset fidelior amicus); quin etiam uxor, quamquam omnis se-
70   creti capacissima, digrediebatur. Circumtulit oculos et "Cur,"
inquit, "me putas hos tantos dolores tam diu sustinere?—ut sci-
licet isti latroni vel uno die supersim." Dedisses huic animo par
corpus, fecisset quod optabat. Adfuit tamen deus voto, cuius ille
compos, ut iam securus liberque moriturus, multa illa vitae sed
75   minora retinacula abrumpit. Increverat valetudo, quam tem-
perantia mitigare temptavit; perseverantem constantia fugit.

*Corellius' wife, Hispulla, begged Pliny to dissuade him from his resolve
to starve himself to death, but Corellius was determined.*

Iam dies alter, tertius, quartus: abstinebat cibo. Misit ad me
uxor eius Hispulla communem amicum C. Geminium cum tris-
tissimo nuntio destinasse Corellium mori nec aut suis aut filiae
80   precibus flecti, solum superesse me a quo revocari posset ad
vitam. Cucurri. Perveneram in proximum, cum mihi ab eadem
Hispulla Iulius Atticus nuntiat nihil iam ne me quidem impetra-
turum; tam obstinate magis ac magis induruisse. Dixerat sane
medico admoventi cibum: "*Kekrika*," quae vox quantum admi-
85   rationis in animo meo tantum desiderii reliquit.

*Pliny pays tribute to his friend and asks Tiro to write him some extraor-
dinary words of consolation to suit his extraordinary grief.*

Cogito quo amico, quo viro caream. Implevit quidem an-
num septimum et sexagesimum, quae aetas etiam robustissimis
satis longa est; scio. Evasit perpetuam valetudinem; scio. De-
cessit superstitibus suis, florente re publica, quae illi omnibus

91.   **morte:** ABL. OF CAUSE.

    morte doleo, doleo . . . nomine (92): CHIASMUS.

    licet: here, *although.*

    imbecillum: *weak,* suggesting that Pliny lacks the Stoicism of his dear friend.

92.   **meo nomine:** *my name = myself.*

    testem: testis, *witness;* here, *observer, guardian.*

93.   **contubernali: contubernalis,** *comrade.*

94.   **Calvisio:** *Calvisius Rufus,* a friend and business advisor of Pliny's from Comum, and the addressee of several of his letters.

    neglegentius: i.e., without concern even for his own well-being.

    adhibe: adhibere, *to hold to, apply, show, provide.*

96.   **audierim:** = **audiverim;** note the difference between **quae audierim,** *the kind which I have (never) heard* (REL. CL. OF CHARACTERISTIC) and **quae audivi,** *those which I have (actually) heard.*

97.   **sponte:** here, *spontaneously, naturally.*

100. **longum est:** idiom, *it is long = it would be a long story.*

    altius: adv.; i.e., in more detail.

    refert: idiom, *it matters.*

    acciderit: accidere, *to fall, happen, take place;* impers., *it happens.*

101. **ut . . . cenarem:** NOUN CL. OF RESULT, subj. of **acciderit.**

    homo minime familiaris: lit., *(I) a person not at all intimate, only slightly acquainted.*

102. **lautum et diligentem:** *elegant* (lit., *well-washed, clean*) *and* (at the same time) *economical.*

    sordidum: *mean, base, stingy;* lit., *dirty, filthy,* and hence contrasting with and balancing *lautum.*

103. **sumptuosum:** *extravagant,* contrasting with **diligentem;** the hissing alliteration of **s** in **sordidum simul . . . sumptuosum** (a brilliant OXYMORON) is perhaps ONOMATOPOETIC, suggesting Pliny's contempt for the man who had been his host.

    opima . . . vilia et minuta (104): again note the antithetical balance, **opima** *(rich and abundant)* by itself serving as the opposite of the other two adjs.

104. **parvulis lagunculis:** the two diminutives further suggest Pliny's contempt.

105. **discripserat: discribere,** *to distribute, assign.*

    eligendi: eligere, *to choose, select.*

106. **aliud . . . aliud . . . aliud (107):** sc. **genus,** *one kind . . . another . . . another.*

    gradatim: adv., *step by step, by grades, graded;* the satirist Juvenal similarly condemns the grading and disparate treatment of dinner-guests in his Satire Five, written just a few years after Pliny's letter.

107. **animadvertit: animadvertere,** *to give attention to, notice.*

108. **recumbebat: recumbere,** *to recline;* the Romans reclined on couches at their meals.

    an: conj., *or, whether.*

109. **consuetudinem: consuetudo,** *custom, practice.*

90   suis carior erat; et hoc scio. Ego tamen tamquam et iuvenis et
fortissimi morte doleo, doleo autem (licet me imbecillum putes)
meo nomine. Amisi enim, amisi vitae meae testem, rectorem,
magistrum. In summa dicam quod recenti dolore contubernali
meo Calvisio dixi: "Vereor ne neglegentius vivam." Proinde ad-
95   hibe solacia mihi, non haec, "Senex erat, infirmus erat" (haec
enim novi), sed nova aliqua, sed magna quae audierim num-
quam, legerim numquam. Nam quae audivi, quae legi sponte
succurrunt, sed tanto dolore superantur. Vale.

2.6.1–5

As Pliny relates to his young friend Junius Avitus, even the freedmen at his dinner-parties enjoy the same food and drink as he does himself, in contrast to some hosts of the day who served lesser fare to their guests of lower rank; written ca. A.D. 98.

C. Plinius Avito Suo S.

100   Longum est altius repetere, nec refert, quemadmodum ac-
ciderit ut homo minime familiaris cenarem apud quendam, ut
sibi videbatur, lautum et diligentem, ut mihi, sordidum simul et
sumptuosum. Nam sibi et paucis opima quaedam, ceteris vilia
et minuta ponebat. Vinum etiam parvulis lagunculis in tria ge-
105   nera discripserat, non ut potestas eligendi, sed ne ius esset recu-
sandi, aliud sibi et nobis, aliud minoribus amicis (nam gradatim
amicos habet), aliud suis nostrisque libertis. Animadvertit, qui
mihi proximus recumbebat, et an probarem interrogavit. Negavi.
"Tu ergo," inquit, "quam consuetudinem sequeris?" "Eadem

Banquet scene
Etruscan fresco
ca. 500 B.C.
Tomb of the Leopards
Tarquinia, Italy

110.   **notam:** *degradation,* referring to the mark **(nota censoria)** which the censor, in revising the citizen lists every five years, placed opposite the names of those guilty of some crime or moral turpitude and thus subject to the loss of voting rights or, in the case of magistrates, expulsion from the senate.

      cunctis: = **omnibus.**

      cunctis . . . rebus (111): ABL. OF SPECIFICATION.

111.   **toro: torus,** *couch, cushion.*

      libertos: libertus, *freedman;* a wealthy **patronus** would periodically invite his freedmen clients to dinner, a courtesy later replaced with the provision of take-out meals (the **sportula**) or cash payments.

112.   **convictores: convictor,** *associate,* lit., *one who lives with another.*

113.   **magno . . . constat:** lit., *it stands at a great price* = *it costs a lot;* ABL. OF PRICE.

      minime: here, *not at all, by no means.*

      qui: adv., *how.*

114.   **idem:** sc. **vinum.**

      quod ego: sc. **bibo.**

115.   **hercule:** originally voc. of **Hercules** *(help me, Hercules)* but regularly used as a mild oath, = *by God!*

      gulae: gula, *gullet, gluttony, appetite.*

      temperes: temperare, + dat., *to control, moderate;* indef. 2nd pers. sg.

116.   **quo:** sc. **id** as antecedent of **quo** and obj. of **communicare.**

117.   **Tacito:** for Tacitus, see note on line 8 above.

118.   **avunculi: avunculus,** *uncle.* Pliny's maternal uncle, known as Pliny the Elder (A.D. 23–79), raised him and in his will adopted him and made him the heir to his entire estate; described by his nephew here and in another letter (3.5), in which his prodigious scholarly activity is recounted, the elder Pliny was a scientist and polymath, best known for his 37-book encyclopedia, the *Naturalis Historia,* which ranges over topics as diverse as art and zoology, medicine and metallurgy.

      exitum: exitus, *end, death.*

      quo: commonly used to introduce a REL. CL. OF PURPOSE containing a comparative degree adj. or adv.

      tradere: here we see Tacitus researching his *Histories,* which covered the period A.D. 68–96; although the section of his work on the eruption of Vesuvius is not extant, we are fortunate to have Pliny's exquisitely detailed account of the event.

120.   **esse propositam:** *has been promised.*

121.   **mansura:** here the fut. partic. has the meaning of *destined to . . ..*

      condiderit: here, *composed.*

123.   **facere scribenda:** *to do things to be recorded, worth recording;* the phrase is subj. of **datum est,** *it has been granted.*

124.   **utrumque:** i.e., **et facere et scribere.**

110   omnibus pono; ad cenam enim non ad notam invito cunctisque
       rebus exaequo quos mensa et toro aequavi." "Etiamne li-
       bertos?" "Etiam; convictores enim tunc, non libertos puto." Et
       ille: "Magno tibi constat." "Minime." "Qui fieri potest?" "Quia
       scilicet liberti mei non idem quod ego bibunt, sed idem ego
115   quod liberti." Et hercule, si gulae temperes, non est onerosum,
       quo utaris ipse, communicare cum pluribus. Vale.

6.16 (excerpts)

Pliny provides his friend Tacitus, for use in his Histories, *an account of the death
of his uncle, Pliny the Elder, during the catastrophic eruption of Mount Vesuvius, Au-
gust 24,* A.D. *79; written ca.* A.D. *106–107.*

C. Plinius Tacito Suo S.

*Pliny is pleased to give Tacitus the information he has requested, as it
will perpetuate the memory of his uncle's accomplishments.*

        Petis ut tibi avunculi mei exitum scribam, quo verius tradere
       posteris possis. Gratias ago; nam video morti eius, si celebretur
120   a te, immortalem gloriam esse propositam. Quamvis ipse plu-
       rima opera et mansura condiderit, multum tamen perpetuitati
       eius scriptorum tuorum aeternitas addet. Equidem beatos puto,
       quibus deorum munere datum est aut facere scribenda aut
       scribere legenda; beatissimos vero, quibus utrumque. Horum in
125   numero avunculus meus et suis libris et tuis erit.

*Bacchus and Vesuvius
Roman wall painting
1st century A.D.
Museo Archeologico Nazionale
Naples, Italy*

126.   **Miseni: Misenum,** a promontory town and the principal naval base on Italy's
       west coast, commanding the Bay of Naples.

   classem: classis, *fleet.*

   imperio: i.e., with full authority as prefect of the fleet, a command assigned
       to members of the equestrian class.

   praesens: *present in person;* i.e., he was not simply at his desk in Rome.

   nonum ... Septembres (127): the full form of the date would be **ante diem
       nonum Kalendas Septembres,** *the 9th day before the Kalends* (the first day
       of any month) *of September* = *August 24.* The Greek historian Dio iden-
       tifies the year as the first of the emperor Titus' reign (A.D. 79–81).

127.   **hora:** = 1/12 of the day or of the night; the **hora septima,** reckoned from
       dawn = roughly *1:00 p.m.*

   mater mea: we know little of Pliny's mother, whose name was presumably
       Plinia; Pliny was himself 18 years old at the time of the eruption, and he
       and his mother were residing with his uncle.

   ei: depends on **indicat.**

128.   **inusitata:** *unusual.*

   specie: species, *appearance, kind.*

129.   **frigida:** sc. **aqua;** the elder Pliny's routine for relaxing included sunbathing,
       a cool bath, a snack, and reading.

   poscit: poscere, *to request, demand.*

   soleas: solea, *sandal.*

131.   **incertum ... ex quo monte:** sc. **fuit.** Vesuvius, though an ancient volcano, had
       no crater, had never erupted within the memory of the Romans, and
       was ca. 18 miles away, with other mountains in the background—hence
       the uncertainty.

   procul: adv., *far off, at a distance.*

   intuentibus: intueri, *to look at, contemplate, consider.*

132.   **cuius ... expresserit (133):** a rather involved way of saying "whose shape
       looked more like that of a pine than anything else"; REL. CL. OF CHARAC-
       TERISTIC. Pliny has in mind the Italian umbrella pine, whose branchless
       lower trunk culminates in a large flattish crown of branches and foliage
       that flares out around the top; today we might compare the mushroom
       cloud of a nuclear blast.

134.   **velut:** conj., *as, just as, as if.*

135.   **maculosa:** *spotted.*

   prout: conj., *as, just as, according as.*

137.   **magnum:** sc. **fuit,** *it was an important event.*

   propius: prope, adv., *nearly, closely.*

   ut ... visum: sc. **est,** *as it seemed (to).*

138.   **Liburnicam:** sc. **navem,** a swift galley modeled on those of the Liburnian
       pirates of the Adriatic.

   aptari: aptare, *to prepare, make ready.*

   una: adv., *along, together.*

   facit copiam: idiom, *he gives the opportunity.*

139.   **quod scriberem:** *something to write;* i.e., an exercise in composition.

Pliny the Elder, attracted by the unusual phenomenon, sailed from the naval base at Misenum to study Vesuvius' eruption at close range and to bring assistance to the residents of the area.

Erat Miseni classemque imperio praesens regebat. Nonum Kal. Septembres hora fere septima, mater mea indicat ei apparere nubem inusitata et magnitudine et specie. Usus ille sole, mox frigida, gustaverat iacens studebatque; poscit soleas, as-
130 cendit locum ex quo maxime miraculum illud conspici poterat. Nubes— incertum procul intuentibus ex quo monte (Vesuvium fuisse postea cognitum est)—oriebatur, cuius similitudinem et formam non alia magis arbor quam pinus expresserit. Nam longissimo velut trunco elata in altum quibusdam ramis diffunde-
135 batur, candida interdum, interdum sordida et maculosa, prout terram cineremve sustulerat.

Magnum propiusque noscendum, ut eruditissimo viro visum. Iubet Liburnicam aptari. Mihi, si venire una vellem, facit copiam; respondi studere me malle, et forte ipse quod scriberem
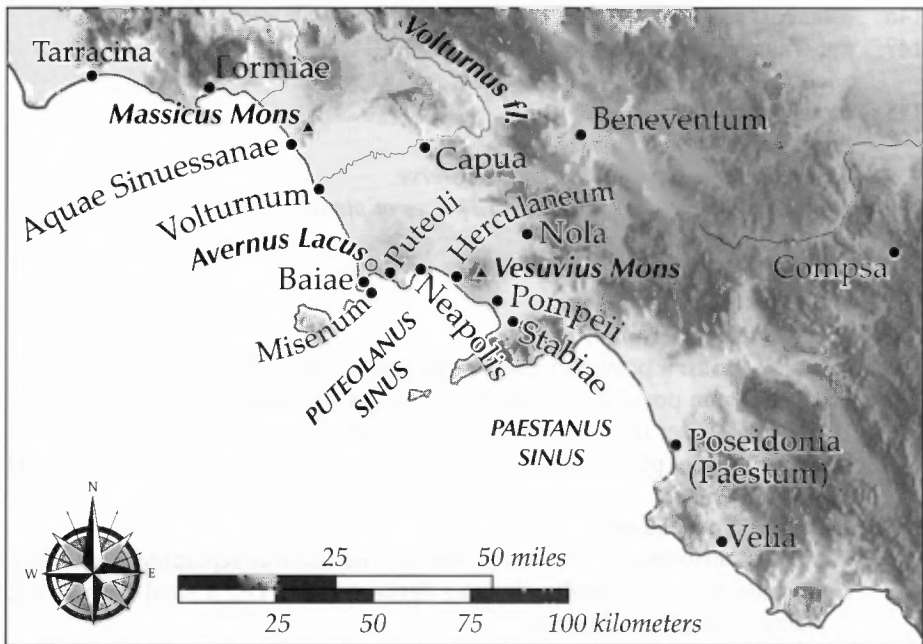
THE BAY OF NAPLES
Map by R. A. LaFleur, Tom Elliott, Nicole Feldl, Alexandra Retzleff, and Joyce Uy. Copyright 2001, Ancient World Mapping Center (http://www.unc.edu/depts/awmc)

140. **egrediebatur . . . accipit . . . orabat (142):** ASYNDETON emphasizes the tenseness of the situation.

codicillos: codicillus, *writing tablet;* here, *a message.*

Rectinae Tasci: *of Rectina (the wife) of Tascius,* the standard formulation for a wife's name; the man may be the same as the Pomponianus below, line 153, but Rectina is not otherwise known.

141. **subiacebat:** *lay at the foot* (of the mountain).

nec . . . fuga (142): the road had doubtless been blocked by debris.

142. **se:** an ind. reflexive in a JUSSIVE NOUN CL., referring to Rectina, the subj. of **orabat.**

discrimini: *danger;* DAT. OF SEPARATION.

143. **incohaverat: incohare,** *to begin.*

obit: obire, *to go to meet, perform, carry out.*

144. **maximo:** sc. **animo;** i.e., *with courage* vs. scholarly interest.

quadriremes: *warships* (ships with four banks of oars); switching from a scientific study expedition to a rescue mission, he needed larger ships, which he had at his disposal as admiral of the Roman fleet.

ascendit: sc. **in navem.**

145. **amoenitas orae:** *the charm of the shore,* a poetic circumlocution for *the charming stretch of shore.*

laturus: *intending to bring;* we do not know either from Pliny's account or any other source whether Rectina was saved or not.

146. **properat: properare,** *to hurry.*

147. **gubernacula: gubernaculum,** *helm, rudder.*

adeo: adv., *to such a degree, so, even.*

148. **motus:** acc. pl.

figuras: here, *forms, phases.*

deprenderat: deprendere, *to catch, observe.*

150. **pumices: pumex,** *pumice-stone,* pl., *pieces of pumice.*

151. **ambusti:** *scorched.*

lapides: lapis, *stone, rock.*

152. **an:** here, *whether.*

gubernatori: gubernator, *pilot.*

153. **fortes . . . iuvat:** a proverb known from several other Roman authors.

Pomponianum: possibly *Tascius Pomponianus,* the husband of Rectina mentioned earlier (line 140); Pliny fails to inform us of his ultimate fate.

Stabiis: Stabiae, pl.; the town of *Stabiae* was a few miles south of Vesuvius and Pompeii.

154. **erat:** sc. **Pomponianus.**

diremptus: dirimere, *to take apart, separate;* i.e., he was separated from Pliny.

sinu: sinus, *bay;* with **medio,** = *lying between them,* i.e., a small arm of the Bay of Naples at Stabiae.

sarcinas: sarcina, *bundle, baggage.*

certus fugae (155): lit., *determined of flight* = *intending to flee.*

155. **contrarius:** an adverse wind in that it was blowing from the sea so that the ships could not sail out from Stabiae; this same wind was favorable **(secundus)** for Pliny, who was sailing from the bay toward Stabiae.

140 dederat. Egrediebatur domo: accipit codicillos Rectinae Tasci imminenti periculo exterritae (nam villa eius subiacebat, nec ulla nisi navibus fuga); ut se tanto discrimini eriperet, orabat. Vertit ille consilium et, quod studioso animo incohaverat, obit maximo. Deducit quadriremes, ascendit ipse non Rectinae
145 modo, sed multis (erat enim frequens amoenitas orae) laturus auxilium. Properat illuc, unde alii fugiunt, rectumque cursum, recta gubernacula in periculum tenet, adeo solutus metu ut omnes illius mali motus, omnes figuras, ut deprenderat oculis, dictaret enotaretque.

Pliny faced the dangers with extraordinary composure and encouraged the others.

150 Iam navibus cinis incidebat, calidior et densior, iam pumices etiam nigrique et ambusti et fracti igne lapides. Cunctatus paulum an retro flecteret, mox gubernatori ut ita faceret monenti "Fortes" inquit, "fortuna iuvat: Pomponianum pete." Stabiis erat, diremptus sinu medio; sarcinas contulerat in naves, certus
155 fugae, si contrarius ventus resedisset. Quo tunc avunculus meus

Roman warships
Fresco, 1st century A.D.
Casa dei Vettii, Pompeii, Italy

156. **invectus:** i.e., to shore.
     complectitur: complecti, *to embrace.*
     trepidantem: i.e., Pomponianus.
157. **securitate: securitas,** *lack of concern, composure;* CHIASMUS effectively contrasts this word with its antonym **timorem.**
     leniret: lenire, *to calm, soothe.*
     deferri: sc. **se** as subj.
158. **balineum:** *bath.*
     lotus: *having (been) bathed,* from **lavare.**
     accubat: accubare, *to recline at table.*
     hilaris: *cheerful.*
159. **similis hilari:** sc. **viro;** i.e., pretending to be cheerful.
161. **tenebris: tenebrae,** pl., *shadows, darkness, gloom.*
162. **excitabatur:** *were enhanced;* the vb. is sg. to agree with the nearer of the two subjs., and since **fulgor** and **claritas** constitute a single idea.
     agrestium: agrestis, *farmer, peasant;* there were farms throughout the area of Vesuvius, where the volcanically enriched soil was well suited to agriculture.
     relictos: sc. **esse;** in their fear the country people had fled without putting out their fires on the hearth.
163. **per solitudinem:** i.e., in the districts abandoned by the inhabitants.
     in remedium formidinis: indicating purpose, freely = *to allay their terror* **(formido).**
165. **meatus animae:** *the passage of his breath = his breathing, snoring.*
166. **obversabantur: obversari,** + dat., *to pass before.*
167. **area:** *open space, courtyard.*
     diaeta: *room, apartment.*
168. **oppleta: opplere,** *to fill, cover.*
169. **mora:** sc. **esset.**
     exitus negaretur: thus explaining the numerous bodies found by archaeologists in the excavations.
170. **in commune:** *for the common good.*
171. **tecta: tectum,** *roof, dwelling, house.*
     subsistant: subsistere, *to stand still, remain, stay;* sc. **utrum.**
     aperto: apertum, *open space.*
     vagentur: vagari, *to wander about.*
172. **nutabant: nutare,** *to nod, totter, sway.*
     sedibus: sedes, *seat, abode, home;* here, *foundation.*
173. **sub dio:** *under the divine element = under the open sky.*
     rursus: adv., *back, again.*
174. **quamquam:** to be construed with the adjs.
     exesorum: exedere, *to eat away;* here, *eaten away* (as it were, by fire and gases), *porous.*
     casus: here, *the falling.*

secundissimo invectus complectitur trepidantem, consolatur, hortatur, utque timorem eius sua securitate leniret, deferri in balineum iubet; lotus accubat, cenat aut hilaris aut, quod est aeque magnum, similis hilari.

A description of the eruption and the plight of the people.

160 Interim e Vesuvio monte pluribus locis latissimae flammae altaque incendia relucebant, quorum fulgor et claritas tenebris noctis excitabatur. Ille agrestium trepidatione ignes relictos de-sertasque villas per solitudinem ardere in remedium formidinis dictitabat. Tum se quieti dedit et quievit verissimo quidem
165 somno, nam meatus animae, qui illi propter amplitudinem cor-poris gravior et sonantior erat, ab eis qui limini obversabantur audiebatur. Sed area ex qua diaeta adibatur ita iam cinere mix-tisque pumicibus oppleta surrexerat, ut, si longior in cubiculo mora, exitus negaretur. Excitatus procedit seque Pomponiano
170 ceterisque, qui pervigilaverant, reddit. In commune consultant, intra tecta subsistant an in aperto vagentur. Nam crebris vas-tisque tremoribus tecta nutabant et, quasi emota sedibus suis, nunc huc, nunc illuc abire aut referri videbantur. Sub dio rursus quamquam levium exesorumque pumicum casus metuebatur;

"A Dream in the Ruins of Pompeii"
Paul Alfred de Curzon, 1866
Musée Leon Alegre, Bagnois-sur-Ceze, France

175.   **quod:** conjunctive use of the rel. referring in general to the preceding point,
       but . . . this option; a comparison **(collatio)** of the risks induced them to
       take their chances out in the open.

       apud illum: *with him* (Pliny), *in his case.*

176.   **ratio rationem . . . timorem timor:** CHIASMUS, ANAPHORA, and ASYNDETON
       effectively highlight the contrast Pliny is drawing.

       cervicalia: cervical, *pillow.*

177.   **linteis: linteum,** *linen cloth, sail;* here, *strips of linen.*

       constringunt: constringere, *to tie, bind.*

179.   **dies alibi, illic nox:** this is the second day of the narrative, August 25; CHIAS-
       MUS emphasizes the stark difference between normal daylight elsewhere
       and volcanic night in the stricken area.

180.   **faces: fax,** *torch.*

       solabantur: solari, *to console, relieve, mitigate.*

181.   **placuit:** lit., *it was pleasing* = *it seemed best.*

       ecquid: interrog. conj., *whether at all.*

182.   **admitteret:** sc. **eos;** the **contrarius ventus** had earlier prevented their sailing.

183.   **frigidam:** sc. **aquam.**

184.   **hausit: haurire,** *to drink.*

185.   **innixus: inniti,** *to lean on, support oneself by.*

186.   **colligo:** probably the two **servuli** survived and reported that his uncle had
       died from the gases.

187.   **crassiore:** *thicker, denser.*

       caligine: caligo, *vapor, gas.*

       stomacho: stomachus, *esophagus, stomach;* Pliny uses the term here, rather
       unscientifically, for *windpipe.* Pliny's uncle had some chronic difficulty
       with his breathing (doubtless related to his snoring, mentioned in 165–
       66), perhaps asthma.

188.   **interaestuans:** *inflamed.*

189.   **dies:** i.e., *daylight.*

       redditus: sc. **est,** as with **inventum** in the next line.

       is . . . tertius: = **is erat tertius dies ab eo . . ..** On August 24 Pliny had sailed
       to Stabiae and saw daylight for the last time (hence **novissime viderat**);
       on August 25 he died; and on August 26 the air had cleared somewhat
       and his body was discovered. Eng. would say "the second day after . . . ,"
       but the Roman counting system regularly included the first and last days
       in such a series.

190.   **corpus . . . indutus (191):** detailed evidence that Pliny had been overcome by
       volcanic gas only, thus corroborating the statement presumably made by
       his slaves; **ut fuerat indutus** (from **induere**), *just as he had been clothed,*
       shows that there had been no harm from fire.

       inlaesum: *uninjured.*

       opertum: operire, *to cover.*

191.   **habitus:** *position, appearance.*

175 quod tamen periculorum collatio elegit. Et apud illum quidem
ratio rationem, apud alios timorem timor vicit. Cervicalia capitibus
imposita linteis constringunt; id munimentum adversus incidentia
fuit.

The death of Pliny the Elder.

Iam dies alibi, illic nox omnibus noctibus nigrior densi-
180 orque; quam tamen faces multae variaque lumina solabantur.
Placuit egredi in litus et ex proximo aspicere ecquid iam mare
admitteret; quod adhuc vastum et adversum permanebat. Ibi
super abiectum linteum recubans, semel atque iterum frigidam
poposcit hausitque. Deinde flammae flammarumque praenun-
185 tius, odor sulpuris, alios in fugam vertunt, excitant illum. In-
nixus servulis duobus, adsurrexit et statim concidit, ut ego col-
ligo, crassiore caligine spiritu obstructo clausoque stomacho,
qui illi natura invalidus et angustus et frequenter interaestuans
erat. Ubi dies redditus (is ab eo, quem novissime viderat, ter-
190 tius), corpus inventum integrum, inlaesum opertumque ut fuerat
indutus: habitus corporis quiescenti quam defuncto similior.

A victim of the Vesuvius eruption
Pompeii, Italy

192. **ego et mater:** APOSIOPESIS; in Lat. **ego** was quite lit. the pron. of the first pers. and was so placed in a list, but we say *my mother and I.*

194. **me . . . persecutum (195):** sc. **esse;** *that I have set forth.*
statim: i.e., right after the events.

195. **potissima:** *the most useful things.*

196. **aliud . . . aliud (197):** sc. **scribere** with each of the four instances of **aliud,** *it is one thing to write . . . it is another to . . ..*

198. **Macro:** though the identification is not certain, probably *Publius Calpurnius Macer,* consul in A.D. 103 and the addressee also of *Epistulae* 5.18.

199. **interest:** impers., *it is important.*
a quo . . . fiat: an IND. QUEST. used as subj. of **interest.**

201. **Larium: Larius,** modern *Lake Como,* a beautiful Alpine lake in northern Italy, called **nostrum** because Pliny was a native of the city of Comum (modern Como) and Macer was apparently from the same general area.

202. **etiam:** here, *in particular.*

203. **prominet: prominere,** *to jut out, project.*
aliquando: adv., *at some time, once.*
municeps: *citizen (of a free town,* a **municipium**); with **nostra,** *a fellow-citizen of mine, a woman from my town.*

205. **ulceribus:** possibly cancer.
putrescebat: putrescere, *to rot, fester.*

206. **exegit:** here, *demanded (that she).*
indicaturum: sc. **esse;** implied IND. STATE.

207. **vidit . . . hortata est:** the rush of vbs. and the ASYNDETON help suggest the intensity of the wife's concern.

208. **immo:** adv., *on the contrary, indeed.*
necessitas: *the compelling reason.*

209. **mihi:** DAT. OF AGENT, which became fairly common with any pass. form from the first cent. A.D. onward.

210. **municeps:** sc. **sum.**
nisi proxime: here, *until very recently.*
minus: sc. **factum eius fuit,** *her deed was less (noble).*

211. **Arriae:** the allusion is to the famous story of *Arria,* wife of A. Caecina Paetus, known from another of Pliny's letters (3.16); determined to join her husband in suicide, Arria stabbed herself first and then withdrew the dagger from her chest and handed it to her husband, consoling him with the words, **Paete, non dolet.**
minor: *less (famous).*

These details are based largely on eye-witness accounts, and may be used by Tacitus in whatever ways suit his purposes.

Interim Miseni ego et mater—sed nihil ad historiam, nec tu aliud quam de exitu eius scire voluisti. Finem ergo faciam. Unum adiciam, omnia me, quibus interfueram, quaeque statim,
195   cum maxime vera memorantur, audieram, persecutum. Tu potissima excerpes; aliud est enim epistulam, aliud historiam, aliud amico, aliud omnibus scribere. Vale.

6.24 (excerpts)

Pliny tells his countryman, the senator Calpurnius Macer, about the devotion of a woman from Lake Como who courageously joined her diseased husband in death; possibly written A.D. *106.*

C. Plinius Macro Suo S.

Quam multum interest a quo quidque fiat! Eadem enim
200   facta claritate vel obscuritate facientium aut tolluntur altissime aut humillime deprimuntur. Navigabam per Larium nostrum, cum senior amicus ostendit mihi villam atque etiam cubiculum, quod in lacum prominet: "Ex hoc," inquit, "aliquando municeps nostra cum marito se praecipitavit." Causam requisivi. Ma-
205   ritus ex diutino morbo ulceribus putrescebat: uxor, ut inspiceret, exegit; neque enim quemquam fidelius indicaturum possetne sanari. Vidit; desperavit; hortata est ut moreretur, comesque ipsa mortis, dux immo et exemplum et necessitas fuit. Nam se cum marito ligavit abiecitque in lacum. Quod factum ne mihi
210   quidem, qui municeps, nisi proxime auditum est, non quia minus illo clarissimo Arriae facto, sed quia minor ipsa. Vale.

212.   **Calpurniae:** *Calpurnia Fabata,* Pliny's third wife, considerably younger than he, whom he married ca. A.D. 100; the two were quite devoted to one another, and Pliny's letters to her, despite a sometimes self-conscious and rhetorical style, reveal their mutual affection and were an important contribution to the theme of conjugal love in classical literature.

213.   **in causa:** with **est** (understood), idiom, *is the reason, is responsible.*

214.   **inde:** adv., *thence, from this.*
        est quod: *is the reason that,* with **inde,** *this is why;* similarly, though more elliptically, **quod** in 215 and 217.

215.   **in imagine tua:** i.e., thinking of you.

216.   **interdiu:** adv., *by day, during the day.*
        ipsi . . . ducunt (217): in this delightful image, Pliny insists that his feet have a mind of their own!

217.   **aeger:** *sick.*

218.   **maestus:** *sad, dejected.*
        excluso: sc. **amatori;** the image deliberately recalls that of the **exclusus amator** common in Latin elegiac poetry.

219.   **litibus: lis,** *quarrel, controversy, lawsuit.*

223.   **olim:** here, *for some time.*

224.   **illud:** with **nihil agere** and **nihil esse,** which are also modified by **iners** and **iucundum,** *that . . . doing nothing . . ..*

226.   **secedere:** i.e., to the country, as commonly in Pliny.
        studere: i.e., such subjects as rhetoric, philosophy, and literature.
        nulla studia: much as Pliny longs for his quiet scholarly pursuits, his duty to his friends comes first.

227.   **tanti:** sc. **pretii,** GEN. OF INDEF. VALUE, *worth so much, so valuable* (lit., *of such great value*).

228.   **studia ipsa:** he probably had in mind such works as Cicero's *De Amicitia.*

Lake Como, with the Alps in the background

7.5

In this charming and tender epistle, one of a series to his wife Calpurnia, Pliny tells her how much he has missed her during her holiday in Campania, apparently their first time apart; written perhaps in the summer of A.D. *107.*

C. Plinius Calpurniae Suae S.

Incredibile est quanto desiderio tui tenear. In causa amor primum, deinde quod non consuevimus abesse. Inde est quod 215 magnam noctium partem in imagine tua vigil exigo, inde, quod interdiu, quibus horis te visere solebam, ad diaetam tuam ipsi me, ut verissime dicitur, pedes ducunt, quod denique aeger et maestus ac similis excluso a vacuo limine recedo. Unum tempus his tormentis caret, quo in foro amicorum litibus conteror. Aes-220 tima tu quae vita mea sit, cui requies in labore, in miseria curis-que solacium. Vale.

8.9

In this brief note to his friend Cornelius Ursus, the recipient of several other letters on legal matters, Pliny comments on the distractions of city life and the demands of friendship; ca. A.D. *107–108.*

C. Plinius Urso Suo S.

Olim non librum in manus, non stilum sumpsi; olim nescio quid sit otium, quid quies, quid denique illud iners quidem, iu-225 cundum tamen nihil agere, nihil esse; adeo multa me negotia amicorum nec secedere nec studere patiuntur. Nulla enim studia tanti sunt ut amicitiae officium deseratur, quod religiosissime custodiendum studia ipsa praecipiunt. Vale.

229. **Traiano Imperatori:** *Trajan* (Marcus Ulpius Traianus) was emperor A.D. 98–117; the 10th book of Pliny's letters includes his correspondence with the emperor, the first 14 epistles dating between 98 and his departure to Bithynia, and the remainder to the period of his governorship.

230. **sollemne:** *customary;* the fact that Pliny is inquiring to Trajan is evidence that the emperor had issued no official edict on the matter.

232. **cognitionibus: cognitio,** *trial* (here referring to formal trials at Rome); Pliny knew of these proceedings in Rome but had never participated.

233. **ideo:** adv., *for that reason.*
    quatenus: adv., *to what extent;* the maximum penalty was death.

234. **sitne:** this and all the following subjunct. vbs. are IND. QUESTS.
    discrimen aetatum: i.e., should old and young offenders be treated differently? Entire families were in fact subject to prosecution.

235. **quamlibet teneri:** *those however young* (**tener,** lit., = *tender*).
    robustioribus: lit., *stronger, more robust* = *older.*

236. **ei:** dat. with **prosit** (from **prodesse,** *to benefit, profit*).
    omnino: here, *ever, at all.*
    desisse: i.e., to have recanted and renounced his Christianity.

237. **nomen . . . puniantur (238):** should the mere name of Christian be punished even if the person were not guilty of any crime (**flagitium**)? Certain organizations (**collegia**) had been outlawed by Trajan because they had been sources of disorder in the province, and the Christians might be prosecuted on that account; they were, besides, thought by some to be guilty of such crimes as cannibalism, based on a misunderstanding of the Eucharist.
    cohaerentia: lit., *adhering to* = *associated with.*

239. **in:** here, *in the case of.*
    tamquam: here, simply *as.*
    deferebantur: a technical term for accusations lodged by individuals; Pliny himself was not actively seeking prosecutions but dealt with those that were brought before him.

241. **iterum ac tertio:** adv. modifying **interrogavi;** though it did offer the defendant further opportunity to recant, the repeated questioning was standard procedure and not an extraordinary attempt on Pliny's part to show mercy.

242. **duci:** sc. **ad supplicium,** i.e., execution (generally decapitation by sword).
    qualecumque esset (243): *whatever it was.*

244. **amentiae: amentia,** *madness, folly.*

245. **adnotavi:** a technical term for an entry in the official government records.
    urbem: ordinarily a Roman citizen could not be executed without a trial in Rome (see the case of Gavius in "Cicero's Verrine Orations," above).

246. **tractatu: tractatus,** *handling, treatment,* i.e., of this matter.
    diffundente: diffundere, *to pour forth, spread.*
    crimine: *charge, accusation;* not *crime.*
    species: i.e., of cases.

247. **inciderunt:** here, *occurred.*
    libellus sine auctore: i.e., an anonymous pamphlet.

10.96

As governor of the eastern province of Bithynia (A.D. 109 or 110 until his death in ca. 112), Pliny writes to the emperor Trajan, asking his advice on handling the spread of Christianity among the provincials; our earliest non-Christian account of the religion's practices, this very famous letter (known to Jerome and other early church fathers) was written from either Amisus or Amastris between September 18 and January 3 of the second year of his governorship. The selection following this reading is Trajan's letter of reply.

C. Plinius Traiano Imperatori

Pliny's perplexity about what to do concerning the Christians.

230   Sollemne est mihi, domine, omnia de quibus dubito ad te referre. Quis enim potest melius vel cunctationem meam regere vel ignorantiam instruere? Cognitionibus de Christianis interfui numquam; ideo nescio quid et quatenus aut puniri soleat aut quaeri. Nec mediocriter haesitavi sitne aliquod discrimen aeta-
235 tum, an quamlibet teneri nihil a robustioribus differant; detur paenitentiae venia, an ei, qui omnino Christianus fuit, desisse non prosit; nomen ipsum, si flagitiis careat, an flagitia cohaeren-tia nomini puniantur.

While not actively seeking indictments, Pliny has tried those duly charged with being Christians and has executed the unrepentant.

      Interim in iis qui ad me tamquam Christiani deferebantur,
240 hunc sum secutus modum. Interrogavi ipsos an essent Chris-tiani. Confitentes iterum ac tertio interrogavi, supplicium mina-tus; perseverantes duci iussi. Neque enim dubitabam, quale-cumque esset quod faterentur, pertinaciam certe et inflexibilem obstinationem debere puniri. Fuerunt alii similis amentiae, quos,
245 quia cives Romani erant, adnotavi in urbem remittendos. Mox ipso tractatu, ut fieri solet, diffundente se crimine, plures species inciderunt. Propositus est libellus sine auctore multorum no-mina continens.

249. **praeeunte me (250):** as today an official commonly leads a person or a group in the administration of an oath, dictating the words.

250. **appellarent:** with **deos** (i.e., the official state gods), *invoked.*
      imagini: dat. with **supplicarent,** *worshiped;* though this form of emperor-worship was to most Romans hardly more than an oath of allegiance, it was offensive to Christians because of their intense monotheism.
      propter hoc: i.e., for the purpose of the interrogation.

251. **simulacris: simulacrum,** *image, statue.*
      numinum: numen, *deity, god.*
      ture: tus, *incense.*

252. **maledicerent: maledicere,** + dat., *to curse.*
      quorum nihil: *none of which things.*

253. **re vera:** *in true fact* = *truly.*

254. **indice: index,** *witness, informer.*

255. **fuisse ... desisse:** with **quidam (dixerunt se).**
      triennium: ACC. OF DURATION OF TIME with **ante,** *three years earlier.*

256. **non nemo:** (at least) *one person.*
      hi ... maledixerunt (258): since Pliny does not report here his decision regarding this group of apostates, he had perhaps detained them while awaiting Trajan's reply.

260. **quod:** *that,* introducing a noun cl. in appos. with **summam;** what follows is very important evidence for the ritual of the early Christian church.
      essent soliti: subjunct. in a SUBORDINATE CL. IN IND. STATE.
      stato die: *on a fixed day,* i.e., Sunday.
      ante lucem: the proper time for worship, just as it was for the beginning of the work day.
      carmen: here, *hymn, chant.*

261. **invicem:** adv., *alternately, responsively.*
      sacramento: sacramentum, *oath,* which is explained both by the prep. phrase **non in ... aliquod** and by the JUSSIVE NOUN CLS. following; the term is taken by some as a reference to baptism or the Eucharist.

262. **non in scelus aliquod:** *not (directed) toward some crime,* an important point since the Christians were commonly misunderstood as some sort of criminal conspirators because of the secretive, exclusive nature of their organization and their seemingly bizarre rituals.
      obstringere: *to tie, bind (by an oath).*
      furta: furtum, *theft;* some see in these prohibitions a reference to the Ten Commandments.
      latrocinia: latrocinium, *robbery, fraud.*

263. **fallerent: fallere,** *to deceive, cheat, betray.*
      depositum: some trustees then, as now, misused funds entrusted to their care.

264. **appellati:** nom., *when called upon* (to return it).
      morem ... fuisse (265): still IND. STATE. dependent on **adfirmabant.**

265. **cibum: cibus,** *food;* the early Christian "agape," or daily love-feast, involved food, hymns, scripture readings, and prayers.
      promiscuum ... et innoxium: *ordinary and harmless.*

266. **quod:** = **et hoc.**

Those who denied the charges, cursed Christ, and worshiped the gods and the emperor were released.

Qui negabant esse se Christianos aut fuisse, cum praeeunte
250 me deos appellarent et imagini tuae, quam propter hoc iusseram
cum simulacris numinum adferri, ture ac vino supplicarent,
praeterea maledicerent Christo—quorum nihil posse cogi di-
cuntur qui sunt re vera Christiani—dimittendos esse putavi.
Alii ab indice nominati esse se Christianos dixerunt et mox ne-
255 gaverunt; fuisse quidem, sed desisse, quidam ante triennium, qui-
dam ante plures annos, non nemo etiam ante viginti. Hi quoque
omnes et imaginem tuam deorumque simulacra venerati sunt et
Christo maledixerunt.

Pliny describes the Christians' rituals as they reported them to him.

Adfirmabant autem hanc fuisse summam vel culpae suae vel
260 erroris, quod essent soliti stato die ante lucem convenire car-
menque Christo quasi deo dicere secum invicem seque sacra-
mento non in scelus aliquod obstringere, sed ne furta, ne latroci-
nia, ne adulteria committerent, ne fidem fallerent, ne depositum
appellati abnegarent; quibus peractis, morem sibi discedendi
265 fuisse rursusque coeundi ad capiendum cibum, promiscuum
tamen et innoxium; quod ipsum facere desisse post edictum

Trajan
Anonymous
17th century
Galleria Borghese
Rome, Italy
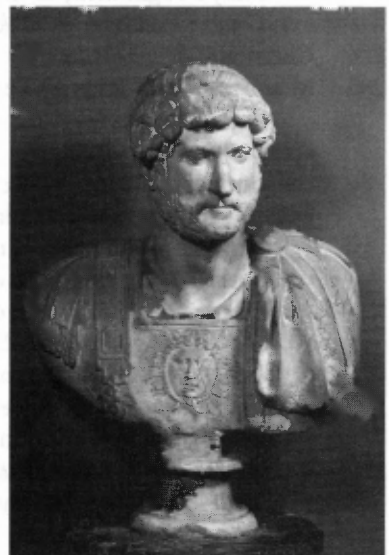
267. **secundum:** prep. + acc., *according to.*
      hetaerias: hetaeria, *fraternity, secret society.*
268. **ancillis: ancilla,** *maid-servant, slave;* these are loyal Christians, quite distinct
          from the recanters above.
      ministrae: the Lat. translation of Greek ***diakonissa,*** *deaconess.*
269. **et per tormenta:** *even by torture;* Pliny apparently thought that these servants
          of the church were in fact slaves, and the testimony of slaves was accept-
          able in court only when obtained by torture.
270. **pravam:** *distorted, perverse, wicked.*
272. **periclitantium: periclitari,** *to be in danger.*
274. **in periculum:** i.e., to trial.
275. **civitates:** here, *cities,* which came to be a standard meaning of the word.
      vicos: vicus, *village.*
276. **sisti: sistere,** *to set up, stop, check;* with **posse.**
277. **constat:** impers., *it is agreed.*
      templa: i.e., of the traditional Roman deities.
278. **celebrari: celebrare,** *to visit in large numbers, to throng;* i.e., as a result of the
          repression of the Christians.
      sollemnia: sollemne, *religious ceremony, rite.*
      passim: adv., *here and there, far and wide, everywhere.*
      venire: veneo, venire, *to go for sale, be sold.*
279. **victimarum:** i.e., animals sacrificed to the gods.
      carnem: carnis, *flesh.*
      adhuc: adv., *up to this time, still, yet.*
      rarissimus emptor: the Christians would not eat meat from the pagan
          temples.
283. **actum:** here, *procedure.*
      Secunde: in the body of his letters to Pliny, the Emperor Trajan often uses
          Pliny's cognomen, as here, sometimes with **carissime** added.
      excutiendis: excutere, *to shake out, examine, investigate.*
284. **Christiani:** *as Christians.*
285. **in universum:** *in general;* i.e., there can be no fixed prescription which will
          cover every single case.
      certam: *fixed, unvarying.*
286. **constitui: constituere,** *to place, establish, determine, decide.*
      conquirendi non sunt: conquirere, *to search out;* Trajan intended no aggressive
          persecution of the Christians. While generally answering Pliny's initial
          question regarding the conduct of investigations, the emperor does not
          give his opinion on the degree of punishment appropriate to the offence
          (*Epistulae* 10.96, line 233, **quatenus . . . puniri soleat**), thus by silence
          endorsing the usual penalty of execution.
      arguantur: arguere, *to make clear, prove;* there must be a full trial in court
          and a formal conviction, not merely an accusation.
287. **ita:** *in such a way (that), with the stipulation (that).*
288. **re ipsa:** *in actual fact* (lit., *by the thing itself*), as defined by **supplicando.**

meum, quo secundum mandata tua hetaerias esse vetueram. Quo magis necessarium credidi ex duabus ancillis, quae minis-trae dicebantur, quid esset veri, et per tormenta quaerere. Nihil
270   aliud inveni quam superstitionem pravam, immodicam.

Pliny is concerned about humanitarian considerations but feels that the "superstition" must be curbed.

Ideo dilata cognitione, ad consulendum te decucurri. Visa est enim mihi res digna consultatione, maxime propter pericli-tantium numerum. Multi enim omnis aetatis, omnis ordinis, utriusque sexus etiam vocantur in periculum et vocabuntur.
275   Neque civitates tantum, sed vicos etiam atque agros supersti-tionis istius contagio pervagata est; quae videtur sisti et corrigi posse. Certe satis constat prope iam desolata templa coepisse celebrari, et sacra sollemnia diu intermissa repeti passimque ve-nire victimarum carnem, cuius adhuc rarissimus emptor inveni-
280   ebatur. Ex quo facile est opinari quae turba hominum emendari possit, si sit paenitentiae locus.

10.97

Trajan replies, probably within a few weeks, to the preceding letter, generally approv-ing Pliny's procedure, advising against witch-hunts and the acceptance of anonymous accusations, but insisting that Christians who do not renounce their religion, whether or not guilty of any related crime, must indeed be punished.

Traianus Plinio

Actum quem debuisti, mi Secunde, in excutiendis causis eorum qui Christiani ad te delati fuerant, secutus es. Neque
285   enim in universum aliquid, quod quasi certam formam habeat, constitui potest. Conquirendi non sunt; si deferantur et arguan-tur, puniendi sunt, ita tamen ut qui negaverit se Christianum esse idque re ipsa manifestum fecerit, id est supplicando dis

289. **in praeteritum:** *in the past.*
291. **pessimi exempli:** with **est**, *it* (i.e., the practice of crediting anonymous accusa-
        tions) *is (of) a very bad precedent;* PRED. GEN. OF DESCRIPTION, as also
        nostri saeculi.
      nostri saeculi: lit., *of our age* = *appropriate to our age,* i.e., Trajan's relatively
        benevolent administration.

nostris, quamvis suspectus in praeteritum, veniam ex paeniten-
290   tia impetret. Sine auctore vero propositi libelli in nullo crimine
locum habere debent. Nam et pessimi exempli nec nostri sae-
culi est.

Trajan
Louvre, Paris, France

THE VULGATE

The Old Testament, in origin a collection of Jewish writings composed chiefly in Hebrew, was translated into Greek by several different hands beginning in the third century B.C. According to a popular ancient tradition, the translation was produced for the library of the Egyptian king Ptolemy II Philadelphus by a panel of 70 Jewish scholars, hence the title "the Septuagint" often applied to the work.

During the latter half of the first century of our era the New Testament was composed in Greek. As Christianity spread through the Latin-speaking world, including Italy, Gaul, Spain, and North Africa, anonymous Latin versions of various parts of the Bible, the so-called *Vetus Latina,* began to appear from the second century onward. By the fourth century the number of translations and variants had become confusing, and the biblical scholar Eusebius Hieronymus (ca. A.D. 347–420), better known as St. Jerome, was commissioned in the early 380's by Pope Damasus to produce a standard Latin version. Working at first from the Septuagint and later from the original Hebrew for the Old Testament, and directly from the Greek for the New Testament, Jerome ultimately—over a period of about 25 years—produced the "Vulgate," the *Editio Vulgata* of the Bible, so-called from his intention that it serve as a highly readable popular edition for the *vulgus,* the common people. Jerome's edition for centuries was the standard Latin text of the Bible and exercised a profound influence on the church and on European thought generally.

Just as the Greek New Testament had been written in the simple language of the common people, the so-called *koine,* so that it could be easily understood by them, likewise the Vulgate was phrased *ad usum vulgi* and not in the rich elegant style of Cicero (with which Jerome was highly conversant and which he employed in much of his other writing). While his translations from both the Greek and Hebrew were at times highly literal, at others quite free, the structure of his sentences is nearly always eminently simple, with more coordination than subordination. Among other characteristics of Jerome's language are the frequent use of *quod, quia,* or *ut* with either the indicative or the subjunctive to express indirect statement, the use of prepositional phrases instead of simple cases (e.g., *dixit ad eum = dixit ei*), the infinitive to express purpose or result, and the use of new words and of new meanings for old words. Such usages continued and were elaborated throughout medieval

Latin and illustrate the process by which vulgar Latin was gradually transformed into the Romance languages.

The readings excerpted for translation in this text include some of the best known and most influential passages from the Bible, among them the Ten Commandments, Job's views on the inaccessibility of wisdom, Ecclesiastes on the futility of man's earthly existence, selections from Christ's "Sermon on the Mount," and the stories of the "Good Samaritan" and the "Prodigal Son."
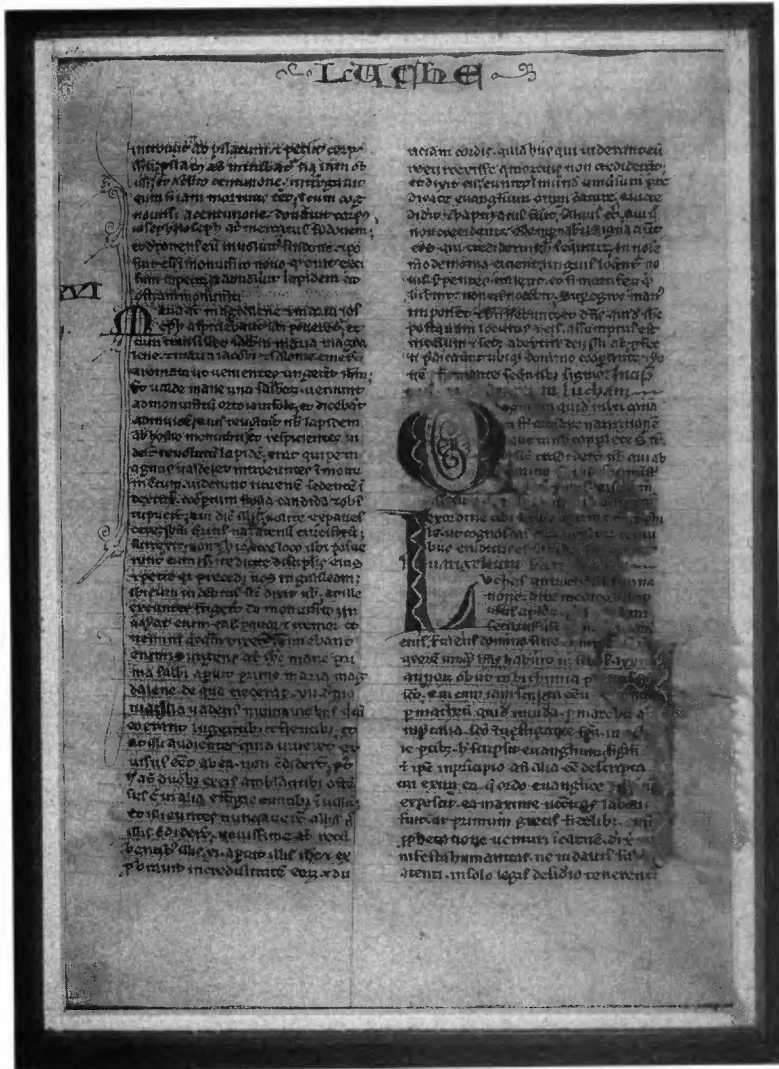
Vellum page from Dominican manuscript of
miniature Vulgate bible (Mark 16–Luke 1), ca. 1240
Paris, France

1.   **cunctos:** = **omnes.**
       sermones: *words, sayings.*
4.   **habebis:** the fut. indic. can be used with the force of a command.
       coram: prep. + abl., *in the presence of.*
5.   **sculptile:** *a carved thing, statue.*
       omnem: here (and in 17 below), *any.*
       quae: sc. **eius** as antecedent.
6.   **deorsum:** adv., *downward, below.*
8.   **zelotes:** a Greek m. nom. sg. form, *one who is jealous.*
       visitans: **visitare,** *to see often, visit,* here *visit upon, send.*
10.   **in milia:** balances **in filios** above.
       his: DAT. OF REF., *in the case of the people.*
       diligunt: here, *love* in the sense of *esteem,* a lofty and dignified word, vs.
              amare, *to love* or *like* in a more general or more physical way.
12.   **in vanum:** *ostentatiously, in vain.*
15.   **memento:** 2nd pers. sg. fut. imper. of the defective vb. **memini.**
       diem sabbati: *the day of the sabbath* (a Hebrew word), *the day of rest.*
       sanctifices: **sanctificare,** eccl. Lat., *to treat as holy, sanctify.*
       diebus: ABL. OF DURATION OF TIME, less common than the acc. construction.
       operaberis: **operari** = **laborare.**
17.   **in eo:** a prep. is common with the ABL. OF TIME in eccl. Lat.
18.   **ancilla:** *maid-servant.*
       iumentum: *beast of burden, pack animal.*
       advena: m./f., *stranger.*
21.   **idcirco:** adv., *on that account, therefore.*
       benedixit: **benedicere** (in class. Lat. usually written **bene dicere**) + dat., *to
              speak well of* = *to bless,* common in eccl. Lat.
23.   **longaevus:** *old, aged.*
25.   **occides:** from **ob-caedo.**
26.   **moechaberis:** **moechari,** *to commit adultery.*
27.   **furtum:** *theft.*
28.   **proximum:** **proximus,** *neighbor,* a natural later development from the lit.
              meaning of the word ("neighbor" is an Anglo-Saxon word meaning
              "near-dweller"); **vicinus** is the class. term.
29.   **concupisces:** **concupiscere,** *to long for, desire eagerly.*
30.   **asinum:** **asinus,** *ass.*
33.   **quis:** = **quid,** here m. by attraction to **locus.**
       intellegentiae: here, *understanding.*

The Ten Commandments

Locutusque est Dominus cunctos sermones hos:

Ego sum Dominus Deus tuus, qui eduxi te de terra Aegypti, de domo servitutis.

Non habebis deos alienos coram me.

5 Non facies tibi sculptile neque omnem similitudinem quae est in caelo desuper et quae in terra deorsum nec eorum quae sunt in aquis sub terra. Non adorabis ea neque coles; ego sum Dominus Deus tuus fortis, zelotes, visitans iniquitatem patrum in filios, in tertiam et quartam generationem eorum qui oderunt
10 me, et faciens misericordiam in milia his qui diligunt me et custodiunt praecepta mea.

Non adsumes nomen Domini Dei tui in vanum; nec enim habebit insontem Dominus eum qui adsumpserit nomen Domini Dei sui frustra.

15 Memento ut diem sabbati sanctifices. Sex diebus operaberis et facies omnia opera tua. Septimo autem die sabbatum Domini Dei tui est; non facies omne opus in eo, tu, et filius tuus et filia tua, servus tuus et ancilla tua, iumentum tuum, et advena qui est intra portas tuas. Sex enim diebus fecit Dominus caelum et
20 terram, et mare, et omnia quae in eis sunt, et requievit in die septimo; idcirco benedixit Dominus diei sabbati et sanctificavit eum.

Honora patrem tuum et matrem tuam, ut sis longaevus super terram, quam Dominus Deus tuus dabit tibi.

25 Non occides.

Non moechaberis.

Non furtum facies.

Non loqueris contra proximum tuum falsum testimonium.

Non concupisces domum proximi tui; nec desiderabis uxo-
30 rem eius, non servum, non ancillam, non bovem, non asinum, nec omnia quae illius sunt. (*Exodus* 20.1–17)

Job on the Inaccessibility of Wisdom

Sapientia vero ubi invenitur?
Et quis est locus intellegentiae?
Nescit homo pretium eius,
35 nec invenitur in terra suaviter viventium.

36. **Abyssus:** *abyss, bottomless gulf, void;* here personified.
    Abyssus . . . mecum (37): an example of the parallelism which is one of the
    major characteristics of Hebrew poetry; the second line of a couplet
    repeats the thought of the first with different words or expresses a similar
    idea. This can be observed in the first two lines of this excerpt (32–33)
    and elsewhere throughout the passage.
38. **aurum obryzum:** *pure gold;* with **non dabitur,** the point is that true wisdom
    cannot be bought for any price.
39. **appendetur:** *will be weighed out;* similarly **expendo,** from which derives Eng.
    "spend," both words reflecting the means of exchange **(commutatio)** be-
    fore the invention of coinage.
40. **tinctis . . . coloribus:** probably another reference to gold, for which India
    was known.
41. **lapidi:** dat. (with the compound vb. **conferetur**) of **lapis,** *stone;* with the adj.
    sardonycho, *of sardonyx.*
42. **ei . . . ea (43):** i.e., **sapientia.**
    vitrum: *glass;* here, *fine glass,* like our crystal.
44. **excelsa:** *heights.*
    eminentia: n. pl. of **eminens,** *things that stand out, project, are lofty;* here =
    lofty peaks.
    memorabuntur: memorare, *to mention, recount.*
45. **occultis:** *secret places.*
47. **tincturae: tinctura,** *dyeing, tinting,* here *color* (perhaps again of gold—cp.
    tinctis . . . coloribus, 40—or some other precious material).
    mundissimae: mundus, *clean, pure.*
48. **unde . . . intellegentiae (49):** a recapitulation of the questions in 32–33.
50. **abscondita est: abscondere,** *to conceal.*
51. **volucres: volucer (avis),** *bird.*
    latet: latere + acc. = *to escape the notice of, be concealed from.*
52. **perditio:** postclassical, *destruction, ruin.*
56. **intuetur: intueri,** *to look at, contemplate, consider.*
58. **pondus:** *weight.*
59. **mensura:** *measure.*
60. **pluviis: pluvia,** *rain.*
61. **procellis: procella,** *storm.*
65. **ecce:** interj., *look, see, behold.*

Abyssus dicit, "Non est in me";
et Mare loquitur, "Non est mecum."
Non dabitur aurum obryzum pro ea,
nec appendetur argentum in commutatione eius.
40   Non conferetur tinctis Indiae coloribus
nec lapidi sardonycho pretiossimo vel sapphiro.
Non adaequabitur ei aurum vel vitrum,
nec commutabuntur pro ea vasa auri.
Excelsa et eminentia non memorabuntur comparatione eius;
45   trahitur autem sapientia de occultis.
Non adaequabitur ei topazium de Aethiopia,
nec tincturae mundissimae componetur.
Unde ergo sapientia venit?
Et quis est locus intellegentiae?
50   Abscondita est ab oculis omnium viventium,
volucres quoque caeli latet.
Perditio et mors dixerunt,
"Auribus nostris audivimus famam eius."
Deus intellegit viam eius,
55   et ipse novit locum illius.
Ipse enim fines mundi intuetur:
et omnia, quae sub caelo sunt, respicit.
Qui fecit ventis pondus
et aquas appendit mensura,
60   quando ponebat pluviis legem
et viam procellis sonantibus,
tunc vidit illam, et enarravit,
et praeparavit, et investigavit,
Et dixit homini,
65   "Ecce, timor Domini ipsa est sapientia;
et recedere a malo, intellegentia." (*Job* 28.12–28)

"Saint Jerome"
Benvenuto di Giovanni, 15th century
Galleria Sabauda, Turin, Italy

67. **Ecclesiastae: Ecclesiastes, -ae,** m., a Greek word meaning *a member of the assembly, a speaker in the assembly,* hence here perhaps *one who addresses his fellow citizens.* It is intended to translate the Hebrew word "Koheleth," which is said to occur only here in Hebrew literature and may be simply a proper name.

    David: *of David:* the strictly Hebrew names are not inflected, so their case can be determined only from the context. Since scholars agree that the actual date of this book is ca. 200 B.C., Koheleth's claim to be Solomon is a literary convention.

    Hierusalem: *of Jerusalem.*

68. **vanitas:** *vanity* in the sense of *emptiness, futility* (cp. "in vain"), not of *pride, conceit.*

69. **omnia:** sc. **sunt.**

    amplius: modifies **quid,** *what more,* i.e., *what benefit, what profit.*

    universo: here = **omni.**

72. **renascens:** = **renascitur.**

    gyrat: gyrare, *to go around, move in circles;* **spiritus,** here = *wind,* is subj. of all four vbs. in the sent.

    meridiem: here, *the south.*

73. **aquilonem: aquilo,** *north wind, north.*

    lustrans: lustrare, *to move around, circle around (something).*

    pergit: pergere, *to go on, continue, proceed.*

75. **redundat: redundare,** *to overflow.*

77. **saturatur: saturare,** *to satisfy;* i.e., no matter how hard we look or listen, we cannot explain life and the universe.

79. **faciendum est:** a fut. pass. periphrastic with overtones of destiny, *the very thing which shall (must) be done;* i.e., the future repeats the past. There is a fixed round of events; God has predetermined them all; man cannot change them. "To every thing there is a season, and a time to every purpose under the heaven" (*Ecclesiastes* 3.1).

80. **valet:** = **potest,** common in late Lat.

81. **praecessit . . . quae fuerunt:** the antecedent of **quae** is treated as collective sg. subj. of **praecessit,** *whatever things were before us, that has already gone (occurred) before.*

    saeculis: saeculum, *century, generation.*

83. **recordatio:** = **memoria;** the **cor,** *heart,* was regarded as the seat of memory.

    novissimo: the phrase **annus novus** was often used of *the new year* or *the coming year;* similarly **novissimo** here refers to *the distant future.*

84. **Israhel:** *of Israel.*

86. **pessimam:** the point is that God has given humans the power to reason and a desire for knowledge, and yet, despite man's diligence, he is mocked by an inability to understand truly the meaning of life and the universe.

88. **universa:** = **omnia (sunt).**

    perversi: here, *the crooked.*

    difficile: = **difficiliter.**

90. **corde: cor,** *heart.*

91. **sapientia:** ABL. OF SPECIFICATION.

The Futility of Man's Life on Earth

Verba Ecclesiastae, filii David, regis Hierusalem.

"Vanitas vanitatum," dixit Ecclesiastes: "Vanitas vanitatum
et omnia vanitas. Quid habet amplius homo de universo labore
70   suo, quo laborat sub sole? Generatio praeterit, et generatio ad-
venit; terra autem in aeternum stat. Oritur sol, et occidit, et ad
locum suum revertitur ibique renascens. Gyrat per meridiem et
flectitur ad aquilonem; lustrans universa, circuitu pergit spiritus
et in circulos suos regreditur. Omnia flumina intrant in mare, et
75   mare non redundat: ad locum, unde exeunt flumina, revertuntur
ut iterum fluant. Cunctae res difficiles: non potest eas homo
explicare sermone. Non saturatur oculus visu, nec auris auditu
impletur. Quid est quod fuit?—ipsum quod futurum est. Quid
est quod factum est?—ipsum quod faciendum est. Nihil sub
80   sole novum, nec valet quisquam dicere, 'Ecce, hoc recens est.'
Iam enim praecessit in saeculis, quae fuerunt ante nos. Non est
priorum memoria, sed nec eorum quidem quae postea futura
sunt erit recordatio apud eos qui futuri sunt in novissimo.

"Ego Ecclesiastes fui rex Israhel in Hierusalem et proposui
85   in animo meo quaerere et investigare sapienter de omnibus quae
fiunt sub sole. Hanc occupationem pessimam dedit Deus filiis
hominum, ut occuparentur in ea. Vidi cuncta quae fiunt sub
sole, et, ecce, universa vanitas et adflictio spiritus. Perversi dif-
ficile corriguntur, et stultorum infinitus est numerus. Locutus
90   sum in corde meo, dicens, 'Ecce, magnus effectus sum, et
praecessi omnes sapientia qui fuerunt ante me in Hierusalem;
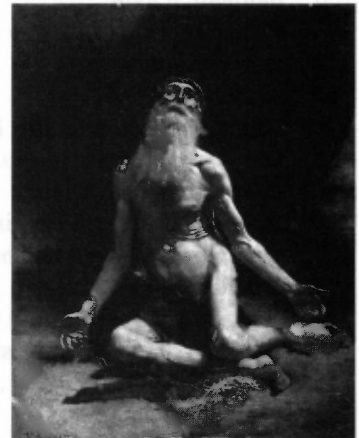
"Job"
Leon Bonnat
1880
Musée Bonnat
Bayonne, France

92.   **contemplata est: contemplari.**
93.   **prudentiam . . . stultitiam (94):** i.e., he sought to understand all life.
94.   **agnovi quod:** *I learned that;* in late Lat. **quod** is regularly employed with either a subjunct. or an indic. vb. to introduce IND. STATE.
95.   **eo quod:** *for the reason that.*
        indignatio: *occasion for indignation;* i.e., in this world there is no guarantee that men will be rewarded according to their deserts, for the righteous often suffer, the wicked sometimes prosper, and the wise man has the same futile end as the fool—death. Though he lacked belief in an after-life where injustices would be corrected, and acknowledges the ugly real-ities of life, the author did not surrender to despair; rather, he said *carpe diem,* observe the golden mean, be wise, and accept the reality of a God and a universe which you cannot fully understand.
96.   **laborem:** here, *sorrow, suffering.*
98.   **vobis:** dat. with **maledicere,** *to insult, curse.*
        calumniantibus: calumniari, *to accuse falsely.*
99.   **percutit: percutere,** *to strike.*
        maxillam: *jaw;* here, *one side of the jaw* (in view of the following **alteram**).
100.   **tibi:** the DAT. OF SEPARATION was often used instead of the abl.
        vestimentum: *clothing,* but here *robe* or some other outergarment, in contrast to **tunicam,** *tunic,* a shirtlike garment worn under the toga or indoors and when working.
101.   **petenti te:** = class. **petenti a te.**
        ne repetas: sc. **ab eo;** note **ne** + pres. subjunct. in the 2nd pers. as a variant for expressing a prohibition, where class. Lat. prose would usually have **noli** + inf., as in the preceding line, or **ne** + perf. subjunct.
102.   **prout:** *just as* (= **ut** + indic.).
        et: with **facite,** = **etiam.**
103.   **vobis:** DAT. OF POSSESSION, with **quae . . . est gratia,** *what thanks do you have,* i.e., *what special regard do you deserve?*
104.   **diligentes se:** *who love them.*
105.   **siquidem:** conj., *if indeed, since, inasmuch as.*
106.   **mutuum:** *a loan.*
108.   **faenerantur: faenerari,** *to lend at interest.*
110.   **merces:** here, *reward.*
        Altissimi: = **Dei.**
        quia: conj., *since;* in late Lat., *that,* common with IND. STATE.
111.   **benignus:** *kind, beneficent.*
        super: prep. + acc., here = *toward.*
        estote: 2nd pers. pl. fut. imper. of **sum,** *you shall be* or simply *be.*
113.   **dimittite:** *let go, release,* hence *forgive.*
114.   **dabitur:** impers. pass.
        confertam et coagitatam (115): vivid terms *crammed full and shaken down,* referring to the measure **(mensuram).**
115.   **supereffluentem:** late Lat., *overflowing.*
        dabunt: sc. **homines.**
        sinum: sinus, *fold, bay gulf; fold (in a garment)* = *pocket, lap, bosom.*

et mens mea contemplata est multa sapienter, et didici.' Dedique
cor meum ut scirem prudentiam, atque doctrinam, erroresque
et stultitiam; et agnovi quod in his quoque esset labor et afflictio
95   spiritus, eo quod in multa sapientia multa sit indignatio—et qui
addit scientiam, addit et laborem." (*Ecclesiastes* 1.1–18)

Thoughts from the Sermon on the Mount

Love your enemies and do good unto others.

Diligite inimicos vestros; bene facite his qui vos oderunt; be-
nedicite maledicentibus vobis; orate pro calumniantibus vos. Et
qui te percutit in maxillam, praebe et alteram. Et ab eo qui au-
100   fert tibi vestimentum, etiam tunicam noli prohibere. Omni autem
petenti te, tribue; et qui aufert quae tua sunt, ne repetas. Et
prout vultis ut faciant vobis homines, et vos facite illis similiter.
Et si diligitis eos qui vos diligunt, quae vobis est gratia?—nam
et peccatores diligentes se diligunt. Et si bene feceritis his qui
105   vobis bene faciunt, quae vobis est gratia?—siquidem et pecca-
tores hoc faciunt. Et si mutuum dederitis his a quibus speratis
recipere, quae gratia est vobis?—nam et peccatores peccatori-
bus faenerantur, ut recipiant aequalia. Verum tamen diligite in-
imicos vestros, et bene facite, et mutuum date, nihil inde speran-
110   tes; et erit merces vestra multa, et eritis filii Altissimi, quia ipse
benignus est super ingratos et malos. Estote ergo misericordes
sicut et Pater vester misericors est. Nolite iudicare, et non iudi-
cabimini; nolite condemnare, et non condemnabimini; dimittite,
et dimittemini; date, et dabitur vobis. Mensuram bonam, con-
115   fertam et coagitatam et supereffluentem, dabunt in sinum ves-

"Sermon on the Mount"
Fra Angelico
15th century
Museo di San Marco
Florence, Italy
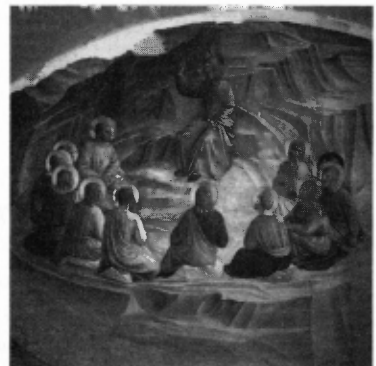
116.   **mensi fueritis:** fut. perf. of **metiri,** *to measure.*
118.   **similitudinem:** here, *parable;* lit., *simile, analogy.*
        numquid: a strengthened form of **num.**
119.   **ambo:** *both,* nom. pl.
        foveam: *pit, ditch.*
120.   **perfectus:** here, *excellent (person).*
121.   **quid:** = **cur.**
        festucam: festuca, *straw.*
122.   **trabem: trabs,** *beam (of wood), stick.*
123.   **sine: sinere,** *to allow,* takes a subjunct. cl., either with or without **ut.**
124.   **hypocrita:** Greek for *actor,* but common in eccl. Lat. in the sense of *hypocrite.*
125.   **ut educas:** IND. QUEST. with **perspicies,** *how to remove.*
129.   **spinis: spina,** *thorn.*
        ficus: acc. pl. of **ficus,** *fig.*
130.   **rubo: rubus,** *bramble bush.*
        vindemiant: vindemiare, *to harvest (grapes).*
        uvam: uva, *grape.*
        thesauro: thesaurus, *treasure, treasury.*
133.   **legis peritus:** i.e., a lawyer; the gen. is used with many adjs., including those
        denoting *knowledge* and *skill.*
        temptans: temptare, *to test, try, attempt.*
        illum: Jesus.
134.   **quid faciendo:** *how;* lit., *by doing what.*
        possidebo: possidere, *to possess, hold.*
135.   **ad eum:** eccl. Lat. for dat. **ei** in class. Lat. after verbs of speaking; cp. the
        regular **dixit illi** in 138–39.
        quomodo: here = **quid.**
141.   **suscipiens:** *answering;* lit., *taking up (the question).*
142.   **in Hiericho:** *into Jericho.*
        incidit: incidere, *to fall.*
        latrones: latro, *robber, bandit.*
        despoliaverunt: despoliare, *to plunder, rob.*
143.   **plagis: plaga,** *blow, wound;* with **inpositis,** freely, *after beating him.*
144.   **ut . . . descenderet:** NOUN CL. OF RESULT with **accidit,** *it happened (that).*

"The Good Samaritan"
Joseph Highmore
1744
Tate Gallery
London, Great Britain

trum; eadem quippe mensura qua mensi fueritis, remetietur vobis.

The beam and the straw.

Dicebat autem illis et similitudinem: Numquid potest cae-
cus caecum ducere? Nonne ambo in foveam cadent? Non est
120 discipulus super magistrum; perfectus autem omnis erit sicut
magister eius. Quid autem vides festucam in oculo fratris tui,
trabem autem quae in oculo tuo est non consideras? Et quo-
modo potes dicere fratri tuo, "Frater, sine eiciam festucam de
oculo tuo," ipse in oculo tuo trabem non videns? Hypocrita,
125 eice primum trabem de oculo tuo, et tunc perspicies ut educas
festucam de oculo fratris tui.

A tree is known by its fruit.

Non est enim arbor bona quae facit fructus malos; neque
arbor mala, faciens fructum bonum. Una quaeque enim arbor
de fructu suo cognoscitur. Neque enim de spinis colligunt ficus,
130 neque de rubo vindemiant uvam. Bonus homo de bono thesau-
ro cordis sui profert bonum, et malus homo de malo profert
malum: ex abundantia enim cordis os loquitur. (*Luke* 6.27–45)

The Good Samaritan

Et, ecce, quidam legis peritus surrexit, temptans illum et di-
cens, "Magister, quid faciendo vitam aeternam possidebo?" At
135 ille dixit ad eum, "In lege quid scriptum est? Quomodo legis?"
Ille respondens dixit, "Diliges Dominum Deum tuum ex toto
corde tuo, et ex tota anima tua, et ex omnibus viribus tuis, et ex
omni mente tua, et proximum tuum sicut te ipsum." Dixitque
illi, "Recte respondisti: hoc fac, et vives." Ille autem volens ius-
140 tificare se ipsum, dixit ad Iesum, "Et quis est meus proximus?"
Suscipiens autem Iesus dixit, "Homo quidam descendebat ab
Hierusalem in Hiericho et incidit in latrones, qui etiam despoli-
averunt eum et, plagis inpositis, abierunt, semivivo relicto. Ac-
cidit autem ut sacerdos quidam descenderet eadem via; et, viso

145. **Levita: Levita, -ae,** m., *a Levite,* an assistant to the priests in charge of the tabernacle.

secus: here, prep. + acc., *beside, along, near.*

146. **pertransiit:** *passed by;* elaborate compounds are common in late and popular Lat.

Samaritanus: a native of Samaria, a district in Palestine; some Jews were hostile toward the Samaritans as being not of Jewish blood.

148. **appropians: appropiare = appropinquare,** *to approach.*

alligavit: alligare, *to bind up.*

infundens: infundere, *to pour (in, on, over).*

oleum: *(olive) oil.*

149. **stabulum:** *tavern, inn.*

150. **altera:** i.e., *the next.*

denarios: the *denarius* was the most common Roman silver coin.

151. **stabulario: stabularius,** the person who ran the **stabulum.**

quodcumque: quicumque, *whoever, whatever.*

supererogaveris: erogare, *to pay out* + **super,** *in addition,* i.e., beyond the two denarii; fut. perf. in a FUT. MORE VIVID CONDITION (introduced by the rel. **quodcumque** rather than by **si**).

152. **cum rediero: cum** is often followed by the indic. when the cl. refers to pres. or fut. time.

154. **vade: vadere,** *to go, rush.*

157. **substantiae:** *substance = property.*

159. **peregre:** adv., *abroad* (**per**+**ager,** i.e., through the fields to another country).

161. **consummasset: = consummavisset,** plpf. subjunct. of **consummare,** *to finish off.*

162. **fames:** *hunger, starvation, famine.*

adhaesit: here, *attached himself to, joined.*

164. **pasceret:** *to feed, tend.*

porcos: porcus, *pig.*

ventrem: venter, *belly, stomach.*

siliquis: siliqua, *husk.*

165. **manducabant: manducare,** *to chew, eat.*

166. **in se . . . reversus:** cp. the Eng. idiom, "having returned to one's senses."

quanti: Cicero would have used **quot.**

171. **adhuc:** adv., *up to this point, still.*

172. **osculatus est: osculari,** *to kiss.*

175. **stolam:** *cloak, robe.*

primam: here, *best.*

induite: induere, *to clothe.*

176. **date . . . in:** instead of the dat., *put . . . on.*

anulum: anulus, *ring.*

calceamenta: calceamentum, *shoe.*

145 illo, praeterivit. Similiter et Levita, cum esset secus locum et
videret eum, pertransiit. Samaritanus autem quidam, iter fa-
ciens, venit secus eum et, videns eum, misericordia motus est.
Et appropians alligavit vulnera eius, infundens oleum et vinum;
et inponens illum in iumentum suum, duxit in stabulum, et

150 curam eius egit. Et altera die protulit duos denarios et dedit
stabulario et ait, 'Curam illius habe; et quodcumque superero-
gaveris, ego cum rediero reddam tibi.' Quis horum trium videtur
tibi proximus fuisse illi qui incidit in latrones?" At ille dixit,
"Qui fecit misericordiam in illum." Et ait illi Iesus, "Vade, et tu

155 fac similiter." (*Luke* 10.25–37)

The Prodigal Son

His departure and dissipation.

Homo quidam habuit duos filios, et dixit adulescentior ex
illis patri, "Pater, da mihi portionem substantiae quae me con-
tingit." Et divisit illis substantiam. Et non post multos dies, con-
gregatis omnibus, adulescentior filius peregre profectus est in

160 regionem longinquam et ibi dissipavit substantiam suam vi-
vendo luxuriose. Et postquam omnia consummasset, facta est
fames valida in regione illa, et ipse coepit egere. Et abiit et ad-
haesit uni civium regionis illius; et misit illum in villam suam ut
pasceret porcos. Et cupiebat implere ventrem suum de siliquis

165 quas porci manducabant, et nemo illi dabat.

The prodigal's return and the father's joy.

In se autem reversus, dixit, "Quanti mercennarii patris mei
abundant panibus; ego autem hic fame pereo! Surgam, et ibo
ad patrem meum, et dicam illi, 'Pater, peccavi in caelum et co-
ram te, et iam non sum dignus vocari filius tuus; fac me sicut

170 unum de mercennariis tuis.'" Et surgens venit ad patrem suum.
Cum autem adhuc longe esset, vidit illum pater ipsius, et miseri-
cordia motus est, et accurrens cecidit supra collum eius, et oscu-
latus est illum. Dixitque ei filius, "Pater peccavi in caelum et
coram te; iam non sum dignus vocari filius tuus." Dixit autem

175 pater ad servos suos, "Cito proferte stolam primam et induite
illum, et date anulum in manum eius et calceamenta in pedes,

177. **vitulum: vitulus,** *calf.*
      saginatum: saginare, *to feed, fatten.*
178. **epulemur: epulari,** *to dine sumptuously, feast.*
181. **symphoniam et chorum:** *music and dancing.*
187. **haedum: haedus,** *young goat, kid.*
189. **meretricibus: meretrix,** *harlot, prostitute.*
194. **purpura:** i.e., expensive *purple cloth.*
      bysso: byssus, *flax, linen.*
195. **mendicus:** *beggar.*
196. **Lazarus:** not the Lazarus who was raised from the dead in *John* 11.1–44.
197. **micis: mica,** *crumb;* class. Lat. would more likely employ an ABL. OF MEANS.
198. **lingebant: lingere,** *to lick.*
      factum est: *it happened, it came to pass;* common in the Vulgate.
199. **Abrahae:** both **Abraham** (indecl.) and **Abraham, -ae,** m.; Abraham was pro-
      genitor of the Hebrews.
200. **sepultus est: sepelire,** *to bury.*
      inferno: infernus, *the lower world = hell* in eccl. Lat.
201. **a longe:** *from far off;* the use of **ab** with advs. is rarely found before late Lat.
203. **miserere: misereri** + gen., *to pity.*
      intinguat: intinguere, *to dip.*
204. **crucior: cruciare,** *to torture, torment,* a powerful word involving the **crux,** the
      cross, as an instrument of death.
205. **recordare: recordari,** *to recollect.*
      quia recepisti: IND. STATE.
206. **consolatur:** usually deponent but here passive.
207. **vos:** i.e., *you (sinners).*
208. **chaos:** n. nom., *vast empty space.*

"Return of the Prodigal Son"
Guercino
17th century
Galleria Borghese
Rome, Italy

et adducite vitulum saginatum et occidite, et manducemus et epulemur, quia hic filius meus mortuus erat et revixit, perierat et inventus est." Et coeperunt epulari.

The brother's jealousy and the father's reply.

180   Erat autem filius eius senior in agro; et cum veniret et ap-
propinquaret domui, audivit symphoniam et chorum, et vocavit
unum de servis et interrogavit quae haec essent. Isque dixit illi,
"Frater tuus venit, et occidit pater tuus vitulum saginatum, quia
salvum illum recepit." Indignatus est autem et nolebat introire.
185 Pater ergo illius egressus, coepit rogare illum. At ille, respon-
dens, dixit patri suo, "Ecce tot annis servio tibi et numquam
mandatum tuum praeterii, et numquam dedisti mihi haedum
ut cum amicis meis epularer; sed postquam filius tuus hic, qui
devoravit substantiam suam cum meretricibus, venit, occidisti
190 illi vitulum saginatum." At ipse dixit illi, "Fili, tu semper mecum
es, et omnia mea tua sunt; epulari autem et gaudere oportebat,
quia frater tuus hic mortuus erat et revixit, perierat et inventus
est." (*Luke* 15.11–32)

The Rich Man and the Beggar Lazarus

Homo quidam erat dives, et induebatur purpura et bysso, et
195 epulabatur cotidie splendide. Et erat quidam mendicus, nomine
Lazarus, qui iacebat ad ianuam eius, ulceribus plenus, cupiens
saturari de micis quae cadebant de mensa divitis; sed et canes
veniebant et lingebant ulcera eius. Factum est autem ut more-
retur mendicus et portaretur ab angelis in sinum Abrahae. Mor-
200 tuus est autem et dives, et sepultus est in inferno. Elevans autem
oculos suos, cum esset in tormentis, videbat Abraham a longe et
Lazarum in sinu eius; et ipse, clamans, dixit, "Pater Abraham,
miserere mei et mitte Lazarum ut intinguat extremum digiti sui
in aquam ut refrigeret linguam meam, quia crucior in hac
205 flamma." Et dixit illi Abraham, "Fili, recordare quia recepisti
bona in vita tua, et Lazarus similiter mala; nunc autem hic con-
solatur, tu vero cruciaris. Et in his omnibus, inter nos et vos
chaos magnum firmatum est ut hi qui volunt hinc transire ad

209. **inde:** adv, *thence, from there.*
   huc: adv., *to this place.*
   transmeare: *to cross over.*
212. **Mosen:** acc. of **Moses,** the Hebrew prophet and lawgiver who led the Israel-
   ites from Egypt.
215. **neque:** here, *not even.*
218. **iusti:** here, *righteous,* in their observance of religious ritual.
   aspernabantur: aspernari, *to despise.*
   parabolam: parabola, *comparison, parable.*
219. **Pharisaeus:** *a Pharisee;* the Pharisees, a Jewish sect that insisted on a strict
   interpretation and observation of the law of Moses, were sometimes con-
   demned for their self-righteous attitudes and disdain of those outside
   their sect.
220. **publicanus:** *a tax-collector,* here a native agent of a Roman company collect-
   ing taxes for Rome; because of their association with outsiders and their
   often extortionate practices, the **publicani** were commonly despised.
221. **raptores:** *snatchers* = *robbers.*
222. **velut:** conj., *as, just as, as if.*
   ieiuno: ieiunare, *to fast.*
223. **decimas:** sc. **partes,** *tenth parts, tithes.*
224. **nec:** the double negative, with **nolebat,** is emphatic, *was not even willing.*
   percutiebat: percutere, *to strike.*
225. **propitius:** *gracious, kind.*
226. **iustificatus:** *justified,* i.e., *forgiven.*
   ab illo: *rather than that man.*
   exaltat: exaltare, *to raise on high, exalt;* late and eccl. Lat.
227. **humiliabitur: humiliare,** *to humble, humiliate;* late Lat.

"The Story of Moses"
Raphael, 16th century
Logge, Vatican Palace, Vatican State

vos non possint, neque inde huc transmeare." Et ait, "Rogo ergo
210   te, pater, ut mittas eum in domum patris mei—habeo enim
quinque fratres—ut testetur illis, ne et ipsi veniant in locum
hunc tormentorum." Et ait illi Abraham, "Habent Mosen et
prophetas; audiant illos." At ille dixit, "Non, pater Abraham:
sed si quis ex mortuis ierit ad eos, paenitentiam agent." Ait
215   autem illi, "Si Mosen et prophetas non audiunt, neque, si quis
ex mortuis resurrexerit, credent." (*Luke* 16.19–31)

Hypocrisy and Sincerity

Dixit autem et ad quosdam, qui in se confidebant tamquam
iusti et aspernabantur ceteros, parabolam istam: Duo homines
ascenderunt in templum ut orarent, unus Pharisaeus et alter
220   publicanus. Pharisaeus, stans, haec apud se orabat, "Deus, gra-
tias ago tibi, quia non sum sicut ceteri hominum—raptores, in-
iusti, adulteri, velut etiam hic publicanus. Ieiuno bis in sabbato;
decimas do omnium quae possideo." Et publicanus, a longe
stans, nolebat nec oculos ad caelum levare; sed percutiebat pec-
225   tus suum, dicens, "Deus, propitius esto mihi peccatori." Dico
vobis, descendit hic iustificatus in domum suam ab illo, quia
omnis qui se exaltat, humiliabitur, et qui se humiliat, exaltabi-
tur. (*Luke* 18.9–14)

"St. Jerome Writing"
Caravaggio, 17th century
Galleria Borghese, Rome, Italy

MEDIEVAL LATIN

Although the western Roman empire lapsed into political instability in the fifth century of our era, the influence of Rome persisted, even into our own day of course, and Latin remained the primary language of church literature and much of secular literature throughout the Middle Ages and into the Renaissance of the 14th–16th centuries. Medieval Latin, it should be said at the outset, was by no means merely an anemic or imitative extension of its classical parent. Rather, in its vibrant admixture of classical and vulgar Latin (encountered in the previous unit on Jerome's Vulgate), the language became the lingua franca of the ecclesiastical world and the intellectual secular world in the fields of literature, including widely various and often innovative forms in prose and poetry, of religion and philosophy, of politics and diplomacy and law, of education, and of science.

A rich variety of style and expression developed over the centuries and in the many different regions of chiefly western and central Europe where the language continued to be used alongside, and often under the influence of, the local vernacular. This variety is well represented by the selections in this book, which span a period of about 600 years, ranging from the Venerable Bede's accounts in the 8th century of Pope Gregory's mission in England and the poet Caedmon's inspired hymns, to the allegorizing "Tale of Three Caskets" (a source for Shakespeare's *Merchant of Venice*) from the 14th-century *Gesta Romanorum*. Included also are three songs—one a religious meditation on the vanity of human life, one a sprightly celebration of the return of springtime and young love, and the third a raucous drinking song—from the 13th-century *Carmina Burana* (made famous by the cantata of the same name first produced by the German composer Carl Orff in 1937), as well as three of the most famous medieval hymns, from the 12th and 13th centuries, Stephen Langton's reverent *Veni, Sancte Spiritus,* the profoundly sorrowful *Stabat Mater,* and Thomas of Celano's hypnotic prayer on Judgment Day, the *Dies Irae,* which was early on incorporated as a sequence in the requiem mass and later included in arrangements of the requiem composed by Mozart, Verdi, and others.

Although there were many changes and local variations in vocabulary, orthography, pronunciation, and grammar, medieval Latin remained more stable than one might have expected over the 1,000 years of its history from roughly A.D. 500 to 1500, thanks in particular to its

preservation by churchmen in Rome and in monasteries throughout Europe. For the selections presented below, classical spelling has been followed, and the meanings of new words, as well as non-classical meanings for classical words, are provided in the notes. Grammatical differences are also pointed out in the notes, generally at the first occurrence or two; following are the commonest variances from classical Latin to be encountered in the readings (some of them already seen in the preceding selections from the Vulgate and many of them approximating the syntax of modern European languages—a fact that often makes for easier reading and comprehension): briefer, less complex sentences (students will be relieved!); indirect statement introduced by *quia, quod,* or *ut,* with either an indicative or subjunctive verb; use of *quod* to introduce purpose and relative clauses; frequent use of the indicative in place of the subjunctive, and occasionally the opposite; use of *debere* and *habere* as auxiliary verbs (indicating, respectively, futurity and obligatory action); use of *sum* as an auxiliary in so-called "analytical" (periphrastic) verb forms such as *eram manens* for *manebam;* increased range of uses for infinitives, e.g., in place of *ut* + subjunctive; use of *non* for *ne;* variance in case uses and gender; frequent use of prepositional phrases in place of simple case uses (e.g., *per* + accusative instead of ablative of means or *de* + ablative instead of the prepositionless ablative of description); and non-reflexive use of *suus/sui.*

Finally, since all these passages, especially the verse selections, should be read aloud, students should note the relatively few major differences between classical and medieval (or ecclesiastical) pronunciation. First, the rules for accent are largely the same; occasionally the accent was shifted to suit a poem's meter, which was accentual (qualitative) not quantitative, as explained in the notes. The consonants *c* and *g* were pronounced soft before the vowels *e* and *i,* as in *agito* ("ajito," like English "agitate") and *cetera* ("chaytera"); *v* was pronounced as in English, not as a "w"; and the diphthongs *ae* and *oe* were pronounced as English long "a," as in *quae* ("kway").

1. **praetereunda:** sc. **est.**

    opinio: here, *story.*

    Gregorio: after living some years in his own monastery in Rome, Gregory (ca. 540–604) was called to be Pope Gregory I in A.D. 590; in 597 he sent to the pagan Anglo-Saxons in England Augustine (the Lesser), who established a monastery at Canterbury and made it the base for missionary work throughout England.

2. **quia ... multi ... confluxissent et ... Gregorium ... vidisse (5): dicunt** is followed by two IND. STATES., one a **quia** *(that)* cl. + subjunct. typical of med. Lat. and the other an acc. + inf. construction usual in class. Lat.

3. **mercatoribus: mercator,** *merchant.*

    venalia: *for sale, to be sold.*

4. **fuissent conlata:** = **essent conlata.**

6. **venusti:** *charming.*

7. **egregia:** *unusual, remarkable;* note the combination of ABL. OF DESCRIPTION here with the GEN. OF DESCRIPTION in the preceding phrase.

8. **dictum ... est:** impers. pass.

    quia: sc. **adlati essent.**

9. **incolae: incola,** *inhabitant.*

    aspectus: *appearance, aspect;* GEN. OF DESCRIPTION.

    rursus: or **rursum,** adv., *again.*

10. **insulani: insulanus,** *islander;* sc. **essent.**

    paganis: lit., *belonging to a* **pagus** *(village)* = *rustic,* and hence *pagan* (because the old pre-Christian religion survived longest among the country people).

11. **quod:** commonly used in med. Lat., like **quia** (above, line 2), to introduce a subjunct. vb. in IND. STATE.

12. **intimo:** *innermost.*

    corde: cor, *heart.*

    suspiria: suspirium, *sigh.*

    pro: interj., + voc., *oh, ah.*

13. **lucidi:** *bright, shining.*

    tenebrarum: tenebrae, pl., *shadows, darkness;* with **auctor** = the Devil.

14. **possidet: possidere,** *to possess.*

    gratia: here, *grace.*

    frontispicii: frontispicium, *exterior, appearance.*

15. **gestat: gestare,** *to carry about, have.*

16. **vocabulum:** *name.*

18. **angelorum:** depends on **coheredes.**

19. **decet:** impers., *it is proper, fitting.*

    coheredes: coheres, *co-heir.*

20. **Deiri:** *Deirans,* residents of Deira, a kingdom of northern England settled by Angles and encompassing parts of Yorkshire, Northumbria, and East Anglia.

21. **eruti: eruere,** *to pluck out, rescue;* sc. **sunt.**

22. **misericordiam: misericordia,** *mercy.*

THE VENERABLE BEDE

The Venerable Bede (ca. 672–735), a devout English monk and famed scholar and teacher, is best known for his five-volume Historia Ecclesiastica Gentis Anglorum *("Ecclesiastical History of the English People"), which earned him the title of "father of English history." Working at a time when Latin was studied primarily for the sake of reading and understanding the Scriptures and the Church Fathers, he wrote clear and effective, if not entirely classical, Latin.*

Gregory's Interest in British Missions
(Bede *Historia Ecclesiastica* 2.1, excerpts)

Gregory inquires about the provenience of some handsome slaves on sale in the market.

Nec silentio praetereunda opinio quae de beato Gregorio traditione maiorum ad nos usque perlata est. Dicunt quia die quadam cum, advenientibus nuper mercatoribus, multa venalia in forum fuissent conlata, multi ad emendum confluxissent, et
5   ipsum Gregorium inter alios advenisse ac vidisse inter alia pueros venales positos, candidi corporis ac venusti vultus, capillorum quoque forma egregia. Quos cum adspiceret interrogavit, ut aiunt, de qua regione vel terra essent adlati. Dictumque est quia de Britannia insula, cuius incolae talis essent aspectus. Rursus
10   interrogavit utrum idem insulani Christiani an paganis adhuc erroribus essent implicati. Dictum est quod essent pagani. At ille, intimo ex corde longa trahens suspiria, "Heu, pro dolor!" inquit, "quod tam lucidi vultus homines tenebrarum auctor possidet tantaque gratia frontispicii mentem ab interna gratia
15   vacuam gestat."

Learning that they are Angles, Gregory puns on their names.

Rursus ergo interrogavit quod esset vocabulum gentis illius. Responsum est quod Angli vocarentur. At ille, "Bene," inquit, "nam et angelicam habent faciem et tales angelorum in caelis decet esse coheredes. Quod habet nomen ipsa provincia de qua
20   isti sunt adlati?" Responsum est quod Deiri vocarentur idem provinciales. At ille, "Bene," inquit, "Deiri; 'de ira' eruti, et ad misericordiam Christi vocati. Rex provinciae illius quomodo

23. **Aelle:** *Aelle,* the king who founded Deira in 559 and ruled until his death in 588.

  adludens: adludere, *to jest at, play with, play on.*
24. **alleluia:** interj., *praise Jehovah, hallelujah.*
26. **pontificem: pontifex,** *pontiff, pope.*

  sedis: sedes, *seat;* med., here, *see* (the official seat of a bishop or other church official).
28. **verbi ministros:** here, *ministers of the Word* (of God).
29. **converteretur:** sc. **Britannia;** REL. CL. OF PURPOSE.

  se . . . paratum esse: IND. STATE. with an understood speech vb.

  in hoc opus . . . perficiendum (30): *to carry out the task.*
31. **papae: papa,** *bishop, pope.*

  quod: = **et hoc.**

  dum: here with a combined force of circumstance *(when)* and concession *(although),* like Eng. *while* when not used in a strictly temporal sense.
34. **pontificatus:** gen., *of the pontificate.*

  functus est: fungi, + abl., *to perform, discharge, complete.*
35. **praedicatores: praedicator,** *preacher.*
36. **fructificaret: fructificare,** *to bear fruit.*
38. **monasterio:** at Streaneshalch (modern Whitby, in Yorkshire), a monastery of both nuns and monks that became one of the major religious centers of northern England during this period.

  abbatissae: abbatissa, *abbess,* i.e., St. Hilda (614–680), founder of the abbey at Streaneshalch.
39. **insignis:** *distinguished.*

  pietati: pietas, *piety* in the med. Christian sense of the word.
40. **interpretes: interpres,** *expounder, translator.*
41. **pusillum:** *a little* (time).
42. **compunctione: compunctio,** *humility.*
44. **saeculi: saeculum,** med. Lat., *the world.*

  accensi: accendere, *to set on fire;* sc. **sunt.**
45. **et:** = **etiam.**
47. **non ab hominibus neque per hominem:** *not by men nor through the agency of a human being* (i.e., one through whom God worked), *but by direct divine revelation.*

  institutus: here, *instructed.*
48. **divinitus:** adv., *divinely* (i.e., directly by God).

  gratis: abl. as adv., *gratis, for nothing,* i.e., as a direct gift of God and without training.
49. **nil . . . frivoli et supervacui poematis (49):** *no trifling and unnecessary poem.*
50. **tantummodo:** adv., *only.*

appellatur?" Responsum est quod Aelle diceretur. At ille, adlu-
dens ad nomen, ait: "Alleluia, laudem Dei creatoris illis in parti-
25   bus oportet cantari."

*Some time later Gregory, when Pope, was able to send missionaries to
Britain.*

Accedensque ad pontificem Romanae et apostolicae sedis
(nondum enim erat ipse pontifex factus), rogavit ut genti An-
glorum in Britanniam aliquos verbi ministros, per quos ad
Christum converteretur, mitteret; se ipsum paratum esse in hoc
30   opus, Domino cooperante, perficiendum, si tamen apostolico
papae hoc ut fieret placeret. Quod dum perficere non posset,
quia, etsi pontifex concedere illi quod petierat voluit, non tamen
cives Romani ut tam longe ab urbe secederet potuere permit-
tere, mox, ut ipse pontificatus officio functus est, perfecit opus
35   diu desideratum, alios quidem praedicatores mittens, sed ipse
praedicationem ut fructificaret suis exhortationibus ac preci-
bus adiuvans.

Caedmon's Anglo-Saxon Compositions on the Scriptures
(Bede *Historia Ecclesiastica* 4.22)

*Caedmon, a brother in the monastery of St. Hilda at Streaneshalch
(now Whitby), was blessed by God with the ability to turn religious
teachings into verse.*

In huius monasterio abbatissae fuit frater quidam divina
gratia specialiter insignis, quia carmina religioni et pietati apta
40   facere solebat, ita ut, quidquid ex divinis litteris per interpretes
disceret, hoc ipse post pusillum verbis poeticis maxima suavi-
tate et compunctione compositis, in sua, id est Anglorum, lin-
gua proferret. Cuius carminibus multorum saepe animi ad con-
temptum saeculi et appetitum sunt vitae caelestis accensi. Et
45   quidem et alii post illum in gente Anglorum religiosa poemata
facere temptabant; sed nullus eum aequiperare potuit. Namque
ipse non ab hominibus neque per hominem institutus canendi
artem didicit, sed divinitus adiutus gratis canendi donum ac-
cepit. Unde nil umquam frivoli et supervacui poematis facere
50   potuit, sed ea tantummodo quae ad religionem pertinent religi-

51. **siquidem:** conj., *since, inasmuch as.*
    habitu: habitus, *appearance, dress, clothes;* with **saeculari,** *secular dress = secular life.*
52. **provectioris:** *rather advanced.*
    constitutus: constituere, *to place, position;* sc. **erat.**
53. **aliquando:** adv., *at any time.*
    nonnumquam: adv., *sometimes.*
    convivio: convivium, *dinner, banquet.*
54. **laetitiae: laetitia,** *entertainment.*
    per ordinem: *in turn.*
    deberent: often used as an auxiliary vb. in med. Lat. (cp. **habes,** below, line 65); for **cantare deberent** class. Lat. might simply have **cantarent.**
55. **citharam: cithara,** at this time a variety of *harp.*
56. **repedabat: repedare,** *to go back, withdraw, retire.*
57. **dum:** here, *when.*
58. **iumentorum: iumentum,** *pack animal, farm animal.*
59. **competenti:** *appropriate.*
61. **Caedmon:** *Caedmon,* a seventh-century churchman and the first Old English Christian poet, adapted Anglo-Saxon verse to religious themes.
62. **et:** = **etiam.**
    ideo: adv., *therefore, for that reason.*
65. **habes:** = **debes;** this common med. Lat. usage is equivalent to Eng. "you have (to) . . . ."
66. **creaturarum: creatura,** *creature, creation.*
67. **in:** *to.*
70. **quomodo:** here exclamatory, not interrog., *in what a manner!*
71. **exstitit: exsistere,** *to step forth, appear, emerge, exist, be.*
72. **culmine: culmen,** *top, summit.*
    tecti: tectum, *roof, home;* here, the home of all mankind, i.e., *the world.*
75. **ad verbum:** *to a word, literally.*
76. **detrimento: detrimentum,** *loss (of), injury (to).*
77. **cuncta:** = **omnia.**
79. **carminis:** with **plura . . . verba.**
80. **mane:** adv., *in the morning.*
    vilicum: vilicus, *steward, reeve.*
83. **universorum:** *of all together.*

osam eius linguam decebant. Siquidem in habitu saeculari us-
que ad tempora provectioris aetatis constitutus, nil carminum
aliquando didicerat. Unde nonnumquam in convivio, cum esset
laetitiae causa decretum ut omnes per ordinem cantare debe-
55   rent, ille, ubi appropinquare sibi citharam cernebat, surgebat a
media cena et egressus ad suam domum repedabat.

*Caedmon is inspired by a vision in a dream to compose holy verse and
to sing.*

Quod dum tempore quodam faceret, et relicta domu con-
vivii egressus esset ad stabula iumentorum, quorum ei custodia
nocte illa erat delegata, ibique hora competenti membra dedis-
60   set sopori, adstitit ei quidam per somnium, eumque salutans ac
suo appellans nomine, "Caedmon," inquit, "canta mihi aliquid."
At ille respondens, "Nescio," inquit, "cantare; nam et ideo de
convivio egressus huc secessi, quia cantare non poteram." Rur-
sum ille qui cum eo loquebatur, "Attamen," ait, "mihi cantare
65   habes." "Quid," inquit, "debeo cantare?" Et ille, "Canta," in-
quit, "principium creaturarum." Quo accepto responso, statim
ipse coepit cantare in laudem Dei conditoris versus quos num-
quam audierat, quorum iste est sensus: "Nunc laudare debemus
auctorem regni caelestis, potentiam creatoris et consilium illius,
70   facta Patris gloriae. Quomodo ille, cum sit aeternus Deus, om-
nium miraculorum auctor exstitit, qui primo filiis hominum
caelum pro culmine tecti, dehinc terram custos humani generis
omnipotens creavit!" (Hic est sensus, non autem ordo ipse verbo-
rum, quae dormiens ille canebat; neque enim possunt carmina,
75   quamvis optime composita, ex alia in aliam linguam ad verbum
sine detrimento sui decoris ac dignitatis transferri.) Exsurgens
autem a somno, cuncta quae dormiens cantaverat memoriter
retinuit, et eis mox plura in eundem modum verba Deo digni
carminis adiunxit.

Caedmon's verses are judged to be the product of divine inspiration.

80   Veniensque mane ad vilicum qui sibi praeerat, quid doni
percepisset indicavit atque, ad abbatissam perductus, iussus est,
multis doctioribus viris praesentibus, indicare somnium et di-
cere carmen ut universorum iudicio quid vel unde esset quod

84. **probaretur:** the subj. is **quid (esset) vel unde esset (id) quod referebat.**
86. **Honorius:** Roman emperor of the West, A.D. 395–423; but the numerous stories of Rome's emperors in the **Gesta Romanorum** are largely or entirely fabricated.

    valde: adv., *very, very much.*

    unicum: *an only.*
88. **unum:** = **quendam,** or simply the indef. article *a,* as often in med. Lat.
89. **guerram: guerra,** med. = **bellum.**

    cum . . . sustinebat (90): in med. Lat. **cum** circumstantial and causal may be used with the indic. rather than the subjunct.
90. **damna: damnum,** *damage, injury, loss.*
92. **si . . . possem . . . obtinerem (93):** in med. Lat. the impf. subjunct. can be used, as here, in a fut. less vivid condition and, as in class. Lat., in a pres. contrary to fact.

    per aliquam viam: = **aliquo modo;** this is an example of the common use in med. Lat. of prep. phrases to replace cases without a prep. in class. Lat.
93. **copulare:** *to join, unite.*
94. **ut . . . concederet (95):** actually a JUSSIVE NOUN CL. depending on the idea of *asking* implicit in **misit nuntios.**

    saltem: adv., *at least.*

    trewgam: trewga, *truce* (a Germanic word, as the **w** shows).
95. **quod:** can in med. Lat. introduce a PURPOSE CL., as here.
97. **filiam eius filio suo:** the normal possessives are reversed here (**eius** for **suam,** and **suo** for **eius**), a common irregularity in med. Lat.
98. **habeam:** for **habebo.**
99. **decessum: decessus,** *departure, death.*
100. **destinetur: destinare,** here, *to bequeath.*

    conventione: conventio, *agreement, compact.*
101. **charta:** *paper, document.*

    sigillata est: sigillare, *to seal, mark with a seal.*

    vale . . . fecit: med. Lat. for **vale dixit.**
102. **parari fecit:** for class. **fecit ut pararetur.**
103. **quia:** usually + indic. in class. Lat.

The Venerable Bede

referebat probaretur. Visumque est omnibus caelestem ei a Do-
85   mino con cessam esse gratiam.

GESTA ROMANORUM

The Gesta Romanorum *("Deeds of the Romans") is an early 14th-century collection
of medieval exempla, brief narratives designed both to entertain and to edify, each
containing some spiritual message that is explicated in an allegorizing postscript.
Drawn from a variety of Roman, Greek, and near eastern sources, the stories were
enormously popular in the late Middle Ages among churchmen and general readers
alike and were a source for such later writers as Chaucer and Shakespeare. Perhaps
compiled in England, but of unknown authorship, the collection is loosely structured,
the style uneven, and the Latinity far removed from that of the classical period.*

The Story of the Three Caskets

*The emperor Honorius makes a truce with a certain king and agrees to
the marriage of the king's daughter to his own son on two conditions.*

Honorius regnavit, dives valde, qui unicum filium habebat,
quem multum dilexit. Fama eius imperatoris per mundum vola-
bat quod in omnibus probus erat et iustus. Tamen contra unum
regem guerram habebat et eum devastabat. Rex iste, cum mul-
90   tas persecutiones ac damna infinita ab eo sustinebat, tandem
cogitabat, "Tantum unicam filiam habeo et adversarius meus
unicum filium. Si per aliquam viam filiam meam possem filio
suo in matrimonium copulare, pacem perpetuam obtinerem."
Misit sollemnes nuntios ad imperatorem, ut saltem ei trewgam
95   ad tempus concederet quod cum eo personaliter loqui posset.
Imperator, habito consilio, trewgam unius anni concessit. Rex
vero personaliter ad eum accessit et filiam eius filio suo obtulit.
At iste, "Non faciam nisi duo habeam. Primo ut tua filia sit
virgo; secundo ut post decessum tuum totum regnum tuum filio
100   meo destinetur." At ille, "Bene placet mihi." Statim de conventi-
one charta sigillata est. Rex vale imperatori fecit.

The ship carrying the king's daughter is swallowed by a whale.

Cum autem ad regnum suum venerat, navem parari fecit,
quia oporteret ut filia sua per mare ad imperatorem transiret.

104.   **facta:** = **parata,** *readied.*

105.   **thesaurum: thesaurus,** *treasure,* i.e., her dowry.

106.   **dominabus:** *ladies;* cp. **filiabus,** used to distinguish between the f. and the m., which otherwise would have the same form **(dominis).**

      cete: cete, -i, *whale.* The word, which comes from Greek and in the form **cete** looks like a Greek pl., is here nom. m. sg., equivalent to the class. Lat. **cetus;** in line 119 and elsewhere **cete** is treated as n. sg., an inconsistency characteristic of much of med. Lat. (though this particular word had a number of variants in class. Lat. as well).

107.   **ei:** the ambiguous antecedent is the **navis.**

      deglutire: *to devour.*

108.   **praecipue:** adv., *especially.*

110.   **accidit . . . quod . . . dormierunt (111):** for class. **accidit . . . ut . . . dormirent.**

110.   **triduum: triduus,** *period of three days.*

      fessi: *weary.*

113.   **ventre: venter,** *belly.*

115.   **estote:** fut. imper. of **esse.**

      confortati: med. Lat. (especially in the Vulgate), **confortare,** *to strengthen greatly.*

116.   **salvabit: salvare,** med. Lat. for **servare.**

117.   **erimus salvati:** = **salvabimur.**

119.   **cete:** here, n. acc.

      quilibet: *anyone,* here perhaps = **quisque.**

      sicut profundius possit: *just as deeply as he can.*

      ista duo (120): i.e., **ignem et vulnera.**

120.   **natabit: natare,** *to swim.*

121.   **per omnia:** i.e., in all its details, in every respect.

122.   **impleverunt: implere,** *to fill up, complete, accomplish.*

      perrexit: pergere, *to go on, proceed.*

123.   **iuxta:** prep. + acc., *close to, near.*

      quam: = **hanc.**

      erat . . . manens: = **manebat;** the use of **erat** as an auxiliary is quite comparable to the Eng. formation *was waiting,* just one example of the many ways in which the grammar of med. Lat. comes to approximate that of Eng.; cp. **erimus salvati,** above, line 117.

124.   **versus:** = **adversus,** prep. + acc., *toward.*

      hinc inde: *here and there, back and forth.*

126.   **cum instrumentis:** ABL. OF MEANS; for the prep., see note on line 92.

      percutere: *to strike.*

127.   **sonitum: sonitus,** *sound.*

128.   **suaviter:** lit., *sweetly* = *gently.*

      latus: n., *side.*

      aperite: aperire, *to open.*

129.   **de . . . sanguine:** here again class. Lat. might use an ABL. OF DESCRIPTION without the prep.

      generoso: *noble.*

Facta nave et omnibus necessariis paratis, puella intravit, ha-
105   bens thesaurum secum in magna copia ac milites quinque cum
dominabus et ancillis. Cum autem per mare navigarent, cete
grandis ei occurrebat in mare et navem deglutire volebat. Nau-
tae hoc percipientes timuerunt valde et praecipue puella. Nau-
tae vero ignem copiosum fecerunt et die ac nocte vigilabant.
110   Sed accidit post triduum quod, fessi propter magnas vigilias,
dormierunt. Cete subito navem cum omnibus contentis de-
glutivit.

The girl and her attendants attack the whale and force it to go ashore.

Puella, cum intellexit quod in ventre ceti esset, fortiter cla-
mabat. Ad cuius clamorem omnes excitati sunt. Nautae vero
115   puellae dixerunt ac militibus, "Carissimi, estote confortati; Deus
nos salvabit. Habeamus bonum consilium quia sumus in ventre
ceti." Ait puella, "Audite consilium meum et erimus salvati."
Qui dixerunt, "Dic." Quae ait, "Accendamus ignem in magna
copia et cete quilibet vulneret sicut profundius possit et per ista
120   duo mortem recipiet et statim ad terram natabit et sic per gra-
tiam Dei evadere poterimus." Illi vero consilium puellae per om-
nia impleverunt. Cete, cum mortem sensit, ad terram perrexit.

They are rescued out of the whale and sent to the emperor.

Iuxta quam terram erat quidam miles manens, qui, cena
facta, versus litus maris ambulavit. Cum ergo cete hinc inde na-
125   tare vidisset et terrae appropinquare, servos vocat et cete ad ter-
ram traxit. Qui inceperunt cum instrumentis percutere. Puella,
cum sonitum audisset, loquebatur pro omnibus et ait, "Caris-
simi, suaviter percutite et latus ceti aperite; hic sumus in eius
ventre, filii bonorum virorum de generoso sanguine." Miles, cum
130   vocem puellae audisset, ait servis suis, "Carissimi, latus ceti ape-

131. **lateat: latere,** *to lie hidden, hide.*
     interius: = **intus.**
     apertum fuisset: = **apertum esset.**
132. **immo quasi:** *nearly.*
133. **ceteri alii: alii** is pleonastic and would not be used with **ceteri** in class. Lat.
     cuius . . . esset: IND. QUEST.
       et . . . esse deberet (134): *and that she was going to be,* IND. STATE. introduced
         by **quod** (understood); **deberet,** as often in med. Lat., functions simply
         as a temporal auxiliary vb., indicating futurity (see above on line 54).
134. **aliquot:** indecl. adj., *several.*
135. **donec:** conj., *as long as, until,* + indic. or, indicating anticipation or pur-
         pose, subjunct.
     statum: i.e., *state of health.*
     recuperabant: recuperare, *to recover, regain;* the impf. here conveys simply a
         general past idea.
140. **in maritum:** *as a husband.*
141. **fecit fieri:** = class. **fecit ut fierent;** i.e., he had them brought forth.
     cophinos: cophinus, *chest, casket;* this motif of the three caskets is adapted
         by Shakespeare in the *Merchant of Venice,* act 2, scene 7.
     lapidibus: lapis, *stone.*
143. **meruit: merere,** *to deserve, earn, merit.*
144. **ossibus: os,** *bone.*
145. **ex omni:** we would say, not *from every,* but *in every.*
146. **elegerit: eligere,** *to choose, select.*
147. **plumbo: plumbum,** *lead.*
150. **anuli: anulus,** *ring;* the vb. is sg. because the rings are viewed as a set.
151. **quemcumque: quicumque,** *whoever, whichever.*
153. **intime:** adv., *closely, intimately, thoughtfully.*
154. **illo:** i.e., God.
155. **deficiam: deficere,** *to fail,* i.e., in one's responsibilities to another, a sense that
         in class. Lat. regularly takes the dat. or **ad** (vs. **de** here).
157. **exterius:** adv., *on the outside.*
     penitus: adv., *inside, deeply, thoroughly, entirely.*
159. **quod:** = **ut.**

rite et videamus quid lateat interius." Cum vero apertum fuisset, puella primo exivit immo quasi mortua, deinde milites et ceteri alii. Coepit narrare cuius filia esset et uxor filii imperatoris esse deberet. Hoc audiens, miles eam per aliquot dies cum tota
135 familia secum retinuit, donec perfectum statum suum recuperabant. Post hoc puellam cum muneribus ad imperatorem misit cum tota familia.

The emperor tests the king's daughter by requiring her to choose one of three caskets.

Imperator, cum eam vidisset, ait, "Carissima filia, bene tibi sit nunc et in perpetuum. Sed tibi dico, filia, antequam filium
140 meum habueris in maritum, te probabo per unum actum." Statim fecit fieri tres cophinos. Primus erat de auro purissimo et lapidibus pretiosis. Et erat talis superscriptio super cophinum: "Qui me aperiet, in me invenerit quod meruit." Et totus cophinus erat plenus ossibus mortuorum. Secundus erat de argento purissimo,
145 plenus gemmis ex omni parte, qui talem superscriptionem habebat: "Qui me elegerit, in me invenerit quod natura dedit." Iste cophinus terra plenus erat. Tertius cophinus erat de plumbo, habens superscriptionem talem: "Potius eligo hic esse et requiescere, quam in thesauris regis permanere." In cophino isto erat
150 tres anuli pretiosi. Tunc ait imperator puellae, "Carissima, hic sunt tres cophini; eligas quemcumque volueris; et si bene elegeris, filium meum in maritum obtinebis."

Pondering the inscriptions, she makes the right choice and marries the emperor's son.

Illa vero tres cophinos intime respexit et ait in corde suo, "Deus, qui omnia videt, det mihi gratiam sic eligendi ut de illo
155 pro quo multum laboravi non deficiam." Quae primum cophinum tetigit et scripturam legit: "Qui me," etc. Illa cogitabat, "Cophinus exterius est pretiosus, sed quid interius lateat penitus ignoro; ideo eum eligere nolo." Deinde secundum legit, etc. Quae ait, "Numquam natura dedit quod filia patris mei deberet
160 copulari filio imperatoris. Et ideo," etc. Tertium cophinum legit, dicens, "Melius est mihi cum filio regis requiescere quam in thesauris patris mei." Et alta voce clamabat, "Istum cophinum ter-

165. **unum . . . tertium:** class. Lat. would have nom. m. adjs., to agree with **anulus.**
     desponsationis: desponsatio, *betrothal, engagement.*
166. **fecit:** here, *he prepared.*
     nuptias: nuptiae, pl., *nuptials, wedding.*
168. **moralitas:** *moral interpretation;* the stories in the *Gesta Romanorum* generally
     conclude with an allegorizing interpretation.
169. **in tantum:** idiom, *to such a degree, to such an extent.*
     quod . . . erat destructa (170): in med. Lat. RESULT CLS. are often introduced
     by **quod** and have an indic. vb.
170. **peccatum:** *sin.*
171. **dominum:** i.e., the **rex** in the story.
174. **ceteris:** i.e., the **dominabus et ancillis** mentioned above.
175. **diabolus:** *the devil.*
178. **eum:** the **diabolus.**
180. **confessores: confessor,** *one who confesses Christianity, a Christian.*
182. **curiam: curia,** originally *senate house,* here = *the court.*
     quod . . . praesentantur (183): i.e., what they are, what they represent.
183. **ei:** = **puellae** = **animae.**
186. **merui:** i.e., *I incurred, have been guilty of.*
     quod est dolendum: *which (circumstance) is to be lamented.*
     vae: sc. **homini,** *woe to the man.*
187. **intellegitur:** strictly this should be pl. to agree with **sapientes,** but even Eng.
     allows the idiom *is understood the wise men.*
188. **eloquia: eloquium,** poetic for **eloquentia.**
     splendunt: splendere, *to shine, glitter.*
     terrenis: *earthly things, base things.*
190. **illi:** i.e., the **sapientes.**
     maritantur: maritare, *to marry.*
192. **aliquo:** here, *anything.*
     mundano: *worldly, of this world.*
193. **scilicet:** adv., *namely, of course.*
     caritas: lit., *dearness* = *love, esteem.*

Saint Gregory
(Pope Gregory I)
Ms. lat. 2287, fol. 1v
French, 12th century
Bibliotheque Nationale
Paris, France

tium eligo." Imperator, cum audisset, ait, "O bona puella, satis prudenter elegisti. In isto cophino sunt tres anuli mei pretiosi;
165   unum pro me, unum pro filio, tertium pro te in signum desponsationis." Statim fecit nuptias celebrare, et tradidit ei filium suum, et sic in pace vitam finierunt.

The moral interpretation of the story.

Moralitas: Carissimi, imperator est Deus, qui diu guerram cum homine habuit in tantum quod tota natura humana erat
170   destructa per peccatum. Modo trewgae nobis datae sunt per dominum, id est, Christum. Filia quae filio imperatoris debet desponsari est anima. Oportet ergo ut navis paretur pro ea cum nuntiis, id est, corpus in quo anima residet cum quinque sensibus et ceteris; nautae sunt ratio, voluntas, etc. Sed oportet per
175   mare, id est, per mundum, transire. Cete grande est diabolus, contra quem debemus vigilare. Sed si nos contingit dormire in peccatis, deglutiet corpus et animam. Fac ergo sicut fecit puella; ignem devotionis accende et eum cum instrumentis, id est, bonis operibus percute, donec recedat et potestatem suam contra te
180   amittat. Tunc servi militis, id est, praedicatores et confessores, habent eum percutere, donec puella, id est, anima, ab eorum potestate exeat et ad curiam Dei veniat. Sed est sciendum quod tres cophini ei praesentantur. Per primum cophinum potentes ac divites intelleguntur, qui habent talem superscriptionem: "Qui
185   me," etc., id est, quando anima a corpore separetur, nihil in me Deus inveniet nisi peccata quae merui, quod est dolendum; vae qui hunc eligit. Per secundum intellegitur mundi sapientes, quorum eloquia splendunt sicut argentum et intus pleni sunt terrenis cum tali superscriptione: "Qui me elegerit," etc. Natura
190   semper appetit animae contrarium et illi non maritantur Christo. Per tertium cophinum designantur boni christiani, qui sunt plumbei, id est, quod non curant de aliquo mundano; in quibus sunt tres anuli, scilicet, fides, spes, et caritas; qui istos eligit, filium Dei habere potest libentius quam in thesauro mundano
195   permanere. Studeamus.

196.   **ver:** *spring.*
       redit: some license is taken with the accent, which is here shifted to the sec-
          ond syllable to maintain the trochaic rhythm; in general, though not
          always, med. Lat. followed the same rules for placement of the stress
          accent as those applied in class. Lat.
199.   **purpureo:** *purple, dark red.*
200.   **aves: avis,** *bird.*
       edunt: edere, *to give forth.*
202.   **revirescit: revirescere,** *to grow green again.*
       nemus: *grove.*
203.   **amoenus:** *charming, delightful.*
208.   **reficiant: reficere,** *to repair, restore, refresh.*
209.   **virgines:** acc.
       assumant: assumere, *to take to oneself.*
211.   **prata: pratum,** *meadow.*

Saint Gregory (Pope Gregory I)
Codex 2907, Italian manuscript
Biblioteca Augusta, Perugia, Italy

CARMINA BURANA

The Carmina Burana *("Songs of Beuern"), so-called from their preservation in a single 13th-century manuscript from the Bavarian monastery of Benedictbeuern, is a collection of 228 poems (many of them songs with musical notation) and six religious plays; the manuscript was rediscovered in 1803 and first published in 1847. The poems were composed by numerous, mostly anonymous wandering scholars and students (the so-called goliards) during the 12th century; the themes are variously satiric, amatory, and celebratory, including some carousing drinking songs; many are quite beautiful, others raucously humorous. Some were composed in German or Occitan (a Romance dialect of southern France), but most are in Latin and characterized by all the spontaneity and naturalness of a living language, as the goliards recorded both the joyous and the melancholy aspects of their student life. While some of the poems employ classical meters, including the dactylic hexameter, and are reminiscent of authors like Ovid, most (including all three selections below) are rhyming lyrics with accentual meters that have much in common with modern verse; the work gained renewed popularity in the 20th century through the selection made by the German composer Carl Orff for his oratorio and ballet, the* Carmina Burana, *produced in 1937 and available in numerous recordings today.*

Ver Redit

Carmina Burana 137. The return of spring and love; the metrical pattern is three trochees in lines 1, 3, 5, 7, and 8 of each stanza and two iambs in the rest; the rhyme scheme is ABABCDEED.

	Ver redit optatum	205	Iuvenes, ut flores
	Cum gaudio,		Accipiant
	Flore decoratum		Et se per odores
	Purpureo;		Reficiant,
200	Aves edunt cantus		Virgines assumant
	Quam dulciter;	210	Alacriter
	Revirescit nemus;		Et eant in prata
	Cantus est amoenus		Floribus ornata
	Totaliter.		Communiter.

214. **taberna:** *tavern.*
215. **humus:** i.e., **mors.**
216. **ludum:** here, *gaming, gambling;* likewise **ludunt** below.
      properamus: properare, *to hurry.*
217. **insudamus: insudare,** *to sweat at, sweat over.*
219. **nummus:** *coin, money;* with **pincerna** *(cupbearer, host)* a PERSONIFICATION.
220. **hoc est opus:** refers to **quid agatur in taberna,** *this is the business.*
      ut quaeratur . . . audiatur (221): *to be looked into (and) . . . to be . . ..*
224. **morantur: morari,** *to delay, loiter, spend time.*
225. **denudantur:** cp. our idiom "to lose your shirt."
226. **vestiuntur: vestire,** *to clothe;* i.e., they win their clothes, or the money to buy
      them.
227. **saccis: saccus,** *sack.*
      induuntur: induere, *to clothe, cover.*
229. **pro Baccho:** *to Bacchus, in the name of Bacchus.*
      sortem: sors, *lot, fortune;* with **mittunt,** *they cast their lot* (in life) or perhaps
      they gamble.
230. **nummata:** lit., *furnished with money, rich;* the meaning is somewhat obscure
      here (and cp. 261 below), perhaps *expensive,* with some f. noun like **men-
      sura** *(measure)* or **olla** *(jug)* understood.
231. **libertini: libertinus,** originally *freedman;* here = *carouser.*
232. **pro captivis:** in this and the next three stanzas the nouns and adjs. seem to
      be chosen with complete abandon (except for the needs of meter and
      rhyme) to reflect the riotous nature of the scene.
233. **ter . . . tredecies (243):** *three times, four times,* etc.; numeral advs.
234. **Christianis:** the second **i** is treated as a consonant (SYNIZESIS), so the word is
      trisyllabic ("Christyanis," and cp. our pronunciation of "Christian" as
      a disyllable).
235. **defunctis:** = **mortuis.**
236. **vanis:** *empty, vain, false, silly.*
239. **monachis: monachus,** *monk.*
241. **discordantibus: discordare,** *to disagree.*
244. **papa:** *pope.*

In Taberna

Carmina Burana 196. A lively drinking song, included in Orff's cantata; the rhyme scheme of each stanza is AABBCCDD, and the meter is four trochees per line except in 229–39, where the number of syllables is humorously increased to 9, 10, and 11.

In taberna quando sumus,
215   Non curamus quid sit humus,
Sed ad ludum properamus,
Cui semper insudamus.
Quid agatur in taberna,
Ubi nummus est pincerna,
220   Hoc est opus ut quaeratur,
Si quid loquar, audiatur.

Quidam ludunt, quidam bibunt,
Quidam indiscrete vivunt.
Sed in ludo qui morantur,
225   Ex his quidam denudantur,
Quidam ibi vestiuntur,
Quidam saccis induuntur.
Ibi nullus timet mortem,
Sed pro Baccho mittunt sortem:

230   Primo pro nummata vini—
Ex hac bibunt libertini;
Semel bibunt pro captivis,
Post haec bibunt ter pro vivis,
Quater pro Christianis cunctis,
235   Quinquies pro fidelibus defunctis,
Sexies pro sororibus vanis,
Septies pro militibus silvanis,

Octies pro fratribus perversis,
Novies pro monachis dispersis,
240   Decies pro navigantibus,
Undecies pro discordantibus,
Duodecies pro paentitentibus,
Tredecies pro iter agentibus.
Tam pro papa quam pro rege,
245   Bibunt omnes sine lege.

246. **hera . . . herus:** *mistress . . . master* (of a household); lines 246–53 parody a hymn by St. Thomas of Aquinas.
247. **clerus:** *clergy, cleric, scholar, student.*
252. **vagus:** *wandering, roaming.*
253. **rudis:** *rough, unskilled.*
     magus: *a learned man.*
254. **aegrotus:** *sick.*
256. **canus:** *gray-haired, old.*
257. **praesul:** *patron, bishop.*
     decanus: *deacon.*
259. **anus:** *old woman.*
262. **parum:** with **durant.**
     nummatae: here = **nummi,** or perhaps *expensive (cups)* (see note on 230).
263. **ubi:** the **i** elides before the initial **i** of the next word, as in class. Lat.
264. **meta:** lit., *turning post = limit.*
266. **rodunt: rodere,** lit., *to gnaw,* here = *to disparage, slander;* often there was animosity between the townspeople and the university students.
     gentes: here, *families,* or, with **omnes,** simply *everybody.*
268. **confundantur: confundere,** *to confound, ruin, destroy.*
269. **iustis . . . scribantur:** i.e., in the book of the righteous.
     non: for **ne,** a very common substitution in med. Lat.
271. **furibundus:** *furious, mad, insane.*
275. **ceu:** adv., *as, just as.*
     campi: campus, *field, plain.*
276. **res mundana:** here, *the mundane world.*
281. **Tartara:** n. pl., *Tartarus* (the region for sinners in Hell).

"The Last Judgment"
Frans Floris, 1565
Kunsthistorisches Museum, Vienna, Austria

Bibit hera, bibit herus,
Bibit miles, bibit clerus,
Bibit ille, bibit illa,
Bibit servus cum ancilla,
250   Bibit velox, bibit piger,
Bibit albus, bibit niger,
Bibit constans, bibit vagus,
Bibit rudis, bibit magus,

Bibit pauper et aegrotus,
255   Bibit exul et ignotus,
Bibit puer, bibit canus,
Bibit praesul et decanus,
Bibit soror, bibit frater,
Bibit anus, bibit mater,
260   Bibit ista, bibit ille,
Bibunt centum, bibunt mille.

Parum centum sex nummatae
Durant, ubi immoderate
Bibunt omnes sine meta,
265   Quamvis bibant mente laeta.
Sic nos rodunt omnes gentes,
Et sic erimus egentes.
Qui nos rodunt confundantur,
Et cum iustis non scribantur.

Vita Vana

Carmina Burana 24. On the vanity of our earthly lives; the rhyme scheme is AABCCB, with lines 3 and 6 of each stanza ending in -a, and the meter is trochaic, with two trochees in lines 1, 2, 4, and 5 of each stanza and 3 1/2 trochees (7 syllables) in lines 3 and 6. The last stanza has an additional three lines repeating the metrical pattern of the first three.

270   Iste mundus
Furibundus
Falsa praestat gaudia,
Quae defluunt
Et decurrunt
275   Ceu campi lilia.

Res mundana,
Vita vana
Vera tollit praemia,
Nam impellit
280   Et summergit
Animas in Tartara.

284. **patria:** here, *world,* i.e., on earth.
287. **quercus:** *oak tree.*
     folia: folium, *leaf.*
291. **frangit: frangere,** *to break,* here used intransitively.
     transit: a play on **transitoria.**
292. **velut:** adv., *as, just as.*
294. **conteramus: conterere,** *to wear away, destroy.*
295. **confringamus: confringere,** *to break to pieces, destroy.*
298. **electis:** *chosen ones.*
300. **gratulari:** here, *enjoy;* with **mereamur,** *let us earn the enjoyment of.*
302. **saecula: saeculum,** *century, generation, age.*
304. **caelitus:** med. Lat. adv., *from heaven.*
305. **radium:** *rod, spoke, ray.*
308. **lumen:** = **lux.**
311. **refrigerium:** lit., *cooling* = *refreshment, consolation.*
313. **aestu: aestus,** lit., *heat, boiling* = *turmoil, commotion* (of life).
     temperies: lit., *tempering* = *calmness, restraint.*
314. **fletu: fletus,** *weeping.*
316. **reple: replere,** *to fill up.*
     intima: here, *innermost parts.*
320. **innoxium:** *harmless, innocent.*
321. **lava: lavare,** *to wash.*
322. **riga: rigare,** *to moisten, water, irrigate.*
323. **saucium:** *wounded.*
325. **fove: fovere,** *to warm, cherish.*
326. **devium:** *off the road, gone astray.*
329. **septenarium:** *seven gifts;* the spiritual gifts mentioned in *Isaiah* 11.2, **sapientia, intellectus, consilium, fortitudo, scientia, pietas, timor Domini.**
330. **meritum:** *desert, benefit.*
331. **exitum: exitus,** *result, outcome.*

"Isaiah"
Raphael
16th century
S. Agostino
Rome, Italy

Quod videmus
Vel tacemus
In praesenti patria,
285 Dimittemus
Vel perdemus,
Quasi quercus folia.

Res carnalis,
Lex mortalis
290 Valde transitoria,
Frangit, transit
Velut umbra,
Quae non est corporea.

Conteramus,
295 Confringamus
Carnis desideria,
Et cum iustis
Et electis
Caelestia gaudia
300 Gratulari
Mereamur
Per aeterna saecula.

VENI, SANCTE SPIRITUS

One of the most famous of all medieval hymns, Veni, Sancte Spiritus *was composed in the late 12th century, possibly by the archbishop of Canterbury Stephen Langton. The meter is trochaic, with seven syllables per line; the rhyme scheme is AABCCB, with the third and sixth lines of each stanza ending in* -ium.

Veni, Sancte Spiritus,
Et emitte caelitus
305 Lucis tuae radium.
Veni, pater pauperum,
Veni, dator munerum,
Veni, lumen cordium.

Consolator optime,
310 Dulcis hospes animae,
Dulce refrigerium,
In labore requies,
In aestu temperies,
In fletu solacium.

315 O lux beatissima,
Reple cordis intima
Tuorum fidelium.
Sine tuo nomine

Nihil est in homine,
320 Nihil est innoxium.

Lava quod est sordidum,
Riga quod est aridum,
Sana quod est saucium;
Flecte quod est rigidum,
325 Fove quod est frigidum,
Rege quod est devium.

Da tuis fidelibus
In te confidentibus
Sacrum septenarium;
330 Da virtutis meritum,
Da salutis exitum,
Da perenne gaudium.

334. **crucem: crux,** *cross.*
335. **pendebat: pendere,** *to hang.*
336. **gementem: gemere,** *to groan.*
337. **contristantem:** *sorrowing.*
340. **benedicta:** *blessed.*
341. **unigeniti:** *the only-begotten.*
342. **maerebat: maerere,** *to mourn, lament.*
344. **incliti:** *famous.*
345. **fleret: flere,** *to weep;* class. Lat. would use the pres. subjunct. here.
347. **supplicio: supplicium,** *distress, suffering.*
348. **non posset:** = *could fail (to).*
      contristari: contristare, *to sadden, afflict.*
349. **contemplari:** *to contemplate;* the inf., which has in med. Lat. a much wider range of usage than in class. Lat., has a kind of explanatory function with **contristari,** *to be saddened to contemplate, in contemplating.*
353. **flagellis: flagellum,** *scourge.*
      subditum: subdere, *to place under, subject (to).*
357. **eia:** interj., here, *oh!*
      fons: *fountain.*
358. **me sentire:** with **fac,** *make me feel;* the inf. phrase is a med. variant for the class. Lat. **fac ut ardeat** in the next line (and cp. the similar alternation of **fac** + inf./**fac** + subjunct. in 377–78 below).
359. **lugeam: lugere,** *to mourn;* PURPOSE CL.

"What Is the Truth"
(Christ before Pilate)
Nikolai Ge
19th century
Tretyakov Gallery
Moscow, Russia

STABAT MATER

Another of the best known Christian hymns of the Middle Ages, and certainly the most sorrowful one, the Stabat Mater *can be dated to the 13th century, but its authorship is uncertain (though Pope Innocent III and St. Bonaventure have been suggested). The rhyme scheme is AABCCB, the same as that of the* Veni, Sancte Spiritus; *the metrical pattern is four trochees each in lines 1, 2, 4, and 5 of each stanza, and 3 1/2 each in lines 3 and 6.*

Stabat mater dolorosa
Iuxta crucem lacrimosa,
335   Dum pendebat filius,
Cuius animam gementem,
Contristantem et dolentem
     Pertransivit gladius.

O quam tristis et afflicta
340 Fuit illa benedicta
     Mater unigeniti,
Quae maerebat et dolebat
Et tremebat, dum videbat
     Nati poenas incliti.

345 Quis est homo qui non fleret,
Matrem Christi si videret
     In tanto supplicio?
Quis non posset contristari
Piam matrem contemplari
350   Dolentem cum filio?

Pro peccatis suae gentis
Vidit Iesum in tormentis
     Et flagellis subditum;
Vidit suum dulcem natum
355 Morientem, desolatum,
     Dum emisit spiritum.

Eia mater, fons amoris!
Me sentire vim doloris
     Fac, ut tecum lugeam.

360.   **ardeat: ardere,** *to burn;* here in a NOUN CL. OF RESULT.
362.   **sibi:** = **ei;** the reflexive pron. was often not used reflexively in med. Lat.
363.   **agas:** JUSSIVE SUBJUNCT., paralleling the 2nd pers. imper. in the following verse.
364.   **crucifixi:** *fixed to the cross, crucified.*
        fige: figere, *to affix, thrust, imprint on.*
        plagas: plaga, *blow, wound.*
366.   **nati:** with **poenas.**
367.   **dignati: dignari,** *to deign, think it appropriate.*
374.   **planctu: planctus,** *lamentation.*
376.   **non:** = **ne.**
        amara: *bitter, unkind.*
377.   **plangere:** *to lament.*
378.   **portem: portare,** *to carry, bear.*
379.   **fac:** sc. **me.**
        consortem: *sharing in, a sharer in.*
380.   **recolere:** *to cultivate again, feel afresh.*
382.   **inebriari: inebriare,** *to intoxicate.*
383.   **cruore: cruor,** *blood, gore.*
384.   **inflammatus et accensus:** i.e., **passione Christi.**
385.   **sim defensus:** in place of the simple, so-called "synthetic" vb. forms of class. Lat. (here, **defendar**), med. Lat. tended to use **esse** + a partic., the so-called "analytical forms" common in Eng. as well as the Romance languages.
386.   **in die:** for the prep., see note on **per . . . viam** (92).
388.   **praemuniri: praemunire,** *to fortify.*
389.   **confoveri: confovere,** *to warm, foster.*

"The Crucifixion of Christ"
Peter Paul Rubens
1620
Koninklijk Museum voor Schone Kunsten
Antwerp, Belgium

360   Fac ut ardeat cor meum
      In amando Christum Deum,
         Ut sibi complaceam.

      Sancta mater, istud agas—
      Crucifixi fige plagas
365   Cordi meo valide;
      Tui nati vulnerati,
      Tam dignati pro me pati,
         Poenas mecum divide.

      Fac me vere tecum flere,
370   Crucifixo condolere,
         Donec ego vixero;
      Iuxta crucem tecum stare,
      Meque tibi sociare
         In planctu desidero.

375   Virgo virginum praeclara,
      Mihi iam non sis amara,
         Fac me tecum plangere;
      Fac ut portem Christi mortem,
      Passionis fac consortem
380   Et plagas recolere.

      Fac me plagis vulnerari,
      Cruce hac inebriari
         Et cruore filii;
      Inflammatus et accensus,
385   Per te, Virgo, sim defensus
         In die iudicii.

      Fac me cruce custodiri,
      Morte Christi praemuniri,
         Confoveri gratia.
390   Quando corpus morietur,
      Fac ut animae donetur
         Paradisi gloria.

394. **solvet: solvere,** *to loosen, release, dissolve.*
      saeclum: = **saeculum;** here, *the world.*
      favilla: *ashes.*
395. **teste: testis,** *witness.*
      David: abl. with **teste,** ABL. ABS.; Hebrew names are commonly not declined
          in Lat. texts. David, the second king of Israel, here stands for the Scrip-
          tures which foretold the Day of Judgment.
      Sibylla: *the Sibyl,* a prophetic priestess in classical myth, who here represents
          pagan lore, in which there was also a tradition about the final destruc-
          tion of the world by fire.
396. **est futurus:** another analytical form (see note on 385), = **erit.**
398. **stricte:** adv., *severely.*
      discussurus: discutere, *to shatter, scatter, destroy.*
399. **tuba:** *trumpet.*
402. **stupebit: stupere,** *to be amazed, gaze at in wonder.*
407. **iudicetur:** as a rel. adv., **unde** can introduce, as here, a REL. CL. OF PURPOSE.
410. **inultum:** *unavenged.*

The Cumaean Sibyl, Sistine Chapel
Michelangelo, 1536–41
Vatican Palace, Vatican State

DIES IRAE

*This best known and most powerful of the medieval hymns is attributed to the Italian
Franciscan Thomas of Celano, who lived in the early 13th century and also wrote
a biography of his friend St. Thomas of Assisi and a treatise on the miracles of
St. Francis. Cast in the form of a prayer of a person hoping to escape eternal damna-
tion on the "Day of Wrath," the judgment day foretold in the New Testament, the
hymn was incorporated as a sequence to the requiem mass and appears in arrange-
ments of the requiem by Mozart, Berlioz, Verdi, and others, as well as in such medita-
tions on death as Rachmaninoff's* Isle of the Dead *and Liszt's* Dante Symphony. *The
meter is trochaic, with eight syllables per line, except for the two closing verses, which
have seven; and the three verses of each stanza have two-syllable end-line rhyme, ex-
cept the final stanzas, which have an AABB pattern, and the two irregular closing
verses. In combination, the hymn's rhyme and rhythms have an almost hypnotic effect.*

     Dies irae, dies illa
     Solvet saeclum in favilla,
395   Teste David cum Sibylla.

     Quantus tremor est futurus,
     Quando iudex est venturus,
     Cuncta stricte discussurus!

     Tuba, mirum spargens sonum
400   Per sepulcra regionum,
     Coget omnes ante thronum.

     Mors stupebit et natura,
     Cum resurget creatura
     Iudicanti responsura.

405   Liber scriptus proferetur,
     In quo totum continetur,
     Unde mundus iudicetur.

     Iudex ergo cum sedebit,
     Quidquid latet apparebit:
410   Nil inultum remanebit.

     Quid sum miser tunc dicturus,
     Quem patronum rogaturus,
     Cum vix iustus sit securus?

414. **tremendae:** lit., *to be trembled at* = *terrifying, dreadful.*
417. **recordare: recordari,** *to remember.*
418. **quod sum:** IND. STATE.
      viae: i.e., his journey to earth.
420. **lassus:** *weary, exhausted.*
421. **redemisti: redimere,** *to buy back, ransom, redeem;* sc. **me.**
422. **cassus:** *useless, futile.*
423. **ultionis: ultio,** *punishment.*
426. **ingemisco: ingemiscere,** *to groan.*
      reus: *defendant, accused.*
427. **rubet: rubere,** *to be red, blush.*
429. **Mariam:** *Mary Magdalene,* a woman in the Bible cleansed by Jesus of her seven demons.
430. **latronem: latro,** *robber;* the robber promised salvation by Jesus, when both were on the cross.
433. **bonus:** for **bone,** voc.
434. **cremer: cremare,** *to consume by fire.*
436. **haedis: haedus,** *goat.*
437. **statuens: statuere,** *to put, place, set up;* sc. **me.**
438. **confutatis: confutare,** *to check, repress.*
      maledictis: *accursed.*
439. **addictis: addicere,** *to surrender, doom to.*
441. **acclinis:** *bent, bowed down.*
442. **contritum: conterere,** *to wear out, consume, destroy;* sc. **est.**

"The Penitant Magdalene"
Georges de La Tour
17th century
Louvre
Paris, France

Rex tremendae maiestatis,
415   Qui salvandos salvas gratis,
Salva me, fons pietatis.

Recordare, Iesu pie,
Quod sum causa tuae viae,
Ne me perdas illa die.

420   Quaerens me, sedisti lassus;
Redemisti, crucem passus;
Tantus labor non sit cassus.

Iustae iudex ultionis,
Donum fac remissionis
425   Ante diem rationis.

Ingemisco tamquam reus;
Culpa rubet vultus meus;
Supplicanti parce, Deus.

Qui Mariam absolvisti
430   Et latronem exaudisti,
Mihi quoque spem dedisti.

Preces meae non sunt dignae,
Sed tu bonus fac benigne,
Ne perenni cremer igni.

435   Inter oves locum praesta
Et ab haedis me sequestra,
Statuens in parte dextra.

Confutatis maledictis,
Flammis acribus addictis,
440   Voca me cum benedictis.

Oro supplex et acclinis;
Cor contritum quasi cinis;
Gere curam mei finis.

444.   **lacrimosa:** sc. **erit.**
446.   **reus:** *as a defendant, as a sinner.*
447.   **huic:** pronounced and scanned as a disyllable.

"The Last Judgment" triptych
Detail from right panel: fall of the damned
Hans Memling, 15th century
Pomorskie Museum, Gdansk, Poland

Lacrimosa dies illa,
445 Qua resurget ex favilla
Iudicandus homo reus:
Huic ergo parce, Deus.

Pie Iesu Domine,
Dona eis requiem.

"The Last Judgment"
Detail: the archangel Michael weighing the souls
Roger van der Weyden, 1434
Hotel-Dieu, Beaune, France

Vocabulary

An asterisk (*) preceding an entry marks a word that occurs five or more times in the book; such words should be memorized. As an aid to learning the meanings of compound words, verbs in particular, a hyphen has generally been used to separate the prefix from the root word; e.g., the entry *ab-eō* is employed for *abeō = ab + eō,* "to go away from." Words adequately defined in the text, including the occasional Greek word and many proper nouns, are not included in the following list. The abbreviations ML and EL are employed, respectively, for Medieval Latin and Ecclesiastical Latin; compar. and superl. are used for comparative and superlative degrees; and (1) indicates a regular first conjugation verb.

A

* **ā** *or* **ab (abs),** *prep. + abl.,* from, away from; by (*agent*); on (the side of); **ā dextrā parte,** on the right

ab-aliēnō (1), transfer to another, sell

abbātissa, -ae, *f.,* abbess (*ML*)

ab-dicō (1), renounce; resign, abdicate

ab-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, put away; hide

* **ab-eō, -īre, -iī, -itum,** go away, depart

ab-iciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, throw away *or* down, abandon

ab-lātum: *see* **auferō**

ab-nuō, -ere, -nuī, -nūtum, deny, refuse

* **Abraham,** *indecl., and* **Abraham, -ae,** *m., the Hebrew patriarch*

ab-ripiō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptum, snatch away, hurry away

ab-rogō (1), repeal, abrogate, take away

ab-rumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, break off, throw off

abs-conditus, -a, -um, concealed, hidden

ab-sēns, *gen.* **-sentis,** absent, remote

ab-solvō, -ere, -solvī, -solūtum, set free, release; absolve, acquit; complete

abs-tinentia, -ae, *f.,* abstinence

abs-tineō, -ere, -tinuī, -tentum,
abstain, refrain

abstulī, *perf.* of **auferō**

* **ab-sum, -esse, ā-fuī, ā-futūrus,** be
away, be absent

ab-sūmō, -ere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptum,
consume, waste away

abundantia, -ae, *f.,* abundance

ab-undō (1), overflow; have an
abundance of, abound in (*+ abl.*)

abyssus, -i, *m.,* bottomless pit, abyss
(*EL*)

* **ac = atque**

* **ac-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum,** go to,
approach, be added

* **ac-cendō, -ere, -cendī, -cēnsum,**
kindle, set on fire, light, stir up,
incite

ac-cidō, -ere, -cidī, fall; happen, take
place; **accidit,** *impers.,* it happens

ac-cingō, -ere, -cinxī, -cinctum,
gird on, arm; **sē accingere** *or*
passive used reflexively, gird
oneself

ac-ciō (4), summon, send for

* **ac-cipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum,** receive,
accept; hear, learn

ac-clīnis, -e, leaning, inclined, bent

acclīvis, -e, ascending, sloping
upward

ac-commodātus, -a, -um, adapted,
fit, suitable

ac-commodō (1), adapt, adjust

ac-cubō (1), recline at table

ac-cūrātē, *adv.* of **accūrātus**

ac-cūrātus, -a, -um, careful, exact,
accurate

ac-currō, -ere, -currī, -cursum, run
to, hurry to

accūsātiō, -ōnis, *f.* accusation,
indictment

accūsātor, -ōris, *m.,* accuser

accūsō (1), accuse; blame, reproach

ācer, ācris, ācre, sharp, keen, fierce,
severe

* **acerbus, -a, -um,** bitter, harsh, cruel;
adv. **acerbē**

acētum, -ī, *n.,* sour wine, vinegar

* **aciēs, -ēī,** *f.,* battle-line, battle

acquiēscō, -ere, -quiēvī, -quiētum,
become quiet, have peace

ācriter, *adv.* of **ācer**

* **āctiō, -ōnis,** *f.,* a doing, action;
action *or* legal process in court

āctor, -ōris, *m., lit.* doer, performer;
prosecutor; actor

actus, -ūs, *m.,* action, procedure

acūtus, -a, -um, sharp, keen,
intelligent; crafty

* **ad,** *prep. + acc.,* to, up to, near to,
for the purpose of; *as adv. w.*
numerals, about

ad-aequō (1), make equal, compare

ad-dīcō, -ere, -dīxī, -dictum, *lit.*
assent; award; surrender; doom to

ad-discō, -ere, -didicī, learn in
addition, learn something new

* **ad-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditum,** add

* **ad-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum,** lead
to, bring in *or* to; induce

* **ad-eō,** *adv., lit.* to this; to such a
degree *or* extent, so, even

* **ad-eō, -īre, -iī, -itum,** go *or* come to,
approach, visit; undertake,
undergo

* **ad-ferō, -ferre, at-tulī, ad-lātum (ad-**
ferō), bring (to), convey, cause;
report; **manūs adferre,** lay hands
on, do violence to

ad-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, influence, affect, treat, afflict

ad-fingō, -ere, -finxī, -fictum, fashion, invent

ad-firmō (1), strengthen, support; assert

ad-flictiō, -ōnis, *f.,* suffering, torment

ad-fligō, -ere, -flīxī, -flīctum, strike against, dash down, shatter, afflict

ad-gredior: *see* **aggredior**

ad-haereō, -ēre, -haesī, -haesum, cling to, stick to

ad-haerēscō, -ere, -haesī, haesum, stick to, cling to

* **ad-hibeō, -ēre, -hibuī, -itum,** hold to, apply, employ, show

ad-hortor, -ārī, -hortātus sum, urge, exhort, encourage

* **adhūc,** *adv.,* up to this time, still, yet

ad-iciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, direct to; add

ad-imō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēmptum, take away

adipiscor, -ī, adeptus sum, win, obtain, acquire

ad-itus, -ūs, *m.,* approach, entrance

ad-iūdicō (1), award, adjudicate, assign

adiūmentum, -ī, *n.,* help, assistance

ad-iungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnctum, join to, attach, associate

adiūtor, -ōris, *m.,* helper, assistant

adiūtrīx, -īcis, *f.,* (female) helper, assistant

* **ad-iuvō, -āre, -iūvī, -iūtum,** help, assist, support

ad-liciō, -ere, -lexī, -lectum, allure, draw to oneself, entice

ad-ligō (1), bind

ad-loquor, -ī, -locūtus sum, speak to, address

ad-lūdō, -ere, -lūsī, -lūsum, jest at, play with; play on (a word)

adluviēs, -ēī, *f.,* overflow, pool, floodwater

adminiculum, -ī, *n.,* prop (for vines), support

ad-mīrābilis, -e, wonderful; strange; admirable

admīrātiō, -ōnis, *f.,* wonder, amazement, admiration

ad-mīror, -ārī, -ātus sum, wonder at, admire

ad-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, admit; commit (a crime)

ad-moveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, bring up, apply

ad-nectō, -ere, -nexuī, -nexum, bind, connect

ad-nītor, -ī, -nīsus (-nīxus) sum, lean on, strive toward, exert oneself

ad-notō (1), note down, mark

ad-nuō, -ere, -nuī, -nūtum, nod assent, agree

ad-operiō, -īre, -operuī, -opertum, cover up

ad-ōrō (1), address, entreat; reverence, worship

adp-: *see* **app-**

ad-quiēscō, -ere, -quiēvī, -quiētum, become quiet, rest, find comfort

adr-: *see under* **arr-**

ad-sentātor, -ōris, *m.,* flatterer, yes-man

ad-sentiō, -īre, -sēnsī, -sēnsum *and as deponent vb.* **ad-sentior, -īrī, -sēnsus sum,** assent to, agree with

ad-sequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, overtake, reach, attain, gain

ad-servō (1), preserve, keep, watch

adsp-: *see* **asp-**

ad-stō, -āre, -stitī, stand near *or* by

ad-stringō, -ere, -strīnxī, -strictum, bind, oblige

ad-suēscō, -ere, suēvī, -suētum, become accustomed; **adsuētus, -a, -um,** customary, usual; accustomed to

* **ad-sum, -esse, ad-fuī, ad-futūrum,** be near, be present; assist

ad-sumō, -ere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptum, take to oneself, take

ad-surgō, -ere, -surrēxī, -surrēctum, rise up, stand up

adt-: *see* **att-**

* **adulēscēns,** *gen.* **-entis,** young; *as a noun, m./f.,* a young man (*or* woman)

adūlō (1), fawn; *in pass.,* be fawned upon

adūlor, -ārī, -ātus sum, fawn (on), flatter, cringe (before)

adulter, -erī, *m.,* adulterer

adulterium, -ī, *n.,* adultery

ad-ūrō, -ere, -ussī, -ustum, set on fire, scorch

ad-vena, -ae, *m.,* stranger, foreigner

* **ad-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum,** come to, arrive

* **ad-ventus, -ūs,** *m.,* arrival

adversārius, -a, -um, opposed, hostile; **adversārius, -ī,** *m.,* opponent, adversary

* **adversus,** *prep.* + *acc. and adv.,* opposite, against; towards

* **ad-versus, -a, -um,** *lit.* turned toward; opposed, hostile, unfavorable

ad-vertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, turn toward, direct; draw near

ad-vocātiō, -ōnis, *f.,* assistance at court, legal advice

ad-volō (1), fly (to), hasten

* **aedēs, -is,** *f.,* chamber; sanctuary, temple; *pl.* house, dwelling

aedificium, -ī, *n.,* building, edifice

aedificō (1), build

aedīlis, -is, *m.,* aedile, superintendent of public works and entertainment

aeger, -gra, -grum, sick

aegrē, *adv., lit.* painfully; with difficulty, hardly, scarcely; *superl.* **aegerrimē**

aegritūdō, -dinis, *f.,* sickness; grief, sorrow

aegrōtus, -a, -um, sick

Aegyptus, -ī, *f.,* Egypt

Aemilius, -ī, *m., a Roman nomen*

aēneus, -a, -um, of bronze

aequābilitās, -tātis, *f.,* uniformity, impartiality, evenness, serenity

aequālis, -e, equal; coeval

aequiperō (1), to equal

aequitās, -tātis, *f.,* fairness, impartiality, justice

* **aequō** (1), make equal, compare, equal; **sē aequāre,** become equal

aequor, -oris, *n.,* level surface, sea

* **aequus, -a, -um,** equal, level, calm; fair, just; **aequē,** *adv.,* equally; **aequē ac, ac sī,** *etc.,* equally with, just as

āēr, āēris (*acc.* **āēra**), *m.,* air

aerārium, -ī, *n.,* public treasury *or* funds

aerumna, -ae, *f.,* hardship

aerumnōsus, -a, -um, full of hardship, distressed, troubled

Aesculāpius, -ī, *m., son of Apollo*

aestās, -tātis, *f.,* summer

aestimō (1), estimate, judge

aestuō (1), boil, burn, blaze

aestus, -ūs, *m.,* a boiling, heat, turmoil

* **aetās, -tātis,** *f.,* time of life, age

aeternitās, -tātis, *f.,* eternity, immortality

aeternus, -a, -um, eternal, everlasting; **in aeternum,** forever

Aethiopia, -ae, *f., a country south of Egypt*

aethēr, -eris (*acc.* **aethera**), *m.,* the upper air, sky

Āff-: *see* **adf-**

Africa, -ae, *f.,* Africa, *espec. the area of Carthage and her possessions*

Agamemnon, -nonis, *m., commander-in-chief of the Greek forces against Troy*

Agathoclēs, -is, *m., tyrant and later king of Syracuse* 317−289 B.C.

* **ager, agrī,** *m.,* field, land; district

ag-gredior, -ī, -gressus sum, approach, attack; begin, undertake, try

agitātiō, -ōnis, *f.,* motion, movement, play, agitation, activity

agitō (1), trouble, vex

* **agmen, -minis,** *n.,* column, line of march

a-gnōscō, -ere, -gnōvī, -gnitum, recognize, observe, perceive

* **agō, -ere, ēgī, actum,** drive, lead, urge, do, act; **rēs agitur,** is at stake; **grātiās agō,** thank; **vītam agō,** lead *or* spend one's life

agrestis, -e, of the fields, rustic; **agrestis, -is,** *m.,* a countryman, a peasant

* **aiō,** *defective vb. chiefly in pres. and*

impf. indic., say; *among the most common forms are* **ais, ait, aiunt**

āla, -ae, *f.,* wing

alacer, -cris, -cre, quick, eager; cheerful, glad

alacritās, -tātis, *f.,* quickness, eagerness

alacriter, *adv. of* **alacer**

* **Albānus, -a, -um,** Alban, *referring to Alba Longa, the old Latin town on the Alban Mountain south of Rome*

albus, -a, -um, white; pale

āles, -itis, *m./f.,* winged creature, bird

aliās, *adv.,* at another time; elsewhere; **aliās . . . aliās,** at one time . . . at another

alibī, *adv.,* elsewhere, at another place

aliēnō (1), take away, transfer, remove

* **aliēnus, -a, -um,** belonging to another, strange, foreign, alien, hostile, unsuitable

alimentum, -ī, *n.,* food, nourishment

aliō, *adv.,* to another place, elsewhere

aliquam-diū, *adv.,* for some time

* **aliquandō,** *adv.,* at some *or* any time, ever, sometimes; at last, finally

aliquantum, *adv.,* somewhat

aliquantus, -a, -um, some, considerable; **aliquantum, -ī,** *n.,* a considerable amount, a good deal

aliquī, aliqua, aliquod, *indef. adj.,* some, any

* **aliquis, -qua, -quid,** *indef. pron.,* someone *or* somebody, something, anyone, anything

* **aliquot,** *indecl. adj.,* several, some

* **alius, alia, aliud,** other, another;
  aliī . . . aliī, some . . . others
all-: *see* **adl-**
allēlūia, *interjection from the Hebrew*
  meaning praise ye Jehovah (*EL*)
alō, -ere, aluī, alitum (altum),
  nourish, bring up, rear
Alpēs, -ium, *f. pl.,* the Alps
Alpīnus, -a, -um, Alpine
altāria, -ium, *n. pl.,* altar
* **alter, -era, -erum,** one of two, the
  other (of two), second
altercātiō, -ōnis, *f.,* dispute, quarrel
altitūdō, -dinis, *f.,* height
altor, -ōris, *m.,* foster father
altus, -a, -um, high, deep; **altum, -ī,**
  n., height, heaven; depth, the
  deep, the sea; *adv.* **altē**
alumnus, -ī, *m.,* foster son, pupil
alveus, -ī, *m.,* trough, tub
amābilis, -e, lovable
amāns, *gen.* **-antis,** loving, friendly;
  amāns, -antis, *m./f.,* a loving
  person, lover
amārus, -a, -um, bitter
ambāgēs, -um, *f. pl.,* ambiguous
  words, riddles
ambitus, -ūs, *m.,* a going around; an
  (illegal) canvassing for votes,
  bribery
* **ambō, -ae, -ō,** both
ambulō (1), walk about
amb-ūrō, -ere, -ussī, -ustum, scorch;
  burn up, consume
ā-mēns, *gen.* **-mentis,** out of one's
  mind, mad
āmentia, -ae, *f.,* madness, folly
* **amīcitia, -ae,** *f.,* friendship
amictus, -ūs, *m.,* robe, veil
* **amīcus, -a, -um,** friendly, kind;
  amīcus, -ī, *m.,* a friend

ā-missiō, -ōnis, *f.,* loss
* **ā-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum,** send
  away = let go, lose
amnis, -is, *m.,* stream, river, current
* **amō** (1), love, like; admire, approve
amoenitās, -tātis, *f.,* pleasantness,
  charm
amoenus, -a, -um, pleasant, lovely,
  charming
* **amor, -ōris,** *m.,* love, affection;
  passion
ā-moveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, move
  away, withdraw
amplector, -ī, -plexus sum, embrace
amplitūdō, -dinis, *f.,* size, breadth
amplus, -a, -um, large, spacious,
  ample, splendid
Amūlius, -ī, *m., brother of Numitor*
  and usurper of his throne
* **an,** *conj., in double questions* **utrum**
  . . . an, whether . . . or; *in indirect*
  simple questions, whether; **haud**
  sciō an, nesciō an, I do not know
  whether = I am inclined to think,
  probably, perhaps
anceps, *gen.* **-cipitis,** *lit.* with two
  heads; uncertain, doubtful; on
  both sides
* **ancilla, -ae,** *f.,* maidservant
ānfrāctus, -ūs, *m.,* turn, bend
angelicus, -a, -um, of an angel,
  angelic
angelus, -ī, *m.,* messenger, angel (*EL*)
Anglī, -ōrum, *m. pl.,* the Angles
anguis, -is, *m./f.,* snake
angustiae, -ārum, *f. pl.,* the narrows,
  defile, strait; distress, straits
* **angustus, -a, -um,** narrow; base,
  mean
anhēlitus, -ūs, *m.,* gasping, panting,
  breathing

* **anima, -ae,** *f.,* breath; soul, principle of life, life; soul of the dead, ghost
* **anim-advertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum,** give attention to, notice, observe, consider; punish
  animal, -ālis, *n.,* living creature, animal
  animāns, -antis, *m./f.,* a living being, creature, animal (= **animal**)
* **animus, -ī,** *m.,* soul, spirit, courage, mind; **in animō habēre** *or* **esse,** to be resolved
  ann- *in compounds: see* **adn-**
  annālis, -e, annual; **annālēs, -ium,** *m. pl.,* yearly records, annals
  anniversārius, -a, -um, annual
* **annus, -ī,** *m.,* year
  an-quīrō, -ere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītum, seek, search after
* **ante,** *adv. and prep. + acc.: adv.,* forward, previously, before, ago; *prep.,* before (*in time and space*), in front of
* **anteā,** *adv.,* before, formerly
  ante-cellō, -ere, excel, surpass
  ante-cessiō, -ōnis, *f.,* antecedent, cause
  ante-eō, -īre, -iī, -itum, go before, precede; excel
  ante-gredior, -ī, -gressus sum, go before
  ante-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, place before; prefer
  antequam, *conj.,* before
  antīquitās, -tātis, *f.,* antiquity, men of old, the ancients
* **antīquus, -a, -um,** old-time, ancient, antique
  Antium, -ī, *n.,* Antium (*modern Anzio*)
  Antōnius, -ī, *m.,* Antony

antrum, -ī, *n.,* cave
* **ānulus, -ī,** *m.,* seal ring
  anus, -ūs, *f.,* old woman
* **aper, aprī,** *m.,* wild boar
* **aperiō, -īre, aperuī, apertum,** open, uncover, reveal
  apertē, *adv.,* openly
  apertus, -a, -um, open, uncovered; clear, evident; **apertum, -ī,** *n.,* an open space
  Apollō, -inis, *m.,* Apollo
  apostolicus, -a, -um, apostolic (*ML*)
  ap-parātus, -a, -um, elaborate, magnificent, sumptuous
  ap-parātus, -ūs, *m.,* preparation, splendor, magnificence
* **ap-pāreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum,** be visible, appear
* **appellō** (1), call, name, address
  ap-pendō, -ere, -pendī, -pēnsum, weigh out
  Appennīnus, -ī, *m.,* the Appennines, *a mountain range extending through the length of Italy*
  appetenter, *adv.,* graspingly, greedily
  ap-petītiō, -ōnis, *f.,* desire
* **ap-petītus, -ūs,** *m.,* longing, desire
* **ap-petō, -ere, -petīvī, -petītum,** strive after, desire, seek
  Appius, -a, -um, Appian; **Via Appia,** the Appian Way, *first of the great Roman roads,* **regīna viārum,** *begun by Appius Claudius, censor in* 312 B.C., *to connect Rome and Capua and ultimately extended to Brundisium*
  ap-plicātiō, -ōnis, *f.,* attachment, inclination
  ap-portō (1), carry, bring to
  ap-positus, -a, -um, suitable, appropriate

ap-probō (1), approve

ap-propinquō (1), approach, draw near, be at hand

ap-propiō (1) = **appropinquō** (*EL*)

aprīcus, -a, -um, sunny, warm

* **aptō** (1), prepare, make ready, adjust

* **aptus, -a, -um,** suitable, appropriate, fit

* **apud,** *prep + acc.,* among; at; at the house of, in the presence of, with

* **aqua, -ae,** *f.,* water

aquilō, -ōnis, *m.,* north wind; north

arātor, -ōris, *m.,* plowman, farmer, tenant

arbiter, -trī, *m.,* arbiter, judge

arbitrātus, -ūs, *m.,* decision, discretion, choice, pleasure

arbitrium, -ī, *n.,* judgment; choice, power, opportunity

* **arbitror, -ārī, -ātus sum,** judge, think, believe

* **arbor, -oris,** *f.,* tree

arboreus, -a, -um, of a tree, arboreal

arceō, -ēre, -uī, shut in, keep away, restrain, debar, prevent

accessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum, call, summon, derive, obtain

Archimēdēs, -is, *m., famous Greek scientist, killed at the capture of Syracuse in* 212 B.C.

Ardea, -ae, *f., a town in Latium*

* **ārdeō, -ēre, ārsī, ārsum,** be on fire, burn, blaze; be inflamed *or* aroused.

arduus, -a, -um, steep, high, lofty, difficult

area, -ae, *f.,* open space, courtyard, public square

ārēns, *gen.* **-entis,** dried up, parched

Arethūsa, -ae, *f., name of a spring at Syracuse*

argentāria, -ae, *f.,* banker's shop *or* business

argentum, -ī, *n.,* silver; money

argumentum, -ī, *n.,* proof, argument; subject, story, theme

arguō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, make clear, show, prove

aridus, -a, -um, dry, parched, arid

arista, -ae, *f.,* ear of grain

Aristaeus, -ī, *m., a son of Apollo*

Aristīdēs, -is, *m., Athenian statesman of the 5th cent.* B.C.

* **arma, -ōrum,** *n. pl.,* weapons, arms, armor

armātūra, -ae, *f.,* armor, equipment; a branch of military service

armātus, -a, -um, armed

* **armō** (1), to arm

ar-ripiō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptum, snatch, catch, lay hold of

arrogantia, -ae, *f.,* arrogance, pride

* **ars, artis,** *f.,* art, skill, occupation; **artēs,** *pl.,* liberal arts

artificium, -ī, *n.,* skill; cunning, scheme

arvum, -ī, *n.,* field

arx, arcis, *f.,* citadel, stronghold

ascendō, -ere, scendī, -scēnsum, go up, mount

ascēnsus, -ūs, *m.,* climbing up, ascent

Asia, -ae, *f.,* Asia, *the Roman province of Asia Minor*

asinus, -ī, *m.,* ass

aspectus, -ūs, *m.,* appearance, aspect

aspergō, -inis, *f.,* spray, sprinkling

aspernor, -ārī, -ātus sum, despise, reject

* **a-spiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum,** look at, see

as-portō (1), carry away

asse-: *see under* **adse-**

assu-: *see under* **adsu-**

ast-: *see under* **adst-**

* **at,** *conj.,* but, yet, on the other hand (*an emotional, or surprise, adversative as compared with* **sed,** *which is rather a factual adversative*)

āter, ātra, ātrum, black, dark; gloomy

Athēnae, -ārum, *f. pl.,* Athens

Athēniēnsis, -e, Athenian; **Athēniēnsēs, -ium,** *m. pl.,* the Athenians

* **atque** *or* **ac,** *conj.,* and, and also, and even

at-quī, *conj.,* yet, however; now

atrōciter, *adv.,* savagely, fiercely, cruelly

atrōx, *gen.* **-ōcis,** cruel, fierce, harsh

at-tamen, *conj.,* but yet

at-tendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum, *lit.* stretch to; **animum attendere,** direct attention to, notice, attend to.

Atticus -ī, *m.,* Titus Pomponius Atticus, *business man and literary figure, long resident of Athens, Cicero's close friend*

at-tineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, pertain to, concern

* **at-tingō (ad-tangō), -ere, -tigī, -tāctum,** touch, reach, be related to

at-tollō, -ere, raise *or* lift up

at-tonitus, -a, -um, thunderstruck, astonished

at-tulī: *see* **ad-ferō**

* **auctor, -ōris,** *m.,* author, leader, supporter, originator, founder, instigator

* **auctōritās, -tātis,** *f.,* authority, power, influence, decision, bidding; official record

* **audācia, -ae,** *f.,* daring, insolence

audāx, *gen.* **-ācis,** bold, daring

* **audeō, -ēre, ausus sum,** dare

* **audiō** (4), hear, learn; listen to, obey; examine a case in court

audītus, -ūs, *m.,* hearing

* **au-ferō, -ferre, ab-stulī, ab-lātum,** carry away *or* off, remove, steal; destroy

au-fugiō, -ere, -fūgī, flee away, escape

* **augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctum,** increase, enlarge

augurium, -ī, *n.,* augury, interpretation of omens; omen

auguror, -ārī, -ātus sum, *lit.* prophesy by augury; conjecture, surmise

augustus, -a, -um, revered, august

* **aura, -ae,** *f.,* air, breeze, wind

* **aureus, -a, -um,** of gold, golden

* **auris, -is,** *f.,* ear

aurōra, -ae, *f.,* dawn; **Aurōra,** *goddess of the dawn*

* **aurum, -ī,** *n.,* gold

auspicium, -ī, *n.,* divination from omens given by birds, auspices; omen

* **aut,** *conj.,* or; **aut . . . aut,** either . . . or

* **autem,** *postpositive conj.,* however; moreover

auxilium, -ī, *n.*, aid, assistance

avāritia, -ae, *f.*, greed, avarice

avārus, -a, -um, greedy, avaricious;
adv. avārē

avēna, -ae, *f.*, wild oats; shepherd's
pipe

Aventīnum, -ī, *n.*, Aventine Hill *in
Rome*

aveō, -ēre, desire

Avernus, -a, -um, of Avernus, *the
infernal regions, or Hades*

ā-vertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum, turn
away

avidus, -a, -um, eager, desirous,
longing; greedy, avaricious

avis, -is, *f.*, bird; omen

avītus, -a, -um, ancestral, hereditary

avunculus, -ī, *m.*, uncle (*on mother's
side*)

B

Babylōnius, -a, -um, Babylonian

Baccha, -ae, *f.*, a Bacchante, female
worshipper of Bacchus

Bacchus, -ī, *m.*, *god of fertility, wine,
and literary inspiration*

baculum, -ī, *n.*, staff

balineum, -ī, *n.*, bath

barbarus, -a, -um, foreign,
barbarian, uncivilized

basis, -is, *f.*, pedestal, base

* beātus, -a, -um, happy, fortunate,
prosperous; blessed; *adv.* beātē

Bēlides, -um, *f. pl.*, the Danaïdes,
*grand-daughters of Belus,
condemned in Tartarus to draw
water eternally*

bellicus, -a, -um, of war, belonging
to war

* bellum, -ī, *n.*, war

bēlua, -ae, *f.*, beast

* bene, *adv.*, well, rightly; quite,
thoroughly; *compar.* melius; *superl.*
optimē

bene-dīcō, -ere, -dīxī, -dictum, speak
well of, praise; bless (*EL*)

benedictus, -a, -um, blessed (*EL*)

beneficentia, -ae, *f.*, beneficence,
charity

beneficium, -ī, *n.*, kindness, favor

* bene-(beni)volentia, -ae, *f.*, good will,
kindness, favor

benignē, *adv.*, kindly, in a friendly
fashion

benignitās, -tātis, *f.*, kindness,
friendliness, courtesy

benignus, -a, -um, kind, beneficent

benivolentia: *see* benevolentia

Berecyntius, -a, -um, Phrygian
(Berecyntus, *a mountain in
Phrygia*)

bestia, -ae, *f.*, beast, animal

* bibō, -ere, bibī, drink

bīduum, -ī, *n.*, a period of two days

bīnī, -ae, -a, *distrib. numeral*, two
each, two (*nouns normally pl.*)

bis, *adv.*, twice

blanditia, -ae, *f.*, blandishment

bonitās, -tātis, *f.*, goodness

* bonus, -a, -um, good; worthy, loyal;
bona, -ōrum, *n. pl.*, good things,
goods, property; *compar.* melior,
-ius, better; *superl.* optimus,
-a, -um, best, very good, excellent

Boōtēs, -ae *or* -ī (*acc.* -ēn), *m.*,
constellation of the Plowman

bōs, bovis (*pl. gen.* boum; *dat. and
abl.* bōbus), *m./f.*, ox, cow

bracchium, -ī, *n.*, arm, *strictly* the
forearm

* brevis, -e, short, brief; shallow; brevī,

as adv. (sc. **tempore**), in a short time

brevitās, -tātis, *f.,* shortness; brevity, conciseness

Britannia, -ae, *f.,* Britain

Brundisīnus, -a, -um, of Brundisium, *a port on the heel of Italy*

Brutus, -ī, *m., a famous cognomen:* L. Junius Brutus, *who freed Rome from Tarquinius Superbus and was elected to the first Roman consulship;* M. Junius Brutus, *assassin of Julius Caesar;* D. Junius Brutus, *a conspirator against Caesar*

bulla, -ae, *f.,* boss, stud; amulet

bustum, -ī, *n., often pl.,* tomb

buxum, -ī, *n.,* wood of the box tree

byssus, -ī, *f.,* cotton, cotton *or* linen material (*EL*)

C

C., *abbr. of* **Gaius,** *a praenomen*

cacūmen, -minis, *n.,* top, peak

* **cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsum,** fall, happen, perish

cadūcus, -a, -um, falling, frail, perishable

* **caecus, -a, -um,** blind; obscure, uncertain

* **caedēs, -is,** *f., lit.* a cutting; slaughter, murder

* **caedō, -ere, cecīdī, caesum,** cut, beat, slay

caelestis, -e, heavenly, celestial

caelitus, *late Lat. adv.,* from heaven

* **caelum, -ī,** *n.,* sky

caeruleus, -a, -um, blue, dark blue

Caesar, -aris, *m., a cognomen; especially* Gaius Julius Caesar

calamitās, -tātis, *f.,* misfortune, disaster, loss

calceāmentum, -ī, *n.,* shoe

calcō (1), tread on

Calendae, -ārum, *f. pl.,* the calends = the first day of a month

calidus, -a, -um, hot

cālīgō, -inis, *f.,* mist, fog, vapor, gas

calliditās, -tātis, *f.,* skill; shrewdness

callidus, -a, -um, skilful, shrewd, crafty, cunning

calor, -ōris, *m.,* heat

calumnia, -ae, *f.,* deceitful pretense, chicanery, false statement

calumnior, -ārī, -ātus sum, accuse falsely, misrepresent

Calymnē, -ēs, *f., an island of the Sporades in the Aegean Sea off the southwestern coast of Asia Minor*

campester, -tris, -tre, like a field (**campus**), level

campus, -ī, *m.,* field, plain

candidus, -a, -um, gleaming white

Canīnius, -ī, *m., a Roman name*

canis, -is, *m./f.,* dog

Cannae, -ārum, *f. pl., a town in southeastern Italy where Hannibal disastrously defeated the Romans in* 216 B.C.

Cannēnsis, -e, of *Cannae*

* **canō, -ere, cecinī, cantum,** *sing,* compose (poems)

* **cantō** (1), sing, celebrate in song

cantus, -ūs, *m.,* song

cānus, -a, -um, gray; old

Canusium, -ī, *n., a town in Apulia in southern Italy*

capāx, *gen.* **-ācis,** able to hold; receptive, fit for

capessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum, seize
eagerly, enter upon

capillus, -ī, *m.,* hair, hair of the
head; *pl.,* the hair

* **capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum,** take,
receive, get, capture

* **Capitōlium, -ī,** *n.,* the Capitoline
Hill *in Rome*

capra, -ae, *f.,* a she-goat

* **captīvus, -a, -um,** captured in war;
captīvus, -ī, *m.,* a captive,
prisoner

captō (1), *freq. of* **capiō,** try to take,
snatch at, pluck at, desire

Capua, -ae, *f., city in Campania*

* **caput, capitis,** *n.,* head, life

cardō, -inis, *m.,* hinge

* **careō, -ēre, -uī,** be without, lack; be
deprived of, miss; + *abl.*

* **caritās, -tātis,** *f.,* dearness, love,
esteem, affection; high price

* **carmen, -minis,** *n.,* song; lyric poem

carnālis, -e, fleshly, carnal (*EL*)

carō, carnis, *f.,* flesh

* **carpō, -ere, carpsī, carptum,** pluck,
gather, make use of, enjoy; tear to
pieces, censure, slander, revile

Carthāginiēnsis, -e, Carthaginian

Carthāgō, -inis, *f.,* Carthage, *famous
city and rival of Rome in north
Africa*

* **cārus, -a, -um,** dear

Cassius, -ī, *m.,* Cassius, *especially*
C. Cassius Longinus, *the assassin
of Julius Caesar*

cassus, -a, -um, empty, hollow,
useless, vain

castellum, -ī, *n.,* fort

castīgō (1), reprove; punish

* **castra, -ōrum,** *n. pl.,* camp; **castra
pōnere,** pitch *or* make camp

* **cāsus, -ūs,** *m., lit.* a falling *or* fall
(**cadō**); accident, chance;
misfortune; **cāsū,** *abl.,* by chance

catēna, -ae, *f.,* chain

Catō, -ōnis, *m., famous cognomen,
especially* Cato the Censor *and*
Cato of Utica, *his Stoic grandson*

* **causa, -ae,** *f.,* cause, reason; sake;
case, situation; excuse, pretext;
causā *with a preceding genitive,* for
the sake of, on account of

cautus, -a, -um, cautious, careful;
secure

cavea, -ae, *f.,* excavated place;
auditorium, theater

* **caveō, -ēre, cāvī, cautum,** beware of;
take care, see to it (that)

-ce, *demonstrative enclitic added to
some pronouns (and adverbs):*
huius-ce bellī, of this (here) war

cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessum, go,
withdraw; yield to, submit, grant

celebrātiō, -ōnis, *f.,* crowded
assembly; festival, celebration

celebritās, -tātis, *f.,* large crowd,
crowded condition; frequency;
fame

celebrō (1), celebrate; honor, make
famous

cēlō (1), hide, conceal

celsus, -a, -um, high, lofty, noble

cēna, -ae, *f.,* dinner

cēnō (1), dine

* **cēnseō, -ēre, cēnsuī, cēnsum,**
estimate, think, judge; advise,
vote, decree

centuriātus, -a, -um, divided into
centuries (groups of 100)

cēra, -ae, *f.,* wax, writing tablet
covered with wax

Cereālis, -e, of Ceres

Cerēs, Cereris, *f.,* the Roman goddess of agriculture and grain

* **cernō, -ere, crēvī, crētum,** see, discern, distinguish, decide

* **certāmen, -minis,** *n.,* contest, struggle, fight

* **certē,** *adv.,* certainly, surely, at least
  certō, *adv.,* with certainty, without doubt, really

* **certō** (1), fight, struggle, contend, compete

* **certus, -a, -um,** definite, certain, sure, fixed, resolved upon, reliable; **aliquem certiōrem facere,** to make someone more certain = to inform him; **certior fīō,** I am informed
  cervīcal, -ālis, *n.,* pillow
  cessō (1), delay

* **cēterus, -a, -um,** the other, the rest, *mostly in pl.; adv.* **cēterum,** but, however

* **cētus, -ī,** *m.,* whale (*pl.* = **cēte,** *a Greek neuter form, sometimes also used as a singular*)
  ceu, *adv.,* as, just as
  Chaos, *nom. and acc. n.,* empty space, the lower world
  charta, -ae, *f.,* papyrus paper; letter, poem, document, etc.
  chorus, -ī, *m.,* choral dance; choral band, chorus

* **Christiānus, -ī,** *m.,* a Christian

* **Christus, -ī,** *m.,* Christ
  Chrȳsippus, -ī, *m., Stoic philosopher*

* **cibus, -ī,** *m.,* food
  Cicerō, -ōnis, *m.:* (1) Marcus Tullius Cicero, *orator, statesman, and author,* 106–43 B.C.; (2) *his son,* Marcus Tullius Cicero; (3) *his brother,* Quintus Tullius Cicero

Ciconēs, -um, *m. pl., a Thracian people*

Cilix, -icis, *m.,* a Cilician (from Asia Minor)

cingō, -ere, cīnxī, cīnctum, surround, gird (on)

cinis, -eris, *m.,* ashes

* **circā,** *adv.,* around, round about; *prep. + acc.,* around, about

circuitus, -ūs, *m.,* circular path, circuit

circulus, -ī, *m.,* circle, circular space

circum, *adv. and prep. + acc.,* around, near

circum-arō (1), plow around

circum-dō, -are, -dedī, -datum, put around; surround with

circum-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, carry around, turn around

circum-fluō, -ere, -fluxī, -fluxum, overflow; abound in, be rich

circum-fundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsum, pour around; *pass.,* stream around, gather around

circum-linō, -ere, smear around, spread over, cover

circumpadānus, -a, -um, about the Po (river)

circum-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, place around

circum-spectō (1), look around, look at

circum-stō, -āre, -stetī, stand around, surround

circum-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, surround, encircle

cithara, -ae, *f.,* a stringed instrument, lyre

cito, *adv.,* quickly; *compar.* **citius;** *superl.* **citissimē**

citō (1), arouse; call, summon, cite

citrō, *adv.,* to this side

cīvīlis, -e, civil, pertaining to citizens

* **cīvis, -is,** *m./f.,* citizen

* **cīvitās, -tātis,** *f.,* state; citizenship

* **clādēs, -is,** *f.,* injury, damage; calamity, disaster, slaughter, destruction

* **clam,** *adv.,* secretly, privately

 clāmitō (1), *frequentative of* **clāmō,** cry out (over and over)

* **clāmō** (1), cry, shout

* **clāmor, -ōris,** *m.,* shout, outcry, clamor, applause, noise

 clāritās, -tātis, *f.,* clearness, brightness

* **clārus, -a, -um,** bright, clear; famous, illustrious

* **classis, -is,** *f.,* fleet, navy

* **claudō, -ere, clausī, clausum,** close, shut

 clērus, -ī, *m.,* the clergy (*ML*)

 cliēns, -entis, *m.,* dependent, client, follower

 clīvus, -ī, *m.,* slope; hill

 Clūsīnus, -a, -um, of Clusium, *a city in Etruria*

 Clytaemnēstra, -ae, *f.,* Clytemnestra, *wife and murderess of Agamenmnon*

 Cn., *abbr. of the praenomen* **Gnaeus**

 co-aedificō (1), build on

 co-agitō (1), shake together (*EL*)

 cocles, -itis, *m.,* one-eyed man; Horatius Cocles, *who held the Tiber bridge against the Etruscans*

 coctilis, -e, *lit.* baked; made of brick

 cōdicillus, -ī, *m.,* writing tablet

 co-eō, -īre, -iī, -itum, go together, meet, assemble; be joined

* **coepī, -isse, coeptum,** *defective verb in perf. system only,* began

 coerceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, curb, check, repress

 coeptum, -ī, *n.,* work begun, undertaking

 coetus, -ūs, *m.,* a meeting, assembly

 cōgitātē, *adv.,* thoughtfully, deliberately

* **cōgitātiō, -ōnis,** *f.,* thinking; thought, plan, purpose, design

* **cōgitō** (1), think, ponder, intend, plan

 cognātiō, -ōnis, *f.,* relationship, family, connection

* **cognitiō, -ōnis,** *f.,* acquaintance with, knowledge of, consideration; legal inquiry, investigation

 cognitor, -ōris, *m.,* attorney; witness to one's identity

 cognōmen, -nōminis, *n.,* surname, *which follows the* **praenomen** *and the* **nomen**

* **cognōscō, -ere, cognōvī, cognitum,** become acquainted with, learn, recognize; *in perf. tenses,* know

 cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctum (coagō), drive *or* bring together, assemble; force, compel

 co-haereō, -ēre, -haesī, cohere, adhere, hang together

 co-hērēs, -ēdis, *m./f.,* coheir

 cohors, -ortis, *f.,* division of soldiers; retinue, band, crowd

 Collātīnus, -ī, *m.,* L. Tarquinius Collatinus, *colleague with Brutus in the first consulship at Rome*

 col-lātiō, -ōnis, *f., lit.* a bringing together, a comparison

 col-laudō (1), praise highly

* **collēga, -ae,** *m.,* partner in office, colleague

* **col-ligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum (con-**

legō), gather together, collect; infer, suppose

collis, -is, *m.,* hill

collum, -ī, *n.,* neck

* **colō, -ere, -uī, cultum,** cultivate, cherish, honor, worship

color, -ōris, *m.,* color

coluber, -brī, *m.,* serpent, snake

coma, -ae, *f.,* hair (of the head)

* **comes, -itis,** *m./f.,* companion, comrade

comitātus, -ūs, *m.,* attendance, retinue, escort

* **comitium, -ī,** *n.,* assembly place; **comitia, -ōrum,** *n. pl.,* public assembly, an election

comitō (1), accompany, attend

commeātus, -ūs, *m.,* provisions, supplies

commemorātiō, -ōnis, *f.,* mention, remembrance

* **commemorō** (1), mention, relate

commentārius, -ī, *m.,* memorandum, commentary; record

commentātiō, -ōnis, *f.,* meditation, study, preparation

commentīcius, -a, -um, invented, fictitious

commentor, -ārī, -ātus sum, study, consider, practice (something oratorical or literary)

com-minus, *adv.,* hand to hand, at close quarters

* **com-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum,** commit, entrust; be guilty of; allow it to happen (that)

commoditās, -tātis, *f.,* advantage, comfort

commodō (1), furnish, lend

commodum, -ī, *n.,* convenience, advantage

* **commodus, -a, -um,** suitable, advantageous, favorable, agreeable, easy, pleasant; *adv.* **commodē**

* **com-moveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum,** move greatly, stir, affect; disturb, alarm

commūnicō (1), make common, share, communicate, confer

com-mūniō (4), fortify on all sides

* **commūnis, -e,** common, general, universal, public; *adv.* **commūniter,** jointly, together

commūnitās, -tātis, *f.,* community, fellowship

com-mūtātiō, -ōnis, *f.,* change; exchange

* **com-mūtō** (1), change completely, alter; exchange

com-parātiō, -ōnis, *f.,* preparation, acquiring; comparison

com-parō (1) **[par,** equal], to match, compare

com-parō (1) **[parare],** prepare, make ready, establish

compellō (1), call; rebuke, chide

com-pellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum, bring together, collect; drive, compel

comperiō, -īre, -perī, -pertum, find out, learn, discover

compescō, -ere, -pescuī, check, restrain

competēns, *gen.* **-entis,** appropriate

com-petītor, -ōris, *m.,* competitor

com-placeō, -ēre, -placuī, -placitum, please greatly

com-plector, -ī, -plexus sum, embrace

complexus, -ūs, *m.,* embrace

com-plōrātus, -ūs, *m.,* loud wailing, lamentation

com-plūrēs, -a, *pl.,* several, many

* **com-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum,** put together, compose

compos, -potis, in possession of, endowed with

com-positus, -a, -um, *lit.* put together; well arranged, prepared, calm

com-prehendō, -ere, -hendī, -hēnsum, seize, arrest; perceive, comprehend

com-primo, -ere, -pressī, pressum, press together, embrace; restrain

compunctiō, -ōnis, *f.,* humility, remorse (*EL*)

cōnātus, -ūs, *m.,* attempt

* **con-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum,** depart; yield, grant, concede

concessus, -ūs, *m.: only in abl.* **concessū,** by permission

con-cidō, -ere, -cidī, fall down in a heap, collapse, perish

conciliātrīx, -īcis, *f.,* uniter

conciliō (1), bring together, win over, reconcile

concilium, -ī, *n.,* council; assembly

con-citō (1), stir up, excite

con-clāmō (1), shout together, cry out, shout loudly

con-clūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsum, shut up, close, conclude

con-cordia, -ae, *f.,* concord, unity, harmony

con-cupīscō, -ere, -pīvī *or* **-piī, -pītum,** long for, eagerly desire

con-currō, -ere, -currī, -cursum run *or* rush together, assemble

concursō (1), run about, travel about

con-cursus, -ūs, *m.,* a running together, attack, encounter

condemnō (1), condemn, blame

condiciō, -ōnis, *f.,* agreement; condition, terms

conditor, -ōris, *m.,* founder

* **con-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditum,** put together, found, establish, build; compose; lay away, bury

con-doleō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, feel great pain, suffer greatly; + *dat.,* suffer with another (*EL*)

* **cōn-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, collātum,** bring together, compare, devote, apply; **sē cōnferre,** betake oneself, go

* **cōn-fertus, -a, -um,** closely packed, dense, crowded

confessiō, -ōnis, *f.,* confession, admission

cōnfessor, -ōris, *m.,* one who confesses Christianity, a martyr (*EL*)

cōn-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, accomplish, finish, produce; wear out, weaken, exhaust, destroy

* **cōn-fīdō, -ere, -fīsus sum,** have confidence in, trust, be confident

cōn-fīrmō (1), make firm; assert, affirm

cōn-fiteor, -ērī, -fessus sum, confess, acknowledge

cōn-flīctō (1), *lit.* strike together; ruin; be tormented, be afflicted

cōn-flīgō, -ere, -flīxī, -flīctum, collide, clash, fight

cōn-flō (1), *lit.* blow together; melt metals; forge, produce

cōn-fluō, -ere, -fluxī, flow together, stream in, flock together

cōn-fōrmō (1), form, shape, fashion

cōn-fortō (1), strengthen greatly (*EL*)

cōn-foveō, -ēre, -fōvī, -fōtum, to
warm, cherish, foster

cōn-fringō, -ere, -frēgī, -frāctum,
break to pieces, destroy

cōn-fugiō, -ere, -fūgī, flee (to), take
refuge, have recourse (to)

cōn-fundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsum,
confuse, disturb, confound

cōnfūtō (1), check, repress, silence

con-glūtinō (1), glue *or* cement
together, bind closely

con-gredior, -ī, -gressus sum, come
together, meet; fight

con-gregō (1), collect into a flock *or*
herd; gather together

con-gruō, -ere, -uī, come together,
agree, harmonize

* con-iciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, throw
together, cast, force; conjecture

con-iectūra, -ae, *f.,* conjecture,
inference

con-iūnctiō, -ōnis, *f.,* a joining;
union, association, bond; intimacy

* con-iūnctus, -a, -um (*partic. of*
coniungō), joined together, united

* con-iungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnctum, join
together, unite

* coniūnx, -iugis, *f.,* wife; *sometimes
m.,* husband

con-iūrō (1), swear together;
conspire

con-lēga: *see* collēga

cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum, try, attempt

con-queror, -ī, -questus sum,
complain (loudly), lament, deplore

con-quiēscō, -ere, -quiēvī, -quiētum,
become quiet, find rest

con-quīrō, -ere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītum,
search out

cōn-salūtō (1), greet, salute

cōnsānēscō, -ere, -sānuī, become
healthy, get well, heal

cōn-sanguineus, -a, -um, of the same
blood, related; *as a noun,* brother,
m., sister, *f.*

* Cōnsānus, -a, -um, of Consa, *a city
in south central Italy*

cōn-scendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsum,
ascend, mount, climb, go on
board

cōn-scientia, -ae, *f., lit.* knowledge
(in oneself), consciousness,
conscience

cōn-scius, -a, -um, *lit.* having
knowledge with another;
cognizant of, aware, conscious; *m.
and f. as a noun,* accomplice

cōnsecrō (1), dedicate, consecrate

cōn-sector, -ārī, -ātus sum, follow,
pursue, strive after

cōn-senēscō, -ere, -senuī, become
old, grow weak, lose power

cōn-sēnsiō, -ōnis, *f.,* agreement,
harmony

cōn-sentāneus, -a, -um, agreeing
with, suitable; reasonable,
consistent; **cōnsentāneum est,** it is
reasonable (+ *inf. or* ut-*clause as
subject*)

cōn-sentiō, -īre, -sēnsī, -sēnsum,
agree, be of one accord

* cōn-sequor, -ī, -secūtus sum, follow,
result; follow up, pursue; gain

cōn-serō, -ere, -seruī, -sertum,
connect, join, bind, engage in
battle

* cōn-servō (1), save, preserve;
maintain, observe

cōnsīderātē, *adv.,* thoughtfully,
carefully

cōnsīderātus, -a, -um, thoughtful, considerate

cōnsīderō (1), contemplate, consider, weigh

cōn-sīdō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessum, sit down, take up a position

* **cōnsilium, -ī,** *n.,* counsel, advice, plan, purpose; judgment, wisdom; council, panel (of jurors)

* **cōn-sistō, -ere, -stitī,** take one's stand, halt, stop, stay; be based on, consist of (+ **in** + *abl.*)

cōnsōlātor, -ōris, *m.,* consoler

* **cōnsōlō** (1), comfort, console (*According to Lewis and Short this active form is anteclassical and very rare. The regular class. form is the deponent* **cōnsōlor.**)

cōnsōlor, -ārī, -ātus sum, console, comfort

cōnsors, *gen.* **-sortis,** sharing in; *as a noun,* a sharer in, partner

cōn-spectus, -a, -um (*partic. of* **cōnspiciō,** to view), visible

cōn-spectus, -ūs, *m.,* sight, view

* **cōn-spiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum,** look at, observe; *pass. often* = be conspicuous

cōn-stāns, *gen.* **-stantis,** standing firm, steady, constant, steadfast

* **cōnstantia, -ae,** *f.,* firmness, steadfastness, strength of character

cōn-sternō, -ere, -strāvī, -strātum, confound, alarm, terrify, dismay

* **cōn-stituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum,** place, establish, arrange; determine, decide

* **cōn-stō, -āre, -stitī, -stātūrus,** stand firm; consist of, be composed of,

depend on; cost; **cōnstat,** *impers.,* it is agreed; **ratiō cōnstat,** the account balances

cōn-stringō, -ere, -strīnxī, -strictum, bind, fasten

cōn-suēscō, -ere, -suēvī, -suētus, be accustomed

cōnsuetūdō, -dinis, *f.,* custom, practice, way of life, close and personal relationship

* **cōnsul, -ulis,** *m.,* consul

cōnsulāris, -e, of a consul, consular; **cōnsulāris, -is,** *m.,* an ex-consul, a person of consular rank

cōnsulātus, -ūs, *m.,* consulship

* **cōnsulō, -ere, -uī, -tum,** deliberate; consult; + *dat.,* have regard for, look out for the interests of

cōnsultātiō, -ōnis, *f.,* deliberation, inquiry, asking for advice

cōnsultō (1), consider carefully, weigh, ponder

cōnsultum, -ī, *n.,* decree, *especially* **senātūs cōnsultum,** a decree of the senate; **cōnsultō,** *as adv.,* intentionally, deliberately

cōn-summō (1), sum up: finish, complete

cōn-sūmō, -ere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptum, use up, consume

con-tāctus, -ūs, *m.,* touch

con-tāgiō, -ōnis, *f., lit.* a touching; contagion, infection

* **contemnō, -ere, -tempsī, -temptum,** scorn, despise, disparage

contemplor, -ārī, -ātus sum, contemplate, consider carefully; look at, view

contemptiō, -ōnis, *f.,* contempt, disregard

contemptus, -ūs, *m.,* disdain,
contempt

con-tendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum,
strain, strive, contend, hasten

* contentus, -a, -um, contented,
satisfied

con-terminus, -a, -um, adjoining

con-terō, -ere, -trīvī, -trītum, wear
out, consume, spend (time),
destroy

con-terreō, -ēre, -terruī, -territum,
terrify, frighten thoroughly

contiguus, -a, -um, touching,
adjoining

con-tinentia, -ae, *f.,* restraint,
temperance

* con-tineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum, hold
together, contain, restrain; *pass.,*
consist of, depend on

con-tingō, -ere, -tigī, -tactum, touch;
happen, befall; concern

continuus, -a, -um, uninterrupted,
successive

* contiō, -ōnis, *f.,* meeting, assembly;
a speech made to the assembly

* contrā, *adv.,* on the contrary;
prep. + acc., against, contrary to

con-tractus, -a, -um, *partic. of*
contrahō

con-trahō, -ere, -traxī, -tractum,
lit. draw together; transact,
complete a business arrangement,
make a contract; shorten, reduce,
contract

contrārius, -a, -um, opposite,
contrary

con-trīstāns, *gen.* -antis, sorrowing

con-trīstō (1), make sad, sadden;
make gloomy

contubernālis, -is, *m.,* comrade

contumācia, -ae, *f.,* obstinacy,
haughtiness

con-turbō (1), throw into disorder,
confound, disturb

con-valēscō, -ere, -valuī, become
strong, recover, convalesce

con-vellō, -ere, -vellī, -vulsum, tear,
rend

con-veniēns, *gen.* -entis, agreeing,
harmonious, appropriate

convenientia, -ae, *f., lit.* a coming
together; agreement, harmony,
symmetry

* con-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, come
together, meet; to be agreed upon;
convenit, it is agreed

conventiō, -ōnis, *f.,* agreement,
compact

conventum, -ī, *n.,* agreement,
compact

* convertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum, turn
about, change, reverse; return

convīctor, -ōris, *m., lit.* one who lives
(**vīvere**) with another, associate

con-vincō, -ere, -vīcī, -victum,
overcome, convict, prove guilty

convīvium, -ī, *n.,* feast, banquet;
dinner

co-operor, -ārī, -ātus sum, work
with, cooperate

co-orior, -īrī, -ortus sum, arise,
break out

* cophinus, -ī, *m.,* basket, chest

* cōpia, -ae, *f.,* abundance, supply,
fullness, opportunity; fluency; *pl.*
wealth, resources, forces, troops

cōpiōsē, *adv. of* cōpiōsus

cōpiōsus, -a, -um, well supplied,
abounding, abundant, plentiful,
copious

cōpulō (1), join together, couple, unite

* **cor, cordis,** *n.,* heart; **cordī esse,** be dear to, to please

cōram, *adv.,* face to face, in one's own person, personally; *prep. + abl.,* in the presence of

Corfīnium, -ī, *n., a town in central Italy*

Coriolānus, -ī, *m., an early Roman traitor dissuaded by his mother from attacking the city*

Cornēlius, -ī, *m., name of men of a famous Roman gens (clan) which includes:* P. Cornelius Scipio, *father of the following:* P. Cornelius Scipio Africanus Maior, *conqueror of Hannibal;* P. Cornelius Scipio Aemilianus Africanus Minor, *victor in the Third Punic War in 146* B.C.

cornū, -ūs, *n.,* horn; wing of an army

corōna, -ae, *f.,* wreath, garland

corporeus, -a, -um, corporeal, fleshy

* **corpus, -oris,** *n.,* body

cor-rigō, -ere, -rēxī, -rēctum, set right, correct; reform

cor-ripiō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptum, seize; attack, blame

cor-ruō, -ere, -ruī, fall together, fall to the ground; be ruined

* **cōtīdiē (cōttīdiē),** daily, every day

crassus, -a, -um, thick, dense; fat; rude

Cratippus, -ī, *m., Athenian philosopher of 1st cent.* B.C.

creātor, -ōris, *m.,* creator, maker

creātūra, -ae, *f.,* creature, creation (*EL*)

crēber, -bra, -brum, thick, frequent, crowded

crēbrō, *adv.,* frequently

crēdibilis, -e, credible, worthy of belief

* **crēdō, -ere, crēdidī, crēditum,** believe, give credence to, trust, + *dat. or acc. or both*

cremō (1), consume by fire, burn

* **creō** (1), create, choose, elect

crepitus, -ūs, *m.,* rattling, rustling, noise

crēscō, -ere, crēvī, crētum, increase, grow, thrive, prosper

Crēta, -ae (acc. **-am** *or* **-ēn**), *f.,* Crete

crēterra, -ae, *f.,* mixing bowl

* **crīmen, -minis,** *n.,* charge, accusation; *sometimes* fault, offense, guilt, crime

crīminor, -ārī, -ātus sum, accuse, denounce, charge

croceus, -a, -um, saffron yellow

cruciātus, -ūs, *m.,* torture, torment

cruci-fīgō, -ere, -fīxī, -fīxum, fix to the cross, crucify

* **cruciō** (1), crucify, torture

* **crūdēlis, -e,** cruel

* **crūdēlitās, -tātis,** *f.,* cruelty, severity

crūdēliter, *adv.,* cruelly

cruentātus, -a, -um, stained with blood (*cp.* **cruor**)

cruentus, -a, -um, bloody

* **cruor, -ōris,** *m.,* blood, gore

* **crux, crucis,** *f.,* the cross

cubiculum, -ī, *n.,* bedroom

cucurrī: *see* **currō**

culmen, -minis, *n.,* top, summit

* **culpa, -ae,** *f.,* fault, blame

cultus, -ūs, cultivation; culture, civilization, style of living, refinement

* **cum,** *conj., usually with subjunct.,* when, since, although; *also with*

indic., when; **cum . . . tum,** both
. . . and, not only . . . but also

cum, *prep.* + *abl.,* with

cumulātē, *adv.,* heaped up,
abundantly, completely

cūnctātiō, -ōnis, *f.,* a delaying,
hesitation

cūnctātor, -ōris, *m.,* delayer

cūnctor, -ārī, -ātus sum, delay,
hesitate

* **cūnctus, -a, -um,** all (together as a
whole), whole

* **cupiditās, -tātis,** *f.,* desire, passion;
avarice; partisanship

cupīdō, -inis, *f.,* desire; **Cupīdō, -inis,**
m., Cupid, *son of Venus*

cupidus, -a, -um, desirous, eager,
greedy, avaricious, fond; *adv.*
cupidē

* **cupiō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum,** wish eagerly,
desire, long for

cūr, *adv.,* why?

* **cūra, -ae,** *f.,* care, concern, anxiety

* **cūria, -ae,** *f.,* senate-house; *in EL* the
court (*e.g.,* of God)

Cūriatiī, -ōrum, *m.,* the three Alban
brothers who fought the three
Horatian brothers

Cūriō, -ōnis, *m.,* a Roman cognomen

Curius, -ī, *m.,* Roman nomen; espec.
the conqueror of Pyrrhus

* **cūrō** (1), care (for), cure, attend to,
take care, see to it (that), manage;
with gerundive, have a thing done

* **currō, -ere, cucurrī, cursum,** run,
hurry

currus, -ūs, *m.,* chariot

* **cursus, -ūs,** *m.,* a running, course,
journey; racecourse

curvāmen, -minis, *n.,* a bending, an
arching, curve

* **custōdia, -ae,** *f.,* custody, prison; a
guard, sentinel

custōdiō (4), guard, preserve,
observe

custōs, -ōdis, *m./f.,* guard, watchman

D

Daedalus, -ī, *m., legendary Athenian
craftsman who built the labyrinth
in Crete*

* **damnō** (1), condemn, censure

damnōsus, -a, -um, harmful,
destructive

damnum, -ī, *n.,* damage, injury,
loss

Danaē, Danaēs, *f., daughter of
Acrisius, mother of Perseus by
Jupiter*

daps, -pis, *f.,* feast, banquet (*both sg.
and pl.*)

dator, -ōris, *m.,* giver

David, *indecl., the great king of the
Hebrews*

* **dē,** *prep.* + *abl.,* from, down from;
concerning, about

dea, -ae, *f.,* goddess

* **dēbeō, -ēre, dēbuī, dēbitum,** owe,
ought, must

dēbilitō (1), weaken

decānus, -ī, *m.,* dean (*EL*)

dē-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum,
withdraw, depart; depart from
life, die

decem, *indecl.,* ten

December, -bris, -bre, of *or*
belonging to December

dē-cernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētum,
decide, judge, decree

dē-cerpō, -ere, -cerpsī, -cerptum,
pluck off, gather

dē-certō (1), fight out, fight through, fight to a decision

dēcessus, -ūs, *m.,* departure; death

* **decet, -ēre, decuit,** *impers.,* it is proper, fitting, becoming, decent (physically *or* morally), it befits *or* becomes

dē-cǐdō (-cǎdō), -ere, -cǐdī, fall down, sink; perish

deciēs, *adv.,* ten times

decimus, -a, -um, tenth; **decima, -ae,** *f., sc.* **pars,** a tithe

dē-cipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, deceive

dē-clārō (1), make clear, declare; declare as elected to office

dē-clīnō (1) turn away, avoid, shun

decor, -ōris, *m.,* charm, beauty, grace

decorō (1), adorn, beautify

decōrus, -a, -um, fitting, becoming, seemly, proper, decent, graceful; **decōrum, -ī,** *n.,* propriety, grace

dē-currō, -ere, -(cu)currī, -cursum, run down

decus, -oris, *n.,* honor, worth, virtue

dē-decet, -ēre, -decuit, *impers.,* it is unfitting, unbecoming

dē-decus, -oris, *n.,* disgrace, infamy, shame

dē-dicō (1), dedicate, consecrate

dē-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, give up, surrender

dē-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead away *or* off, draw down; lead, conduct

dē-fatīgō (1), to weary, fatigue, tire

dēfectiō, -ōnis, *f.,* desertion, revolt

* **dē-fendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsum,** ward off; defend, protect

dēfēnsiō, -ōnis, *f.,* defense

* **dē-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum,** bear off; report; accuse

* **dē-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum,** fail; revolt, desert

dē-fīgō, -ere, -fīxī, -fīxum, fix, fasten, drive down

dē-fīniō (4), bound, limit, define

dēfīnītiō, -ōnis, *f.,* definition

dē-flagrō (1), burn down, consume by fire; be destroyed by fire

dē-fleō, -ēre, -flēvī, -flētum, weep for, bewail

dē-fluō, -ere, -fluxī, -fluxum, flow down, flow away, vanish

dēfōrmō (1), disfigure, spoil

dē-fungor, -ī, -fūnctus sum, perform, discharge, complete; die

dē-glūtiō (4), swallow down (*EL*)

dēgō, -ere, dēgī (dē-agō), pass (time *or* life), live

dehinc, *adv., lit.* from here; thereupon, henceforth

dē-iciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, throw down, ward off, avert

dein, *adv.* = **deinde**

* **deinde** *or* **dein,** *adv.,* from there, then, next, in the second place

* **dēlectātiō, -ōnis,** *f.,* delight, pleasure

* **dēlectō** (1), delight, please, interest

dē-lēgō (1), assign, delegate

dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, destroy, wipe out, erase

dēlīberātiō, -ōnis, *f.,* deliberation, consideration

dē-līberō (1), weigh carefully, consider

dēlicātē, *adv.,* luxuriously

dēlicātus, -a, -um, charming, luxurious, dainty, fastidious

dēliciae, -ārum, *f., usually only in pl.,*

delight, pleasure; sweetheart,
  darling
dē-ligō (1), bind
dē-ligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum, pick out,
  choose, select
dē-līrō (1), be mad, insane, rave
Dēlos, -ī, *f., a small island of the*
  Cyclades in the Aegean Sea, sacred
  as the birthplace of Apollo and
  Artemis (Diana)
dēlūbrum, -ī, *n.,* shrine, temple
dē-migrō (1), emigrate, depart
dē-minuō, -ere, -minuī, -minūtum,
  diminish
dē-missus, -a, -um (*partic. of*
  dēmittō), *lit.* lowered; low, weak,
  humble, downcast
dē-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, *lit.*
  send down; thrust *or* plunge into,
  lower, let down
dēmō, -ere, -dēmpsī, -dēmptum, take
  away, remove
dēmum, *adv.,* at length, at last
dēnārius, -ī, *m., a Roman silver coin*
* **dēnique,** *adv.,* finally, at last
dēns, -ntis, *m.,* tooth
dēnsus, -a, -um, thick, dense
dē-nūdō (1), lay bare, denude
dē-nūntiō (1), announce, declare,
  proclaim, threaten; *not* denounce
de-orsum, *adv.,* downward, down,
  below
dē-pecūlātor, -ōris, *m.,* plunderer,
  embezzler
dē-pecūlor, -ārī, -ātus sum, plunder,
  rob
dē-pellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum, drive
  away, ward off
dē-plōrō (1), weep, bewail, bewail
  the loss of, complain of
* **dē-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum,** put

down, deposit; lay aside, give up,
  abandon, get rid of
dē-portō (1), carry off
dē-positum, -ī, *n.,* deposit, trust
dē-precor, -ārī, -ātus sum, avert by
  entreaty
* **dēprehendō, -ere, -hendī, -hēnsum,**
  seize, arrest; detect, observe,
  understand
dē-primō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum,
  press down, depress, sink
dē-ripiō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptum, snatch
  away, pull down
dē-ruptus, -a, -um, steep
* **dē-scendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsum,**
  descend, go down
dē-scrīptiō, -ōnis, *f.,* definition,
  description
* **dē-serō, -ere, -seruī, -sertum,** desert
dēsertus, -a, -um (*partic. of* **dēserō**),
  deserted, lonely
* **dēsīderium, -ī,** *n.,* longing (*especially*
  for what one misses or has lost),
  desire
* **dēsīderō** (1), long for, miss, desire;
  require; lose
dē-sīdō, -ere, -sēdī, sink, give way
dē-signō (1), mark out, signify; elect;
  dēsignātus, -a, -um, *as adj.,*
  chosen, elect
dē-siliō, -īre, -siliī, -sultum, leap
  down
* **dēsinō, -ere, -siī, -situm,** cease, stop,
  leave off
dēsolātus, -a, -um, forsaken, desolate
dē-spērātiō, -ōnis, *f.,* hopelessness,
  despair
dē-spērō (1), give up hope, despair
dē-spicientia, -ae, *f.,* contempt
dē-spiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum, look
  down on, scorn, despise

dē-spoliō (1), plunder, rob

dēspōnsātiō, -ōnis, *f.,* betrothal (*EL*)

dēspōnsō (1), betroth

dēstinō (1), determine, resolve, intend, destine

dē-stituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtum, set down; leave, abandon

dē-stitūtus, -a, -um (*partic. of* dēstituō), forsaken, helpless

dē-struō, -ere, -struxī, -structum, tear down, destroy

* dē-sum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, be wanting, fail (+ *dat.*)

dē-super, *adv.,* from above, above

dē-terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, frighten away, prevent, hinder

dētestābilis, -e, detestable, abominable

dē-trahō, -ere, -traxī, -tractum, take away, remove

dētrīmentum, -ī, *n.,* loss, damage, harm

dē-trūdō, -ere, -trūsī, -trūsum, thrust down *or* away, dislodge

dē-truncō (1), lop off; behead

* deus, -ī, *m.,* god; *voc.* = deus

dē-vāstō (1), lay waste, devastate

dē-vius, -a, -um, out of the way, off the road; dēvium, -ī, *n.* (*sc.* iter) a byway

dē-volō (1), *lit.* fly down; rush down

dē-volvō, -ere, -volvī, -volūtum, roll down, fall headlong

dēvōtiō, -ōnis, *f.,* a consecrating *or* vowing (*espec. of one's life*) *in class. Lat.;* piety, devotion *in EL*

dē-voveō, -ēre, -vōvī, -vōtum, vow, consecrate; curse

* dexter, -tra, -trum (*or* -tera, -terum), right, on the right

dextra, -ae, *f.* (*sc.* manus), right hand

diabolus, -ī, *m.,* devil (*EL*)

diaeta, -ae, *f.,* room

Diāna, -ae, *f., virgin goddess of the moon and of the hunt, sister of Apollo*

diciō, -ōnis, *f.,* authority, control, sway

* dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum, say, tell, speak; call, name; proclaim, appoint

* dictātor, -ōris, *m.,* dictator

dictitō (1), say repeatedly, over and over

dictō (1), dictate; compose

dictum, -ī, *n., lit.* thing said; a word; proverb

didicī: *see* discō

* diēs, diēī, *m./f.,* day; (period of) time; in diēs, from day to day; ad diem, at the appointed time, punctually

dif-ferentia, -ae, *f.,* difference

dif-ferō, -ferre, dis-tulī, dīlātum, differ, be different; report, circulate; put off, postpone

* dif-ficilis, -e, not easy, difficult, hard; surly, obstinate; *compar.* difficilior; *superl.* difficillimus; *adv.* difficiliter *or post-Augustan* difficile

dif-fugiō, -ere, -fūgī, -fugitum, flee in different directions, disperse

dif-fundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsum, pour forth in all directions, spread out, extend

digitus, -ī, *m.,* finger

* dignitās, -tātis, *f.,* worth, merit, honor, dignity, prestige

dignor, -ārī, -ātus sum, to deem worthy; deign, condescend

* **dignus, -a, -um,** worthy (of + *abl. or gen.*)

dī-gredior, -ī, -gressus sum, depart

dī-lēctus, -ūs, *m.,* a levy

dīligēns, *gen.* **-entis,** careful, assiduous, industrioius, diligent; *adv.* **dīligenter**

* **dīligentia, -ae,** *f.,* carefulness, attention, diligence

* **dīligō, -ere, -lēxi, -lēctum,** [*lit.* choose out] value, esteem, love,

dīmicātiō, -ōnis, *f.,* fight, combat, struggle

dīmicō (1), fight, struggle

* **dī-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum,** send away, send forth; let go, release, forgive

dī-moveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, move apart, separate

dīreptiō, -ōnis, *f.,* plundering

dī-rigō, -ere, -rēxī, -rēctum, *lit.* guide straight, arrange, direct

dir-imō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēmptum, take apart, separate, break up, end, disturb

dī-ripiō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptum, tear apart, plunder, rob

dī-rumpō, -ere, -rūpi, -ruptum, break apart, burst

dīs = deīs

dis-(di-, dif-, dir-), *prefix* = apart, away, not

dis-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, go away, depart

dis-cernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētum, separate; distinguish, discern, decide

discidium, -ī, *n.,* disaffection, alienation

disciplīna, -ae, *f.,* training, discipline, instruction

discipulus, -ī, *m.,* pupil; disciple

* **discō, -ere, didicī,** learn

* **dis-cordia, -ae,** *f.,* disagreement, dissension, strife

dis-cordō (1), disagree, quarrel

di-scrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum, distribute, assign

* **discrīmen, -minis,** *n.,* distinction, turning point, crisis, critical moment, peril

dis-crīminō (1), separate, divide

dis-cursus, -ūs, *m.,* *lit.* a running about to and fro, mad rush

dis-cutiō, -ere, -cussī, -cussum, shatter, scatter, destroy

dis-pār, *gen.* **-paris,** unequal

di-spergō, -ere, -spersī, -spersum, scatter, spread abroad

dispersē, *adv.,* here and there

dis-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, distribute, station at intervals

dis-putātiō, -ōnis, *f.,* discussion

* **dis-putō** (1), discuss, examine

dis-sēnsiō, -ōnis, *f.,* disagreement, dissension

dis-serō, -ere, -seruī, -sertum, discuss, argue

dis-sipō (1), scatter

dis-solvō, -ere, -solvī, -solūtum, dissolve, separate, release

dis-sonus, -a, -um, discordant, confused

dis-tineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum (dis, apart, + **teneō),** hold apart, separate; hinder, distract

di-stō, -āre, stand apart, lie at a distance, be distant

dis-trahō, -ere, -traxī, -tractum, draw apart, distract

* **diū,** *adv.,* long, for a long time; *compar.* **diūtius;** *superl.* **diūtissimē**

dīus, -a, -um: *see* dīvus

diūtinus, -a, -um, lasting, of long
duration

diūturnus, -a, -um, long-lasting

dī-vellō, -ere, -vellī, -vulsum, tear
apart

* dīversus, -a, -um, separate, different,
various

* dīves, *gen.* dīvitis, rich, wealthy;
compar. dīvitior *or* dītior; *superl.*
dīvitissimus *or* dītissimus

dīvidō, -ere, -vīsī, -vīsum, divide,
separate

dīvīnitus, *adv.,* divinely,
providentially

dīvīnus, -a, -um, divine; godlike,
excellent

dīvitiae, -ārum, *f. pl.,* riches, wealth

dīvus, -a, -um, divine; dīvus, -ī, *m.,* a
god; dīva, -ae, *f.,* goddess; dīvum,
-ī, *n.,* sky

* dō, dăre, dedī, dătum, give, offer,
furnish; litterās dare, write *or* mail
a letter

* doceō, -ēre, docuī, doctum, teach,
inform, explain

doctor, -ōris, *m.,* teacher

doctrīna, -ae, *f.,* learning, erudition;
teaching, instruction

doctus, -a, -um (*partic. of* doceō), *lit.*
taught; learned, well informed,
skilled

documentum, -ī, *n.,* example,
instance, pattern; proof

* doleō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, feel pain, be
pained, grieve

* dolor, -ōris, *m.,* pain, grief

dolōrōsus, -a, -um, full of sorrow
(*late Lat.*)

domesticus, -a, -um, pertaining to
the home *or* family, domestic

domicilium, -ī, *n.,* dwelling, abode

domina, -ae, *f.,* mistress of a
household, lady

dominātiō, -ōnis, *f.,* rule, dominion;
despotism

* dominus, -ī, *m.,* master, lord

Domitiānus, -ī, *m., Roman emperor*
A.D. *81−96*

* domus, -ūs, *f.,* house, home; domī
(*loc.*) at home; domum, (to) home;
domō, from home

* dōnec, *conj.,* as long as, until

dōnō (1), give, bestow

* dōnum, -ī, *n.,* gift

* dormiō (4), sleep

Druentia, -ae, *f.,* the Durance, *a
tributary of the Rhone*

dubitātiō, -ōnis, *f.,* doubt, hesitation

* dubitō (1), doubt, hesitate

dubius, -a, -um, doubtful, uncertain,
hesitant; dubium, -ī, *n.,* doubt,
uncertainty

ducentī, -ae, -a, two hundred

* dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum, lead;
consider, think

* dulcis, -e, sweet, pleasant, dear

* dum, *conj.,* while, as long as; until;
provided that

dumtaxat, *adv.,* at least, at any rate,
only

* duo, duae, duo, two

duodeciēs, *adv.,* twelve times

duplex, *gen.* -plicis, *adj.,* twofold,
double

dūrō (1), harden; endure; remain,
last

dūrus, -a, -um, tough, strong,
hard, harsh, cruel; *adv.* dūrē *and*
dūriter

* dux, ducis, *m./f.,* leader, guide,
commander

E

* **ē:** *see* **ex**

  ebur, eboris, *n.,* ivory
* **ecce,** *interj.,* look, see, behold

  Ecclēsiastēs, -ae, *m.,* the Preacher,
  one who addresses the assembly
  (*EL*)

  ecquid, *interrogative conj.,* whether

  ē-dīcō, -ere, -dīxī, -dictum, proclaim,
  declare, decree

  ē-dictum, -ī, *n.,* decree, proclamation

  ē-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, give forth;
  give birth to; tell, publish

  ē-doceō, -ēre, -docuī, -doctum, teach
  thoroughly, instruct

  ē-ducō (1), rear, educate

  ē-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead out

  effēminātē, *adv.,* effeminately, in
  unmanly fashion
* **ef-ferō, -ferre, extulī, ēlātum,** carry
  out, lift up, extol, praise; *pass.,* be
  carried away, be puffed up
* **ef-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum,**
  accomplish, bring about, cause

  ef-flōrēscō, -ere, -flōruī, blossom,
  flourish
* **ef-fugiō, -ere, -fūgī, -fugitum,** flee
  away, escape, avoid

  ef-fugium, -ī, *n.,* escape

  ef-fundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsum, pour
  out

  ef-fūsē, *adv.,* far and wide,
  extensively
* **egeō, -ēre, eguī,** be in need, need,
  lack, want; *often* + *abl.*

  ē-gerō, -ere, -gessī, -gestum, take
  away
* **ego, meī,** *1st personal pron.,* I; *pl.*
  nōs, nostrum/nostrī, we,
  sometimes = I

* **ē-gredior, -ī, -gressus sum,** go out

  ē-gregiē, *adv. of* **ēgregius**
* **ē-gregius, -a, -um,** *lit.* out from the
  herd; uncommon, extraordinary,
  excellent, remarkable,
  distinguished

  eia, *interj. indicating surprise, joy, or
  exhortation,* ah, ha, well then,
  come on

  e-iaculor (1), shoot out, spurt forth
* **ē-iciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum,** throw out,
  reject

  ē-lābor, -ī, -lāpsus sum, slip away,
  escape

  ē-labōrātus, -a, -um, *lit.* worked out;
  carefully finished

  ēlātiō, -ōnis, *f.,* exaltation

  ēlegāns, *gen.* **-antis,** choice, fine,
  tasteful, refined; fastidious

  elephantus, -ī, *m.,* elephant; ivory

  ē-levō (1), lift up, raise
* **ē-ligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum,** pick out,
  select

  ē-loquentia, -ae, *f.,* eloquence

  ēloquium, -ī, *n., poetic for* **ēloquentia**

  ē-loquor, -loquī, -locūtus sum, utter,
  say, speak

  ē-lūceō, -ēre, -lūxī, shine forth, be
  conspicuous

  ē-lūdō, -lūdere, -lūsī, -lūsum, play to
  the end; parry, ward off; outplay,
  outmaneuver

  ē-luō, -ere, -luī, -lūtum, wash away

  ē-mendō (1), free from faults,
  correct

  ē-mergō, -ere, -mersī, -mersum, come
  forth, emerge

  ē-micō, -āre, -uī, -ātum, spring forth,
  break forth

  ē-mineō, -ēre, -uī, project; stand out,
  be conspicuous

ē-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, send forth, let go forth

emō, -ere, ēmī, ēmptum, buy

ē-morior, -ī, -mortuus sum, die off, perish

ē-moveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, move out, remove

ēmptiō, -ōnis, *f.*, purchase

ēmptor, -ōris, *m.*, purchaser

ēn, *interjection,* see, lo, behold

ē-narrō (1), narrate, explain

* enim, *postpositive conj.,* for, indeed, certainly

enim-vērō, *adv.,* certainly, indeed, to be sure

ē-nītor, -ī, -nīxus (nīsus) sum, struggle, strive

ē-notō (1), make notes on

ēnsis, -is, *m.,* sword

* eō, *adv.,* to that place

* eō, īre, iī, itum, go

* eō-dem, *adv.,* to the same place

epigramma, -atis, *n.,* inscription, epigram

epistula (epistola), -ae, *f.,* letter, epistle

* epulor (1), feast, dine

* eques, equitis, *m.,* horseman, knight, businessman

equester, -tris, -tre, (of) cavalry, equestrian

* equidem, *adv. usually emphasizing the 1st person,* indeed, certainly, (I) for my part

equitātus, -ūs, *m.,* cavalry

* equus, -ī, *m.,* horse

era, -ae, *f.,* mistress (of a house)

Erebus, -ī, *m.,* the lower world, Hades

ē-rēctus, -a, -um (*partic. of* ē-rigō), erect, intent, excited

ergā, *prep. + acc.,* toward, in relation to

ergō, *adv.,* therefore

ē-rigō, -ere, -rēxī, -rēctum, direct *or* guide up; erect; excite

* ē-ripiō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptum, snatch away

errō (1), wander astray; err, be mistaken

* error, -ōris, *m., lit.* a wandering, straying; error, mistake, fault

ērudiō (4), teach

ērudītus, -a, -um, educated, learned, cultivated

ē-rumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, burst forth, break out

ē-ruō, -ere, -ruī, -rutum, pluck out, rescue

erus, -ī, *m.,* master (of a house), owner

ē-scendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsum, climb up, ascend

estō, *3rd per. sg. of fut. imper. of* sum, granted, *lit.* let it be; *also 2nd per. sg.,* be, you shall be

et, *conj.,* and; et . . . et, both . . . and; *adv.,* even, also, too

et-enim, *conj.,* for truly, and in fact

* etiam, *adv.,* even, also, still, even now

Etrūria, -ae, *f., a district north of Rome*

Etruscus, -a, -um, Etruscan; an Etruscan

et-sī, *conj.,* even if, although; and yet

Eumenides, -um, *f. pl.,* the (three) Furies, *who harassed men for their crimes*

Eurydicē, -ēs, *f., wife of Orpheus*

* ē-vādō, -ere, -vāsī, -vāsum, *lit.* go
  forth; escape; travel over
  ē-vagor, -ārī, -ātus sum, wander,
  spread (intrans.); transgress
* ē-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, come
  out, turn out, result, happen
  ē-ventus, -ūs, *m., lit.* outcome; result
  ē-vertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum,
  overturn, destroy
  ē-vidēns, *gen.* -entis, clear, evident
* ex *or* ē, *prep.* + *abl.,* from within,
  out of, from; because of; ex parte,
  in part
  ex-aequō (1), make equal, place on a
  level
  ex-altō (1), elevate, exalt
  ex-animis, -e, breathless, lifeless
  ex-ārdēscō, -ere, -ārsī, take fire,
  become hot, glow
  ex-audiō (4), hear, listen
  ex-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, go
  away from, go beyond, transgress
  excellō, -ere, excelluī, excelsum, be
  superior, surpass, excel
  excelsus, -a, -um, lofty, high
  ex-cerpō, -ere, -cerpsī, -cerptum, pick
  out, choose, select
* ex-cipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, take
  out, except; receive, welcome;
  capture
* ex-citō (1), arouse, excite
  ex-clūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsum, shut
  out, exclude
  excūsātiō, -ōnis, *f.,* excuse
  ex-cutiō, -ere, -cussī, -cussum, *lit.*
  shake out; investigate, examine
  ex-edō, -ere, -ēdī, -ēsum, eat up,
  hollow out
  exemplar, -āris, *n.,* image, likeness;
  model
* exemplum, -ī, *n.,* example, model

* ex-eō, -īre, -iī, -itum, go out
  exercitātiō, -ōnis, *f.,* exercise,
  training, practice
* exercitus, -ūs, *m.,* army
  exēsus, -a, -um: *partic. of* exedō
  ex-horreō, -ēre, -uī, shudder,
  shudder at
  exhortātiō, -ōnis, *f.,* exhortation
  ex-igō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum, drive out;
  demand, require; complete
  exiguus, -a, -um, scanty, small, little
  eximius, -a, -um, extraordinary,
  excellent
  ex-imō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēmptum, take
  away, remove
  exīstimātiō, -ōnis, *f.,* judgment; good
  name, reputation
* exīstimō (1), estimate, reckon, think,
  consider
  existō: *see* exsistō
  exitiōsus, -a, -um, disastrous,
  destructive
* ex-itus, -ūs, *m.,* a going out,
  departure, passage; end, death;
  result, outcome
  ex-onerō (1), unburden, release
  ex-optō (1), desire (optō) greatly
  (ex), long for
  ex-orior, -īrī, -ortus sum, arise,
  spring up, come forth
  ex-pallēscō, -ere, -palluī, turn very
  pale
* ex-pediō (4), let loose, set free;
  prepare, procure; be profitable,
  advantageous
  expedītus, -a, -um, unimpeded,
  unencumbered, light-armed
  ex-pellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum, drive
  out, expel
  expergīscor, -ī, -perrēctus sum,
  wake up

experior, -īrī, -pertus sum, try, test,
learn by experience

ex-pers, *gen.* **-pertis (ex-pars),** having
no part in, free from (+ *gen.*)

expertus, -a, -um, experienced

* **ex-petō, -ere, -petīvī, -petītum,** seek
after, strive for, desire

expīrō: *see* **exspīrō**

ex-plānō (1), explain

ex-plicō, -āre, -āvī *or* **-uī, -ātum,**
unfold, release, explain, set forth

ex-plorō (1), search out, ascertain;
explōrātus, -a, -um, certain, sure

* **ex-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum,** set
forth, explain, expose

ex-primō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum,
express, portray, describe

ex-prōmō, -ere, -prōmpsī, -prōmptum,
disclose, tell

ex-pugnō (1), take by storm, capture

ex-quīsītus, -a, -um, diligently sought
out, choice, exquisite

ex-sanguis, -e, bloodless, lifeless,
pale

ex-siliō, -īre, -uī, leap forth, start up

exsilium, -ī, *n.,* exile

* **ex-sistō, -ere, -stitī,** step forth,
emerge, arise, appear; exist, be

exspectātiō, -ōnis, *f.,* a waiting,
anticipation, expectation

* **ex-spectō** (1), watch for, wait for,
expect; wait to see, fear, dread

ex-spīrō (1), breathe out, expire, die

ex-spoliō (1), plunder, rob

exstinguō, -ere, -stīnxī, -stīnctum,
extinguish, destroy

ex-stō, -āre, be extant, exist

ex-struō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctum,
heap up

ex-sul, -sulis, *m./f.,* an exile

ex-sulō (1), go into exile, be
banished

ex-sultō (1), leap up, rejoice, exult,
revel, boast

ex-surgō, -ere, -surrēxī, get up,
stand up

ex-suscitō (1), arouse

extemplō, *adv.,* immediately

* **exter** *or* **exterus, -era, -erum,** outside,
outer, foreign; *compar.,* **exterior,
-ius,** outer, exterior; *superl.,*
extrēmus, -a, -um outermost,
farthest, last, extreme, the last
part of

exterius, *adv., see* **extrā**

externus, -a, -um, external

ex-terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, frighten,
terrify greatly, alarm

ex-timēscō, -ere, -timuī, greatly fear

extrā, *adv. and prep.* + *acc.,* outside;
compar. adv. **exterius,** on the
outside, externally

ex-trahō, -ere, -traxī, -tractum, drag
out

extrēmus, -a, -um (*superl. of* **exterus**),
outermost, furthest, last, extreme,
the furthest part of; **extrēmum, -ī,**
n., outer edge, end

exul: *see* **exsul**

ex-ulcerō (1), *lit.* make very sore;
aggravate, intensify

exultō: *see* **exsultō**

ex-ūrō, -ere, -ussī, -ustum, burn up

F

faber, -brī, *m.,* smith, carpenter,
engineer

Fabius, -ī, *m., a Roman nomen; e.g.,*
Q. Fabius Maximus Cunctator,

*famous for his tactics of delay
against Hannibal*

Fabricius, -ī, *m., a Roman nomen,
especially a general against
Pyrrhus*

* **fābula, -ae,** *f.,* story; play

facētus, -a, -um, elegant, witty,
humorous

faciēs, -ēī, *f.,* form, face, appearance

facilĕ, *adv. of* **facilis,** easily; *compar.*
facilius; *superl.* **facillimē**

* **facilis, -e,** easy

facilitās, -tātis, *f.,* facility, fluency;
courteousness, affability, good
nature

facinorōsus, -a, -um, criminal

* **facinus, -oris,** *n.,* a deed; a bad deed,
misdeed, crime

* **faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum,** make, do,
accomplish, bring about; see to it
(that), take care

* **factum, -ī,** *n., lit.* a thing done; deed,
act

facultās, -tātis, *f.,* ability, skill;
opportunity, means

faeneror, -ārī, -ātus sum, lend at
interest

* **fallō, -ere, fefellī, falsum,** deceive,
cheat, disappoint; be false to,
violate; escape the notice of

* **falsus, -a, -um** (*cp.* **fallō**), false,
deceptive

* **fāma, -ae,** *f.,* rumor, report, tradition

* **famēs, -is,** *f.,* hunger, starvation,
famine

* **familia, -ae,** *f.,* household, family
property, slaves; family; group

familiāris, -e, belonging to a **familia,**
friendly; intimate; **familiāris, -is,**
m., intimate friend

familiāritās, -tātis, *f.,* intimacy, close
friendship

famulus, -ī, *m.,* servant, slave

fānum, -ī, *n.,* temple, shrine

fascis, -is, *m.,* bundle; **fascēs, -ium,**
pl., fasces (*bundle of rods with an
imbedded ax, a sign of high office
with the* **imperium**)

fāstīdium, -ī, *n.,* scorn, disdain,
aversion, haughtiness,
fastidiousness

fātālis, -e, fated, in accordance with
fate; fatal, deadly

* **fateor, -ērī, fassus sum,** confess,
admit

fatīgō (1), tire, weary, exhaust;
harass

fātum, -ī, *n.,* fate

faveō, -ēre, favī, fautum, support,
favor

favilla, -ae, *f.,* glowing ashes

favor, -ōris, *m.,* favor

fax, facis, *f.,* torch

fēcundus, -a, -um, fertile, rich

fēlīcitās, -tātis, *f.,* happiness, good
fortune

fēlīx, -līcis, lucky, fortunate, happy

fera, -ae, *f.,* wild animal

* **ferē,** *adv.,* generally, as a rule, about,
almost; **nōn ferē,** scarcely, hardly

fermē = ferē

* **ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum,** bear, carry;
endure; report, say

ferōx, *gen.* **-ōcis,** fierce, bold,
warlike, defiant

* **ferrum, -ī,** *n.,* iron; sword

ferus, -a, -um, wild, savage

fervēns, *gen.* **-entis** (*partic. of* **ferveō**),
boiling, foaming

ferveō, -ēre, ferbuī, boil, foam; rage

* **fessus, -a, -um,** tired, exhausted

festīnātiō, -ōnis, *f.,* haste

festīnō (1), hurry, hasten

festūca, -ae, *f.,* straw, stem

fēstus, -a, -um, festal, festive;
   fēstum, -ī, *n.,* festival, holiday

fētus, -ūs, *m.,* offspring, progeny,
   fruit

fictus, -a, -um (*partic. of* **fingō**),
   fashioned, fictitious, false

fīcus, -ūs, *or* **-ī,** *f.,* fig tree; fig

* **fidēlis, -e,** faithful

* **fidēs, -eī,** *f.,* faith, trust, reliance,
   belief; loyalty, fidelity; pledge,
   word of honor; protection

fīdūcia, -ae, *f.,* confidence, reliance,
   trust

fīdus, -a, -um = **fidēlis**

* **fīgō, -ere, fīxī, fīxum,** attach, fasten,
   affix, fix, set up

figūra, -ae, *f.,* form, shape

* **fīlia, -ae,** *f.,* daughter

* **fīlius, -ī,** *m.,* son

fīlum, -ī, *n.,* thread; form, style

findo, -ere, fidī, fissum, cleave,
   split

fingō, -ere, fīnxī, fictum, fashion,
   mold, imagine, pretend, invent

fīniō (4), limit, bound, restrain,
   restrict; end, finish

* **fīnis, -is,** *m.,* end, limit, boundary;
   purpose, aim, goal

* **fīō, fierī, factus sum,** be made, be
   done, become, happen, come
   about

firmō (1), make firm, strengthen,
   fortify

* **firmus, -a, -um,** strong, firm,
   steadfast

fistula, -ae, *f.,* tube, pipe,
   waterpipe

flagellum, -ī, *n.,* scourge

* **flāgitium, -ī,** *n.,* shameful act,
   outrage, disgrace

flāgitō (1), demand

flagrō (1), blaze, be inflamed

Flāminīnus, -ī, *m., Roman general
   who defeated Philip V of Macedon
   in 197* B.C.

Flāminius, -ī, *m.,* C. Flaminius,
   *consul defeated and killed by
   Hannibal at Lake Trasimene in
   217* B.C.

* **flamma, -ae,** *f.,* flame, blaze

flāvus, -a, -um, yellow, reddish
   yellow

* **flectō, -ere, flexī, flexum,** bend, turn;
   change

fleō, -ēre, flēvī, flētum, weep; bewail,
   lament

flētus, -ūs, *m.,* weeping, lamentation

flōrēns, *gen.* **-entis,** blooming,
   flourishing

* **flōs, flōris,** *m.,* flower

fluitō (1), flow; float

* **flūmen, -minis,** *n.,* stream, river

fluō, -ere, fluxī, fluxum, flow

fōculus, -ī, *m., lit.* a little fire; a
   brazier

fodiō, -ere, fōdī, fossum, dig up

foederātus, -a, -um, allied

* **foedus, -a, -um,** foul, hideous, base,
   shameful

foedus, -eris, *n.,* treaty

folium, -ī, *n.,* leaf

* **fōns, -ntis,** *m.,* spring, source,
   fountain

forāmen, -inis, *n.,* hole, perforation

fore (= **futūrus esse**), *an old fut. inf.
   of* **sum; fore ut** + *subjunct. (result)
   can be used as a circumlocution for
   the fut. inf. of a verb*

forēnsis, -e, of the forum, public, forensic

foris, -is, *f.,* door; *pl.,* entrance

* **fōrma, -ae,** *f.,* form, appearance, beauty

Formiānus, -a, -um, of *or* near Formiae, *a coastal town of Latium;* **Formiānum (praedium),** an estate near Formiae

formīdō, -inis, *f.,* dread, terror

fōrmula, -ae, *f.,* rule, regulation, formula

* **fors, fortis,** *f.,* chance, luck; **forte,** *abl. as adv.,* by chance, accidentally

forsitan, *adv. w. subjunct.,* perhaps

fortasse, *adv.,* perhaps

* **forte,** *abl. of* **fors** *as adv.,* by chance

* **fortis, -e,** strong, brave; *adv.* **fortiter**

* **fortitūdō, -dinis,** *f.,* strength, bravery, fortitude

fortuītō, *adv.,* by chance, fortuitously

* **fortūna, -ae,** *f.,* luck, fortune (*good or bad*)

fortūnātus, -a, -um, lucky, fortunate, prosperous

* **forum, -ī,** *n.,* forum, market-place: place of business, law, and government

fovea, -ae, *f.,* pit, pitfall

foveō, -ēre, fōvī, fōtum, warm, cherish

fragilis, -e, easily broken, frail, weak

fragor, -ōris, *m.,* a breaking, crash, noise

* **frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctum,** break, shatter; subdue

* **frāter, -tris,** *m.,* brother

fraus, fraudis, *f.,* deceit, fraud

frequēns, *gen.* **-entis,** full, crowded

frequenter, *adv.,* in large numbers; frequently

frequentō (1), attend (in large numbers), visit often

fretum, -ī, *n.,* strait, channel

fretus, -ūs, *m.,* = **fretum**

frīgidus, -a, -um, cold; insipid, trivial

frīgus, -oris, *n.,* cold

frīvolus, -a, -um, trifling, worthless

frōns, -ndis, *f.,* leaf, leaves, foliage, leafy bough

frōns, -ntis, *f.,* forehead, brow, appearance

frontispicium, -ī, *n.,* façade, exterior (*ML*)

frūctificō (1), bear fruit (*EL*)

* **frūctus, -ūs,** *m.,* fruit, enjoyment, profit

frūgifer, -era, -erum, fruitful, profitable

frūmentum, -ī, *n.,* grain

* **fruor, fruī, frūctus sum,** enjoy

frūstrā, *adv.,* in vain, without reason

frūx, frūgis, *f.,* grain

* **fuga, -ae,** *f.,* flight

* **fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitum,** flee, escape

fugitīvus, -ī, *m.,* runaway slave

fulciō, -īre, fulsī, fultum, prop up, support

fulgeō, -ere, fulsī, flash, gleam, shine

fulgor, -ōris, *m.,* flash, brightness

fulmen, -minis, *n.,* lightning, thunderbolt

fultūra, -ae, *f.,* prop, support

fulvus, -a, -um, yellow, tawny

fūmō (1), to smoke, steam

fūmus, -ī, *m.,* smoke

funda, -ae, *f.,* sling, sling-stone

fundamentum, -ī, *n.,* base, foundation

funditus, *adv.,* utterly, completely

fundō, -ere, fūdī, fūsum, pour, pour forth; spread, scatter, rout

fūnestus, -a, -um, fatal, calamitous

fungor, -ī, fūnctus sum, perform, discharge, complete

furibundus, -a, -um, furious, mad

furor, -ōris, *m.,* rage, madness

fūrtum, -ī, *n.,* theft; stolen property

fūsilis, -e, molten, liquified, fluid

fūsus, -a, -um: *see* **fundō**

G

Gāius, -ī, *m., a common Roman praenomen; see also under* **C.**

Gallia, -ae, *f.,* Gaul, *the territory extending roughly from the Pyrenees to the Rhine*

Gallus, -a, -um, Gallic; **Gallus, -ī,** *m.,* a Gaul; **Gallus, -ī,** *m., a Roman name*

* **gaudeō, -ēre, gāvīsus sum,** rejoice, be glad

* **gaudium, -ī,** *n.,* joy, gladness

Gāvius, -ī, *m., a Roman citizen crucified by Verres*

gelidus, -a, -um, icy, cold

gelū, -ūs, *n.,* frost, cold

geminō (1), double, repeat

* **geminus, -a, -um,** double, twin

gemitus, -ūs, *m.,* groan

gemma, -ae, *f.,* bud; jewel, gem

gemō, -ere, -uī, -itum, groan, lament

gena, -ae *f.,* cheek

gener, -erī, *m.,* son-in-law

generātiō, -ōnis, *f.,* generation (*EL*)

generōsus, -a, -um, noble, excellent, magnanimous

geniāliter, *adv.,* gaily, joyfully

* **gēns, gentis,** *f.,* clan, tribe, nation

* **genus, -eris,** *n.,* kind, sort, class, category, nature, race

* **gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum,** bear, wear; manage, conduct, carry on, perform; **bellum gerere,** wage war; **sē gerere,** conduct oneself, behave; **rēs gestae, rērum gestārum,** *f. pl.,* exploits, history

gestiō (4), exult, be excited *or* transported, desire eagerly

gestō (1), carry about, bear, wear

gignō, -ere, genuī, genitum, beget, bring forth

gladiātor, -ōris, *m.,* gladiator, robber

gladius, -ī, *m.,* sword

glaeba, -ae, *f.,* clod, lump of soil

* **glōria, -ae,** *f.,* glory, fame

Gnaeus, -ī, *m., a Roman praenomen; e.g.,* Gnaeus Pompeius Magnus

Gorgō, -gonis, *f., one of 3 sisters of whom the most famous was Medusa*

gradātim, *adv.,* step by step, by degrees

gradus, -ūs, *m.,* step, position, degree, rank; stand, stance

Graeculus, -ī, *m.,* a Greekling

* **Graecus, -a, -um,** Greek; **Graecus, -ī,** *m.,* a Greek

grāmineus, -a, -um, grassy; of bamboo

grandis, -e, grownup, large; important, lofty

grassor, -ārī, -ātus sum, proceed, act; attack

* **grātia, -ae,** *f.,* charm, grace; favor, regard; thankfulness, gratitude; **grātiās agere,** to thank; **grātiam habēre,** be thankful, feel grateful

grātīs *or* grātiīs, *abl. of* grātia, out of favor *or* kindness, without recompense, for nothing

grātulor, -ārī, -ātus sum, rejoice; congratulate

* grātus, -a, -um, pleasing, grateful

* gravis, -e, heavy, weighty, important, grave, serious, severe

gravitās, -tātis, *f.,* weight, gravity, seriousness, importance

graviter, *adv.,* heavily, severely, deeply, grievously

gravō (1), make heavy, weigh down

gravor, -ārī, -ātus sum, be weighed down; be reluctant

gubernāculum, -ī, *n.,* helm, rudder

gubernātor, -ōris, *m.,* pilot

guerra, -ae, *f.* = bellum (*ML*)

gula, -ae, *f.,* throat; appetite

gustō (1), taste, take a snack

guttur, -uris, *n.,* throat

Gȳgēs, -is, *m., a king of Lydia*

gymnasium, -ī, *n.,* gymnasium, *which, in addition to the exercise area, usu. had rooms for intellectual and artistic activities*

gyrō (1), go around, move in circles

H

* habeō, -ēre, habuī, habitum, have, hold, possess; consider, regard, think

habilis, -e, skillful

habitō (1), inhabit; dwell

habitus, -ūs, *m.,* appearance; dress; condition, nature

hāc-tenus, *adv.,* thus far, up to this time *or* point

haedus, -ī, *m.,* a kid, young goat

Haemus, -ī, *m., a mountain range in Thrace*

haereō, -ēre, haesī, haesum, cling, stick; hesitate, be perplexed

haesitō, (1), *lit.* to stick fast, remain fixed; hesitate

Hamilcar, -caris, *m., a Carthaginian name, espec.* Hamilcar Barca, *father of Hannibal and general in the First Punic War*

Hannibal, -balis, *m., Carthaginian general in 2nd Punic War; see Livy*

harēna, -ae, *f.,* sand

harundō, -inis, *f.,* reed, rod

Hasdrubal, -balis, *m., a Carthaginian name, espec. the brother of Hannibal*

hasta, -ae, *f.,* spear

haud, not, not at all; haud sciō an, I am inclined to think

hauriō, -īre, hausī, haustum, draw out, drain, drink up *or* in; exhaust

haustus, -ūs, *m.,* drink, draft

Helicē, -ēs, (*acc.* -ēn), *f.,* the Great Bear *or* Dipper, *constellation of Ursa Major*

hera = era

herba, -ae, *f.,* grass; plant

hercule, *or* hercle, *interjection,* by Hercules, good Heavens, certainly

hērōs, -ōis (*acc.* -ōa), hero

herus = erus

Hesperides, -um (*acc.* -as), *f., pl.,* daughters of Hesperus (*the Evening Star in the west*) *and guardians of the golden apples*

hetaeria, -ae, *f.,* fraternity, secret society

heu, *interjection,* oh! ah! alas!; *actually the spelling of a sigh*

heus, *interjection,* come now, see here, say

hiātus, -ūs, *m.,* opening, cleft

Hibērus, -ī, *m.,* the river Ebro *in eastern Spain*

* **hīc,** *adv.,* in this place, here

* **hic, haec, hoc,** *demonstrative adj. and pron.,* this, the latter; *at times hardly more than* he, she, it

hiems, hiemis, *f.,* winter, storm

Hierusalem, *indecl. n.,* Jerusalem (*EL*)

hilaris, -e, cheerful, glad

hilaritās, -tātis, *f.,* enjoyment, amusement, gayety

hinc, *adv.,* from this place, hence; here; henceforth; for this reason

Hippolytus, -ī, *m., son of Theseus*

Hispānia, -ae, *f.,* Spain (*including Portugal*)

historia, -ae, *f.,* history, historical work

ho-diē, *adv.,* today

hodiernus, -a, -um, of this day, today's

* **homō, hominis,** *m./f.,* human being, man, person

* **honestās, -tātis,** *f.,* honor, virtue, worth

* **honestus, -a, -um,** honorable, worthy, noble; **honestum, -ī,** *n.,* morality, moral excellence, virtue

* **honor (honōs), -ōris,** *m.,* honor, esteem, respect, public office

honōrō (1), to honor

* **hōra, -ae,** *f.,* hour; time

Horātius, -a, -um, *belonging to the Horatian gens; espec. the three Roman Horatii who fought the three Alban Curiatii;* Horatius Cocles, *who defended the Tiber*

bridge against Porsenna; Q. Horatius Flaccus, *the lyric poet*

horror, -ōris, *m.,* a shuddering, dread, terror, horror

* **hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum,** urge, encourage

hortus, -ī, *m.,* garden

hospes, -pitis, *m.,* guest; host; stranger

hostīlis, -e, of an enemy, hostile

Hostīlius, -a, -um, Hostilian, *referring espec. to Tullus Hostilius, third king of Rome*

* **hostis, -is,** *m.,* an enemy (*of the state*); *pl.,* **hostēs,** the enemy

* **hūc,** *adv.,* to this place, to this; **hūcine,** *the interrog. form*

* **hūmānitās, -tātis,** *f.,* kindness, courtesy, refinement, culture

hūmāniter, *adv. of* **hūmānus,** in a cultured, refined manner; kindly

hūmānus, -a, -um, human; humane, kind; cultured, refined

humiliō (1), to humble (*EL*)

humilis, -e, *lit.* on the ground; humble, insignificant, lowly

humus, -ī, *f.,* earth, ground; **humī,** *loc.,* on the ground

Hymenaeus, -ī, *m.,* Hymen, *the god of marriage*

hȳpocrita, -ae, *m.,* actor; hypocrite (*EL*)

I

* **iaceō, -ēre, -uī,** lie; lie dead

* **iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactum,** throw

iactūra, -ae, *f., lit.* a throwing away; loss; **iactūram facere,** suffer a loss

* **iam,** *adv.,* now, already, soon; **iam diū** *or* **prīdem,** long ago

Iāniculum, -ī, *n., a hill across the Tiber from Rome*

iānua, -ae, *f.,* door, *espec.* outside door

Iānuārius, -a, -um, of January

* **ibī,** *adv.,* there; thereupon

Īcarus, -ī, *m., son of Daedalus*

īcō, -ere, īcī, ictum, strike, hit, stab; **foedus īcere,** strike *or* make a treaty

* **ictus, -ūs,** *m.,* blow, stroke

id-circō, *adv.,* on that account, therefore

* **īdem, eadem, idem,** *demonstr. adj. and pron.,* the same

* **ideō,** *adv.,* on that account, therefore

idōneus, -a, -um, fit, suitable, proper

iecur, -oris, *n.,* the liver

iēiūnō (1), fast *(EL)*

Iēsus, -u, *m.,* Jesus

* **igitur,** *postpositive conj.,* therefore, then

ignārus, -a, -um, not knowing, ignorant; not known, unknown

ignāvia, -ae, *f.,* idleness, inactivity; cowardice

* **ignis, -is,** *m.,* fire

ignōminia, -ae, *f.,* disgrace, dishonor

ignōrantia, -ae, *f.,* ignorance

* **ignōrō** (1), not to know, be ignorant, be unacquainted with

* **ignōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nōtum,** pardon, forgive

ignōtus, -a, -um, unknown, strange

īlex, -icis, *f.,* oak tree

īlia, -ium, *n. pl.,* abdomen, groin, genitals, entrails

illāc *(sc.* **viā),** *adv.,* that way

* **ille, illa, illud,** *demonstrative adj. and pron.,* that, the former; *at times weakened to* he, she, it

illinc, *adv.,* from that place, thence; there

illūc, *adv.,* to that place

illūstris: *see* **inlūstris**

imāgō, -ginis, *f.,* image, portrait

imbēcillitās, -tātis, *f.,* weakness

imbēcillus, -a, -um, weak, feeble

im-bellis, -e, unwarlike

imber, -bris, *m.,* violent rain, storm; shower

imitor, -ārī, -ātus sum, copy, imitate

immānis, -e, enormous, horrible

im-memor, *gen.* **-oris,** unmindful, forgetful

immēnsus, -a, -um, immeasurable, immense

im-migrō (1), move into, migrate

im-mineō, -ēre, hang over, threaten, be imminent

im-misceō, -ēre, -miscuī, -mixtum, mix, mingle

immō, *adv.,* nay rather, on the contrary; indeed

im-moderātē, *adv.,* without measure, immoderately

im-modicus, -a, -um, immoderate, excessive, unrestrained

im-molō (1), to sacrifice

im-mortālis, -e, immortal

im-mūtābilis, -e, unchangeable

im-mūtō (1), change, transform

impedīmentum, -ī, *n.,* hindrance; *pl.* = baggage

impediō (4), entangle, impede, hinder, prevent

im-pellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum, push forward, impel, urge

im-pendeō, -ēre, hang over, threaten, impend

* **imperātor, -ōris,** *m.,* commander, general; emperor

imperitō (1), govern, command

* **imperium, -ī,** *n.,* command, military authority, power, rule; dominion, empire; the supreme power of command *held by the consuls*

imperō (1), give commands to, command, order

impertiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, share *or* divide with

* **im-petrō** (1), get, obtain, gain by request, accomplish, succeed in a request

* **im-petus, -ūs,** *m.,* violent movement, violence, attack

im-piger, -gra, -grum, not lazy, energetic

* **im-pleō, -ēre, -plēvī, -plētum,** fill up, complete, satisfy, accomplish, fulfil

im-plicō, -āre, -uī *or* **-āvī, -ātum,** enfold, involve, entangle

implōrātiō, -ōnis, *f.,* an imploring

im-plōrō (1), implore, beseech

im-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, put on *or* in

importūnitās, -tātis, *f.,* insolence, ruthlessness

im-probus, -a, -um, not good, base, wicked, shameless

im-prōvidus, -a, -um, *lit.* not foreseeing; heedless, imprudent

imprūdentia, -ae, *f.,* lack of foresight; ignorance

impudēns, *gen.* **-entis,** shameless, impudent

impūnē, *adv.,* with impunity, safely

im-pūnitās, -tātis, *f.,* impunity

im-pūrus, -a, -um, unclean, foul, shameful

īmus, -a, -um, *a superl. of* **īnferus**

* **in,** *prep.* (1) + *abl.,* in, on, among, in the case of; (2) + *acc.,* into, toward, against

in-amoenus, -a, -um, unpleasant, unlovely, dismal

in-animus, -a, -um, without life, inanimate

inānis, -e, empty, vain, useless, idle

inaugurō (1), take the auguries; consecrate

* **in-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum,** advance, attack

incendium, -ī, *n.,* fire, heat, conflagration

in-cendō, -ere, -cendī, -cēnsum, set on fire, inflame, excite, enrage

inceptus, -ūs, *m.,* beginning, undertaking

* **in-certus, -a, -um,** uncertain

in-cĭdo, -ere, -cĭdi, -cāsum (cadō), fall into *or* upon, come upon, fall in with; happen, occur

in-cīdo, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum (caedō), cut into, inscribe

in-cipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, begin

incitāmentum, -ī, *n.,* inducement, incentive

incitō (1), arouse, stir up, incite

in-clāmō (1), cry out to, call upon

in-clinō (1), lean, bend, incline

inclitus, -a, -um, famous

in-cognitus, -a, -um, unknown, unexamined

incohō (1), begin

incola, -ae, *m.,* inhabitant, resident

in-colō, -ere, -uī, -cultum, dwell, inhabit, live in

in-columis, -e, uninjured, safe

in-commodum, -ī, *n.,* inconvenience, trouble, disadvantage, harm

incōnsīderātē, *adv.,* without consideration

in-continenter, *adv.,* intemperately

in-corruptus, -a, -um, uncorrupted, unspoiled, trustworthy

* **incrēdibilis, -e,** incredible, extraordinary

in-crepitō (1), call out to; reproach, rebuke

in-crepō, -āre, -uī, -itum, rattle, make a din; speak angrily; reproach, rebuke

in-crēscō, -ere, -crēvī, grow, increase

in-cultus, -a, -um, uncultivated; unrefined, rude

in-cumbō, -ere, -cubuī, -cubitum, lie on, lean on, throw oneself on, fall on

* **in-de,** *adv.,* thence; after that, thereupon

in-decōrus, -a, -um, unbecoming, unseemly, disgraceful; *adv.* **indecōrē**

index, -dicis, *m.,* witness, informer

India, -ae, *f.,* India

indicium, -ī, evidence, proof

* **in-dicō** (1), declare, make known

* **in-dīcō, -ere, -dīxī, -dictum,** proclaim, declare; impose

in-dictus, -a, -um, unsaid; **indictā causā,** *lit.* the case not having been said = without a hearing

indigentia, -ae, *f.,* need, want

indignātiō, -ōnis, *f.,* indignation; a cause for indignation

indignitās, -tātis, *f.,* shamefulness, indignity

in-dignor, -ārī, -ātus sum, consider as unworthy; be offended, indignant

* **in-dignus, -a, -um,** unworthy; undeserved, cruel, harsh; *adv.,* **indignē**

in-discrētus, -a, -um, without distinction; not distinguishing, indiscreet; *adv.,* **indiscrētē,** indiscriminately, indiscreetly

in-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, put into, apply

indolēs, -is, *f.,* nature, disposition, talents

indolēscō, -ere, -doluī, grieve

in-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, bring in, introduce

in-dulgeō, -ēre, -dulsī, -dultum, be indulgent to, gratify, give oneself up to

* **induō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum,** put on, dress; wrap, entangle

in-dūrēscō, -ere, -dūruī, become hard, be hardened

industria, -ae, *f.,* diligence, industry; **dē** *or* **ex industriā,** intentionally, on purpose

indūtiae, -ārum, *f. pl.,* truce

inēbriō (1), intoxicate

in-eō, -īre, -iī, -itum, go into, enter upon, undertake, commence

in-eptē, *adv.,* unsuitably, foolishly

in-eptus, -a, -um (in-aptus), unsuitable, silly, absurd

in-errō (1), wander over

in-ers, *gen.* **-ertis,** *lit.* without skill; lazy, idle; dull

inertia, -ae, *f.,* inactivity, laziness

* **īn-fāmia, -ae,** *f.,* ill report, ill repute, disgrace, reproach

īn-fāmis, -e, disreputable, infamous, disgraceful

īn-fāns, -fantis, *m./f.,* infant

īn-fēlīx, *gen.* **-īcis,** unhappy, unfortunate, miserable

īnfēnsus, -a, -um, hostile

īnfernus, -a, -um, underground, infernal; **īnfernum, -ī,** *n.,* the depths of the earth

* **īn-ferō, -ferre, intulī, inlātum,** bring in, introduce; occasion, produce; **bellum īnferre** + *dat.,* make war on

īnferus, -a, -um, below; **īnferī, -ōrum,** *m. pl.,* those below, the dead; *compar.* **īnferior, -ius,** lower, inferior; *superl.* **īnfimus, -a, -um** (also **īmus, -a, -um**), lowest, lowest part of; meanest, basest

* **īnfestus, -a, -um,** unsafe, dangerous; hostile

īn-fīdus, -a, -um, unfaithful, untrue

īn-fīnītus, -a, -um, infinite

īnfirmitās, -tātis, *f.,* weakness

īn-firmus, -a, -um, week, feeble

īn-flammō (1), inflame, stir up, rouse

īn-flātus, -a, -um, blown up, puffed up, haughty

īn-flexibilis, -e, inflexible

īn-fōrmis, -e, shapeless, hideous

īn-fōrmō (1), to form, shape; describe; educate

īn-fundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsum, pour in, on, over

ingemēscō, -ere, -gemuī, groan

in-generō (1), implant

* **ingenium, -ī,** *n.,* inborn ability, nature, talent, genius

* **ingēns,** *gen.* **-entis,** vast, huge, immense

ingenuus, -a, -um, native, free born

in-grātus, -a, -um, ungrateful; displeasing

in-gravēscō, -ere, become heavy, become a burden, grow worse

in-gredior, -gredī, -gressus sum, go into, go forward, advance; undertake

in-hibeō, -ere, -uī, -itum, hold back, restrain

in-hūmānus, -a, -um, inhuman, savage, cruel

* **in-imīcus, -a, -um (-amīcus),** unfriendly, hostile; **inimīcus, -ī,** *m.,* personal enemy

inīquitās, -tātis, *f.,* unevenness, unfavorableness; injustice, unfairness; iniquity, sin (*EL*)

in-īquus, -a, -um (-aequus), unequal, uneven; unfair, unjust, adverse

initium, -ī, *m.,* beginning

* **iniūria, -ae,** *f.,* injury, injustice, wrong, harm

in-iussū, *idiomatic abl.,* without orders *or* command

in-iūstitia, -ae, *f.,* injustice

* **in-iūstus, -a, -um,** unjust; *adv.* **iniūstē**

in-laesus, -a, -um, uninjured

inlūstris, -e, bright, clear, illustrious, famous

in-nītor, -ī, -nīxus *or* **-nīsus sum,** lean on, support oneself by

in-nocēns, *gen.* **-entis,** guiltless, innocent, harmless

innocentia, -ae, *f.,* innocence

in-noxius, -a, -um, *lit.* not harming; harmless; innocent

in-numerābilis, -e, countless

inopia, -ae, *f.,* want, lack, need

in-ops, *gen.* **-opis,** *adj.,* poor, needy, lacking, destitute

in-pōnō: *see* **im-pōnō**

* **inquam,** I say; **inquis,** you say; **inquit,**

he says: *defective verb used parenthetically in direct quotations and repetitions*

in-quiētō (1), disturb, disquiet

inquīsītīō, -ōnis, *f.,* inquiry

in-rīdeō, -ēre, -rīsī, -rīsum, laugh at, mock, ridicule

in-ritus, -a, -um, not valid, invalid, void, useless

īn-sānābilis, -e, incurable

īn-sāniō (4), be mad, be insane

īn-serō, -ere, -sēvī, -situm, sow in, implant, instill

īn-serō, -ere, -seruī, -sertum, put in, insert, introduce, join

īn-sideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum, *lit.* sit in; possess, occupy

īnsidiae, -ārum, *f. pl.,* ambush; plot, treachery

īnsidiātor, -ōris, *m.,* a man in ambush, waylayer, plotter

īn-sīdō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessum, sit down on, settle in

īnsignis, -e, distinguished, notable

īn-sipiēns, *gen.* **-entis,** unwise, foolish; *as a noun, m.,* fool

īn-situs, -a, -um, implanted, innate

īn-sōns, *gen.* **-ntis,** innocent, guiltless

īn-spērātus, -a, -um, unhoped for, unexpected

īn-spiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum, examine, inspect; investigate

īnstar, *indecl. n. noun,* image, likeness; + *gen.,* like, as large as

īn-stituō, -ere, -tuī, -tūtum, establish, appoint; determine; instruct

īnstitūtiō, -ōnis, *f.,* = **īnstitūtum**

* **īnstitūtum, -ī,** *n.,* custom, institution; instruction, principles

īnstrūmentum, -ī, *n.,* tool, instrument

īn-struō, -ere, -struxī, -structum, draw up, arrange, make ready; teach, instruct

īn-sūdō (1), sweat at

īnsula, -ae, *f.,* island

īnsulānus, -ī, *m.,* islander

īn-sum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, be in, be contained in

in-tāctus, -a, -um, untouched, uninjured

* **integer, -gra, -grum,** untouched, uninjured, blameless, honest; pure, fresh; **dē integrō,** afresh

intellegentia, -ae, *f.,* intelligence, understanding, perception

* **intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum,** understand, perceive

in-tempestīvus, -a, -um, untimely, unseasonable

* **in-tendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum,** stretch, aim, direct, intend

in-tentus, -a, -um (*cp.* **tendō**), *lit.* stretched; intent, attentive, alert

* **inter,** *prep.* + *acc.,* between, among, amid

inter-aestuō (1), be inflamed (in places)

inter-diū, *adv.,* by day

interdum, *adv.,* sometimes, from time to time, occasionally

intereā, *adv.,* meanwhile, in the meantime

inter-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, kill, slay, murder

interim, *adv.,* meanwhile

inter-imō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēmptum, take away; destroy, kill

interior, -ius, inner, interior

inter-itus, -ūs, *m.,* destruction, ruin

interius, *adv.,* on the inside, within

inter-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, interrupt, neglect, omit

internus, -a, -um, internal

interpres, -pretis, *m./f.,* messenger, expounder, translator

interpretātiō, -ōnis, *f.,* interpretation

interpretor, -ārī, -ātus sum, explain, interpret

* **inter-rogō** (1), ask, question; examine

inter-rumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, break down

* **inter-sum, -esse, -fuī,** *lit.* be between *or* in the midst of; be present at, take part in, attend (+ *dat.*); **interest,** *impers.,* it is of importance *or* interest, it concerns, it makes a difference, *with the subject commonly an inf. clause, an* **ut-***clause, or an ind. quest.*

inter-vallum, -ī, *n.,* space between, interval

inter-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, come between, interrupt

inter-vīsō, -ere, -vīsī, -vīsum, visit (from time to time)

intimus, -a, -um (*superl. of* **interior**), innermost, intimate, most profound; *adv.* **intimē**

in-tinguō, -ere, -tīnxī, -tīnctum, dip

in-tolerābilis, -e, unendurable, intolerable

in-tōnsus, -a, -um, unshorn

intrā, *adv.,* within; *prep.* + *acc.,* into, within

intrō, *adv.,* inside, within

intrō (1), go into, enter

intro-eō, -īre, -iī, -itum, enter

intro-itus, -ūs, *m.,* a going within, entrance

* **in-tueor, -ērī, -tuitus sum,** look at, contemplate, consider

intus, *adv.,* within

in-ultus, -a, -um, unavenged

in-ūsitātus, -a, -um, unusual

in-ūtilis, -e, useless, injurious

in-vādō, -ere, -vāsī, -vāsum, go in, attack, invade, befall, seize

in-validus, -a, -um, weak

in-vehō, -ere, -vexī, -vectum, carry into, bring in; *w. reflex. pron. or in passive,* carry oneself against, attack (*physically or with words*), inveigh against

* **in-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum,** come upon, find, discover

inventor, -ōris, *m.,* discoverer, inventor

in-vertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum, turn about

investīgātiō, -ōnis, *f.,* investigation

investīgō (1), search out, track out

inveterāscō, -ere, -veterāvī, grow old, become fixed *or* established

in-vicem, *adv.,* in turn, by turns, alternately; mutually

in-victus, -a, -um, unconquered; unconquerable, invincible

* **in-videō, -ēre, -vīdī, -vīsum,** look askance at, envy, be jealous of, begrudge

invidia, -ae, *f., lit.* a looking askance at; envy, jealousy; odium, unpopularity

invidiōsus, -a, -um, envious; envied; hated

invidus, -a, -um, envious, jealous

inviolātus, -a, -um, unhurt, inviolable

in-vīsitātus, -a, -um, unseen; strange

in-vīsus, -a, -um, hated, hateful
invītō (1), invite
invītus, -a, -um, unwilling, against
 one's will
invius, -a, -um, pathless, impassable;
 invia, -ōrum, *n. pl.,* trackless
 places
Īphigenīa, -ae, *f., daughter of
 Agamemnon, who sacrificed her to
 win a safe voyage against Troy*
* **ipse, ipsa, ipsum,** *intensive pron.,*
 himself, herself, itself, etc.
* **īra, -ae,** *f.,* anger, wrath
īrācundia, -ae, *f.,* irascibility, wrath
īrātus, -a, -um, angry
irr-: *see* **inr-**
* **is, ea, id,** *demonstrative pron. and
 adj.,* this, that; he, she, it
* **iste, ista, istud,** *demonstrative adj.
 and pron.,* that of yours, that,
 such; *sometimes with
 contemptuous force*
istūc, *adv.,* to where you are, to what
 you mention
* **ita,** *adv.,* so, thus
Ītalia, -ae, *f.,* Italy
* **itaque,** and so, therefore
* **item,** *adv.,* also, likewise
* **iter, itineris,** *n.,* journey, way, road
* **iterum,** *adv.,* again, a second time
* **iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussum,** bid, order
iūcunditās, -tātis, *f.,* pleasantness,
 delight
iūcundus, -a, -um, pleasant,
 agreeable
* **iūdex, -dicis,** *m.,* judge, juror; **iūdicēs**
 (*voc.*), gentlemen of the jury
* **iūdicium, -ī,** *n.,* trial, judgment;
 court, jury
iūdicō (1), decide, judge

iugulō (1), cut the throat of, slay,
 destroy
iugulum, -ī, *n.,* throat
* **iugum, -ī,** *n.,* yoke; ridge
* **iūmentum, -ī,** *n.,* beast of burden,
 pack animal
* **iungō, -ere, iūnxī, iūnctum,** join,
 unite
iūnior, -ōris, *m./f.,* rather young *or*
 youthful (person); **iūniōrēs, -um,**
 m. pl., often = men of military age
 (under 46 years)
Iūnōnius, -a, -um, belonging to *or*
 sacred to Juno
Iuppiter, *gen.* **Iovis,** *m.,* Jupiter *or*
 Jove, *king of the gods*
iūris-dictiō, -ōnis, *f.,* administration
 of justice
* **iūrō** (1), take an oath, swear; **iūrātus,
 -a, -um,** having sworn, under oath,
 on oath
* **iūs, iūris,** *n.,* right, law; privilege; **iūs
 iūrandum, iūris iūrandī,** *n.,* oath
iussū, *idiomatic abl.,* by order *or*
 command
iūstificō (1), do justice to; justify,
 forgive
* **iūstitia, -ae,** *f.,* justice
iūstus, -a, -um, just, right; proper,
 regular; *adv.* **iūstē**
* **iuvenis,** *gen.* **-is,** *m./f.,* young,
 youthful; *as a noun,* a young man
 or woman (*of 20–45 years*)
iuventūs, -tūtis, *f.,* youth; young man
 in the army
* **iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtum,** help
iuxtā: *adv.,* near, nearby, equally, in
 like manner; *prep.* + *acc.,* close *or*
 near to
Ixīōn, -onis, *m., legendary king of*

*Thessaly condemned to the torture
of the wheel in Tartarus for an
insult to Juno*

K

Kal., *abbr. of* **Kalendae:** *see* **Calendae**

L

L., *abbr. of* **Lūcius,** *a praenomen*
Labeō, -ōnis, *m., a cognomen*
labēs, -is, *f.,* ruin; disgrace
labō (1), totter, waver
* **labor, -ī, lapsus sum,** slip, fall; err
* **labor, -ōris,** *m.,* labor, toil; hardship,
    difficulty, distress, suffering
labōriōsus, -a, -um, full of toil *or*
    hardship, laborious
labōrō (1), labor, toil; suffer, be in
    distress
Lacedaemonius, -a, -um, Spartan; *m.
    pl. as a noun,* Spartans
lacertus, -ī, *m.,* (upper) arm
lacessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum, provoke,
    irritate, harass
* **lacrima, -ae,** *f.,* tear
lacrimōsus, -a, -um, tearful;
    mournful
lacus, -ūs, *m.,* lake
Laelius, -ī, *m., a Roman nomen,
    especially* Gaius Laelius,
    commemorated in Cicero's **Dē
    Amīcitiā**
laetitia, -ae, *f.,* joy, delight;
    entertainment
laetor, -ārī, -ātus sum, rejoice, be
    glad
* **laetus, -a, -um,** glad, joyful
laevus, -a, -um, left, on the left
    side

laguncula, -ae, *f.,* flask
lambō, -ere, lick, lap
lāmmina, -ae, *f.,* thin plate *or* layer;
    plate of iron (*heated for torture*)
lancea, -ae, *f.,* lance, light spear
languidus, -a, -um, weak, languid,
    dull, inactive
laniō (1), tear to pieces, mangle
lapis, -idis, *m.,* stone
lāpsus, -ūs, *m.,* sliding, slipping
Larius, -ī, *m.,* Lake Como, *Alpine
    lake in northern Italy*
Lars, Lartis, *m., an Etruscan name
    or title*
lassus, -a, -um, weary, tired
lātē, *adv. of* **lātus**
* **lateō, -ere, -uī,** lie hidden, hide;
    escape the notice of, be concealed
    from (+ *acc.*)
latibulum, -ī, *n.,* hiding place, shelter
Latīnus, -a, -um, Latin; **Via Latīna,**
    *a very old Roman road running
    southeast from Rome; adv.* **Latīnē,**
    in Latin, *espec. w.* **dīcere, loquī,**
    etc.
latrō, -ōnis, *m.,* robber, bandit,
    cutthroat
latrōcinium, -ī, *n.,* robbery; fraud
lātum: *see* **ferō**
* **lātus, -a, -um,** broad, wide,
    extensive; copious; *adv.* **lātē,**
    broadly, widely; **longē lātēque,** far
    and wide
latus, -eris, *n.,* side
laudābilis, -e, praiseworthy, laudable
* **laudō** (1), praise, approve
Laurentīnus, -a, -um, Laurentine, of
    Laurentum (*a town on the coast
    south of Ostia*); **Laurentīnum** (*sc.*
    praedium), Laurentine estate
laus, laudis, *f.,* praise, renown

lautumiae, -ārum, *f. pl.,* stonequarry,
   used as a prison at Syracuse

lautus, -a, -um (*see* **lavō**), washed;
   elegant, refined

Lāvīnium, -ī, *n., a town said to have*
   been founded in Latium by Aeneas

lavō, -āre, lāvī, lautum *or* **lōtum,**
   wash, bathe

laxō (1), relax, slacken

Lazarus, -ī, *m., the beggar in the*
   parable of Dives and Lazarus (*EL*)

lea, -ae, *f.,* lioness

leaena, -ae, *f.,* lioness

Lebinthos, -ī, *f., a small island of*
   the Sporades in the Aegean Sea off
   the southwestern coast of Asia
   Minor

lectīcula, -ae, *f.,* small litter

lēgātus, -ī, *m.,* ambassador;
   lieutenant

legiō, -ōnis, *f.,* legion

lēgitimus, -a, -um, legal, legitimate,
   proper; *adv.* **lēgitimē**

* **lēgō** (1), appoint, send as an
   ambassador; bequeath

* **legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctum,** gather, pick,
   choose; read

Lēnaeus, -a, -um, Lenaean, *epithet*
   of Bacchus

lēniō (4), alleviate, soothe

lēnis, -e, soft, mild, gentle, kind

leō, -ōnis, *m.,* lion

lepos, -ōris, *m.,* charm, grace, wit

lētum, -ī, *n.,* death, ruin

* **levis, -e,** light, trivial

Lēvītā, -ae, *m.,* a Levite (*EL*)

levitās, -tātis, *f.,* lightness, levity,
   fickleness, weakness

levō (1), lighten; raise, lift up;
   relieve, console

* **lēx, lēgis,** *f.,* law

libellus, -ī, *m.,* little book; notebook;
   pamphlet

libenter, *adv.,* gladly, with pleasure,
   willingly

* **liber, -brī,** *m.,* book

* **līber, -era, -erum,** free, unrestricted

Līber, -erī, *m., Roman equivalent of*
   the Greek Bacchus

Lībera, -ae, *f., Italian equivalent of*
   Proserpina, daughter of Ceres

līberālis, -e, *lit.* worthy of a free
   man; noble, honorable, generous

līberālitās, -tātis, *f.,* kindness,
   generosity

līberātor, -ōris, *m.,* liberator

līberē, *adv.,* freely

līberī, -ōrum, *m. pl.,* children

* **līberō** (1), free, liberate

* **lībertās, -tātis,** *f.,* liberty

lībertīnus, -ī, *m.,* a freedman; a
   libertine

* **lībertus, -ī,** *m.,* a freedman, ex-slave

libet, -ēre, libuit, *impers.,* it is
   pleasing, it gives one pleasure

libīdinōsē, licentiously, lustfully;
   wilfully, arbitrarily

libīdinōsus, -a, -um, licentious,
   lustful; wilful, arbitrary

* **libīdō, -dinis,** *f.,* desire; lust

librārius, -ī, *m.,* scribe, copyist

lībrō (1), balance, poise

Liburnica, -ae, *f.,* a swift ship (*like*
   those of Liburnian pirates of the
   Adriatic)

licentia, -ae, *f.,* license

* **licet, -ēre, licuit,** *impers.,* it is
   permitted, one may

lignum, -ī, *n.,* wood

ligō (1), bind

līlium, -ī, *n.,* lily

līmen, -minis, *n.,* threshold

līmes, līmitis, *m.*, path, road, way

līneāmentum, -ī, *n.*, line; features

lingō, -ere, līnxī, līnctum, lick

* lingua, -ae, *f.*, tongue; speech, language

linteum, -ī, *n.*, linen cloth; sail

līnum, -ī, *n.*, linen; thread, cord

lippitūdō, -inis, *f.*, inflammation of the eyes

liquidō, *adv.*, clearly, certainly

līs, lītis, *f.*, quarrel, controversy, lawsuit

* littera, -ae, *f.*, letter of the alphabet; litterae, -ārum, *f. pl.*, a letter (epistle); literature

lītus, -oris, *n.*, seashore, coast

* locō (1), place, put

locuplēs, *gen.* -plētis, wealthy

* locus, -ī, *m. in sg.* (*pl. usually* loca, -ōrum, *n.*), place, region, space; opportunity, situation; a passage in literature (*pl. here* = locī, -ōrum), topic

longaevus, -a, -um, old, aged

* longē, *adv.*, far, a long way off

longinquus, -a, -um, distant, foreign

* longus, -a, -um, long

* loquor, -ī, locūtus sum, say, speak, converse

lūbricus, -a, -um, slippery

lūceō, -ēre, lūxī, be light, shine; be clear

lūcidus, -a, -um, bright, shining

Lūcifer, -ferī, *m.*, the morning star

Lucrētius, -ī, *m.*, *a Roman nomen, espec.* (*1*) Sp. Lucretius, *father of Lucretia and hero in the founding of the Roman republic;* (*2*) T. Lucretius Carus, *author of* Dē Rērum Nātūrā

lūctuōsus, -a, -um, sorrowful, lamentable

* lūctus, -ūs, *m.*, grief, sorrow, distress

lūdibrium, -ī, *n.*, mockery, derision

* lūdō, -ere, lūsī, lūsum, play (*at a game or on an instrument*); mock, ridicule

* lūdus, -ī, *m.*, play, game; *especially pl.*, public games; school

lūgeō, -ēre, lūxī, mourn, lament

* lūmen, -minis, *n.*, light; eye

lūna, -ae, *f.*, moon

lupa, -ae, *f.*, a she-wolf

lūstrō (1), purify; move round, circle round

lustrum, -ī, *n.*, den, brothel, debauchery

lūsus, -ūs, *m.*, a playing, play, sport

* lūx, lūcis, *f.*, light; prīmā lūce, at daybreak

luxuria, -ae, *f.*, excess, dissipation, extravagance

luxuriōsus, -a, -um, luxurious, dissolute, excessive

luxus, -ūs, *m.*, luxury, extravagance, debauchery

Lȳdia, -ae, *f.*, *a kingdom in west-central Asia Minor*

Lȳdus, -a, -um, Lydian, of Lydia (*in Asia Minor*)

M

M., *abbr. of* Mārcus, *a praenomen*

M.', *abbr. of* Mānius

Macedonēs, -um, *m. pl.*, the Macedonians

Macedonia, -ae, *f.*, *country north of Mt. Olympus*

Macedonicus, -a, -um, Macedonian

macte virtūte, *a phrase of salute* = good luck, bravo, congratulations

maculōsus, -a, -um, spotted

made-faciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factum, wet, drench

madeō, -ēre, -uī, be wet

madidus, -a, -um, wet, soaked

maereō, -ēre, grieve, lament

maestus, -a, -um, sad, dejected

* **magis,** *adv. (compar. of* **magnopere)** more, rather; **eō** *or* **quō magis,** *lit.* more by that = all the more

* **magister, -trī,** *m.,* master; teacher; **magister equitum,** master of the horse (*second in command to a dictator*)

* **magistrātus, -ūs,** *m.,* public office, magistracy; public official, magistrate

magn-animus, -a, -um, high-minded, high-spirited, magnanimous

magnificentior, -ius, *compar. of* **magnificus**

magnificus, -a, -um, great, fine, splendid; sumptuous

* **magnitūdō, -dinis,** *f.,* large size, greatness, magnitude, extent

magn-opere, *adv.,* greatly, earnestly; *compar.* **magis;** *superl.* **maximē**

* **magnus, -a, -um,** large, great, important; *compar.* **maior, maius;** *superl.* **maximus, -a, -um; maiōrēs, -um,** *m. pl.,* ancestors

Māgō, -ōnis, *m., youngest brother of Hannibal*

magus, -ī, *m.,* a learned man (*among the Persians*); a magician

Maharbal, -alis, *m., a Carthaginian officer under Hannibal*

maiestās, -tātis, *f.,* greatness, dignity, majesty

maior: *see* **magnus**

Maius, -a, -um, of (the month of) May

* **male,** *adv. of* **malus,** badly, wickedly; *with words of good connotation,* not, scarcely, with difficulty (**male fīdus,** not faithful; **male sustinēns arma,** scarcely supporting his armor); *with words of bad connotation,* excessively, greatly (**male ōdisse,** to hate excessively; **male metuere,** to fear greatly); *compar.* **peius;** *superl.* **pessimē**

male-dīcō, -ere, -dīxī, -dictum, speak ill of, revile, curse (+ *dat.*)

male-dictus, -a, -um (*partic. of* **maledīcō**), accursed

malitia, -ae, *f.,* malice

malitiōsus, -a, -um, wicked, malicious

* **mālō, mālle, māluī (magisvolō),** wish more, prefer, rather

malum, -ī, *n. of* **malus,** evil, misfortune, crime

* **malus, -a, -um,** bad, evil, wicked; *compar.* **peior, peius;** *superl.* **pessimus, -a, -um**

Māmertīnus, -a, -um, Mamertine, of the Mamertini (*Campanian mercenaries who in the early third cent.* B.C. *had made themselves masters of Messana*)

mamma, -ae, *f.,* breast, teat, dug

mandātum, -ī, *n.,* an order, command, injunction

mandō (1), commit, entrust; order, command

mandūcō (1), chew, eat

māne, *adv.,* early in the morning

* **maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsum,** remain, stay; await

mānēs, -ium, *m. pl. (used of one person or more than one),* ghost, shade, spirit of the dead

manifestus, -a, -um, clear, plain, evident

* **manus, -ūs,** *f.,* hand; band, force; handwriting

Marcellus, -ī, *m., a cognomen; espec.* M. Claudius Marcellus, who *recaptured Syracuse in 212* B.C.

Mārcus, -ī, *m.,* Marcus, *a common praenomen*

* **mare, -is,** *n.,* sea; **terrā marīque,** by *or* on land and sea

margō, -inis, *m.,* border, edge

Maria, -ae, *f.,* Mary *(EL)*

marītō (1), marry; give in marriage

* **marītus, -ī,** *m.,* husband

Mārs, Mārtis, *m., Roman god of agriculture, and war;* war, battle

Mārtius, -a, -um, of Mars, from Mars

massa, -ae, *f.,* mass, lump

Massicus, -a, -um, Massic, *referring to an area in Campania noted for its wine*

* **māter, -tris,** *f.,* mother

mātrimōnium, -ī, *n.,* marriage, matrimony

mātrōna, -ae, *f.,* married woman, matron

mātūrus, -a, -um, ripe, mature, seasonable

Māvors, -vortis, *m., an archaic name for Mars*

maxilla, -ae, *f.,* jaw

* **maximē,** *adv. (superl. of* **magnopere**), very greatly, especially, most

* **maximus, -a, -um,** *superl. of* **magnus;** *also cognomen of* Q. Fabius Maximus, *hero against Hannibal*

meātus, -ūs, *m.,* course, passage

medeor, -ērī, + *dat.,* heal, cure; correct

medicīna, -ae, *f.,* medicine, remedy

medicus, -ī, *m.,* doctor, physician

mediocris, -e, moderate, medium; ordinary, mediocre; *adv.* **mediocriter**

meditor, -ārī, -ātus sum, think over, plan; practice

* **medius, -a, -um,** middle; *with partitive force,* the middle of, the midst of; **medium, -ī,** *n.,* the middle, center

Medūsaeus, -a, -um, Medusa-like

mehercule *or* **-cle** (= **mē Herculēs iuvet**), *interjection,* by Hercules, certainly; *cp.* **hercule**

mel, mellis, *n.,* honey

membrum, -ī, *n.,* limb, member

meminī, -isse, *defective in perf. system with "present" meaning,* remember, think of (+ *gen. or acc.*)

memor, *gen.* **memoris,** *(adj. of 1 ending in nom.),* mindful

memorābilis, -e, memorable

* **memoria, -ae,** *f.,* memory

memoriter, *adv.,* from memory, by heart

memorō (1), mention, recount

mendīcus, -a, -um, poor, beggarly; **mendīcus, -ī,** *m.,* beggar

* **mēns, mentis,** *f.,* mind, reason, understanding; soul, spirit; intention

mēnsa, -ae, *f.,* table; food, course

mēnsis, -is, *m.,* month

mēnsūra, -ae, *f.,* measure, amount

mentiō, -ōnis, *f.,* mention

mentior, -īrī, -ītus sum, lie, say falsely, break one's word

mercātor, -ōris, *m.,* merchant, trader

mercēnnārius, -ī, *m.,* hireling, mercenary

mercēs, -ēdis, *f.,* reward, pay, wages, income

* **mereō, -ēre, -uī, -itum,** *and deponent* **mereor, -ērī, meritus sum,** deserve, earn, merit; serve as a soldier

mereor, *deponent: see* **mereō**

meretrīcius, -a, -um, of a prostitute, meretricious

meretrīx, -trīcis, *f.,* prostitute

mergō, -ere, mersī, mersum, sink, drown, overwhelm

merīdiēs, -diēī *m.,* midday; south

meritō, *adv.,* deservedly

meritum, -ī, *n.,* merit, desert, worth; benefit, service

merum, -ī, *n.,* unmixed wine

Messāna, -ae, *f., a town in northeastern Sicily on the Straits of Messina*

messis, -is, *f.,* harvest

-met, *intensive suffix added to certain pronominal forms,* self, own

mēta, -ae, *f.,* a turning post (*on a racecourse*); goal, end, boundary

Metellus, -ī, *m., a Roman nomen*

mētior, -īrī, mēnsus sum, measure out, measure

* **metuō, -ere, metuī,** dread, fear, be afraid

* **metus, -ūs,** *m.,* fear, dread, anxiety

* **meus, -a, -um,** my, mine

mī, *voc. of* **meus;** *also short form of* **mihi**

mīca, -ae, *f.,* crumb, morsel

micō, -āre, -uī, shake, shine, flash, sparkle

Midās, -ae, *m., a king of Phrygia*

migrō (1), depart; transgress

* **mīles, mīlitis,** *m.,* soldier

mīlia: *see* **mīlle**

mīlitāris, -e, military, warlike

mīlitia, -ae, *f.,* military service, warfare

* **mīlle,** *indecl. adj. in sg.,* thousand; **mīlia, -ium,** *n. pl. noun,* thousands

mināciter, *adv.,* threateningly

minae, -ārum, *f. pl.,* threats

mināx, *gen.* **minācis** (*adj. of 1 ending in nom.*), threatening

Minerva, -ae, *f., goddess of wisdom and arts*

* **minimē,** *adv.,* (*superl. of* **parum**), least, very little; not at all, by no means

minister, -trī, *m.,* servant, attendant, helper, accomplice

ministra, -ae, *f.,* servant

minitābundus, -a, -um, threatening

minitor, -ārī, -ātus sum (+ *dat. of pers.*), threaten

minor, -ārī, -ātus sum, threaten

minor, minus, *compar. of* **parvus**

Mīnos, -ōis, *m., legendary king of Crete*

Minucius, -ī, *m., a Roman nomen; e.g.,* M. Minucius Rufus, **magister equitum** *of the dictator Q. Fabius Maximus in the Second Punic War*

* **minus,** *compar. adv.* (*see* **parum**), less, too little; not

minūtus, -a, -um, small, trifling

mīrābilis, -e, wonderful, marvelous, extraordinary

mīrāculum, -ī, *n.,* wonder, miracle

mīrandus, -a, -um, wonderful, remarkable

* **mīror, -ārī, -ātus sum,** wonder at, admire

* **mīrus, -a, -um,** wonderful, extraordinary

misceō, -ēre, miscuī, mixtum, mix, mingle

Mīsēnum, -ī, *n., promontory near Naples*

* **miser, -era, -erum,** wretched, unhappy, sad, miserable

miserābilis, -e, pitiable

miserandus, -a, -um, = **miserābilis**

misereor, -ērī, -itus sum, + *gen.,* pity

miseria, -ae, *f.,* misery, unhappiness, misfortune

* **misericordia, -ae,** *f.,* pity, mercy, sympathy

misericors, *gen.* **-cordis,** pitiful, compassionate

miseror, -ārī, -ātus sum, pity

mītigō (1), soften, lighten, ease, alleviate

mītis, -e, mild, soft, gentle

* **mittō, -ere, mīsī, missum,** send; throw, cast; let go, omit, pass over

moderātiō, -ōnis, *f.,* moderation, self-control, temperance

moderātus, -a, -um, moderate, temperate, restrained; *adv.* **moderātē**

modestia, -ae, *f.,* moderation (*cp.* **modus**), sobriety, modesty

modicus, -a, -um, moderate

* **modo,** *adv.,* only, merely, just; just now; **modo . . . modo,** now . . . now, at one time . . . at another

* **modus, -ī,** *m.,* measure, quantity, limit, due measure, moderation; mode, way, manner, method; kind, sort; **quem ad modum,** in what way, how, as; **eius modī,** of that sort, of such sort

moechor, -ārī, -ātus sum, commit adultery

* **moenia, -ium,** *n. pl.,* city walls, fortifications

mōlēs, -is, *f.,* mass, large structure, difficulty

molestia, -ae, *f.,* trouble, annoyance

molestus, -a, -um, troublesome, annoying, disagreeable

molliō (4), soften; moderate

mollis, -e, soft

mōmentum, -ī, *n., lit.* movement, motion, moment; influence, importance

monachus, -ī, *m.,* monk (*ML*)

monastērium, -ī, *n.,* monastery (*EL*)

* **moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum,** advise, warn, instruct

monitus, -ūs, *m.,* admonition, advice

* **mōns, -ntis,** *m.,* mountain

mōnstrum, -i, *n.,* monster

montānus, -a, -um, of the mountains, mountainous; **montānus, -ī,** *m.,* a mountaineer

* **monumentum, -ī,** *n.,* reminder; monument, record

* **mora, -ae,** *f.,* delay

mōrālitās, -tātis, *f.,* moral interpretation (*EL*)

morbus, -ī, *m.,* disease, sickness

* **morior, -ī, mortuus sum,** die

moror, -ārī, -ātus sum, delay

* **mors, -rtis,** *f.,* death

morsus, -ūs, *m.,* a biting, bite; teeth

mortālis, -e, mortal

* **mortuus, -a, -um,** dead
  mōrum, -ī, *n.,* mulberry
  mōrus, -ī, *f.,* mulberry tree
* **mōs, mōris,** *m.,* habit, custom,
    manner; **mōrēs, -um,** *m. pl.,* habits,
    character
  Mōses, -is *or* **-ī** (*acc.* **Mōsēn**), *m., the*
    great Hebrew leader
* **mōtus, -ūs,** *m.,* movement; impulse;
    commotion
  mouseion = musēum, -ī, *n.,* abode of
    the muses, museum, library
* **moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum,** move;
    arouse, affect, disturb; **castra**
    movēre, break camp
* **mox,** *adv.,* soon; thereupon
  Mūcius, -ī, *m., a Roman nomen; e.g.,*
    C. Mucius Scaevola, *for whose plot*
    against the Etruscan king Porsenna
    see Livy, Bk. II
  mūcro, -ōnis, *m.,* sharp point (of
    sword)
  multiplicō (1), multiply, increase
  multitūdo, -dinis, *f.,* large number,
    crowd, multitude
* **multum,** *adv.,* much; *compar.* **plūs,**
    more; *superl.* **plūrimum,** very much
* **multus, -a, -um,** much, many;
    compar. **plūs, plūris,** *n. noun in sg.,*
    more, *and* **plūrēs, plūra,** *adj. in pl.,*
    more, several, many; *superl.*
    plūrimus, -a, -um, most, very
    much *or* many (*see* **plūrimus**)
  mūlus, -ī, *m.,* mule
  mundānus, -a, -um, of the world,
    worldly
  mundus, -a, -um, clean, pure, elegant
* **mundus, -ī,** *m.,* world
* **mūni-ceps, -cipis,** *m./f.,* citizen of a
    free town

municipālis, -e, belonging to a free
    town or towns
mūnificē, *adv.,* generously
mūnīmentum, -ī, *n.,* defense,
    fortification
mūniō (4), to wall in, fortify, defend;
    viam mūnīre, build a road
* **mūnus, -eris,** *n.,* duty, function,
    service, gift
murmur, -uris, *n.,* murmur
mūrus, -ī, *m.,* wall
mūtō (1) change; take in exchange
mūtus, -a, -um, mute, dumb; silent,
    still
mūtuum, -ī, *n.,* a loan
mūtuus, -a, -um, mutual, reciprocal;
    borrowed, lent

N

Naïas, -adis, *f.,* Naiad, water nymph
* **nam,** *conj.,* for
nancīscor, -ī, nactus sum, find, get,
    obtain
nārrō (1), tell, relate
* **nāscor, -ī, nātus sum,** be born; arise
nātālis, -e, of birth, natal
nātiō, -ōnis, *f.,* a people, nation
natō (1), swim
* **nātūra, -ae,** *f.,* birth; nature, laws of
    nature
nātūralis, -e, natural
* **nātus, -ī,** *m.,* son (= **fīlius,** *espec. in*
    poetry)
nauarchus, -ī, *m.,* captain of a ship
naufragium, -ī, *n.,* shipwreck
nausea, -ae, *f.,* seasickness, nausea
* **nauta, -ae,** *m.,* sailor
* **nāvigō** (1), sail, sail over
* **nāvis, -is,** *f.,* ship

* **nē** (*sometimes* **ut nē**), *neg. w.
    subjunctive,* not, in order that . . .
    not, not to; *after verbs of fearing,*
    that, lest; *as adv.,* **nē . . . quidem,**
    not even
  ne, *a Greek interjection,* surely
  -ne, *interrog. suffix introducing either
    a direct or an indirect question*
  nē . . . quidem, *adv.,* not . . . even
  Neāpolis, -is, *f., Greek for* 'New
    City': (1) *part of Syracuse;*
    (2) Naples *in Campania*
  Neāpolitānus, -a, -um, belonging to
    Naples
* **nec:** *see* **neque**
  necessāriō, *adv.,* necessarily
* **necessārius, -a, -um,** necessary;
    necessārius, -ī, *m.,* a necessary
    person, a relative; **necessāria,
    -ōrum,** *n. pl.,* necessities
  necesse, *indecl. adj.,* necessary
  necessitās, -tātis, *f.,* necessity
* **necō** (1), kill, slay
* **nefarius, -a, -um,** impious, wicked;
    adv. **nefariē**
  neglegēns, *gen.* **-entis,** careless,
    indifferent, negligent
  neglegenter, *adv.,* carelessly
  neglegentia, -ae, *f.,* carelessness,
    negligence
* **neglegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum,** neglect,
    disregard
* **negō** (1), deny, say that . . . not;
    refuse
  negōtior, -ārī, -ātus sum, be in
    business, trade
* **negōtium, -ī,** *n.,* business,
    assignment, task
* **nēmō (nūllīus), nēminī, nēminem,
    (nūllō, -ā),** nobody, no one

nemus, -oris, *n.,* grove
nepōs, -ōtis, *m.,* grandson
Neptūnus, -ī, *m.,* Neptune, *god of the
    sea*
nē-quam, *indecl. adj.,* worthless, bad,
    wicked; *compar.* **nēquior, -ius;**
    superl. **nēquissimus, -a, -um**
nēquāquam, *adv.,* by no means
* **ne-que** *or* **nec,** *conj.,* and not, nor;
    neque . . . neque, neither . . . nor
ne-queō, -īre, -quiī (-īvī), -ītum, be
    unable
nēquior: *see* **nēquam**
nēquīquam, *adv.,* in vain, to no
    purpose
nervus, -ī, *m.,* sinew; string of a
    lyre
* **nesciō** (4), not to know, be ignorant;
    nesciō + *complementary inf.,*
    know how to; **nesciō quis (quid**
    etc.) *as an indef. pron.,* somebody
    (-thing, *etc.*) or other; **nesciō quī
    (quae, quod)** *as indef. adj.,*
    somebody (-thing, *etc.*) or other
    (**nesciō quā ratiōne,** in some way
    or other); **nesciō an,** I do not
    know whether = probably,
    perhaps
neuter, -tra, -trum, neither (of two)
nē-ve *or* **neu,** and not, or not; **nēve
    (neu) . . . nēve (neu),** neither . . .
    nor
nex, necis, *f.,* murder, violent death
nī = nisi
nīdus, -ī, *m.,* nest
niger, -gra, -grum, black, dark
* **nihil,** *or* **nīl,** *n. nom. and acc.,*
    nothing; **nōn nihil,** something; **nihil**
    as adv., not at all
nihilum, -ī, *n.,* nothing; **nihilō minus,**

adv., *lit.* less by nothing =
nevertheless

nīl = nihil

nīmīrum, *adv.*, doubtless, of course,
to be sure

* **nimis** *or* **nimium,** *adv.*, too much,
excessively

nimius, -a, -um, too much, too great,
excessive

Ninus, -ī, *m.*, *king of Assyria*

* **nisi,** if . . . not, unless; except

niveus, -a, -um, snowy, snow-white

* **nix, nivis,** *f.*, snow

* **nōbilis, -e,** well known, celebrated,
famous; of high birth; excellent

nōbilitās, -tātis, *f.*, fame; noble birth;
the nobility, the nobles

nōbilitō (1), make known *or* famous

nocēns, *gen.* **-entis,** harmful; wicked,
guilty

* **noceō, -ēre, nocuī, nocitum** (+ *dat.*),
harm, injure

noctū, *adv.*, at night, by night

nocturnus, -a, -um, nocturnal

Nōlānus, -a, -um, belonging to Nola,
a town in Campania

* **nōlō, nōlle, nōluī,** be unwilling, not
wish

* **nōmen, -inis,** *n.*, name; *technically
the 'gentile' name (indicating the*
gēns, *clan*), *the second of the three
regular parts of the formal Roman
name:* **praenōmen, nōmen,
cognōmen** (*family branch of the*
gēns); renown, power, status;
pretext

* **nōminō** (1), name, call

* **nōn,** *adv.*, not

nōnae, -ārum, *f. pl.* the nones, *i.e.,
the 5th day of the month, except in*
*March, May, July, and October,
when the nones are the 7th day*

nōn-dum, *adv.*, not yet

nōn-ne, *adv.*, not? *in questions which
expect the answer "yes":* **nōnne
vidēs?** You see, do you not *or* don't
you?

nōn-nūllus, -a, -um, some, several

nōn-numquam, *adv.*, sometimes

nōnus, -a, -um, ninth

nōs: *see* **ego;** *sometimes the plural is
used of one person, where we should
ordinarily use 'I'.*

* **nōscō, -ere, nōvī, nōtum,** become
acquainted with, learn; *perf.
system* = have become acquainted
with, *etc., and so* know, *etc.*

* **noster, -tra, -trum,** our, ours

nota, -ae, *f.*, mark; disgrace (*as in a
censor's mark*), brand

nōtitia, -ae, *f.*, acquaintance,
knowledge; fame

notō (1), notice, observe

* **nōtus, -a, -um,** known, famous

novem, *indecl.*, nine

noverca, -ae, *f.*, stepmother

noviēs, *adv.*, nine times

novissimē, *adv.*, lately, recently

novitās, -tātis, *f.*, novelty,
strangeness

novō (1), make new; change, alter

* **novus, -a, um,** new; strange

* **nox, noctis,** *f.*, night

nūbēs, -is, *f.*, cloud

nūdō (1), strip; rob

nūdus, -a, -um, naked, bare

* **nūllus, -a, -um,** not any, no, none

num, *interrogative adv.:* (1)
*introduces direct questions which
expect a negative answer;* (2)

introduces ind. quests. and means whether

nūmen, -minis, *n., lit.* nod; divine will *or* power, divinity, god

* **numerus, -ī,** *m.,* number; rank, company

Numidae, -ārum, *m.,* the Numidians, *in northern Africa*

Numitor, -ōris, *m., a king of Alba Longa, grandfather of Romulus and Remus*

nummulus, ī, *m.,* little sum of money

nummus, -ī, *m.,* coin; *pl.* money; *any small coin like* a penny *or* a nickel

* **numquam,** *adv.,* never; **nōn numquam,** sometimes (*also written as one word*)

numquid, *interrogative adv., introducing quests. expecting a negative answer,* is it really possible that, surely . . . not?

* **nunc,** *adv.,* now, at present; in these circumstances

nuncupō (1), name

* **nūntiō** (1), announce, report

* **nūntius, -ī,** *m.,* messenger, message, news

nūper, *adv.,* recently

nūpta, -ae, *f.,* bride

nūptiae, -ārum, *f. pl.,* nuptials, wedding

nūtō (1), nod; totter

nūtus, -ūs, *m.,* nod, command

O

Ō, *interjection,* O! Oh!

* **ob,** *prep.* + *acc.,* towards, to; in front of, over against; on account of, because of

ob-eō, -īre, -iī, -itum, go to meet, meet; visit; undertake, perform, carry out; die

* **ob-iciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum,** *lit.* throw against *or* before; offer, present; oppose; cite (*as grounds for disapproval*)

oblātus: *see* **offero**

oblectāmentum, -ī, *n.,* delight, pleasure

ob-linō, -ere, -lēvi, *or* **-līvī, -litum,** smear

oblītus, -a, -um (*see* **oblīvīscor**); *and* **oblitus, -a, -um** (*see* **oblinō**)

ob-līvīscor, -ī, oblītus sum, forget (+ *gen. or acc.*)

oboedientia, -ae, *f.,* obedience

ob-oediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, harken to, obey (+ *dat.*)

ob-orior, -orīrī, -ortus sum, rise up, spring up

ob-ruō, -ere, -ruī, -rutum, overwhelm, oppress; cover, bury

obryzum, -ī (*sc.* **aurum**) *n.,* pure gold (*EL*)

obscūritās, -tātis, *f.,* obscurity, darkness

obscūrō (1), hide, conceal

obscūrus, -a, -um, dark, obscure, unknown

obsecrō (1), beg, beseech

obsequium, -ī, *n.,* compliance, obedience

ob-servō (1), guard, keep, observe, honor

ob-sideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum, *lit.* sit down against, besiege

ob-sidiō, -ōnis, *f.,* siege, blockade

ob-sistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitum, *lit.* stand in the way; withstand, resist (+ *dat.*)

obstinātiō, -ōnis, *f.,* persistence, obstinacy

obstinātus, -a, -um, resolute, firm, obstinate

ob-stipēscō, -ere, -stipuī, be amazed, astounded

ob-stō, -āre, -stitī, -statūrus, stand in the way, stand against, resist, hinder

ob-stringō, -ere, -strīnxī, -strictum, tie, bind (*by an oath*)

ob-struō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctum, block up, hinder

ob-stupefaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factum, astonish, amaze

ob-temperō (1), obey, submit

ob-testor, -ārī, -ātus sum, call to witness; implore, entreat

ob-tineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, hold, possess, maintain

ob-truncō (1), cut down, kill

ob-vertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum, turn towards *or* against

ob-viam, *adv.,* in the way, towards, to meet, to oppose

obvius, -a, -um, in the way, meeting, to meet

* **occāsiō, -ōnis,** *f.,* opportunity, occasion

occāsus, -ūs, *m.,* setting; fall

occidēns, *gen.* **-entis** (*pres. partic. of* **occĭdō**), *as adj.* setting; *as m. noun* (*sc.* **sōl**), the setting sun, the west

* **oc-cĭdō, -ere, -cĭdī, -cāsum** (**ob-cadō,** fall), fall down, go down, set; die, perish

* **oc-cīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum** (**ob-caedō,** cut), cut down, kill

occultō (1), hide, conceal

occultus, -a, -um, hidden, concealed, secret

occupātiō, -ōnis, *f.,* business, employment, occupation

occupō (1), seize, occupy; employ

oc-currō, -ere, -currī, -cursum, run to meet, hurry to, arrive

octāvus, -a, -um, eighth

octiēs, *adv.,* eight times

octō, *indecl.,* eight

* **oculus, -ī,** *m.,* eye

* **ōdī, ōdisse, ōsūrus,** hate

* **odium, -ī,** *n.,* hate, hatred, aversion

odor, -ōris, *m.,* odor, scent

odōrātus, -a, -um, fragrant

offendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsum, dash against; come upon; offend, displease; receive an injury, suffer grief

of-ferō, -ferre, obtulī, oblātum, offer, present, show

officiōsus, -a, -um, dutiful, obliging, courteous

* **officium, -ī,** *n.,* service, kindness; duty, obligation; ceremony

oleum, -ī, *n.,* (olive) oil

ōlim, *adv.,* at that time; formerly, once upon a time; hereafter, in times to come

Olympius, -a, -um, of Olympus (*the home of the gods*)

ōmen, ōminis, *n.,* omen, sign, token

* **omittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum,** let go, pass over, omit

* **omnīnō,** *adv.,* wholly, entirely, altogether, completely

omni-potēns, *gen.* **-potentis,** all-powerful, omnipotent

* **omnis, -e,** all, every

onerōsus, -a, -um, burdensome

onus, -eris, *n.,* load, burden

opācus, -a, -um, dark, obscure

* **opera, -ae,** *f.,* effort, pains, attention,

care, work, help; **operā meā,**
thanks to me; **operam dare,** see to,
take pains

operārius, -ī, *m.,* day-laborer

operiō, -īre, operuī, opertum, cover

operor, -ārī, -ātus sum, work, labor,
toil

opi-fex, -ficis, *m./f.,* worker, artisan

opīmus, -a, -um, fat; rich, splendid

* **opīniō, -ōnis,** *f.,* opinion, thought,
expectation, belief, repute

opīnor, -ārī, -ātus sum, be of an
opinion, think, suppose

* **oportet, -ēre, oportuit,** *impers.,* it
behooves, it is proper, necessary,
becoming; one ought

op-petō, -ere, -petīvī, -petītum, go to
meet; suffer, encounter

oppidum, -ī, *n.,* town

op-pleō, -ēre, -plēvī, -plētum, fill,
cover

op-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum,
oppose, put forward, allege

opportūnitās, -tātis, *f.,* advantage,
opportunity

opportūnus, -a, -um, appropriate,
serviceable, advantageous

op-primō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum,
overwhelm, overpower, crush

* **op-pugnō** (1), attack

* **ops, opis,** *f.,* help, aid, power; **opēs,
opum,** *pl.,* power, resources,
wealth

optātiō, -ōnis, *f.,* wish

optātum, -ī, *n.,* wish

optimē, *superl. of* **bene**

optimus, -a, -um, *superl. of* **bonus**

* **optō** (1), wish, wish for, desire

* **opus, operis,** *n.,* work, achievement;
opus est, there is need of (+ *gen.*

or abl.), it is necessary (*often +
inf.*)

* **ōra, -ae,** *f.,* seashore, coast

* **ōrātiō, -ōnis,** *f.,* speech, oration;
discourse; eloquence; language

orbis, -is, *m.,* orb, circle; **orbis
terrārum,** the world

orbō (1), deprive (*of parents or
children*)

ōrdior, -īrī, ōrsus sum, begin,
commence

* **ōrdō, -dinis,** *m.,* order, rank, class;
arrangement, regularity

Orestēs, -is, *m., son of Agamemnon
and Clytemnestra, and close friend
of Pylades*

orgia, -ōrum, *n. pl.,* orgies, secret
festival (of Bacchus)

oriēns, -entis, *m., lit.* the rising sun
(*sc.* **sōl**); the east, orient

orīgō, -inis, *f.,* origin, source, lineage

Ōriōn, -ōnis, *m., a famous hunter
slain by Artemis and changed into
a constellation*

* **orior, -īrī, ortus sum,** rise, arise;
spring from, descend, originate

* **ōrnāmentum, -ī,** *n.,* distinction,
honor, decoration, ornament

* **ōrnātus, -a, -um,** adorned,
decorated; distinguished,
illustrious

* **ōrnātus, -ūs,** *m.,* ornament,
decoration, embellishment, dress

* **ōrnō** (1), equip; adorn, decorate,
embellish

* **ōrō** (1), speak, plead, beg, pray

Orpheus (-a, -um, of) Orpheus

ortus, -ūs, *m.,* a rising; origin; source

* **ōs, ōris,** *n.,* mouth, face; tongue,
speech

os, ossis, *n.,* bone
ōscular (1), kiss
ōsculum, -ī, *n.,* kiss
* **os-tendō, -ere, -dī, ostentum,** *lit.*
  stretch out; show, exhibit; declare
ostentātiō, -ōnis, *f.,* ostentation,
  boasting, false show
ostentō (1), *frequentative of* **ostendō,**
  display, exhibit, show
ōtiōsus, -a, um, at leisure,
  unoccupied
* **ōtium, -ī,** *n.,* leisure; peace, quiet
ovis, -is, *f.,* sheep
ovō (1), rejoice, exult

P

P., *abbr. of* **Publius,** *a praenomen*
pābulum, -ī, *n.,* fodder
pacīscō, -ere, pactum, arrange,
  negotiate, agree upon
Pactōlus, -ī, *m., Lydian river famous
  for the gold found in its sand*
pactum, -ī, *n.,* agreement, pact; **quō
  pactō,** in what way
pactus, -a, -um, agreed upon,
  stipulated
Pācuvius, -ī, *m., a Roman writer of
  tragedy in the 2nd cent.* B.C.
Paean, -ānis, *m., epithet of Apollo
  the healer*
* **paene,** *adv.,* almost, nearly
paenitēns, *gen.* **-entis,** penitent,
  repentant
paenitentia, -ae, *f.,* repentance
* **paenitet, -ēre, paenituit,** *impers. with
  acc. of person and gen. of thing or
  the inf. of a* **quod** *clause:* **mē huius
  reī paenitet,** *lit.* it causes me regret
  or repentance of this thing = I

repent, regret, am sorry for this
  thing
pāgānus, -a, -um, belonging to a
  country district *or* village, rural;
  pagan; **pāgānus, -ī,** *m.,* a
  countryman, villager; a pagan
pāla, -ae, *f.,* bezel of a ring
palam, *adv.,* openly
Palātium, -ī, *n.,* Palatine Hill *in
  Rome*
palleō, -ēre, be pale
pallēscō, -ere, -palluī, grow pale *or*
  yellow
pallidus, -a, -um, pale, pallid
palma, -ae, *f.,* palm (of hand)
palus, -ūdis, *f.,* swamp
Pamphȳlia, -ae, *f., a district in
  southern Asia Minor*
pānārium, -ī, *n.,* bread basket
pandō, -ere, pandī, passum, extend,
  spread, lay open
pangō, -ere, pepigī, pāctum, fasten;
  compose; agree on, contract
pānis, -is, *m.,* bread
Panormus, -ī, *f.,* Palermo
pāpa, -ae, *m.,* father, papa; *in eccl.
  Lat.,* bishop, pope
pār, *gen.* **paris,** *adj.,* equal,
  adequate
parabola, -ae, *f.,* comparison;
  parable
paradīsus, -ī, *m.,* a park; Paradise
parātus, -a, -um (*partic. of* **parō**),
  prepared, ready
parcō, -ere, pepercī, parsum, + *dat.,*
  spare, preserve
* **parēns, -entis,** *m./f.,* parent
* **pāreō, -ēre, pāruī, pāritum,** + *dat.,*
  be obedient to, obey
pariēs, -etis, *m.,* wall (of a house)

* **pariō, -ere, peperī, partum,** beget,
     produce
  pariter, *adv.,* equally, as well
  parō (1), prepare, furnish, provide;
     acquire, get
  Paros, -ī, *f., a large island of the
     Cyclades in the Aegean Sea,
     famous for its beautiful marble*
  parricīdium, -ī, *n.,* murder of a
     parent *or* relative; murder; treason
* **pars, partis,** *f.,* part, share; side,
     direction; role; party, faction; **ā
     dextrā (laevā) parte,** on the right
     (left) hand *or* side; **maximam
     partem,** *as adv.,* for the most
     part.
  parsimōnia, -ae, *f.,* thrift, frugality
  parti-ceps, *gen.* **-cipis,** *adj.,* sharing,
     participating; *as noun, m.,* sharer,
     participant, partner
  partim, *adv.,* partly
  partiō (4), divide, share, distribute
  partītiō, -ōnis, *f.,* partition, division
  partus, -ūs, *m.,* offspring, bearing
     offspring
  parum, *adv. of* **parvus,** too little, not
     enough; *compar.* **minus,** less;
     superl. **minimē,** very little, least of
     all, not at all
  parumper, *adv.,* for a little while
  parvulus, -a, -um, small, tiny
  parvus, -a, -um, little, small; *compar.*
     minor, minus; *superl.* **minimus,
     -a, -um**
  pāscō, -ere, pāvī, pāstum, feed, lead
     to pasture
  passim, *adv.,* here and there, far and
     wide
  passiō, -ōnis, *f.,* suffering, passion
     (EL)
  passus, -ūs, *m.,* step, pace

  pāstor, -ōris, *m.,* shepherd
  pāstus, -ūs, *m.,* food, fodder
  patefaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factum, throw
     open, expose
* **patēō, -ēre, -uī,** lie open, extend, be
     exposed, be revealed *or* clear
* **pater, -tris** *m.,* father
  patientia, -ae, *f.,* endurance,
     patience
* **patior, -ī, passus sum,** suffer, endure;
     permit, allow
* **patria, -ae,** *f.,* fatherland, native
     land
  patrius, -a, -um, of a father, father's,
     paternal; ancestral
  patrōnus, -ī, *m.,* protector, patron;
     advocate (in a trial)
* **paucī, -ae, -a,** *adj. usu. in pl.,* few, a
     few
  paucitās, -tātis, *f.,* small number
  paulātim, *adv.,* gradually, little by
     little
* **paulus, -a, -um,** little, small; *very
     commonly in the abl. (degree of
     difference) as an adv.,* **paulō,** a
     little, somewhat
  Paulus (*or* **Paullus**), **-ī,** *m., a
     cognomen in the gens Aemilia, e.g.,*
     L. Aemilius Paulus, *consul and
     general who lost his life at Cannae
     in 216* B.C.; L. Aemilius Paulus
     Macedonius, *son of the above and
     victor at Pydna in 167* B.C.
  pauper, *gen.* **-eris,** poor (not rich)
  paupertās, -tātis, *f.,* poverty
  pavor, -ōris, *m.,* trembling, terror
* **pāx, pācis,** *f.,* peace
* **peccātor, -ōris,** *m.,* sinner *(EL)*
  peccātum, -ī, *n.,* sin, error, fault
* **peccō** (1), make a mistake, commit a
     fault, sin

pectus, -oris, *n.,* breast; heart, feelings

* **pecūnia, -ae,** *f.,* money, property, wealth

pecūniōsus, -a, -um, moneyed, wealthy

pecus, -oris, *n.,* cattle, herd

* **pedes, peditis,** *m.,* foot soldier; *pl.* = infantry

peditātus, -ūs, *m.,* infantry

peior: *see* malus

pelagus, -ī, *n.,* sea

* **pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsum,** strike, push; move; drive out, exile, defeat

penātēs, -ium, *m. pl.,* household gods, penates

pendeō, -ere, pependī, hang, hang down, be suspended

penes, *prep.* + *acc.,* in the possession *or* power of

penetrō (1), enter, penetrate

penitus, *adv.,* deeply, thoroughly, wholly

* **penna, -ae,** *f.,* feather

pēnsō (1), weigh

pēnūria, -ae, *f.,* want, scarcity

pependī: *see* **pendeō**

pepercī: *see* **parcō**

peperī: *see* **pariō**

pepulī: *see* **pellō**

* **per,** *prep.* + *acc.,* through, across; by; *as adverbial prefix,* very (**permagnus,** very large), thoroughly

per-agō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum, *lit.* do thoroughly; complete, finish; live through

per-angustus, -a, -um, very narrow

* **per-cipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum,** obtain, get, acquire, perceive

per-contor (*or* **-cunctor**), **-ārī, -ātus sum,** question, ask, investigate

per-crēbrēscō, -ere, -bruī, become very frequent; spread abroad

per-cunctor: *see* **per-contor**

* **per-cutiō, -ere, -cussī, -cussum,** strike

perditiō, -ōnis, *f.,* ruin, perdition (*EL*)

perditus, -a, -um, lost, corrupt, depraved

* **per-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditum,** destroy, ruin; lose

peregrē, *adv.,* away from home, abroad

peregrīnātiō, -ōnis, *f.,* foreign travel

peregrīnor, -ārī, -ātus sum, travel abroad; ramble

perennis, -e, lasting, perennial

* **per-eō, -īre, -iī, -itum,** pass away, be destroyed, perish

perfectus, -a, -um, complete, finished; excellent, carefully wrought, perfect

per-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, bear through, endure; report, relate, announce

* **per-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum,** *lit.* do thoroughly; complete, accomplish, bring about, achieve

perfidia, -ae, *f.,* faithlessness, treachery

per-fuga, -ae, *m.,* fugitive, deserter

per-fugiō, -ere, -fūgī, -fugitum, flee, escape

per-fungor, -ī, -fūnctus sum, + *abl.,* perform, complete, execute

pergō, -ere, perrēxī, perrēctum, go on, keep on, continue, proceed

per-grātus, -a, -um, very pleasing

perīclitor, -ārī, -ātus sum, test; run a risk, be in danger

perīclum = **perīculum**

perīculōsē, *adv.,* dangerously

perīculōsus, -a, -um, dangerous

* **perīculum, -ī,** *n.,* danger, risk

per-imō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēmptum, kill, destroy

perītus, -a, -um, experienced, expert, skilled (+ *gen. or abl.*)

per-iūrium, -ī, *n.,* perjury

periūrus, -a, -um, perjured, lying

per-magnus, -a, -um, very large *or* great

* **per-maneō, -ēre, -mānsī, -mānsum,** remain, abide, continue

per-mātūrēscō, -ere, -mātūruī, become ripe

per-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, permit, allow

per-molestē, *adv.,* with much vexation, with great distress, annoyance, irritation

per-multum, *adv.,* very much

per-multus, -a, -um, very much, very many

perniciēs, -ēī, *f.,* destruction, ruin, death

perniciōsus, -a, -um, destructive, dangerous, pernicious

per-nōbilis, -e, very famous

per-ōsus, -a, -um, hating, loathing (+ *acc.*)

per-pellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum, drive on, urge

perpetuitās, -tātis, *f.,* continuity, duration

* **perpetuus, -a, -um,** continuous, uninterrupted, constant, lasting, perpetual

Persae, -ārum, *m. pl.* the Persians

per-saepe, *adv.,* very often

per-secūtiō, -ōnis, *f.,* a chase, pursuit; prosecution; persecution

per-sequor, -ī, -secūtus sum, follow closely, pursue; record, relate, describe; perform, accomplish

Persephonē, -ēs, *f., Greek for* Proserpina, *the queen of Hades*

per-sevērō (1), persevere, persist, insist, continue

persōna, -ae, *f.,* mask (in drama); character, person

persōnāliter, *adv.,* personally (*late Lat.*)

perspicientia, -ae, *f.,* full knowledge

* **per-spiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum,** see clearly, perceive

per-stringō, -ere, -strinxī, -strictum, affect deeply, strike, move

per-suadeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsum, persuade

per-timēscō, -ere, -timuī, become *or* be thoroughly frightened, fear greatly

pertinācia, -ae, *f.,* obstinacy, stubbornness, defiance

per-tināx, *gen.* **-ācis,** tenacious; obstinate, stubborn

* **per-tineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum,** pertain to, relate to, concern

per-trāns-eō, -īre, -iī, -itum, go *or* pass through, pass by

* **per-turbātiō, -ōnis,** *f.,* disturbance, disorder; emotion, passion

per-turbō (1), agitate, disturb

per-ūtilis, -e, very useful

per-vagor, -ārī, -ātus sum, wander about; spread over

* **per-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum,** come through, arrive, reach

per-versē, *adv.,* perversely

perversus, -a, -um, crooked, distorted, perverse

per-vigilō (1), stay awake throughout the night

pēs, pedis, *m.,* lower leg, foot

pessimus: *see* **malus**

pestifer, -fera, -ferum, destructive, injurious

pestilentia, -ae, *f.,* plague, pestilence

pestis, -is, *f.,* pestilence, destruction, death

petītiō, -ōnis, *f.,* attack; pursuit; petition, request

* **petō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum,** seek, aim at, ask, beg

Phaëthōn, -ontis, *m., son of the sun god, killed while trying to drive his father's chariot through the sky*

Pharisaeus, -ī, *m.,* a Pharisee

Philippus, -ī, *m., name of several Macedonian kings, especially* Philip II, *the father of Alexander and in his conquest of Greece opposed by Demosthenes*

* **philosophia, -ae,** *f.,* philosophy

philosophus, -ī, *m.,* philosopher

Phryges, -um, *m. pl.,* the Phrygians *of Asia Minor*

pictūra, -ae, *f.,* a painting, picture

pietās, -tātis, *f.,* devotion, loyalty; piety

piger, -gra, -grum, lazy

pignus, -oris, *n.,* pledge, proof; *pl.,* pledges of love (= children)

pigritia, -ae, *f.,* laziness, indolence, sluggishness, disinclination (*to act*)

pincerna, -ae, *m.,* cupbearer (*late Lat.*)

pingō, -ere, pinxī, pictum, paint, portray

pīnus, -ī, *f.,* pine tree

pīrāta, -ae, *m.,* pirate

piscis, -is, *m.,* fish

Pīsō, -ōnis, *m.,* Piso, *a cognomen; espec.* L. Calpurnius Piso, *Caesar's father-in-law*

pius, -a, -um, pious, religious, loyal, devoted

* **placeō, -ēre, -uī, placitum,** + *dat.,* be pleasing to, please; *especially impersonal* **placet,** it is pleasing, is thought best, is decided, + *inf. or* **ut-***clause*

* **plāga, -ae,** *f.,* blow, wound

planctus, -ūs, *m., lit.* a beating of the breast; lamentation

plangō, -ere, planxī, planctum, strike, beat; lament, bewail

plangor, -ōris, *m.,* a striking, blow; lamentation, wailing

* **plānus, -a, -um,** level, plain, clear; **plānum, -ī,** *n.,* a plain; *adv.* **plānē**

Platō, -ōnis, *m., the famous Greek philosopher*

plaudō, -ere, plausī, plausum, strike together, clap the hands, applaud

* **plēbs, plēbis, plēbēs, -ēī,** *f.,* the common people

* **plēnus, -a, -um,** full (+ *gen. or abl.*)

* **plērīque, -aeque, -aque,** *pl.,* the majority, very many

plērumque, *adv.,* generally

plūma, -ae, *f.,* soft feather, down

plumbeus, -a, -um, made of lead, leaden; dull; heavy

plumbum, -ī, *n.,* lead

plūrimum, *adv.: see under* **plūrimus** *and* **multum**

* **plūrimus, -a, -um,** *superl. of* **multus; plūrimum, -ī,** *n.,* very much, a

great deal; **plūrimum,** *adv.,* very much, for the most part; **plūrimum posse,** to be very powerful

* **plūs,** *compar.: see both adj.* **multus** *and adv.* **multum**

pluvia, -ae, *f.,* rain

poēma, -atis, *n.,* poem

poena, -ae, *f.,* punishment, penalty

Poenus, -ī, *m.,* a Carthaginian; the Carthaginian = Hannibal; **Poenī, -ōrum** *m. pl.,* the Carthaginians

poēta, -ae, *m.,* poet

poēticus, -a, -um, poetic

polītus, -a, -um, polished, refined, polite

pollex, -icis, *m.,* thumb

* **polliceor, -ērī, -licitus sum,** promise

pollicitum, -ī, *n.,* promise

Polybius, -ī, *m., Greek historian of the 2nd cent.* B.C.

Pompēius, -ī, Gnaeus Pompeius Magnus, Pompey the Great, *triumvir and rival of Caesar*

pōmum, -ī, *n.,* fruit

pondus, -eris, *n.,* weight

* **pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum,** put, place, set; set before, serve (food)

* **pōns, -ntis,** *m.,* bridge

pontifex, -ficis, *m.,* a Roman high priest; a Christian bishop *or* the Pope

pontificātus, -ūs, *m.,* the pontificate

Pontus, -ī, *m.,* the Black Sea

poposcī: *see* **poscō**

populāris, -e, of the people, belonging to the people; **populāris, -is,** *m.,* a fellow-countryman, accomplice

populātiō, -ōnis, *f.,* plundering, devastation

populor, -ārī, -ātus sum, plunder, devastate

* **populus, -ī,** *m.,* people, nation; the multitude

porcus, -ī, *m.,* pig

porrō, *adv.,* forward, furthermore, moreover, in turn

Porsenna, -ae, *m., Etruscan king of Clusium*

* **porta, -ae,** *f.,* gate

porticus, -ūs, *f.,* colonnade, portico

portiō, -ōnis, *f.,* part, portion

portitor, -ōris, *m.,* ferryman

* **portō** (1), carry, take

portus, -ūs, *m.,* port, harbor

poscō, -ere, poposcī, request, demand

* **possideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum,** possess, hold

* **possum, posse, potuī,** be able, can, have power; **plūrimum possum,** be very powerful, have very great power

* **post,** *prep. + acc. and adv.: prep.,* behind, after, since; *adv.,* behind, afterwards, later

* **post-eā,** *adv.,* afterwards; **posteā quam** *or* **posteāquam = postquam,** *conj.,* after

posteritās, -tātis, *f.,* future ages, time to come, posterity

* **posterus, -a, -um,** following, future; **posterī, -ōrum,** *m. pl.,* posterity; **in posterum,** for the future; *compar.* **posterior, -ius,** later, inferior; *superl.* **postrēmus, -a, -um,** last, worst

post-hāc, *adv.,* hereafter, henceforth

postis, -is, *m.,* post; *pl.,* door

* **postquam,** *conj.,* after

postrēmus, -a, -um, *superl. of* **posterus,** last; worst

* **postulō** (1), demand, request; prosecute, accuse

potēns, *gen.* **-entis,** powerful

* **potentia, -ae,** *f.,* power, rule

* **potestās, -tātis,** *f.,* power, authority; opportunity

pōtiō, -ōnis, *f.,* drink

potior, -īrī, potītus sum, + *abl. or gen.,* be powerful over, get possession of, possess

* **potis, pote,** powerful, able, possible; *compar.* **potior, -ius,** better, more important; **potissimus, -a, -um,** most important

potissimum, *superl. adv. of* **potius,** especially, above all

potius, *compar. adv., of* **potis;** rather, preferably; *superl.* **potissimum,** especially, above all

prae, *prep.* + *abl.,* before, in front of; in comparison with; **prae-** *as prefix,* before, very (*intensive*)

praebeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, hold out, offer, present, furnish; show

prae-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, go before, precede

praeceps, *gen.* **-cipitis,** headlong, unchecked

praeceptum, -ī, *n.,* precept, injunction, rule

* **prae-cipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum,** advise, instruct, prescribe, command

praecipitō (1), cast down headlong, destroy; hasten

prae-cipuus, -a, -um, especial, peculiar, distinguished; *adv.* **praecipuē**

praeclārē, *adv. of* **praeclārus**

* **prae-clārus, -a, -um,** brilliant, illustrious, magnificent, excellent

prae-clūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsum, shut off, close

prae-currō, -ere, -cucurrī, -cursum, run ahead, exceed, surpass

prae-dicātiō, -ōnis, *f.,* proclamation; commendation; *in eccl. Lat.,* preaching

prae-dicātor, -ōris, *m.,* a eulogist; *in eccl. Lat.,* a preacher

prae-dīcō, -ere, -dīxī, -dictum, warn; instruct

prae-ditus, -a, -um (-datus), gifted *or* endowed with

* **praedō, -ōnis,** *m.,* robber, pirate, plunderer

praedor, -ārī, -ātus sum, plunder

prae-eō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *lit.* go ahead; lead the way, dictate a formula

prae-fectus, -ī, *m.,* overseer, commander, prefect

prae-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, carry before, display; prefer, choose

* **prae-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum,** *lit.* to make *or* put ahead; put in command

prae-gredior, -ī, -gressus sum, go ahead of, precede

prae-gressus, -ūs, *m.,* previous development

prae-lūceō, -ēre, -lūxī, shine before, throw a light before; outshine, surpass

praemium, -ī, *n.,* reward, prize

prae-mūniō (4), fortify, make safe

prae-nūntius, -ī, *m.,* foreteller, sign, token

prae-parō (1), prepare

prae-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum,
  put before; put over, appoint;
  prefer
prae-potēns, *gen.* **-entis,** *adj.,* very
  powerful
* **praesēns,** *gen.* **-entis,** *adj.,* present, at
  hand, in person
praesentō (1), show, present
praesertim, *adv.,* especially
* **praesidium, -ī,** *n.,* protection,
  assistance; garrison, post, station
prae-stābilis, -e, = **prae-stāns**
prae-stāns, *gen.* **-stantis,** excellent,
  eminent, distinguished, important
* **prae-stō, -āre, -stitī, -stitum,** stand
  out; offer, show, exhibit; excel
praestō, *adv.,* on hand, ready,
  waiting for
praesul, -ulis, *m.,* patron, bishop
  (*ML*)
prae-sum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, be set
  over, be in command, command,
  rule (+ *dat.*)
praeter, *adv. and prep.* + *acc.,* past,
  beyond, by; except, contrary to
* **praetereā,** *adv.,* beyond, besides,
  moreover
praeter-eō, -īre, -iī, -itum, go *or* pass
  by, pass; omit, neglect; transgress
praeter-itus, -a, -um, past, gone by
praeter-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum,
  let pass, pass over, neglect, omit
praeter-vectiō, -ōnis, *f.,* passing place
  for ships
praeter-vehor, -ī, -vectus sum, *lit.* be
  carried by; pass by, ride by
prae-textātus, -ī, *m.,* a boy who wore
  the **toga praetexta** (*w. a purple
  border*), *i.e., till the age of 15 or 16*
* **praetor, -ōris,** *m.,* praetor, *a Roman
  magistrate with judicial duties*

praetōrium, -ī, *n.,* general's tent;
  residence of the governor
prae-vius, -a, -um, going before
prātum, -ī, *n.,* meadow
prāvus, -a, -um, distorted, perverse;
  wicked
precātiō, -ōnis, *f.,* prayer
precēs, -um, *f., pl.* (**prex, precis,** *sg.
  rare*), prayers, entreaty
precor, -ārī, -ātus sum, pray,
  beseech, invoke
premō, -ere, pressī, pressum, press,
  pursue, oppress; load, cover, bury
prēndō, -ere, prēndī, prēnsum, grasp,
  seize
* **pretiōsus, -a, -um,** valuable, costly,
  precious
* **pretium, -ī,** *n.,* price, value; reward
prīdem, *adv.,* long ago
prīdiē, *adv.,* on the day before
prīmordium, -ī, *n.,* beginning
prīmum, *adv.,* first, in the first place;
  quam prīmum, as soon as possible;
  cum (ut) prīmum, as soon as
* **prīmus, -a, -um,** (*superl. of* **prior**),
  first, foremost; earliest, principal;
  in prīmīs, (*or* **imprīmīs**), especially;
  prīmō, *as adv.,* at first, at the
  beginning; **prīmum,** *adv., see*
  prīmum
* **prīnceps,** *gen.* **-cipis,** *adj.,* foremost;
  also as a noun m./f., leader, chief
prīncipātus, -ūs, *m.,* pre-eminence,
  rule, leadership
* **prīncipium, -ī,** *n.,* beginning, origin;
  element, principle; **prīncipiō,** in
  the beginning, at first
prior, prius, *compar.,* former,
  previous, prior; **prius,** *adv.,*
  previously
prīscus, -a, -um, of former times,

ancient, olden, venerable, old-
fashioned

prius, *adv. of* **prior**

prius-quam, *conj.,* before; until *after
a negative*

prīvātim, *adv.,* privately

prīvātus, -a, -um, private, individual;
prīvātus, -ī, *m.,* private citizen

* **prō,** *prep.* + *abl.,* in front of, on
behalf of, for, in return for, in
place of, in view of

* **prō,** *interjection,* oh! ah! alas!

probābilis, -e, acceptable,
commendable, probable, likely

* **probitās, -tātis,** goodness,
uprightness, honesty

* **probō** (1), test, examine, prove,
demonstrate; approve, commend

probus, -a, -um, upright, honest,
good; *adv.* **probē,** well, rightly,
properly

Proca, -ae, *m., a king of Alba Longa*

prō-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, go
forth, advance

procella, -ae, *f.,* storm; onset

procer, -eris, *m.,* a chief, noble

prōclīvis, -e, sloping down; steep

prō-cōnsul, -sulis, *m.,* proconsul, *a
consul whose power was extended
beyond his term of office, often to
serve as governor of a province*

prō-creō (1), beget, produce,
procreate

* **procul,** *adv.,* far off, at a distance

prō-cūrātiō, -ōnis, *f.,* a taking care
of, management, administration,
conduct

prō-cursātiō, -ōnis, *f.,* sally, charge

prod-eō, -īre, -iī, -itum, go forth,
advance

prōditor, -ōris, *m.,* traitor

prō-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead
forth, produce; prolong

* **proelium, -ī,** *n.,* battle

pro-fānus, -a, -um, *lit.* in front of the
temple; not sacred, profane,
common

profectō, *adv.,* surely, actually, really

* **prō-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum,** carry
forward, bring forth, make
known, invent, mention

* **prō-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum,** gain,
accomplish

* **proficīscor, -ī, -fectus sum,** set out,
depart; arise from

pro-fiteor, -ērī, -fessus sum, declare
openly, avow, profess

prō-fluō, -ere, -flūxī, -fluxum, flow

pro-fugiō, -ere, -fūgī, -fugitum,
escape

profundus, -a, -um, extending a long
way down, deep

* **prō-gredior, -ī, -gressus sum,** go
forward, advance, proceed

prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, hold off,
check, prevent, prohibit

proinde, *adv.,* therefore

prō-lābor, -ī, -lāpus sum, slip
forward, fall down

prōlēs, -is, *f.,* offspring, progeny

prō-mineō, -ēre, jut out, project

prō-miscuus, -a, -um, *lit.* mixed;
indiscriminate, in common

prō-missum, -ī, *n.* (*from partic. of*
prō-mittō), a thing promised, a
promise

* **prō-mittō, -ere, mīsī, -missum,**
promise

prō-mulgō (1), make known,
publish, promulgate

prōmunturium, -ī, *n.,* headland

prō-palam, *adv.,* publicly, openly

* **prope,** *prep.* + *acc.,* near, close to; *as adv.,* nearly, almost, closely; *comp.* **propius,** more nearly, nearer; *superl.* **proximē,** nearest, very recently

pro-pellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum, drive forth

properātus, -a, -um, (*partic. of* **properō**), hurried, untimely

properē, *adv.,* quickly

* **properō** (1), hasten, act in haste, be quick

prophēta, -ae, *m.,* prophet (*EL*)

propinquus, -a, -um, near, neighboring, related; **propinquus, -ī,** *m.,* kinsman

propitius, -a, -um, favorable, gracious

propius, *adv.;* see **prope**

* **prō-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum,** set forth, display; propose

proprius, -a, -um, one's own, peculiar, proper, characteristic of

* **propter,** *prep.* + *acc.,* on account of, because of

prō-pulsō (1), repel, ward off, avert

prō-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, cessum, go forward, advance

prō-ripiō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptum, drag forth

prōrsus (prō-versus), *adv.,* by all means, certainly, absolutely; in short

prō-sequor, -ī, -secūtus sum, accompany, attend

prō-siliō, -īre, -siluī, leap forth

prō-spectus, -ūs, *m.,* view

* **prosperus, -a, -um,** fortunate, prosperous; *adv.* **prosperē**

prō-spiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum, look out toward: foresee, provide for

prō-sum, prōdesse, prōfuī, prōfutūrus (+ *dat.*), be useful, benefit, profit

prō-tegō, -ere, -tēxī, -tēctum, *lit.* cover in front; defend, protect

prōtinus, *adv., lit.* forward; at once, immediately

pro-ut, *conj.,* just as, according as

prō-vectus, -a, -um, *lit.* carried forward; advanced (in years)

prōverbium, -ī, proverb

* **prōvincia, -ae,** *f.,* province; sphere of duty

prōvinciālis, -e, of a province, provincial; **prōvinciālēs, -ium,** *m. pl.,* inhabitants of a province, provincials

prō-vocō (1), call forth, provoke, challenge

* **proximus, -a, -um,** (*superl. of* **propior**), nearest, next, very near; **proximum, -ī,** *n.,* neighborhood; **proximus, -ī,** *m.,* neighbor (= **vīcīnus**)

prūdēns, *gen.* **-entis,** foreseeing, skilled, wise, prudent

prūdenter, *adv. of* **prūdēns**

prūdentia, -ae, *f.,* foresight, discretion; knowledge, skill

pruīnōsus, -a, -um, covered with frost, frost-laden

prytanēum, -ī, *n.,* town hall

pūblicānus, -ī, *m.,* tax-collector, publican

pūblicō (1), make public, publish

* **pūblicus, -a, -um,** belonging to the people, public, common, general; **rēs pūblica,** commonwealth, state, republic, government; **pūblicum,**

-ī, *n.,* a public place; **pūblicē,** *adv.,*
publicly

pudor, -ōris, *m.,* modesty, decency;
shame, disgrace

* **puella, -ae,** *f.,* girl, maiden, young
woman

* **puer, puerī,** *m.,* boy; child

puerīlis, -e, boyish, childish

pugillārēs, -ium, *m. pl.,* writing
tablets

* **pugna, -ae,** *f.,* fight, battle

* **pugnō** (1), fight

* **pulcher, -chra, -chrum,** beautiful

* **pulchritūdō, -inis,** *f.,* beauty

pullus, -a, -um, dark

pulsō (1), beat, strike

pulvis, -eris, *m.,* dust

pūmex, -icis, *m.,* pumice

Pūnicus, -a, -um, Punic,
Carthaginian; Phoenician

* **pūniō** (4), punish

pūrgō (1), cleanse, clean, clear up

purpura, -ae, *f.,* purple garment,
robe

purpureus, -a, -um, purple, dark red;
bright, shining

pūrus, -a, -um, pure, undefiled

pusillus, -a, -um, very little, very
small; **pusillum, -ī,** *n.,* a very little,
a trifle

* **putō** (1), think, suppose, consider

putre-faciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factum, make
rotten *or* friable

putrēscō, -ere, become rotten, decay

Pyladēs, -is, *m., alter ego of Orestes*

Pȳramus, -ī, *m., lover of Thisbe (see
Ovid)*

Pyrrhus, -ī, *m., king of Epirus, finally
defeated by the Romans in 275* B.C.

Pȳrēnaeus, -a, -um, of *or* belonging

to Pyrene *(a local heroine buried
amid the Pyrenees mountains,
which lie between Spain and
France),* Pyrenean

Q

* **quā,** *adv.,* in which place, where

quadrāgintā, *indecl.,* forty

quadrīduum, -ī *n.,* period of four
days

quadringentiēns, *adv.,* four hundred
times

quadrirēmis, -is, *f.,* quadrireme *(a
ship with four banks of oars)*

* **quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesītum,**
seek, search for, inquire,
investigate

quaestiō, -ōnis, *f.,* seeking, inquiry,
examination, investigation

quaestus, -ūs, *m.,* gain, profit

quālis-cumque, quāle-cumque, of
whatever sort

quālis, -e, of what kind, what sort;
such as, as

* **quam,** *adv., after a compar.,* than;
with a superl., as . . . as possible;
how, how greatly; **tam . . . quam,**
as . . . as

quam-diū, *adv.,* how long?, as
long as

quam-libet, *adv.,* ever so (much),
however (much)

quam-ob-rem, why?, wherefore,
therefore

* **quamquam,** *conj.,* although;
*transitional at the beginning of a
sent. or of a main cl. in a sent.,* and
yet, in fact, to be sure

* **quam-vīs,** *lit.* as you wish; *adv.* ever

so (much), however; *conj.*
although, however much

* **quandō,** *interrog adv. and conj.,*
  when?; *indef. after* **sī** *and* **nē,** at
  any time, ever; *causal,* since,
  because

* **quantus, -a, -um,** *interrogative and
  rel.,* how great, how much; **tantus
  . . . quantus,** as great/much . . . as

  quā-propter, *adv.,* wherefore,
  therefore

  quārē (quā-rē), *adv., lit.* because of
  which thing, wherefore, why

  quārtāna, -ae, *f.,* quartan fever
  (**febris**), *recurring every 4th day*

  quārtus, -a, -um, fourth

* **qua-si,** *conj.,* as if; *adv.,* as it were, so
  to speak, nearly

  quā-tenus, *adv.,* how far? up to what
  point? to what extent? inasmuch
  as, since

  quater, *adv.,* four times

  quatiō, -ere, quassī, quassum, shake

* **quattuor,** *indecl.,* four

* **-que,** *enclitic conj.,* and

  quem-ad-modum, *adv.,* how

  queō, quīre, quīvī, quitum, *defective
  vb. chiefly in pres. tense,* can, be
  able

  quercus, -ūs, *f.,* the oak (tree)

  querēlla, -ae, *f.,* complaint

  querimōnia, -ae, *f.,* lament,
  complaint

* **queror, -ī, questus sum,** complain,
  lament

* **quī? quae? quod?** *interrogative adj.,*
  what? which? what kind of?

* **quī, quae, quod,** *rel. pron.,* who,
  which, what, that; *often with
  conjunctive force at the beginning*

of a sentence = **et hic** (**haec, hoc,**
etc.); **quam ob rem,** on account of
this thing, wherefore; **quod sī,** but
if; **quī-cum,** *an old form* = **quō-
cum; quī,** *adv.,* how

* **quī, quae/qua, quod,** *indef. adj. after*
  sī, nisi, nē *and* **num,** any, some

* **quia,** *conj.,* because, since

* **quīcumque, quaecumque,**
  quodcumque, *rel. and indef. pron.
  and adj.,* whoever, whatever

  quid, *as adv.: see* **quis?**

* **quī-dam, quae-dam, quid-dam** (*pron.*)
  or **quod-dam** (*adj.*), *indef.,* a
  certain; a certain one *or* person

* **quidem,** *postpositive adv.,* indeed, to
  be sure, at least, even; **nē . . .
  quidem,** not even

* **quiēs, -ētis,** *f.,* rest, quiet

  quiēscō, -ere, quiēvī, quiētum, be
  quiet, be neutral, do nothing

  quiētus, -a, -um, quiet

  quī-libet, quae-libet, quod-libet (*adj.*)
  or **quid-libet** (*pron.*), any, any you
  please

  quīn, how not? why not? that *after
  verbs of doubting;* from *after
  negative vbs. of hindering,
  preventing, etc.;* **quīn** = **quī nōn**
  after a general negative; **quīn
  etiam,** why even, more than that

* **quī-nam, quae-nam, quod-nam**
  interrogative adj., who, which,
  what (in the world)?

  quīndecim, *indecl.,* fifteen

  quīngentī, -ae, -a, five hundred

* **quīnque,** *indecl.,* five

  quīnquiēs, *adv.,* five times

* **quīntus, -a, -um,** fifth

  Quīntus, -ī, Quintus, *a praenomen*

* **quippe,** *adv.,* of course, to be sure, naturally, for, indeed

Quirīnus, -ī, *m., an ancient name given to Romulus*

* **quis quid,** *interrogative pron.,* who? what? **quid** *often* = why?; what! why! *indef. pron. after* **sī, nisi, nē** *and* **num,** anyone, anything, someone, something

quis-nam, quae-nam, quid-nam, *interrog. pron.,* who/what pray? who/what in the world?

* **quis-piam, quae-piam, quid-piam,** someone, something

* **quisquam, quidquam** *or* **quicquam,** *indef.,* anyone, anything, *usually in negative clauses*

* **quisque, quaeque, quidque** (*pron.*) *or* **quodque** (*adj.*), *indef.,* each one, every one, each, every; **unus quisque,** each one

* **quisquis, quaequae, quidquid,** whoever, whatever

quīvīs, quaevīs, quidvīs *or* **quodvīs,** *indef. pron. and adj.,* anyone, anything

* **quō,** *adv. interrogative or rel.,* where (*i.e.,* whither = to what *or* which place); *also conj. introducing a purpose cl. containing a comparative,* in order that

quo-ad, *conj.,* how long? as long as, until

quōcircā, *adv.,* therefore

quō-cumque, *adv.,* to whatever place, wherever

* **quod,** *conj.,* because; the fact that, as to the fact that; **quod sī,** but if. *In EL and ML* **quod** = that, *a "universal conj." introducing ind.*

state. and command, purpose, result, etc.

quōmodo, *adv.,* in what way, how

quō-minus, *lit.* by which the less; in order that the less, from (**quōminus faciat,** from doing) *after verbs of hindering and preventing*

quondam, *adv.,* once, formerly; sometimes

* **quoniam,** *conj.,* since, because

* **quoque,** *adv.,* also, too

quō-quō, *adv.,* to whatever place, wherever

* **quot,** *indecl.,* how many; as many

quotiēns, *adv.,* how often?, as often as

quotiēnscumque, *adv.,* however often, as often as

quo-usque, *adv.,* how far, how long

R

radiō (1), send out rays, gleam

radius, -ī, *m.,* rod, spoke (of a wheel), ray

rādix, -īcis, *f.,* root

Raecius, -ī, *m., a Roman name*

rāmus, -ī, *m.,* branch

rapidus, -a, -um, *lit.* snatching; consuming, rapacious, fierce; rapid, swift

rapīna, -ae, *f.,* seizure; plundering, robbery

rapiō, -ere, rapuī, raptum, seize, snatch, carry off, hurry off

raptim, *adv.,* hurriedly

raptor, -ōris, *m.,* snatcher, robber

rārus, -a, -um, scattered, rare, uncommon, remarkable

* **ratiō, -ōnis,** *f.,* reckoning, business account; reason, method, plan, theory, consideration, regard

Rēa (Rhēa) Silvia, -ae, *f., mother of Romulus and Remus by Mars*

rec-cidō: *see* **re-cidō**

re-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, go back, retire, withdraw, go away

recēns, *gen.* **-entis,** recent; new, just come

receptrīx, -īcis, *f.,* receiver, concealer

re-cidō, -ere, reccidī, recāsum (cadō), fall back, return, be reduced

re-ciperō (1): *see* **recuperō**

* **re-cipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum,** take back, regain, recover, receive; **sē recipere,** betake oneself, withdraw, retire

re-cognōscō, -ere, -cognōvī, -cognitum, recognize

re-colō, -ere, -coluī, -cultum, cultivate again, feel afresh

re-conciliō (1), regain, win back, reconcile

re-condō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, put back, store away; *with* **oculōs,** close again

re-cordātiō, -ōnis, *f.,* recollection

re-cordor, -ārī, -ātus sum, call to mind, recollect, remember

re-creō (1), *lit.* create again; refresh, revive, restore; recover

re-crūdēscō, -ere, -crūduī, become raw again

* **rēctē,** *adv.,* rightly, properly

rēctor, -ōris, *m.,* director, governor

rēctus, -a, -um, straight, right, proper, just; **rēctā** (*sc.* **viā**) *as adv.,* straight, directly

recubō, -āre, lie back, recline

re-cumbō, -ere, -cubuī, recline

* **recuperō** (1), recover, regain

re-cūsō (1), decline, refuse, protest

* **red-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditum,** give back, return, restore

* **red-eō, -īre, -iī, -itum,** go back, return

red-imō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēmptum, buy back, ransom, buy

red-itus, -ūs, *m.,* a going back, return

red-undō (1), overflow, flow freely, abound in

re-fellō, -ere, -fellī, disprove, refute

* **re-ferō, -ere, rettulī, relātum,** bring back, report; record

rē-fert, -ferre, -tulit, *impers.,* it matters, it is important

refertus, -a, -um (referciō), crammed, crowded with (+ *gen. or abl.*)

re-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, repair, restore, refresh

refrīgerium, -ī, *n., lit.* a cooling; refreshment, consolation (*EL*)

refrīgerō (1), to cool (off)

re-fugus, -a, -um, fugitive, receding

rēgia, -ae, *f.,* royal palace

rēgīna, -ae, *f.,* queen

Rēgīnī, -ōrum, *m.,* people of Regium, *a town in southern Italy opposite Messina*

* **regiō, -ōnis,** *f.,* region, district

Rēgium, -ī, *n., town in southern Italy*

* **rēgius, -a, -um,** royal

* **rēgnō** (1), be king, reign

* **rēgnum, -ī,** *n.,* kingdom, realm

* **regō, -ere, -rēxī, rēctum,** guide, direct; rule

re-gredior, -ī, -gressus sum, go back, retreat, withdraw

Rēgulus, -ī, *m., Roman cognomen;*

espec. M. Atilius Regulus, *famous for loyalty to his oath in 1st Punic War*

rē-iectiō, -ōnis, *f.,* rejection

re-labor, -ī, -lapsus sum, slip, glide, *or* sink back

relaxō (1), relax, loosen

re-levō (1), lift up; relieve, lighten

* **religiō, -ōnis,** *f.,* religious ceremony *or* scruples, worship, sacred obligation

religiōsē, *adv.,* conscientiously, devoutly

* **religiōsus, -a, -um,** holy; pious, devout

* **relinquō, -ere, -līquī, -lictum,** leave; abandon, desert, give up

* **reliquus, -a, -um,** remaining, rest (of), other

re-lūceō, -ēre, -lūxī, shine out

re-maneō, -ēre, -mānsī, -mānsum, remain, continue, abide

remedium, -ī, *n.,* remedy

re-mētior, -īrī, -mēnsus sum, measure again, measure back

rēmigium, -ī, *n., lit.* a rowing; rowing motion (of wings), wing power

remissiō, -ōnis, *f.,* a relaxing, relaxation, slackening, remission, forgiveness

re-mitto, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, send back, send off, give up, forgive, remit

re-moror, -ārī, -ātus sum, linger, tarry

re-mōtus, -a, -um, removed, distant, remote, free from

* **re-moveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum,** remove, lay aside

re-mūneror, -ārī, -ātus sum, repay, reward

Remus, -ī, *m., brother of Romulus*

re-nāscor, -ī, -nātus sum, be born again, return

renīdeō, -ēre, shine, beam, smile

re-novō (1), renew

reor, rērī, ratus sum, think, suppose

re-pedō (1), step back, turn back; retire

re-pellō, -ere, reppulī, repulsum, drive back *or* away

repente, *adv.,* suddenly, unexpectedly

repentīnus, -a, -um, sudden, unexpected

re-percussus, -a, -um, (*partic. of* **repercutiō**), re-echoing

re-periō, -īre, repperī, repertum, find, discover

* **re-petō, -ere, -petīvī, -petītum,** seek again, return to; repeat

re-pleō, -ēre, -plēvī, -plētum, fill up

re-portō (1), carry back, bring back

re-prehendō, -ere, -hendī, -hēnsum, seize; blame, censure

re-prehēnsō (1), hold back repeatedly *or* eagerly

re-pudiō (1), reject, refuse, repudiate

re-pugnō (1), resist, oppose; be inconsistent with

re-putō (1), think over, consider

requiēs, -ētis, *f.,* rest

re-quiēscō, -ere, -quiēvī, rest, repose

* **re-quīrō, -ere, -sīvī, -sītum,** search for, ask for, require

* **rēs, reī,** *f., a noun of innumerable meanings according to the context,* thing, matter, business, affair, *etc.;* **rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae,** state, commonwealth, republic, government; **rē vērā,** *as adv.,* really, actually

re-scindō, -ere, -scidī, -scissum tear away, tear down

re-servō (1), keep back, reserve; preserve

re-sīdō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessum, sit down; abate, subside

* **re-sistō, -ere, -stitī,** halt, remain; resist (+ *dat.*)

* **re-spiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum,** look back; reflect upon, consider

* **respondeō, -ēre, -spondī, -spōnsum,** answer

re-stituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtum, set up again, restore, renew

re-supinus, -a, -um, lying on the back

re-surgō, -ere, -surrēxī, -surrēctum, rise up again

rēte, -is, *n.,* net

re-texō, -ere, -uī, -tum, unweave, reverse

retināculum, -i, *n., usually pl.,* rope, tether, rein

* **re-tineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum,** hold back, retain, restrain

re-trahō, -ere, -trāxī, -trāctum, drag back, bring back

retrō, *adv.,* back, backwards

* **reus, -ī,** *m.,* defendant, accused person; a sinner (*in ML*)

re-vellō, -ere, -vellī, -vulsum, tear away, pull off

* **re-vertor, revertī** (*pres. inf.*), **revertī** (*perf. indic. act. and perf. system act.*), **reversus, -a, -um** (having returned), turn back, come back, return

re-virēscō, -ere, -viruī, become green again

re-vīvīsco, -ere, re-vīxī, come back to life again, revive

re-vocō (1), call back, recall

re-volvō, -ere, -volvī, -volūtum, roll back; think over; *pass.,* return

* **rēx, rēgis,** *m.,* king; despot; a rich *or* mighty person

Rhodopē, -ēs (*acc.* **-ēn**), *f., mountain range in Thrace*

Rhodopēius, -a, -um, Thracian (*from the mountain Rhodope*)

rictus, -ūs, *m., sg. or pl.,* the open mouth, jaws

rīdeō, -ēre, rīsī, rīsum, laugh, laugh at

rigeō, -ēre, be stiff, stiffen

rigēns, *gen.* **-entis,** stiff, hard

rigidus, -a, -um, stiff, rigid, inflexible

rigō (1), moisten, to water

rīma, -ae, *f.,* crack

rīpa, -ae, *f.,* bank (of a river)

rīvus, -ī, *m.,* brook, stream

rōbur, -boris, *n., lit.* oak; strength

robustus, -a, -um, *lit.* of oak; firm, strong, robust

rōdō, -ere, rōsī, rōsum, gnaw, nibble at; disparage, slander

rogātus, -ūs, *m.,* asking, request

rogātiō, -ōnis, *f.,* proposed law, bill; request

* **rogō** (1), ask, request; propose for election, elect

rogus, -ī, *m.,* funeral pyre

Rōma, -ae, *f.,* Rome

Rōmānus, -a, -um, Roman

Rōmulus, -ī, *m., reputed founder of Rome*

rōstrum, -ī, *n.,* beak; ramming beak of a warship; **rōstra, -ōrum,** *pl.,* speakers' platform in Forum, *which was adorned with ships' beaks*

rubeō, -ēre, be red, blush

rubus, -ī, *m.*, bramble-bush

rudis, -e, rough, unskilled, uncultivated

ruīna, -ae, *f.*, a falling down, ruin, disaster

rūmor, -ōris, *m.*, report, rumor

rumpō, -ere, rūpī, ruptum, burst, break open, destroy

* rūpēs, -is, *f.*, rock, cliff

rūri-cola, -ae, *m./f.*, inhabitant of the country, a farmer

* rūrsus, *adv.*, back, again

rūsticānus, -a, -um, of the country, rustic

rūsticātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, rural life, visit to the country

rūsticus, -a, -um, of the country, rural, rustic

S

S. = salūtem (dicit)

sabbatum, -ī, *n.*, the Sabbath

saccus, -ī, *m.*, sack, bag

* sacer, -cra, -crum, sacred, holy; sacrum, -ī, *n.*, religious rite; sacrifice

sacerdōs, -ōtis, *m./f.*, priest, priestess

sacrāmentum, -ī, *n.*, oath

sacrificium, -ī, *n.*, sacrifice

saeculāris, -e, of a generation *or* a century; worldly, profane, secular

* saeculum, -ī, *n.*, century; generation; the world (*in ML*)

* saepe, *adv.*, often; *compar.* saepius

saepiō, -īre, -psī, -ptum, hedge in, enclose; protect

saevus, -a, -um, savage, fierce

sagīnō (1), feed, fatten

sagulum, -ī, *n.*, military cloak

Saguntīnī, -ōrum, *m.*, the people of Saguntum *in eastern Spain*

saltem, *adv.*, at least

saltus, -ūs, *m.*, mountain pass

salūbris, -e, healthful, salutary, beneficial

* salūs, -ūtis, *f.*, health, safety, welfare, preservation; greeting (salūtem dīcere), *usually abbreviated to* S. *or* Sal.

salūtāris, -e, healthful, salutary, beneficial

salūtō (1), greet, salute

* salvō (1), save, preserve (*ML*)

* salvus, -a, -um, safe

Samarītānus, -a, -um, Samaritan

Samos, -ī, *f.*, *an island in the Aegean Sea off the central western coast of Asia Minor, birthplace of Pythagoras*

sanciō, -īre, sanxī, sānctum, make sacred

sāncti-ficō (1), treat as holy, sanctify (*EL*)

sānctitās, -tātis, *f.*, sanctity, purity

* sānctus, -a, -um, sacred, holy, venerable, virtuous

sānē, *adv.* indeed, truly, by all means, certainly, to be sure

* sanguis, -inis, *m.*, blood; bloodshed

sānō (1), heal, cure

* sānus, -a, -um, sound, healthy

sapiēns, *gen.* -entis, wise, sensible; *as a noun, m.*, a wise man, philosopher

sapienter, *adv.*, wisely

* sapientia, -ae, *f.*, wisdom; intelligence

* sapiō, -ere, -īvī, be sensible *or* wise, understand

sapphīrus, -ī, *m.,* sapphire

Sapphō, -ūs, *f., the famous Greek lyric poetess*

sarcina, -ae, *f.,* soldier's pack, baggage

Sardēs, -ium, *f. pl.,* Sardis, *capital of Lydia*

sardonychus, -a, -um, of sardonyx

satelles, -itis, *m./f.,* attendant

satietās, -tātis, *f.,* satiety, sufficiency

* **satis,** *indecl. adj., n., and adv.,* enough; *compar.* **satius,** better

satis-faciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factum, *lit.* do enough for; satisfy

saturō (1), satisfy, fill

satyrus, -ī, *m.,* a satyr, *a sylvan divinity with animal traits (horns, horse's tail, goat's feet), an attendant of Bacchus*

saucius, -a, -um, wounded, injured

* **saxum, -ī,** *n.,* rock

scaena, -ae, *f.,* stage, theater

scaenicus, -a, -um, of the stage *or* theater, dramatic, theatrical

Scaevola, -ae, *m.,* the left-handed, *the cognomen given to C. Mucius*

scelerātus, -a, -um, criminal, wicked, accursed

* **scelus, -eris,** *n.,* crime, wickedness

* **scientia, -ae,** *f.,* knowledge

scī-licet, *adv.,* obviously, to be sure, of course; namely

scindō, -ere, scidī, scissum, cut, split

* **sciō, -īre, scīvī, scītum,** know, understand; know how

Scīpiō, -ōnis, *m., a Roman cognomen; see* **Cornelius**

scīscitor, -ārī, -ātus sum, seek to know, inquire

scopulus, -ī, *m.,* crag, cliff

* **scrība, -ae,** *m.,* secretary

* **scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptum,** write, compose; enroll (soldiers)

scrīptum, -ī, *n.,* a writing, treatise

scrīptūra, -ae, *f.,* a writing, composition

sculptilis, -e, carved, sculptured

scūtum, -ī, *n.,* shield

sē, *reflex. pron.: see* **suī**

sē-, *inseparable prefix,* apart, aside, without

sē-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, go away, withdraw

sē-crētus, -a, -um, remote, hidden, secret; **sēcrētum, -ī,** *n.,* a secret

secundum, *prep. + acc.,* following, after; according to

* **secundus, -a, -um,** *lit.* following; second, favorable; **secundō,** *as adv.,* secondly

secūris, -is, *f.,* ax

sē-cūritās, -tātis, *f.,* freedom from care, confidence; safety, security

sē-cūrus, -a, -um, free from care, safe, secure

secus, *adv.,* otherwise; *prep. + acc. (ante-class. and late Lat.)* along, near, beside

* **sed,** *conj.,* but

sēdātiō, -ōnis, *f.,* an allaying, soothing; see (*EL, official seat of a bishop or other church official*)

* **sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sessum,** sit

* **sēdēs, -is,** *f.,* seat, abode, home, place

sēd-itiō, -ōnis, *f., lit.* a going apart; dissension, quarrel

sēd-itiōsus, -a, -um, turbulent, rebellious, quarrelsome

sēdō (1), settle, soothe, check, stop

sēdulō, *adv.,* earnestly; purposely, designedly

sēgnis, -e, slow, sluggish

sēgniter, *adv.,* sluggishly, slowly

sē-gregō (1), separate, set apart

sē-iungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnctum, separate

semel, *adv.,* once

sēmen, -inis, *n.,* seed

Semīramis, -idis, *f., wife of Ninus, king of Assyria*

sēmi-vīvus, -a, -um, half alive = half dead

* **semper,** *adv.,* always

sempiternus, -a, -um, everlasting, eternal

senātor, -ōris, *m.,* senator

* **senātus, -ūs,** *m.,* senate

senectūs, -tūtis, *f.,* old age

senex, senis, *m./f. adj. or noun,* old *or* an old man (woman); *compar.* **senior, -ōris,** *m.,* older, elderly *or* an elderly man (*between 45 and 60 years of age*)

senīlis, -e, of an old man, old man's

senior: *compar. of* **senex**

sēnsus, -ūs, *m.,* feeling, sensation, understanding, opinion, meaning

* **sententia, -ae,** *f.,* thought, opinion; vote

* **sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsum,** feel, think, perceive

sēparātim, *adv.,* separately, apart

sē-parō (1), separate

sepeliō, -īre, -īvī, sepultum, bury

septem, *indecl.,* seven

September, *gen.* **-bris,** *adj.,* belonging to September, of September; **September** (*sc.* **mēnsis**), **-bris,** *m.,* September

septem-decim = **septendecim**

septēnārium, -ī, *n.,* that which consists of seven = the seven gifts

of the Spirit (*see* **Veni Sancte Spiritus**)

septen-decim, *indecl.,* seventeen

septiēs, *adv.,* seven times

septimus, -a, -um, seventh

septingentī, -ae, -a, seven hundred

sepulcrum, -ī, *n.,* grave, tomb

sepultūra, -ae, *f.,* burial

sequestrō (1), separate (*late Lat.*)

* **sequor, -ī, secūtus sum,** follow

* **sermō, -ōnis,** *m.,* conversation, talk

sērō, *adv. of* **sērus,** late, too late; *compar.* **sērius;** *superl.* **sērissimē**

serpēns, -entis, *m./f.,* snake

serpō, -ere, -psī, crawl, creep, spread

sērus, -a, -um, late, belated

servīlis, -e, of a slave, servile

* **serviō** (4), be a slave, serve

servitium, -ī, *n.,* slavery, servitude; slaves

servitūs, -tūtis, *f.,* slavery, servitude, subjection

* **servō** (1), save, preserve

servulus, -ī, *m.,* young slave

* **servus, -ī,** *m.,* slave, servant

sescentī, -ae, -a, six hundred; *often simply an indefinitely large number, as we use 1000*

sēstertium, -ī, *n.,* a thousand sesterces

* **seu** = **sīve**

sevēritās, -tātis, *f.,* severity, sternness

sex, *indecl.,* six

sexāgēsimus, -a, -um, sixtieth

sexiēs, *adv.,* six times

sexus, -ūs, *m.,* sex

* **sī,** *conj.,* if, in case; whether; **quod sī,** but if

Sibylla, -ae, *f.,* a Sibyl, *prophetic priestess of Apollo*

* **sīc,** *adv.,* so, thus

siccō (1), to dry

siccus, -a, -um, dry

Sicilia, -ae, *f.,* Sicily

Siculus, -a, -um, Sicilian; **Siculus, -ī,**
   m., a Sicilian

* **sīc-ut** (*or* **-utī**), just as

sīdus, -eris, *n.,* constellation, star

sigillō (1), to seal (*ML*)

significātiō, -ōnis, *f.,* sign, token

significō (1), indicate, make known;
   mean, signify

* **signō** (1), to seal

* **signum, -ī,** *n.,* sign, signal, standard
   (banner); seal; statue

silēns, *gen.* **-entis,** silent, still

* **silentium, -ī,** *n.,* silence

Sīlēnus, -ī, *m., oldest of the satyrs*
   and tutor and attendant of
   Bacchus

siliqua, -ae, *f.,* husk, pod

silva, -ae, *f.,* forest

silvānus, -a, -um, of the woods,
   sylvan (*ML*)

* **similis, -e,** like, similar (+ *gen. or*
   dat.); *compar.,* **similior;** *superl.*
   simillimus

similiter, *adv.,* similarly, likewise

* **similitūdō, -inis,** *f.,* likeness,
   resemblance; comparison, simile;
   parable (*EL*)

simplex, *gen.* **-icis,** plain, simple,
   sincere

* **simul,** *adv.,* at the same time, along
   with; **simulatque,** as soon as

* **simulācrum, -ī,** *m.,* image, portrait,
   statue; phantom, shade

simulātiō, -ōnis, *f.,* false show,
   pretence, hypocrisy

simulātus, -a, -um (simulō), feigned,
   pretended

simulō (1), feign, pretend

* **sīn,** *conj.,* but if

sincērus, -a, -um, unadulterated,
   whole; candid, sincere, genuine

* **sine,** *prep* + *abl.,* without

* **singulī, -ae, -a,** *distributive pl.,* one
   each, one at a time; single,
   individual

sinister, -tra, -trum, left, on the left
   hand; awkward, wrong, perverse

* **sinō, -ere, sīvī, situm,** allow, permit

Sinuessānus, -a, -um, of Sinuessa, *a*
   town in Latium

sinus, -ūs, *m.,* fold; bay, gulf; fold
   (*in a garment*) = pocket, lap,
   bosom

sīquidem, *conj.,* if indeed; since,
   inasmuch as

* **sistō, -ere, stitī, statum,** set up, stop,
   check

Sīsyphus, -ī, *m., wicked king of*
   Corinth condemned in Tartarus to
   roll a boulder eternally uphill

sitiēns, *gen.* **-entis,** thirsty

sitis, -is, *f.,* thirst

situs, -a, -um, *perf. partic. of* **sino,**
   placed, situated; **situs esse in** +
   abl., to rest *or* depend on

* **sī-ve** (*or* **seu**), *conj.,* or if; **sīve . . .**
   sīve, if . . . or if, whether . . . or

socer, -erī, *m.,* father-in-law

* **societās, -tātis,** *f.,* fellowship,
   association; alliance, society,
   union

sociō (1), unite, join, associate

* **socius, -ī,** *m.,* ally, partner, associate

Sōcratēs, -is, *m., famous Athenian*
   philosopher of the 5th cent. B.C.

* **sōl, sōlis,** *m.,* sun

* **sōlācium, -ī,** *n.,* consolation, solace

solea, -ae, *f.,* sandal

* **soleō, -ēre, solitus sum,** be
   accustomed

solidus, -a, -um, firm, solid,
  complete
sōlitārius, -a, -um, solitary, lonely,
  unsocial
sōlitūdō, -dinis, *f.,* solitude,
  wilderness
solitus, -a, -um *(partic. of* soleō),
  usual, customary
sollemne, -is, *n.,* festival, ceremony,
  rite
sollemnis, -e, annual; solemn; usual,
  customary, festive
sollertia, -ae, *f.,* skill, expertness,
  cleverness, quickness of mind,
  keen understanding; shrewdness,
  trickery
sollicitō (1), agitate, disturb, harass
sollicitus, -a, -um, stirred up,
  agitated, disturbed
sōlor, -ārī, -ātus sum, comfort,
  console; soothe, lessen
solum, -ī, *n.,* soil, earth
* sōlum, *adv., (cp.* sōlus) only, merely;
  nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam, not only
  . . . but also
* sōlus, -a, -um, alone, only, sole
solūtus, -a, -um *(from* solvō),
  loosened, free (from);
  unrestrained, careless
solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtum, loosen,
  release, dissolve; fulfill, pay
somnium, -ī, *n.,* dream
somnus, -ī, *m.,* sleep
sonāns, *gen.* -antis, sounding, noisy
sonitus, -ūs, *m.,* sound, noise
sonus, -ī, *m.,* sound, noise
sopor, -ōris, *m.,* deep sleep
* sordidus, -a, -um, dirty, base,
  disgraceful
soror, -ōris, *f.,* sister
sors, sortis, *f.,* lot, fate

spargō, -ere, sparsī, sparsum, scatter
spatior, -ārī, -ātus sum, walk, walk
  about
spatium, -ī, *n.,* space, place, room;
  interval, time, opportunity
speciāliter, *adv.,* particularly,
  especially
* speciēs, -ēī, *f.,* sight, view;
  appearance, mien, semblance;
  vision; kind, species
speciōsus, -a, -um, beautiful, fine,
  splendid
spectāculum, -ī, *n.,* sight, spectacle
spectātiō, -ōnis, *f.,* the sight
* spectō (1), look at, see, watch;
  consider; look toward, face
speculātor, -ōris, *m.,* a spy
speculor, -ārī, -ātus sum, spy
spernō, -ere, sprēvī, sprētum, despise,
  spurn, reject
* spērō (1), hope, hope for; expect
* spēs, -eī, *f.,* hope, expectation
spīna, -ae, *f.,* thorn
* spīritus, -ūs, *m.,* breath, breathing;
  spirit, soul, mind, courage; air,
  wind
splendeō, -ēre, -uī, shine, glitter, be
  bright, be glorious
splendidus, -a, -um, shining,
  splendid, fine, illustrious; *adv.*
  splendidē, splendidly, with
  splendor
splendor, -ōris, *m.,* brightness,
  splendor
spoliātiō, -ōnis, *f.,* plundering,
  robbing
spoliō (1), strip, despoil, rob,
  plunder
spolium, -ī, *n.,* booty, spoil, arms
  taken from the enemy
spōnsālia, -ium, *n. pl.,* a betrothal

sponte, *f. abl. sg. as an adv. (often with* **suā, meā**), of one's own accord, voluntarily, freely

spūmi-ger, -era, -erum, foaming

spūmō (1), to foam

squālidus, -a, -um, dirty, squalid

Stabiae, -ārum, *f. pl., town near Vesuvius*

* **stabilis, -e,** stable, steadfast, constant, firm

stabilitās, -tātis, *f.,* stability, firmness, steadfastness

stabulārius, -ī, *m.,* innkeeper

stabulum, -ī, *n.,* stable; tavern, lodging

stadium, -ī, *n.,* racecourse, stadium

stāgnum, -ī, *n.,* standing water, pool

* **statim,** *adv.,* at once, immediately

statiō, -ōnis, *f.,* station, post

statīvus, -a, -um, stationary, fixed; **statīva, -ōrum,** *n. pl. (sc.* **castra)** permanent camp

statua, -ae, *f.,* statue

* **statuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum,** put, place, set up; decide, determine, resolve

status, -ūs, *m.,* standing, condition, state

status, -a, -um (*partic. of* **sisto),** fixed, appointed

stēlla, -ae, *f.,* star

stilus, -ī, *m.,* stylus, pointed instrument *for writing on wax tablets*

stīpendiārius, -a, -um, required to pay tax *or* tribute, tributary

stīpendium, -ī, *n.,* pay; tribute

* **stirps, stirpis,** *f.,* trunk, stock; family, lineage

stīva, -ae, *f.,* plowhandle

* **stō, -āre, stetī, statum,** stand, stand still

Stōicus, -a, -um, Stoic; **Stōicus, -ī,** *m.,* a Stoic philosopher

stola, -ae, *f.,* long robe

stomachus, -ī, *m.,* gullet; stomach; liking, taste

strāgēs, -is, *f.,* ruin; slaughter

strātum, -ī, *n.,* bed; blanket

strēnuē, *adv.,* actively, promptly

strepitus, -ūs, *m.,* noise, din

strictus, -a, -um (*partic. of* **stringō),** drawn together, tight; severe, strict; *adv.* **strictē**

strīdō, -ere, strīdī, hiss

strīdulus, -a, -um, hissing, creaking

stringō, -ere, strīnxī, strictum, touch lightly, graze; draw tight, bind; draw, unsheath

struēs, -is, *f.,* heap

* **studeō, -ēre, -uī,** be eager, be devoted to, study

studiōsē, *adv. of* **studiōsus**

studiōsus, -a, -um, eager, zealous, devoted

* **studium, -ī,** *n.,* eagerness, zeal, pursuit, study; loyalty, devotion

stultitia, -ae, *f.,* foolishness, stupidity

* **stultus, -a, -um,** foolish

stupeō, -ēre, -uī, be amazed, gaze at with wonder

stuprum, -ī, *n.,* debauchery, sexual intercourse, dishonor

Styx, Stygis, *f., the hated river which surrounded Hades*

suādeō, -ēre, suāsī, suāsum, advise, urge, recommend

suāsor, -ōris, *m.,* recommender, promoter, advocate

suāvitās, -tātis, *f.,* sweetness, pleasantness

suāviter, *adv.,* sweetly, pleasantly; gently

* **sub,** *prep.* + *acc. and abl.: with acc.
of motion,* under, close up to; *with
abl. of place where,* under, at the
foot of

sub-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, put *or*
place under, plunge; subject,
subdue

sub-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, draw
up, draw ashore

sub-eō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *lit.* go under;
undergo, undertake, endure, come
to mind; approach

sub-iaceō, -ēre, -uī, lie below

sub-iciō, -ere, -iēci, -iectum, *lit.*
throw under; subject, subordinate;
place near; **subiectus, -a, -um,**
lying under *or* at the foot of,
adjacent; subjected

sub-invītō (1), gently (**sub-**) invite,
suggest, hint

subitō, *adv.,* suddenly

subitus, -a, -um, sudden

sublicius, -a, -um, built on piles

sublīmis, -e, lofty, on high

sub-m: *see* **sum-m**

sub-sistō, -ere, -stitī, stand still, halt;
remain, stay

substantia, -ae, *f.,* substance;
property

subter-fugiō, -ere, -fūgī, escape,
evade

subtīliter, *adv.,* nicely, accurately

sub-urbānum, -ī, *n.,* estate near the
city

sub-vehō, -ere, -vexī, -vectum, carry
up, transport

suc-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, go
under, approach; succeed

suc-cendō, -ere, -cendī, -cēnsum, set
on fire

suc-cessiō, -ōnis, *f.,* succession

suc-cessus, -ūs, *m.,* success

suc-cumbō, -ere, -cubuī, -cubitum,
yield, succumb, be overcome

suc-currō, -ere, -currī, -cursum, *lit.*
run up under; rush to the aid of,
help; come to mind

suf-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, supply,
substitute, appoint (*in place of
another*)

suffrāgium, -ī, *n.,* vote

suī (sibi, sē, sē), *reflexive pron. of 3rd
pers.,* himself, herself, itself,
themselves

Sulla, -ae, *m.,* L. Cornelius Sulla,
dictator in 81 B.C., *infamous for his
proscriptions*

Sulpicius, -ī, *m., a Roman nomen*

sulpur, -uris, *n.,* sulphur

* **sum, esse, fuī, futūrus,** be, exist; **est,
sunt** *may mean* there is, there are;
fore, *an old fut. inf.*

* **summa, -ae,** *f.,* sum, amount, whole,
chief point

sum-mergō, -ere, -mersī, -mersum,
plunge under water, overwhelm,
drown

sum-missus, -a, -um, gentle, calm,
humble, submissive

sum-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, let
down, lower

* **summus, -a, -um,** *superl. of* **superus,**
highest, greatest, most important;
highest part of, top of; **summum
bonum,** the highest good *or* goal
in life

sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum, take,
consume; assume, choose

sūmptuōsus, -a, -um, expensive;
extravagant

supellex, supellectilis, *f.,* furniture,
equipment

* **super,** *adv.,* above, besides, moreover; *prep.* + *acc.* over, above, upon; + *abl.* over, above, concerning

superbia, -ae, *f.,* pride; haughtiness, insolence

* **superbus, -a, -um,** haughty, proud

super-effluō, -ere, -fluxī, -fluctum, flow over (*EL*)

super-ērogō (1), spend over and above

superior: *see* **superus**

super-in-cidō, -ere, -cidī, -cāsum, fall on from above

supernē, *adv.,* from above

* **superō** (1), surpass, overcome, defeat; surmount, pass over; survive

* **superscrīptiō, -ōnis,** *f.,* inscription, superscription (*EL*)

super-stes, *gen.* **-stitis,** surviving, outliving

superstitiō, -ōnis, *f.,* superstition

super-sum, -esse, -fuī, be more than enough (for), be left over, survive

superus, -a, -um, high up, upper, above; *compar.* **superior, -ius,** higher, superior, earlier, former; *superl.* **summus, -a, -um,** highest, highest part of, *and* **suprēmus, -a, -um,** highest, last, final, extreme

super-vacāneus, -a, -um, superfluous, needless

supervacuus, -a, -um, superfluous, unnecessary

super-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, follow up, overtake; appear unexpectedly

suppeditō (1), supply, furnish, suffice

sup-plantō (1), trip up

sup-pleō, -ēre, -plēvī, -plētum, fill up

supplex, -plicis, *m.,* a suppliant

* **supplicium, -ī,** *n., lit.* a kneeling; supplication; punishment, penalty; pain, distress, suffering

sup-plicō (1), kneel down to, pray to, worship, entreat

sup-primō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum, hold back, suppress

* **suprā,** *adv. and prep.* + *acc.,* above, over, beyond; upon

suprēmus, -a, -um, *a superl. of* **superus**

* **surgō, -ere, surrēxī, surrēctum,** arise, get up

sur-ripiō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptum, snatch (secretly), steal

* **sus-cipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum,** undertake; incur, suffer

suspectus, -a, -um, suspected

sus-pēnsus, -a, -um, (*partic. of* **suspendō,** hang up), doubtful, in suspense, fearful, anxious

suspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum, suspect

suspīciō, -ōnis, *f.,* suspicion, distrust

suspicor, -ārī, -ātus sum, suspect, conjecture

suspīrium, -ī, *n.,* sigh, deep breath

sustentō (1), sustain, bear, endure

* **sus-tineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum,** hold up, support, sustain, endure, withstand

sustulī, *perf. of* **tollō**

* **suus, -a, -um,** *reflexive possessive adj.,* his own, her own, its own, their own

symphōnia, -ae, *f.,* musical concert

Syrācūsae, -arum, *f. pl.,* Syracuse

Syrācūsānus, -a, -um, of Syracuse;
  Syrācūsānī, -ōrum, *m.,* the
  Syracusans

T

T., *abbr. of* **Titus,** *a praenomen*
tabellārius, -ī, *m.,* letter-carrier
taberna, -ae, *f.* shop, tavern, inn
tābēscō, -ere, tābuī, waste away,
  melt, be dissolved
* **tabula, -ae,** *f.,* board; writing-tablet;
  document, record; picture,
  painting
taceō, -ēre, tacuī, tacitum, be silent;
  be silent about, pass over in
  silence
tacitus, -a, -um, silent
taeda, -ae, *f.,* torch; wedding torch
  (*carried in the procession*), wedding
taedium, -ī, *n.,* weariness, disgust
Taenarius, -a, -um, Taenarian =
  Spartan (*from Taenarus, a city in
  Laconia*)
taeter, -tra, -trum, foul, offensive,
  repulsive
* **tālis, -e,** such, of such a sort
tālus, -ī, *m.,* ankle; heel
* **tam,** *adv. used with adjs. and advs.,*
  so, to such a degree
* **tamen,** *adv.,* nevertheless, still
tam-etsī, *conj.,* although
* **tamquam,** *adv.,* as, just as, as it
  were
* **tandem,** *adv.,* finally, at last; *in
  questions,* pray, now then
* **tangō, -ere, tetigī, tāctum,** touch
Tantalus, -ī, *m., legendary king
  condemned to be tantalized in
  Tartarus for an insult to the gods*

tantisper, *adv.,* just so long
* **tantum,** *as adv. of* **tantus,** so much,
  only
tantummodo, *adv.,* only
* **tantus, -a, -um,** so great, so much;
  tantus . . . quantus, as great . . . as;
  tantum *as adv.,* so much; only
tantus-dem, tanta-dem, tantun-dem,
  just so great *or* large
tardus, -a, -um, slow, tardy, late; *adv.*
  tardē
Tarquinius, -ī, *m., name of two
  Etruscan kings at Rome, Priscus
  and Superbus; the latter was the
  last of the kings at Rome and was
  expelled in 510* B.C.
Tartara, -ōrum, *n.,* Tartarus, *in
  Hades, the region for evil-doers*
Tauromenitānus, -a, -um, of
  Taormina, *a town on the east coast
  of Sicily*
tēctum, -ī, *n.,* roof; dwelling, house
* **tegō, -ere, tēxī, tēctum,** cover, hide;
  protect
tellūs, -ūris, *f.,* earth, land, region
* **tēlum, -ī,** *n.,* missile, javelin, spear,
  weapon
Temenītēs, -is, *m., a title of Apollo as
  god of the sacred precinct at
  Syracuse*
temerārius, -a, -um, rash, foolhardy
temerē, *adv.,* rashly, heedlessly
temeritās, -tātis, *f.,* rashness,
  foolhardiness; chance, accident
temperantia, -ae, *f.,* moderation,
  temperance, self-control, restraint,
  avoidance of excess
temperiēs, -ēī, *f.,* moderate
  temperature; calmness, restraint
temperō (1), control, observe proper

limits, use with moderation,
refrain from

tempestās, -tātis, *f.,* weather; storm;
misfortune

* **templum, -ī,** *n.,* sacred area; temple

temptābundus, -a, -um, attempting,
feeling one's way

* **temptō** (1), test, try, attempt

* **tempus, -oris,** *n.,* time, period,
season, opportunity; crisis,
misfortune, extremity; **ad tempus,**
for the time

tendō, -ere, tetendī, tentum *or*
tēnsum, stretch; strive, struggle,
contend; travel, direct one's course
(*sc.* **iter**)

tenebrae, -ārum, *f. pl.,* shadows,
darkness, gloom

* **teneō, -ēre, -uī, tentum,** hold,
contain, possess, check, hold
back, restrain

tener, -era, -erum, tender, delicate

tenor, -ōris, *m.,* course, continuance

* **tenuis, -e,** slender, thin, weak,
humble, simple; fine, exact

tepeō, -ēre, -uī, be warm

ter, *adv.,* three times

Terentia, -ae, *f.,* Terentia, *wife of
Cicero*

Terentius, -ī, *m., a Roman nomen;*
e.g., C. Terentius Varro, *defeated at
Cannae in 216* B.C.; M. Terentius
Afer, *writer of comedy*

tergum, -ī, *n.,* back (*part of the
body*); **ā tergō,** in the rear

terminō (1), limit, restrict, bound,
define

ternī, -ae, -a, *pl.,* three each,
triple

terō, -ere, trīvī, trītum, rub, wear
out, consume

* **terra, -ae,** *f.,* earth, land; territory,
country; **terrā marīque,** by *or* on
land and sea

terrēnus, -a, -um, belonging to the
earth, terrestrial

terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, terrify

terrestris, -e, terrestrial, on the earth

* **terror, -ōris,** *m.,* terror, fear, dread

tertiō, *adv.,* for the third time;
thirdly

tertium, *adv.,* thirdly, in the third
place, for the third time

* **tertius, -a, -um,** third

testāmentum, -ī, *n.,* last will,
testament

testimōnium, -ī, *n.,* evidence,
testimony

* **testis, -is,** *m./f.,* witness

testor, -ārī, -ātus sum, bear witness
to, declare, assert; call to witness

tetendī, *perf. of* **tendō**

tetigī, *perf. of* **tangō**

theātrum, -ī, *n.,* theater

Themistoclēs, -is, *m., Athenian
general victorious at Salamis in
480* B.C.

* **thēsaurus, -ī,** *m.,* treasure; treasury

Thēseus, -eī, *m., a famous king of
Athens*

Thisbē, -ēs, *f., sweetheart of Pyramus
of Babylon (see Ovid)*

Thrācius, -a, -um, Thracian

thronus, -ī, *m.,* throne

Ti., *abbr. of* **Tiberius,** *a praenomen*

Tiberīnus, -a, -um, of *or* belonging to
the Tiber river

Tiberis, -is, *acc.* **-berim,** *abl.* **-berī,**
m., Tiber River

* **timeō, -ēre, -uī,** fear, be afraid of; be
afraid

* **timidus, -a, -um,** cowardly, timid

Timōlus (Tmōlus), -ī, *m., mountain in Lydia, Asia Minor*

* **timor, -ōris,** *m.,* fear, dread

Tīcīnus, -ī, *m.,* the Ticino river, *in northern Italy*

tīnctūra, -ae, *f.,* dyeing, tinting

tingō, -ere, tinxī, tinctum, wet, dip, dye, stain

Tīrō, -ōnis, *m.,* Tiro, *Cicero's very dear freedman and secretary*

titubō (1), stagger, reel

toga, -ae, *f.,* toga (*the Roman citizen's voluminous outer garment worn in formal, civic situations and regarded as the garb of peace*)

tolerābilis, -e, bearable, tolerable

toleranter, *adv.,* patiently

* **tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum,** lift up, take away, destroy

topazium, -ī, *n.,* precious stone, topaz, green jasper

* **tormentum, -ī,** *n.,* torture, torment, rack

torpeō, -ēre, be stiff, numb, stupefied, sluggish

torpidus, -a, -um, stiff, numb

torqueō, -ēre, torsī, tortum, twist, torture, distress

torreō, -ēre, -uī, tostum, burn, roast

torridus, -a, -um, parched, burnt

torus, -ī, *m.,* couch, cushion

* **tot,** *indecl.,* so many

totaliter, *adv.,* totally, completely (*ML*)

totiēns, *adv.,* so many times, so often

* **tōtus, -a, -um** (*gen.* **tōtīus**), whole, entire

trabs, trabis, *f.,* a beam of wood

tractātus, -ūs, *m.,* handling, treatment

tractō (1), handle, manage, treat

trāditiō, -ōnis, *f.,* a handing over, surrender; a handing down, instruction, tradition

* **trā-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditum,** hand over, surrender; hand down, transmit

trā-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead across, conduct; spend, pass

* **trahō, -ere, traxī, tractum,** drag; draw, assume, acquire; influence, cause

trā-iciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, throw across, bring across, transfer

trames, -itis, *m.,* path

trā-nō (1), swim across

tranquillitās, -tātis, *f.,* quietness, calmness, peace, tranquility

tranquillus, -a, -um, quiet, calm

trāns, *prep.* + *acc.,* across

trānscendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsum, climb over, pass over

* **trāns-eō, -īre, -iī, -itum,** go across, pass beyond, transgress, violate; (*of time*) go by, pass

trāns-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, bring across, transfer, transport; translate

trāns-fuga, -ae, *m.,* deserter

trānsiliō, -īre, -siluī, leap over *or* across

trānsitōrius, -a, -um, having a passage through; passing, transitory (*EL*)

trāns-itus, -ūs, *m.,* a crossing, passage

trāns-meō (1), go over *or* across

trāns-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, send over *or* across; go over, cross over; intrust

trāns-verberō, *lit.* strike through; pierce

trāns-versus, -a, -um, transverse, crosswise

Trasumennus, -ī, *m.,* Lake Trasimeno (Lago di Perugia), *where Hannibal defeated Flaminius in 217* B.C.

Trebia, -ae, *m., a tributary of the Po River in northern Italy*

tre-centī, -ae, -a, three hundred

tredeciēs, *adv.,* thirteen times

tremebundus, -a, -um, trembling, quivering

tremō, -ere, -uī, tremble, shudder

tremor, -ōris, *m.,* a trembling; earthquake

tremulus, -a, -um, trembling, quivering

trepidātiō, -ōnis, *f.,* agitation, alarm, nervousness

trepidō (1), be agitated, alarmed, anxious

trepidus, -a, -um, alarmed, disturbed

* **trēs, tria,** three

trewga, -ae, *f.,* truce (*ML*)

tribūnal, -ālis, *n.,* raised platform

tribūnicius, -a, -um, of a tribune, tribunician

* **tribūnus, -ī,** *m.,* tribune, *a Roman official originally appointed to protect the interest of the plebeians;* a military officer

* **tribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum,** assign, ascribe, attribute, give

trīcēnsimus *or* **trīcēsimus, -a, -um,** thirtieth

trīduum, -ī, *n.,* period of three days

* **triennium, -ī,** *n.,* period of three years

trigeminus, -a, -um, threefold; triplet

trīginta, *indecl.,* thirty

trīstis, -e, sad, saddening, sorrowful

trītus, -a, -um, well-worn, familiar

triumphus, -ī, *m.,* triumphal procession, triumph; victory

Troezēn, -zēnis, *f., a town in Argolis across the Saronic Gulf from Athens*

Troiānus, -a, -um, Trojan

truncus, -ī, *m.,* trunk

trux, *gen.* **trucis,** savage, fierce

* **tū, tuī,** *personal pron.,* you *sg.* (thou)

tuba, -ae, *f.,* trumpet

* **tueor, -ērī, tuitus sum,** look at, watch, protect, defend, preserve

tulī: *see* **ferō**

Tullia, -ae, *f.,* Tullia, *Cicero's beloved daughter*

Tullius, -ī, *m., a Roman gentile name; see especially under* **Cicero**

* **tum,** *adv.,* then, at that time, thereupon

tumultuōsus, -a, -um, confused, noisy, tumultuous

* **tumultus, -ūs,** *m.,* uproar, confusion, tumult

* **tumulus, -ī,** *m.,* mound, hill; grave

* **tunc,** *adv.,* then

tunica, -ae, *f.,* tunic, *the shirt-like garment worn under the robe* (*toga*) or without the robe

* **turba, -ae,** *f.,* disorder, disturbance, confusion; mob, crowd

* **turpis, -e,** ugly, shameful, base, foul

turpiter, *adv. of* **turpis**

turpitūdō, -dinis, *f.,* baseness, disgrace, ugliness

turris, -is, *f.,* tower

tūs, tūris, *n.,* incense

Tusculānum, -ī, *n., sc.* **praedium,** villa at Tusculum, *a town just southeast of Rome*

tūtēla, -ae, *f.,* protection, defense

tūtō, *adv.*, safely

* tūtus, -a, -um, safe, guarded,
protected; tūtum, -ī, *n.*, a safe
place, safety

* tuus, -a, -um, your (*sg.*)

tycha, -ae, *f.*, *Greek* = fortuna

tyrannus, -ī, *m.*, tyrant, despot

U

ūber, *gen.* ūberis, fertile, fruitful,
abounding in

* ubĭ, *rel. adv. and conj.*, where, when;
interrogative adv. and conj., where?

ubī-cumque, *adv.*, wherever,
anywhere, everywhere

ulcīscor, -ī, -ultus sum, avenge; take
vengeance on, punish

ulcus, -eris, *n.*, ulcer, sore

* ūllus, -a, -um, any

ulna, -ae, *f.*, elbow, arm

ultimus, -a, -um (*superl. of* ulterior;
cp. ultrō), farthest, most distant,
last, utmost

ultiō, -ōnis, *f.*, vengeance,
punishment

ultor, -ōris, *m.*, avenger

ultrō, *adv.*, to the farther side,
beyond; voluntarily; without
provocation; ultrō citrōque, up and
down, back and forth

* umbra, -ae, *f.*, shade; ghost

umerus, -ī, *m.*, shoulder

ūmidus, -a, -um, wet, moist

* umquam, *adv.*, ever

* ūnā *as adv.: see* ūnus

* unda, -ae, *f.*, wave

* unde, *adv.* from which place,
whence; from whom

ūndeciēs, *adv.*, eleven times

ūn-decimus, -a, -um, eleventh

* undique, *adv.*, from *or* on all sides,
everywhere

ūnicus, -a, -um, one, only, sole;
unique

ūni-genitus, -a, -um, only-begotten,
only (*EL*)

* ūniversus, -a, -um, all together,
entire, universal

* ūnus, -a, -um, one, single, only; ūnā
(*sc.* viā) *as adv.*, together, along;
ūnus quisque, each one. *In ML*
ūnus *is often used as the indefinite
article* a, an.

urbānus, -a, -um, belonging to a city,
urban

* urbs, -is, *f.*, city; *the* city, *i.e.*, Rome

urna, -ae, *f.*, jug, urn

ūrō, -ere, ussī, ustum, burn, destroy
by fire

usquam, *adv.*, anywhere, in any way

* usque, *adv.*, all the way, as far as, up
(to), even (to); continuously

ūsūrpātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, employment, a
making use of

ūsūrpō (1), claim, employ, repeatedly
mention

* ūsus, -ūs, *m.*, use, practice,
experience; enjoyment, profit

* ut, *conj.*: A. *with subjunctive
introducing* (1) *purpose*, in order
that, that, to; (2) *indirect
command*, that, to; (3) *result*, so
that, that; B. *with indicative*, as,
when; as for example, as being

utcumque, *conj.*, in whatever way,
however; *adv.*, somehow

* uter, utra, utrum, which of two

uterque, -traque, -trumque, each of
two, both; *in pl. usually* each side,
both parties

* utī = ut

* **ūtilis, -e,** useful, advantageous, profitable
* **ūtilitās, -tātis,** *f.,* use, profit, advantage, expediency
  utinam, *adv., introducing wishes,* oh that, would that
  ūtor, -ī, ūsus sum, + *abl.,* use, enjoy
  utrimque, *adv.,* from both sides, on both sides
  utrō-que, *adv.,* in both directions
  utrum, *adv.,* whether; **utrum . . . an,** whether . . . or
  ūva, -ae, *f.,* bunch of grapes
* **uxor, -ōris,** *f.,* wife

V

* **vacō** (1), be empty; be free from, be without; have (leisure) time for
* **vacuus, -a, -um,** empty, unoccupied, free
  vādō, -ere, go, rush
  vae, *interjection of pain or anger,* ah! alas! woe (to)
  vāgītus, -ūs, *m.,* a crying
  vagor, -ārī, -ātus sum, wander about
  vagus, -a, -um, wandering
  valdē, *adv.,* greatly, thoroughly, very much
  valēns, -entis, *partic. of* **valeō** *as adj.,* powerful, strong
  Valentīnī, -ōrum, *m.,* the people of Valentia *in southern Italy*
* **valeō, -ēre, valuī, valitūrus,** be strong, have power; be able, prevail; be well, fare well; **valē (valēte),** good-bye, farewell
  Valerius, -ī, *m., a Roman nomen*
* **valētūdō, -dinis,** *f.,* health
  validus, -a, -um, strong, powerful; *adv.* **validē**

vallis, -is, *f.,* valley
* **valvae, -ārum,** *f. pl.,* folding door (the leaves)
* **vānitās, -tātis,** *f.,* emptiness, vanity
* **vānus, -a, -um,** empty, vain, false; ostentatious
  varius, -a, -um, different, various, manifold, diverse; fickle
  Varrō, -ōnis, *m., a Roman cognomen; e.g.,* C. Terentius Varro *in 2nd Punic War*
  vās, vāsis, *n.,* vessel; *pl.* **vāsa, -ōrum**
  vāstus, -a, -um, empty, waste; vast, immense
  vātēs, -is, *m./f.,* soothsayer; bard, poet
  -ve, *enclitic conj.,* or
  vectīgal, -ālis, *n.,* tax
  vectīgālis, -e, subject to taxation
* **vehementer,** *adv.,* violently; earnestly, greatly, very much
* **vel,** *conj.,* or (if you please); **vel . . . vel,** either . . . or; *adv.,* even, very
  vēlāmen, -minis, *n.,* veil
  vēlō (1), to veil, cover, cloak
  vēlōx, *gen.* **-ōcis,** quick, swift
* **vel-ut,** *adv.,* as, just as, as if
  vēna, -ae, *f.,* vein, blood-vessel
  vēnābulum, -ī, *n.,* hunting spear
  vēnālis, -e, on sale, to be sold
  vēnātiō, -ōnis, *f.,* hunting; a hunt, *especially as a spectacle at the games*
  vendō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, sell
  venēnum, -ī, *n.,* poison
  vēneō, -īre, -iī, be on sale, be sold
  veneror, -ārī, -ātus sum, revere, worship
* **venia, -ae,** *f.,* pardon, favor, indulgence
* **veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventum,** come
  vēnor (1), to hunt

venter, -tris, *m.,* belly, stomach

ventus, -ī, *m.,* wind

Venus, -eris, *f., goddess of love*

Venusia, -ae, *f., a town not far from Cannae*

venustās, -tātis, *f.,* loveliness, charm

venustus, -a, -um, charming, lovely, attractive

* **vēr, vēris,** *n.,* spring, springtime

verber, -eris, *n.,* blow, lash

verberō (1), beat, scourge

* **verbum, -ī,** *n.,* word; **ad verbum,** to a word = word for word, literally

vērē, *an adv. of* **vērus,** truly, rightly, actually, really

verēcundia, -ae, *f.,* respect, reverence; modesty, propriety, shame

vereor, -ērī, -veritus sum, fear, be anxious; reverence, have respect for

vēritās, -tātis, *f.,* truth; sincerity, honesty

* **vērō,** *an adv. of* **vērus,** indeed, in fact; but in fact

Verrēs, -is, *m., the* Verres *prosecuted by Cicero*

* **versō** (1), turn, turn about; agitate, disturb; consider; *see also deponent* **versor**

versor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *deponent of* **verso,** *lit.* turn oneself about (in); be busy, engaged, occupied; be concerned with; dwell

versus, *as adv.,* towards; *as a prep.* = **adversus** *in ML*

* **vertō, -ere, vertī, versum,** turn; *see also deponent* **vertor**

vertor, vertī, versus sum, *as pass. and deponent of* **vertō,** turn oneself, turn about; be engaged in

* **vērum,** *conj.,* but, nevertheless, still; **nōn modo . . . vērum etiam,** not only . . . but also

* **vērus, -a, -um,** true, actual, real, reliable; **vērum, -ī,** *n.,* truth, reality; **vērē,** *adv., and* **rē vērā** *as adv.,* truly, really, actually; **vērum** *as conj. (see under* **vērum)**

Vestālis, -is, *f.,* a Vestal virgin, *one who tended the sacred fire of Vesta in the Forum*

* **vester, -tra, -trum,** your *(pl.),* yours

vestibulum, -ī, *n.,* entrance, vestibule

vestīgium, -ī, *n.,* footprint, track; trace, sign, evidence

vestīmentum, -ī, *n.,* clothing, garment, robe

vestiō (4), clothe; cover, adorn

vestis, -is, *f.,* clothing, clothes, garment

vestītus, -ūs, *m.,* clothing, clothes

Vesuvius, -ī, *m., the famous volcano near Naples*

veterānus, -ī, *m.,* a veteran

veterātor, -ōris, *m.,* an experienced person, an old hand *(often pejorative)*

vetō, -āre, -uī, -itum, forbid, veto

* **vetus,** *gen.* **veteris,** old; aged

vetustus, -a, -um, old, ancient

vexātiō, -ōnis, *f.,* hardship, harassment

vexātor, -ōris, *m.,* harasser

vexō (1), harass, molest, damage, maltreat

* **via, -ae,** *f.,* way, road, street

vīcīnia, -ae, *f.,* proximity, nearness, neighborhood

vīcīnus, -a, -um, neighboring, near; *noun m. or f.,* neighbor

vicis (= *gen.; nom. not found),* **vicem**

(*acc.*), **vice** (*abl.*); *pl.* **vicēs, vicibus,**
change, interchange, vicissitude,
plight, lot, fate; **in vicem** and **in
vices,** in turn

vicissim, *adv.,* in turn

victima, -ae, *f.,* sacrificial animal

* **victor, -ōris,** *m.,* victor, conqueror;
sometimes as adj., **victōrī hostī,**
victorious enemy

* **victōria, -ae,** *f.,* victory

victus, -ūs, *m.,* a living, food,
provisions; way of life

vīculus, -ī, *m.,* hamlet

vīcus, -ī, *m.,* village; estate, property;
street

vidē-licet, *adv.,* clearly; of course, to
be sure

* **videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsum,** see, observe,
understand; **videor, -ērī, vīsus sum,**
passive voice, be seen, seem; seem
best

vigil, vigilis, awake, wakeful

vigilāns, *gen.* **-antis,** watchful,
vigilant

vigilia, -ae, *f.,* a being awake,
wakefulness, vigil; watch (*a quarter
of the night*); sentinel

vigilō (1), keep awake

vīgintī, *indecl.,* twenty

vigor, -ōris, *m.,* vigor, energy

vīlicus, -ī, *m.,* steward, overseer of
an estate

vīlis, -e, cheap, worthless

* **vīlla, -ae,** *f.,* villa, country house,
farm

villōsus, -a, -um, shaggy, rough

vīllula, -ae, *f.,* small country house,
small farm

* **vinciō, -īre, vinxī, vinctum,** bind

* **vincō, -ere, vīcī, victum,** conquer

vinculum, -ī, *n.,* bond, fetter

vindemiō (1), gather (grapes),
harvest

vindicō (1), deliver, defend, protect;
avenge, punish

vīnētum, -ī, *n.,* vineyard

* **vīnum, -ī,** *n.,* wine

violō (1), injure, outrage, violate

vīpera, -ae, *f.,* snake, viper

* **vir, virī,** *m.,* man; hero

vireō, -ēre, -uī, be green, be vigorous

vīrēs: *see* **vis**

virga, -ae, *f.,* twig, shoot; wand, rod

virginitās, -tātis, *f.,* virginity, chastity

* **virgō, -ginis,** *f.,* virgin, maiden

virgultum, -ī, *n.,* shrub, bush

viridis, -e, green; youthful

virīlis, -e, male, manly

virīliter, *adv.,* manfully, courageously

* **virtūs, -tūtis,** *f.,* courage, virtue,
excellence

* **vīs, vīs,** *f.,* force, power, violence; *pl.*
vīrēs, vīrium, strength

vīscera, -um (*pl. of* **vīscus, -eris,**
flesh), *n.,* vitals, entrails

vīsitō (1), see often, visit

* **vīsō, -ere, vīsī, vīsum,** go to see, visit

vīsus, -ūs, *m.,* seeing, sight

* **vīta, -ae,** *f.,* life; way of life

vītālis, -e, vital

vitiātus, -a, -um, faulty, defective

* **vitium, -ī,** *n.,* fault, crime, vice

vītō (1), avoid, shun, escape

vitrum, -ī, *n.,* glass

vitulus, -ī, *m.,* calf

vituperō (1), blame, censure

* **vīvō, -ere, vīxī, victum,** live

vīvus, -a, -um, living, alive

* **vix,** *adv.,* hardly, scarcely, barely,
with difficulty

vocābulum, -ī, *n.,* name, appellation

vocō (1), call, name; invite

vōc-ula (*dimin. of* **vōx**), **-ae,** *f., lit.* little voice; weak voice, poor voice

volātus, -ūs, *m.,* a flying, flight

volgus: *see* **vulgus**

* **volō, velle, voluī,** will, be willing, wish; intend, mean

volō (1), to fly

volucer, -cris, -cre, *lit.* flying; winged, swift; *as a noun* (*sc.* **avis**), bird

voluntārius, -a, -um, willing, voluntary, of one's own accord

* **voluntās, -tātis,** *f.,* will, wish, desire; good will

* **voluptās, -tātis,** *f.,* pleasure, delight; sensual pleasure, passion

vomō, -ere, -uī, -itum, vomit

* **vōs, vestrum** *or* **vestrī,** *pl. of* **tu,** you

vōtum, -ī, *n.,* vow; prayer

voveō, -ere, vōvī, vōtum, vow; pray for, desire

* **vōx, vōcis,** *f.,* voice, word, cry; a saying

vulgātus, -a, -um, commonly known, public

vulgō (1), spread among the common people, communicate, publish

vulgō (*abl. of* **vulgus** *as adv.*), commonly, openly

vulgus, -ī, *n.,* the common people, crowd, throng, masses

* **vulnus, -eris,** *n.,* wound

vulnerō (1), wound

vultur, -uris, *m.,* vulture

Vulturnus, -ī, *m.,* the Volturno, *a river in Campania*

* **vultus, -ūs,** *m.,* face, looks, mien, appearance

X

Xerxēs, -is, *m., king of the Persians, defeated at Salamis in 480* B.C.

Z

zēlotēs, -ae, *m.,* one who is jealous

ABOUT THE AUTHORS

Frederic M. Wheelock (1902–1987) received the A. B., A.M., and Ph.D. degrees from Harvard University. His long and distinguished teaching career included appointments at Haverford College, Harvard University, the College of the City of New York, Brooklyn College, Cazenovia Junior College (where he served as Dean), the Darrow School for Boys (New Lebanon, New York), the University of Toledo (from which he retired as full Professor in 1968), and a visiting professorship at Florida Presbyterian (now Eckerd) College. He published a number of articles and reviews in the fields of textual criticism, palaeography, and the study of Latin; in addition to *Wheelock's Latin Reader* (previously titled *Latin Literature: A Book of Readings*), his books include the classic introductory Latin textbook, *Wheelock's Latin,* as well as *Quintilian as Educator* (translation by H. E. Butler, introduction and notes by Professor Wheelock). Professor Wheelock was a member of the American Classical League, the American Philological Association, and the Classical Association of the Atlantic States.

Richard A. LaFleur, received the B. A. and M. A. in Latin from the University of Virginia and the Ph.D. in Classical Studies from Duke. He has taught since 1972 at the University of Georgia, where he served for 21 years as head of one of the largest Classics programs in North America and has held since 1998 the chair of Franklin Professor of Classics. He has numerous publications in Latin language, literature, and pedagogy, including the books *The Teaching of Latin in American Schools: A Profession in Crisis, Latin Poetry for the Beginning Student, Love and Transformation: An Ovid Reader, Latin for the 21st Century: From Concept to Classroom, Wheelock's Latin* (revised 5th and 6th eds.), and (with Paul Comeau) *Workbook for Wheelock's Latin* (revised 3rd ed.). Professor LaFleur is also editor of *The Classical Outlook* (since 1979) and a past President of the American Classical League (1984–1986). He has been recipient of state, regional, and national awards for teaching and professional service, including, in 1984, the American Philological Association's award for Excellence in the Teaching of Classics.
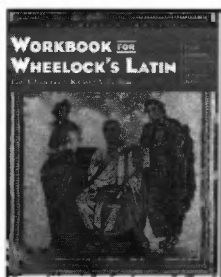
riginally intended by Professor Frederic M. Wheelock as a sequel to *Wheelock's Latin*, his classic introductory Latin textbook, *Wheelock's Latin Reader*, newly revised and updated by Richard A. LaFleur, is the ideal text for any intermediate-level Latin course. You'll find a rich selection of prose and poetry from a wide range of classical authors, as well as briefer passages from medieval and Late Latin writers, each presented in the Latin in which it was originally written. Useful features include extensive notes; a complete Latin-English vocabulary; maps of ancient Italy, Greece, and the Roman Empire; and numerous photographs illustrating aspects of classical culture, mythology, and history featured in the readings.

Also available in the Wheelock's Latin Series:
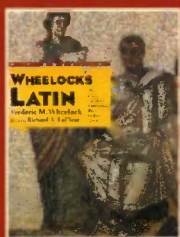
Wheelock's Latin: The Classic Introductory Latin Course, Based on Ancient Authors
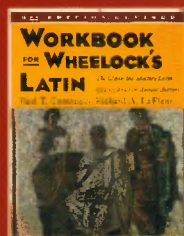
Workbook for Wheelock's Latin

Praise for *Wheelock's Latin Reader:*

"...A perfect way to move from the study of grammar to reading authentic Latin literature. The variety and breadth of selections will allow teachers to adapt to any methodology or learner-type, and to appeal to classicists and non-majors at both the high school and post-secondary levels."

—*The Classical Outlook*

"[*Wheelock's Latin Reader*] is a solid companion to [*Wheelock's Latin*] and deserves wide circulation as a practical introduction to the humanism of Ancient Rome."

—*The Classical Bulletin*

"The widespread adoption of Wheelock's introductory Latin is a tribute to its mature approach. His reader is a worthy continuation."

—*Classical World*

Collins Reference

An Imprint of HarperCollins*Publishers*
www.harpercollins.com

COVER DESIGN BY PETER MARTIN
COVER IMAGE: A FRESCO OF OVID
BY LUCA SIGNORELLI (DETAIL), DUOMO,
ORVIETO, ITALY. SCALA / ART RESOURCE, N.Y.